

31st
EDITION

CRC

STANDARD
MATHEMATICAL
TABLES AND
FORMULAE

DANIEL ZWILLINGER



CHAPMAN & HALL/CRC

A CRC Press Company

Boca Raton London New York Washington, D.C.

Editor-in-Chief

Daniel Zwillinger

Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute
Troy, New York

Associate Editors

Steven G. Krantz

Washington University
St. Louis, Missouri

Kenneth H. Rosen

AT&T Bell Laboratories
Holmdel, New Jersey

Editorial Advisory Board

George E. Andrews

Pennsylvania State University
University Park, Pennsylvania

Ben Fusaro

Florida State University
Tallahassee, Florida

Michael F. Bridgland

Center for Computing Sciences
Bowie, Maryland

Alan F. Karr

National Institute Statistical Sciences
Research Triangle Park, North Carolina

J. Douglas Faires

Youngstown State University
Youngstown, Ohio

Al Marden

University of Minnesota
Minneapolis, Minnesota

Gerald B. Folland

University of Washington
Seattle, Washington

William H. Press

Los Alamos National Lab
Los Alamos, NM 87545

Preface

It has long been the established policy of CRC Press to publish, in handbook form, the most up-to-date, authoritative, logically arranged, and readily usable reference material available. Prior to the preparation of this 31st Edition of the *CRC Standard Mathematical Tables and Formulae*, the content of such a book was reconsidered. The previous edition was carefully analyzed, and input was obtained from practitioners in the many branches of mathematics, engineering, and the physical sciences. The consensus was that numerous small additions were required in several sections, and several new areas needed to be added.

Some of the new materials included in this edition are: game theory and voting power, heuristic search techniques, quadratic fields, reliability, risk analysis and decision rules, a table of solutions to Pell's equation, a table of irreducible polynomials in $Z_2[x]$, a longer table of prime numbers, an interpretation of powers of 10, a collection of "proofs without words", and representations of groups of small order. In total, there are more than 30 completely new sections, more than 50 new and modified entries in the sections, more than 90 distinguished examples, and more than a dozen new tables and figures. This brings the total number of sections, sub-sections, and sub-sub-sections to more than 1,000. Within those sections are now more than 3,000 separate items (a definition, a fact, a table, or a property). The index has also been extensively re-worked and expanded to make finding results faster and easier; there are now more than 6,500 index references (with 75 cross-references of terms) and more than 750 notation references.

The same successful format which has characterized earlier editions of the *Handbook* is retained, while its presentation has been updated and made more consistent from page to page. Material is presented in a multi-sectional format, with each section containing a valuable collection of fundamental reference material—tabular and expository.

In line with the established policy of CRC Press, the *Handbook* will be kept as current and timely as is possible. Revisions and anticipated uses of newer materials and tables will be introduced as the need arises. Suggestions for the inclusion of new material in subsequent editions and comments regarding the present edition are welcomed. The home page for this book, which will include errata, will be maintained at <http://www.mathtable.com/>.

The major material in this new edition is as follows:

Chapter 1: Analysis begins with numbers and then combines them into series and products. Series lead naturally into Fourier series. Numbers also lead to functions which results in coverage of real analysis, complex analysis, and generalized functions.

Chapter 2: Algebra covers the different types of algebra studied: elementary algebra, vector algebra, linear algebra, and abstract algebra. Also included are details on polynomials and a separate section on number theory. This chapter includes many new tables.

Chapter 3: Discrete Mathematics covers traditional discrete topics such as combinatorics, graph theory, coding theory and information theory, operations re-

search, and game theory. Also included in this chapter are logic, set theory, and chaos.

Chapter 4: *Geometry* covers all aspects of geometry: points, lines, planes, surfaces, polyhedra, coordinate systems, and differential geometry.

Chapter 5: *Continuous Mathematics* covers calculus material: differentiation, integration, differential and integral equations, and tensor analysis. A large table of integrals is included. This chapter also includes differential forms and orthogonal coordinate systems.

Chapter 6: *Special Functions* contains a sequence of functions starting with the trigonometric, exponential, and hyperbolic functions, and leading to many of the common functions encountered in applications: orthogonal polynomials, gamma and beta functions, hypergeometric functions, Bessel and elliptic functions, and several others. This chapter also contains sections on Fourier and Laplace transforms, and includes tables of these transforms.

Chapter 7: *Probability and Statistics* begins with basic probability information (defining several common distributions) and leads to common statistical needs (point estimates, confidence intervals, hypothesis testing, and ANOVA). Tables of the normal distribution, and other distributions, are included. Also included in this chapter are queuing theory, Markov chains, and random number generation.

Chapter 8: *Scientific Computing* explores numerical solutions of linear and nonlinear algebraic systems, numerical algorithms for linear algebra, and how to numerically solve ordinary and partial differential equations.

Chapter 9: *Financial Analysis* contains the formulae needed to determine the return on an investment and how to determine an annuity (i.e., the cost of a mortgage). Numerical tables covering common values are included.

Chapter 10: *Miscellaneous* contains details on physical units (definitions and conversions), formulae for date computations, lists of mathematical and electronic resources, and biographies of famous mathematicians.

It has been exciting updating this edition and making it as useful as possible. But it would not have been possible without the loving support of my family, Janet Taylor and Kent Taylor Zwillinger.

Daniel Zwillinger
zwillinger@alum.mit.edu
15 October 2002

Contributors

Karen Bolinger

Clarion University
Clarion, Pennsylvania

Patrick J. Driscoll

U.S. Military Academy
West Point, New York

M. Lawrence Glasser

Clarkson University
Potsdam, New York

Jeff Goldberg

University of Arizona
Tucson, Arizona

Rob Gross

Boston College
Chestnut Hill, Massachusetts

George W. Hart

SUNY Stony Brook
Stony Brook, New York

Melvin Hausner

Courant Institute (NYU)
New York, New York

Victor J. Katz

MAA
Washington, DC

Silvio Levy

MSRI
Berkeley, California

Michael Mascagni

Florida State University
Tallahassee, Florida

Ray McLenaghan

University of Waterloo
Waterloo, Ontario, Canada

John Michaels

SUNY Brockport
Brockport, New York

Roger B. Nelsen

Lewis & Clark College
Portland, Oregon

William C. Rinaman

LeMoyne College
Syracuse, New York

Catherine Roberts

College of the Holy Cross
Worcester, Massachusetts

Joseph J. Rushanan

MITRE Corporation
Bedford, Massachusetts

Les Servi

MIT Lincoln Laboratory
Lexington, Massachusetts

Peter Sherwood

Interactive Technology, Inc.
Newton, Massachusetts

Neil J. A. Sloane

AT&T Bell Labs
Murray Hill, New Jersey

Cole Smith

University of Arizona
Tucson, Arizona

Mike Sousa

Veridian
Ann Arbor, Michigan

Gary L. Stanek

Youngstown State University
Youngstown, Ohio

Michael T. Strauss

HME
Newburyport, Massachusetts

Nico M. Temme

CWI
Amsterdam, The Netherlands

Ahmed I. Zayed

DePaul University
Chicago, Illinois

Table of Contents

Chapter 1

Analysis

*Karen Bolinger, M. Lawrence Glasser, Rob Gross, and
Neil J. A. Sloane*

Chapter 2

Algebra

*Patrick J. Driscoll, Rob Gross, John Michaels, Roger B.
Nelsen, and Brad Wilson*

Chapter 3

Discrete Mathematics

*Jeff Goldberg, Melvin Hausner, Joseph J. Rushanan, Les
Servi, and Cole Smith*

Chapter 4

Geometry

George W. Hart, Silvio Levy, and Ray McLenaghan

Chapter 5

Continuous Mathematics

Ray McLenaghan and Catherine Roberts

Chapter 6

Special Functions

Nico M. Temme and Ahmed I. Zayed

Chapter 7

Probability and Statistics

*Michael Mascagni, William C. Rinaman, Mike Sousa, and
Michael T. Strauss*

Chapter 8

Scientific Computing

Gary Stanek

Chapter 9

Financial Analysis

Daniel Zwillinger

Chapter 10

Miscellaneous

Rob Gross, Victor J. Katz, and Michael T. Strauss

Table of Contents

Chapter 1

Analysis

- 1.1** Constants
- 1.2** Special numbers
- 1.3** Series and products
- 1.4** Fourier series
- 1.5** Complex analysis
- 1.6** Interval analysis
- 1.7** Real analysis
- 1.8** Generalized functions

Chapter 2

Algebra

- 2.1** Proofs without words
- 2.2** Elementary algebra
- 2.3** Polynomials
- 2.4** Number theory
- 2.5** Vector algebra
- 2.6** Linear and matrix algebra
- 2.7** Abstract algebra

Chapter 3

Discrete Mathematics

- 3.1** Symbolic logic
- 3.2** Set theory
- 3.3** Combinatorics
- 3.4** Graphs
- 3.5** Combinatorial design theory
- 3.6** Communication theory
- 3.7** Difference equations
- 3.8** Discrete dynamical systems and chaos
- 3.9** Game theory
- 3.10** Operations research

Chapter 4

Geometry

- 4.1** Coordinate systems in the plane
- 4.2** Plane symmetries or isometries
- 4.3** Other transformations of the plane
- 4.4** Lines

-
- 4.5 Polygons
 - 4.6 Conics
 - 4.7 Special plane curves
 - 4.8 Coordinate systems in space
 - 4.9 Space symmetries or isometries
 - 4.10 Other transformations of space
 - 4.11 Direction angles and direction cosines
 - 4.12 Planes
 - 4.13 Lines in space
 - 4.14 Polyhedra
 - 4.15 Cylinders
 - 4.16 Cones
 - 4.17 Surfaces of revolution: the torus
 - 4.18 Quadrics
 - 4.19 Spherical geometry & trigonometry
 - 4.20 Differential geometry
 - 4.21 Angle conversion
 - 4.22 Knots up to eight crossings

Chapter 5

Continuous Mathematics

- 5.1 Differential calculus
- 5.2 Differential forms
- 5.3 Integration
- 5.4 Table of indefinite integrals
- 5.5 Table of definite integrals
- 5.6 Ordinary differential equations
- 5.7 Partial differential equations
- 5.8 Eigenvalues
- 5.9 Integral equations
- 5.10 Tensor analysis
- 5.11 Orthogonal coordinate systems
- 5.12 Control theory

Chapter 6

Special Functions

- 6.1 Trigonometric or circular functions
- 6.2 Circular functions and planar triangles
- 6.3 Inverse circular functions
- 6.4 Ceiling and floor functions
- 6.5 Exponential function
- 6.6 Logarithmic functions
- 6.7 Hyperbolic functions
- 6.8 Inverse hyperbolic functions
- 6.9 Gudermannian function
- 6.10 Orthogonal polynomials

-
- 6.11 Gamma function
 - 6.12 Beta function
 - 6.13 Error functions
 - 6.14 Fresnel integrals
 - 6.15 Sine, cosine, and exponential integrals
 - 6.16 Polylogarithms
 - 6.17 Hypergeometric functions
 - 6.18 Legendre functions
 - 6.19 Bessel functions
 - 6.20 Elliptic integrals
 - 6.21 Jacobian elliptic functions
 - 6.22 Clebsch–Gordan coefficients
 - 6.23 Integral transforms: Preliminaries
 - 6.24 Fourier transform
 - 6.25 Discrete Fourier transform (DFT)
 - 6.26 Fast Fourier transform (FFT)
 - 6.27 Multidimensional Fourier transform
 - 6.28 Laplace transform
 - 6.29 Hankel transform
 - 6.30 Hartley transform
 - 6.31 Hilbert transform
 - 6.32 Z -Transform
 - 6.33 Tables of transforms

Chapter 7

Probability and Statistics

- 7.1 Probability theory
- 7.2 Classical probability problems
- 7.3 Probability distributions
- 7.4 Queuing theory
- 7.5 Markov chains
- 7.6 Random number generation
- 7.7 Control charts and reliability
- 7.8 Risk analysis and decision rules
- 7.9 Statistics
- 7.10 Confidence intervals
- 7.11 Tests of hypotheses
- 7.12 Linear regression
- 7.13 Analysis of variance (ANOVA)
- 7.14 Probability tables
- 7.15 Signal processing

Chapter 8

Scientific Computing

- 8.1 Basic numerical analysis
- 8.2 Numerical linear algebra

-
- 8.3** Numerical integration and differentiation
 - 8.4** Programming techniques

Chapter 9

Financial Analysis

- 9.1** Financial formulae
- 9.2** Financial tables

Chapter 10

Miscellaneous

- 10.1** Units
- 10.2** Interpretations of powers of 10
- 10.3** Calendar computations
- 10.4** AMS classification scheme
- 10.5** Fields medals
- 10.6** Greek alphabet
- 10.7** Computer languages
- 10.8** Professional mathematical organizations
- 10.9** Electronic mathematical resources
- 10.10** Biographies of mathematicians

List of references

List of Figures

List of notation

List of References

Chapter 1 *Analysis*

1. J. W. Brown and R. V. Churchill, *Complex variables and applications*, 6th edition, McGraw–Hill, New York, 1996.
2. L. B. W. Jolley, *Summation of Series*, Dover Publications, New York, 1961.
3. S. G. Krantz, *Real Analysis and Foundations*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 1991.
4. S. G. Krantz, *The Elements of Advanced Mathematics*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 1995.
5. J. P. Lambert, “Voting Games, Power Indices, and Presidential Elections”, *The UMAP Journal*, Module 690, **9**, No. 3, pages 214–267, 1988.
6. L. D. Servi, “Nested Square Roots of 2”, *American Mathematical Monthly*, to appear in 2003.
7. N. J. A. Sloane and S. Plouffe, *Encyclopedia of Integer Sequences*, Academic Press, New York, 1995.

Chapter 2 *Algebra*

1. C. Caldwell and Y. Gallot, “On the primality of $n! \pm 1$ and $2 \times 3 \times 5 \times \cdots \times p \pm 1$ ”, *Mathematics of Computation*, 71:237, pages 441–448, 2002.
2. I. N. Herstein, *Topics in Algebra*, 2nd edition, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1975.
3. P. Ribenboim, *The book of Prime Number Records*, Springer–Verlag, New York, 1988.
4. G. Strang, *Linear Algebra and Its Applications*, 3rd edition, International Thomson Publishing, 1988.

Chapter 3 *Discrete Mathematics*

1. B. Bollobás, *Graph Theory*, Springer–Verlag, Berlin, 1979.

-
2. C. J. Colbourn and J. H. Dinitz, *Handbook of Combinatorial Designs*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 1996.
 3. F. Glover, “Tabu Search: A Tutorial”, *Interfaces*, 20(4), pages 74–94, 1990.
 4. D. E. Goldberg, *Genetic Algorithms in Search, Optimization, and Machine Learning*, Addison–Wesley, Reading, MA, 1989.
 5. J. Gross, *Handbook of Graph Theory & Applications*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 1999.
 6. D. Luce and H. Raiffa, *Games and Decision Theory*, Wiley, 1957.
 7. F. J. MacWilliams and N. J. A. Sloane, *The Theory of Error-Correcting Codes*, North–Holland, Amsterdam, 1977.
 8. N. Metropolis, A. W. Rosenbluth, M. N. Rosenbluth, A. H. Teller and E. Teller, “Equation of State Calculations by Fast Computing Machines”, *J. Chem. Phys.*, V 21, No. 6, pages 1087–1092, 1953.
 9. K. H. Rosen, *Handbook of Discrete and Combinatorial Mathematics*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 2000.
 10. J. O’Rourke and J. E. Goodman, *Handbook of Discrete and Computational Geometry*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 1997.

Chapter 4 *Geometry*

1. A. Gray, *Modern Differential Geometry of Curves and Surfaces*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 1993.
2. C. Livingston, *Knot Theory*, The Mathematical Association of America, Washington, D.C., 1993.
3. D. J. Struik, *Lectures in Classical Differential Geometry*, 2nd edition, Dover, New York, 1988.

Chapter 5 *Continuous Mathematics*

1. A. G. Butkovskiy, *Green’s Functions and Transfer Functions Handbook*, Halstead Press, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1982.
2. I. S. Gradshteyn and M. Ryzhik, *Tables of Integrals, Series, and Products*, edited by A. Jeffrey and D. Zwillinger, 6th edition, Academic Press, Orlando, Florida, 2000.
3. N. H. Ibragimov, Ed., *CRC Handbook of Lie Group Analysis of Differential Equations*, Volume 1, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 1994.
4. A. J. Jerri, *Introduction to Integral Equations with Applications*, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1985.
5. P. Moon and D. E. Spencer, *Field Theory Handbook*, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1961.
6. A. D. Polyanin and V. F. Zaitsev, *Handbook of Exact Solution for Ordinary Differential Equations*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 1995.

-
7. J. A. Schouten, *Ricci-Calculus*, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1954.
 8. J. L. Synge and A. Schild, *Tensor Calculus*, University of Toronto Press, Toronto, 1949.
 9. D. Zwillinger, *Handbook of Differential Equations*, 3rd ed., Academic Press, New York, 1997.
 10. D. Zwillinger, *Handbook of Integration*, A. K. Peters, Boston, 1992.

Chapter 6 *Special Functions*

1. Staff of the Bateman Manuscript Project, A. Erdélyi, Ed., *Tables of Integral Transforms*, in 3 volumes, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1954.
2. I. S. Gradshteyn and M. Ryzhik, *Tables of Integrals, Series, and Products*, edited by A. Jeffrey and D. Zwillinger, 6th edition, Academic Press, Orlando, Florida, 2000.
3. W. Magnus, F. Oberhettinger, and R. P. Soni, *Formulas and Theorems for the Special Functions of Mathematical Physics*, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1966.
4. N. I. A. Vilenkin, *Special Functions and the Theory of Group Representations*, American Mathematical Society, Providence, RI, 1968.

Chapter 7 *Probability and Statistics*

1. I. Daubechies, *Ten Lectures on Wavelets*, SIAM Press, Philadelphia, 1992.
2. W. Feller, *An Introduction to Probability Theory and Its Applications*, Volume 1, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1968.
3. J. Keilson and L. D. Servi, “The Distributional Form of Little’s Law and the Fuhrmann-Cooper Decomposition”, *Operations Research Letters*, Volume 9, pages 237–247, 1990.
4. *Military Standard 105 D*, U.S. Government Printing Of ce, Washington, D.C., 1963.
5. S. K. Park and K. W. Miller, “Random number generators: good ones are hard to nd”, *Comm. ACM*, October 1988, 31, 10, pages 1192–1201.
6. G. Strang and T. Nguyen, *Wavelets and Filter Banks*, Wellesley-Cambridge Press, Wellesley, MA, 1995.
7. D. Zwillinger and S. Kokoska, *Standard Probability and Statistics Tables and Formulae*, Chapman & Hall/CRC, Boca Raton, Florida, 2000.

Chapter 8 *Scientific Computing*

1. R. L. Burden and J. D. Faires, *Numerical Analysis*, 7th edition, Brooks/Cole, Pacific Grove, CA, 2001.
2. G. H. Golub and C. F. Van Loan, *Matrix Computations*, 2nd ed., The Johns Hopkins Press, Baltimore, 1989.

-
3. W. H. Press, S. A. Teukolsky, W. T. Vetterling, and B. P. Flannery, *Numerical Recipes in C++: The Art of Scientific Computing*, 2nd edition, Cambridge University Press, New York, 2002.
 4. A. Ralston and P. Rabinowitz, *A First Course in Numerical Analysis*, 2nd edition, McGraw–Hill, New York, 1978.
 5. R. Rubinstein, *Simulation and the Monte Carlo Method*, Wiley, New York, 1981.

Chapter 10 *Miscellaneous*

1. American Mathematical Society, *Mathematical Sciences Professional Directory*, Providence, 1995.
2. E. T. Bell, *Men of Mathematics*, Dover, New York, 1945.
3. C. C. Gillispie, Ed., *Dictionary of Scientific Biography*, Scribners, New York, 1970–1990.
4. H. S. Tropp, “The Origins and History of the Fields Medal”, *Historia Mathematica*, 3, pages 167–181, 1976.
5. E. W. Weisstein, *CRC Concise Encyclopedia of Mathematics*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 1999.

List of Figures

- 2.1 Depiction of right-hand rule

- 3.1 Hasse diagrams
- 3.2 Three graphs that are isomorphic
- 3.3 Examples of graphs with 6 or 7 vertices
- 3.4 Trees with 7 or fewer vertices
- 3.5 Trees with 8 vertices
- 3.6 Julia sets
- 3.7 The Mandelbrot set
- 3.8 Directed network modeling a flow problem

- 4.1 Change of coordinates by a rotation
- 4.2 Cartesian coordinates: the 4 quadrants
- 4.3 Polar coordinates
- 4.4 Homogeneous coordinates
- 4.5 Oblique coordinates
- 4.6 A shear with factor $r = \frac{1}{2}$
- 4.7 A perspective transformation
- 4.8 The normal form of a line
- 4.9 Simple polygons
- 4.10 Notation for a triangle
- 4.11 Triangles: isosceles and right
- 4.12 Ceva's theorem and Menelaus's theorem
- 4.13 Quadrilaterals
- 4.14 Conics: ellipse, parabola, and hyperbola
- 4.15 Conics as a function of eccentricity
- 4.16 Ellipse and components
- 4.17 Hyperbola and components
- 4.18 Arc of a circle
- 4.19 Angles within a circle
- 4.20 The general cubic parabola
- 4.21 Curves: semi-cubic parabola, cissoid of Diocles, witch of Agnesi
- 4.22 The folium of Descartes in two positions, and the strophoid

-
- 4.23 Cassini's ovals
 - 4.24 The conchoid of Nichomedes
 - 4.25 The limaçon of Pascal
 - 4.26 Cycloid and trochoids
 - 4.27 Epicycloids: nephroid, and epicycloid
 - 4.28 Hypocycloids: deltoid and astroid
 - 4.29 Spirals: Bernoulli, Archimedes, and Cornu
 - 4.30 Cartesian coordinates in space
 - 4.31 Cylindrical coordinates
 - 4.32 Spherical coordinates
 - 4.33 Relations between Cartesian, cylindrical, and spherical coordinates
 - 4.34 Euler angles
 - 4.35 The Platonic solids
 - 4.36 Cylinders: oblique and right circular
 - 4.37 Right circular cone and frustrum
 - 4.38 A torus of revolution
 - 4.39 The ve nondegenerate real quadrics
 - 4.40 Spherical cap, zone, and segment
 - 4.41 Right spherical triangle and Napier's rule

 - 5.1 Types of critical points

 - 6.1 Notation for trigonometric functions
 - 6.2 Definitions of angles
 - 6.3 Sine and cosine
 - 6.4 Tangent and cotangent
 - 6.5 Different triangles requiring solution
 - 6.6 Graphs of $\Gamma(x)$ and $1/\Gamma(x)$
 - 6.7 Cornu spiral
 - 6.8 Sine and cosine integrals $\text{Si}(x)$ and $\text{Ci}(x)$
 - 6.9 Legendre functions
 - 6.10 Graphs of the Airy functions $\text{Ai}(x)$ and $\text{Bi}(x)$

 - 7.1 Approximation to binomial distributions
 - 7.2 Conceptual layout of a queue
 - 7.3 Sample size code letters for MIL-STD-105 D
 - 7.4 Master table for single sampling inspection (normal inspection)
 - 7.5 Area of a normal random variable
 - 7.6 Illustration of σ and 2σ regions of a normal distribution

 - 8.1 Illustration of Newton's method
 - 8.2 Formulae for integration rules with various weight functions
 - 8.3 Illustration of the Monte-Carlo method

List of Notation

*Page numbers listed do not match PDF page numbers due to deletion of blank pages.

Symbols

| | | | | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|----------|-------------------------------|--|----------|
| ! | factorial | 17 | ∂ | partial differentiation | 386 |
| !! | double factorial | 17 | C^\perp | dual code to C | 257 |
| , | tensor differentiation | 484 | \preceq | partial order | 204 |
| ; | tensor differentiation | 484 | \prod | product symbol | 47 |
| $\langle a \rangle$ | cyclic subgroup generated by a | 162 | \sum | summation symbol | 31 |
| A' | set complement | 203 | \emptyset | empty set | 202 |
| ' | derivative, rst | 386 | \sim | | |
| '' | derivative, second | 386 | | asymptotic relation | 75 |
| $\lceil \cdot \rceil$ | ceiling function | 520 | | logical not | 199 |
| $\lfloor \cdot \rfloor$ | floor function | 520 | | vertex similarity | 226 |
| $\left\{ \begin{matrix} n \\ k \end{matrix} \right\}$ | Stirling subset numbers | 213 | \vee | | |
| \aleph_0 | aleph null | 204 | | logical or | 199 |
| \forall | universal quantifier | 201 | | pseudoscalar product | 467 |
| \uparrow | arrow notation | 4 | \wedge | | |
| \leftrightarrow | if and only if | 199 | | graph conjunction | 228 |
| \Rightarrow | implies | 199 | | logical and | 199 |
| \rightarrow | logical implication | 199 | | wedge product | 395 |
| \cap | set intersection | 203 | ∇ | | |
| \cup | | | | $\nabla \cdot$ divergence | 493 |
| | graph edge sum | 228 | | $\nabla \times$ curl | 493 |
| | graph union | 229 | | ∇^2 Laplacian | 493 |
| | set union | 203 | | backward difference | 736 |
| \cong | group isomorphism | 170, 225 | | gradient | 390, 493 |
| \equiv | congruence | 94 | | linear connection | 484 |
| \exists | existential quantifier | 201 | $\llbracket \cdot \rrbracket$ | | |
| \hbar | Planck constant over 2π | 794 | | $G_1[G_2]$ graph composition | 228 |
| ∞ | infinity | 68 | | $[\cdot, \cdot]$ commutator | 155, 467 |
| \int | | | | $[\mathbf{uvw}]$ scalar triple product | 136 |
| | \int_a^b definite integral | 399 | | $[a_0, \dots, a_n]$ continued fraction | 96 |
| | \oint integral around closed path | 399 | | $[jk, \ell]$ Christoffel symbol, rst kind | 487 |
| | integration symbol | 399 | | $\left[\begin{matrix} n \\ k \end{matrix} \right]$ Stirling cycle numbers | 212 |
| a^n | falling factorial | 17 | | | |
| \neg | logical not | 199 | | | |

| | | | |
|-------------------|---|-----------|--|
| () | (S, \preceq) poset notation 205 | * | *2222 crystallographic group . . 310 |
| | (a) _{n} shifted factorial 17 | | *333 crystallographic group . . . 311 |
| | (r, s, w) type of tensor 483 | | *442 crystallographic group . . . 310 |
| | (v, k, λ) design nomenclature . 245 | | *632 crystallographic group . . . 311 |
| | (x, y, z) point in three-dimensional space 345 | | ** crystallographic group 309 |
| | ($x : y : t$) homogeneous coordinates 303 | | binary operation 160 |
| | ($x : y : z : t$) homogeneous coordinates 348 | | convolution operation 579 |
| | $\begin{pmatrix} j_1 & j_2 & j \\ m_1 & m_2 & m \end{pmatrix}$ Clebsch–Gordan coef cient 574 | \times | dual of a tensor 489 |
| | $\binom{n}{m}$ binomial coef cient 208 | | group operation 161 |
| | $\binom{n}{n_1, n_2, \dots, n_k}$ multinomial coef cient 209 | | re ction 307 |
| | $\left(\frac{a}{n}\right)$ Jacobi symbol 94 | | a \times b vector cross product 135 |
| | $\left(\frac{a}{p}\right)$ Legendre symbol 94 | | \times^* crystallographic group 309 |
| | (iv) fourth derivative 386 | | $\times \times$ crystallographic group 309 |
| | (n) n^{th} derivative 386 | | glide-re ction 307 |
| | (v) v^{th} derivative 386 | | graph product 228 |
| $\overline{(\)}$ | | \otimes | group operation 161 |
| | $\overline{(\)}_\alpha$ α trimmed mean 659 | | product 66 |
| | arithmetic mean 659 | | Kronecker product 159 |
| | complex conjugate 54 | | symmetric difference 203 |
| | set complement 203 | \oplus | |
| | divisibility 93 | | exclusive or 645 |
| | | | factored graph 224 |
| | determinant of a matrix 144 | | graph edge sum 228 |
| | graph order 226 | | Kronecker sum 160 |
| | norm 133 | $+$ | |
| | order of algebraic structure . . . 160 | | $b_0 + \frac{a_1}{b_1 +} \frac{a_2}{b_2 +} \frac{a_3}{b_3 +} \dots$ continued fraction 97 |
| | polynomial norm 91 | | graph join 228 |
| | used in tensor notation 487 | | group operation 161 |
| | | | pseudo-inverse operator . . 149, 151 |
| | ₁ L_1 norm 133 | | vector addition 132 |
| | ₂ L_2 norm 133 | | |
| | _F Frobenius norm 146 | | |
| | _{∞} in nity norm 133 | | |
| | norm 91, 133 | | |
| . | | | |
| | a \cdot b vector inner product 133 | Δ | $\Delta(G)$ maximum vertex degree 223 |
| | group operation 161 | | Δ_C arg $f(z)$ change in the argument 58 |
| | inner product 132 | | forward difference 265, 728 |
| . | | | Laplacian 493 |
| o | | Γ | |
| | crystallographic group . . . 309, 311 | | $\Gamma(x)$ gamma function 540 |
| | degrees in an angle 503 | | Γ^i_{jk} Christoffel symbol of second kind 487 |
| | function composition 67 | | connection coef cients 484 |
| | temperature degrees 798 | Ω | |
| | translation 307 | | asymptotic function 75 |
| | | | ohm 792 |

Greek Letters

| | | | | |
|---|---------------|----------|---|----------|
| $\Phi(x)$ normal distribution function . . . | 634 | μ | $\mu(n)$ Möbius function | 102 |
| Θ asymptotic function | 75 | | μ_k centered moments | 620 |
| $\Upsilon(G)$ graph arboricity | 220 | | μ'_k moments | 620 |
| α | | | μ_p MTBF for parallel system . . | 655 |
| $\alpha(G)$ graph independence number | 225 | | μ_s MTBF for series system . . | 655 |
| $\alpha(k)$ function, related to zeta | | | average service rate | 638 |
| function | 23 | | mean | 620 |
| one minus the con dence | | ν | $\bar{\nu}(G)$ rectilinear graph crossing | |
| coef cient | 666 | | number | 222 |
| probability of type I error | 661 | | $\nu(G)$ graph crossing number . . | 222 |
| β | | | $\omega(G)$ size of the largest clique | 221 |
| β probability of type II error . . | 661 | | ϕ | |
| $\beta(k)$ function, related to zeta | | | $\phi(n)$ totient function | 128, 169 |
| function | 23 | | $\phi(t)$ characteristic function . . . | 620 |
| χ | | | Euler constant | 21 |
| $\chi'(G)$ chromatic index | 221 | | golden ratio | |
| $\chi(G)$ chromatic number | 221 | | de ned | 16 |
| χ^2 -distribution | 703 | | value | 16 |
| χ^2_α critical value | 696 | | incidence mapping | 219 |
| χ^2_n chi-square distributed | 619 | | zenith | 346 |
| δ | | π | $\pi(x)$ | |
| $\delta(G)$ minimum vertex degree . . | 223 | | prime counting function | 103 |
| $\delta(x)$ delta function | 76 | | probability distribution | 640 |
| δ_{ij} Kronecker delta | 483 | | constants containing | 14 |
| designed distance | 257 | | continued fraction | 97 |
| Feigenbaum's constant | 272 | | distribution of digits | 15 |
| $\epsilon_{i_1, \dots, i_n}$ Levi-Civita symbol | 489 | | identities | 14 |
| η | | | number | 13 |
| η power of a test | 661 | | in different bases | 16 |
| $\eta(x, y)$ component of in nitesimal | | | permutation | 172 |
| generator | 466 | | sums involving | 24 |
| γ | | | $\psi(z)$ logarithmic derivative of the | |
| γ Euler's constant | | | gamma function | 543 |
| de nition | 15 | ρ | ρ | |
| in different bases | 16 | | $\rho(A)$ spectral radius | 154 |
| value | 16 | | $\rho(s)$ radius of curvature | 374 |
| $\gamma(G)$ graph genus | 224 | | ρ_{ij} correlation coef cient | 622 |
| $\gamma(k)$ function, related to zeta | | | server utilization | 638 |
| function | 23 | σ | σ standard deviation | 620 |
| γ_1 skewness | 620 | | $\sigma(n)$ sum of divisors | 128 |
| γ_2 excess | 620 | | σ^2 variance | 620 |
| κ | | | σ_i singular value of a matrix . . | 152 |
| $\kappa(G)$ connectivity | 222 | | $\sigma_k(n)$ sum of k^{th} powers of divisors | |
| $\kappa(s)$ curvature | 374 | | 128 | |
| κ_n cumulant | 620 | | σ_{ii} variance | 622 |
| λ | | | σ_{ij} covariance | 622 |
| $\lambda(G)$ edge connectivity | 223 | | | |
| average arrival rate | 638 | | | |
| eigenvalue | 152, 477, 478 | | | |
| number of blocks | 241 | | | |

| | | |
|------------|--|-----|
| τ | τ Ramanujan function | 31 |
| | $\tau(n)$ number of divisors | 128 |
| | $\tau(s)$ torsion | 374 |
| θ | $\theta(G)$ graph thickness | 227 |
| | angle in polar coordinates | 302 |
| | argument of a complex number | 53 |
| | azimuth | 346 |
| ξ | $\xi(x, y)$ component of infinitesimal generator | 466 |
| | ξ_p quantile of order p | 659 |
| $\zeta(k)$ | Riemann zeta function | 23 |

Numbers

| | | |
|-----------|--|------------|
| $()^{-1}$ | group inverse | 161 |
| $()^{-1}$ | matrix inverse | 138 |
| 0 | null vector | 137 |
| 1 | | |
| | 1, group identity | 161 |
| | 1-form | 395 |
| | 10, powers of | 6, 13, 798 |
| | 105 D standard | 652 |
| | 16, powers of | 12 |
| | 17 crystallographic groups | 307 |
| 2 | | |
| | 2^A power set of A | 203 |
| | 2^*22 crystallographic group | 310 |
| | 2, negative powers of | 10 |
| | 2, powers of | 6, 10, 27 |
| | 2-($v,3,1$) Steiner triple system | 249 |
| | 2-form | 396 |
| | 2-sphere | 491 |
| | 2-switch | 227 |
| | 22^* crystallographic group | 309 |
| | 22^x crystallographic group | 309 |
| | 2222 crystallographic group | 310 |
| | 230 crystallographic groups, three-dimensional | 307 |
| 3 | | |
| | 3^*3 crystallographic group | 311 |
| | 3, powers of | 29 |
| | 3-design (Hadamard matrices) | 250 |
| | 3-form | 397 |
| | 3-sphere | 491 |
| | 333 crystallographic group | 311 |
| | 360, degrees in a circle | 503 |

| | | |
|----------|---|-----|
| 4 | | |
| | 4^*2 crystallographic group | 310 |
| | 4, powers of | 30 |
| | 442 crystallographic group | 310 |
| 5 | | |
| | 5, powers of | 30 |
| | 5-(12,6,1) table | 244 |
| | 5-design, Mathieu | 244 |
| | 632 crystallographic group | 311 |

Roman Letters

A

| | | |
|----------|---|----------|
| A | | |
| | A interarrival time | 637 |
| | $A(n, d)$ number of codewords | 259 |
| | $A(T)$ skew symmetric part of a tensor | 484 |
| | A ampere | 792 |
| $A_{()}$ | | |
| | A_4 alternating group on 4 elements | 188 |
| | A_k radius of circumscribed circle | 324 |
| | A_n alternating group | 163, 172 |
| | $A/B/c/K/m/Z$ queue | 637 |
| | $Ai(z)$ Airy function | 465, 565 |
| | ALFS additive lagged-Fibonacci sequence | 646 |
| | AMS American Mathematical Society | 801 |
| | ANOVA analysis of variance | 686 |
| | AOQ average outgoing quality | 652 |
| | AOQL average outgoing quality limit | 652 |
| | AQL acceptable quality level | 652 |
| | $AR(k)$ autoregressive model | 718 |
| | $ARMA(k, l)$ mixed model | 719 |
| | $Aut(G)$ graph automorphism group | 220 |
| $a_{()}$ | | |
| | a_i unit vector | 492 |
| | a_n Fourier coefficients | 48 |
| | a_n proportion of customers | 637 |
| | <i>a.e.</i> almost everywhere | 74 |
| | am amplitude | 572 |
| | arg argument | 53 |

B

B

B amount borrowed 779
B service time 637
B(*p*, *q*) beta function 544
B set of blocks 241

B(_⊂)

B_n Bell number 211
B_n Bernoulli number 19
B_n a block 241
B_n(*x*) Bernoulli polynomial ... 19

B.C.E (before the common era, B.C.) 810

BFS basic feasible solution 283

Bi(*z*) Airy function 465, 565

BIBD balanced incomplete block design
 245

Bq becquerel 792

b unit binormal vector 374

C

C

C channel capacity 255
C(*n*, *r*) *r*-combination ... 206, 215
C(*x*) Fresnel integral 547
C^R(*n*, *r*) combinations with
 replacement 206

© complex numbers 3, 167

©^{*n*} complex *n* element vectors 131

ℒ integration contour 399, 404

C coulomb 792

C Roman numeral (100) 4

C(_⊂)

*C*₂ cyclic group of order 2 178
*C*₂ × *C*₂ × *C*₂ direct group product
 181

*C*₃ cyclic group of order 3 178
*C*₃ × *C*₃ direct group product . 184

*C*₄ cyclic group of order 4 178
*C*₄ × *C*₂ direct group product . 181

*C*₅ cyclic group of order 5 179

*C*₆ cyclic group of order 6 179

*C*₇ cyclic group of order 7 180

*C*₈ cyclic group of order 8 180

*C*₉ cyclic group of order 9 184

C_n Catalan numbers 212

C_n cycle graph 229

C_n cyclic group 172

*C*₁₀ cyclic group of order 10 .. 185

C.E. (common era, A.D.) 810

Ci(*z*) cosine integral 549

c

c cardinality of real numbers .. 204
c number of identical servers .. 637
c speed of light 794

cas combination of sin and cos 591

cd candela 792

cm crystallographic group 309

cmm crystallographic group 310

c_n Fourier coefficients 50

cn(*u*, *k*) elliptic function 572

cof_{*i**j*}(*A*) cofactor of matrix *A* 145

cond(*A*) condition number 148

cos trigonometric function 505

cosh hyperbolic function 524

cot trigonometric function 505

coth hyperbolic function 524

covers trigonometric function 505

csc trigonometric function 505

csch hyperbolic function 524

cyc number of cycles 172

D

D

D constant service time 637

D diagonal matrix 138

D differentiation operator 456, 466

D Roman numeral (500) 4

D(_⊂)

*D*₄ dihedral group of order 8 .. 182

*D*₅ dihedral group of order 10 . 185

*D*₆ dihedral group of order 12 . 186

D_f region of convergence 595

D_n derangement 210

D_n dihedral group 163, 172

DFT discrete Fourier transform 582

DLG(*n*; *a*, *b*) double loop graph 230

d

d(*u*, *v*) distance between vertices
 223

derivative operator 386

exterior derivative 397

minimum distance 256

d(_⊂)

d_n proportion of customers 637

d_H(**u**, **v**) Hamming distance ... 256

dx_k(**a**) projection 395

det(*A*) determinant of matrix *A* 144

diam(*G*) graph diameter 223

div divergence 493

dn(*u*, *k*) elliptic function 572

dS differential surface area 405
 dV differential volume 405
 dx fundamental differential 377

E

E

E edge set 219
 E event 617
 $E(u, v)$ rst fundamental metric
 coef cient 377
 $E[\cdot]$ expectation operator 619

$E(\cdot)$

E_k Erlang- k service time 637
 E_n Euler numbers 20
 $E_n(x)$ Euler polynomial 20
 $E_n(x)$ exponential integral 550
 E_p identity group 172
 E_{ij} elementary matrix 138

Ei exbi 6
 e

e algebraic identity 161
 e charge of electron 794
 e constants containing 15
 e continued fraction 97
 e de nition 15
 e eccentricity 325
 e in different bases 16
 $e(u, v)$ second fundamental metric
 coef cient 377

$e(\cdot)$

e vector of ones 137
 e_i unit vector 137
 e_{i_1, \dots, i_n} permutation symbol ... 489

$\text{ecc}(v)$ eccentricity of a vertex 223
 erf error function 545
 erfc complementary error function .. 545
 exsec trigonometric function 505

F

F

$F(u, v)$ rst fundamental metric
 coef cient 377
 $F(x)$ Dawson's integral 546
 $F(x)$ probability distribution
 function 619
 \mathcal{F} Fourier transform 576
 $F(a, b; c; z)$ hypergeometric
 function 553
 $\hat{F}(x)$ sample distribution function
 658

F farad 792

$F(\cdot)$

F_n Fibonacci numbers 21
 F_α critical value 696
 F_{p^n} Galois eld 169
 F_c Fourier cosine transform ... 582
 F_s Fourier sine transform 582
 \mathcal{F}_N discrete Fourier transform . 582
 ${}_pF_q$ hypergeometric function ... 36

FCFS rst come, rst served 637

FFT fast Fourier transform 584

FIFO rst in, rst out 637

f

$\hat{f}(x)$ sample density function .. 658
 $f(u, v)$ second fundamental metric
 coef cient 377
 $f(x)$ probability density function
 619

$f_{X(t)}$ density function 467

G

G

G Green's function 471
 G general service time distribution
 637

G generating matrix 256

G graph 219

G gravitational constant 794

G primitive root 195

$G(k)$ Waring's problem 100

$G(s)$ generating function 620

$G(u, v)$ rst fundamental metric
 coef cient 377

$G(x; z)$ Green's function 463

$G[x_n]$ generating function 268

\mathbf{G} Catalan constant 23

$G_{n,m}$ isomorphism classes 241

GCD greatest common divisor 101

$GF(p^n)$ Galois eld 169

GI general interarrival time 637

Gi gibi 6

$GL(n, \mathbb{C})$ matrix group 171

$GL(n, \mathbb{R})$ matrix group 171

G.M. geometric mean 659

Gy gray 792

$\text{gir}(\cdot)G$ graph girth 224

g

g determinant of the metric tensor
 489

g metric tensor 487

| | |
|-------------------------------|-----|
| g primitive root | 195 |
| $g(k)$ Waring's problem | 100 |
| $g(x)$ generating polynomial | 256 |
| gd function | 530 |
| gd x Gudermannian function | 530 |
| g^{ij} covariant metric | 486 |
| g_{ij} contravariant metric | 486 |
| glb greatest lower bound | 68 |

H

| | |
|--|----------|
| H | |
| H mean curvature | 377 |
| H parity check matrix | 256 |
| $H(\mathbf{p}_X)$ entropy | 253 |
| $H(x)$ Haar wavelet | 723 |
| $H(x)$ Heaviside function | 77, 408 |
| \mathcal{H} Hilbert transform | 591 |
| H Hermitian conjugate | 138 |
| H henry | 792 |
| $H_{()}$ | |
| H_0 null hypothesis | 661 |
| H_1 alternative hypothesis | 661 |
| $H_\nu^{(1)}$ Hankel function | 559 |
| $H_\nu^{(2)}$ Hankel function | 559 |
| H_k k -stage hyperexponential service time | 637 |
| H_n harmonic numbers | 32 |
| $H_n(x)$ Hermite polynomials | 532 |
| \mathcal{H}_ν Hankel transform | 589 |
| H.M. harmonic mean | 660 |
| Hz hertz | 792 |
| hav trigonometric function | 372, 505 |
| h_i metric coefficients | 492 |

I

| | |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| I | |
| I first fundamental form | 377 |
| I identity matrix | 138 |
| $I(X, Y)$ mutual information | 254 |
| I Roman numeral (1) | 4 |
| ICG inversive congruential generator | 646 |
| II second fundamental form | 377 |
| Im imaginary part of a complex number | 53 |
| I_n identity matrix | 138 |
| Inv number of invariant elements | 172 |
| IVP initial-value problem | 265 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| i | |
| $\hat{\mathbf{i}}$ unit vector | 494 |
| $\hat{\mathbf{i}}$ unit vector | 135 |
| i imaginary unit | 53 |
| i interest rate | 779 |
| iid independent and identically distributed | 619 |
| inf greatest lower bound | 68 |
| in mum greatest lower bound | 68 |

J

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| J | |
| J Jordan form | 154 |
| J joule | 792 |
| j | |
| $\hat{\mathbf{j}}$ unit vector | 494 |
| $\hat{\mathbf{j}}$ unit vector | 135 |
| $J_{()}$ | |
| $J_\nu(z)$ Bessel function | 559 |
| J_c Julia set | 273 |
| $j_{()}$ | |
| $j_n(z)$ half order Bessel function | 563 |
| $j_{\nu,k}$ zero of Bessel function | 563 |

K

| | |
|---|-----|
| K | |
| K Gaussian curvature | 377 |
| K system capacity | 637 |
| K Kelvin (degrees) | 792 |
| $K_{()}$ | |
| K_n complete graph | 229 |
| $K_{m,n}$ complete bipartite graph | 230 |
| K_{n_1, \dots, n_k} complete multipartite graph | 230 |
| \overline{K}_n empty graph | 229 |
| Ki kibi | 6 |
| k | |
| \mathbf{k} curvature vector | 374 |
| \mathbf{k} unit vector | 494 |
| $\hat{\mathbf{k}}$ unit vector | 135 |
| k Boltzmann constant | 794 |
| k dimension of a code | 258 |
| $k(x, t)$ kernel | 478 |
| $k_{()}$ | |
| \mathbf{k}_g geodesic curvature | 377 |
| \mathbf{k}_n normal curvature vector | 377 |
| k_j block size | 241 |
| kg kilogram | 792 |

L

L

| | |
|--|---------|
| L average number of customers | 638 |
| L period | 48 |
| $L(\theta)$ expected loss function | 656 |
| \mathcal{L} Laplace transform | 585 |
| L length | 796 |
| L Roman numeral (50) | 4 |
| $L_{()}$ | |
| L_1 norm | 133 |
| L_2 norm | 133 |
| L_Q average number of customers | 638 |
| L_p norm | 73 |
| L_r Lie group | 466 |
| L_∞ space of measurable functions | 73 |
| LCG linear congruential generator | 644 |
| LCL lower control limit | 650 |
| LCM least common multiple | 101 |
| $Li_1(z)$ logarithm | 551 |
| $Li_2(z)$ dilogarithm | 551 |
| LIFO last in, rst out | 637 |
| $Li_n(z)$ polylogarithm | 551 |
| $li(x)$ logarithmic integral | 550 |
| LP linear programming | 280 |
| LTPD lot tolerance percent defective | 652 |
| $\ell(\theta, a)$ loss function | 656 |
| lim limits | 70, 385 |
| liminf limit inferior | 70 |
| limsup limit superior | 70 |
| lm lumen | 792 |
| ln logarithmic function | 522 |
| log logarithmic function | 522 |
| \log_b logarithm to base b | 522 |
| lub least upper bound | 68 |
| lux lux | 792 |

M

M

| | |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| M Mandelbrot set | 273 |
| M exponential service time | 637 |
| M number of codewords | 258 |
| $M(P)$ measure of a polynomial | 93 |
| \mathcal{M} Mellin transform | 612 |
| M mass | 796 |
| M Roman numeral (1000) | 4 |
| MA(l) moving average | 719 |
| M.D. mean deviation | 660 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| MFLG multiplicative lagged-Fibonacci generator | 646 |
| $M/G/1$ queue | 639 |
| $M/G/c/c$ queue | 639 |
| $M/G/\infty$ queue | 639 |
| Mi mebi | 6 |
| MLE maximum likelihood estimator | 662 |
| $M/M/1$ queue | 638 |
| $M/M/c$ queue | 639 |
| M_n Möbius ladder graph | 229 |
| MOLS mutually orthogonal Latin squares | 251 |
| MOM method of moments | 662 |
| MTBF mean time between failures | 655 |
| m | |
| m mortgage amount | 779 |
| m number in the source | 637 |
| m meter | 792 |
| mid midrange | 660 |
| mod modular arithmetic | 94 |
| mol mole | 792 |

N

N

| | |
|--|-----|
| N number of zeros | 58 |
| $N(A)$ null space | 149 |
| $N(\mu, \sigma)$ normal random variable | 619 |
| N unit normal vector | 378 |
| \mathcal{N} normal vector | 377 |
| \mathbb{N} natural numbers | 3 |
| N newton | 792 |
| $N_q(n)$ number of monic irreducible polynomials | 261 |
| n | |
| \mathbf{n} principal normal unit vector | 374 |
| $\hat{\mathbf{n}}$ unit normal vector | 135 |
| n code length | 258 |
| n number of time periods | 779 |
| n order of a plane | 248 |

O

| | |
|-------------------------|-----|
| O asymptotic function | 75 |
| $O(n)$ matrix group | 171 |
| O_n odd graph | 229 |
| o asymptotic function | 75 |

P

P

- P number of poles 58
- P principal 779
- $P(B | A)$ conditional probability
617
- $P(E)$ probability of event E .. 617
- $P(\nu, z)$ auxiliary function 561
- $P(m, r)$ r -permutation 215
- $P(n, r)$ r -permutation 206
- $P(x, y)$ Markov transition function
640
- $P\{ \}$ Riemann P function 465
- $P_{()}$
 - $P_G(x)$ chromatic polynomial .. 221
 - P_n path (type of graph) 229
 - $P_n(x)$ Lagrange interpolating
polynomial 733
 - $P_n(x)$ Legendre function 465
 - $P_n(x)$ Legendre polynomials .. 534
 - $P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x)$ Jacobi polynomials .533
 - $P_\nu(z)$ Legendre function 554
 - $P_\nu^\mu(x)$ associated Legendre
functions 557
- Pa pascal 792
- $\text{Per}(x_n)$ period of a sequence 644
- Pi pebi 6
- PID principal ideal domain 165
- $P^n(x, y)$ n -step Markov transition
matrix 641
- $P^R(n, r)$ permutations with replacement
206
- PRI priority service 637
- PRNG pseudorandom number generator
644
- p
 - $p(n)$ partitions 210
 - $p\#$ product of prime numbers . 106
- p1 crystallographic group 309, 311
- p2 crystallographic group 310
- p3 crystallographic group 311
- p31m crystallographic group 311
- p3m1 crystallographic group 311
- p4 crystallographic group 310
- p4g crystallographic group 310
- p4m crystallographic group 310
- p6 crystallographic group 311
- p6m crystallographic group 311
- per permanent 145
- pg crystallographic group 309

- pgg crystallographic group 309
- pm crystallographic group 309
- pmg crystallographic group 309
- pmm crystallographic group 310

$P_{()}$

- $\mathbf{p}_{X \times Y}$ joint probability distribution
254
- p_k discrete probability 619
- $p_k(n)$ partitions 207
- $p_m(n)$ restricted partitions 210
- p_n proportion of time 638

Q

Q

- Q quaternion group 182
- $Q(\nu, z)$ auxiliary function 561
- \mathbb{Q} rational numbers 3, 167
- $Q_{()}$
 - Q_n cube (type of graph) 229
 - $Q_n(x)$ Legendre function 465
 - $Q_\nu(z)$ Legendre function 554
- $Q_\nu^\mu(x)$ associated Legendre functions
557
- q nome 574

R

R

- R Ricci tensor 485, 488
- R Riemann tensor 488
- R curvature tensor 485
- R radius (circumscribed circle) 319,
513
- R range 650
- R rate of a code 255
- $R(A)$ range space 149
- $R(\theta, d_i)$ risk function 657
- $R(t)$ reliability function 655
- \mathbb{R} continuity in 71
- \mathbb{R} convergence in 70
- \mathbb{R} real numbers 3, 167
- $R_{()}$
 - R_i reliability of a component .. 653
 - R_p reliability of parallel system 653
 - R_s reliability of series system . 653
 - R_\oplus radius of the earth 372
- \mathbb{R}^n real n element vectors 131
- $\mathbb{R}^{n \times m}$ real $n \times m$ matrices 137
- Re real part of a complex number 53
- R.M.S. root mean square 660

RSS random service 637
r
r distance in polar coordinates . 302
r modulus of a complex number 53
r radius (inscribed circle) . 318, 512
r shearing factor 352
r(θ , a) regret function 658
 $\text{rad}(\cdot)G$ radius of graph 226
rad radian 792
 r_i replication number 241
 $r_k(x)$ Rademacher functions 722

S

S
S sample space 617
S torsion tensor 485
S(x) Fresnel integral 547
 S_n symmetric group 163
 $S(n, k)$ Stirling number second
kind 213
 $\mathcal{S}(T)$ symmetric part of a tensor
484
S siemen 792
 $S_{(\cdot)}$
 S_3 symmetric group 180
 S_k area of inscribed polygon .. 324
 S_n star (type of graph) 229
 S_n symmetric group 172
 $S_n(r)$ surface area of a sphere . 368
SA simulated annealing 291
SI Systeme Internationale d'Unites .. 792
 $\text{Si}(z)$ sine integral 549
 $SL(n, \mathbb{C})$ matrix group 171
 $SL(n, \mathbb{R})$ matrix group 171
 $SO(2)$ matrix group 172
 $SO(n)$ matrix group 172
SPRT sequential probability ratio test 681
SRS shift-register sequence 645
STS Steiner triple system 249
 $SU(n)$ matrix group 172
SVD singular value decomposition .. 156

s
 $s(n, k)$ Stirling number rst kind
213
s arc length parameter 373
s sample standard deviation ... 660
s semi-perimeter 512
s second 792

$s_{(\cdot)}$
 s_k area of circumscribed polygon
324
 s_k elementary symmetric functions
84
sec trigonometric function 505
sech hyperbolic function 524
sgn signum function 77, 144
sin trigonometric function 505
sinh hyperbolic function 524
 $\text{sn}(u, k)$ elliptic function 572
sr steradian 792
sup least upper bound 68
supremum least upper bound 68

T

T
 T transpose 131
T tesla 792
T time interval 796
transpose 138
 $T_{(\cdot)}$
 $T_n(x)$ Chebyshev polynomials 534
 $T_{n,m}$ isomorphism class of trees
241
Ti tebi 6
 $TN(w, s)$ Toeplitz network 230
 $\text{tr}(A)$ trace of matrix A 150
 t -(v, k, λ) design nomenclature 241
 $t_{(\cdot)}$
 t_α critical value 695
 $t_{x,y}$ transition probabilities ... 255
tan trigonometric function 505
tanh hyperbolic function 524
t unit tangent vector 374

U

U
U universe 201
 $U(n)$ matrix group 172
 $U[a, b)$ uniform random variable
619
 $U_n(x)$ Chebyshev polynomials 535
UCL upper control limit 650
UFD unique factorization domain ... 165
UMVU type of estimator 663
URL Uniform Resource Locators ... 803
u traf c intensity 638
 $u(n)$ unit step function 595
 u_i distance 492

V

| | |
|----------|----------------------------------|
| V | |
| V | Klein four group 179 |
| V | vertex set 219 |
| V | Roman numeral (5) 4 |
| V | volt 792 |
| Vec | vector operation 158 |
| $V_n(r)$ | volume of a sphere 368 |
| vers | trigonometric function 505 |

W

| | |
|-----------|---------------------------------|
| W | |
| W | average time 638 |
| $W(u, v)$ | Wronskian 462 |
| W | watt 792 |
| $W_{()}$ | |
| W_N | root of unity 582 |
| W_Q | average time 638 |
| W_n | wheel (type of graph) 229 |
| $W_n(x)$ | Walsh functions 722 |
| Wb | weber 792 |

X

| | |
|-----------|---|
| X | |
| X | in nitesimal generator 466 |
| X | set of points 241 |
| X | Roman numeral (10) 4 |
| $X^{(1)}$ | rst prolongation 466 |
| $X^{(2)}$ | second prolongation 466 |
| $x_{(i)}$ | i^{th} order statistic 659 |
| x_i | rectangular coordinates 492 |

Y

| | |
|-------------|-----------------------------------|
| $Y_\nu(z)$ | Bessel function 559 |
| $y_{()}$ | |
| $y_h(x)$ | homogeneous solution .. 456 |
| $y_n(z)$ | half order Bessel function 563 |
| $y_p(x)$ | particular solution 456 |
| $y_{\nu,k}$ | zero of Bessel function ... 563 |

Z

| | |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| Z | |
| Z | queue discipline 637 |
| $Z(G)$ | center of a graph 221 |
| $Z(t)$ | instantaneous hazard rate .655 |
| \mathbb{Z} | integers 3, 167 |
| \mathcal{Z} | Z -transform 594 |
| $Z_{()}$ | |
| $Z_3 \rtimes Z_4$ | semidirect group product 187 |
| \mathbb{Z}_n | integers modulo n 167 |
| \mathbb{Z}_n^* | a group 163 |
| \mathbb{Z}_p | integers modulo p 167 |
| z | complex number 53 |
| z_α | critical value 695 |

Chapter 1

Analysis

1.1 CONSTANTS

- 1.1.1 Types of numbers*
- 1.1.2 Roman numerals*
- 1.1.3 Arrow notation*
- 1.1.4 Representation of numbers*
- 1.1.5 Binary prefixes*
- 1.1.6 Decimal multiples and prefixes*
- 1.1.7 Decimal equivalents of common fractions*
- 1.1.8 Hexadecimal addition and subtraction table*
- 1.1.9 Hexadecimal multiplication table*
- 1.1.10 Hexadecimal–decimal fraction conversion table*

1.2 SPECIAL NUMBERS

- 1.2.1 Powers of 2*
- 1.2.2 Powers of 16 in decimal scale*
- 1.2.3 Powers of 10 in hexadecimal scale*
- 1.2.4 Special constants*
- 1.2.5 Constants in different bases*
- 1.2.6 Factorials*
- 1.2.7 Bernoulli polynomials and numbers*
- 1.2.8 Euler polynomials and numbers*
- 1.2.9 Fibonacci numbers*
- 1.2.10 Powers of integers*
- 1.2.11 Sums of powers of integers*
- 1.2.12 Negative integer powers*
- 1.2.13 de Bruijn sequences*
- 1.2.14 Integer sequences*

1.3 SERIES AND PRODUCTS

- 1.3.1 Definitions*
- 1.3.2 General properties*
- 1.3.3 Convergence tests*
- 1.3.4 Types of series*
- 1.3.5 Summation formulae*
- 1.3.6 Improving convergence: Shanks transformation*
- 1.3.7 Summability methods*
- 1.3.8 Operations with power series*
- 1.3.9 Miscellaneous sums and series*
- 1.3.10 Infinite series*
- 1.3.11 Infinite products*

1.3.12 *Infinite products and infinite series*

1.4 FOURIER SERIES

- 1.4.1 *Special cases*
- 1.4.2 *Alternate forms*
- 1.4.3 *Useful series*
- 1.4.4 *Expansions of basic periodic function*

1.5 COMPLEX ANALYSIS

- 1.5.1 *Definitions*
- 1.5.2 *Operations on complex numbers*
- 1.5.3 *Functions of a complex variable*
- 1.5.4 *Cauchy–Riemann equations*
- 1.5.5 *Cauchy integral theorem*
- 1.5.6 *Cauchy integral formula*
- 1.5.7 *Taylor series expansions*
- 1.5.8 *Laurent series expansions*
- 1.5.9 *Zeros and singularities*
- 1.5.10 *Residues*
- 1.5.11 *The argument principle*
- 1.5.12 *Transformations and mappings*

1.6 INTERVAL ANALYSIS

- 1.6.1 *Interval arithmetic rules*
- 1.6.2 *Interval arithmetic properties*

1.7 REAL ANALYSIS

- 1.7.1 *Relations*
- 1.7.2 *Functions (mappings)*
- 1.7.3 *Sets of real numbers*
- 1.7.4 *Topological space*
- 1.7.5 *Metric space*
- 1.7.6 *Convergence in \mathbb{R} with metric $|x - y|$*
- 1.7.7 *Continuity in \mathbb{R} with metric $|x - y|$*
- 1.7.8 *Banach space*
- 1.7.9 *Hilbert space*
- 1.7.10 *Asymptotic relationships*

1.8 GENERALIZED FUNCTIONS

- 1.8.1 *Delta function*
- 1.8.2 *Other generalized functions*

1.1 CONSTANTS

1.1.1 TYPES OF NUMBERS

1.1.1.1 Natural numbers

The set of *natural numbers*, $\{0, 1, 2, \dots\}$, is customarily denoted by \mathbb{N} . Many authors do not consider 0 to be a natural number.

1.1.1.2 Integers

The set of *integers*, $\{0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots\}$, is customarily denoted by \mathbb{Z} . The *positive integers* are $\{1, 2, 3, \dots\}$.

1.1.1.3 Rational numbers

The set of *rational numbers*, $\{\frac{p}{q} \mid p, q \in \mathbb{Z}, q \neq 0\}$, is customarily denoted by \mathbb{Q} . Two fractions $\frac{p}{q}$ and $\frac{r}{s}$ are equal if and only if $ps = qr$.

Addition of fractions is defined by $\frac{p}{q} + \frac{r}{s} = \frac{ps+qr}{qs}$. Multiplication of fractions is defined by $\frac{p}{q} \cdot \frac{r}{s} = \frac{pr}{qs}$.

1.1.1.4 Real numbers

The set of *real numbers* is customarily denoted by \mathbb{R} . Real numbers are defined to be converging sequences of rational numbers or as decimals that might or might not repeat.

Real numbers are often divided into two subsets. One subset, the *algebraic numbers*, are real numbers which solve a polynomial equation in one variable with integer coefficients. For example; $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ is an algebraic number because it solves the polynomial equation $2x^2 - 1 = 0$; and all rational numbers are algebraic. Real numbers that are not algebraic numbers are called *transcendental numbers*. Examples of transcendental numbers include π and e .

1.1.1.5 Complex numbers

The set of *complex numbers* is customarily denoted by \mathbb{C} . They are numbers of the form $a + bi$, where $i^2 = -1$, and a and b are real numbers. See page 53.

| Operation | computation | result |
|-------------------|-----------------------|--|
| addition | $(a + bi) + (c + di)$ | $(a + c) + i(b + d)$ |
| multiplication | $(a + bi)(c + di)$ | $(ac - bd) + (ad + bc)i$ |
| reciprocal | $\frac{1}{a + bi}$ | $\frac{a}{a^2 + b^2} - \frac{b}{a^2 + b^2}i$ |
| complex conjugate | $z = a + bi$ | $\bar{z} = a - bi$ |

Properties include: $\overline{z + w} = \bar{z} + \bar{w}$ and $\overline{zw} = \bar{z}\bar{w}$.

1.1.2 ROMAN NUMERALS

The major symbols in Roman numerals are I = 1, V = 5, X = 10, L = 50, C = 100, D = 500, and M = 1,000. The rules for constructing Roman numerals are:

1. A symbol following one of equal or greater value adds its value. (For example, II = 2, XI = 11, and DV = 505.)
2. A symbol following one of lesser value has the lesser value subtracted from the larger value. An I is only allowed to precede a V or an X, an X is only allowed to precede an L or a C, and a C is only allowed to precede a D or an M. (For example IV = 4, IX = 9, and XL = 40.)
3. When a symbol stands between two of greater value, its value is subtracted from the second and the result is added to the first (for example, XIV = 10 + (5 - 1) = 14, CIX = 100 + (10 - 1) = 109, DXL = 500 + (50 - 10) = 540).
4. When two ways exist for representing a number, the one in which the symbol of larger value occurs earlier in the string is preferred. (For example, 14 is represented as XIV, not as VIX.)

| | | | | | | | | | |
|----------------|---------|--------|---------|-------|------|-----|--------|------|----|
| Decimal number | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 |
| Roman numeral | I | II | III | IV | V | VI | VII | VIII | IX |
| 10 | 14 | 50 | 200 | 400 | 500 | 600 | 999 | 1000 | |
| X | XIV | L | CC | CD | D | DC | CMXCIX | M | |
| 1950 | 1960 | 1970 | 1980 | 1990 | | | | | |
| MCML | MCMLX | MCMLXX | MCMLXXX | MCMXC | | | | | |
| 1995 | 1999 | 2000 | 2001 | 2004 | 2010 | | | | |
| MCMXCV | MCMXCIX | MM | MMI | MMIV | MMX | | | | |

1.1.3 ARROW NOTATION

Arrow notation is a way to represent large numbers in which evaluation proceeds from the right:

$$\begin{aligned}
 m \uparrow n &= \underbrace{m \cdot m \cdots m}_n \\
 m \uparrow\uparrow n &= \underbrace{m \uparrow m \uparrow \cdots \uparrow m}_n \\
 m \uparrow\uparrow\uparrow n &= \underbrace{m \uparrow\uparrow m \uparrow\uparrow \cdots \uparrow\uparrow m}_n
 \end{aligned}
 \tag{1.1.1}$$

For example, $m \uparrow n = m^n$, $m \uparrow\uparrow 2 = m^m$, and $m \uparrow\uparrow\uparrow 3 = m^{(m^m)}$.

1.1.4 REPRESENTATION OF NUMBERS

Numerals as usually written have radix or base 10, so that the numeral $a_n a_{n-1} \dots a_1 a_0$ represents the number $a_n 10^n + a_{n-1} 10^{n-1} + \dots + a_2 10^2 + a_1 10 + a_0$. However, other bases can be used, particularly bases 2, 8, and 16. When a number is written in base 2, the number is said to be in binary notation. The names of other bases are:

| | | | |
|---|------------|----|-------------|
| 2 | binary | 9 | nonary |
| 3 | ternary | 10 | decimal |
| 4 | quaternary | 11 | undenary |
| 5 | quinary | 12 | duodecimal |
| 6 | senary | 16 | hexadecimal |
| 7 | septenary | 20 | vigesimal |
| 8 | octal | 60 | sexagesimal |

When writing a number in base b , the digits used range from 0 to $b - 1$. If $b > 10$, then the digit A stands for 10, B for 11, etc. When a base other than 10 is used, it is indicated by a subscript:

$$\begin{aligned}10111_2 &= 1 \times 2^4 + 0 \times 2^3 + 1 \times 2^2 + 1 \times 2 + 1 = 23, \\A3_{16} &= 10 \times 16 + 3 = 163, \\543_7 &= 5 \times 7^2 + 4 \times 7 + 3 = 276.\end{aligned}\tag{1.1.2}$$

To convert a number from base 10 to base b , divide the number by b , and the remainder will be the last digit. Then divide the quotient by b , using the remainder as the previous digit. Continue dividing the quotient by b until a quotient of 0 is arrived at.

EXAMPLE To convert 573 to base 12, divide 573 by 12, yielding a quotient of 47 and a remainder of 9; hence, “9” is the last digit. Divide 47 by 12, yielding a quotient of 3 and a remainder of 11 (which we represent with a “B”). Divide 3 by 12 yielding a quotient of 0 and a remainder of 3. Therefore, $573_{10} = 3B9_{12}$.

In general, to convert from base b to base r , it is simplest to convert to base 10 as an intermediate step. However, it is simple to convert from base b to base b^n . For example, to convert 11011101_2 to base 16, group the digits in fours (because 16 is 2^4), yielding $1\ 1011\ 1101_2$, and then convert each group of 4 to base 16 directly, yielding $1BD_{16}$.

1.1.5 BINARY PREFIXES

A byte is 8 bits. A kibibyte is $2^{10} = 1024$ bytes. Other pre x es for power of 2 are:

| Factor | Pre x | Symbol |
|----------|-------|--------|
| 2^{10} | kibi | Ki |
| 2^{20} | mebi | Mi |
| 2^{30} | gibi | Gi |
| 2^{40} | tebi | Ti |
| 2^{50} | pebi | Pi |
| 2^{60} | exbi | Ei |

1.1.6 DECIMAL MULTIPLES AND PREFIXES

The pre x names and symbols below are taken from Conference Générale des Poids et Mesures, 1991. The common names are for the U.S.

| Factor | Pre x | Symbol | Common name |
|-------------------|-------|------------------|---------------|
| $10^{(10^{100})}$ | | | googolplex |
| 10^{100} | | | googol |
| 10^{24} | yotta | Y | heptillion |
| 10^{21} | zetta | Z | hexillion |
| 10^{18} | exa | E | quintillion |
| 10^{15} | peta | P | quadrillion |
| 10^{12} | tera | T | trillion |
| 10^9 | giga | G | billion |
| 10^6 | mega | M | million |
| 10^3 | kilo | k | thousand |
| 10^2 | hecto | H | hundred |
| 10^1 | deka | da | ten |
| 10^{-1} | deci | d | tenth |
| 10^{-2} | centi | c | hundreth |
| 10^{-3} | milli | m | thousandth |
| 10^{-6} | micro | μ (Greek mu) | millionth |
| 10^{-9} | nano | n | billionth |
| 10^{-12} | pico | p | trillionth |
| 10^{-15} | femto | f | quadrillionth |
| 10^{-18} | atto | a | quintillionth |
| 10^{-21} | zepto | z | hexillionth |
| 10^{-24} | yocto | y | heptillionth |

1.1.7 DECIMAL EQUIVALENTS OF COMMON FRACTIONS

| | | | | | | | |
|------|-------|-------|----------|-------|-------|-------|----------|
| | | 1/64 | 0.015625 | | | 33/64 | 0.515625 |
| | 1/32 | 2/64 | 0.03125 | | 17/32 | 34/64 | 0.53125 |
| | | 3/64 | 0.046875 | | | 35/64 | 0.546875 |
| 1/16 | 2/32 | 4/64 | 0.0625 | 9/16 | 18/32 | 36/64 | 0.5625 |
| | | 5/64 | 0.078125 | | | 37/64 | 0.578125 |
| | 3/32 | 6/64 | 0.09375 | | 19/32 | 38/64 | 0.59375 |
| | | 7/64 | 0.109375 | | | 39/64 | 0.609375 |
| 1/8 | 4/32 | 8/64 | 0.125 | 5/8 | 20/32 | 40/64 | 0.625 |
| | | 9/64 | 0.140625 | | | 41/64 | 0.640625 |
| | 5/32 | 10/64 | 0.15625 | | 21/32 | 42/64 | 0.65625 |
| | | 11/64 | 0.171875 | | | 43/64 | 0.671875 |
| 3/16 | 6/32 | 12/64 | 0.1875 | 11/16 | 22/32 | 44/64 | 0.6875 |
| | | 13/64 | 0.203125 | | | 45/64 | 0.703125 |
| | 7/32 | 14/64 | 0.21875 | | 23/32 | 46/64 | 0.71875 |
| | | 15/64 | 0.234375 | | | 47/64 | 0.734375 |
| 1/4 | 8/32 | 16/64 | 0.25 | 3/4 | 24/32 | 48/64 | 0.75 |
| | | 17/64 | 0.265625 | | | 49/64 | 0.765625 |
| | 9/32 | 18/64 | 0.28125 | | 25/32 | 50/64 | 0.78125 |
| | | 19/64 | 0.296875 | | | 51/64 | 0.796875 |
| 5/16 | 10/32 | 20/64 | 0.3125 | 13/16 | 26/32 | 52/64 | 0.8125 |
| | | 21/64 | 0.328125 | | | 53/64 | 0.828125 |
| | 11/32 | 22/64 | 0.34375 | | 27/32 | 54/64 | 0.84375 |
| | | 23/64 | 0.359375 | | | 55/64 | 0.859375 |
| 3/8 | 12/32 | 24/64 | 0.375 | 7/8 | 28/32 | 56/64 | 0.875 |
| | | 25/64 | 0.390625 | | | 57/64 | 0.890625 |
| | 13/32 | 26/64 | 0.40625 | | 29/32 | 58/64 | 0.90625 |
| | | 27/64 | 0.421875 | | | 59/64 | 0.921875 |
| 7/16 | 14/32 | 28/64 | 0.4375 | 15/16 | 30/32 | 60/64 | 0.9375 |
| | | 29/64 | 0.453125 | | | 61/64 | 0.953125 |
| | 15/32 | 30/64 | 0.46875 | | 31/32 | 62/64 | 0.96875 |
| | | 31/64 | 0.484375 | | | 63/64 | 0.984375 |
| 1/2 | 16/32 | 32/64 | 0.5 | 1/1 | 32/32 | 64/64 | 1 |

1.1.8 HEXADECIMAL ADDITION AND SUBTRACTION TABLE

A = 10, B = 11, C = 12, D = 13, E = 14, F = 15.

Example: $6 + 2 = 8$; hence $8 - 6 = 2$ and $8 - 2 = 6$.

Example: $4 + E = 12$; hence $12 - 4 = E$ and $12 - E = 4$.

| | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 1 | 02 | 03 | 04 | 05 | 06 | 07 | 08 | 09 | 0A | 0B | 0C | 0D | 0E | 0F | 10 |
| 2 | 03 | 04 | 05 | 06 | 07 | 08 | 09 | 0A | 0B | 0C | 0D | 0E | 0F | 10 | 11 |
| 3 | 04 | 05 | 06 | 07 | 08 | 09 | 0A | 0B | 0C | 0D | 0E | 0F | 10 | 11 | 12 |
| 4 | 05 | 06 | 07 | 08 | 09 | 0A | 0B | 0C | 0D | 0E | 0F | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 |
| 5 | 06 | 07 | 08 | 09 | 0A | 0B | 0C | 0D | 0E | 0F | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 |
| 6 | 07 | 08 | 09 | 0A | 0B | 0C | 0D | 0E | 0F | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 |
| 7 | 08 | 09 | 0A | 0B | 0C | 0D | 0E | 0F | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 |
| 8 | 09 | 0A | 0B | 0C | 0D | 0E | 0F | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 |
| 9 | 0A | 0B | 0C | 0D | 0E | 0F | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 |
| A | 0B | 0C | 0D | 0E | 0F | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 |
| B | 0C | 0D | 0E | 0F | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 1A |
| C | 0D | 0E | 0F | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 1A | 1B |
| D | 0E | 0F | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 1A | 1B | 1C |
| E | 0F | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 1A | 1B | 1C | 1D |
| F | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 1A | 1B | 1C | 1D | 1E |

1.1.9 HEXADECIMAL MULTIPLICATION TABLE

Example: $2 \times 4 = 8$.

Example: $2 \times F = 1E$.

| | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | A | B | C | D | E | F |
|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 1 | 01 | 02 | 03 | 04 | 05 | 06 | 07 | 08 | 09 | 0A | 0B | 0C | 0D | 0E | 0F |
| 2 | 02 | 04 | 06 | 08 | 0A | 0C | 0E | 10 | 12 | 14 | 16 | 18 | 1A | 1C | 1E |
| 3 | 03 | 06 | 09 | 0C | 0F | 12 | 15 | 18 | 1B | 1E | 21 | 24 | 27 | 2A | 2D |
| 4 | 04 | 08 | 0C | 10 | 14 | 18 | 1C | 20 | 24 | 28 | 2C | 30 | 34 | 38 | 3C |
| 5 | 05 | 0A | 0F | 14 | 19 | 1E | 23 | 28 | 2D | 32 | 37 | 3C | 41 | 46 | 4B |
| 6 | 06 | 0C | 12 | 18 | 1E | 24 | 2A | 30 | 36 | 3C | 42 | 48 | 4E | 54 | 5A |
| 7 | 07 | 0E | 15 | 1C | 23 | 2A | 31 | 38 | 3F | 46 | 4D | 54 | 5B | 62 | 69 |
| 8 | 08 | 10 | 18 | 20 | 28 | 30 | 38 | 40 | 48 | 50 | 58 | 60 | 68 | 70 | 78 |
| 9 | 09 | 12 | 1B | 24 | 2D | 36 | 3F | 48 | 51 | 5A | 63 | 6C | 75 | 7E | 87 |
| A | 0A | 14 | 1E | 28 | 32 | 3C | 46 | 50 | 5A | 64 | 6E | 78 | 82 | 8C | 96 |
| B | 0B | 16 | 21 | 2C | 37 | 42 | 4D | 58 | 63 | 6E | 79 | 84 | 8F | 9A | A5 |
| C | 0C | 18 | 24 | 30 | 3C | 48 | 54 | 60 | 6C | 78 | 84 | 90 | 9C | A8 | B4 |
| D | 0D | 1A | 27 | 34 | 41 | 4E | 5B | 68 | 75 | 82 | 8F | 9C | A9 | B6 | C3 |
| E | 0E | 1C | 2A | 38 | 46 | 54 | 62 | 70 | 7E | 8C | 9A | A8 | B6 | C4 | D2 |
| F | 0F | 1E | 2D | 3C | 4B | 5A | 69 | 78 | 87 | 96 | A5 | B4 | C3 | D2 | E1 |

1.1.10 HEXADECIMAL–DECIMAL FRACTION CONVERSION TABLE

The values below are correct to all digits shown.

| Hex | Decimal | Hex | Decimal | Hex | Decimal | Hex | Decimal |
|-----|----------|-----|----------|-----|----------|-----|----------|
| .00 | 0 | .40 | 0.250000 | .80 | 0.500000 | .C0 | 0.750000 |
| .01 | 0.003906 | .41 | 0.253906 | .81 | 0.503906 | .C1 | 0.753906 |
| .02 | 0.007812 | .42 | 0.257812 | .82 | 0.507812 | .C2 | 0.757812 |
| .03 | 0.011718 | .43 | 0.261718 | .83 | 0.511718 | .C3 | 0.761718 |
| .04 | 0.015625 | .44 | 0.265625 | .84 | 0.515625 | .C4 | 0.765625 |
| .05 | 0.019531 | .45 | 0.269531 | .85 | 0.519531 | .C5 | 0.769531 |
| .06 | 0.023437 | .46 | 0.273437 | .86 | 0.523437 | .C6 | 0.773437 |
| .07 | 0.027343 | .47 | 0.277343 | .87 | 0.527343 | .C7 | 0.777343 |
| .08 | 0.031250 | .48 | 0.281250 | .88 | 0.531250 | .C8 | 0.781250 |
| .09 | 0.035156 | .49 | 0.285156 | .89 | 0.535156 | .C9 | 0.785156 |
| .0A | 0.039062 | .4A | 0.289062 | .8A | 0.539062 | .CA | 0.789062 |
| .0B | 0.042968 | .4B | 0.292968 | .8B | 0.542968 | .CB | 0.792968 |
| .0C | 0.046875 | .4C | 0.296875 | .8C | 0.546875 | .CC | 0.796875 |
| .0D | 0.050781 | .4D | 0.300781 | .8D | 0.550781 | .CD | 0.800781 |
| .0E | 0.054687 | .4E | 0.304687 | .8E | 0.554687 | .CE | 0.804687 |
| .0F | 0.058593 | .4F | 0.308593 | .8F | 0.558593 | .CF | 0.808593 |
| .10 | 0.062500 | .50 | 0.312500 | .90 | 0.562500 | .D0 | 0.812500 |
| .11 | 0.066406 | .51 | 0.316406 | .91 | 0.566406 | .D1 | 0.816406 |
| .12 | 0.070312 | .52 | 0.320312 | .92 | 0.570312 | .D2 | 0.820312 |
| .13 | 0.074218 | .53 | 0.324218 | .93 | 0.574218 | .D3 | 0.824218 |
| .14 | 0.078125 | .54 | 0.328125 | .94 | 0.578125 | .D4 | 0.828125 |
| .15 | 0.082031 | .55 | 0.332031 | .95 | 0.582031 | .D5 | 0.832031 |
| .16 | 0.085937 | .56 | 0.335937 | .96 | 0.585937 | .D6 | 0.835937 |
| .17 | 0.089843 | .57 | 0.339843 | .97 | 0.589843 | .D7 | 0.839843 |
| .18 | 0.093750 | .58 | 0.343750 | .98 | 0.593750 | .D8 | 0.843750 |
| .19 | 0.097656 | .59 | 0.347656 | .99 | 0.597656 | .D9 | 0.847656 |
| .1A | 0.101562 | .5A | 0.351562 | .9A | 0.601562 | .DA | 0.851562 |
| .1B | 0.105468 | .5B | 0.355468 | .9B | 0.605468 | .DB | 0.855468 |
| .1C | 0.109375 | .5C | 0.359375 | .9C | 0.609375 | .DC | 0.859375 |
| .1D | 0.113281 | .5D | 0.363281 | .9D | 0.613281 | .DD | 0.863281 |
| .1E | 0.117187 | .5E | 0.367187 | .9E | 0.617187 | .DE | 0.867187 |
| .1F | 0.121093 | .5F | 0.371093 | .9F | 0.621093 | .DF | 0.871093 |
| .20 | 0.125000 | .60 | 0.375000 | .A0 | 0.625000 | .E0 | 0.875000 |
| .21 | 0.128906 | .61 | 0.378906 | .A1 | 0.628906 | .E1 | 0.878906 |
| .22 | 0.132812 | .62 | 0.382812 | .A2 | 0.632812 | .E2 | 0.882812 |
| .23 | 0.136718 | .63 | 0.386718 | .A3 | 0.636718 | .E3 | 0.886718 |
| .24 | 0.140625 | .64 | 0.390625 | .A4 | 0.640625 | .E4 | 0.890625 |
| .25 | 0.144531 | .65 | 0.394531 | .A5 | 0.644531 | .E5 | 0.894531 |
| .26 | 0.148437 | .66 | 0.398437 | .A6 | 0.648437 | .E6 | 0.898437 |
| .27 | 0.152343 | .67 | 0.402343 | .A7 | 0.652343 | .E7 | 0.902343 |

| Hex | Decimal | Hex | Decimal | Hex | Decimal | Hex | Decimal |
|-----|----------|-----|----------|-----|----------|-----|----------|
| .28 | 0.156250 | .68 | 0.406250 | .A8 | 0.656250 | .E8 | 0.906250 |
| .29 | 0.160156 | .69 | 0.410156 | .A9 | 0.660156 | .E9 | 0.910156 |
| .2A | 0.164062 | .6A | 0.414062 | .AA | 0.664062 | .EA | 0.914062 |
| .2B | 0.167968 | .6B | 0.417968 | .AB | 0.667968 | .EB | 0.917968 |
| .2C | 0.171875 | .6C | 0.421875 | .AC | 0.671875 | .EC | 0.921875 |
| .2D | 0.175781 | .6D | 0.425781 | .AD | 0.675781 | .ED | 0.925781 |
| .2E | 0.179687 | .6E | 0.429687 | .AE | 0.679687 | .EE | 0.929687 |
| .2F | 0.183593 | .6F | 0.433593 | .AF | 0.683593 | .EF | 0.933593 |
| .30 | 0.187500 | .70 | 0.437500 | .B0 | 0.687500 | .F0 | 0.937500 |
| .31 | 0.191406 | .71 | 0.441406 | .B1 | 0.691406 | .F1 | 0.941406 |
| .32 | 0.195312 | .72 | 0.445312 | .B2 | 0.695312 | .F2 | 0.945312 |
| .33 | 0.199218 | .73 | 0.449218 | .B3 | 0.699218 | .F3 | 0.949218 |
| .34 | 0.203125 | .74 | 0.453125 | .B4 | 0.703125 | .F4 | 0.953125 |
| .35 | 0.207031 | .75 | 0.457031 | .B5 | 0.707031 | .F5 | 0.957031 |
| .36 | 0.210937 | .76 | 0.460937 | .B6 | 0.710937 | .F6 | 0.960937 |
| .37 | 0.214843 | .77 | 0.464843 | .B7 | 0.714843 | .F7 | 0.964843 |
| .38 | 0.218750 | .78 | 0.468750 | .B8 | 0.718750 | .F8 | 0.968750 |
| .39 | 0.222656 | .79 | 0.472656 | .B9 | 0.722656 | .F9 | 0.972656 |
| .3A | 0.226562 | .7A | 0.476562 | .BA | 0.726562 | .FA | 0.976562 |
| .3B | 0.230468 | .7B | 0.480468 | .BB | 0.730468 | .FB | 0.980468 |
| .3C | 0.234375 | .7C | 0.484375 | .BC | 0.734375 | .FC | 0.984375 |
| .3D | 0.238281 | .7D | 0.488281 | .BD | 0.738281 | .FD | 0.988281 |
| .3E | 0.242187 | .7E | 0.492187 | .BE | 0.742187 | .FE | 0.992187 |
| .3F | 0.246093 | .7F | 0.496093 | .BF | 0.746093 | .FF | 0.996093 |

1.2 SPECIAL NUMBERS

1.2.1 POWERS OF 2

| n | 2^n | 2^{-n} |
|-----|-------|--------------|
| 1 | 2 | 0.5 |
| 2 | 4 | 0.25 |
| 3 | 8 | 0.125 |
| 4 | 16 | 0.0625 |
| 5 | 32 | 0.03125 |
| 6 | 64 | 0.015625 |
| 7 | 128 | 0.0078125 |
| 8 | 256 | 0.00390625 |
| 9 | 512 | 0.001953125 |
| 10 | 1024 | 0.0009765625 |

| n | 2^n | 2^{-n} |
|-----|---------------|--|
| 11 | 2048 | 0.00048828125 |
| 12 | 4096 | 0.000244140625 |
| 13 | 8192 | 0.0001220703125 |
| 14 | 16384 | 0.00006103515625 |
| 15 | 32768 | 0.000030517578125 |
| 16 | 65536 | 0.0000152587890625 |
| 17 | 131072 | 0.00000762939453125 |
| 18 | 262144 | 0.000003814697265625 |
| 19 | 524288 | 0.0000019073486328125 |
| 20 | 1048576 | 0.00000095367431640625 |
| 21 | 2097152 | 0.000000476837158203125 |
| 22 | 4194304 | 0.0000002384185791015625 |
| 23 | 8388608 | 0.00000011920928955078125 |
| 24 | 16777216 | 0.000000059604644775390625 |
| 25 | 33554432 | 0.0000000298023223876953125 |
| 26 | 67108864 | 0.00000001490116119384765625 |
| 27 | 134217728 | 0.000000007450580596923828125 |
| 28 | 268435456 | 0.0000000037252902984619140625 |
| 29 | 536870912 | 0.00000000186264514923095703125 |
| 30 | 1073741824 | 0.000000000931322574615478515625 |
| 31 | 2147483648 | 0.0000000004656612873077392578125 |
| 32 | 4294967296 | 0.00000000023283064365386962890625 |
| 33 | 8589934592 | 0.000000000116415321826934814453125 |
| 34 | 17179869184 | 0.0000000000582076609134674072265625 |
| 35 | 34359738368 | 0.00000000002910383045673370361328125 |
| 36 | 68719476736 | 0.000000000014551915228366851806640625 |
| 37 | 137438953472 | 0.0000000000072759576141834259033203125 |
| 38 | 274877906944 | 0.00000000000363797880709171295166015625 |
| 39 | 549755813888 | 0.000000000001818989403545856475830078125 |
| 40 | 1099511627776 | 0.0000000000009094947017729282379150390625 |

| n | 2^n | n | 2^n |
|-----|---------------------|-----|----------------------|
| 41 | 2199023255552 | 42 | 4398046511104 |
| 43 | 8796093022208 | 44 | 17592186044416 |
| 45 | 35184372088832 | 46 | 70368744177664 |
| 47 | 140737488355328 | 48 | 281474976710656 |
| 49 | 562949953421312 | 50 | 1125899906842624 |
| 51 | 2251799813685248 | 52 | 4503599627370496 |
| 53 | 9007199254740992 | 54 | 18014398509481984 |
| 55 | 36028797018963968 | 56 | 72057594037927936 |
| 57 | 144115188075855872 | 58 | 288230376151711744 |
| 59 | 576460752303423488 | 60 | 1152921504606846976 |
| 61 | 2305843009213693952 | 62 | 4611686018427387904 |
| 63 | 9223372036854775808 | 64 | 18446744073709551616 |

| n | 2^n | n | 2^n |
|-----|-----------------------------|-----|------------------------------|
| 65 | 36893488147419103232 | 66 | 73786976294838206464 |
| 67 | 147573952589676412928 | 68 | 295147905179352825856 |
| 69 | 590295810358705651712 | 70 | 1180591620717411303424 |
| 71 | 2361183241434822606848 | 72 | 4722366482869645213696 |
| 73 | 9444732965739290427392 | 74 | 18889465931478580854784 |
| 75 | 37778931862957161709568 | 76 | 75557863725914323419136 |
| 77 | 151115727451828646838272 | 78 | 302231454903657293676544 |
| 79 | 604462909807314587353088 | 80 | 1208925819614629174706176 |
| 81 | 2417851639229258349412352 | 82 | 4835703278458516698824704 |
| 83 | 9671406556917033397649408 | 84 | 19342813113834066795298816 |
| 85 | 38685626227668133590597632 | 86 | 77371252455336267181195264 |
| 87 | 154742504910672534362390528 | 88 | 309485009821345068724781056 |
| 89 | 618970019642690137449562112 | 90 | 1237940039285380274899124224 |

1.2.2 POWERS OF 16 IN DECIMAL SCALE

| n | 16^n | 16^{-n} |
|-----|---------------------------|--|
| 0 | 1 | 1 |
| 1 | 16 | 0.0625 |
| 2 | 256 | 0.00390625 |
| 3 | 4096 | 0.000244140625 |
| 4 | 65536 | 0.0000152587890625 |
| 5 | 1048576 | 0.00000095367431640625 |
| 6 | 16777216 | 0.000000059604644775390625 |
| 7 | 268435456 | 0.0000000037252902984619140625 |
| 8 | 4294967296 | 0.00000000023283064365386962890625 |
| 9 | 68719476736 | 0.000000000014551915228366851806640625 |
| 10 | 1099511627776 | 0.0000000000009094947017729282379150390625 |
| 11 | 17592186044416 | $5.684341886080801486968994140625 \times 10^{-14}$ |
| 12 | 281474976710656 | $3.552713678800500929355621337890 \dots \times 10^{-15}$ |
| 13 | 450359627370496 | $2.220446049250313080847263336181 \dots \times 10^{-16}$ |
| 14 | 72057594037927936 | $1.387778780781445675529539585113 \dots \times 10^{-17}$ |
| 15 | 1152921504606846976 | $8.673617379884035472059622406959 \dots \times 10^{-19}$ |
| 16 | 18446744073709551616 | $5.421010862427522170037264004349 \dots \times 10^{-20}$ |
| 17 | 295147905179352825856 | $3.388131789017201356273290002718 \dots \times 10^{-21}$ |
| 18 | 4722366482869645213696 | $2.117582368135750847670806251699 \dots \times 10^{-22}$ |
| 19 | 75557863725914323419136 | $1.323488980084844279794253907311 \dots \times 10^{-23}$ |
| 20 | 1208925819614629174706176 | $8.271806125530276748714086920699 \dots \times 10^{-25}$ |

1.2.3 POWERS OF 10 IN HEXADECIMAL SCALE

| n | 10^n | 10^{-n} |
|-----|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 0 | 1_{16} | 1_{16} |
| 1 | A_{16} | $0.19999999999999999999\dots_{16}$ |
| 2 | 64_{16} | $0.028F5C28F5C28F5C28F5\dots_{16}$ |
| 3 | $3E8_{16}$ | $0.004189374BC6A7EF9DB2\dots_{16}$ |
| 4 | 2710_{16} | $0.00068DB8BAC710CB295E\dots_{16}$ |
| 5 | $186A0_{16}$ | $0.0000A7C5AC471B478423\dots_{16}$ |
| 6 | $F4240_{16}$ | $0.000010C6F7A0B5ED8D36\dots_{16}$ |
| 7 | 989680_{16} | $0.000001AD7F29ABCAAF485\dots_{16}$ |
| 8 | $5F5E100_{16}$ | $0.0000002AF31DC4611873\dots_{16}$ |
| 9 | $3B9ACA00_{16}$ | $0.000000044B82FA09B5A5\dots_{16}$ |
| 10 | $2540BE400_{16}$ | $0.000000006DF37F675EF6\dots_{16}$ |
| 11 | $174876E800_{16}$ | $0.000000000AFEBFF0BCB2\dots_{16}$ |
| 12 | $E8D4A51000_{16}$ | $0.000000000119799812DE\dots_{16}$ |
| 13 | $9184E72A000_{16}$ | $0.00000000001C25C26849\dots_{16}$ |
| 14 | $5AF3107A4000_{16}$ | $0.000000000002D09370D4\dots_{16}$ |
| 15 | $38D7EA4C68000_{16}$ | $0.000000000000480EBE7B\dots_{16}$ |
| 16 | $2386F26FC10000_{16}$ | $0.0000000000000734ACA5\dots_{16}$ |

1.2.4 SPECIAL CONSTANTS

1.2.4.1 The constant π

The transcendental number π is defined as the ratio of the circumference of a circle to the diameter. It is also the ratio of the area of a circle to the square of the radius (r) and appears in several formulae in geometry and trigonometry (see [Section 6.1](#))

$$\begin{aligned} \text{circumference of a circle} &= 2\pi r, & \text{volume of a sphere} &= \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3, \\ \text{area of a circle} &= \pi r^2, & \text{surface area of a sphere} &= 4\pi r^2. \end{aligned}$$

One method of computing π is to use the infinite series for the function $\tan^{-1} x$ and one of the identities

$$\begin{aligned} \pi &= 4 \tan^{-1} 1 = 6 \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \\ &= 2 \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{2} + 2 \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{3} + 8 \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{5} - 2 \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{239} \\ &= 24 \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{8} + 8 \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{57} + 4 \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{239} \\ &= 48 \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{18} + 32 \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{57} - 20 \tan^{-1} \frac{1}{239} \end{aligned} \tag{1.2.1}$$

There are many other identities involving π . See [Section 1.4.3](#). For example:

$$\pi = \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{16^i} \left(\frac{4}{8i+1} - \frac{2}{8i+4} - \frac{1}{8i+5} - \frac{1}{8i+6} \right)$$

$$\pi = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \left[2^k \underbrace{\sqrt{2 - \sqrt{2 + \sqrt{2 + \sqrt{2 + \sqrt{2 + \sqrt{2 + \dots + \sqrt{2 + \sqrt{2}}}}}}}}}_{k \text{ square roots}} \right]$$

$$\frac{2}{\pi} = \prod_{k=1}^{\infty} \left[\frac{\sqrt{2 + \sqrt{2 + \dots + \sqrt{2 + \sqrt{2}}}}}{2} \right]_{k \text{ square roots}}$$

$$\frac{\pi^3}{32} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{(2n+1)^3} = 1 - \frac{1}{27} + \frac{1}{125} - \frac{1}{343} + \dots$$

(1.2.2)

To 200 decimal places:

$\pi \approx 3.14159\ 26535\ 89793\ 23846\ 26433\ 83279\ 50288\ 41971\ 69399\ 37510$
 $58209\ 74944\ 59230\ 78164\ 06286\ 20899\ 86280\ 34825\ 34211\ 70679$
 $82148\ 08651\ 32823\ 06647\ 09384\ 46095\ 50582\ 23172\ 53594\ 08128$
 $48111\ 74502\ 84102\ 70193\ 85211\ 05559\ 64462\ 29489\ 54930\ 38196$

To 50 decimal places:

$\pi/20 \approx 0.15707\ 96326\ 79489\ 66192\ 31321\ 69163\ 97514\ 42098\ 58469\ 96876$
 $\pi/15 \approx 0.20943\ 95102\ 39319\ 54923\ 08428\ 92218\ 63352\ 56131\ 44626\ 62501$
 $\pi/12 \approx 0.26179\ 93877\ 99149\ 43653\ 85536\ 15273\ 29190\ 70164\ 30783\ 28126$
 $\pi/11 \approx 0.28559\ 93321\ 44526\ 65804\ 20584\ 89389\ 04571\ 67451\ 97218\ 12501$
 $\pi/10 \approx 0.31415\ 92653\ 58979\ 32384\ 62643\ 38327\ 95028\ 84197\ 16939\ 93751$
 $\pi/9 \approx 0.34906\ 58503\ 98865\ 91538\ 47381\ 53697\ 72254\ 26885\ 74377\ 70835$
 $\pi/8 \approx 0.39269\ 90816\ 98724\ 15480\ 78304\ 22909\ 93786\ 05246\ 46174\ 92189$
 $\pi/7 \approx 0.44879\ 89505\ 12827\ 60549\ 46633\ 40468\ 50041\ 20281\ 67057\ 05359$
 $\pi/6 \approx 0.52359\ 87755\ 98298\ 87307\ 71072\ 30546\ 58381\ 40328\ 61566\ 56252$
 $\pi/5 \approx 0.62831\ 85307\ 17958\ 64769\ 25286\ 76655\ 90057\ 68394\ 33879\ 87502$
 $\pi/4 \approx 0.78539\ 81633\ 97448\ 30961\ 56608\ 45819\ 87572\ 10492\ 92349\ 84378$
 $\pi/3 \approx 1.04719\ 75511\ 96597\ 74615\ 42144\ 61093\ 16762\ 80657\ 23133\ 12504$
 $\pi/2 \approx 1.57079\ 63267\ 94896\ 61923\ 13216\ 91639\ 75144\ 20985\ 84699\ 68755$
 $2\pi/3 \approx 2.09439\ 51023\ 93195\ 49230\ 84289\ 22186\ 33525\ 61314\ 46266\ 25007$
 $3\pi/2 \approx 4.71238\ 89803\ 84689\ 85769\ 39650\ 74919\ 25432\ 62957\ 54099\ 06266$

$$\begin{aligned} 5\pi/2 &\approx 7.85398\ 16339\ 74483\ 09615\ 66084\ 58198\ 75721\ 04929\ 23498\ 43776 \\ \sqrt{\pi} &\approx 1.77245\ 38509\ 05516\ 02729\ 81674\ 83341\ 14518\ 27975\ 49456\ 12239 \end{aligned}$$

In 1999 π was computed to 206,158,430,208 = $3 \cdot 2^{36}$ decimal digits. The frequency distribution of the digits for $\pi - 3$, up to 200,000,000,000 decimal places, is:

| | |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| digit 0: 20000030841 | digit 5: 19999917053 |
| digit 1: 19999914711 | digit 6: 19999881515 |
| digit 2: 20000136978 | digit 7: 19999967594 |
| digit 3: 20000069393 | digit 8: 20000291044 |
| digit 4: 19999921691 | digit 9: 19999869180 |

1.2.4.2 The constant e

The transcendental number e is the base of natural logarithms. It is given by

$$e = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right)^n = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n!}. \quad (1.2.3)$$

To 200 decimal places:

$$\begin{aligned} e \approx 2. \quad &71828\ 18284\ 59045\ 23536\ 02874\ 71352\ 66249\ 77572\ 47093\ 69995 \\ &95749\ 66967\ 62772\ 40766\ 30353\ 54759\ 45713\ 82178\ 52516\ 64274 \\ &27466\ 39193\ 20030\ 59921\ 81741\ 35966\ 29043\ 57290\ 03342\ 95260 \\ &59563\ 07381\ 32328\ 62794\ 34907\ 63233\ 82988\ 07531\ 95251\ 01901 \end{aligned}$$

To 50 decimal places:

$$\begin{aligned} e/8 &\approx 0.33978\ 52285\ 57380\ 65442\ 00359\ 33919\ 08281\ 22196\ 55886\ 71249 \\ e/7 &\approx 0.38832\ 59754\ 94149\ 31933\ 71839\ 24478\ 95178\ 53938\ 92441\ 95714 \\ e/6 &\approx 0.45304\ 69714\ 09840\ 87256\ 00479\ 11892\ 11041\ 62928\ 74515\ 61666 \\ e/5 &\approx 0.54365\ 63656\ 91809\ 04707\ 20574\ 94270\ 53249\ 95514\ 49418\ 73999 \\ e/4 &\approx 0.67957\ 04571\ 14761\ 30884\ 00718\ 67838\ 16562\ 44393\ 11773\ 42499 \\ e/3 &\approx 0.90609\ 39428\ 19681\ 74512\ 00958\ 23784\ 22083\ 25857\ 49031\ 23332 \\ e/2 &\approx 1.35914\ 09142\ 29522\ 61768\ 01437\ 35676\ 33124\ 88786\ 23546\ 84998 \\ 2e/3 &\approx 1.81218\ 78856\ 39363\ 49024\ 01916\ 47568\ 44166\ 51714\ 98062\ 46664 \\ e^\pi &\approx 23.14069\ 26327\ 79269\ 00572\ 90863\ 67948\ 54738\ 02661\ 06242\ 60021 \\ \pi^e &\approx 22.45915\ 77183\ 61045\ 47342\ 71522\ 04543\ 73502\ 75893\ 15133\ 99669 \end{aligned}$$

The function e^x is defined by $e^x = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^n}{n!}$ (see page 521). The numbers e and π are related by the formula

$$e^{\pi i} = -1 \quad (1.2.4)$$

1.2.4.3 The constant γ

Euler's constant γ is defined by

$$\gamma = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(\sum_{k=1}^n \frac{1}{k} - \log n \right). \quad (1.2.5)$$

It is not known whether γ is rational or irrational. To 200 decimal places:

$\gamma \approx 0.$ 57721 56649 01532 86060 65120 90082 40243 10421 59335 93992
 35988 05767 23488 48677 26777 66467 09369 47063 29174 67495
 14631 44724 98070 82480 96050 40144 86542 83622 41739 97644
 92353 62535 00333 74293 73377 37673 94279 25952 58247 09492

1.2.4.4 The constant ϕ

The golden ratio, ϕ , is defined as the positive root of the equation $\frac{\phi}{1} = \frac{1+\phi}{\phi}$; that is $\phi = \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}$. There is the continued fraction representation $\phi = [1]$ (see [Section 2.4.4](#)) and the representation in square roots

$$\phi = \sqrt{1 + \sqrt{1 + \sqrt{1 + \sqrt{1 + \dots}}}}$$

To 200 decimal places:

$\phi \approx 1.$ 61803 39887 49894 84820 45868 34365 63811 77203 09179 80576
 28621 35448 62270 52604 62818 90244 97072 07204 18939 11374
 84754 08807 53868 91752 12663 38622 23536 93179 31800 60766
 72635 44333 89086 59593 95829 05638 32266 13199 28290 26788

1.2.4.5 Other constants

To 50 decimal places

$\sqrt{2} \approx$ 1.41421 35623 73095 04880 16887 24209 69807 85696 71875 37695
 $\sqrt{3} \approx$ 1.73205 08075 68877 29352 74463 41505 87236 69428 05253 81038
 $\sqrt{5} \approx$ 2.23606 79774 99789 69640 91736 68731 27623 54406 18359 61153
 $\sqrt{6} \approx$ 2.44948 97427 83178 09819 72840 74705 89139 19659 47480 65667
 $\sqrt{7} \approx$ 2.64575 13110 64590 59050 16157 53639 26042 57102 59183 08245
 $\sqrt{8} \approx$ 2.82842 71247 46190 09760 33774 48419 39615 71393 43750 75390
 $\ln 2 \approx$ 0.69314 71805 59945 30941 72321 21458 17656 80755 00134 36026
 $\ln 3 \approx$ 1.09861 22886 68109 69139 52452 36922 52570 46474 90557 82275
 $\ln 5 \approx$ 1.60943 79124 34100 37460 07593 33226 18763 95256 01354 26852
 $\log 2 \approx$ 0.30102 99956 63981 19521 37388 94724 49302 67681 89881 46211
 $\log 3 \approx$ 0.47712 12547 19662 43729 50279 03255 11530 92001 28864 19070
 $\log 5 \approx$ 0.69897 00043 36018 80478 62611 05275 50697 32318 10118 53789

1.2.5 CONSTANTS IN DIFFERENT BASES

Base 2

$\pi \approx$ 11.0010010000111111011010101000100010001011010001...₂
 $e \approx$ 10.10110111111000010101000101100010100010101110110...₂
 $\gamma \approx$ 0.10010011110001000110011111100011011111011011000...₂
 $\sqrt{2} \approx$ 1.01101010000010011110011001100111111100111011110...₂
 $\ln 2 \approx$ 0.10110001011100100001011111110111110100011100111...₂

Base 8

$$\begin{aligned}\pi &\approx 3.11037552421026430215142306305056006701632112201\dots_8 \\ e &\approx 2.55760521305053551246527734254200471723636166134\dots_8 \\ \gamma &\approx 0.44742147706766606172232157437601002513132552071\dots_8 \\ \sqrt{2} &\approx 1.32404746317716746220426276611546725125751743533\dots_8 \\ \ln 2 &\approx 0.54271027757507173632571170731630007713665364036\dots_8\end{aligned}$$

Base 12

$$\begin{aligned}\pi &\approx 3.184809493B918664573A6211BB151551A05729290A78\dots_{12} \\ e &\approx 2.8752360698219BA71971009B388AA876676025642727\dots_{12} \\ \gamma &\approx 0.6B15188A6760B381B754334520434A22560A590A6A5\dots_{12} \\ \sqrt{2} &\approx 1.4B79170A07B85737704B085486853504563650B559B8\dots_{12} \\ \ln 2 &\approx 0.839912483369AB213742A34679253788658A1402A540\dots_{12}\end{aligned}$$

Base 16

$$\begin{aligned}\pi &\approx 3.243F6A8885A308D313198A2E03707344A4093822299F\dots_{16} \\ e &\approx 2.B7E151628AED2A6ABF7158809CF4F3C762E7160F3\dots_{16} \\ \gamma &\approx 0.93C467E37DB0C7A4D1BE3F810152CB56A1CECC3A\dots_{16} \\ \sqrt{2} &\approx 1.6A09E667F3BCC908B2FB1366EA957D3E3ADEC175\dots_{16} \\ \ln 2 &\approx 0.B17217F7D1CF79ABC9E3B39803F2F6AF40F3432672\dots_{16}\end{aligned}$$

1.2.6 FACTORIALS

For non-negative integers n , the factorial of n , denoted $n!$, is the product of all positive integers less than or equal to n ; $n! = n \cdot (n - 1) \cdot (n - 2) \cdots 2 \cdot 1$. If n is a negative integer ($n = -1, -2, \dots$) then $n! = \pm\infty$. Note that, since the empty product is 1, it follows that $0! = 1$. The generalization of the factorial function to non-integer arguments is the gamma function (see page 540). When n is an integer, $\Gamma(n) = (n - 1)!$.

The double factorial of n , denoted $n!!$, is the product of every other integer: $n!! = n \cdot (n - 2) \cdot (n - 4) \cdots$, where the last element in the product is either 2 or 1, depending on whether n is even or odd. The *shifted factorial* (also called the *rising factorial* and *Pochhammer's symbol*) is denoted by $(a)_n$ (sometimes $a^{\overline{n}}$) and is defined as

$$(a)_n = \underbrace{a \cdot (a + 1) \cdot (a + 2) \cdots (a + n - 1)}_{n \text{ terms}} = \frac{(a + n - 1)!}{(a - 1)!} = \frac{\Gamma(a + n)}{\Gamma(a)}. \quad (1.2.6)$$

Approximations to $n!$ for large n include Stirling's formula

$$n! \approx \sqrt{2\pi e} \left(\frac{n}{e}\right)^{n+\frac{1}{2}}, \quad (1.2.7)$$

and Burnside's formula

$$n! \approx \sqrt{2\pi} \left(\frac{n + \frac{1}{2}}{e}\right)^{n+\frac{1}{2}}. \quad (1.2.8)$$

| n | $n!$ | $\log_{10} n!$ | $n!!$ | $\log_{10} n!!$ |
|------|---------------------------|----------------|---------------------------|-----------------|
| 0 | 1 | 0.00000 | 1 | 0.00000 |
| 1 | 1 | 0.00000 | 1 | 0.00000 |
| 2 | 2 | 0.30103 | 2 | 0.30103 |
| 3 | 6 | 0.77815 | 3 | 0.47712 |
| 4 | 24 | 1.38021 | 8 | 0.90309 |
| 5 | 120 | 2.07918 | 15 | 1.17609 |
| 6 | 720 | 2.85733 | 48 | 1.68124 |
| 7 | 5040 | 3.70243 | 105 | 2.02119 |
| 8 | 40320 | 4.60552 | 384 | 2.58433 |
| 9 | 3.6288×10^5 | 5.55976 | 945 | 2.97543 |
| 10 | 3.6288×10^6 | 6.55976 | 3840 | 3.58433 |
| 11 | 3.9917×10^7 | 7.60116 | 10395 | 4.01682 |
| 12 | 4.7900×10^8 | 8.68034 | 46080 | 4.66351 |
| 13 | 6.2270×10^9 | 9.79428 | 1.3514×10^5 | 5.13077 |
| 14 | 8.7178×10^{10} | 10.94041 | 6.4512×10^5 | 5.80964 |
| 15 | 1.3077×10^{12} | 12.11650 | 2.0270×10^6 | 6.30686 |
| 16 | 2.0923×10^{13} | 13.32062 | 1.0322×10^7 | 7.01376 |
| 17 | 3.5569×10^{14} | 14.55107 | 3.4459×10^7 | 7.53731 |
| 18 | 6.4024×10^{15} | 15.80634 | 1.8579×10^8 | 8.26903 |
| 19 | 1.2165×10^{17} | 17.08509 | 6.5473×10^8 | 8.81606 |
| 20 | 2.4329×10^{18} | 18.38612 | 3.7159×10^9 | 9.57006 |
| 21 | 5.1091×10^{19} | 19.70834 | 1.3749×10^{10} | 10.13828 |
| 22 | 1.1240×10^{21} | 21.05077 | 8.1750×10^{10} | 10.91249 |
| 23 | 2.5852×10^{22} | 22.41249 | 3.1623×10^{11} | 11.50001 |
| 24 | 6.2045×10^{23} | 23.79271 | 1.9620×10^{12} | 12.29270 |
| 25 | 1.5511×10^{25} | 25.19065 | 7.9059×10^{12} | 12.89795 |
| 30 | 2.6525×10^{32} | 32.42366 | 4.2850×10^{16} | 16.63195 |
| 40 | 8.1592×10^{47} | 47.91165 | 2.5511×10^{24} | 24.40672 |
| 50 | 3.0414×10^{64} | 64.48307 | 5.2047×10^{32} | 32.71640 |
| 60 | 8.3210×10^{81} | 81.92017 | 2.8481×10^{41} | 41.45456 |
| 70 | 1.1979×10^{100} | 100.07841 | 3.5504×10^{50} | 50.55028 |
| 80 | 7.1569×10^{118} | 118.85473 | 8.9711×10^{59} | 59.95284 |
| 90 | 1.4857×10^{138} | 138.17194 | 4.2088×10^{69} | 69.62416 |
| 100 | 9.3326×10^{157} | 157.97000 | 3.4243×10^{79} | 79.53457 |
| 110 | 1.5882×10^{178} | 178.20092 | 4.5744×10^{89} | 89.66033 |
| 120 | 6.6895×10^{198} | 198.82539 | 9.5934×10^{99} | 99.98197 |
| 130 | 6.4669×10^{219} | 219.81069 | 3.0428×10^{110} | 110.48328 |
| 140 | 1.3462×10^{241} | 241.12911 | 1.4142×10^{121} | 121.15050 |
| 150 | 5.7134×10^{262} | 262.75689 | 9.3726×10^{131} | 131.97186 |
| 500 | 1.2201×10^{1134} | 1134.0864 | 5.8490×10^{567} | 567.76709 |
| 1000 | 4.0239×10^{2567} | 2567.6046 | 3.9940×10^{1284} | 1284.6014 |

1.2.7 BERNOULLI POLYNOMIALS AND NUMBERS

The *Bernoulli polynomials* $B_n(x)$ are defined by the generating function

$$\frac{te^{xt}}{e^t - 1} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} B_n(x) \frac{t^n}{n!}. \quad (1.2.9)$$

These polynomials can also be defined recursively by means of $B_0(x) = 1$, $B'_n(x) = nB_{n-1}(x)$, and $\int_0^1 B_n(x) dx = 0$ for $n \geq 1$. The identity $B_{k+1}(x+1) - B_{k+1}(x) = (k+1)x^k$ means that sums of powers can be computed in terms of Bernoulli polynomials

$$1^k + 2^k + \dots + n^k = \frac{B_{k+1}(n+1) - B_{k+1}(0)}{k+1}. \quad (1.2.10)$$

| n | $B_n(x)$ |
|-----|----------------------------------|
| 0 | 1 |
| 1 | $(2x - 1)/2$ |
| 2 | $(6x^2 - 6x + 1)/6$ |
| 3 | $(2x^3 - 3x^2 + x)/2$ |
| 4 | $(30x^4 - 60x^3 + 30x^2 - 1)/30$ |
| 5 | $(6x^5 - 15x^4 + 10x^3 - x)/6$ |

The Bernoulli numbers are the Bernoulli polynomials evaluated at 0: $B_n = B_n(0)$. A generating function for the Bernoulli numbers is $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} B_n \frac{t^n}{n!} = \frac{t}{e^t - 1}$.

In the following table each Bernoulli number is written as a fraction of integers: $B_n = N_n/D_n$. Note that $B_{2m+1} = 0$ for $m \geq 1$.

| n | N_n | D_n | B_n |
|-----|----------------|-------|-------------------------------|
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 1.000000000×10^0 |
| 1 | -1 | 2 | $-5.000000000 \times 10^{-1}$ |
| 2 | 1 | 6 | $1.666666667 \times 10^{-1}$ |
| 4 | -1 | 30 | $-3.333333333 \times 10^{-2}$ |
| 6 | 1 | 42 | $2.380952381 \times 10^{-2}$ |
| 8 | -1 | 30 | $-3.333333333 \times 10^{-2}$ |
| 10 | 5 | 66 | $7.575757576 \times 10^{-2}$ |
| 12 | -691 | 2730 | $-2.531135531 \times 10^{-1}$ |
| 14 | 7 | 6 | 1.166666667×10^0 |
| 16 | -3617 | 510 | -7.092156863×10^0 |
| 18 | 43867 | 798 | 5.497117794×10^1 |
| 20 | -174611 | 330 | -5.291242424×10^2 |
| 22 | 854513 | 138 | 6.192123188×10^3 |
| 24 | -236364091 | 2730 | -8.658025311×10^4 |
| 26 | 8553103 | 6 | 1.425517167×10^6 |
| 28 | -23749461029 | 870 | -2.729823107×10^7 |
| 30 | 8615841276005 | 14322 | 6.015808739×10^8 |
| 32 | -7709321041217 | 510 | $-1.511631577 \times 10^{10}$ |
| 34 | 2577687858367 | 6 | $4.296146431 \times 10^{11}$ |

1.2.8 EULER POLYNOMIALS AND NUMBERS

The Euler polynomials $E_n(x)$ are defined by the generating function

$$\frac{2e^{xt}}{e^t + 1} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} E_n(x) \frac{t^n}{n!}. \quad (1.2.11)$$

| n | $E_n(x)$ |
|-----|------------------------------|
| 0 | 1 |
| 1 | $(2x - 1)/2$ |
| 2 | $x^2 - x$ |
| 3 | $(4x^3 - 6x^2 + 1)/4$ |
| 4 | $x^4 - 2x^3 + x$ |
| 5 | $(2x^5 - 5x^4 + 5x^2 - 1)/2$ |

Alternating sums of powers can be computed in terms of Euler polynomials

$$\sum_{i=1}^n (-1)^{n-i} i^k = n^k - (n-1)^k + \dots \mp 2^k \pm 1^k = \frac{E_k(n+1) + (-1)^n E_k(0)}{2}. \quad (1.2.12)$$

The Euler numbers are the Euler polynomials evaluated at $1/2$, and scaled: $E_n = 2^n E_n(1/2)$. A generating function for the Euler numbers is

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} E_n \frac{t^n}{n!} = \frac{2e^t}{e^{2t} + 1} \quad (1.2.13)$$

| n | E_n |
|-----|---|
| 2 | -1 |
| 4 | 5 |
| 6 | -61 |
| 8 | 1385 |
| 10 | -50521 |
| 12 | 2702765 |
| 14 | -199360981 |
| 16 | 19391512145 |
| 18 | -2404879675441 |
| 20 | 370371188237525 |
| 22 | -69348874393137901 |
| 24 | 15514534163557086905 |
| 26 | -4087072509293123892361 |
| 28 | 1252259641403629865468285 |
| 30 | -441543893249023104553682821 |
| 32 | 177519391579539289436664789665 |
| 34 | -80723299235887898062168247453281 |
| 36 | 41222060339517702122347079671259045 |
| 38 | -23489580527043108252017828576198947741 |
| 40 | 14851150718114980017877156781405826684425 |

1.2.9 FIBONACCI NUMBERS

The Fibonacci numbers $\{F_n\}$ are defined by the recurrence:

$$F_1 = 1, \quad F_2 = 1, \quad F_{n+2} = F_n + F_{n+1}. \quad (1.2.14)$$

An exact formula is available:

$$F_n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \left[\left(\frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2} \right)^n - \left(\frac{1 - \sqrt{5}}{2} \right)^n \right]. \quad (1.2.15)$$

Note that $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{F_{n+1}}{F_n} = \phi$, the golden ratio. Also, $F_n \sim \phi^n / \sqrt{5}$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$.

| n | F_n | n | F_n | n | F_n | n | F_n |
|-----|-------|-----|--------|-----|----------|-----|-------------|
| 1 | 1 | 14 | 377 | 27 | 196418 | 40 | 102334155 |
| 2 | 1 | 15 | 610 | 28 | 317811 | 41 | 165580141 |
| 3 | 2 | 16 | 987 | 29 | 514229 | 42 | 267914296 |
| 4 | 3 | 17 | 1597 | 30 | 832040 | 43 | 433494437 |
| 5 | 5 | 18 | 2584 | 31 | 1346269 | 44 | 701408733 |
| 6 | 8 | 19 | 4181 | 32 | 2178309 | 45 | 1134903170 |
| 7 | 13 | 20 | 6765 | 33 | 3524578 | 46 | 1836311903 |
| 8 | 21 | 21 | 10946 | 34 | 5702887 | 47 | 2971215073 |
| 9 | 34 | 22 | 17711 | 35 | 9227465 | 48 | 4807526976 |
| 10 | 55 | 23 | 28657 | 36 | 14930352 | 49 | 7778742049 |
| 11 | 89 | 24 | 46368 | 37 | 24157817 | 50 | 12586269025 |
| 12 | 144 | 25 | 75025 | 38 | 39088169 | 51 | 20365011074 |
| 13 | 233 | 26 | 121393 | 39 | 63245986 | 52 | 32951280099 |

1.2.10 POWERS OF INTEGERS

| n | n^3 | n^4 | n^5 | n^6 | n^7 | n^8 | n^{10} |
|-----|-------|-------|--------|---------|----------|-----------|-------------|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 2 | 8 | 16 | 32 | 64 | 128 | 256 | 1024 |
| 3 | 27 | 81 | 243 | 729 | 2187 | 6561 | 59049 |
| 4 | 64 | 256 | 1024 | 4096 | 16384 | 65536 | 1048576 |
| 5 | 125 | 625 | 3125 | 15625 | 78125 | 390625 | 9765625 |
| 6 | 216 | 1296 | 7776 | 46656 | 279936 | 1679616 | 60466176 |
| 7 | 343 | 2401 | 16807 | 117649 | 823543 | 5764801 | 282475249 |
| 8 | 512 | 4096 | 32768 | 262144 | 2097152 | 16777216 | 1073741824 |
| 9 | 729 | 6561 | 59049 | 531441 | 4782969 | 43046721 | 3486784401 |
| 10 | 1000 | 10000 | 100000 | 1000000 | 10000000 | 100000000 | 10000000000 |
| 11 | 1331 | 14641 | 161051 | 1771561 | 19487171 | 214358881 | 25937424601 |
| 12 | 1728 | 20736 | 248832 | 2985984 | 35831808 | 429981696 | 61917364224 |

1.2.11 SUMS OF POWERS OF INTEGERS

1. De ne

$$s_k(n) = 1^k + 2^k + \cdots + n^k = \sum_{m=1}^n m^k. \quad (1.2.16)$$

Properties include:

(a) $s_k(n) = (k+1)^{-1} [B_{k+1}(n+1) - B_{k+1}(0)]$
(where the B_k are Bernoulli polynomials, see [Section 1.2.7](#)).

(b) If $s_k(n) = \sum_{m=1}^{k+1} a_m n^{k-m+2}$, then

$$s_{k+1}(n) = \binom{k+1}{k+2} a_1 n^{k+2} + \cdots + \binom{k+1}{k} a_3 n^k \\ + \cdots + \binom{k+1}{2} a_{k+1} n^2 + \left[1 - (k+1) \sum_{m=1}^{k+1} \frac{a_m}{k+3-m} \right] n.$$

$$s_1(n) = 1 + 2 + 3 + \cdots + n = \frac{1}{2}n(n+1)$$

$$s_2(n) = 1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + \cdots + n^2 = \frac{1}{6}n(n+1)(2n+1)$$

$$s_3(n) = 1^3 + 2^3 + 3^3 + \cdots + n^3 = \frac{1}{4}n^2(n+1)^2 = [s_1(n)]^2$$

(c) $s_4(n) = 1^4 + 2^4 + 3^4 + \cdots + n^4 = \frac{1}{5}(3n^2 + 3n - 1)s_2(n)$

$$s_5(n) = 1^5 + 2^5 + 3^5 + \cdots + n^5 = \frac{1}{12}n^2(n+1)^2(2n^2 + 2n - 1)$$

$$s_6(n) = 1^6 + 2^6 + 3^6 + \cdots + n^6 \\ = \frac{n}{42}(n+1)(2n+1)(3n^4 + 6n^3 - 3n + 1).$$

$$2. \sum_{k=1}^n (km - 1) = \frac{1}{2}mn(n+1) - n$$

$$3. \sum_{k=1}^n (km - 1)^2 = \frac{n}{6} [m^2(n+1)(2n+1) - 6m(n+1) + 6]$$

$$4. \sum_{k=1}^n (km - 1)^3 = \frac{n}{4} [m^3n(n+1)^2 - 2m^2(n+1)(2n+1) + 6m(n+1) - 4]$$

$$5. \sum_{k=1}^n (-1)^{k+1} (km - 1) = \frac{(-1)^n}{4} [2 - (2n+1)m] + \frac{m-2}{4}$$

$$6. \sum_{k=1}^n (-1)^{k+1} (km - 1)^2 = \frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{2} [n(n+1)m^2 - (2n+1)m + 1] + \frac{1-m}{2}$$

| n | $\sum_{k=1}^n k$ | $\sum_{k=1}^n k^2$ | $\sum_{k=1}^n k^3$ | $\sum_{k=1}^n k^4$ | $\sum_{k=1}^n k^5$ |
|-----|------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 2 | 3 | 5 | 9 | 17 | 33 |
| 3 | 6 | 14 | 36 | 98 | 276 |
| 4 | 10 | 30 | 100 | 354 | 1300 |
| 5 | 15 | 55 | 225 | 979 | 4425 |
| 6 | 21 | 91 | 441 | 2275 | 12201 |
| 7 | 28 | 140 | 784 | 4676 | 29008 |
| 8 | 36 | 204 | 1296 | 8772 | 61776 |
| 9 | 45 | 285 | 2025 | 15333 | 120825 |
| 10 | 55 | 385 | 3025 | 25333 | 220825 |
| 11 | 66 | 506 | 4356 | 39974 | 381876 |
| 12 | 78 | 650 | 6084 | 60710 | 630708 |
| 13 | 91 | 819 | 8281 | 89271 | 1002001 |
| 14 | 105 | 1015 | 11025 | 127687 | 1539825 |
| 15 | 120 | 1240 | 14400 | 178312 | 2299200 |
| 16 | 136 | 1496 | 18496 | 243848 | 3347776 |
| 17 | 153 | 1785 | 23409 | 327369 | 4767633 |
| 18 | 171 | 2109 | 29241 | 432345 | 6657201 |
| 19 | 190 | 2470 | 36100 | 562666 | 9133300 |
| 20 | 210 | 2870 | 44100 | 722666 | 12333300 |
| 21 | 231 | 3311 | 53361 | 917147 | 16417401 |
| 22 | 253 | 3795 | 64009 | 1151403 | 21571033 |
| 23 | 276 | 4324 | 76176 | 1431244 | 28007376 |
| 24 | 300 | 4900 | 90000 | 1763020 | 35970000 |
| 25 | 325 | 5525 | 105625 | 2153645 | 45735625 |

1.2.12 NEGATIVE INTEGER POWERS

Riemann's zeta function is $\zeta(n) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^n}$ (it is defined for $\text{Re } k > 1$ and extended to \mathbb{C}). Related functions are

$$\alpha(n) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{k+1}}{k^n}, \quad \beta(n) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{(2k+1)^n}, \quad \gamma(n) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(2k+1)^n}.$$

Properties include:

1. $\alpha(n) = (1 - 2^{1-n})\zeta(n)$
2. $\zeta(2k) = \frac{(2\pi)^{2k}}{2(2k)!} |B_{2k}|$
3. $\gamma(n) = (1 - 2^{-n})\zeta(n)$
4. $\beta(2k+1) = \frac{(\pi/2)^{2k+1}}{2(2k)!} |E_{2k}|$
5. The series $\beta(1) = 1 - \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{5} - \dots = \pi/4$ is known as Gregory's series.
6. Catalan's constant is $\mathbf{G} = \beta(2) \approx 0.915966$.

7. *Riemann hypothesis*: The non-trivial zeros of the Riemann zeta function (i.e., the $\{z_i\}$ that satisfy $\zeta(z_i) = 0$) lie on the *critical line* given by $\text{Re } z_i = \frac{1}{2}$. (The trivial zeros are $z = -2, -4, -6, \dots$)

| n | $\zeta(n) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^n}$ | $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{k+1}}{k^n}$ | $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{(2k+1)^n}$ | $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(2k+1)^n}$ |
|-----|--|--|---|--|
| 1 | ∞ | 0.6931471805 | 0.7853981633 | ∞ |
| 2 | 1.6449340669 | 0.8224670334 | 0.9159655941 | 1.2337005501 |
| 3 | 1.2020569032 | 0.9015426773 | 0.9689461463 | 1.0517997903 |
| 4 | 1.0823232337 | 0.9470328294 | 0.9889445517 | 1.0146780316 |
| 5 | 1.0369277551 | 0.9721197705 | 0.9961578281 | 1.0045237628 |
| 6 | 1.0173430620 | 0.9855510912 | 0.9986852222 | 1.0014470766 |
| 7 | 1.0083492774 | 0.9925938199 | 0.9995545079 | 1.0004715487 |
| 8 | 1.0040773562 | 0.9962330018 | 0.9998499902 | 1.0001551790 |
| 9 | 1.0020083928 | 0.9980942975 | 0.9999496842 | 1.0000513452 |
| 10 | 1.0009945752 | 0.9990395075 | 0.9999831640 | 1.0000170414 |
| 11 | 1.0004941886 | 0.9995171435 | 0.9999943749 | 1.0000056661 |
| 12 | 1.0002460866 | 0.9997576851 | 0.9999981224 | 1.0000018858 |
| 13 | 1.0001227133 | 0.9998785428 | 0.9999993736 | 1.0000006281 |
| 14 | 1.0000612482 | 0.9999391703 | 0.9999997911 | 1.0000002092 |
| 15 | 1.0000305882 | 0.9999695512 | 0.9999999303 | 1.0000000697 |
| 16 | 1.0000152823 | 0.9999847642 | 0.9999999768 | 1.0000000232 |
| 17 | 1.0000076372 | 0.9999923783 | 0.9999999923 | 1.0000000077 |
| 18 | 1.0000038173 | 0.9999961879 | 0.9999999974 | 1.0000000026 |
| 19 | 1.0000019082 | 0.9999980935 | 0.9999999991 | 1.0000000009 |
| 20 | 1.0000009540 | 0.9999990466 | 0.9999999997 | 1.0000000003 |

$$\begin{aligned} \beta(1) &= \pi/4 & \zeta(2) &= \pi^2/6 \\ \beta(3) &= \pi^3/32 & \zeta(4) &= \pi^4/90 \\ \beta(5) &= 5\pi^5/1536 & \zeta(6) &= \pi^6/945 \\ \beta(7) &= 61\pi^7/184320 & \zeta(8) &= \pi^8/9450 \\ \beta(9) &= 277\pi^9/8257536 & \zeta(10) &= \pi^{10}/93555 \end{aligned}$$

1.2.13 DE BRUIJN SEQUENCES

A sequence of length q^n over an alphabet of size q is a *de Bruijn sequence* if every possible n -tuple occurs in the sequence (allowing wraparound to the start of the sequence). There are de Bruijn sequences for any q and n . The table below gives some small examples.

| q | n | Length | Sequence |
|-----|-----|--------|------------------|
| 2 | 1 | 2 | 01 |
| 2 | 2 | 4 | 0110 |
| 2 | 3 | 8 | 01110100 |
| 2 | 4 | 16 | 0101001101111000 |
| 3 | 2 | 9 | 001220211 |
| 4 | 2 | 16 | 0011310221203323 |

1.2.14 INTEGER SEQUENCES

These sequences are arranged in numerical order (disregarding any leading zeros or ones). Note that $C(n, k) = \binom{n}{k}$; see page 206.

- 1, -1, -1, 0, -1, 1, -1, 0, 0, 1, -1, 0, -1, 1, 1, 0, -1, 0, -1, 0, 1, 1, -1, 0, 0, 1, 0,
0, -1, -1, -1, 0, 1, 1, 1, 0, -1, 1, 1, 0, -1, -1, -1, 0, 0, 1, -1, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0, -1, 0,
1, 0
Möbius function $\mu(n)$, $n \geq 1$
- 1, 1, 0, 1, 1, 0, 0, 1, 1, 1, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 1, 1, 1, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 2, 1, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 1, 0, 1,
0, 1, 1, 0, 0, 1, 1, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0, 1, 2, 0, 1, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 1, 2, 0, 0, 1,
0
Number of ways of writing n as a sum of 2 squares, $n \geq 0$
- 0, 1, 1, 1, 1, 2, 1, 1, 1, 2, 1, 2, 1, 2, 1, 2, 1, 2, 1, 2, 1, 2, 1, 2, 1, 2, 1, 2, 1, 2, 1, 2, 2,
2, 2, 1, 2, 2, 1, 3, 1, 2, 2, 2, 1, 2, 2, 2, 2, 1, 3, 1, 2, 2, 1, 2, 3, 1, 2,
2
Number of distinct primes dividing n , $n \geq 1$
- 1, 1, 1, 2, 1, 1, 1, 3, 2, 1, 1, 2, 1, 1, 1, 5, 1, 2, 1, 2, 1, 1, 1, 3, 2, 1, 3, 2, 1, 1, 7, 1, 1,
1, 4, 1, 1, 1, 3, 1, 1, 1, 2, 2, 1, 1, 5, 2, 2, 1, 2, 1, 3, 1, 3, 1, 1, 1, 2, 1, 1, 2, 11, 1, 1, 1,
2
Number of abelian groups of order n , $n \geq 1$
- 1, 1, 1, 2, 1, 2, 1, 5, 2, 2, 1, 5, 1, 2, 1, 14, 1, 5, 1, 5, 2, 2, 1, 15, 2, 2, 5, 4, 1, 4, 1, 51,
1, 2, 1, 14, 1, 2, 2, 14, 1, 6, 1, 4, 2, 2, 1, 52, 2, 5, 1, 5, 1, 15, 2, 13, 2, 2, 1, 13, 1, 2, 4,
267
Number of groups of order n , $n \geq 1$
- 0, 1, 1, 2, 1, 2, 2, 3, 1, 2, 2, 3, 2, 3, 3, 4, 1, 2, 2, 3, 2, 3, 3, 4, 2, 3, 3, 4, 3, 4, 4, 5, 1, 2,
2, 3, 2, 3, 3, 4, 2, 3, 3, 4, 3, 4, 4, 5, 2, 3, 3, 4, 3, 4, 4, 5, 3, 4, 4, 5, 4, 5, 5, 6, 1, 2, 2, 3,
2
Number of 1's in binary expansion of n , $n \geq 0$
- 1, 2, 1, 2, 3, 6, 9, 18, 30, 56, 99, 186, 335, 630, 1161, 2182, 4080, 7710, 14532, 27594,
52377, 99858, 190557, 364722, 698870, 1342176, 2580795, 4971008
Number of binary irreducible polynomials of degree n , or n -bead necklaces, $n \geq 0$
- 1, 1, 1, 2, 1, 3, 1, 4, 2, 3, 1, 8, 1, 3, 3, 8, 1, 8, 1, 8, 3, 3, 1, 20, 2, 3, 4, 8, 1, 13, 1, 16, 3,
3, 3, 26, 1, 3, 3, 20, 1, 13, 1, 8, 8, 3, 1, 48, 2, 8, 3, 8, 1, 20, 3, 20, 3, 3, 113
Number of perfect partitions of n , or ordered factorizations of $n + 1$, $n \geq 0$
- 1, 2, 2, 1, 2, 1, 1, 2, 2, 1, 1, 2, 1, 2, 1, 2, 1, 1, 2, 1, 2, 2, 1, 1, 2, 2, 1, 2, 1, 1, 2, 2, 1,
1, 2, 1, 2, 2, 1, 1, 2, 2, 1, 2, 1, 1, 2, 1, 2, 1, 2, 1, 1, 2, 1, 2, 1, 2, 1, 2, 1, 2, 1, 1, 2,
1
Thue-Morse non-repeating sequence
- 1, 2, 1, 4, 1, 2, 1, 8, 1, 2, 1, 4, 1, 2, 1, 9, 1, 2, 1, 4, 1, 2, 1, 8, 1, 2, 1, 4, 1, 2, 1, 10, 1, 2,
1, 4, 1, 2, 1, 8, 1, 2, 1, 4, 1, 2, 1, 9, 1, 2, 1, 4, 1, 2, 1, 8, 1, 2, 1, 4, 1, 2, 1, 12, 1, 2, 1,
4
Hurwitz-Radon numbers
- 1, 2, 2, 3, 2, 4, 2, 4, 3, 4, 2, 6, 2, 4, 4, 5, 2, 6, 2, 6, 4, 4, 2, 8, 3, 4, 4, 6, 2, 8, 2, 6, 4, 4,
4, 9, 2, 4, 4, 8, 2, 8, 2, 6, 6, 4, 2, 10, 3, 6, 4, 6, 2, 8, 4, 8, 4, 4, 2, 12, 2, 4, 6, 7, 4, 8, 2,
6
 $d(n)$, the number of divisors of n , $n \geq 1$
- 0, 1, 2, 2, 3, 3, 4, 4, 4, 4, 5, 5, 6, 6, 6, 6, 7, 7, 8, 8, 8, 8, 9, 9, 9, 9, 10, 10, 11, 11,
11, 11, 11, 11, 12, 12, 12, 12, 13, 13, 14, 14, 14, 14, 15, 15, 15, 15, 15, 15, 16, 16, 16,
16
 $\pi(n)$, the number of primes $\leq n$, for $n \geq 1$
- 1, 1, 2, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 8, 10, 12, 15, 18, 22, 27, 32, 38, 46, 54, 64, 76, 89, 104, 122,
142, 165, 192, 222, 256, 296, 340, 390, 448, 512, 585, 668, 760, 864, 982, 1113, 1260,
1426
Number of partitions of n into distinct parts, $n \geq 1$
- 1, 1, 2, 2, 4, 2, 6, 4, 6, 4, 10, 4, 12, 6, 8, 8, 16, 6, 18, 8, 12, 10, 22, 8, 20, 12, 18, 12, 28,
8, 30, 16, 20, 16, 24, 12, 36, 18, 24, 16, 40, 12, 42, 20, 24, 22, 46, 16, 42
Euler totient function $\phi(n)$: count numbers $\leq n$ and prime to n , for $n \geq 1$

-
15. 1, 1, 1, 0, 1, 1, 2, 2, 4, 5, 10, 14, 26, 42, 78, 132, 249, 445, 842, 1561, 2988, 5671, 10981, 21209, 41472, 81181, 160176, 316749, 629933, 1256070, 2515169, 5049816
Number of series-reduced trees with n unlabeled nodes, $n \geq 0$
16. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, 9, 11, 13, 16, 17, 19, 23, 25, 27, 29, 31, 32, 37, 41, 43, 47, 49, 53, 59, 61, 64, 67, 71, 73, 79, 81, 83, 89, 97, 101, 103, 107, 109, 113, 121, 125, 127, 128, 131
Powers of prime numbers
17. 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12, 16, 18, 20, 24, 30, 36, 42, 48, 60, 72, 84, 90, 96, 108, 120, 144, 168, 180, 210, 216, 240, 288, 300, 336, 360, 420, 480, 504, 540, 600, 630, 660
Highly abundant numbers: where sum-of-divisors function increases
18. 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 8, 11, 13, 16, 18, 26, 28, 36, 38, 47, 48, 53, 57, 62, 69, 72, 77, 82, 87, 97, 99, 102, 106, 114, 126, 131, 138, 145, 148, 155, 175, 177, 180, 182, 189, 197, 206, 209
Ulam numbers: next is uniquely the sum of 2 earlier terms
19. 2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 13, 17, 19, 23, 29, 31, 37, 41, 43, 47, 53, 59, 60, 61, 67, 71, 73, 79, 83, 89, 97, 101, 103, 107, 109, 113, 127, 131, 137, 139, 149, 151, 157, 163, 167, 168, 173
Orders of simple groups
20. 2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 13, 17, 19, 23, 29, 31, 37, 41, 43, 47, 53, 59, 61, 67, 71, 73, 79, 83, 89, 97, 101, 103, 107, 109, 113, 127, 131, 137, 139, 149, 151, 157, 163, 167, 173, 179, 181
Prime numbers
21. 1, 2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 15, 22, 30, 42, 56, 77, 101, 135, 176, 231, 297, 385, 490, 627, 792, 1002, 1255, 1575, 1958, 2436, 3010, 3718, 4565, 5604, 6842, 8349, 10143, 12310, 14883
Number of partitions of n , $n \geq 1$
22. 2, 3, 5, 7, 13, 17, 19, 31, 61, 89, 107, 127, 521, 607, 1279, 2203, 2281, 3217, 4253, 4423, 9689, 9941, 11213, 19937, 21701, 23209, 44497, 86243, 110503, 132049, 216091, 756839, 859433
Mersenne primes: n such that $2^n - 1$ is prime
23. 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, 34, 55, 89, 144, 233, 377, 610, 987, 1597, 2584, 4181, 6765, 10946, 17711, 28657, 46368, 75025, 121393, 196418, 317811, 514229, 832040, 1346269
Fibonacci numbers: $F(n) = F(n-1) + F(n-2)$
24. 1, 2, 3, 6, 10, 20, 35, 70, 126, 252, 462, 924, 1716, 3432, 6435, 12870, 24310, 48620, 92378, 184756, 352716, 705432, 1352078, 2704156, 5200300, 10400600, 20058300
Central binomial coefficients: $C(n, \lfloor n/2 \rfloor)$, $n \geq 1$
25. 1, 1, 2, 3, 6, 11, 20, 40, 77, 148, 285, 570, 1120, 2200, 4323, 8498, 16996, 33707, 66844, 132568, 262936, 521549, 1043098, 2077698, 4138400, 8243093
Stern's sequence: $a(n+1)$ is sum of preceding $\left\lceil \frac{\sqrt{8n+1}-1}{2} \right\rceil$ terms, $n \geq 1$
26. 1, 1, 2, 3, 6, 11, 22, 42, 84, 165, 330, 654, 1308, 2605, 5210, 10398, 20796, 41550, 83100, 166116, 332232, 664299, 1328598, 2656866, 5313732, 10626810
Narayana-Zidek-Capell numbers: $a(2n) = 2a(2n-1)$, $a(2n+1) = 2a(2n) - a(n)$
27. 1, 1, 1, 2, 3, 6, 11, 23, 46, 98, 207, 451, 983, 2179, 4850, 10905, 24631, 56011, 127912, 293547, 676157, 1563372, 3626149, 8436379, 19680277, 46026618, 107890609
Wedderburn-Etherington numbers: interpretations of X^n , $n \geq 1$
28. 1, 1, 1, 2, 3, 6, 11, 23, 47, 106, 235, 551, 1301, 3159, 7741, 19320, 48629, 123867, 317955, 823065, 2144505, 5623756, 14828074, 39299897, 104636890, 279793450
Number of trees with n unlabeled nodes, $n \geq 1$
29. 2, 3, 6, 20, 168, 7581, 7828354, 2414682040998, 56130437228687557907788
Dedekind numbers: number of monotone Boolean functions of n variables, $n \geq 0$

-
30. 1, 1, 2, 3, 7, 16, 54, 243, 2038, 33120, 1182004, 87723296, 12886193064,
3633057074584, 1944000150734320, 1967881448329407496
Number of Euler graphs or 2-graphs with n nodes, $n \geq 1$
31. 0, 0, 1, 1, 2, 3, 7, 18, 41, 123, 367, 1288, 4878
Number of alternating prime knots with n crossings, $n \geq 1$
32. 0, 0, 1, 1, 2, 3, 7, 21, 49, 165, 552, 2176, 9988
Number of prime knots with n crossings, $n \geq 1$
33. 1, 1, 2, 3, 8, 14, 42, 81, 262, 538, 1828, 3926, 13820, 30694, 110954, 252939, 933458,
2172830, 8152860, 19304190, 73424650, 176343390, 678390116, 1649008456
Meandric numbers: ways a river can cross a road n times, $n \geq 1$
34. 0, 1, 2, 4, 5, 8, 9, 10, 13, 16, 17, 18, 20, 25, 26, 29, 32, 34, 36, 37, 40, 41, 45, 49, 50,
52, 53, 58, 61, 64, 65, 68, 72, 73, 74, 80, 81, 82, 85, 89, 90, 97, 98, 100, 101, 104,
106
Numbers that are sums of 2 squares
35. 1, 2, 4, 5, 8, 10, 14, 15, 16, 21, 22, 25, 26, 28, 33, 34, 35, 36, 38, 40, 42, 46, 48, 49, 50,
53, 57, 60, 62, 64, 65, 70, 77, 80, 81, 83, 85, 86, 90, 91, 92, 100, 104, 107
MacMahon's prime numbers of measurement, or segmented numbers
36. 1, 2, 4, 6, 10, 14, 20, 26, 36, 46, 60, 74, 94, 114, 140, 166, 202, 238, 284, 330, 390,
450, 524, 598, 692, 786, 900, 1014, 1154, 1294, 1460, 1626, 1828, 2030, 2268, 2506
Binary partitions (partitions of $2n$ into powers of 2), $n \geq 0$
37. 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, 1024, 2048, 4096, 8192, 16384, 32768, 65536,
131072, 262144, 524288, 1048576, 2097152, 4194304, 8388608, 16777216,
33554432, 67108864, 134217728, 268435456, 536870912
Powers of 2
38. 1, 1, 2, 4, 9, 20, 48, 115, 286, 719, 1842, 4766, 12486, 32973, 87811, 235381,
634847, 1721159, 4688676, 12826228, 35221832, 97055181, 268282855, 743724984,
2067174645
Number of rooted trees with n unlabeled nodes, $n \geq 1$
39. 1, 1, 2, 4, 9, 21, 51, 127, 323, 835, 2188, 5798, 15511, 41835, 113634, 310572, 853467,
2356779, 6536382, 18199284, 50852019, 142547559, 400763223, 1129760415
Motzkin numbers: ways to join n points on a circle by chords
40. 1, 1, 2, 4, 9, 22, 59, 167, 490, 1486, 4639, 14805, 48107, 158808, 531469, 1799659,
6157068, 21258104, 73996100, 259451116, 951695102, 3251073303
Number of different scores in n -team round-robin tournament, $n \geq 1$
41. 1, 1, 2, 4, 11, 34, 156, 1044, 12346, 274668, 12005168, 1018997864,
165091172592, 50502031367952, 29054155657235488, 31426485969804308768
Number of graphs with n unlabeled nodes, $n \geq 0$
42. 0, 1, 2, 5, 12, 29, 70, 169, 408, 985, 2378, 5741, 13860, 33461, 80782, 195025,
470832, 1136689, 2744210, 6625109, 15994428, 38613965, 93222358, 225058681,
543339720
Pell numbers: $a(n) = 2a(n-1) + a(n-2)$
43. 1, 1, 2, 5, 12, 35, 108, 369, 1285, 4655, 17073, 63600, 238591, 901971, 3426576,
13079255, 50107909, 192622052, 742624232, 2870671950, 11123060678,
43191857688, 168047007728, 654999700403
Polyominoes with n cells, $n \geq 1$
44. 1, 1, 2, 4, 12, 56, 456, 6880, 191536, 9733056, 903753248, 154108311168,
48542114686912, 28401423719122304, 31021002160355166848
Number of outcomes of n -team round-robin tournament, $n \geq 1$
45. 1, 1, 2, 5, 14, 38, 120, 353, 1148, 3527, 11622, 36627, 121622, 389560, 1301140,
4215748, 13976335, 46235800, 155741571, 512559185, 1732007938,
5732533570
Number of ways to fold a strip of n blank stamps, $n \geq 1$

-
46. 1, 1, 2, 5, 14, 42, 132, 429, 1430, 4862, 16796, 58786, 208012, 742900, 2674440, 9694845, 35357670, 129644790, 477638700, 1767263190, 6564120420, 24466267020
Catalan numbers: $C(2n, n)/(n + 1)$, $n \geq 0$
47. 1, 1, 2, 5, 15, 52, 203, 877, 4140, 21147, 115975, 678570, 4213597, 27644437, 190899322, 1382958545, 10480142147, 82864869804, 682076806159, 5832742205057
Bell or exponential numbers: expansion of $e^{(e^x - 1)}$
48. 1, 1, 1, 2, 5, 16, 61, 272, 1385, 7936, 50521, 353792, 2702765, 22368256, 199360981, 1903757312, 19391512145, 209865342976, 2404879675441, 29088885112832
Euler numbers: expansion of $\sec x + \tan x$
49. 0, 2, 6, 12, 20, 30, 42, 56, 72, 90, 110, 132, 156, 182, 210, 240, 272, 306, 342, 380, 420, 462, 506, 552, 600, 650, 702, 756, 812, 870, 930, 992, 1056, 1122, 1190, 1260, 1332
Pronic numbers: $n(n + 1)$, $n \geq 0$
50. 1, 2, 6, 20, 70, 252, 924, 3432, 12870, 48620, 184756, 705432, 2704156, 10400600, 40116600, 155117520, 601080390, 2333606220, 9075135300, 35345263800
Central binomial coefficients: $C(2n, n)$, $n \geq 0$
51. 1, 1, 1, 2, 6, 21, 112, 853, 11117, 261080, 11716571, 1006700565, 164059830476, 50335907869219, 29003487462848061, 31397381142761241960
Number of connected graphs with n unlabeled nodes, $n \geq 0$
52. 1, 2, 6, 22, 101, 573, 3836, 29228, 250749, 2409581, 25598186, 296643390, 3727542188, 50626553988, 738680521142
Kendall–Mann numbers: maximal inversions in permutation of n letters, $n \geq 1$
53. 1, 1, 2, 6, 24, 120, 720, 5040, 40320, 362880, 3628800, 39916800, 479001600, 6227020800, 87178291200, 1307674368000, 20922789888000, 355687428096000, 6402373705728000
Factorial numbers: $n!$, $n \geq 0$
54. 1, 2, 7, 42, 429, 7436, 218348, 10850216, 911835460, 129534272700, 31095744852375, 12611311859677500, 8639383518297652500
Robbins numbers: $\prod_{k=0}^{n-1} (3k + 1)/(n + k)!$, $n \geq 1$
55. 1, 2, 8, 42, 262, 1828, 13820, 110954, 933458, 8152860, 73424650, 678390116, 6405031050, 61606881612, 602188541928, 5969806669034, 59923200729046
Closed meandric numbers: ways a loop can cross a road $2n$ times, $n \geq 1$
56. 1, 2, 8, 48, 384, 3840, 46080, 645120, 10321920, 185794560, 3715891200, 81749606400, 1961990553600, 51011754393600, 1428329123020800, 42849873690624000
Double factorial numbers: $(2n)!! = 2^n n!$, $n \geq 0$
57. 0, 1, 2, 9, 44, 265, 1854, 14833, 133496, 1334961, 14684570, 176214841, 2290792932, 32071101049, 481066515734, 7697064251745, 130850092279664
Derangements: permutations of n elements with no fixed points, $n \geq 1$
58. 1, 2, 16, 272, 7936, 353792, 22368256, 1903757312, 209865342976, 29088885112832, 4951498053124096, 1015423886506852352, 246921480190207983616
Tangent numbers: expansion of $\tan x$
59. 1, 3, 4, 7, 6, 12, 8, 15, 13, 18, 12, 28, 14, 24, 24, 31, 18, 39, 20, 42, 32, 36, 24, 60, 31, 42, 40, 56, 30, 72, 32, 63, 48, 54, 48, 91, 38, 60, 56, 90, 42, 96, 44, 84, 78, 72, 48, 124
 $\sigma(n)$, **sum of the divisors of n ,** $n \geq 1$
60. 1, 3, 4, 7, 9, 12, 13, 16, 19, 21, 25, 27, 28, 31, 36, 37, 39, 43, 48, 49, 52, 57, 61, 63, 64, 67, 73, 75, 76, 79, 81, 84, 91, 93, 97, 100, 103, 108, 109, 111, 112, 117, 121, 124, 127
Numbers of the form $x^2 + xy + y^2$

-
61. 1, 3, 4, 7, 11, 18, 29, 47, 76, 123, 199, 322, 521, 843, 1364, 2207, 3571, 5778, 9349, 15127, 24476, 39603, 64079, 103682, 167761, 271443, 439204, 710647, 1149851, 1860498
Lucas numbers: $L(n) = L(n-1) + L(n-2)$
62. 1, 1, 1, 3, 4, 12, 27, 82, 228, 733, 2282, 7528, 24834, 83898, 285357, 983244, 3412420, 11944614, 42080170, 149197152, 531883768, 1905930975, 6861221666, 24806004996
Number of ways to cut an n -sided polygon into triangles, $n \geq 1$
63. 1, 3, 6, 10, 15, 21, 28, 36, 45, 55, 66, 78, 91, 105, 120, 136, 153, 171, 190, 210, 231, 253, 276, 300, 325, 351, 378, 406, 435, 465, 496, 528, 561, 595, 630, 666, 703, 741, 780
Triangular numbers: $n(n+1)/2, n \geq 1$
64. 1, 3, 6, 11, 17, 25, 34, 44, 55, 72, 85, 106, 127, 151
Shortest Golomb ruler with n marks, $n \geq 2$
65. 1, 3, 6, 13, 24, 48, 86, 160, 282, 500, 859, 1479, 2485, 4167, 6879, 11297, 18334, 29601, 47330, 75278, 118794, 186475, 290783, 451194, 696033, 1068745, 1632658
Number of planar partitions of n , $n \geq 1$
66. 1, 3, 7, 9, 13, 15, 21, 25, 31, 33, 37, 43, 49, 51, 63, 67, 69, 73, 75, 79, 87, 93, 99, 105, 111, 115, 127, 129, 133, 135, 141, 151, 159, 163, 169, 171, 189, 193, 195, 201, 205
Lucky numbers (defined by sieve similar to prime numbers)
67. 1, 3, 7, 19, 47, 130, 343, 951, 2615, 7318, 20491, 57903, 163898, 466199, 1328993, 3799624, 10884049, 31241170, 89814958, 258604642
Number of mappings from n unlabeled points to themselves, $n \geq 1$
68. 1, 3, 9, 25, 65, 161, 385, 897, 2049, 4609, 10241, 22529, 49153, 106497, 229377, 491521, 1048577, 2228225, 4718593, 9961473, 20971521, 44040193, 92274689
Cullen numbers: $n \cdot 2^n + 1, n \geq 0$
69. 1, 3, 9, 27, 81, 243, 729, 2187, 6561, 19683, 59049, 177147, 531441, 1594323, 4782969, 14348907, 43046721, 129140163, 387420489, 1162261467, 3486784401, 10460353203
Powers of 3
70. 1, 3, 9, 33, 139, 718, 4535
Number of topologies or transitive-directed graphs with n unlabeled nodes, $n \geq 1$
71. 1, 1, 3, 11, 45, 197, 903, 4279, 20793, 103049, 518859, 2646723, 13648869, 71039373, 372693519, 1968801519, 10463578353, 55909013009, 300159426963
Schroeder's second problem: ways to interpret $X_1 X_2 \dots X_n, n \geq 1$
72. 1, 3, 11, 50, 274, 1764, 13068, 109584, 1026576, 10628640, 120543840, 1486442880, 19802759040, 283465647360, 4339163001600, 70734282393600, 1223405590579200
Stirling cycle numbers: $\left[\begin{smallmatrix} n \\ 2 \end{smallmatrix} \right], n \geq 2$.
73. 1, 3, 13, 75, 541, 4683, 47293, 545835, 7087261, 102247563, 1622632573, 28091567595, 526858348381, 10641342970443, 230283190977853, 5315654681981355
Preferential arrangements of n things, $n \geq 1$
74. 1, 3, 15, 105, 945, 10395, 135135, 2027025, 34459425, 654729075, 13749310575, 316234143225, 7905853580625, 213458046676875, 6190283353629375
Double factorial numbers: $(2n+1)!! = 1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdot \dots \cdot (2n+1), n \geq 1$
75. 1, 3, 16, 125, 1296, 16807, 262144, 4782969, 100000000, 2357947691, 61917364224, 1792160394037, 56693912375296, 1946195068359375, 72057594037927936
Number of trees with n labeled nodes: $n^{n-2}, n \geq 2$
76. 1, 3, 16, 218, 9608, 1540944, 882033440, 1793359192848, 13027956824399552, 341260431952972580352, 32522909385055886111197440
Directed graphs with n unlabeled nodes, $n \geq 1$

-
77. 1, 1, 3, 17, 155, 2073, 38227, 929569, 28820619, 1109652905, 51943281731, 2905151042481, 191329672483963, 14655626154768697, 1291885088448017715
Genocchi numbers: expansion of $\tan(x/2)$
78. 0, 1, 4, 5, 16, 17, 20, 21, 64, 65, 68, 69, 80, 81, 84, 85, 256, 257, 260, 261, 272, 273, 276, 277, 320, 321, 324, 325, 336, 337, 340, 341, 1024, 1025, 1028, 1029, 1040, 1041
Moser–de Bruijn sequence: sums of distinct powers of 4
79. 4, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 12, 13, 13, 14, 15, 15, 16, 16, 17, 17, 18, 18, 19, 19, 19, 20, 20, 20, 21, 21, 21, 22, 22, 22, 23, 23, 24, 24, 24, 24, 25, 25, 25, 25, 26, 26, 26
Chromatic number of surface of genus n , $n \geq 0$
80. 1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36, 49, 64, 81, 100, 121, 144, 169, 196, 225, 256, 289, 324, 361, 400, 441, 484, 529, 576, 625, 676, 729, 784, 841, 900, 961, 1024, 1089, 1156, 1225, 1296
The squares
81. 1, 4, 10, 19, 31, 46, 64, 85, 109, 136, 166, 199, 235, 274, 316, 361, 409, 460, 514, 571, 631, 694, 760, 829, 901, 976, 1054, 1135, 1219, 1306, 1396, 1489, 1585, 1684, 1786
Centered triangular numbers: $(3n^2 + 3n + 2)/2$, $n \geq 0$
82. 1, 4, 10, 20, 35, 56, 84, 120, 165, 220, 286, 364, 455, 560, 680, 816, 969, 1140, 1330, 1540, 1771, 2024, 2300, 2600, 2925, 3276, 3654, 4060, 4495, 4960, 5456, 5984
Tetrahedral numbers: $C(n + 3, 3)$, $n \geq 0$
83. 1, 1, 4, 26, 236, 2752, 39208, 660032, 12818912, 282137824, 6939897856, 188666182784, 5617349020544, 181790703209728, 6353726042486272
Schroeder's fourth problem: families of subsets of an n set, $n \geq 1$
84. 1, 4, 29, 355, 6942, 209527, 9535241, 642779354, 63260289423, 8977053873043, 1816846038736192, 519355571065774021
Number of transitive-directed graphs with n labeled nodes, $n \geq 1$
85. 1, 5, 12, 22, 35, 51, 70, 92, 117, 145, 176, 210, 247, 287, 330, 376, 425, 477, 532, 590, 651, 715, 782, 852, 925, 1001, 1080, 1162, 1247, 1335, 1426, 1520, 1617, 1717, 1820
Pentagonal numbers: $n(3n - 1)/2$, $n \geq 1$
86. 1, 5, 13, 25, 41, 61, 85, 113, 145, 181, 221, 265, 313, 365, 421, 481, 545, 613, 685, 761, 841, 925, 1013, 1105, 1201, 1301, 1405, 1513, 1625, 1741, 1861, 1985, 2113, 2245
Centered square numbers: $n^2 + (n - 1)^2$, $n \geq 1$
87. 1, 5, 14, 30, 55, 91, 140, 204, 285, 385, 506, 650, 819, 1015, 1240, 1496, 1785, 2109, 2470, 2870, 3311, 3795, 4324, 4900, 5525, 6201, 6930, 7714, 8555, 9455, 10416
Square pyramidal numbers: $n(n + 1)(2n + 1)/6$, $n \geq 1$
88. 1, 5, 25, 125, 625, 3125, 15625, 78125, 390625, 1953125, 9765625, 48828125, 244140625, 1220703125, 6103515625, 30517578125, 152587890625, 762939453125, 3814697265625
Powers of 5
89. 1, 5, 52, 1522, 145984, 48464496, 56141454464, 229148550030864, 3333310786076963968, 174695272746749919580928
Number of possible relations on n unlabeled points, $n \geq 1$
90. 1, 1, 5, 61, 1385, 50521, 2702765, 199360981, 19391512145, 2404879675441, 370371188237525, 69348874393137901, 15514534163557086905, 4087072509293123892361
Euler numbers: expansion of $\sec x$
91. 1, 5, 109, 32297, 2147321017, 9223372023970362989, 170141183460469231667123699502996689125
Number of ways to cover an n set, $n \geq 1$

-
92. 1, 6, 15, 28, 45, 66, 91, 120, 153, 190, 231, 276, 325, 378, 435, 496, 561, 630, 703, 780, 861, 946, 1035, 1128, 1225, 1326, 1431, 1540, 1653, 1770, 1891, 2016, 2145, 2278
Hexagonal numbers: $n(2n - 1)$, $n \geq 1$
93. 1, 6, 25, 90, 301, 966, 3025, 9330, 28501, 86526, 261625, 788970, 2375101, 7141686, 21457825, 64439010, 193448101, 580606446, 1742343625, 5228079450, 15686335501
Stirling subset numbers: $\left\{ \begin{matrix} n \\ 3 \end{matrix} \right\}$, $n \geq 3$
94. 6, 28, 496, 8128, 33550336, 8589869056, 137438691328, 2305843008139952128, 2658455991569831744654692615953842176
Perfect numbers: equal to the sum of their proper divisors
95. 1, 8, 21, 40, 65, 96, 133, 176, 225, 280, 341, 408, 481, 560, 645, 736, 833, 936, 1045, 1160, 1281, 1408, 1541, 1680, 1825, 1976, 2133, 2296, 2465, 2640, 2821, 3008, 3201
Octagonal numbers: $n(3n - 2)$, $n \geq 1$
96. 1, 8, 27, 64, 125, 216, 343, 512, 729, 1000, 1331, 1728, 2197, 2744, 3375, 4096, 4913, 5832, 6859, 8000, 9261, 10648, 12167, 13824, 15625, 17576, 19683, 21952, 24389
The cubes
97. 1, -24, 252, -1472, 4830, -6048, -16744, 84480, -113643, -115920, 534612, -370944, -577738, 401856, 1217160, 987136, -6905934, 2727432, 10661420
Ramanujan τ function
98. 341, 561, 645, 1105, 1387, 1729, 1905, 2047, 2465, 2701, 2821, 3277, 4033, 4369, 4371, 4681, 5461, 6601, 7957, 8321, 8481, 8911, 10261, 10585, 11305, 12801, 13741, 13747
Sarrus numbers: pseudo-primes to base 2
99. 561, 1105, 1729, 2465, 2821, 6601, 8911, 10585, 15841, 29341, 41041, 46657, 52633, 62745, 63973, 75361, 101101, 115921, 126217, 162401, 172081, 188461, 252601, 278545
Carmichael numbers
100. 1, 744, 196884, 21493760, 864299970, 20245856256, 333202640600, 4252023300096, 44656994071935, 401490886656000, 3176440229784420, 22567393309593600
Coefficients of the modular function j

For more information about these sequences and tens of thousands of others, including formulae and references, see “The On-Line Encyclopedia of Integer Sequences”, published electronically at www.research.att.com/~njas/sequences/.

1.3 SERIES AND PRODUCTS

1.3.1 DEFINITIONS

If $\{a_n\}$ is a sequence of numbers or functions, then

1. $S_N = \sum_{n=1}^N a_n = a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_N$ is the N^{th} *partial sum*.
2. For an infinite series: $S = \lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} S_N = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ (when the limit exists). Then S is called the sum of the series.

3. The series is said to *converge* if the limit exists and *diverge* if it does not.
4. If $a_n = b_n x^n$, where b_n is independent of x , then S is called a *power series*.
5. If $a_n = (-1)^n |a_n|$, then S is called an *alternating series*.
6. If $\sum |a_n|$ converges, then the series *converges absolutely*.
7. If S_N converges, but not absolutely, then it *converges conditionally*.

EXAMPLES

1. The *harmonic series* $S = 1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} + \dots$ diverges. The corresponding alternating series (called the *alternating harmonic series*) $S = 1 - \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} - \dots + (-1)^{n-1} \frac{1}{n} + \dots$ converges (conditionally) to $\log 2$.
2. The harmonic numbers are $H_n = \sum_{k=1}^n \frac{1}{k}$. The first few values are $\{1, \frac{3}{2}, \frac{11}{6}, \frac{25}{12}, \dots\}$. Asymptotically, $H_n \sim \ln n + \gamma + \frac{1}{2n}$.
3. $S_N = \sum_{n=0}^N x^n = \frac{1 - x^{N+1}}{1 - x}$ if $x \neq 1$.

1.3.2 GENERAL PROPERTIES

1. Adding or removing a finite number of terms does not affect the convergence or divergence of an infinite series.
2. The terms of an absolutely convergent series may be rearranged in any manner without affecting its value.
3. A conditionally convergent series can be made to converge to any value by suitably rearranging its terms.
4. If the component series are convergent, then

$$\sum (\alpha a_n + \beta b_n) = \alpha \sum a_n + \beta \sum b_n.$$

5. $\left(\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n \right) \left(\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n \right) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n$ where $c_n = a_0 b_n + a_1 b_{n-1} + \dots + a_n b_0$.
6. Summation by parts: let $\sum a_n$ and $\sum b_n$ converge. Then

$$\sum a_n b_n = \sum S_n (b_n - b_{n+1})$$

where S_n is the n^{th} partial sum of $\sum a_n$.

7. A power series may be integrated and differentiated term-by-term within its interval of convergence.
8. *Schwarz inequality*:

$$\sum |a_n| |b_n| \leq \left(\sum |a_n|^2 \right)^{1/2} \left(\sum |b_n|^2 \right)^{1/2}$$

9. *Holder's inequality*: when $1/p + 1/q = 1$ and $p, q > 1$

$$\sum |a_n b_n| \leq \left(\sum |a_n|^p \right)^{1/p} \left(\sum |b_n|^q \right)^{1/q}$$

10. *Minkowski's inequality*: when $p \geq 1$

$$\left(\sum |a_n + b_n|^p \right)^{1/p} \leq \left(\sum |a_n|^p \right)^{1/p} + \left(\sum |b_n|^p \right)^{1/p}$$

11. *Arithmetic mean–geometric mean inequality*: If $a_i > 0$ then

$$\frac{a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_n}{n} \geq (a_1 a_2 \dots a_n)^{1/n}$$

12. *Kantorovich inequality*: Suppose that $0 < x_1 < x_2 < \dots < x_n$. If $\lambda_i \geq 0$ and $\sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i = 1$ then

$$\left(\sum \lambda_i x_i \right) \left(\sum \frac{\lambda_i}{x_i} \right) \leq A^2 G^{-2}$$

where $A = \frac{1}{2} (x_1 + x_n)$ and $G = \sqrt{x_1 x_n}$.

EXAMPLES

- Let T be the alternating harmonic series S rearranged so that each positive term is followed by the next two negative terms. By combining each positive term of T with the succeeding negative term, we find that $T_{3N} = \frac{1}{2} S_{2N}$. Hence, $T = \frac{1}{2} \log 2$.
- The series $1 + \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{5} - \frac{1}{6} + \frac{1}{7} + \frac{1}{8} - \frac{1}{9} + \dots$ diverges, whereas

$$\left(1 + \frac{1}{3} - \frac{1}{2} \right) + \left(\frac{1}{5} + \frac{1}{7} - \frac{1}{4} \right) + \dots + \left(\frac{1}{4n-3} + \frac{1}{4n-1} - \frac{1}{2n} \right) + \dots$$

converges to $\log(2\sqrt{2})$.

1.3.3 CONVERGENCE TESTS

- Comparison test*: If $|a_n| \leq b_n$ and $\sum b_n$ converges, then $\sum a_n$ converges.
- Limit test*: If $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n \neq 0$, or the limit does not exist, then $\sum a_n$ is divergent.
- Ratio test*: Let $\rho = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left| \frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n} \right|$. If $\rho < 1$, the series converges absolutely. If $\rho > 1$, the series diverges.
- Cauchy root test*: Let $\sigma = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} |a_n|^{1/n}$. If $\sigma < 1$, the series converges. If $\sigma > 1$, it diverges.
- Integral test*: Let $|a_n| = f(n)$ with $f(x)$ being monotone decreasing, and $\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} f(x) = 0$. Then $\int_A^\infty f(x) dx$ and $\sum a_n$ both converge or both diverge for any $A > 0$.

-
6. *Gauss's test*: If $\left| \frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n} \right| = 1 - \frac{p}{n} + \frac{A_n}{n^q}$ where $q > 1$ and the sequence $\{A_n\}$ is bounded, then the series is absolutely convergent if and only if $p > 1$.
7. *Alternating series test*: If $|a_n|$ tends monotonically to 0, then $\sum (-1)^n |a_n|$ converges.

EXAMPLES

- For $S = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} n^c x^n$, $\rho = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (1 + \frac{1}{n})^c x = x$. Hence, using the ratio test, S converges for $0 < x < 1$ and any value of c .
- For $S = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{5^n}{n^{2\sigma}}$, $\sigma = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (\frac{5^n}{n^{2\sigma}})^{1/n} = 5$. Therefore the series diverges.
- For $S = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} n^{-t}$, consider $f(x) = x^{-t}$. Then

$$\int_1^{\infty} f(x) dx = \int_1^{\infty} \frac{dx}{x^t} = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{t-1} & \text{for } t > 1 \\ \text{diverges} & \text{for } t \leq 1 \end{cases}$$

Hence, S converges for $t > 1$.

- The sum $\sum_{n=2}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n(\log n)^s}$ converges for $s > 1$ by the integral test.
- Let $a_n = \frac{(c)_n}{n!} = \frac{c(c+1)\dots(c+n-1)}{n!}$ where c is not 0 or a negative integer. Then $|a_{n+1}/a_n| = 1 - (c+1)/n + (c+1)/n^2(1+1/n)$. By Gauss's test, the series converges absolutely if and only if $c > 0$.

1.3.4 TYPES OF SERIES

1.3.4.1 Bessel series

- Fourier–Bessel series*: $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n J_{\nu}(j_{\nu,n} z)$ ($j_{\nu,k}$ is a zero of $J_{\nu}(x)$)
- Neumann series*: $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n J_{\nu+n}(z)$
- Kapteyn series*: $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n J_{\nu+n}[(\nu+n)z]$
- Schlömilch series*: $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n J_{\nu}(nz)$

EXAMPLES

- $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n!} J_{\nu+n}(2) = \frac{1}{\Gamma(\nu+1)}$
- $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} J_n(nz) = \frac{1}{2} \frac{z}{1-z}$ for $0 < z < 1$
- $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{n+1} J_0(nz) = \frac{1}{2}$ for $0 < z < \pi$

1.3.4.2 Dirichlet series

These are series of the form $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{a_n}{n^x}$. They converge for $x > x_0$, where x_0 is the *abscissa of convergence*. Assuming the limits exist:

1. If $\sum a_n$ diverges, then $x_0 = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\log |a_1 + \dots + a_n|}{\log n}$.
2. If $\sum a_n$ converges, then $x_0 = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\log |a_{n+1} + a_{n+2} + \dots|}{\log n}$.

EXAMPLES

1. *Riemann zeta function*: $\zeta(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^x}$, $x_0 = 1$
2. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\mu(n)}{n^x} = \frac{1}{\zeta(x)}$, $x_0 = 1$ ($\mu(n)$ denotes the Möbius function; see [Section 2.4.9](#))
3. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{d(n)}{n^x} = \zeta^2(x)$, $x_0 = 1$ ($d(n)$ is the number of divisors of n ; see page 128)

1.3.4.3 Fourier series

If $f(x)$ satisfies certain properties, then (see page 48)

$$f(x) = \frac{a_0}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(a_n \cos \frac{n\pi x}{L} + b_n \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L} \right) \quad (1.3.1)$$

1. If $f(x)$ has the Laplace transform $F(k) = \int_0^{\infty} e^{-xk} f(x) dx$, then

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} F(k) \cos(kt) &= \frac{1}{2} \int_0^{\infty} \frac{\cos(t) - e^{-x}}{\cosh(x) - \cos(t)} f(x) dx, \\ \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} F(k) \sin(kt) &= \frac{1}{2} \int_0^{\infty} \frac{f(x)}{\cosh(x) - \cos(t)} dx. \end{aligned} \quad (1.3.2)$$

2. Since the cosine transform of $(\cosh(x) - \cos(t))^{-1}$ with respect to x is $\pi \csc(t) \operatorname{csch}(\pi y) \sinh(\pi - t)y$, we find that

$$\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{k \sin(kt)}{k^2 + y^2} = \frac{\pi \sinh(\pi - t)y}{2 \sinh(\pi y)}.$$

3. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\sin(2n\pi x)}{n^{2k+1}} = \frac{(-1)^{k-1}}{2} \frac{(2\pi)^{2k+1}}{2k+1} B_{2k+1}(x)$, for $0 < x < \frac{1}{2}$
4. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\cos(2n\pi x)}{n^{2k}} = \frac{(-1)^{k-1}}{2} \frac{(2\pi)^{2k}}{(2k)!} B_{2k}(x)$ for $0 < x < \frac{1}{2}$
5. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\sin((2n+1)\pi x - \pi k/2)}{(2n+1)^{k+1}} = \frac{\pi^{k+1}}{4k!} E_k(x)$
6. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a^n \sin(nx) = \frac{a \sin(x)}{1 - 2a \cos(x) + a^2}$ for $|a| < 1$
7. $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a^n \cos(nx) = \frac{1 - a \cos(x)}{1 - 2a \cos(x) + a^2}$ for $|a| < 1$

1.3.4.4 Hypergeometric series

The hypergeometric function is

$${}_pF_q \left(\begin{matrix} a_1 & a_2 & \dots & a_p \\ b_1 & b_2 & \dots & b_q \end{matrix} \middle| x \right) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(a_1)_n (a_2)_n \dots (a_p)_n x^n}{(b_1)_n (b_2)_n \dots (b_q)_n n!} \quad (1.3.3)$$

where $(a)_n = \Gamma(a+n)/\Gamma(a)$ is the shifted factorial. Any infinite series $\sum A_n$ with A_{n+1}/A_n a rational function of n is a hypergeometric series. These include series of products and quotients of binomial coefficients.

EXAMPLES

$$1. \quad {}_2F_1 \left(\begin{matrix} a, & b \\ c \end{matrix} \middle| 1 \right) = \frac{\Gamma(c)\Gamma(c-a-b)}{\Gamma(c-a)\Gamma(c-b)} \quad (\text{Gauss})$$

$$2. \quad {}_3F_2 \left(\begin{matrix} -n, & a, & b \\ c, & 1+a+b-c-n \end{matrix} \middle| 1 \right) = \frac{(c-a)_n (c-b)_n}{(c)_n (c-a-b)_n} \quad (\text{Saalschutz})$$

$$3. \quad {}_4F_3 \left(\begin{matrix} a, & 1+a/2, & b, & -n \\ a/2, & 1+a-b, & 1+2b-n \end{matrix} \middle| 1 \right) = \frac{(a-2b)_n (-b)_n}{(1+a-b)_n (-2b)_n} \quad (\text{Bailey})$$

$$4. \quad \sum_{m=0}^{2n} (-1)^m \frac{\binom{2n}{m} \binom{2n+m+1}{m}}{\binom{4n+2m+2}{2m}} (3+2\sqrt{2})^m = \frac{(3/4)_n (5/4)_n}{(7/8)_n (9/8)_n}$$

1.3.4.5 Power series

1. The values of x , for which the power series $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n$ converges, form an interval (*interval of convergence*) which may or may not include one or both endpoints.
2. A power series may be integrated and differentiated term-by-term within its interval of convergence.
3. Note that $[1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n x^n]^{-1} = 1 - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n x^n$, where $b_1 = a_1$ and $b_n = a_n + \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} b_{n-k} a_k$ for $n \geq 2$.
4. *Inversion of power series:* If $s = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n x^n$, then $x = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} A_n s^n$, where $A_1 = 1/a_1$, $A_2 = -a_2/a_1^3$, $A_3 = (2a_2^2 - a_1 a_3)/a_1^5$, $A_4 = (5a_1 a_2 a_3 - a_1^2 a_4 - 5a_2^3)/a_1^7$, $A_5 = (6a_1^2 a_2 a_4 + 3a_1^2 a_3^2 + 14a_2^4 - a_1^3 a_5 - 21a_1 a_2^2 a_3)/a_1^9$.

1.3.4.6 Taylor series

1. Taylor series in 1 variable:

$$f(a+x) = \sum_{n=0}^N \frac{f^{(n)}(a)}{n!} x^n + R_N$$

or

$$f(x) = f(a) + f'(a)(x-a) + \frac{f''(a)}{2!}(x-a)^2 + \frac{f'''(a)}{3!}(x-a)^3 + \dots$$

or, specializing to $a = 0$, results in the MacLaurin series

$$f(x) = f(0) + f'(0)x + \frac{f''(0)}{2!}x^2 + \frac{f'''(0)}{3!}x^3 + \dots$$

2. Lagrange's form of the remainder:

$$R_N = \frac{x^{N+1}}{(N+1)!} f^{(N+1)}(a + \theta x), \quad \text{for some } 0 < \theta < 1.$$

3. Taylor series in 2 variables:

$$f(a+x, b+y) = f(a, b) + xf_x(a, b) + yf_y(a, b) + \frac{1}{2!} [x^2 f_{xx}(a, b) + 2xy f_{xy}(a, b) + y^2 f_{yy}(a, b)] + \dots$$

4. Taylor series for vectors:

$$f(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{x}) = \sum_{n=0}^N \frac{[(\mathbf{x} \cdot \nabla)^n f](\mathbf{a})}{n!} + R_N(\mathbf{a}) = f(\mathbf{a}) + \mathbf{x} \cdot \nabla f(\mathbf{a}) + \dots$$

EXAMPLES

1. *Binomial series:*

$$(x+y)^\nu = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{\Gamma(\nu+1)}{\Gamma(\nu-n+1)} \frac{x^n y^{\nu-n}}{n!}.$$

When ν is a positive integer, this series terminates at $n = \nu$.

2. $\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-4x}} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(2k)!}{(k!)^2} x^k$ for $|x| < 1/4$
3. $\frac{xe^{xt}}{e^x - 1} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} B_n(t) \frac{x^n}{n!}$
4. $\frac{2e^{xt}}{e^x + 1} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} E_n(t) \frac{x^n}{n!}$
5. $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{x^n}{(n+1)(n+3)} = \frac{1}{x^3} \int_0^x u \, du \int_0^u dt \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} t^n$
 $= \frac{1}{2x^3} [x + \frac{1}{2}x^2 + (1-x^2) \log(1-x)]$ for $|x| < 1$
6. $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{x^k}{k^n} = \text{Li}_n(x)$ (polylogarithm)

1.3.4.7 Telescoping series

If $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} F(n) = 0$, then $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} [F(n) - F(n+1)] = F(1)$. For example,

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(n+1)(n+2)} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left[\frac{1}{n+1} - \frac{1}{n+2} \right] = \frac{1}{2}. \quad (1.3.4)$$

The GWZ algorithm expresses a proposed identity in the form of a telescoping series $\sum_k [F(n+1, k) - F(n, k)] = 0$, then searches for a $G(n, k)$ that satisfies $F(n+1, k) - F(n, k) = G(n, k+1) - G(n, k)$ and $G(n, \pm\infty) = 0$. The search assumes that $G(n, k) = R(n, k)F(n, k-1)$ where $R(n, k)$ is a rational expression in n and k . When R is found, the proposed identity is verified. For example, the Pfaff–Saalschutz identity has the following proof:

$$\sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{(a+k)!(b+k)!(c-a-b+n-1-k)!}{(k+1)!(n-k)!(c+k)!} = \frac{(c-a+n)!(c-b+n)!}{(n+1)!(c+n)!},$$

$$R(n, k) = -\frac{(b+k)(a+k)}{(c-b+n+1)(c-a+n+1)}.$$

1.3.4.8 Other types of series

1. *Arithmetic series:*

$$\sum_{n=1}^N (a+nd) = Na + \frac{1}{2}N(N+1)d.$$

2. *Arithmetic power series:*

$$\sum_{n=0}^N (a+nb)x^n = \frac{a - (a+bN)x^{N+1}}{1-x} + \frac{bx(1-x^N)}{(1-x)^2}, \quad (x \neq 1).$$

3. *Geometric series:*

$$1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + \cdots = \frac{1}{1-x}, \quad (|x| < 1).$$

4. *Arithmetic–geometric series:*

$$a + (a+b)x + (a+2b)x^2 + (a+3b)x^3 + \cdots = \frac{a}{1-x} + \frac{bx}{(1-x)^2}, \quad (|x| < 1).$$

5. *Combinatorial sums:*

- (a) $\sum_{k=0}^n \binom{x-k}{n-k} = \binom{x+1}{n}$
- (b) $\sum_{k=-\infty}^m (-1)^k \binom{x}{k} = (-1)^m \binom{x-1}{m}$
- (c) $\sum_{k=0}^n \binom{k+m}{k} = \binom{m+n+1}{n}$
- (d) $\sum_{k=-\infty}^m (-1)^k \binom{x+m}{k} = \binom{-x}{m}$
- (e) $\sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} \binom{x}{m+k} \binom{y}{n-k} = \binom{x+y}{m+n}$
- (f) $\sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} \binom{l}{m+k} \binom{x}{n+k} = \binom{l+x}{l-m+n}$

- (g) $\sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} (-1)^k \binom{l}{m+k} \binom{x+k}{n} = (-1)^{l+m} \binom{x-m}{n-l}$
 (h) $\sum_{k=-\infty}^l (-1)^k \binom{l-k}{m} \binom{x}{k-n} = (-1)^{l+m} \binom{x-m-l}{l-m-n}$
 (i) $\sum_{k=0}^l \binom{l-k}{m} \binom{q+k}{n} = \binom{l+q+1}{m+n+1}$ (for $m \geq q$)

6. *Generating functions:*

- (a) Bessel functions: $\sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} J_k(x) z^k = \exp\left(\frac{1}{2} x \frac{z^2-1}{z}\right)$
 (b) Chebyshev polynomials: $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} T_n(x) z^n = \frac{z(z+2x)}{2x z - z^2 - 1}$
 (c) Hermite polynomials: $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{H_n(x)}{n!} z^n = \exp(2xz - z^2)$
 (d) Laguerre polynomials: $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} L_n^{(\alpha)}(x) z^n = (1-z)^{-\alpha-1} \exp\left[\frac{xz}{z-1}\right]$
 (e) Legendre polynomials: $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} P_n(z) x^n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-xz+zx^2}}$, for $|x| < 1$

7. *Multiple series:*

- (a) $\sum \frac{(-1)^{l+m+n}}{\sqrt{(l+1/6)^2 + (m+1/6)^2 + (n+1/6)^2}} = \sqrt{3}$
 where $-\infty < l, m, n < \infty$ and they are not all zero
 (b) $\sum \frac{1}{(m^2+n^2)^z} = 4\beta(z)\zeta(z)$ for $-\infty < m, n < \infty$ not both zero
 (c) $\sum_{m,n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{n!} \frac{\Gamma(n+1/2)}{\Gamma(m+n+1/2)} z^{m+n} = \sqrt{\pi} e^z \frac{\operatorname{erf}(\sqrt{z-z})}{\sqrt{z-z}}$ for $z > 0$
 (d) $\sum_{m,n=1}^{\infty} \frac{m^2-n^2}{(m^2+n^2)^2} = \frac{\pi}{4}$
 (e) $\sum \frac{1}{k_1^2 k_2^2 \dots k_n^2} = \frac{\pi^{2n}}{(2n+1)!}$ for $1 \leq k_1 < \dots < k_n < \infty$

8. *Theta series:*

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} e^{n^2 \pi i t + 2niz} = \sqrt{\frac{i}{t}} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} e^{(z-n\pi)^2 / \pi i t}$$

9. *Lagrange series:* If $f(z)$ is analytic at $z = z_0$, $f(z_0) = w_0$, and $f'(z_0) \neq 0$, then the equation $w = f(z)$ has the unique solution $z = F(w)$. If both functions are expanded

$$\begin{aligned} f(z) &= f_0 + f_1(z - z_0) + f_2(z - z_0)^2 + \dots \\ F(w) &= F_0 + F_1(w - w_0) + F_2(w - w_0)^2 + \dots \end{aligned} \tag{1.3.5}$$

with $F_0 = F(w_0) = z$, then

$$F_j = \frac{1}{j!} \left[\frac{d^{j-1}}{dz^{j-1}} \left\{ \frac{z - z_0}{f(z) - f_0} \right\}^j \right]_{z=z_0} \tag{1.3.6}$$

For example: $F_1 = \frac{1}{f_1}$, $F_2 = -\frac{f_2}{f_1^3}$, $F_3 = \frac{2f_2^2 - f_1 f_3}{f_1^5}$, ...

1.3.5 SUMMATION FORMULAE

1. *Euler–MacLaurin summation formula:* As $n \rightarrow \infty$,

$$\sum_{k=0}^n f(k) \sim \frac{1}{2}f(n) + \int_0^n f(x) dx + C + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{j+1} B_{j+1} \frac{f^{(j)}(n)}{(j+1)!}$$

where B_j is the j^{th} Bernoulli number and

$$C = \lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} \left[\sum_{j=1}^m (-1)^j B_{j+1} \frac{f^{(j)}(0)}{(j+1)!} + \frac{1}{2}f(0) + \frac{(-1)^m}{(m+1)!} \int_0^{\infty} B_{m+1}(x - [x]) f^{(m+1)}(x) dx \right].$$

2. *Poisson summation formula:* If f is continuous,

$$\frac{1}{2}f(0) + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} f(n) = \int_0^{\infty} f(x) dx + 2 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left[\int_0^{\infty} f(x) \cos(2n\pi x) dx \right].$$

3. *Plana's formula:*

$$\sum_{k=1}^n f(k) = \frac{1}{2}f(n) + \int_a^n f(x) dx + \sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{j-1} B_j \frac{f^{(2j+1)}(n)}{2j!}$$

where f is analytic, a is a constant dependent on f , and B_j is the j^{th} Bernoulli number.

EXAMPLES

1. $\sum_{k=1}^n \frac{1}{k} \sim \log n + \gamma + \frac{1}{2n} - \frac{B_2}{2n^2} - \dots$ where γ is Euler's constant.

2. $1 + 2 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} e^{-n^2 x} = \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{x}} \left[1 + 2 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} e^{-\pi^2 n^2 / x} \right]$ (Jacobi)

1.3.6 IMPROVING CONVERGENCE: SHANKS TRANSFORMATION

Let s_n be the n^{th} partial sum. The sequences $\{S(s_n)\}$, $\{S(S(s_n))\}$, \dots often converge successively more rapidly to the same limit as $\{s_n\}$, where

$$S(s_n) = \frac{s_{n+1}s_{n-1} - s_n^2}{s_{n+1} + s_{n-1} - 2s_n}. \tag{1.3.7}$$

EXAMPLE For $s_n = \sum_{k=0}^n (-1)^k z^k$, we find $S(s_n) = \frac{1}{1+z}$ for all n .

1.3.7 SUMMABILITY METHODS

Unique values can be assigned to divergent series in a variety of ways which preserve the values of convergent series.

1. Abel summation:
$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n = \lim_{r \rightarrow 1^-} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n r^n.$$

2. Cesaro ($C, 1$)-summation:
$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n = \lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{s_0 + s_1 + \dots + s_N}{N + 1}$$

where $s_n = \sum_{m=0}^n a_m$.

EXAMPLES

(a) $1 - 1 + 1 - 1 + \dots = \frac{1}{2}$ (in the sense of Abel summation)

(b) $1 - 1 + 0 + 1 - 1 + 0 + 1 - \dots = \frac{1}{3}$ (in the sense of Cesaro summation)

1.3.8 OPERATIONS WITH POWER SERIES

Let $y = a_1x + a_2x^2 + a_3x^3 + \dots$, and let $z = z(y) = b_1x + b_2x^2 + b_3x^3 + \dots$

| $z(y)$ | b_0 | b_1 | b_2 | b_3 |
|----------------|-------|-------------------|--------------------------------------|---|
| $1/(1-y)$ | 1 | a_1 | $a_1^2 + a_2$ | $a_1^3 + 2a_1a_2 + a_3$ |
| $\sqrt{1+y}$ | 1 | $\frac{1}{2}a_1$ | $-\frac{1}{8}a_1^2 + \frac{1}{2}a_2$ | $\frac{1}{16}a_1^3 - \frac{1}{4}a_1a_2 + \frac{1}{2}a_3$ |
| $(1+y)^{-1/2}$ | 1 | $-\frac{1}{2}a_1$ | $\frac{3}{8}a_1^2 - \frac{1}{2}a_2$ | $-\frac{5}{16}a_1^3 + \frac{3}{4}a_1a_2 - \frac{1}{2}a_3$ |
| e^y | 1 | a_1 | $\frac{1}{2}a_1^2 + a_2$ | $\frac{1}{6}a_1^3 + a_1a_2 + a_3$ |
| $\log(1+y)$ | 0 | a_1 | $a_2 - \frac{1}{2}a_1^2$ | $a_3 - a_1a_2 + \frac{1}{3}a_1^3$ |
| $\sin y$ | 0 | a_1 | a_2 | $-\frac{1}{6}a_1^3 + a_3$ |
| $\cos y$ | 1 | 0 | $-\frac{1}{2}a_1^2$ | $-a_1a_2$ |
| $\tan y$ | 0 | a_1 | a_2 | $\frac{1}{3}a_1^3 + a_3$ |

1.3.9 MISCELLANEOUS SUMS AND SERIES

1.
$$\sum_{k=1}^n (-1)^{k+1} k^j = \frac{1}{2}(-1)^{n+1} [E_j(n+1) + (-1)^n E_j]$$

2.
$$\sum_{k=1}^n \frac{1}{k(k+1)(k+2)} = \frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{2(n+1)(n+2)}$$

3.
$$\sum_{k=1}^n \frac{k m^k}{(k+m)!} = \frac{1}{(m-1)!} - \frac{m^{n+1}}{(m+n)!}$$

-
4. $\sum_{k=0}^{2n} (-1)^k \binom{2n}{k}^{-1} = \frac{2n+1}{n+1}$
 5. $\sum_{k=0}^n \binom{m}{k} \binom{n}{k} \binom{m+n+k}{m+n} = \binom{m+n}{m}^2$
 6. $\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \frac{1}{4^k} \operatorname{sech}^2 \frac{x}{2^k} = \frac{1}{4^n} \operatorname{csch}^2 \frac{x}{2^n} - \operatorname{csch}^2 x$
 7. $\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} (-1)^k \cos^n \frac{\pi k}{n} = \frac{n}{2^{n-1}}$, $\sum_{k=0}^n \sec \frac{\pi k}{n} = 0$, $(k \neq n/2)$
 8. $\sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(k+a)(k+b)} = \frac{\pi}{b-a} [\cot(\pi a) - \cot(\pi b)]$
 9. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k^4+a^4} = \frac{1}{2a^4} + \frac{\pi}{2a^3\sqrt{2}} \frac{\sinh(a\pi\sqrt{2})+\sin(a\pi\sqrt{2})}{\cosh(a\pi\sqrt{2})-\cos(a\pi\sqrt{2})}$
 10. $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{k}{e^{2\pi k}-1} = \frac{1}{24} - \frac{1}{8\pi}$
 11. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k(k+1)} = 1$
 12. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k(k+1)(k+2)} = \frac{1}{4}$
 13. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k(k+1)(k+2)(k+3)} = \frac{1}{18}$
 14. $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k(k+1)\cdots(k+p)} = \frac{1}{p \cdot p!}$
 15. The series $\sum_{k=3}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k \log k (\log \log k)^2}$ converges to 38.43... so slowly that it requires $10^{3.14 \cdot 10^{86}}$ terms to give two-decimal accuracy
 16. The series $\sum_{k=3}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k \log k (\log \log k)}$ diverges, but the partial sums exceed 10 only after a googolplex of terms have appeared
 17. $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k k^2}{k^3+1} = \frac{1}{3} [1 - \ln 2 + \pi \operatorname{sech}(\pi\sqrt{3}/2)]$

1.3.10 INFINITE SERIES

1.3.10.1 Algebraic functions

$$(x+y)^n = x^n + \binom{n}{1} x^{n-1} y + \binom{n}{2} x^{n-2} y^2 + \dots$$

$$(1 \pm x)^n = 1 \pm \binom{n}{1} x + \binom{n}{2} x^2 \pm \binom{n}{3} x^3 + \dots, \quad (x^2 < 1).$$

$$(1 \pm x)^{-n} = 1 \mp \binom{n}{1} x + \binom{n+1}{2} x^2 \mp \binom{n+2}{3} x^3 + \dots, \quad (x^2 < 1).$$

$$\sqrt{1+x} = 1 + \frac{1}{2}x - \frac{1}{8}x^2 + \frac{1}{16}x^3 - \frac{5}{128}x^4 + \dots, \quad (x^2 < 1).$$

$$(1+x)^{-1/2} = 1 - \frac{1}{2}x + \frac{3}{8}x^2 - \frac{5}{16}x^3 + \frac{35}{128}x^4 + \dots, \quad (x^2 < 1),$$

$$(1 \pm x)^{-1} = 1 \mp x + x^2 \mp x^3 + x^4 \mp x^5 + \dots, \quad (x^2 < 1),$$

$$(1 \pm x)^{-2} = 1 \mp 2x + 3x^2 \mp 4x^3 + 5x^4 \mp 6x^5 + \dots, \quad (x^2 < 1).$$

1.3.10.2 Exponential functions

$$e = 1 + \frac{1}{1!} + \frac{1}{2!} + \dots + \frac{1}{n!} + \dots$$

$$e^x = 1 + \frac{x}{1!} + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \dots + \frac{x^n}{n!} + \dots, \quad (\text{all real values of } x)$$

$$= \frac{1}{1-x} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{x^{n+1}}{n!(x-n)(n+1-x)} \quad (x \text{ not a positive integer})$$

$$= e^a \left[1 + (x-a) + \frac{(x-a)^2}{2!} + \dots + \frac{(x-a)^n}{n!} + \dots \right].$$

$$a^x = 1 + x \log_e a + \frac{(x \log_e a)^2}{2!} + \dots + \frac{(x \log_e a)^n}{n!} + \dots$$

(all real values of x)

1.3.10.3 Logarithmic functions

$$\log x = \frac{x-1}{x} + \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{x-1}{x} \right)^2 + \dots + \frac{1}{n} \left(\frac{x-1}{x} \right)^n + \dots, \quad (x > 1/2),$$

$$= (x-1) - \frac{1}{2}(x-1)^2 + \frac{1}{3}(x-1)^3 - \dots, \quad (2 \geq x > 0),$$

$$= 2 \left[\frac{x-1}{x+1} + \frac{1}{3} \left(\frac{x-1}{x+1} \right)^3 + \frac{1}{5} \left(\frac{x-1}{x+1} \right)^5 + \dots \right], \quad (x > 0),$$

$$= \log a + \frac{(x-a)}{a} - \frac{(x-a)^2}{2a^2} + \frac{(x-a)^3}{3a^2} - \dots, \quad (0 < x \leq 2a).$$

$$\log(1+x) = x - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{x^4}{4} + \dots, \quad -1 < x \leq 1.$$

$$\log(n+1) = \log(n-1) + 2 \left[\frac{1}{n} + \frac{1}{3n^3} + \frac{1}{5n^5} + \dots \right].$$

$$\log(a+x) = \log a + 2 \left[\frac{x}{2a+x} + \frac{1}{3} \left(\frac{x}{2a+x} \right)^3 + \frac{1}{5} \left(\frac{x}{2a+x} \right)^5 + \dots \right],$$

($a > 0, -a < x$).

$$\log \frac{1+x}{1-x} = 2 \left[x + \frac{x^3}{3} + \dots + \frac{x^{2n-1}}{2n-1} + \dots \right], \quad (-1 < x < 1).$$

1.3.10.4 Trigonometric functions

$$\sin x = x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \frac{x^7}{7!} + \dots \quad (\text{all real values of } x).$$

$$\cos x = 1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \frac{x^6}{6!} + \dots \quad (\text{all real values of } x).$$

$$\tan x = x + \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{2x^5}{15} + \dots + \frac{(-1)^{n-1} 2^{2n} (2^{2n} - 1) B_{2n}}{(2n)!} x^{2n-1} + \dots$$

$(x^2 < \pi^2/4, B_n$ is the n^{th} Bernoulli number).

$$\cot x = \frac{1}{x} - \frac{x}{3} - \frac{x^3}{45} - \frac{2x^5}{945} - \frac{x^7}{4725} - \dots + \frac{(-1)^{n+1} 2^{2n} B_{2n}}{(2n)!} x^{2n-1} + \dots$$

$(x^2 < \pi^2, B_n$ is the n^{th} Bernoulli number).

$$\sec x = 1 + \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{5}{24}x^4 + \frac{61}{720}x^6 + \frac{277}{8064}x^8 + \dots + \frac{(-1)^n E_{2n}}{(2n)!} x^{2n} + \dots$$

$(x^2 < \pi^2/4, E_n$ is the n^{th} Euler number).

$$\csc x = \frac{1}{x} + \frac{x}{6} + \frac{7x^3}{360} + \frac{31x^5}{15120} + \dots + \frac{(-1)^{n+1} 2(2^{2n-1} - 1) B_{2n}}{(2n)!} x^{2n-1} + \dots$$

$(|x| < \pi, B_n$ is the n^{th} Bernoulli number).

$$\log \sin x = \log x - \frac{x^2}{6} - \frac{x^4}{180} - \frac{x^6}{2835} - \dots \quad (x^2 < \pi^2).$$

$$\log \cos x = -\frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{x^4}{12} - \frac{x^6}{45} - \frac{17x^8}{2520} - \dots \quad (x^2 < \pi^2/4).$$

$$\log \tan x = \log x + \frac{x^2}{3} + \frac{7x^4}{90} + \frac{62x^6}{2835} + \dots \quad (x^2 < \pi^2/4).$$

$$e^{\sin x} = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} - \frac{3x^4}{4!} - \frac{8x^5}{5!} - \frac{3x^6}{6!} + \frac{56x^7}{7!} + \dots$$

$$e^{\cos x} = e \left(1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{4x^4}{4!} - \frac{31x^6}{6!} + \dots \right).$$

$$e^{\tan x} = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{3x^3}{3!} + \frac{9x^4}{4!} + \frac{37x^5}{5!} + \dots \quad (x^2 < \pi^2/4).$$

$$\sin x = \sin a + (x - a) \cos a - \frac{(x - a)^2}{2!} \sin a - \frac{(x - a)^3}{3!} \cos a + \dots$$

1.3.10.5 Inverse trigonometric functions

$$\sin^{-1} x = x + \frac{1}{2 \cdot 3} x^3 + \frac{1 \cdot 3}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 5} x^5 + \frac{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6 \cdot 7} x^7 + \dots$$

$$(x^2 < 1, -\frac{\pi}{2} < \sin^{-1} x < \frac{\pi}{2}).$$

$$\cos^{-1} x = \frac{\pi}{2} - \left(x + \frac{1}{2 \cdot 3} x^3 + \frac{1 \cdot 3}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 5} x^5 + \frac{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6 \cdot 7} x^7 + \dots \right)$$

$$(x^2 < 1, 0 < \cos^{-1} x < \pi).$$

$$\tan^{-1} x = x - \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{x^5}{5} - \frac{x^7}{7} + \dots \quad (x^2 < 1),$$

$$= \frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{3x^3} - \frac{1}{5x^5} + \frac{1}{7x^7} - \dots \quad (x > 1),$$

$$= -\frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{3x^3} - \frac{1}{5x^5} + \frac{1}{7x^7} - \dots \quad (x < -1).$$

$$\cot^{-1} x = \frac{\pi}{2} - x + \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{x^5}{5} + \frac{x^7}{7} - \dots \quad (x^2 < 1).$$

1.3.10.6 Hyperbolic functions

$$\sinh x = x + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} + \frac{x^7}{7!} + \dots + \frac{x^{(2n+1)}}{(2n+1)!} + \dots$$

$$\sinh ax = \frac{2}{\pi} \sinh \pi a \left[\frac{\sin x}{a^2 + 1^2} - \frac{2 \sin 2x}{a^2 + 2^2} + \frac{3 \sin 3x}{a^2 + 3^2} + \dots \right] \quad (|x| < \pi).$$

$$\cosh x = 1 + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} + \frac{x^6}{6!} + \dots + \frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!} + \dots$$

$$\cosh ax = \frac{2a}{\pi} \sinh \pi a \left[\frac{1}{2a^2} - \frac{\cos x}{a^2 + 1^2} + \frac{\cos 2x}{a^2 + 2^2} - \frac{\cos 3x}{a^2 + 3^2} + \dots \right] \quad (|x| < \pi).$$

$$\tanh x = x - \frac{1}{3} x^3 + \frac{2}{15} x^5 - \dots + \frac{2^{2n}(2^{2n} - 1)B_{2n}}{(2n)!} x^{2n-1} + \dots \quad (|x| < \pi/2),$$

$$= 1 - 2e^{-2x} + 2e^{-4x} - 2e^{-6x} + \dots \quad (\operatorname{Re} x > 0),$$

$$= 2x \left[\frac{1}{\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right)^2 + x^2} + \frac{1}{\left(\frac{3\pi}{2}\right)^2 + x^2} + \frac{1}{\left(\frac{5\pi}{2}\right)^2 + x^2} + \dots \right].$$

$$\coth x = \frac{1}{x} + \frac{x}{3} - \frac{x^3}{45} + \frac{2x^5}{945} + \dots + \frac{2^{2n}B_{2n}}{(2n)!} x^{2n-1} + \dots \quad (0 < |x| < \pi),$$

$$= 1 + 2e^{-2x} + 2e^{-4x} + 2e^{-6x} + \dots \quad (\operatorname{Re} x > 0),$$

$$= \frac{1}{x} + 2x \left[\frac{1}{\pi^2 + x^2} + \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2 + x^2} + \frac{1}{(3\pi)^2 + x^2} + \dots \right] \quad (\operatorname{Re} x > 0).$$

$$\operatorname{sech} x = 1 - \frac{1}{2!}x^2 + \frac{5}{4!}x^4 - \frac{61}{6!}x^6 + \dots + \frac{E_{2n}}{(2n)!}x^{2n} + \dots$$

($|x| < \pi/2$, E_n is the n^{th} Euler number),

$$= 2(e^{-x} - e^{-3x} + e^{-5x} - e^{-7x} + \dots) \quad (\operatorname{Re} x > 0),$$

$$= 4\pi \left[\frac{1}{\pi^2 + 4x^2} - \frac{3}{(3\pi)^2 + 4x^2} + \frac{5}{(5\pi)^2 + 4x^2} + \dots \right].$$

$$\operatorname{csch} x = \frac{1}{x} - \frac{x}{6} + \frac{7x^3}{360} + \dots + \frac{2(2^{2n-1} - 1)B_{2n}}{(2n)!}x^{2n-1} + \dots \quad (0 < |x| < \pi),$$

$$= 2(e^{-x} + e^{-3x} + e^{-5x} + e^{-7x} + \dots) \quad (\operatorname{Re} x > 0),$$

$$= \frac{1}{x} - \frac{2x}{\pi^2 + x^2} + \frac{2x}{(2\pi)^2 + x^2} - \frac{2x}{(3\pi)^2 + x^2} + \dots$$

$$\begin{aligned} \sinh nu &= \sinh u \left[(2 \cosh u)^{n-1} - \frac{(n-2)}{1!} (2 \cosh u)^{n-3} \right. \\ &\quad + \frac{(n-3)(n-4)}{2!} (2 \cosh u)^{n-5} \\ &\quad \left. - \frac{(n-4)(n-5)(n-6)}{3!} (2 \cosh u)^{n-7} + \dots \right]. \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \cosh nu &= \frac{1}{2} \left[(2 \cosh u)^n - \frac{n}{1!} (2 \cosh u)^{n-2} + \frac{n(n-3)}{2!} (2 \cosh u)^{n-4} \right. \\ &\quad \left. - \frac{n(n-4)(n-5)}{3!} (2 \cosh u)^{n-6} + \dots \right]. \end{aligned}$$

1.3.10.7 Inverse hyperbolic functions

$$\sinh^{-1} x = x - \frac{1}{2 \cdot 3}x^3 + \frac{1 \cdot 3}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 5}x^5 - \frac{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6 \cdot 7}x^7 + \dots \quad (|x| < 1),$$

$$= \log(2x) + \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2x^2} + \frac{1 \cdot 3}{2 \cdot 4} \cdot \frac{1}{4x^4} + \frac{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6} \cdot \frac{1}{6x^6} + \dots \quad (|x| > 1).$$

$$\cosh^{-1} x = \pm \left[\log(2x) - \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{2x^2} - \frac{1 \cdot 3}{2 \cdot 4} \cdot \frac{1}{4x^4} + \dots \right] \quad (x > 1).$$

$$\operatorname{csch}^{-1} x = \frac{1}{x} - \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{3x^3} - \frac{1 \cdot 3}{2 \cdot 4} \cdot \frac{1}{5x^5} - \frac{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6} \cdot \frac{1}{7x^7} + \dots \quad (|x| > 1),$$

$$= \log \frac{2}{x} + \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{1 \cdot 3}{2 \cdot 4} \cdot \frac{x^4}{4} + \frac{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6} \cdot \frac{x^6}{6} - \dots \quad (0 < x < 1).$$

$$\operatorname{sech}^{-1} x = \log \frac{2}{x} - \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{1 \cdot 3}{2 \cdot 4} \cdot \frac{x^4}{4} - \frac{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6} \cdot \frac{x^6}{6} - \dots \quad (0 < x < 1).$$

$$\tanh^{-1} x = x + \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{x^5}{5} + \frac{x^7}{7} + \dots + \frac{x^{2n+1}}{2n+1} + \dots \quad (|x| < 1).$$

$$\operatorname{coth}^{-1} x = \frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{3x^3} + \frac{1}{5x^5} + \frac{1}{7x^7} + \dots + \frac{1}{(2n+1)x^{2n+1}} + \dots \quad (|x| > 1).$$

$$\operatorname{gd} x = x - \frac{1}{6}x^3 + \frac{1}{24}x^5 + \dots + \frac{E_{2n}}{(2n+1)!}x^{2n+1} + \dots \quad (|x| < 1).$$

1.3.11 INFINITE PRODUCTS

For the sequence of complex numbers $\{a_k\}$, an infinite product is $\prod_{k=1}^{\infty} (1 + a_k)$. A necessary condition for convergence is that $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = 0$. A necessary and sufficient condition for convergence is that $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \log(1 + a_k)$ converges. Examples:

$$(a) \quad z! = \prod_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{(1 + \frac{1}{k})^z}{1 + \frac{z}{k}}$$

$$(b) \quad \sin z = z \prod_{k=1}^{\infty} \cos \frac{z}{2^k}$$

$$(c) \quad \sin(a + z) = (\sin a) \prod_{k=0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots}^{\infty} \left(1 + \frac{z}{a + k\pi}\right)$$

$$(d) \quad \cos(a + z) = (\cos a) \prod_{k=\pm 1, \pm 3, \pm 5, \dots}^{\infty} \left(1 + \frac{2z}{2a + k\pi}\right)$$

$$(e) \quad \sin \pi z = \pi z \prod_{k=1}^{\infty} \left(1 - \frac{z^2}{k^2}\right) \qquad (f) \quad \cos \pi z = \prod_{k=1}^{\infty} \left(1 - \frac{4z^2}{(2k-1)^2}\right)$$

$$(g) \quad \sinh z = z \prod_{k=1}^{\infty} \left(1 + \frac{z^2}{k^2\pi^2}\right) \qquad (h) \quad \cosh z = \prod_{k=0}^{\infty} \left(1 + \frac{4z^2}{(2k+1)^2\pi^2}\right)$$

1.3.11.1 Weierstrass theorem

Define $E(w, m) = (1 - w) \exp\left(w + \frac{w^2}{2} + \dots + \frac{w^m}{m}\right)$. For $k = 1, 2, \dots$ let $\{b_k\}$ be a sequence of complex numbers such that $|b_k| \rightarrow \infty$. Then the infinite product $P(z) = \prod_{k=1}^{\infty} E\left(\frac{z}{b_k}, k\right)$ is an entire function with zeros at b_k and at these points only. The multiplicity of the root at b_n is equal to the number of indices j such that $b_j = b_n$.

1.3.12 INFINITE PRODUCTS AND INFINITE SERIES

1. The Rogers–Ramanujan identities (for $a = 0$ or $a = 1$) are

$$\begin{aligned} 1 &+ \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{q^{k^2 + ak}}{(1 - q)(1 - q^2) \cdots (1 - q^k)} \\ &= \prod_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(1 - q^{5j+a+1})(1 - q^{5j-a+4})}. \end{aligned} \qquad (1.3.8)$$

2. Jacobi's triple product identity is

$$\sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} q^{\binom{k}{2}} x^k = \prod_{j=1}^{\infty} (1 - q^j)(1 + x^{-1}q^j)(1 + xq^{j-1}). \quad (1.3.9)$$

3. The quintuple product identity is

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} (-1)^k q^{(3k^2-k)/2} x^{3k} (1 + xq^k) \\ = \prod_{j=1}^{\infty} (1 - q^j)(1 + x^{-1}q^j)(1 + xq^{j-1})(1 + x^{-2}q^{2j-1})(1 + x^2q^{2j-1}). \end{aligned} \quad (1.3.10)$$

1.4 FOURIER SERIES

If $f(x)$ is a bounded periodic function of period $2L$ (that is, $f(x + 2L) = f(x)$) and satisfies the Dirichlet conditions,

1. In any period, $f(x)$ is continuous, except possibly for a finite number of jump discontinuities.
2. In any period $f(x)$ has only a finite number of maxima and minima.

Then $f(x)$ may be represented by the Fourier series,

$$f(x) = \frac{a_0}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(a_n \cos \frac{n\pi x}{L} + b_n \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L} \right), \quad (1.4.1)$$

where $\{a_n\}$ and $\{b_n\}$ are determined as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} a_n &= \frac{1}{L} \int_{\alpha}^{\alpha+2L} f(x) \cos \frac{n\pi x}{L} dx \quad \text{for } n = 0, 1, 2, \dots, \\ &= \frac{1}{L} \int_0^{2L} f(x) \cos \frac{n\pi x}{L} dx, \\ &= \frac{1}{L} \int_{-L}^L f(x) \cos \frac{n\pi x}{L} dx; \end{aligned} \quad (1.4.2)$$

$$\begin{aligned} b_n &= \frac{1}{L} \int_{\alpha}^{\alpha+2L} f(x) \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L} dx \quad \text{for } n = 1, 2, 3, \dots, \\ &= \frac{1}{L} \int_0^{2L} f(x) \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L} dx, \\ &= \frac{1}{L} \int_{-L}^L f(x) \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L} dx, \end{aligned} \quad (1.4.3)$$

where α is any real number (the second and third lines of each formula represent $\alpha = 0$ and $\alpha = -L$ respectively).

The series in Equation (1.4.1) will converge (in the Cesaro sense) to every point where $f(x)$ is continuous, and to $\frac{f(x^+) + f(x^-)}{2}$ (i.e., the average of the left hand and right hand limits) at every point where $f(x)$ has a jump discontinuity.

1.4.1 SPECIAL CASES

1. If, in addition to the Dirichlet conditions in Section 1.4, $f(x)$ is an even function (i.e., $f(x) = f(-x)$), then the Fourier series becomes

$$f(x) = \frac{a_0}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos \frac{n\pi x}{L}. \quad (1.4.4)$$

That is, every $b_n = 0$. In this case, the $\{a_n\}$ may be determined from

$$a_n = \frac{2}{L} \int_0^L f(x) \cos \frac{n\pi x}{L} dx \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \dots \quad (1.4.5)$$

If, in addition to the above requirements, $f(x) = -f(L - x)$, then a_n will be zero for all even values of n . In this case the expansion becomes

$$f(x) = \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} a_{2m-1} \cos \frac{(2m-1)\pi x}{L}. \quad (1.4.6)$$

2. If, in addition to the Dirichlet conditions in Section 1.4, $f(x)$ is an odd function (i.e., $f(x) = -f(-x)$), then the Fourier series becomes

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L}. \quad (1.4.7)$$

That is, every $a_n = 0$. In this case, the $\{b_n\}$ may be determined from

$$b_n = \frac{2}{L} \int_0^L f(x) \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L} dx \quad n = 1, 2, 3, \dots \quad (1.4.8)$$

If, in addition to the above requirements, $f(x) = f(L - x)$, then b_n will be zero for all even values of n . In this case the expansion becomes

$$f(x) = \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} b_{2m-1} \sin \frac{(2m-1)\pi x}{L}. \quad (1.4.9)$$

The series in Equation (1.4.6) and Equation (1.4.9) are known as odd harmonic series, since only the odd harmonics appear. Similar rules may be stated for even harmonic series, but when a series appears in even harmonic form, it means that $2L$

has not been taken to be the smallest period of $f(x)$. Since any integral multiple of a period is also a period, series obtained in this way will also work, but, in general, computation is simplified if $2L$ is taken as the least period.

Writing the trigonometric functions in terms of complex exponentials, we obtain the complex form of the Fourier series known as the *complex Fourier series* or as the *exponential Fourier series*. It is represented by

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} c_n e^{i\omega_n x} \quad (1.4.10)$$

where $\omega_n = \frac{n\pi}{L}$ for $n = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$ and the $\{c_n\}$ are determined from

$$c_n = \frac{1}{2L} \int_{-L}^L f(x) e^{-i\omega_n x} dx. \quad (1.4.11)$$

The set of coefficients $\{c_n\}$ is often referred to as the *Fourier spectrum*.

1.4.2 ALTERNATE FORMS

The Fourier series in Equation (1.4.1) may be represented in the alternate forms:

1. When $\phi_n = \tan^{-1}(-a_n/b_n)$, $a_n = c_n \sin \phi_n$, $b_n = -c_n \cos \phi_n$, and $c_n = \sqrt{a_n^2 + b_n^2}$, then

$$f(x) = \frac{a_0}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \sin \left(\frac{n\pi x}{L} + \phi_n \right). \quad (1.4.12)$$

2. When $\phi_n = \tan^{-1}(a_n/b_n)$, $a_n = c_n \sin \phi_n$, $b_n = c_n \cos \phi_n$, and $c_n = \sqrt{a_n^2 + b_n^2}$, then

$$f(x) = \frac{a_0}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \cos \left(\frac{n\pi x}{L} + \phi_n \right). \quad (1.4.13)$$

1.4.3 USEFUL SERIES

$$(a) \quad 1 = \frac{4}{\pi} \left[\sin \frac{\pi x}{L} + \frac{1}{3} \sin \frac{3\pi x}{L} + \frac{1}{5} \sin \frac{5\pi x}{L} + \dots \right] \quad (0 < x < L)$$

$$(b) \quad x = \frac{2L}{\pi} \left[\sin \frac{\pi x}{L} - \frac{1}{2} \sin \frac{2\pi x}{L} + \frac{1}{3} \sin \frac{3\pi x}{L} + \dots \right] \quad (-L < x < L)$$

$$(c) \quad x = \frac{L}{2} - \frac{4L}{\pi^2} \left[\cos \frac{\pi x}{L} + \frac{1}{3^2} \cos \frac{3\pi x}{L} + \frac{1}{5^2} \cos \frac{5\pi x}{L} + \dots \right] \quad (0 < x < L)$$

$$(d) \quad x^2 = \frac{2L^2}{\pi^3} \left[\left(\frac{\pi^2}{1} - \frac{4}{1} \right) \sin \frac{\pi x}{L} - \frac{\pi^2}{2} \sin \frac{2\pi x}{L} + \left(\frac{\pi^2}{3} - \frac{4}{3^3} \right) \sin \frac{3\pi x}{L} - \frac{\pi^2}{4} \sin \frac{4\pi x}{L} + \left(\frac{\pi^2}{5} - \frac{4}{5^3} \right) \sin \frac{5\pi x}{L} \dots \right] \quad (0 < x < L)$$

$$(e) \quad x^2 = \frac{L^2}{3} - \frac{4L^2}{\pi^2} \left[\cos \frac{\pi x}{L} - \frac{1}{2^2} \cos \frac{2\pi x}{L} + \frac{1}{3^2} \cos \frac{3\pi x}{L} - \frac{1}{4^2} \cos \frac{4\pi x}{L} + \dots \right] \quad (-L < x < L)$$

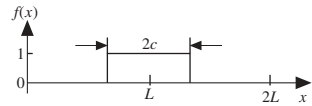
$$(f) \quad \frac{\pi}{4} = 1 - \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{5} - \frac{1}{7} + \dots$$

$$(g) \quad \frac{\pi^2}{6} = 1 + \frac{1}{2^2} + \frac{1}{3^2} + \frac{1}{4^2} + \dots = 2 \left(1 - \frac{1}{2^2} + \frac{1}{3^2} - \frac{1}{4^2} + \dots \right)$$

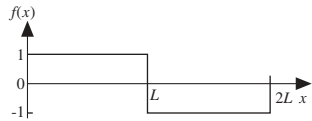
$$(h) \quad \frac{\pi^2}{8} = 1 + \frac{1}{3^2} + \frac{1}{5^2} + \frac{1}{7^2} + \dots = 3 \left(\frac{1}{2^2} + \frac{1}{4^2} + \frac{1}{6^2} + \frac{1}{8^2} + \dots \right)$$

1.4.4 EXPANSIONS OF BASIC PERIODIC FUNCTIONS

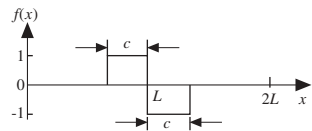
$$(a) \quad f(x) = \frac{c}{L} + \frac{2}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{n} \sin \frac{n\pi c}{L} \cos \frac{n\pi x}{L}$$



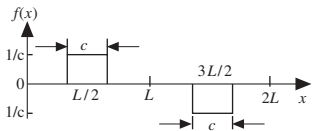
$$(b) \quad f(x) = \frac{4}{\pi} \sum_{n=1,3,5,\dots}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L}$$



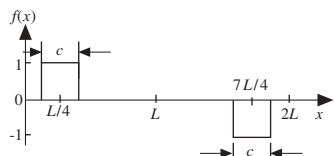
$$(c) \quad f(x) = \frac{2}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{n} \left(\cos \frac{n\pi c}{L} - 1 \right) \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L}$$



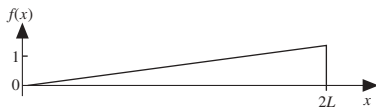
$$(d) \quad f(x) = \frac{2}{L} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sin \frac{n\pi}{2} \frac{\sin(n\pi c/2L)}{n\pi c/2L} \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L}$$



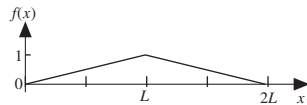
$$(e) \quad f(x) = \frac{4}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} \sin \frac{n\pi}{4} \sin n\pi a \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L} \quad (a = \frac{c}{2L})$$



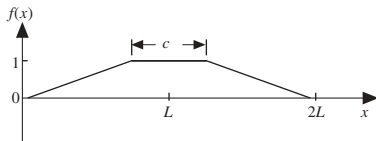
$$(f) f(x) = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L}$$



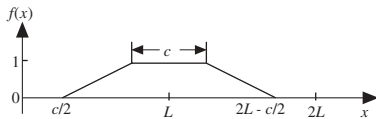
$$(g) f(x) = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{4}{\pi^2} \sum_{n=1,3,5,\dots} \frac{1}{n^2} \cos \frac{n\pi x}{L}$$



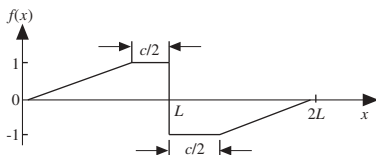
$$(h) f(x) = \frac{1+a}{2} + \frac{2}{\pi^2(1-a)} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^2} [(-1)^n \cos n\pi a - 1] \cos \frac{n\pi x}{L} \quad (a = \frac{c}{2L})$$



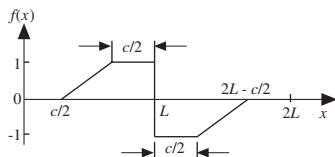
$$(i) f(x) = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{4}{\pi^2(1-2a)} \sum_{n=1,3,5,\dots} \frac{1}{n^2} \cos n\pi a \cos \frac{n\pi x}{L} \quad (a = \frac{c}{2L})$$



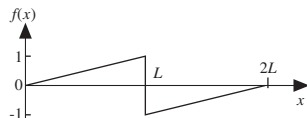
$$(j) f(x) = \frac{2}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{n-1}}{n} \left[1 + \frac{\sin n\pi a}{n\pi(1-a)} \right] \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L} \quad (a = \frac{c}{2L})$$



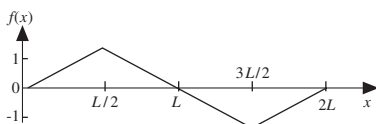
$$(k) f(x) = \frac{2}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{n} \left[1 + \frac{1+(-1)^n}{n\pi(1-2a)} \sin n\pi a \right] \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L} \quad (a = \frac{c}{2L})$$



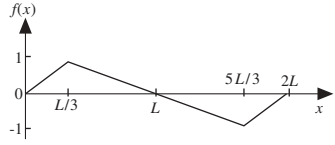
$$(l) f(x) = \frac{2}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{n} \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L}$$



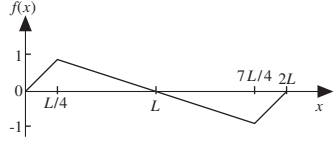
$$(m) f(x) = \frac{8}{\pi^2} \sum_{n=1,3,5,\dots} \frac{(-1)^{(n-1)/2}}{n^2} \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L}$$



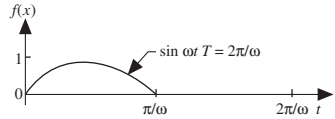
$$(n) f(x) = \frac{9}{\pi^2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^2} \sin \frac{n\pi}{3} \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L}$$



$$(o) f(x) = \frac{32}{3\pi^2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^2} \sin \frac{n\pi}{4} \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L}$$



$$(p) f(x) = \frac{1}{\pi} + \frac{1}{2} \sin \omega t - \frac{2}{\pi} \sum_{n=2,4,6,\dots} \frac{1}{n^2 - 1} \cos n\omega t$$

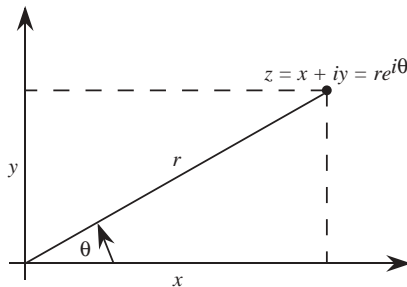


1.5 COMPLEX ANALYSIS

1.5.1 DEFINITIONS

A complex number z has the form $z = x + iy$ where x and y are real numbers, and $i = \sqrt{-1}$; the number i is sometimes called the imaginary unit. We write $x = \text{Re } z$ and $y = \text{Im } z$. The number x is called the *real* part of z and y is called the *imaginary* part of z . This form is also called the *Cartesian form* of the complex number.

Complex numbers can also be written in *polar form*, $z = re^{i\theta}$, where r , called the *modulus*, is given by $r = |z| = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$, and θ is called the *argument*: $\theta = \arg z = \tan^{-1} \frac{y}{x}$ (when $x > 0$). The geometric relationship between Cartesian and polar forms is shown below



The *complex conjugate* of z , denoted \bar{z} , is defined as $\bar{z} = x - iy = re^{-i\theta}$. Note that $|z| = |\bar{z}|$, $\arg \bar{z} = -\arg z$, and $|z| = \sqrt{z\bar{z}}$. In addition, $\overline{\bar{z}} = z$, $\overline{z_1 + z_2} = \bar{z}_1 + \bar{z}_2$, and $\overline{z_1 z_2} = \bar{z}_1 \bar{z}_2$.

1.5.2 OPERATIONS ON COMPLEX NUMBERS

1. Addition and subtraction:

$$z_1 \pm z_2 = (x_1 + iy_1) \pm (x_2 + iy_2) = (x_1 \pm x_2) + i(y_1 \pm y_2).$$

2. Multiplication:

$$z_1 z_2 = (x_1 + iy_1)(x_2 + iy_2) = (x_1 x_2 - y_1 y_2) + i(x_1 y_2 + x_2 y_1) = r_1 r_2 e^{i(\theta_1 + \theta_2)},$$

$$|z_1 z_2| = |z_1| |z_2|, \quad \arg(z_1 z_2) = \arg z_1 + \arg z_2 = \theta_1 + \theta_2.$$

3. Division:

$$\frac{z_1}{z_2} = \frac{z_1 \bar{z}_2}{z_2 \bar{z}_2} = \frac{(x_1 x_2 + y_1 y_2) + i(x_2 y_1 - x_1 y_2)}{x_2^2 + y_2^2} = \frac{r_1}{r_2} e^{i(\theta_1 - \theta_2)}.$$

$$\left| \frac{z_1}{z_2} \right| = \frac{|z_1|}{|z_2|}, \quad \arg\left(\frac{z_1}{z_2}\right) = \arg z_1 - \arg z_2 = \theta_1 - \theta_2.$$

4. Powers:

$$z^n = r^n e^{in\theta} = r^n (\cos n\theta + i \sin n\theta) \quad \text{DeMoivre's Theorem.}$$

5. Roots:

$$z^{1/n} = r^{1/n} e^{i(\theta + 2k\pi)/n} = r^{1/n} \left(\cos \frac{\theta + 2k\pi}{n} + i \sin \frac{\theta + 2k\pi}{n} \right),$$

for $k = 0, 1, \dots, n-1$. The *principal root* has $-\pi < \theta \leq \pi$ and $k = 0$.

1.5.3 FUNCTIONS OF A COMPLEX VARIABLE

A complex function

$$w = f(z) = u(x, y) + iv(x, y) = |w|e^{i\phi},$$

where $z = x + iy$, associates one or more values of the complex dependent variable w with each value of the complex independent variable z for those values of z in a given domain.

A function $f(z)$ is said to be *analytic* (or *holomorphic*) at a point z_0 if $f(z)$ is defined in each point z of a disc with positive radius R around z_0 , h is any complex number with $|h| < R$, and the limit of $[f(z_0 + h) - f(z_0)]/h$ exists and is independent of the mode in which h tends to zero. This limiting value is the *derivative* of $f(z)$ at z_0 denoted by $f'(z_0)$. A function is called *analytic* in a connected domain if it is analytic at every point in that domain.

A function is called *entire* if it is analytic in \mathbb{C} .

Liouville's theorem: A bounded entire function is constant.

EXAMPLES

1. $f(z) = z^n$ is analytic everywhere when n is a non-negative integer. If n is a negative integer, then $f(z)$ is analytic except at the origin.
2. $f(z) = \bar{z}$ is nowhere analytic.
3. $f(z) = e^z$ is analytic everywhere.

1.5.4 CAUCHY–RIEMANN EQUATIONS

A necessary and sufficient condition for $f(z) = u(x, y) + iv(x, y)$ to be analytic is that it satisfies the Cauchy–Riemann equations,

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial v}{\partial y}, \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} = -\frac{\partial v}{\partial x}. \quad (1.5.1)$$

1.5.5 CAUCHY INTEGRAL THEOREM

If $f(z)$ is analytic at all points within and on a simple closed curve C , then

$$\int_C f(z) dz = 0. \quad (1.5.2)$$

1.5.6 CAUCHY INTEGRAL FORMULA

If $f(z)$ is analytic inside and on a simple closed contour C and if z_0 is interior to C , then

$$f(z_0) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_C \frac{f(z)}{z - z_0} dz. \quad (1.5.3)$$

Moreover, since the derivatives $f'(z_0)$, $f''(z_0)$, \dots of all orders exist, then

$$f^{(n)}(z_0) = \frac{n!}{2\pi i} \int_C \frac{f(z)}{(z - z_0)^{n+1}} dz. \quad (1.5.4)$$

1.5.7 TAYLOR SERIES EXPANSIONS

If $f(z)$ is analytic inside of and on a circle C of radius r centered at the point z_0 , then a unique and uniformly convergent series expansion exists in powers of $(z - z_0)$ of the form

$$f(z) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n (z - z_0)^n, \quad |z - z_0| < r, \quad z_0 \neq \infty, \quad (1.5.5)$$

where

$$a_n = \frac{1}{n!} f^{(n)}(z_0) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_C \frac{f(z)}{(z - z_0)^{n+1}} dz. \quad (1.5.6)$$

If $M(r)$ is an upper bound of $|f(z)|$ on C , then

$$|a_n| = \frac{1}{n!} |f^{(n)}(z_0)| \leq \frac{M(r)}{r^n} \quad (\text{Cauchy's inequality}). \quad (1.5.7)$$

If the series is truncated with the term $a_n(z - z_0)^n$, the remainder $R_n(z)$ is given by

$$R_n(z) = \frac{(z - z_0)^{n+1}}{2\pi i} \int_C \frac{f(s)}{(s - z)(s - z_0)^{n+1}} ds, \quad (1.5.8)$$

and

$$|R_n(z)| \leq \left(\frac{|z - z_0|}{r} \right)^n \frac{rM(r)}{r - |z - z_0|}. \quad (1.5.9)$$

1.5.8 LAURENT SERIES EXPANSIONS

If $f(z)$ is analytic inside the annulus between the concentric circles C_1 and C_2 centered at z_0 with radii r_1 and r_2 ($r_1 < r_2$), respectively, then a unique series expansion exists in terms of positive and negative powers of $z - z_0$ of the following form:

$$\begin{aligned} f(z) &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n (z - z_0)^{-n} + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n (z - z_0)^n \\ &= \dots + \frac{b_2}{(z - z_0)^2} + \frac{b_1}{z - z_0} + a_0 + a_1(z - z_0) + a_2(z - z_0)^2 + \dots \end{aligned} \quad (1.5.10)$$

with (here C is a contour between C_1 and C_2)

$$\begin{aligned} a_n &= \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_C \frac{f(s)}{(s - z_0)^{n+1}} ds, \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \dots, \\ b_n &= \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_C f(s) (s - z_0)^{n-1} ds, \quad n = 1, 2, 3, \dots \end{aligned} \quad (1.5.11)$$

Equation (1.5.10) is often written in the form

$$f(z) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} c_n (z - z_0)^n \quad \text{for } r_1 < |z - z_0| < r_2 \quad (1.5.12)$$

with

$$c_n = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_C \frac{f(z)}{(z - z_0)^{n+1}} dz \quad \text{for } n = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots \quad (1.5.13)$$

1.5.9 ZEROS AND SINGULARITIES

The points z for which $f(z) = 0$ are called *zeros* of $f(z)$. A function $f(z)$ which is analytic at z_0 has a zero of *order* m there, where m is a positive integer, if and only if the first m coefficients a_0, a_1, \dots, a_{m-1} in the Taylor expansion at z_0 vanish.

A *singular point* or *singularity* of the function $f(z)$ is any point at which $f(z)$ is not analytic. An *isolated singularity* of $f(z)$ at z_0 may be classified in one of three ways:

1. A *removable singularity* if and only if all coefficients b_n in the Laurent series expansion of $f(z)$ at z_0 vanish. This implies that $f(z)$ can be analytically extended to z_0 .
2. A *pole* of order m if and only if $(z - z_0)^m f(z)$, but not $(z - z_0)^{m-1} f(z)$, is analytic at z_0 (i.e., if and only if $b_m \neq 0$ and $0 = b_{m+1} = b_{m+2} = \dots$ in the Laurent series expansion of $f(z)$ at z_0). Equivalently, $f(z)$ has a pole of order m if $1/f(z)$ is analytic at z_0 and has a zero of order m there.
3. An isolated *essential singularity* if and only if the Laurent series expansion of $f(z)$ at z_0 has an infinite number of terms involving negative powers of $z - z_0$.

Theorems:

Riemann removable singularity theorem Suppose that a function f is analytic and bounded in some deleted neighborhood $0 < |z - z_0| < \epsilon$ of a point z_0 . If f is not analytic at z_0 , then it has a removable singularity there.

Casorati–Weierstrass theorem Suppose that z_0 is an essential singularity of a function f , and let w be an arbitrary complex number. Then, for any $\epsilon > 0$, the inequality $|f(z) - w| < \epsilon$ is satisfied at some point z in each deleted neighborhood $0 < |z - z_0| < \delta$ of z_0 .

1.5.10 RESIDUES

Given a point z_0 where $f(z)$ is either analytic or has an isolated singularity, the *residue* of $f(z)$ is the coefficient of $(z - z_0)^{-1}$ in the Laurent series expansion of $f(z)$ at z_0 , or

$$\operatorname{Res}(z_0) = b_1 = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_C f(z) dz. \quad (1.5.14)$$

If $f(z)$ is either analytic or has a removable singularity at z_0 , then $b_1 = 0$ there. If z_0 is a pole of order m , then

$$b_1 = \frac{1}{(m-1)!} \left. \frac{d^{m-1}}{dz^{m-1}} [(z - z_0)^m f(z)] \right|_{z=z_0}. \quad (1.5.15)$$

For every simple closed contour C enclosing at most a finite number of singularities z_1, z_2, \dots, z_n of a function analytic in a neighborhood of C ,

$$\int_C f(z) dz = 2\pi i \sum_{k=1}^n \operatorname{Res}(z_k), \quad (1.5.16)$$

where $\operatorname{Res}(z_k)$ is the residue of $f(z)$ at z_k .

1.5.11 THE ARGUMENT PRINCIPLE

Let $f(z)$ be analytic on a simple closed curve C with no zeros on C and analytic everywhere inside C except possibly at a finite number of poles. Let $\Delta_C \arg f(z)$ denote the change in the argument of $f(z)$ (that is, final value – initial value) as z transverses the curve once in the positive sense. Then

$$\frac{1}{2\pi} \Delta_C \arg f(z) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_C \frac{f'(z)}{f(z)} dz = N - P, \quad (1.5.17)$$

where N is number of zeros of $f(z)$ inside C , and P is the number of poles inside C . The zeros and poles are counted according to their multiplicities.

1.5.12 TRANSFORMATIONS AND MAPPINGS

A function $w = f(z) = u(z) + iv(z)$ maps points of the z -plane into corresponding points of the w -plane. At every point z such that $f(z)$ is analytic and $f'(z) \neq 0$, the mapping is *conformal*, i.e., the angle between two curves in the z -plane through such a point is equal in magnitude and sense to the angle between the corresponding curves in the w -plane. A table giving real and imaginary parts, zeros, and singularities for frequently used functions of a complex variable and a table illustrating a number of special transformations of interest are at the end of this section.

A function is said to be *simple* in a domain D if it is analytic in D and assumes no value more than once in D . *Riemann's mapping theorem* states:

If D is a simply-connected domain in the complex z plane, which is neither the z plane nor the extended z plane, then there is a simple function $f(z)$ such that $w = f(z)$ maps D onto the disc $|w| < 1$.

1.5.12.1 Bilinear transformations

The *bilinear* transformation is defined by $w = \frac{az + b}{cz + d}$, where a, b, c , and d are complex numbers and $ad \neq bc$. It is also known as the *linear fractional* transformation. The bilinear transformation is defined for all $z \neq -d/c$. The bilinear transformation is conformal and maps circles and lines onto circles and lines.

The inverse transformation is given by $z = \frac{-dw + b}{cw - a}$, which is also a bilinear transformation. Note that $w \neq a/c$.

The *cross ratio* of four distinct complex numbers z_k (for $k = 1, 2, 3, 4$) is given by

$$(z_1, z_2, z_3, z_4) = \frac{(z_1 - z_2)(z_3 - z_4)}{(z_1 - z_4)(z_3 - z_2)}.$$

If any of the z_k 's is complex infinity, the cross ratio is redefined so that the quotient of the two terms on the right containing z_k is equal to 1. Under the bilinear transformation, the cross ratio of four points is invariant: $(w_1, w_2, w_3, w_4) = (z_1, z_2, z_3, z_4)$.

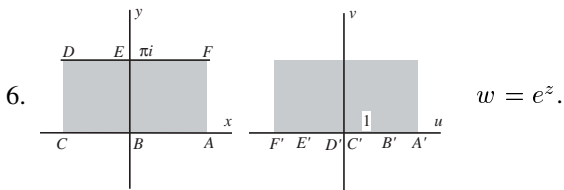
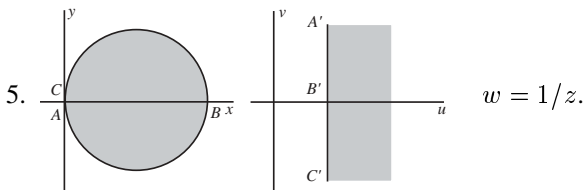
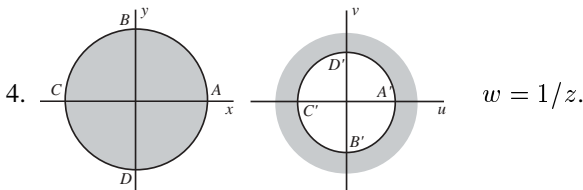
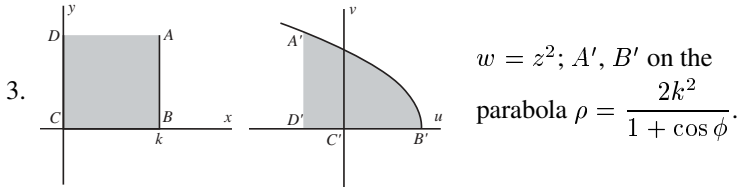
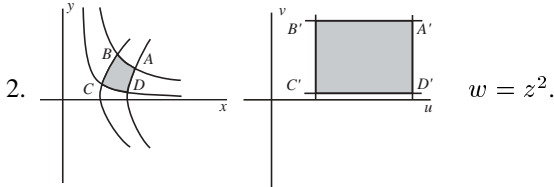
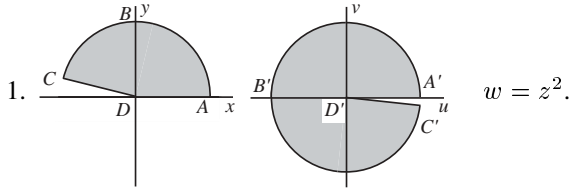
The *Möbius* transformation is special case of the bilinear transformation; it is defined by $w(z) = \frac{z-a}{1-\bar{a}z}$ where a is a complex constant of modulus less than 1. It maps the unit disk onto itself.

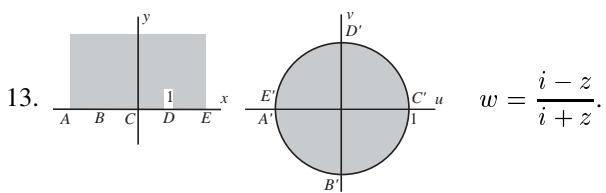
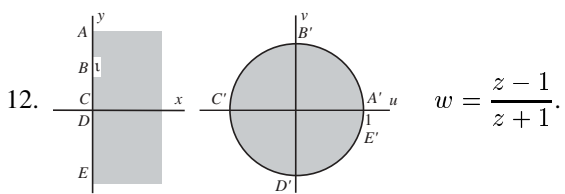
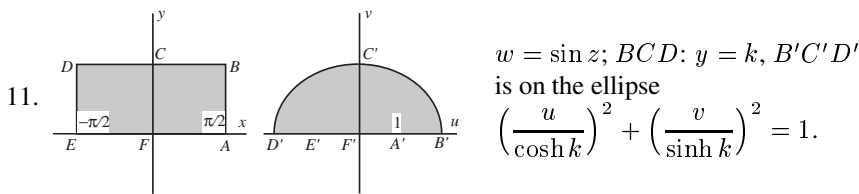
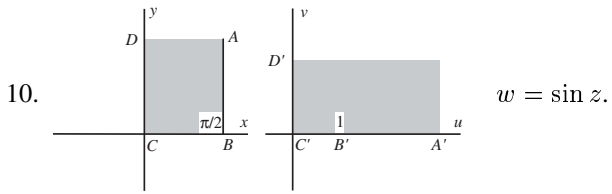
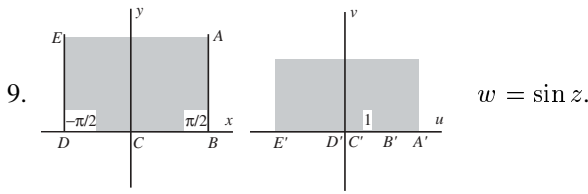
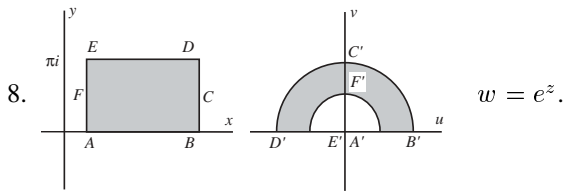
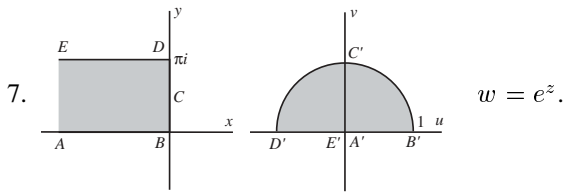
| $f(z) = w(x, y)$ | $u(x, y) = \operatorname{Re} w(x, y)$ | $v(x, y) = \operatorname{Im} w(x, y)$ | Zeros (and order m) | Singularities (and order m) |
|---|---|---|---|--|
| z | x | y | $z = 0, m = 1$ | Pole ($m = 1$) at $z = \infty$ |
| z^2 | $x^2 - y^2$ | $2xy$ | $z = 0, m = 2$ | Pole ($m = 2$) at $z = \infty$ |
| $\frac{1}{z}$ | $\frac{x}{x^2 + y^2}$ | $\frac{-y}{x^2 + y^2}$ | $z = \infty, m = 1$ | Pole ($m = 1$) at $z = 0$ |
| $\frac{1}{z^2}$ | $\frac{x^2 - y^2}{(x^2 + y^2)^2}$ | $\frac{-2xy}{(x^2 + y^2)^2}$ | $z = \infty, m = 2$ | Pole ($m = 2$) at $z = 0$ |
| $\frac{1}{z - (a + ib)}$ a, b real | $\frac{x - a}{(x - a)^2 + (y - b)^2}$ | $\frac{-(y - b)}{(x - a)^2 + (y - b)^2}$ | $z = \infty, m = 1$ | Pole ($m = 1$) at $z = a + ib$ |
| \sqrt{z} | $\pm \left(\frac{x + \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}}{2} \right)^{1/2}$ | $\pm \left(\frac{-x + \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}}{2} \right)^{1/2}$ | $z = 0, m = 1$ | Branch point ($m = 1$) at $z = 0$ Branch point ($m = 1$) at $z = \infty$ |
| e^z | $e^x \cos y$ | $e^x \sin y$ | None | Essential singularity at $z = \infty$ |
| $\sin z$ | $\sin x \cosh y$ | $\cos x \sinh y$ | $z = k\pi, m = 1$ ($k = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$) | Essential singularity at $z = \infty$ |
| $\cos z$ | $\cos x \cosh y$ | $-\sin x \sinh y$ | $z = (k + 1/2)\pi, m = 1$ ($k = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$) | Essential singularity at $z = \infty$ |
| $\sinh z$ | $\sinh x \cos y$ | $\cosh x \sin y$ | $z = k\pi i, m = 1$ ($k = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$) | Essential singularity at $z = \infty$ |
| $\cosh z$ | $\cosh x \cos y$ | $\sinh x \sin y$ | $z = (k + 1/2)\pi i, m = 1$ ($k = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$) | Essential singularity at $z = \infty$ |
| $\tan z$ | $\frac{\sin 2x}{\cos 2x + \cosh 2y}$ | $\frac{\sinh 2y}{\cos 2x + \cosh 2y}$ | $z = k\pi, m = 1$ ($k = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$) | Essential singularity at $z = \infty$ Poles ($m = 1$) at $z = (k + 1/2)\pi$ ($k = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$) |
| $\tanh z$ | $\frac{\sinh 2x}{\cosh 2x + \cos 2y}$ | $\frac{\sin 2y}{\cosh 2x + \cos 2y}$ | $z = k\pi i, m = 1$ ($k = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$) | Essential singularity at $z = \infty$ Poles ($m = 1$) at $z = (k + 1/2)\pi i$ ($k = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$) |
| $\log z$ | $\frac{1}{2} \log(x^2 + y^2)$ | $\tan^{-1} \frac{x}{y} + 2k\pi$ ($k = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$) | $z = 1, m = 1$ | Branch points at $z = 0, z = \infty$ |

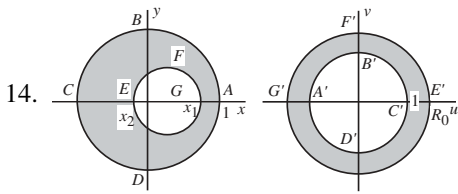
1.5.12.2 Table of transformations

1.5.12.3 Table of conformal mappings

In the following functions $z = x + iy$ and $w = u + iv = \rho e^{i\phi}$.



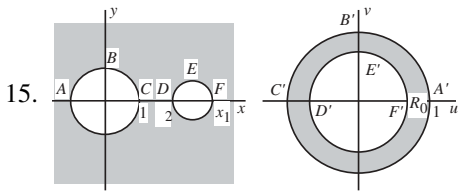




$$w = \frac{z - a}{az - 1}; a = \frac{1 + x_1 x_2 + \sqrt{(1 - x_1^2)(1 - x_2^2)}}{x_1 + x_2};$$

$$R_0 = \frac{1 - x_1 x_2 + \sqrt{(1 - x_1^2)(1 - x_2^2)}}{x_1 - x_2}$$

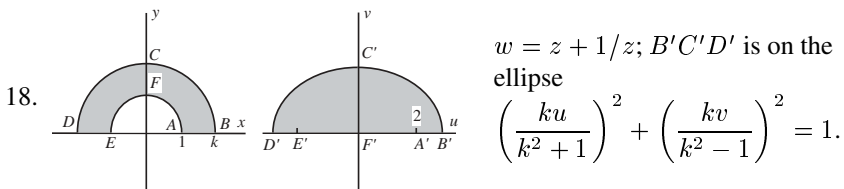
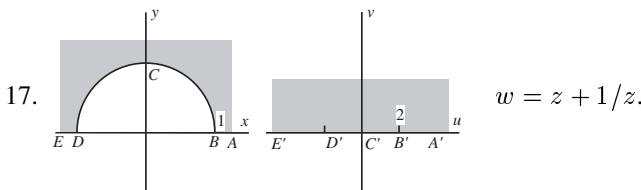
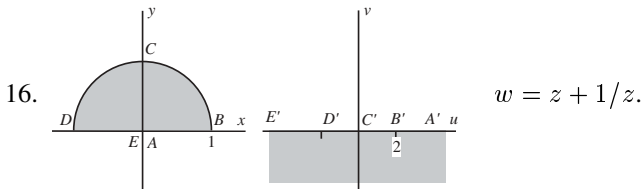
($a > 1$ and $R_0 > 1$ when $-1 < x_2 < x_1 < 1$).

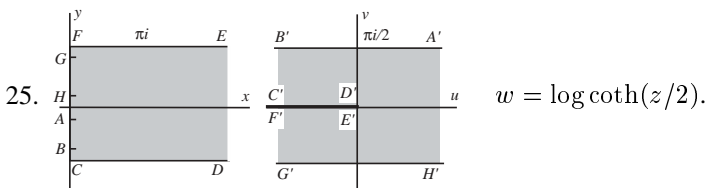
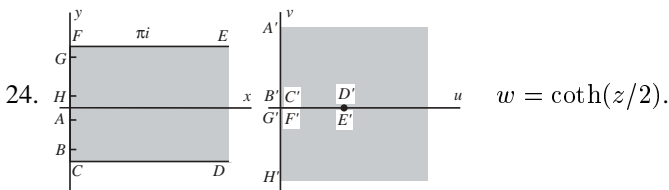
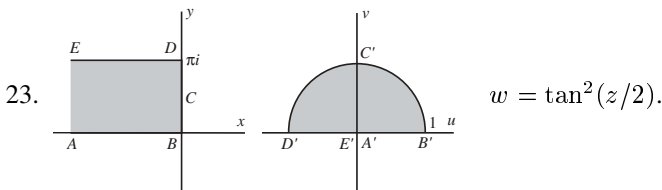
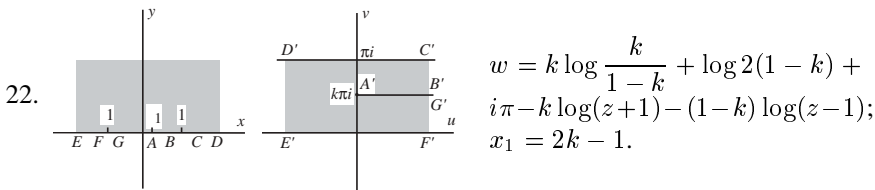
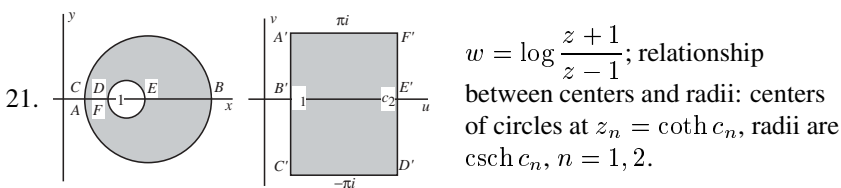
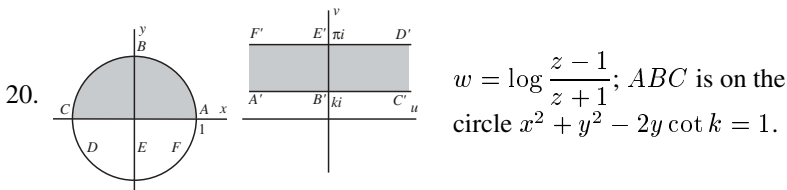
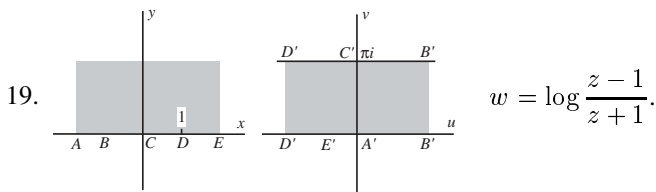


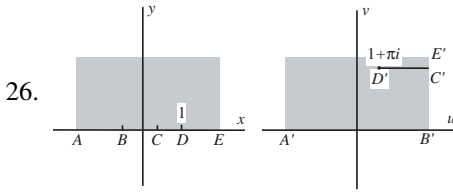
$$w = \frac{z - a}{az - 1}; a = \frac{1 + x_1 x_2 + \sqrt{(x_1^2 - 1)(x_2^2 - 1)}}{x_1 + x_2};$$

$$R_0 = \frac{x_1 x_2 - 1 - \sqrt{(x_1^2 - 1)(x_2^2 - 1)}}{x_1 - x_2}$$

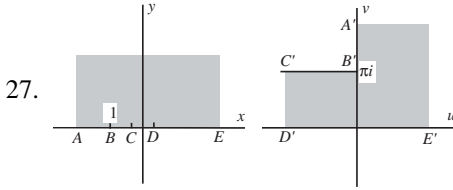
($x_2 < a < x_1$ and $0 < R_0 < 1$ when $1 < x_2 < x_1$).



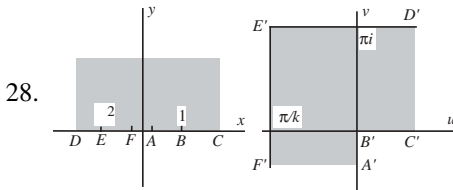




$$w = \pi i + z - \log z.$$

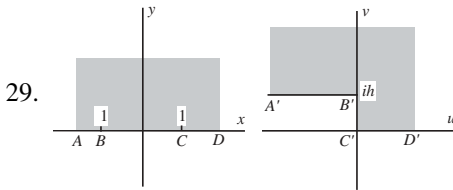


$$w = 2(z + 1)^{1/2} + \log \frac{(z + 1)^{1/2} - 1}{(z + 1)^{1/2} + 1}.$$

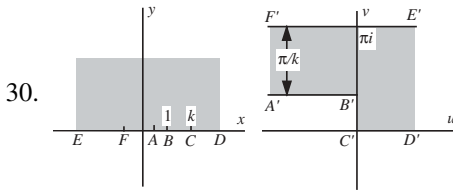


$$w = \frac{i}{k} \log \frac{1 + ikt}{1 - ikt} + \log \frac{1 + t}{1 - t};$$

$$t = \left(\frac{z - 1}{z + k^2} \right)^{1/2}.$$



$$w = \frac{h}{\pi} [(z^2 - 1)^{1/2} + \cosh^{-1} z].$$



$$w = \cosh^{-1} \left(\frac{2z - k - 1}{k - 1} \right) - \frac{1}{k} \cosh^{-1} \left[\frac{(k + 1)z - 2k}{(k - 1)z} \right].$$

1.6 INTERVAL ANALYSIS

1. An *interval* x is a subset of the real line: $x = [\underline{x}, \bar{x}] = \{z \in \mathbb{R} \mid \underline{x} \leq z \leq \bar{x}\}$.
2. A *thin interval* is a real number: x is thin if $\underline{x} = \bar{x}$
3. $\text{mid}(x) = \frac{\bar{x} + \underline{x}}{2}$
4. $\text{rad}(x) = \frac{\bar{x} - \underline{x}}{2}$
5. $|x| = \text{mag}(x) = \max_{z \in x} |z|$
6. $\langle x \rangle = \text{mig}(x) = \min_{z \in x} |z|$

1.6.1 INTERVAL ARITHMETIC RULES

| Operation | Rule |
|---------------|--|
| $x + y$ | $[\underline{x} + \underline{y}, \bar{x} + \bar{y}]$ |
| $x - y$ | $[\underline{x} - \bar{y}, \bar{x} - \underline{y}]$ |
| xy | $[\min(\underline{x}\underline{y}, \underline{x}\bar{y}, \bar{x}\underline{y}, \bar{x}\bar{y}), \max(\underline{x}\underline{y}, \underline{x}\bar{y}, \bar{x}\underline{y}, \bar{x}\bar{y})]$ |
| $\frac{x}{y}$ | $[\min(\frac{\underline{x}}{\underline{y}}, \frac{\underline{x}}{\bar{y}}, \frac{\bar{x}}{\underline{y}}, \frac{\bar{x}}{\bar{y}}), \max(\frac{\underline{x}}{\underline{y}}, \frac{\underline{x}}{\bar{y}}, \frac{\bar{x}}{\underline{y}}, \frac{\bar{x}}{\bar{y}})]$ if $0 \notin y$ |

EXAMPLES

1. $[1, 2] + [-2, 1] = [-1, 3]$
2. $[1, 2] - [1, 2] = [-1, 1]$
3. $[1, 2] * [-2, 1] = [-4, 2]$
4. $[1, 2] / [1, 2] = [\frac{1}{2}, 2]$

1.6.2 INTERVAL ARITHMETIC PROPERTIES

| Property | + and - | * and / |
|--------------------|--|---------------------------------------|
| commutative | $x + y = y + x$ | $xy = yx$ |
| associative | $x + (y + z) = (x + y) + z$ | $x(yz) = (xy)z$ |
| identity elements | $0 + x = x + 0 = x$ | $1 * y = y * 1 = y$ |
| sub-distributivity | $x(y \pm z) \subseteq xy \pm xz$ (equality holds if x is thin) | |
| sub-cancellation | $x - y \subseteq (x + z) - (y + z)$ | $\frac{x}{y} \subseteq \frac{xz}{yz}$ |
| | $0 \in x - x$ | $1 \in \frac{y}{y}$ |

1.7 REAL ANALYSIS

1.7.1 RELATIONS

For two sets A and B , the *product* $A \times B$ is the set of all ordered pairs (a, b) where a is in A and b is in B . Any subset of the product $A \times B$ is called a *relation*. A relation R on a product $A \times A$ is called an *equivalence relation* if the following three properties hold:

1. *Reflexive*: (a, a) is in R for every a in A .
2. *Symmetric*: If (a, b) is in R , then (b, a) is in R .
3. *Transitive*: If (a, b) and (b, c) are in R , then (a, c) is in R .

When R is an equivalence relation then the *equivalence class* of an element a in A is the set of all b in A such that (a, b) is in R .

1. If $|A| = n$, there are 2^{n^2} relations on A .
2. If $|A| = n$, the number of equivalence relations on A is given by the Bell number B_n .

EXAMPLE The set of rational numbers has an equivalence relation “ \equiv ” defined by the requirement that an ordered pair $(\frac{a}{b}, \frac{c}{d})$ belongs in the relation if and only if $ad = bc$. The equivalence class of $\frac{1}{2}$ is the set $\{\frac{1}{2}, \frac{2}{4}, \frac{3}{6}, \dots, \frac{-1}{-2}, \frac{-2}{-4}, \dots\}$.

1.7.2 FUNCTIONS (MAPPINGS)

A relation f on a set $X \times Y$ is a *function* (or *mapping*) from X into Y if (x, y) and (x, z) in the relation implies that $y = z$, and each $x \in X$ has a $y \in Y$ such that (x, y) is in the relation. The last condition means that there is a unique pair in f whose first element is x . We write $f(x) = y$ to mean that (x, y) is in the relation f , and emphasize the idea of mapping by the notation $f: X \rightarrow Y$. The *domain* of f is the set X . The *range* of a function f is a set containing all the y for which there is a pair (x, y) in the relation. The *image* of a set A in the domain of a function f is the set of y in Y such that $y = f(x)$ for some x in A . The notation for the image of A under f is $f[A]$. The *inverse image* of a set B in the range of a function f is the set of all x in X such that $f(x) = y$ for some y in B . The notation is $f^{-1}[B]$.

A function f is *one-to-one* (or *univalent*, or *injective*) if $f(x_1) = f(x_2)$ implies $x_1 = x_2$. A function $f: X \rightarrow Y$ is *onto* (or *surjective*) if for every y in Y there is some x in X such that $f(x) = y$. A function is *bijective* if it is both one-to-one and onto.

EXAMPLES

1. $f(x) = e^x$, as a mapping from \mathbb{R} to \mathbb{R} , is one-to-one because $e^{x_1} = e^{x_2}$ implies $x_1 = x_2$ (by taking the natural logarithm). It is not onto because -1 is not the value of e^x for any x in \mathbb{R} .
2. $g(x) = x^3 - x$, as a mapping from \mathbb{R} to \mathbb{R} , is onto because every real number is attained as a value of $g(x)$, for some x . It is not one-to-one because $g(-1) = g(0) = g(1)$.
3. $h(x) = x^3$, as a mapping from \mathbb{R} to \mathbb{R} , is bijective.

For an injective function f mapping X into Y , there is an *inverse function* f^{-1} mapping the range of f into X which is defined by: $f^{-1}(y) = x$ if and only if $f(x) = y$.

EXAMPLE The function $f(x) = e^x$ mapping \mathbb{R} into \mathbb{R}^+ (the set of positive reals) is bijective. Its inverse is $f^{-1}(x) = \ln(x)$ which maps \mathbb{R}^+ into \mathbb{R} .

For functions $f: X \rightarrow Y$ and $g: Y \rightarrow Z$, with the range of f contained in the domain of g , the *composition* $(g \circ f): X \rightarrow Z$ is a function defined by $(g \circ f)(x) = g(f(x))$ for all x in the domain of f .

1. Note that $g \circ f$ may not be the same as $f \circ g$. For example, for $f(x) = x + 1$, and $g(x) = 2x$, we have $(g \circ f)(x) = g(f(x)) = 2f(x) = 2(x + 1) = 2x + 2$. However $(f \circ g)(x) = f(g(x)) = g(x) + 1 = 2x + 1$.
2. For every function f and its inverse f^{-1} , we have $(f \circ f^{-1})(x) = x$, for all x in the domain of f^{-1} , and $(f^{-1} \circ f)(x) = x$ for all x in the domain of f . (Note that the inverse function, f^{-1} , does not mean $\frac{1}{f}$).

1.7.3 SETS OF REAL NUMBERS

A *sequence* is the range of a function having the natural numbers as its domain. It can be denoted by $\{x_n \mid n \text{ is a natural number}\}$ or simply $\{x_n\}$. For a chosen natural number N , a *finite* sequence is the range of a function having natural numbers less than N as its domain. Sets A and B are in a *one-to-one correspondence* if there is a bijective function from A into B . Two sets A and B have the same cardinality if there is a one-to-one correspondence between them. A set which is equivalent to the set of natural numbers is *denumerable* (or *countably infinite*). A set which is empty or is equivalent to a finite sequence is *finite* (or *finite countable*).

EXAMPLES The set of letters in the English alphabet is finite. The set of rational numbers is denumerable. The set of real numbers is uncountable.

1.7.3.1 Axioms of order

1. There is a subset P (positive numbers) of \mathbb{R} for which $x + y$ and xy are in P for every x and y in P .
2. Exactly one of the following conditions can be satisfied by a number x in \mathbb{R} (*trichotomy*): $x \in P$, $-x \in P$, or $x = 0$.

1.7.3.2 Definitions

A number b is an *upper* (or *lower*) *bound* of a subset S in \mathbb{R} if $x \leq b$ (or $x \geq b$) for every x in S . A number c is a *least upper bound* (*lub*, *supremum*, or *sup*) of a subset S in \mathbb{R} if c is an upper bound of S and $b \geq c$ for every upper bound b of S . A number c is a *greatest lower bound* (*glb*, *infimum*, or *inf*) if c is a lower bound of S and $c \geq b$ for every lower bound b of S .

1.7.3.3 Completeness (or least upper bound) axiom

If a non-empty set of real numbers has an upper bound, then it has a least upper bound.

1.7.3.4 Characterization of the real numbers

The set of real numbers is the smallest complete ordered field that contains the rationals. Alternatively, the properties of a field, the order properties, and the least upper bound axiom characterize the set of real numbers. The least upper bound axiom distinguishes the set of real numbers from other ordered fields.

Archimedean property of \mathbb{R} : For every real number x , there is an integer N such that $x < N$. For every pair of real numbers x and y with $x < y$, there is a rational number r such that $x < r < y$. This is sometimes stated: The set of rational numbers is dense in \mathbb{R} .

1.7.3.5 Definition of infinity

The *extension* of \mathbb{R} by ∞ is accomplished by including the symbols $+\infty$ and $-\infty$ with the following definitions (for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$)

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. for all x in \mathbb{R} : $-\infty < x < \infty$ | 6. if $x > 0$ then $x \cdot (-\infty) = -\infty$ |
| 2. for all x in \mathbb{R} : $x + \infty = \infty$ | 7. $\infty + \infty = \infty$ |
| 3. for all x in \mathbb{R} : $x - \infty = -\infty$ | 8. $-\infty - \infty = -\infty$ |
| 4. for all x in \mathbb{R} : $\frac{x}{\infty} = \frac{-\infty}{x} = 0$ | 9. $\infty \cdot \infty = \infty$ |
| 5. if $x > 0$ then $x \cdot \infty = \infty$ | 10. $-\infty \cdot (-\infty) = \infty$ |

1.7.3.6 Inequalities among real numbers

The expression $a > b$ means that $a - b$ is a positive real number.

1. If $a < b$ and $b < c$ then $a < c$.
2. If $a < b$ then $a \pm c < b \pm c$ for any real number c .
3. If $a < b$ and $\begin{cases} \text{if } c > 0 \text{ then } ac < bc \\ \text{if } c < 0 \text{ then } ac > bc \end{cases}$
4. If $a < b$ and $c < d$ then $a + c < b + d$.
5. If $0 < a < b$ and $0 < c < d$ then $ac < bd$.
6. If $a < b$ and $\begin{cases} ab > 0 \\ ab < 0 \end{cases}$ then $\begin{cases} \frac{1}{a} > \frac{1}{b} \\ \frac{1}{a} < \frac{1}{b} \end{cases}$

1.7.4 TOPOLOGICAL SPACE

A *topology* on a set X is a collection T of subsets of X (called *open sets*) having the following properties:

1. The empty set and X are in T .
2. The union of elements in an arbitrary subcollection of T is in T .
3. The intersection of elements in a finite subcollection of T is in T .

The complement of an open set is a *closed set*. A set is *compact* if every open cover has a finite subcover. The set X together with a topology T is a *topological space*.

1.7.4.1 Notes

1. A subset E of X is closed if and only if E contains all its limit points.
2. The union of finitely many closed sets is closed.
3. The intersection of an arbitrary collection of closed sets is closed.
4. The image of a compact set under a continuous function is compact.

1.7.5 METRIC SPACE

A *metric* (or *distance function*) on a set E is a function $\rho: E \times E \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ that satisfies the following conditions:

1. *Positive definiteness*: $\rho(x, y) \geq 0$ for all x, y in E , and $\rho(x, y) = 0$ if and only if $x = y$.
2. *Symmetry*: $\rho(x, y) = \rho(y, x)$ for all x, y in E .
3. *Triangle inequality*: $\rho(x, y) \leq \rho(x, z) + \rho(z, y)$ for all x, y, z in E .

EXAMPLE The set of real numbers with distance defined by $d(x, y) = |x - y|$ is a metric space.

A δ *neighborhood* of a point x in a metric space E is the set of all y in E such that $d(x, y) < \delta$. For example, a δ neighborhood of x in \mathbb{R} is the interval centered at x with radius δ , $(x - \delta, x + \delta)$. In a metric space the topology is generated by the δ neighborhoods.

1. A subset G of \mathbb{R} is *open* if, for every x in G , there is a δ neighborhood of x which is a subset of G . For example, intervals (a, b) , (a, ∞) , $(-\infty, b)$ are open in \mathbb{R} .
2. A number x is a *limit point* (or a *point of closure*, or an *accumulation point*) of a set F if, for every $\delta > 0$, there is a point y in F , with $y \neq x$, such that $|x - y| < \delta$.
3. A subset F of \mathbb{R} is *closed* if it contains all of its limit points. For example, intervals $[a, b]$, $(-\infty, b]$, and $[a, \infty)$ are closed in \mathbb{R} .

4. A subset F is *dense* in \mathbb{R} if every element of \mathbb{R} is a limit point of F .
5. A metric space is *separable* if it contains a denumerable dense set. For example, \mathbb{R} is separable because the subset of rationals is a denumerable dense set.
6. Theorems:

Bolzano–Weierstrass theorem Any bounded infinite set of real numbers has a limit point in \mathbb{R} .

Heine–Borel theorem A subset of \mathbb{R} is compact if and only if it is closed and bounded.

1.7.6 CONVERGENCE IN \mathbb{R} WITH METRIC $|x - y|$

1.7.6.1 Limit of a sequence

A number L is a *limit point* of a sequence $\{x_n\}$ if, for every $\epsilon > 0$, there is a natural number N such that $|x_n - L| < \epsilon$ for all $n > N$. If it exists, a limit of a sequence is unique. A sequence is said to *converge* if it has a limit. A number L is a *cluster point* of a sequence $\{x_n\}$ if, for every $\epsilon > 0$ and every index N , there is an $n > N$ such that $|x_n - L| < \epsilon$.

EXAMPLE The limit of a sequence is a cluster point, as in $\{\frac{1}{n}\}$, which converges to 0. However, cluster points are not necessarily limits, as in $\{(-1)^n\}$, which has cluster points $+1$ and -1 but no limit.

Let $\{x_n\}$ be a sequence. A number L is the *limit superior* (*limsup*) if, for every $\epsilon > 0$, there is a natural number N such that $x_n > L - \epsilon$ for infinitely many $n \geq N$, and $x_n > L + \epsilon$ for only finitely many terms. An equivalent definition of the limit superior is given by

$$\limsup x_n = \inf_N \sup_{k \geq N} x_k. \quad (1.7.1)$$

The *limit inferior* (*liminf*) is defined in a similar way by

$$\liminf x_n = \sup_N \inf_{k \geq N} x_k. \quad (1.7.2)$$

For example, the sequence $\{x_n\}$ with $x_n = 1 + (-1)^n + \frac{1}{2^n}$ has $\limsup x_n = 2$, and $\liminf x_n = 0$.

Theorem Every bounded sequence $\{x_n\}$ in \mathbb{R} has a \limsup and a \liminf . In addition, if $\limsup x_n = \liminf x_n$, then the sequence converges to their common value.

A sequence $\{x_n\}$ is a *Cauchy* sequence if, for any $\epsilon > 0$, there exists a positive integer N such that $|x_n - x_m| < \epsilon$ for every $n > N$ and $m > N$.

Theorem A sequence $\{x_n\}$ in \mathbb{R} converges if and only if it is a Cauchy sequence.

A metric space in which every Cauchy sequence converges to a point in the space is called *complete*. For example, \mathbb{R} with the metric $d(x, y) = |x - y|$ is complete.

1.7.6.2 Limit of a function

A number L is a *limit* of a function f as x approaches a number a if, for every $\epsilon > 0$, there is a $\delta > 0$ such that $|f(x) - L| < \epsilon$ for all x with $0 < |x - a| < \delta$. This is represented by the notation $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) = L$. The symbol ∞ is the limit of a function f as x approaches a number a if, for every positive number M , there is a $\delta > 0$ such that $f(x) > M$ for all x with $0 < |x - a| < \delta$. The notation is $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) = \infty$. A number L is a limit of a function f as x approaches ∞ if, for every $\epsilon > 0$, there is a positive number M such that $|f(x) - L| < \epsilon$ for all $x > M$; this is written $\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} f(x) = L$. The number L is said to be the *limit at infinity*.

EXAMPLES $\lim_{x \rightarrow 2} 3x - 1 = 5$, $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{1}{x^2} = \infty$, $\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{x} = 0$.

1.7.6.3 Limit of a sequence of functions

A sequence of functions $\{f_n(x)\}$ is said to *converge pointwise* to the function $f(x)$ on a set E if for every $\epsilon > 0$ and $x \in E$ there is a positive integer N such that $|f(x) - f_n(x)| < \epsilon$ for every $n \geq N$. A sequence of functions $\{f_n(x)\}$ is said to *converge uniformly* to the function f on a set E if, for every $\epsilon > 0$, there exists a positive integer N such that $|f(x) - f_n(x)| < \epsilon$ for all x in E and $n \geq N$.

Note that these formulations of convergence are not equivalent. For example, the functions $f_n(x) = x^n$ on the interval $[0, 1]$ converge pointwise to the function $f(x) = 0$ for $0 \leq x < 1$, $f(1) = 1$. They do not converge uniformly because, for $\epsilon = 1/2$, there is no N such that $|f_n(x) - f(x)| < 1/2$ for all x in $[0, 1]$ and every $n \geq N$.

A function f is *Lipschitz* if there exists $k > 0$ in \mathbb{R} such that $|f(x) - f(y)| \leq k|x - y|$ for all x and y in its domain. The function is a *contraction* if $0 < k < 1$.

Fixed point or contraction mapping theorem Let E be a complete metric space. If the function $f: E \rightarrow E$ is a contraction, then there is a unique point x in E such that $f(x) = x$. The point x is called a *fixed point* of f .

EXAMPLE Newton's method for finding a zero of $f(x) = (x + 1)^2 - 2$ on the interval $[0, 1]$ produces $x_{n+1} = g(x_n)$ with the contraction $g(x) = \frac{x}{2} - \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{x+1}$. This has the unique fixed point $\sqrt{2} - 1$ in $[0, 1]$.

1.7.7 CONTINUITY IN \mathbb{R} WITH METRIC $|x - y|$

A function $f: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is *continuous at a point* a if f is defined at a and

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) = f(a). \quad (1.7.3)$$

The function f is *continuous on a set* E if it is continuous at every point of E . A function f is *uniformly continuous* on a set E if, for every $\epsilon > 0$, there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that $|f(x) - f(y)| < \epsilon$ for every x and y in E with $|x - y| < \delta$. A sequence $\{f_n(x)\}$ of continuous functions on the interval $[a, b]$ is *equicontinuous* if, for every $\epsilon > 0$, there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that $|f_n(x) - f_n(y)| < \epsilon$ for every n and for all x and y in $[a, b]$ with $|x - y| < \delta$.

1. A function can be continuous without being uniformly continuous. For example, the function $g(x) = \frac{1}{x}$ is continuous but not uniformly continuous on the open interval $(0, 1)$.
2. A collection of continuous functions can be bounded on a closed interval without having a uniformly convergent sub-sequence. For example, the continuous functions $f_n(x) = \frac{x^2}{x^2 + (1-nx)^2}$ are each bounded by 1 in the closed interval $[0, 1]$ and for every x there is the limit: $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f_n(x) = 0$. However, $f_n(\frac{1}{n}) = 1$ for every n , so that no sub-sequence can converge uniformly to 0 everywhere on $[0, 1]$. This sequence is not equicontinuous.

Theorems:

Theorem Let $\{f_n(x)\}$ be a sequence of functions mapping \mathbb{R} into \mathbb{R} which converges uniformly to a function f . If each $f_n(x)$ is continuous at a point a , then $f(x)$ is also continuous at a .

Theorem If a function f is continuous on a closed bounded set E , then it is uniformly continuous on E .

Ascoli–Arzela theorem Let K be a compact set in \mathbb{R} . If $\{f_n(x)\}$ is uniformly bounded and equicontinuous on K , then $\{f_n(x)\}$ contains a uniformly convergent sub-sequence on K .

Weierstrass polynomial approximation theorem Let K be a compact set in \mathbb{R} . If f is a continuous function on K then there exists a sequence of polynomials that converges uniformly to f on K .

1.7.8 BANACH SPACE

A *norm* on a vector space E with scalar field \mathbb{R} is a function $\|\cdot\|$ from E into \mathbb{R} that satisfies the following conditions:

1. *Positive definiteness:* $\|x\| \geq 0$ for all x in E , and $\|x\| = 0$ if and only if $x = 0$.
2. *Scalar homogeneity:* For every x in E and a in \mathbb{R} , $\|ax\| = |a| \|x\|$.
3. *Triangle inequality:* $\|x + y\| \leq \|x\| + \|y\|$ for all x, y in E .

Every norm $\|\cdot\|$ gives rise to a metric ρ by defining: $\rho(x, y) = \|x - y\|$.

EXAMPLES

1. \mathbb{R} with absolute value as the norm has the metric $\rho(x, y) = |x - y|$.
2. $\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}$ (denoted \mathbb{R}^2) with the Euclidean norm $\|(x, y)\| = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ has the metric $\rho((x_1, y_1), (x_2, y_2)) = \sqrt{(x_1 - x_2)^2 + (y_1 - y_2)^2}$.

A *Banach space* is a complete normed space.

A widely studied example of a Banach space is the (vector) space of measurable functions f on $[a, b]$ for which $\int_a^b |f(x)|^p dx < \infty$ with $1 < p < \infty$. This is denoted

by $L_p[a, b]$ or simply L_p . The space of essentially bounded measurable functions on $[a, b]$ is denoted by $L_\infty[a, b]$.

The L_p norm for $0 < p < \infty$ is defined by $\|f\|_p = \left(\int_a^b |f(x)|^p dx \right)^{1/p}$. The L_∞ norm is defined by

$$\|f\|_\infty = \operatorname{ess\,sup}_{a \leq x \leq b} |f(x)|, \quad (1.7.4)$$

where

$$\operatorname{ess\,sup}_{a \leq x \leq b} |f(x)| = \inf \{ M \mid m\{t : f(t) > M\} = 0 \}. \quad (1.7.5)$$

Let $\{f_n(x)\}$ be a sequence of functions in L_p (with $1 \leq p < \infty$) and f be some function in L_p . We say that $\{f_n\}$ converges in the mean of order p (or simply in L_p -norm) to f if $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \|f_n - f\|_p = 0$.

Riesz–Fischer theorem The L_p spaces are complete.

1.7.8.1 Inequalities

1. *Minkowski inequality* If f and g are in L_p with $1 \leq p \leq \infty$, then $\|f + g\|_p \leq \|f\|_p + \|g\|_p$. That is,

$$\left(\int_a^b |f + g|^p \right)^{1/p} \leq \left(\int_a^b |f|^p \right)^{1/p} + \left(\int_a^b |g|^p \right)^{1/p} \quad \text{for } 1 \leq p < \infty, \quad (1.7.6)$$

$$\operatorname{ess\,sup} |f + g| \leq \operatorname{ess\,sup} |f| + \operatorname{ess\,sup} |g|.$$

2. *Hölder inequality* If p and q are non-negative extended real numbers such that $1/p + 1/q = 1$ and $f \in L_p$ and $g \in L_q$, then $\|fg\|_1 \leq \|f\|_p \|g\|_q$. That is

$$\int_a^b |fg| \leq \left(\int_a^b |f|^p \right)^{1/p} \left(\int_a^b |g|^q \right)^{1/q} \quad \text{for } 1 \leq p < \infty, \quad (1.7.7)$$

$$\int_a^b |fg| \leq (\operatorname{ess\,sup} |f|) \int_a^b |g|. \quad (1.7.8)$$

3. *Schwartz (or Cauchy–Schwartz) inequality* If f and g are in L_2 , then $\|fg\|_1 \leq \|f\|_2 \|g\|_2$. This is the special case of Hölder’s inequality with $p = q = 2$.
4. *Arithmetic mean–geometric mean inequality* If A_n and G_n are the arithmetic and geometric means of the set of positive numbers $\{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n\}$ then $A_n \geq G_n$. That is

$$\frac{a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_n}{n} \geq (a_1 a_2 \dots a_n)^{1/n}$$

5. *Carleman's inequality* If A_n and G_n are the arithmetic and geometric means of the set of positive numbers $\{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n\}$ then

$$\sum_{r=1}^n G_r \leq n e A_n.$$

1.7.9 HILBERT SPACE

An *inner product* on a vector space E with scalar field \mathbb{C} (complex numbers) is a function from $E \times E$ into \mathbb{C} that satisfies the following conditions:

1. $\langle x, x \rangle \geq 0$, and $\langle x, x \rangle = 0$ if and only if $x = 0$.
2. $\langle x + y, z \rangle = \langle x, z \rangle + \langle y, z \rangle$
3. $\langle cx, y \rangle = c \langle x, y \rangle$
4. $\langle x, y \rangle = \overline{\langle y, x \rangle}$

Every inner product $\langle x, y \rangle$ gives rise to a norm $\|x\|$ by defining $\|x\| = \langle x, x \rangle^{1/2}$.

A *Hilbert space* is a complete inner product space. A widely studied Hilbert space is $L_2[a, b]$ with the inner product $\langle f, g \rangle = \int_a^b f(t) \overline{g(t)} dt$.

Two functions f and g in $L_2[a, b]$ are *orthogonal* if $\int_a^b f \overline{g} = 0$. A set of L_2 functions $\{\phi_n\}$ is *orthogonal* if $\int_a^b \phi_m \overline{\phi_n} = 0$ for $m \neq n$. The set is *orthonormal* if, in addition, each member has norm 1. That is, $\|\phi_n\|_2 = 1$. For example, the functions $\{\sin nx\}$ are mutually orthogonal on $(-\pi, \pi)$. The functions $\{\frac{\sin nx}{\sqrt{\pi}}\}$ form an orthonormal set on $(-\pi, \pi)$.

Let $\{\phi_n\}$ be an orthonormal set in L_2 and f be in L_2 . The numbers $c_n = \int_a^b f \overline{\phi_n} dx$ are the *generalized Fourier coefficients* of f with respect to $\{\phi_n\}$, and the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \phi_n(x)$ is called the *generalized Fourier series* of f with respect to $\{\phi_n\}$.

For a function f in L_2 , the *mean square error* of approximating f by the sum $\sum_{n=1}^N a_n \phi_n$ is $\frac{1}{b-a} \int_a^b |f(x) - \sum_{n=1}^N a_n \phi_n(x)|^2 dx$. An orthonormal set $\{\phi_n\}$ is *complete* if the only measurable function f that is orthogonal to every ϕ_n is zero. That is, $f = 0$ a.e. (In the context of elementary measure theory, two measurable functions f and g are *equivalent* if they are equal except on a set of measure zero. They are said to be equal *almost everywhere*. This is denoted by $f = g$ a.e.)

Bessel's inequality: For a function f in L_2 having generalized Fourier coefficients $\{c_n\}$, $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |c_n|^2 \leq \int_a^b |f(x)|^2 dx$.

Theorems:

Riesz–Fischer theorem Let $\{\phi_n\}$ be an orthonormal set in L_2 and let $\{c_n\}$ be constants such that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |c_n|^2$ converges. Then a unique function f in L_2 exists such that the c_n are the Fourier coefficients of f with respect to $\{\phi_n\}$ and $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n \phi_n$ converges in the mean (or order 2) to f .

Theorem The generalized Fourier series of f in L_2 converges in the mean (of order 2) to f .

Theorem Parseval's identity holds:
$$\int_a^b |f(x)|^2 dx = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} |c_n|^2.$$

Theorem The mean square error of approximating f by the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \phi_n$ is minimum when all coefficients a_n are the Fourier coefficients of f with respect to $\{\phi_n\}$.

EXAMPLE Suppose that the series $\frac{a_0}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (|a_n|^2 + |b_n|^2)$ converges. Then the trigonometric series $\frac{a_0}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_n \cos nx + b_n \sin nx)$ is the Fourier series of some function in L_2 .

1.7.10 ASYMPTOTIC RELATIONSHIPS

Asymptotic relationships are indicated by the symbols O , Ω , Θ , o , and \sim .

1. The symbol O (pronounced "big-oh"): $f(x) \in O(g(x))$ as $x \rightarrow x_0$ if a positive constant C exists such that $|f(x)| \leq C|g(x)|$ for all x sufficiently close to x_0 . Note that $O(g(x))$ is a class of functions. Sometimes the statement $f(x) \in O(g(x))$ is written (imprecisely) as $f = O(g)$.
2. The symbol Ω : $f(x) \in \Omega(g(x))$ as $x \rightarrow x_0$ if a positive constant C exists such that $|g(x)| \leq C|f(x)|$ for all x sufficiently close to x_0 .
3. The symbol Θ : $f(x) \in \Theta(g(x))$ as $x \rightarrow x_0$ if positive constants c_1 and c_2 exist such that $c_1 g(x) \leq f(x) \leq c_2 g(x)$ for all x sufficiently close to x_0 . This is equivalent to: $f(x) = O(g(x))$ and $g(x) = O(f(x))$. The symbol \approx is often used for Θ (i.e., $f(x) \approx g(x)$).
4. The symbol o (pronounced "little-oh"): $f(x) \in o(g(x))$ as $x \rightarrow x_0$ if, given any $\mu > 0$, we have $|f(x)| < \mu|g(x)|$ for all x sufficiently close to x_0 .
5. The symbol \sim (pronounced "asymptotic to"): $f(x) \sim (g(x))$ as $x \rightarrow x_0$ if $f(x) = g(x)[1 + o(1)]$ as $x \rightarrow x_0$.
6. Two functions, $f(x)$ and $g(x)$, are *asymptotically equivalent* as $x \rightarrow x_0$ if $f(x)/g(x) \sim 1$ as $x \rightarrow x_0$.
7. A sequence of functions, $\{g_k(x)\}$, forms an *asymptotic series* at x_0 if $g_{k+1}(x) = o(g_k(x))$ as $x \rightarrow x_0$.
8. Given a function $f(x)$ and an asymptotic series $\{g_k(x)\}$ at x_0 , the formal series $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k g_k(x)$, where the $\{a_k\}$ are given constants, is an *asymptotic expansion* of $f(x)$ if $f(x) - \sum_{k=0}^n a_k g_k(x) = o(g_n(x))$ as $x \rightarrow x_0$ for every n ; this is expressed as $f(x) \sim \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} a_k g_k(x)$. Partial sums of this formal series are called *asymptotic approximations* to $f(x)$. This formal series need not converge.

Think of O being an upper bound on a function, Ω being a lower bound, and Θ being both an upper and lower bound. For example: $\sin x \in O(x)$ as $x \rightarrow 0$, $\log n \in o(n)$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$, and $n^9 \in \Omega(n^9 + n^2)$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$.

The statements: $n^2 = o(n^5)$, $n^5 = o(2^n)$, $2^n = o(n!)$, and $n! = o(n^n)$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$ can be illustrated as follows. If a computer can perform 10^9 operations per second, and a procedure takes $f(n)$ operations, then the following table indicates approximately how long it will take a computer to perform the procedure, for various $f(n)$ functions and values of n .

| complexity | $n = 10$ | $n = 20$ | $n = 50$ | $n = 100$ | $n = 300$ |
|--------------|---------------|------------------|---------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| $f(n) = n^2$ | 10^{-7} sec | 10^{-7} sec | 10^{-6} sec | 10^{-5} sec | 10^{-4} sec |
| $f(n) = n^5$ | 10^{-4} sec | 10^{-3} sec | 0.3 sec | 10 sec | 41 minutes |
| $f(n) = 2^n$ | 10^{-6} sec | 10^{-3} sec | 2 weeks | 10^{11} centuries | 10^{72} centuries |
| $f(n) = n!$ | 10^{-3} sec | 77 years | 10^{46} centuries | 10^{139} centuries | 10^{596} centuries |
| $f(n) = n^n$ | 10 sec | 10^7 centuries | 10^{66} centuries | 10^{181} centuries | 10^{724} centuries |

1.8 GENERALIZED FUNCTIONS

1.8.1 DELTA FUNCTION

Dirac's delta function is a distribution defined by $\delta(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & x \neq 0 \\ \infty & x = 0 \end{cases}$, and is normalized so that $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(x) dx = 1$. Properties include (assuming that $f(x)$ is continuous):

- $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x)\delta(x - a) dx = f(a)$.
- $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) \frac{d^m \delta(x)}{dx^m} dx = (-1)^m \frac{d^m f(0)}{dx^m}$.
- $x\delta(x)$, as a distribution, equals zero.
- $\delta(ax) = \frac{1}{|a|} \delta(x)$ when $a \neq 0$.
- $\delta(x^2 - a^2) = \frac{1}{2a} [\delta(x + a) + \delta(x - a)]$.
- $\delta(x) = \frac{1}{2L} + \frac{1}{L} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \cos \frac{n\pi x}{L}$ (Fourier series).
- $\delta(x - \xi) = \frac{2}{L} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sin \frac{n\pi \xi}{L} \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L}$ for $0 < \xi < L$ (Fourier sine series).
- $\delta(x) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{ikx} dk$ (Fourier transform).

$$9. \delta(\rho - \rho') = \rho \int_0^\infty k J_m(k\rho) J_m(k\rho') dk.$$

Sequences of functions $\{\phi_n\}$ that approximate the delta function as $n \rightarrow \infty$ are known as delta sequences.

EXAMPLES

$$1. \phi_n(x) = \frac{n}{\pi} \frac{1}{1+n^2x^2}$$

$$2. \phi_n(x) = \frac{n}{\sqrt{\pi}} e^{-n^2x^2}$$

$$3. \phi_n(x) = \frac{1}{n\pi} \frac{\sin^2 nx}{x^2}$$

$$4. \phi_n(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & |x| \geq 1/n \\ n/2 & |x| < 1/n \end{cases}$$

The delta function $\delta(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}') = \delta(x_1 - x'_1)\delta(x_2 - x'_2)\delta(x_3 - x'_3)$ in terms of the coordinates (ξ_1, ξ_2, ξ_3) , related to (x_1, x_2, x_3) , via the Jacobian $J(x_i, \xi_j)$, is written

$$\delta(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}') = \frac{1}{|J(x_i, \xi_j)|} \delta(\xi_1 - \xi'_1) \delta(\xi_2 - \xi'_2) \delta(\xi_3 - \xi'_3). \quad (1.8.1)$$

For example, in spherical polar coordinates

$$\delta(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}') = \frac{1}{r^2} \delta(r - r') \delta(\phi - \phi') \delta(\cos \theta - \cos \theta'). \quad (1.8.2)$$

The solutions to differential equations involving delta functions are called Green's functions (see pages 463 and 471).

1.8.2 OTHER GENERALIZED FUNCTIONS

The Heaviside function, or step function, is defined as

$$H(x) = \int_{-\infty}^x \delta(t) dt = \begin{cases} 0 & x < 0 \\ 1 & x > 0. \end{cases} \quad (1.8.3)$$

Sometimes $H(0)$ is stated to be $1/2$. This function has the representations:

$$1. H(x) = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{2}{\pi} \sum_{n=\text{odd}} \frac{1}{n} \sin \frac{n\pi x}{L}$$

$$2. H(x) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{e^{ikx}}{k} dk$$

The related signum function gives the sign of its argument:

$$\text{sgn}(x) = 2H(x) - 1 = \begin{cases} -1 & \text{if } x < 0 \\ 1 & \text{if } x > 0. \end{cases} \quad (1.8.4)$$

Chapter

10

Miscellaneous

10.1 UNITS

- 10.1.1 SI system of measurement*
- 10.1.2 United States customary system of weights and measures*
- 10.1.3 Physical constants*
- 10.1.4 Dimensional analysis/Buckingham pi*
- 10.1.5 Units of physical quantities*
- 10.1.6 Conversion: metric to English*
- 10.1.7 Conversion: English to metric*
- 10.1.8 Miscellaneous conversions*
- 10.1.9 Temperature conversion*

10.2 INTERPRETATIONS OF POWERS OF 10

10.3 CALENDAR COMPUTATIONS

- 10.3.1 Leap years*
- 10.3.2 Day of week for any given day*
- 10.3.3 Number of each day of the year*

10.4 AMS CLASSIFICATION SCHEME

10.5 FIELDS MEDALS

10.6 GREEK ALPHABET

10.7 COMPUTER LANGUAGES

- 10.7.1 Software contact information*

10.8 PROFESSIONAL MATHEMATICAL ORGANIZATIONS

10.9 ELECTRONIC MATHEMATICAL RESOURCES

10.10 BIOGRAPHIES OF MATHEMATICIANS

10.1 UNITS

10.1.1 SI SYSTEM OF MEASUREMENT

SI, the abbreviation of the French words “Systeme Internationale d’Unites”, is the accepted abbreviation for the International Metric System.

1. There are seven base units

| Quantity measured | Unit | Symbol |
|---------------------------|----------|--------|
| Length | meter | m |
| Mass | kilogram | kg |
| Time | second | s |
| Amount of substance | mole | mol |
| Electric current | ampere | A |
| Luminous intensity | candela | cd |
| Thermodynamic temperature | kelvin | K |

2. There are 22 derived units with special names and symbols

| Quantity | SI Name | Symbol | Combination of other SI units (or base units) |
|-----------------------------|----------------|--------------------|--|
| Absorbed dose | gray | Gy | J/kg |
| Activity (radiation source) | becquerel | Bq | 1/s |
| Capacitance | farad | F | C/V |
| Catalytic activity | katal | kat | $s^{-1} \text{ mol}$ |
| Celsius temperature | degree Celsius | $^{\circ}\text{C}$ | K |
| Conductance | siemen | S | A/V |
| Dose equivalent | sievert | Sv | J/kg |
| Electric charge | coulomb | C | A s |
| Electric potential | volt | V | W/A |
| Electric resistance | ohm | Ω | V/A |
| Energy | joule | J | N m |
| Force | newton | N | kg m/s^2 |
| Frequency | hertz | Hz | 1/s |
| Illuminance | lux | lx | lm/m^2 |
| Inductance | henry | H | Wb/A |
| Luminous flux | lumen | lm | cd sr |
| Magnetic flux density | tesla | T | Wb/m^2 |
| Magnetic flux | weber | Wb | V s |
| Plane angle | radian | rad | $\text{m} \cdot \text{m}^{-1}$ (unitless) |
| Power | watt | W | J/s |
| Pressure or stress | pascal | Pa | N/m^2 |
| Solid angle | steradian | sr | $\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{m}^{-2}$ (unitless) |

3. The following units are accepted for use with SI units.

| Name | Symbol | Value in SI units |
|--------------------------|--------|---|
| (angle) degree | ° | $1^\circ = (\pi/180)$ rad |
| (angle) minute | ' | $1' = (1/60)^\circ = (\pi/10800)$ rad |
| (angle) second | " | $1'' = (1/60)' = (\pi/648000)$ rad |
| (time) day | d | 1 d = 24 h = 86400 s |
| (time) hour | h | 1 h = 60 min = 3600 s |
| (time) minute | min | 1 min = 60 s |
| astronomical unit | au | 1 au $\approx 1.49598 \times 10^{11}$ m |
| bel | B | 1 B = (1/2) ln 10 Np (Note that 1 dB = 0.1 B) |
| electronvolt | eV | 1 eV $\approx 1.6021764 \times 10^{-19}$ C |
| liter | L | 1 L = 1 dm ³ = 10 ⁻³ m ³ |
| metric ton | t | 1 t = 10 ³ kg |
| neper | Np | 1 Np = 1 (unitless) |
| unified atomic mass unit | u | 1 u $\approx 1.66054 \times 10^{-27}$ kg |

4. The following units are currently accepted for use with SI units (subject to further review).

| Name | Symbol | Value in SI units |
|---------------|--------|--|
| angstrom | Å | 1 Å = 0.1 nm = 10 ⁻¹⁰ m |
| are | a | 1 a = 1 dam ² = 10 ² m ² |
| barn | b | 1 b = 100 fm ² = 10 ⁻²⁸ m ² |
| bar | bar | 1 bar = 0.1 MPa = 100 kPa = 1000 hPa = 10 ⁵ Pa |
| curie | Ci | 1 Ci = 3.7 × 10 ¹⁰ Bq |
| hectare | ha | 1 ha = 1 hm ² = 10 ⁴ m ² |
| knot | | 1 nautical mile per hour = (1852/3600) m/s |
| nautical mile | | 1 nautical mile = 1852 m |
| rad | rad | 1 rad = 1 cGy = 10 ⁻² Gy |
| rem | rem | 1 rem = 1 cSv = 10 ⁻² Sv |
| roentgen | R | 1 R = 2.58 × 10 ⁻⁴ C/kg |

10.1.2 UNITED STATES CUSTOMARY SYSTEM OF WEIGHTS AND MEASURES

| | |
|--------------------------|--|
| Linear measure | 1 mile = 5280 feet or 320 rods |
| | 1 rod = 16.5 feet or 5.5 yards |
| | 1 yard = 3 feet |
| | 1 foot = 12 inches |
| Linear measure: nautical | 1 fathom = 6 feet |
| | 1° of latitude \approx 69 miles |
| | 1° of longitude at 40° latitude \approx 46 nautical miles \approx 53 miles |
| | 1 nautical mile \approx 6076.1 feet \approx 1.1508 statute miles |

| | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Square measure | 1 square mile = 640 acres 1 acre = 43,560 square feet |
| Volume measure | 1 cubic yard = 27 cubic feet 1 cubic foot = 1728 cubic inches |
| Dry measure | 1 bushel = 4 pecks 1 peck = 8 quarts 1 quart = 2 pints |
| Liquid measure | 1 cubic foot = 7.4805 gallons 1 gallon = 4 quarts 1 quart = 2 pints 1 pint = 4 gills |
| Liquid measure: Apothecaries' | 1 pint = 16 fluid ounces 1 fluid ounce = 8 drams 1 fluid dram = 60 minims |
| Weight: Avoirdupois | 1 ton = 2000 pounds 1 pound = 16 ounces or 7000 grains 1 ounce = 16 drams or 437.5 grains |
| Weight: Troy | 1 pound = 12 ounces 1 ounce = 20 pennyweights 1 pennyweight = 24 grains |
| Weight: Apothecaries' | 1 pound = 12 ounces 1 ounce = 8 drams 1 dram = 3 scruples 1 scruple = 20 grains |

10.1.3 PHYSICAL CONSTANTS

c (speed of light) = 299,792,458 m/s (exact value)

e (charge of electron) $\approx 1.6021764 \times 10^{-19}$ C

G (gravitational constant) $\approx (6.673 \pm 0.003) \times 10^{-8}$ cm³/g s²

\hbar (Plank constant over 2π) $\approx 1.0545716 \times 10^{-34}$ J s

k (Boltzmann constant) $\approx 1.38065 \times 10^{-23}$ J/K

1 knot = 1 nautical mile/hour ≈ 1.6878 ft/s ≈ 1.1508 statute miles/hr

Acceleration, sea level, latitude 45° ≈ 9.806194 m/s² ≈ 32.1726 ft/s²

Avogadro's constant ≈ 6.022142 mol⁻¹

Density of mercury, at 0°C ≈ 13.5951 g/mL

Density of water (maximum), at $3.98^\circ\text{C} \approx 0.99997496 \text{ g/mL}$
 Density of water, at $0^\circ\text{C} \approx 0.9998426 \text{ g/mL}$
 Density of dry air, at 0°C , 760 mm of Hg $\approx 1.2927 \text{ g/L}$
 Earth: equatorial radius $\approx 6378.388 \text{ km} \approx 3963.34 \text{ statute miles}$
 Earth: polar radius $\approx 6356.912 \text{ km} \approx 3949.99 \text{ statute miles}$
 Earth: mean density $\approx 5.522 \text{ g/cm}^3 \approx 344.7 \text{ lb/ft}^3$
 Heat of fusion of water, at $0^\circ\text{C} \approx 333.6 \text{ J/g}$
 Heat of vaporization of water, at $100^\circ\text{C} \approx 2256.8 \text{ J/g}$
 Mass of hydrogen atom $\approx 1.67353 \times 10^{-24} \text{ g}$
 Velocity of sound, dry air, at $0^\circ\text{C} \approx 331.36 \text{ m/s} \approx 1087.1 \text{ ft/s}$
 Wavelength of orange-red line of krypton 86 $\approx 6057.802 \text{ \AA}$

10.1.4 DIMENSIONAL ANALYSIS/BUCKINGHAM PI

The units of the parameters in a system constrain all the derivable quantities, regardless of the equations describing the system. In particular, all derived quantities are functions of dimensionless combinations of parameters. The number of dimensionless parameters and their forms are given by the *Buckingham pi theorem*.

In a system, the quantity $u = f(W_1, W_2, \dots, W_n)$ is to be determined in terms of the n measurable variables and parameters $\{W_i\}$ where f is an unknown function. Let the quantities $\{u, W_i\}$ involve m fundamental dimensions labeled by L_1, L_2, \dots, L_m (such as length, mass, time, or charge). The dimensions of any of the $\{u, W_i\}$ are given by a product of powers of the fundamental dimensions. For example, the dimensions of W_i are $L_1^{b_{i1}} L_2^{b_{i2}} L_3^{b_{i3}} \dots L_m^{b_{im}}$ where the $\{b_{ij}\}$ are real and called the *dimensional exponents*. A quantity is called dimensionless if all of its dimensional exponents are zero. Let $\mathbf{b}_i = [b_{i1} \ b_{i2} \ \dots \ b_{im}]^T$ be the dimension vector of W_i and let $B = [\mathbf{b}_1 \ \mathbf{b}_2 \ \dots \ \mathbf{b}_n]$ be the $m \times n$ dimension matrix of the system. Let $\mathbf{a} = [a_1 \ a_2 \ \dots \ a_m]^T$ be the dimension vector of u and let $\mathbf{y} = [y_1 \ y_2 \ \dots \ y_n]^T$ represent a solution of $B\mathbf{y} = -\mathbf{a}$. Then,

1. The number of dimensionless quantities is $k + 1 = n + 1 - \text{rank}(B)$.
2. The measurable quantity u can be expressed in terms of dimensionless parameters as

$$u = W_1^{-y_1} W_2^{-y_2} \dots W_n^{-y_n} g(\pi_1, \pi_2, \dots, \pi_k) \quad (10.1.1)$$

where g is an unknown function of its parameters and the $\{\pi_i\}$ are dimensionless quantities. Specifically, let $\mathbf{x}^{(i)} = [x_{1i} \ x_{2i} \ \dots \ x_{ni}]^T$ be one of $k = n - r(B)$ linearly independent solutions of the system $B\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ and define $\pi_i = W_1^{x_{1i}} W_2^{x_{2i}} \dots W_n^{x_{ni}}$.

10.1.5 UNITS OF PHYSICAL QUANTITIES

In the following, read “kilograms” for the mass M , “meters” for the length L , “seconds” for the time T , and “degrees” for the temperature θ . For example, acceleration is measured in units of L/T^2 , or meters per second squared.

| Quantity | Dimensions | Quantity | Dimensions |
|------------------------------|------------|-------------------|------------------|
| Acceleration | L/T^2 | Mass | M |
| Angular acceleration | $1/T^2$ | Mass density | M/L^3 |
| Angular frequency | $1/T$ | Momentum | ML/T |
| Angular momentum | ML^2/T | Period | T |
| Angular velocity | $1/T$ | Power | ML^2/T^3 |
| Area | L^2 | Pressure | M/LT^2 |
| Displacement | L | Moment of inertia | ML^2 |
| Energy or work | ML^2/T^2 | Time | T |
| Energy, kinetic | ML^2/T^2 | Torque | ML^2/T^2 |
| Energy, potential | ML^2/T^2 | Velocity | L/T |
| Energy, total | ML^2/T^2 | Volume | L^3 |
| Force | ML/T^2 | Wavelength | L |
| Frequency | $1/T$ | Work | ML^2/T^2 |
| Gravitational field strength | ML/T^2 | Entropy | $ML^2/T^2\theta$ |
| Gravitational potential | ML^2/T^2 | Internal energy | ML^2/T^2 |
| Length | L | Heat | ML^2/T^2 |

10.1.6 CONVERSION: METRIC TO ENGLISH

| Multiply | By | To obtain |
|--------------------|------------|---------------|
| centimeters | 0.3937008 | inches |
| cubic meters | 1.307951 | cubic yards |
| cubic meters | 35.31467 | cubic feet |
| grams | 0.03527396 | ounces |
| kilograms | 2.204623 | pounds |
| kilometers | 0.6213712 | miles |
| liters | 0.2641721 | gallons (US) |
| meters | 1.093613 | yards |
| meters | 3.280840 | feet |
| milliliters | 0.03381402 | fluid ounces |
| milliliters | 0.06102374 | cubic inches |
| square centimeters | 0.1550003 | square inches |
| square meters | 1.195990 | square yards |
| square meters | 10.76391 | square feet |

10.1.7 CONVERSION: ENGLISH TO METRIC

| Multiply | By | To obtain |
|---------------|------------|--------------------|
| cubic feet | 0.02831685 | cubic meters |
| cubic inches | 16.38706 | milliliters |
| cubic yards | 0.7645549 | cubic meters |
| feet | 0.3048000 | meters |
| fluid ounces | 29.57353 | milliliters |
| gallons (US) | 3.785412 | liters |
| inches | 2.540000 | centimeters |
| miles | 1.609344 | kilometers |
| mils | 25.4 | micrometers |
| ounces | 28.34952 | grams |
| pounds | 0.4535924 | kilograms |
| square feet | 0.09290304 | square meters |
| square inches | 6.451600 | square centimeters |
| square yards | 0.8361274 | square meters |
| yards | 0.9144000 | meters |

10.1.8 MISCELLANEOUS CONVERSIONS

| Multiply | By | To obtain |
|--------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|
| feet of water at 4°C | 2.950×10^{-2} | atmospheres |
| inches of mercury at 4°C | 3.342×10^{-2} | atmospheres |
| pounds per square inch | 6.804×10^{-2} | atmospheres |
| foot-pounds | 1.285×10^{-3} | BTU |
| joules | 9.480×10^{-4} | BTU |
| cords | 128 | cubic feet |
| radian | 57.29578 | degree (angle) |
| foot-pounds | 1.356×10^7 | ergs |
| atmospheres | 33.90 | feet of water at 4°C |
| miles | 5280 | feet |
| horsepower | 3.3×10^4 | foot-pounds per minute |
| horsepower-hours | 1.98×10^6 | foot-pounds |
| kilowatt-hours | 2.655×10^6 | foot-pounds |
| foot-pounds per second | 1.818×10^{-3} | horsepower |
| atmospheres | 2.036 | inches of mercury at 0°C |
| BTU | 1.055060×10^3 | joules |
| foot-pounds | 1.35582 | joules |
| BTU per minute | 1.758×10^{-2} | kilowatts |
| foot-pounds per minute | 2.26×10^{-5} | kilowatts |
| horsepower | 0.7457 | kilowatts |
| miles per hour | 0.8689762 | knots |

| Multiply | By | To obtain |
|----------------|---------------------------|----------------|
| feet | 1.893939×10^{-4} | miles |
| miles | 0.8689762 | nautical miles |
| degrees | 1.745329×10^{-2} | radians |
| acres | 43560 | square feet |
| BTU per minute | 17.5796 | watts |

10.1.9 TEMPERATURE CONVERSION

If t_F is the temperature in degrees Fahrenheit and t_C is the temperature in degrees Celsius, then

$$t_C = \frac{5}{9}(t_F - 32) \quad \text{and} \quad t_F = \frac{9}{5}t_C + 32. \quad (10.1.2)$$

| | | | | | |
|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| -40°C | 0°C | 10°C | 20°C | 37°C | 100°C |
| -40°F | 32°F | 50°F | 68°F | 98.6°F | 212°F |

If T_K is the temperature in kelvin and T_R is the temperature in degrees Rankine, then

$$T_R = t_F + 459.69 \quad \text{and} \quad T_K = t_C + 273.15 = \frac{5}{9}T_R. \quad (10.1.3)$$

10.2 INTERPRETATIONS OF POWERS OF 10

| | |
|------------|--|
| 10^{-15} | the radius of the hydrogen nucleus (a proton) in meters |
| 10^{-11} | the likelihood of being dealt 13 top honors in bridge |
| 10^{-10} | the radius of a hydrogen atom in meters |
| 10^{-9} | the number of seconds it takes light to travel one foot |
| 10^{-6} | the likelihood of being dealt a royal flush in poker |
| 10^0 | the density of water is 1 gram per milliliter |
| 10^1 | the number of fingers that people have |
| 10^2 | the number of stable elements in the periodic table |
| 10^5 | the number of hairs on a human scalp |
| 10^6 | the number of possible chess board positions after 4 moves |
| 10^7 | the number of seconds in a year |
| 10^8 | the speed of light in meters per second |
| 10^9 | the number of heartbeats in a lifetime for most mammals |
| 10^{10} | the number of people on the earth |
| 10^{15} | the surface area of the earth in square meters |
| 10^{16} | the age of the universe in seconds |
| 10^{18} | the volume of water in the earth's oceans in cubic meters |
| 10^{19} | the number of possible positions of Rubik's cube |
| 10^{21} | the volume of the earth in cubic meters |

| | |
|-----------|---|
| 10^{24} | the number of grains of sand in the Sahara desert |
| 10^{28} | the mass of the earth in grams |
| 10^{33} | the mass of the solar system in grams |
| 10^{50} | the number of atoms in the earth |
| 10^{78} | the volume of the universe in cubic meters |

(Note: these numbers have been rounded to the nearest power of ten.)

10.3 CALENDAR COMPUTATIONS

10.3.1 LEAP YEARS

If a year is divisible by 4, then it will be a leap year, unless the year is divisible by 100 (when it will not be a leap year), unless the year is divisible by 400 (when it will be a leap year). Hence the list of leap years includes 1896, 1904, 1908, 1992, 1996, 2000, 2004, 2008 and the list of non-leap years includes 1900, 1998, 1999, 2001.

10.3.2 DAY OF WEEK FOR ANY GIVEN DAY

The following formula gives the day of the week for the Gregorian calendar (i.e., for any date after 1582):

$$W \equiv \left(k + [2.6m - 0.2] - 2C + Y + \left\lfloor \frac{Y}{4} \right\rfloor + \left\lfloor \frac{C}{4} \right\rfloor \right) \pmod{7} \quad (10.3.1)$$

where

- W is the day of the week (0 = Sunday, ..., 6 = Saturday).
- k is the day of the month (1 to 31).
- m is the month (1 = March, ..., 10 = December, 11 = January, 12 = February). (January and February are treated as months of the preceding year.)
- C is century minus one (1997 has $C = 19$, 2005 has $C = 20$).
- Y is the year (1997 has $Y = 97$ except $Y = 96$ for January and February).
- $\lfloor \cdot \rfloor$ denotes the integer floor function.
- The “mod” function returns a non-negative value.

In any given year the following days fall on the same day of the week: 4/4, 6/6, 8/8, 10/10, 12/12, 9/5, 5/9, 7/11, 11/7, and the last day of February.

EXAMPLE Consider the date 16 March 1997 (for which $k = 16$, $m = 1$, $C = 19$, and $Y = 97$). From Equation (10.3.1), we compute $W \equiv 16 + [2.4] - 38 + 97 + [\frac{97}{4}] + [\frac{19}{4}] \pmod{7} \equiv 2 + 2 - 3 + 6 + 3 + 4 \pmod{7} \equiv 0 \pmod{7}$. So this date was a Sunday.

Because 7 does not divide 400, January 1 occurs more frequently on some days of the week than on others! In a cycle of 400 years, January 1 and March 1 occur on the following days with the following frequencies:

| | Sun | Mon | Tue | Wed | Thu | Fri | Sat |
|-----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| January 1 | 58 | 56 | 58 | 57 | 57 | 58 | 56 |
| March 1 | 58 | 56 | 58 | 56 | 58 | 57 | 57 |

10.3.3 NUMBER OF EACH DAY OF THE YEAR

| Day | Jan | Feb | Mar | Apr | May | Jun | Jul | Aug | Sep | Oct | Nov | Dec |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 | 1 | 32 | 60 | 91 | 121 | 152 | 182 | 213 | 244 | 274 | 305 | 335 |
| 2 | 2 | 33 | 61 | 92 | 122 | 153 | 183 | 214 | 245 | 275 | 306 | 336 |
| 3 | 3 | 34 | 62 | 93 | 123 | 154 | 184 | 215 | 246 | 276 | 307 | 337 |
| 4 | 4 | 35 | 63 | 94 | 124 | 155 | 185 | 216 | 247 | 277 | 308 | 338 |
| 5 | 5 | 36 | 64 | 95 | 125 | 156 | 186 | 217 | 248 | 278 | 309 | 339 |
| 6 | 6 | 37 | 65 | 96 | 126 | 157 | 187 | 218 | 249 | 279 | 310 | 340 |
| 7 | 7 | 38 | 66 | 97 | 127 | 158 | 188 | 219 | 250 | 280 | 311 | 341 |
| 8 | 8 | 39 | 67 | 98 | 128 | 159 | 189 | 220 | 251 | 281 | 312 | 342 |
| 9 | 9 | 40 | 68 | 99 | 129 | 160 | 190 | 221 | 252 | 282 | 313 | 343 |
| 10 | 10 | 41 | 69 | 100 | 130 | 161 | 191 | 222 | 253 | 283 | 314 | 344 |
| 11 | 11 | 42 | 70 | 101 | 131 | 162 | 192 | 223 | 254 | 284 | 315 | 345 |
| 12 | 12 | 43 | 71 | 102 | 132 | 163 | 193 | 224 | 255 | 285 | 316 | 346 |
| 13 | 13 | 44 | 72 | 103 | 133 | 164 | 194 | 225 | 256 | 286 | 317 | 347 |
| 14 | 14 | 45 | 73 | 104 | 134 | 165 | 195 | 226 | 257 | 287 | 318 | 348 |
| 15 | 15 | 46 | 74 | 105 | 135 | 166 | 196 | 227 | 258 | 288 | 319 | 349 |
| 16 | 16 | 47 | 75 | 106 | 136 | 167 | 197 | 228 | 259 | 289 | 320 | 350 |
| 17 | 17 | 48 | 76 | 107 | 137 | 168 | 198 | 229 | 260 | 290 | 321 | 351 |
| 18 | 18 | 49 | 77 | 108 | 138 | 169 | 199 | 230 | 261 | 291 | 322 | 352 |
| 19 | 19 | 50 | 78 | 109 | 139 | 170 | 200 | 231 | 262 | 292 | 323 | 353 |
| 20 | 20 | 51 | 79 | 110 | 140 | 171 | 201 | 232 | 263 | 293 | 324 | 354 |
| 21 | 21 | 52 | 80 | 111 | 141 | 172 | 202 | 233 | 264 | 294 | 325 | 355 |
| 22 | 22 | 53 | 81 | 112 | 142 | 173 | 203 | 234 | 265 | 295 | 326 | 356 |
| 23 | 23 | 54 | 82 | 113 | 143 | 174 | 204 | 235 | 266 | 296 | 327 | 357 |
| 24 | 24 | 55 | 83 | 114 | 144 | 175 | 205 | 236 | 267 | 297 | 328 | 358 |
| 25 | 25 | 56 | 84 | 115 | 145 | 176 | 206 | 237 | 268 | 298 | 329 | 359 |
| 26 | 26 | 57 | 85 | 116 | 146 | 177 | 207 | 238 | 269 | 299 | 330 | 360 |
| 27 | 27 | 58 | 86 | 117 | 147 | 178 | 208 | 239 | 270 | 300 | 331 | 361 |
| 28 | 28 | 59 | 87 | 118 | 148 | 179 | 209 | 240 | 271 | 301 | 332 | 362 |
| 29 | 29 | * | 88 | 119 | 149 | 180 | 210 | 241 | 272 | 302 | 333 | 363 |
| 30 | 30 | | 89 | 120 | 150 | 181 | 211 | 242 | 273 | 303 | 334 | 364 |
| 31 | 31 | | 90 | 121 | 151 | 182 | 212 | 243 | 274 | 304 | 335 | 365 |

*In leap years, after February 28, add 1 to the tabulated number.

10.4 AMS CLASSIFICATION SCHEME

| | | | |
|----|---|----|--|
| 00 | General | 45 | Integral equations |
| 01 | History and biography | 46 | Functional analysis |
| 03 | Mathematical logic and foundations | 47 | Operator theory |
| 04 | This section has been deleted | 49 | Calculus of variations and optimal control; optimization |
| 05 | Combinatorics | 51 | Geometry |
| 06 | Order, lattices, ordered algebraic structures | 52 | Convex and discrete geometry |
| 08 | General algebraic systems | 53 | Differential geometry |
| 11 | Number theory | 54 | General topology |
| 12 | Field theory and polynomials | 55 | Algebraic topology |
| 13 | Commutative rings and algebras | 57 | Manifolds and cell complexes |
| 14 | Algebraic geometry | 58 | Global analysis, analysis on manifolds |
| 15 | Linear and multilinear algebra; matrix theory | 60 | Probability theory and stochastic processes |
| 16 | Associative rings and algebras | 62 | Statistics |
| 17 | Non-associative rings and algebras | 65 | Numerical analysis |
| 18 | Category theory; homological algebra | 68 | Computer science |
| 19 | K -theory | 70 | Mechanics of particles and systems |
| 20 | Group theory and generalizations | 73 | This section has been deleted |
| 22 | Topological groups, Lie groups | 74 | Mechanics of deformable solids |
| 26 | Real functions | 76 | Fluid mechanics |
| 28 | Measure and integration | 78 | Optics, electromagnetic theory |
| 30 | Functions of a complex variable | 80 | Classical thermodynamics, heat transfer |
| 31 | Potential theory | 81 | Quantum theory |
| 32 | Several complex variables and analytic spaces | 82 | Statistical mechanics, structure of matter |
| 33 | Special functions | 83 | Relativity and gravitational theory |
| 34 | Ordinary differential equations | 85 | Astronomy and astrophysics |
| 35 | Partial differential equations | 86 | Geophysics |
| 37 | Dynamical systems and ergodic theory | 90 | Operations research, mathematical programming |
| 39 | Difference and functional equations | 91 | Game theory, economics, social and behavioral sciences |
| 40 | Sequences, series, summability | 92 | Biology and other natural sciences |
| 41 | Approximations and expansions | 93 | Systems theory; control |
| 42 | Fourier analysis | 94 | Information and communication, circuits |
| 43 | Abstract harmonic analysis | 97 | Mathematics education |
| 44 | Integral transforms, operational calculus | | |

See www.ams.org/msc/ for details.

10.5 FIELDS MEDALS

The Fields medal is the most prestigious award that can be bestowed upon a mathematician. It is awarded to someone no more than 40 years of age.

| | | | | |
|------|------|-------------------------|----|---|
| (1) | 1936 | Ahlfors, Lars | 29 | Harvard University |
| (2) | 1936 | Douglas, Jesse | 39 | MIT |
| (3) | 1950 | Schwartz, Laurent | 35 | Universite de Nancy |
| (4) | 1950 | Selberg, Atle | 33 | Princeton/Inst. for Advanced Study |
| (5) | 1954 | Kodaira, Kunihiko | 39 | Princeton University |
| (6) | 1954 | Serre, Jean-Pierre | 27 | College de France |
| (7) | 1958 | Roth, Klaus | 32 | University of London |
| (8) | 1958 | Thom, Rene | 35 | University of Strasbourg |
| (9) | 1962 | Hormander, Lars | 31 | University of Stockholm |
| (10) | 1962 | Milnor, John | 31 | Princeton University |
| (11) | 1966 | Atiyah, Michael | 37 | Oxford University |
| (12) | 1966 | Cohen, Paul | 32 | Stanford University |
| (13) | 1966 | Grothendieck, Alexander | 38 | University of Paris |
| (14) | 1966 | Smale, Stephen | 36 | University of California at Berkeley |
| (15) | 1970 | Baker, Alan | 31 | Cambridge University |
| (16) | 1970 | Hironaka, Heisuke | 39 | Harvard University |
| (17) | 1970 | Novikov, Serge | 32 | Moscow University |
| (18) | 1970 | Thompson, John | 37 | University of Chicago |
| (19) | 1974 | Bombieri, Enrico | 33 | University of Pisa |
| (20) | 1974 | Mumford, David | 37 | Harvard University |
| (21) | 1978 | Deligne, Pierre | 33 | IHES |
| (22) | 1978 | Fefferman, Charles | 29 | Princeton University |
| (23) | 1978 | Margulis, Gregori | 32 | InstPrblmInfTrans |
| (24) | 1978 | Quillen, Daniel | 38 | MIT |
| (25) | 1982 | Connes, Alain | 35 | IHES |
| (26) | 1982 | Thurston, William | 35 | Princeton University |
| (27) | 1982 | Yau, Shing-Tung | 33 | IAS |
| (28) | 1986 | Donaldson, Simon | 27 | Oxford University |
| (29) | 1986 | Faltings, Gerd | 32 | Princeton University |
| (30) | 1986 | Freedman, Michael | 35 | University of California at San Diego |
| (31) | 1990 | Drinfeld, Vladimir | 36 | Phys. Inst. Kharkov |
| (32) | 1990 | Jones, Vaughan | 38 | University of California at Berkeley |
| (33) | 1990 | Mori, Shigefumi | 39 | University of Kyoto |
| (34) | 1990 | Witten, Edward | 38 | Princeton/Inst. for Advanced Study |
| (35) | 1994 | Bourgain, Jean | 40 | Princeton/Inst. for Advanced Study |
| (36) | 1994 | Lions, Pierre-Louis | 38 | Universite de Paris-Dauphine |
| (37) | 1994 | Yoccoz, Jean-Christophe | 36 | Universite de Paris-Sud |
| (38) | 1994 | Zelmanov, Efim | 39 | University of Wisconsin |
| (39) | 1998 | Borcherds, Richard E. | 38 | Cambridge University |
| (40) | 1998 | Gowers, William T. | 34 | Cambridge University |
| (41) | 1998 | Kontsevich, Maxim | 34 | Institut des Hautes Etudes Scientifiques and Rutgers University |
| (42) | 1998 | McMullen, Curtis T. | 40 | Harvard University |

10.6 GREEK ALPHABET

For each Greek letter, we illustrate the form of the capital letter and the form of the lower case letter. In some cases, there is a popular variation of the lower case letter.

| Greek letter | Greek name | English equivalent | Greek letter | Greek name | English equivalent | | | |
|--------------|------------|--------------------|--------------|------------|--------------------|-------------|---------|----|
| <i>A</i> | α | Alpha | a | <i>N</i> | ν | Nu | n | |
| <i>B</i> | β | Beta | b | Ξ | ξ | Xi | x | |
| Γ | γ | Gamma | g | <i>O</i> | o | Omicron | o | |
| Δ | δ | Delta | d | Π | π | ϖ | Pi | p |
| <i>E</i> | ϵ | ε | Epsilon | <i>P</i> | ρ | ϱ | Rho | r |
| <i>Z</i> | ζ | Zeta | z | Σ | σ | ς | Sigma | s |
| <i>H</i> | η | Eta | e | <i>T</i> | τ | | Tau | t |
| Θ | θ | ϑ | Theta | Υ | υ | | Upsilon | u |
| <i>I</i> | ι | Iota | i | Φ | ϕ | φ | Phi | ph |
| <i>K</i> | κ | Kappa | k | <i>X</i> | χ | | Chi | ch |
| Λ | λ | Lambda | l | Ψ | ψ | | Psi | ps |
| <i>M</i> | μ | Mu | m | Ω | ω | | Omega | o |

10.7 COMPUTER LANGUAGES

The following is a sampling of computer languages used by scientists and engineers:

1. Numerical languages
 - Matlab and Octave
 - C and C++
 - Fortran
 - Lisp
2. Statistical languages
 - SPSS
 - Minitab
3. Optimization languages
 - GAMS (AMPL)
 - MINOS
 - MINTO
4. Symbolic languages
 - Derive
 - Maple
 - Mathematica
 - Reduce

10.7.1 SOFTWARE CONTACT INFORMATION

1. Derive <http://www.derive.com>
2. Fortran <http://www.fortran.com>
3. Maple <http://www.maplesoft.com>
4. MathCad <http://www.mathsoft.com>
5. Matlab <http://www.mathworks.com>
6. Mathematica <http://www.wolfram.com>

10.8 PROFESSIONAL MATHEMATICAL ORGANIZATIONS

- 1. American Mathematical Society (AMS)**
201 Charles Street, Providence, RI 02904
Telephone: 800/321-4AMS
Electronic address: www.ams.org
- 2. American Mathematical Association of Two-Year Colleges**
Southwest Tennessee Community College
5983 Macon Cove, Memphis, TN 38134
Telephone: 901/333-4643
Electronic address: www.amatyc.org
- 3. American Statistical Association**
1429 Duke Street, Alexandria, VA 22314
Telephone: 703/684-1221
Electronic address: www.amstat.org
- 4. Association for Symbolic Logic**
Box 742, Vassar College, 124 Raymond Avenue
Poughkeepsie, New York 12604
Telephone: 845/437-7080
Electronic address: www.aslonline.org
- 5. Association for Women in Mathematics**
4114 Computer & Space Sciences Building, University of Maryland,
College Park, MD 20742
Telephone: 301/405-7892
Electronic address: www.awm-math.org
- 6. Canadian Applied Mathematics Society**
Department of Mathematics and Statistics, Simon Fraser University,
Burnaby, British Columbia, Canada V5A 1S6
Telephone: 604/291-3337, 604/291-3332
Electronic address: www.caims.ca
- 7. Canadian Applied and Industrial Mathematics Society**
577 King Edward, Suite 109, P. O. Box 450, Station A,
Ottawa, Ontario, Canada K1N 6N5
Telephone: 613/562-5702
Electronic address: www.cms.math.ca
- 8. Casualty Actuarial Society**
1100 North Glebe Road, Suite 600, Arlington, VA 22201
Telephone: 703/276-3100
Electronic address: www.casact.org

-
9. **Conference Board of the Mathematical Sciences**
1529 Eighteenth Street, N.W., Washington, DC 20036
Telephone: 202/293-1170
Electronic address: www.cbmsweb.org
 10. **The Consortium for Mathematics and Its Applications (COMAP)**
57 Bedford Street, Suite 210, Lexington, MA 02420
Telephone: 800/77-COMAP
Electronic address: www.comap.com
 11. **Council on Undergraduate Research**
Council on Undergraduate Research, 734 15th St. N.W., Suite 550, Washington, DC 20005
Telephone: 202/783-4810
Electronic address: www.cur.org
 12. **The Fibonacci Association**
Chase Building, Dalhousie University
Halifax, Nova Scotia, Canada B3H 3J5
Telephone: 902/494-2572
Electronic address: www.mscs.dal.ca/Fibonacci/
 13. **Institute for Operations Research and the Management Sciences (INFORMS)**
940-A Elkridge Landing Road, Linthicum, MD 21090
Telephone: 800/4IN-FORMS
Electronic address: www.informs.org
 14. **Institute of Mathematical Statistics**
P.O. Box 22718
Beachwood, OH 44122
Telephone: 216/295-2340
Electronic address: www.imstat.org
 15. **International Mathematics Union (IMU)**
Estrada Dona Castorina, 110, Jardim Botânico,
Rio de Janeiro – RJ 22460 Brazil
Telephone: 55-21-294 9032, 55-21-5111749
Electronic address: www.mathunion.org
 16. **Joint Policy Board for Mathematics**
1 Oxford Street #325, Cambridge, MA 02138
Electronic address: www.jpbm.org
 17. **Kappa Mu Epsilon ($\kappa\mu\epsilon$)**
Electronic address: www.cst.cmich.edu/org/kme_nat
 18. **The Mathematical Association of America (MAA)**
1529 Eighteenth Street, N.W., Washington, DC 20036
Telephone: 202/387-5200
Electronic address: www.maa.org

-
19. **Mathematical Programming Society**
3600 University City Science Center, Philadelphia, PA 19104
Telephone: 215/382-9800, x323
Electronic address: www.caam.rice.edu/~mathprog/
 20. **Mu Alpha Theta ($\mu\alpha\theta$)**
University of Oklahoma, 610 Elm Avenue, Room 423
Norman, OK 73019
Telephone: 405/325-4489
Electronic address: www.mualphatheta.org
 21. **National Association of Mathematicians**
Department of Mathematics, Morehouse College
Atlanta, GA 30314
Electronic address: www.caam.rice.edu/~nated/orgs/nam/index.html
 22. **The National Council of Teachers of Mathematics**
1906 Association Drive, Reston, VA 22091
Telephone: 703/620-9840
Electronic address: www.nctm.org
 23. **ORSA (see *INFORMS*)**
 24. **Pi Mu Epsilon ($\pi\mu\epsilon$)**
Electronic address: www.pme-math.org
 25. **Rocky Mountain Mathematics Consortium**
Arizona State University, Box 871904, Tempe, AZ 85287
Telephone: 602/965-3788
Electronic address: math.la.asu.edu/~rmmc
 26. **Society of Industrial and Applied Mathematics (SIAM)**
3600 University City Science Center, Philadelphia, PA 19104
Telephone: 215/382-9800
Electronic address: www.siam.org
 27. **The Society for Mathematical Biology**
Electronic address: www.smb.org
 28. **Society of Actuaries**
475 North Martingale Road, Suite 800, Schaumburg, IL 60173
Telephone: 847/706-3500
Electronic address: www.soa.org
 29. **Statistical Society of Canada**
1485 Lapérrire St., Ottawa, Ontario K1Z 7S8
Telephone: 613/725-2253
Electronic address: www.ssc.ca

10.9 ELECTRONIC MATHEMATICAL RESOURCES

1. General web sites related to mathematics

- (a) <http://dir.yahoo.com/Science/mathematics/>
A very large list of useful sites relating to mathematics. It is perhaps the best place to start researching an arbitrary mathematical question not covered elsewhere in this list.
- (b) <http://web.math.fsu.edu/Science/math.html>
The mathematics WWW virtual library has a very comprehensive collection of links to other mathematics-related sites.
- (c) <http://mathworld.wolfram.com>
A comprehensive on-line encyclopedia of mathematics with more than 10,000 entries, 4,000 figures, and 100 animated graphics.
- (d) <http://www.sosmath.com>
A collection of sites of mathematical interest on the web.
- (e) <http://carbon.cudenver.edu/~hgreenbe/glossary/intro.html>
A *mathematical programming glossary*.
- (f) <http://thesaurus.maths.org>
A *mathematical thesaurus*.
- (g) <http://www.cs.unb.ca/~alopez-o/math-faq/math-faq.html>
The FAQ (frequently asked questions) listing from the news group `sci.math`.

2. Web sites that respond to user input

- (a) <http://www-neos.mcs.anl.gov/>
The *NEOS server for optimization* will run many different optimization packages on an input user problem.
- (b) <http://www.theory.csc.UVic.CA/~cos/>
The *Combinatorial Object Server* creates combinatorial objects such as necklaces, permutations, combinations, etc.
- (c) <http://www.research.att.com/~njas/sequences/>
The *On-Line Encyclopedia of Integer Sequences* allows the “next term” in a sequence to be determined. (See page 25.)
- (d) <http://www.cecm.sfu.ca/projects/ISC/>
If a real number is input to the *Inverse Symbolic Calculator* it will determine where this number might have come from.

3. Societies

- (a) <http://www.ams.org>
The American Mathematical Society with the Combined Membership List of the AMS and the Math Reviews subject classifications.
- (b) <http://www.maa.org/>
The Mathematics Association of America.

-
- (c) <http://www.siam.org/>
The Society for Industrial and Applied Mathematics.
 - (d) <http://www.ima.umn.edu>
Institute for Mathematics and its Applications at the University of Minnesota.
 - (e) <http://www.comap.com>
The Consortium for Mathematics and its Applications, with links appropriate for elementary, high school, and college undergraduates. They also sponsor contests in mathematics for college students and high school students.

4. Software

- (a) <http://gams.cam.nist.gov>
The Guide to Available Mathematical Software.
- (b) <http://www.mathtools.net>
Mathematical tools (programs) in many different computing languages.
- (c) <http://www.gnu.org/software/gsl/>
The GNU scientific library is a freely available numerical library in C and C++.
- (d) <http://www.netlib.org>
The master listing for Netlib, containing many standard programs, including linpack, eispack, hompack, SPARC packages, and ODEpack.
- (e) <http://www.nag.co.uk>
The home page of the Numerical Algorithms Group.

5. Journals, pre-prints, and essays

- (a) <http://dlmf.nist.gov>
The “Digital Library of Mathematical Functions” from the National Institute of Standards and Technology.
- (b) <http://arxiv.org/archive/math>
A mathematics preprint server based at the Los Alamos National Laboratory.
- (c) <http://www.mathcad.com/library/Constants/index.htm>
A large collection of essays devoted to constants arising in mathematics.
- (d) <http://ejde.math.swt.edu/>
The Electronic Journal of Differential Equations.
- (e) <http://nyjm.albany.edu:8000/nyjm.html>
The New York Journal of Mathematics, the first electronic journal devoted to general mathematics.
- (f) <http://www.wavelet.org>
The Wavelet Digest contains questions and answers about wavelets, and announcements of papers, books, journals, software, and conferences.
- (g) <http://www.math.ohio-state.edu/JAT>
The Journal of Approximation Theory.
- (h) <http://www.combinatorics.org/ejc-wce.html>
The Electronic Journal of Combinatorics and World Combinatorics Exchange.

-
- (i) <http://rattler.cameron.edu/swjpam/swjpam.html>
The Southwest Journal of Pure and Applied Mathematics.

6. Miscellaneous mathematical web sites

- (a) <http://www.math.hmc.edu/codee/main.html>
The Consortium of Ordinary Differential Equation Experiments.
- (b) <http://www.utm.edu/research/primes/largest.html>
Information about primes, including largest known primes of various types.
- (c) <http://www.dartmouth.edu/~chance/index.html>
Material about teaching a “quantitative literacy course”.
- (d) <http://aleph0.clarku.edu/~djoyce/julia/explorer.html>
Useful for exploring the Mandelbrot and Julia sets.
- (e) <ftp://megrez.math.u-bordeaux.fr/pub/numberfields/>
The Computational Number Theory group in Bordeaux has made available (by anonymous ftp at the above URL) extensive tables of number fields (almost 550000 number fields). For the number fields belonging to tables of reasonable length, this site contains the signature, the Galois group of the Galois closure of the field, the discriminant of the number field, the class number, the structure of the class group as a product of cyclic groups, an ideal in the class for each class generating these cyclic groups, the regulator, the number of roots of unity in the field, a generator of the torsion part of the unit group, and a system of fundamental units.
- (f) <http://www.eccpage.com>
The Error Correcting Codes (ECC) home page provides free software implementing several important error-correcting codes.
- (g) <http://www.georgehart.com/virtual-polyhedra/vp.html>
An online “Encyclopedia of Polyhedra”.
- (h) <http://www.earlham.edu/~peters/knotlink.htm>
A collection of internet links related to knots.
- (i) <http://www.mathsoft.com/asolve/>
A large collection of unsolved mathematical problems, and pointers to other collections.
- (j) <http://www.clarku.edu/~djoyce/wallpaper>
Pictures and descriptions of the 17 crystallographic groups; see page 307.
- (k) <http://hcoonce.math.mankato.msus.edu/>
The mathematics genealogy project; given the name of a PhD mathematician, this site will tell you who their thesis advisor was.

EXAMPLE The editor-in-chief of this book has the ancestral sequence of advisors:
D. I. Zwillinger \longrightarrow B. S. White \longrightarrow G. C. Papanicolaou \longrightarrow J. B. Keller
 \longrightarrow R. Courant \longrightarrow D. Hilbert \longrightarrow C. L. F. Lindemann \longrightarrow C. F. Klein
 \longrightarrow R. O. S. Lipschitz and J. Plucker \longrightarrow G. P. L. Dirichlet \longrightarrow S. D. Poisson
 \longrightarrow J. L. Lagrange \longrightarrow L. Euler \longrightarrow J. Bernoulli

10.10 BIOGRAPHIES OF MATHEMATICIANS

In alphabetical order:

1. Agnesi, Maria (page 814)
2. Ah'mose (page 810)
3. al-Haytham, Abu Ali (page 811)
4. al-Khwarizmi, Muhammad (page 811)
5. al-Tusi, Nasir al-Din (page 811)
6. Archimedes (page 810)
7. Banneker, Benjamin (page 814)
8. Bernoulli, Johann (page 813)
9. Bhaskara (page 811)
10. Brahmagupta (page 811)
11. Cardano, Gerolamo (page 812)
12. Cauchy, Augustin-Louis (page 814)
13. Cayley, Arthur (page 815)
14. Dedekind, Richard (page 815)
15. Descartes, René (page 812)
16. Dickson, Leonard Eugene (page 816)
17. Euclid (page 810)
18. Euler, Leonhard (page 813)
19. Fermat, Pierre de (page 813)
20. Gauss, Carl Friedrich (page 814)
21. Gerson, Levi ben (page 812)
22. Hamilton, William Rowan (page 814)
23. Hilbert, David (page 816)
24. Hypatia (page 811)
25. Jiushao, Qin (page 812)
26. Kovalevskaya, Sofia (page 815)
27. Lagrange, Joseph (page 814)
28. Leibniz, Gottfried Wilhelm (page 813)
29. Leonardo of Pisa (page 811)
30. Napier, John (page 812)
31. Newton, Isaac (page 813)
32. Noether, Emmy (page 816)
33. Pascal, Blaise (page 813)
34. Poincaré, Henri (page 816)
35. Ptolemy (page 811)
36. Riemann, Georg Bernhard (page 815)
37. Stevin, Simon (page 812)
38. Turing, Alan (page 816)
39. Viète, François (page 812)
40. Weierstrass, Karl (page 815)

In chronological order:

Ah'mose (*c.* 1650 B.C.E.) was the scribe responsible for copying the *Rhind Papyrus*, the most detailed original document still extant on ancient Egyptian mathematics. The papyrus contains some 87 problems with solutions dealing with what we consider first-degree equations, arithmetic progressions, areas and volumes of rectangular and circular regions, proportions, and several other topics. It also contains a table of the results of the division of 2 by every odd number from 3 to 101.

Euclid (*c.* 300 B.C.E.) is responsible for the most famous mathematics text of all time, the *Elements*. Not only does this work deal with the standard results of plane geometry, but it also contains three chapters on number theory, one long chapter on irrational quantities, and three chapters on solid geometry, culminating with the construction of the five regular solids. The axiom-definition-theorem-proof style of Euclid's work has become the standard for formal mathematical writing up to the present day.

Archimedes (287–212 B.C.E.) not only wrote several works on mathematical topics more advanced than Euclid, but also was the first mathematician to derive quantitative results from the creation of mathematical models of physical problems on earth. In several of his books, he described the reasoning process by which he arrived at his results in addition to giving formal proofs. For example, he showed how to calculate the areas of a segment of a parabola and the region bounded by one turn of a spiral, and the volume of a paraboloid of revolution.

Ptolemy (c. 100–178 C.E.) is most famous for the *Almagest*, a work in thirteen books, which contains a complete mathematical description of the Greek model of the universe with parameters for the various motions of the sun, moon, and planets. The first book provides the strictly mathematical material detailing the plane and spherical trigonometry, all based solely on the chord function, necessary for astronomical computations.

Hypatia (c. 370–415), the first woman mathematician on record, lived in Alexandria. She was given a very thorough education in mathematics and philosophy by her father Theon and was responsible for detailed commentaries on several important Greek works, including Ptolemy's *Almagest*, Apollonius's *Conics*, and Diophantus's *Arithmetica*.

Brahmagupta (c. 598–670), from Rajasthan in India, is most famous for his *Brahmasphutasiddhanta* (*Correct Astronomical System of Brahma*), an astronomical work which contains many chapters on mathematics. Among the mathematical problems he considered and gave solution algorithms for were systems of linear congruences, quadratic equations, and special cases of the Pell equation $Dx^2 \pm 1 = y^2$. He also gave the earliest detailed treatment of rules for operating with positive and negative numbers.

Muhammad al-Khwarizmi (c. 780–850), originally from Khwarizm in what is now Uzbekistan, was one of the first scholars called to the House of Wisdom in Baghdad by the caliph al-Ma'mun. He is best known for his algebra text, in which he gave a careful treatment of solution methods for quadratic equations. This Arabic text, after being translated into Latin in the twelfth century, provided Europeans with an introduction to algebra, a subject not considered by the ancient Greeks. Al-Khwarizmi's book on arithmetic provided Europe with one of its earliest looks at the Hindu-Arabic number system.

Abu Ali ibn al-Haytham (965–1039), who spent much of his life in Egypt, is most famous for his work on optics, a work read and commented on for many centuries in Europe. In pure mathematics, he developed an inductive procedure for calculating formulae for the sums of integral powers of the first n integers, and used the formula for fourth powers to calculate the volume of the solid formed by revolving a parabola about a line perpendicular to its axis.

Bhaskara (1114–1185), the most famous of medieval Indian mathematicians, gave a complete algorithmic solution to the Pell equation. In addition, he dealt with techniques of solving systems of linear equations with more unknowns than equations and was familiar with the basic combinatorial formulae, giving many examples, though no proofs, of their use.

Leonardo of Pisa (1170–1240), often known today as Fibonacci, is most famous for his *Liber Abbaci* (*Book of Calculation*), which contains the earliest publication of the Fibonacci numbers in the problem of how many pairs of rabbits can be bred in one year from one pair. Many of the sources of the book are in the Islamic world, where Leonardo spent much of his early life. The work contains the rules for computing with the new Hindu–Arabic numerals, many practical problems in such topics as calculation of profits and currency conversions, and topics now standard in algebra texts such as motion problems, mixture problems, and quadratic equations.

Nasir al-Din al-Tusi (1201–1274) was the head of a large group of astronomers at the observatory in Maragha, in what is now Iran. He computed a new set of very accurate astronomical tables and developed some new ideas on planetary motion which may have influenced Copernicus in working out his heliocentric system. In pure mathematics, al-Tusi's attempted proof of the parallel postulate was modified by his son and

later published in Rome, where it influenced European work on non-Euclidean geometry. Al-Tusi also wrote the first systematic work on plane and spherical trigonometry, independent of astronomy, and gave the earliest proof of the theorem of sines.

Qin Jiushao (1202–1261), born in Sichuan, published a general procedure for solving systems of linear congruences—the Chinese remainder theorem—in his *Shushu jiu Zhang* (*Mathematical Treatise in Nine Sections*) in 1247, a procedure which makes essential use of the Euclidean algorithm. He also gave a complete description of a method for solving numerically polynomial equations of any degree. Qin’s method was developed in China over a period of a thousand years or more and is very similar to what is now called Horner’s method of solution, published by William Horner in 1819.

Levi ben Gerson (1288–1344) was a French rabbi and also an astronomer, philosopher, biblical commentator, and mathematician. His most famous mathematical work is the *Maasei Hoshev* (*The Art of the Calculator*), which contains detailed proofs of the standard combinatorial formulae, some of which use the principle of mathematical induction.

Gerolamo Cardano (1501–1576), a physician and gambler as well as a mathematician, wrote one of the earliest works containing systematic probability calculations, not all of which were correct. He is most famous, however, for his *Ars Magna* (*The Great Art*, 1545), an algebra text which contained the first publication of the rules for solving cubic equations algebraically. Some of the rules had been discovered earlier in the sixteenth century by Scipione del Ferro and Niccoló Tartaglia.

François Viète (1540–1603), a lawyer and advisor to two kings of France, was one of the earliest cryptanalysts and successfully decoded intercepted messages for his patrons. Although a mathematician only by avocation, he made important contributions to the development of algebra. In particular, he introduced letters to stand for numerical constants, thus enabling him to break away from the style of verbal algorithms of his predecessors and treat general examples by formulae rather than by giving rules for specific problems.

Simon Stevin (1548–1620) spent much of his life in the service of Maurice of Nassau, the Stadhouder of Holland, as a military engineer, advisor in finance and navigation, and quartermaster general of the Dutch army. In his book *De Thiende* (*The Art of Tenths*), Stevin introduced decimal fractions to Europe, although they had previously been used in the Islamic world. Stevin’s notation is different from our own, but he had a clear understanding of the advantage of decimals and advocated their use in all forms of measurement.

John Napier (1550–1617) was a Scottish laird who worked for years on the idea of producing a table which would enable one to multiply any desired numbers together by performing additions. These tables of logarithms first appeared in his 1614 book *Mirifici Logarithmorum Canonis Descriptio* (*Description of the Wonderful Canon of Logarithms*). Napier’s logarithms are different from, but related to, natural logarithms. His ideas were soon adapted by Henry Briggs, who eventually created the first table of common logarithms by 1628.

René Descartes (1596–1650) published the *Geometry* in 1637 as a supplement to his philosophical work, the *Discourse on the Method for Rightly Directing One’s Reason and Searching for Truth in the Sciences*. In it, he developed the principles of analytic geometry, showing how to derive algebraic equations which represented geometric curves. The *Geometry* also contained methods for solving polynomial equations, including the modern factor theorem and Descartes’ rule of signs.

Pierre de Fermat (1601–1665) was a French lawyer who spent his spare time doing mathematics. Not only was he a coinventor of analytic geometry, although his methods were somewhat different from those of Descartes, but he also was instrumental in the early development of probability theory and made many contributions to the theory of numbers. He is most remembered for the statement of his so-called “last theorem”, that the equation $x^n + y^n = z^n$ has no non-trivial integral solution if $n > 2$, a theorem whose proof was finally completed by Andrew Wiles in 1994.

Blaise Pascal (1623–1662) showed his mathematical precocity with his *Essay on Conics* of 1640 in which he stated his theorem that the opposite sides of a hexagon inscribed in a conic section always intersect in three collinear points. Pascal is better known, however, for his detailed study of what is now called Pascal’s triangle of binomial coefficients, the basic facts of which had been known in the Islamic and Chinese worlds for centuries. He also introduced the differential triangle in his *Treatise on the Sines of a Quadrant of a Circle*, an idea adopted by Leibniz in his calculus.

Isaac Newton (1642–1727), the central figure in the Scientific Revolution, is most famous for his *Philosophiæ Naturalis Principia Mathematica* (*Mathematical Principles of Natural Philosophy*, 1687), in which he derived his system of the world based on his laws of motion and his law of universal gravitation. Over 20 years earlier, however, Newton had consolidated and generalized all the material on tangents and areas worked out by his predecessors into the magnificent problem solving tool of the calculus. He also developed the power series as a method of investigating various transcendental functions, stated the general binomial theorem, and, although never establishing his methods with the rigor of Greek geometry, did demonstrate an understanding of the concept of limit quite sufficient for him to apply the calculus to solve many important mathematical and physical problems.

Gottfried Wilhelm Leibniz (1646–1716), born in Leipzig, developed his version of the calculus some ten years after Isaac Newton, but published it much earlier. Leibniz based his calculus on the inverse relationship of sums and differences, generalized to infinitesimal quantities called differentials. By clever manipulation of differentials, based in part on the geometrical model of the differential triangle, Leibniz was able to derive all of the basic rules of the differential and integral calculus and apply them to solve physical problems expressible in terms of differential equations. Leibniz’s d and \int notation for differentials and integrals turned out to be much more flexible and useful than Newton’s dot notation and remains the notation of calculus to the present day.

Johann Bernoulli (1667–1748), one of a number of prominent mathematicians of his Swiss family, was one of the earliest proponents of Leibniz’s differential and integral calculus. Bernoulli helped to stimulate the development of the new techniques by proposing challenge problems to mathematicians, the most important probably being that of describing the brachistochrone, the curve representing the path of descent of a body between two given points in the shortest possible time. Many of the problems he posed required the solution of differential equations, and Bernoulli developed many techniques useful toward this end, including the calculus of the logarithmic and exponential functions.

Leonhard Euler (1707–1783), a student of Johann Bernoulli in Basel who became one of the earliest members of the St. Petersburg Academy of Sciences founded by Peter the Great of Russia, was the most prolific mathematician of all time. His series of analysis texts, *Introduction to Analysis of the Infinite*, *Methods of the Differential Calculus*, and *Methods of the Integral Calculus*, established many of the notations and methods still in use today. Among his numerous contributions to every area of mathematics and physics are his development of the calculus of the trigonometric functions, the establishment

of the theory of surfaces in differential geometry, and the creation of the calculus of variations.

Maria Agnesi (1718–1799), the eldest child of a professor of mathematics at the University of Bologna, in 1748 published the clearest text on calculus up to that point. Based on the work of Leibniz and his followers, the work explained concepts lucidly and provided numerous examples, including some that have become standard in calculus texts to this day. Curiously, her name is often attached to a small item in her book not even original with her, a curve whose equation was $y = \pm \frac{a\sqrt{a-x}}{\sqrt{x}}$. This curve was called *la versiera*, derived from the Latin meaning “to turn”; unfortunately the word also was the abbreviation of the Italian word meaning “wife of the devil” and so was translated into English as “witch”. The curve has ever since been known as the “witch of Agnesi”.

Benjamin Banneker (1731–1806), the first American black to achieve distinction in science, taught himself sufficient mathematics and astronomy to publish a series of well-regarded almanacs in the 1790s. He also assisted Andrew Ellicott in the survey of the boundaries of the District of Columbia. He was fond of solving mathematical puzzles and problems and recorded many of these in his notebooks.

Joseph Lagrange (1736–1813), was born in Turin, becoming at age 19 a professor of mathematics at the Royal Artillery School there. He is most famous for his *Analytical Mechanics* (1788), a work which extended the mechanics of Newton and Euler, and demonstrated how problems in mechanics can generally be reduced to solutions of ordinary or partial differential equations. In 1797 he published his *Theory of Analytic Functions*, which attempted to reduce the ideas of calculus to those of algebraic analysis by assuming that every function could be represented as a power series. Although his central idea was incorrect, many of the proofs of basic theorems of calculus in this work were subsequently adapted by Cauchy into the forms still in use today.

Carl Friedrich Gauss (1777–1855) published his important work on number theory, the *Disquisitiones Arithmeticae*, when he was only 24, a work containing not only an extensive discussion of the theory of congruences, culminating in the quadratic reciprocity theorem, but also a detailed treatment of cyclotomic equations in which he showed how to construct regular n -gons by Euclidean techniques whenever n is prime and $n - 1$ is a power of 2. Gauss also made fundamental contributions to the differential geometry of surfaces in his *General Investigations of Curved Surfaces* in 1827, as well as to complex analysis, astronomy, geodesy, and statistics during his long tenure as a professor at the University of Göttingen. Many ideas later published by others, including the basics of non-Euclidean geometry, were found in his notebooks after his death.

Augustin-Louis Cauchy (1789–1857), the most prolific mathematician of the nineteenth century, wrote several textbooks in analysis for use at the École Polytechnique, textbooks which became the model for calculus texts for the next hundred years. In his texts, Cauchy based the calculus on the notion of limit, using, for the first time, a definition which could be applied arithmetically to give proofs of some of the important results. Among numerous other subjects to which he contributed important ideas were complex analysis, in which he gave the first proof of the Cauchy integral theorem, the theory of matrices, in which he demonstrated that every symmetric matrix can be diagonalized by use of an orthogonal substitution, and the theory of permutations, in which he was the earliest to consider these from a functional point of view.

William Rowan Hamilton (1805–1865) became the Astronomer Royal of Ireland in 1827 because of his original work in optics accomplished during his undergraduate years at Trinity College, Dublin. In 1837, he showed how to introduce complex numbers

into algebra axiomatically by considering $a + ib$ as a pair (a, b) of real numbers with appropriate computational rules. After many years of seeking an appropriate definition for multiplication rules for triples of numbers which could be applied to vector analysis in three-space, he discovered that it was in fact necessary to consider quadruplets of numbers. It was out of the natural definition of multiplication of these quaternions that the modern notions of dot product and cross product of vectors evolved.

Karl Weierstrass (1815–1897) taught for many years at German gymnasia before producing a series of brilliant mathematical papers in the 1850s which resulted in his appointment to a professorship at the University of Berlin. It was in his lectures there that he insisted on defining every concept of analysis arithmetically, including such ideas as uniform convergence and uniform continuity, thus completing the transformation away from the use of terms such as “infinitely small”. Since he himself never published many of these ideas, his primary influence was through the work of his numerous students.

Arthur Cayley (1821–1895), although graduating from Trinity College, Cambridge, as Senior Wrangler, became a lawyer because there was no suitable mathematics position available in England. He produced nearly 300 mathematical papers during his 14 years as a lawyer, however, and finally secured a professorship at Cambridge in 1863. Among his numerous mathematical achievements are the earliest abstract definition of a group in 1854, out of which he was able to calculate all possible groups of order up to eight and the basic rules for operating with matrices, including a statement (without rigorous proof) of the Cayley–Hamilton theorem that every matrix satisfies its characteristic equation.

Georg Bernhard Riemann (1826–1866), in his 1854 inaugural lecture at the University of Göttingen entitled “On the Hypotheses which Lie at the Foundation of Geometry”, discussed the general notion of an n -dimensional manifold, developed the idea of a metric relation on such a manifold, and gave criteria which would determine whether a three-dimensional manifold is Euclidean, or “flat”. This lecture had enormous influence on the development of geometry, including non-Euclidean geometry, as well as on the development of a new concept of our physical space ultimately necessary for the theory of general relativity. Among his other achievements, Riemann’s work on complex functions and their associated Riemann surfaces became one of the foundations of combinatorial topology.

Richard Dedekind (1831–1916) solved the problem of the lack of unique factorization in rings of algebraic integers by introducing ideals and their arithmetic and demonstrating that every ideal is either prime or can be expressed uniquely as a product of prime ideals. During his teaching at Zurich in the late 1850s, he realized that, although differential calculus deals with continuous magnitudes, there was no satisfactory definition available of what it means for the set of real numbers to be continuous. He therefore worked out a definition of irrational numbers through his idea of what is now called a Dedekind cut in the set of rational numbers. Somewhat later Dedekind also considered the basic ideas of set theory and gave a set theoretic characterization of the natural numbers.

Sofia Kovalevskaya (1850–1891) was the first European woman since the Renaissance to earn a Ph.D. in mathematics (1874), a degree based on her many new results in the theory of partial differential equations. Because women were generally not permitted to study mathematics officially in European universities, Kovalevskaya had been forced to study privately with Weierstrass. Her mathematical talents eventually earned her a professorship at the University of Stockholm, an editorship of the journal *Acta Mathematica*, and the Prix Bordin of the French Academy of Sciences for her work on the

revolution of a solid body about a fixed point. Unfortunately, her career was cut short by her untimely death from pneumonia at the age of 41.

Henri Poincaré (1854–1912), one of the last of the universal mathematicians, contributed to virtually every area of mathematics, including physics and theoretical astronomy. Among his many contributions was the introduction of the idea of homology into topology, the creation of a model of Lobachevskian geometry which helped to convince mathematicians that this non-Euclidean geometry was as valid as Euclid’s, and a detailed study of the non-linear partial differential equations governing planetary motion aimed at answering questions about the stability of the solar system. Toward the end of his life, Poincaré wrote several popular books emphasizing the importance of science and mathematics.

David Hilbert (1862–1943) is probably most famous for his lecture at the International Congress of Mathematicians in Paris in 1900 in which he presented a list of 23 problems which he felt would be of central importance for 20th century mathematics. Most of the problems have now been solved, while significant progress has been achieved in the remainder. Hilbert himself made notable contributions to the study of algebraic forms, algebraic number theory, the foundations of geometry, integral equations, theoretical physics, and the foundations of mathematics.

Leonard Eugene Dickson (1874–1954) was the first recipient of a doctorate in mathematics at the University of Chicago, where he ultimately spent most of his mathematical career. Dickson helped to develop the abstract approach to algebra by developing sets of axioms for such constructs as groups, fields, and algebras. Among his important books was his monumental three volume *History of the Theory of Numbers*, which traced the evolution of every important concept in that field.

Emmy Noether (1882–1935) received her doctorate from the University of Erlangen in 1908, a few years later moving to Göttingen to assist Hilbert in the study of general relativity. During her 18 years there, she was extremely influential in stimulating a new style of thinking in algebra by always emphasizing its structural rather than computational aspects. She is most famous for her work on what are now called Noetherian rings, but her inspiration of others is still evident in today’s textbooks in abstract algebra.

Alan Turing (1912–1954) developed the concept of a “Turing machine” in 1936 to answer the questions of what a computation is and whether a given computation can in fact be carried out. This notion today lies at the basis of the modern all-purpose computer, a machine which can be programmed to do any desired computation. During World War II, Turing led the successful effort in England to crack the German “Enigma” code, an effort central to the defeat of Nazi Germany.

Chapter 9

Financial Analysis

9.1 FINANCIAL FORMULAE

- 9.1.1 *Definition of financial terms*
- 9.1.2 *Formulae connecting financial terms*
- 9.1.3 *Examples*

9.2 FINANCIAL TABLES

- 9.2.1 *Compound interest: find final value*
- 9.2.2 *Compound interest: find interest rate*
- 9.2.3 *Compound interest: find annuity*

9.1 FINANCIAL FORMULAE

9.1.1 DEFINITION OF FINANCIAL TERMS

- A amount that P is worth, after n time periods, with i percent interest per period
- B total amount borrowed
- P principal to be invested (equivalently, present value)
- a future value multiplier after one time period
- i percent interest per time period (expressed as a decimal)
- m amount to be paid each time period
- n number of time periods

Note that the units of A , B , P , and m must all be the same, for example, dollars.

9.1.2 FORMULAE CONNECTING FINANCIAL TERMS

1. **Interest:** Let the principal amount P be invested at an interest rate of $i\%$ per time period (expressed as a decimal), for n time periods. Let A be the amount that this is worth after n time periods. Then

(a) *Simple interest:*

$$A = P(1 + ni) \quad \text{and} \quad P = \frac{A}{(1 + ni)} \quad \text{and} \quad i = \frac{1}{n} \left(\frac{A}{P} - 1 \right). \quad (9.1.1)$$

- (b) *Compound interest* (see the tables beginning on page 783 for A and the tables beginning on page 785 for i):

$$A = P(1 + i)^n \quad \text{and} \quad P = \frac{A}{(1 + i)^n} \quad \text{and} \quad i = \left(\frac{A}{P} \right)^{1/n} - 1. \quad (9.1.2)$$

When interest is compounded q times per time period for n time periods, it is equivalent to an interest rate of $(i/q)\%$ per time period for nq time periods.

$$\begin{aligned} A &= P \left(1 + \frac{i}{q} \right)^{nq}, \\ P &= A \left(1 + \frac{i}{q} \right)^{-nq}, \\ i &= q \left[\left(\frac{A}{P} \right)^{1/nq} - 1 \right]. \end{aligned} \quad (9.1.3)$$

Continuous compounding occurs when the interest is compounded infinitely often in each time period (i.e., $q \rightarrow \infty$). In this case: $A = Pe^{in}$.

2. **Present value:** If A is to be received after n time periods of $i\%$ interest per time period, then the present value P of such an investment is given by (from Equation (9.1.2)) $P = A(1 + i)^{-n}$.
3. **Annuities:** Suppose that the amount B (in dollars) is borrowed, at a rate of $i\%$ per time period, to be repaid at a rate of m (in dollars) per time period, for a total of n time periods. Then (see the tables beginning on page 787):

$$m = Bi \frac{(1 + i)^n}{(1 + i)^n - 1}, \quad (9.1.4)$$

$$B = \frac{m}{i} \left(1 - \frac{1}{(1 + i)^n} \right). \quad (9.1.5)$$

Using $a = (1 + i)$, these equations can be written more compactly as

$$m = Bi \frac{a^n}{a^n - 1} \quad \text{and} \quad B = \frac{m}{i} \left(1 - \frac{1}{a^n} \right). \quad (9.1.6)$$

9.1.3 EXAMPLES

1. **Question:** If \$100 is invested at 5% per year, compounded annually for 10 years, what is the resulting amount?

- **Analysis:** Using Equation (9.1.2), we identify
 - (a) Principal invested, $P = 100$ (the units are dollars)
 - (b) Time period, 1 year
 - (c) Interest rate per time period, $i = 5\% = 0.05$
 - (d) Number of time periods, $n = 10$
- **Answer:** $A = P(1 + i)^n$ or $A = 100(1 + 0.05)^{10} = \162.89 .
(Or, see tables starting on page 783.)

2. **Question:** If \$100 is invested at 5% per year and the interest is compounded quarterly (4 times a year) for 10 years, what is the final amount?

- **Analysis:** Using Equation (9.1.3) we identify
 - (a) Principal invested, $P = 100$ (the units are dollars)
 - (b) Time period, 1 year
 - (c) Interest rate per time period, $i = 5\% = 0.05$
 - (d) Number of time periods, $n = 10$
 - (e) Number of compounding time periods, $q = 4$
- **Answer:** $A = P \left(1 + \frac{i}{q}\right)^{nq}$ or $A = 100\left(1 + \frac{0.05}{4}\right)^{4 \cdot 10} = 100(1.0125)^{40} = \164.36 .
- **Alternate analysis:** Using Equation (9.1.2), we identify
 - (a) Principal invested, $P = 100$ (the units are dollars)
 - (b) Time period, quarter of a year
 - (c) Interest rate per time period, $i = \frac{5\%}{4} = \frac{0.05}{4} = 0.0125$
 - (d) Number of time periods, $n = 10 \cdot 4 = 40$
- **Alternate answer:** $A = P(1 + i)^n$ or $A = 100(1.0125)^{40} = \$164.36$.
(Or, see tables starting on page 783.)

3. **Question:** If \$100 is invested now, and we wish to have \$200 at the end of 10 years, what yearly compound interest rate must we receive?

- **Analysis:** Using Equation (9.1.2), we identify
 - (a) Principal invested, $P = 100$ (the units are dollars)
 - (b) Final amount, $A = 200$
 - (c) Time period, 1 year
 - (d) Number of time periods, $n = 10$

-
- **Answer:** $i = \left(\frac{A}{P}\right)^{1/n} - 1$ or $i = \left(\frac{200}{100}\right)^{1/10} - 1 = 0.0718$. (Or, see tables starting on page 785.) Hence, we must receive an annual interest rate of 7.2%.
4. **Question:** An investment returns \$10,000 in 10 years time. If the interest rate will be 10% per year, what is the present value? (That is, how much money would have to be invested now to obtain this amount in ten years?)
- **Analysis:** Using Equation (9.1.2), we identify
 - (a) Final amount, $A = 10,000$ (the units are dollars)
 - (b) Time period, 10 years
 - (c) Interest rate per time period, $i = 10\% = 0.1$
 - (d) Number of time periods, $n = 10$
 - **Answer:** $P = A(1 + i)^{-n} = 10000(1.1)^{-10} = 3855.43$; the present value of this investment is 3,855.43. (Or, the table on page 784 gives the value 2.5937; the present value of this investment is then $\frac{\$10,000}{2.5937} = 3,855.43$).
5. **Question:** A mortgage of \$100,000 is obtained with which to buy a house. The mortgage will be repaid at an interest rate of 9% per year, compounded monthly, for 30 years. What is the monthly payment?
- **Analysis:** Using Equation (9.1.6), we identify
 - (a) Amount borrowed, $B = 100,000$ (the units are dollars)
 - (b) Time period, 1 month
 - (c) Interest rate per time period, $i = 0.09/12 = 0.0075$
 - (d) Number of time periods, $n = 30 \cdot 12 = 360$
 - **Answer:** $a = 1 + i = 1.0075$ and $m = Bi \frac{a^n}{a^n - 1} = (100,000)(.0075) \times \frac{(1.0075)^{360}}{(1.0075)^{360} - 1} = 804.62$. (Or, see tables starting on page 787.) The monthly payment is \$804.62.
6. **Question:** Suppose that interest rates on 15-year mortgages are currently 6%, compounded monthly. By spending \$800 per month, what is the largest mortgage obtainable?
- **Analysis:** Using Equation (9.1.6), we identify
 - (a) Time period, 1 month
 - (b) Payment amount, $m = 800$ (the units are dollars)
 - (c) Interest rate per time period, $i = 0.06/12 = 0.005$
 - (d) Number of time periods, $n = 15 \cdot 12 = 180$
 - **Answer:** $a = 1 + i = 1.005$ and $B = \frac{m}{i} \left(1 - \frac{1}{a^n}\right) = \frac{800}{0.005} \left(1 - \frac{1}{1.005^{180}}\right) = 94802.81$. (Or, see tables starting on page 787.) The largest mortgage amount obtainable is \$94,802.81.

9.2 FINANCIAL TABLES

9.2.1 COMPOUND INTEREST: FIND FINAL VALUE

These tables use Equation (9.1.2) to determine the final value in dollars (A) when one dollar ($P = 1$) is invested at an interest rate of i per time period, the length of investment time being n time periods. For example, if \$1 is invested at a return of 3% per time period, for 60 time periods, then the final value would be \$5.89 (see the following table). Analogously, if \$10 had been invested, then the final value would be \$59.92.

| n | Interest rate (i) | | | | | |
|-----|-----------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|---------|
| | 1.00% | 1.50% | 2.00% | 2.50% | 3.00% | 3.50% |
| 2 | 1.0201 | 1.0302 | 1.0404 | 1.0506 | 1.0609 | 1.0712 |
| 4 | 1.0406 | 1.0614 | 1.0824 | 1.1038 | 1.1255 | 1.1475 |
| 6 | 1.0615 | 1.0934 | 1.1262 | 1.1597 | 1.1941 | 1.2293 |
| 8 | 1.0829 | 1.1265 | 1.1717 | 1.2184 | 1.2668 | 1.3168 |
| 10 | 1.1046 | 1.1605 | 1.2190 | 1.2801 | 1.3439 | 1.4106 |
| 12 | 1.1268 | 1.1956 | 1.2682 | 1.3449 | 1.4258 | 1.5111 |
| 20 | 1.2202 | 1.3469 | 1.4860 | 1.6386 | 1.8061 | 1.9898 |
| 24 | 1.2697 | 1.4295 | 1.6084 | 1.8087 | 2.0328 | 2.2833 |
| 36 | 1.4308 | 1.7091 | 2.0399 | 2.4325 | 2.8983 | 3.4503 |
| 48 | 1.6122 | 2.0435 | 2.5871 | 3.2715 | 4.1322 | 5.2136 |
| 60 | 1.8167 | 2.4432 | 3.2810 | 4.3998 | 5.8916 | 7.8781 |
| 72 | 2.0471 | 2.9212 | 4.1611 | 5.9172 | 8.4000 | 11.9043 |

| n | Interest rate (i) | | | | | |
|-----|-----------------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| | 4.00% | 4.50% | 5.00% | 5.50% | 6.00% | 6.50% |
| 2 | 1.0816 | 1.0920 | 1.1025 | 1.1130 | 1.1236 | 1.1342 |
| 4 | 1.1699 | 1.1925 | 1.2155 | 1.2388 | 1.2625 | 1.2865 |
| 6 | 1.2653 | 1.3023 | 1.3401 | 1.3788 | 1.4185 | 1.4591 |
| 8 | 1.3686 | 1.4221 | 1.4775 | 1.5347 | 1.5938 | 1.6550 |
| 10 | 1.4802 | 1.5530 | 1.6289 | 1.7081 | 1.7909 | 1.8771 |
| 12 | 1.6010 | 1.6959 | 1.7959 | 1.9012 | 2.0122 | 2.1291 |
| 20 | 2.1911 | 2.4117 | 2.6533 | 2.9178 | 3.2071 | 3.5236 |
| 24 | 2.5633 | 2.8760 | 3.2251 | 3.6146 | 4.0489 | 4.5331 |
| 36 | 4.1039 | 4.8774 | 5.7918 | 6.8721 | 8.1472 | 9.6513 |
| 48 | 6.5705 | 8.2715 | 10.4013 | 13.0653 | 16.3939 | 20.5485 |
| 60 | 10.5196 | 14.0274 | 18.6792 | 24.8398 | 32.9877 | 43.7498 |
| 72 | 16.8423 | 23.7888 | 33.5451 | 47.2256 | 66.3777 | 93.1476 |

| n | Interest rate (i) | | | | | |
|-----|-----------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| | 7.00% | 7.50% | 8.00% | 8.50% | 9.00% | 9.50% |
| 2 | 1.1449 | 1.1556 | 1.1664 | 1.1772 | 1.1881 | 1.1990 |
| 4 | 1.3108 | 1.3355 | 1.3605 | 1.3859 | 1.4116 | 1.4377 |
| 6 | 1.5007 | 1.5433 | 1.5869 | 1.6315 | 1.6771 | 1.7238 |
| 8 | 1.7182 | 1.7835 | 1.8509 | 1.9206 | 1.9926 | 2.0669 |
| 10 | 1.9671 | 2.0610 | 2.1589 | 2.2610 | 2.3674 | 2.4782 |
| 12 | 2.2522 | 2.3818 | 2.5182 | 2.6617 | 2.8127 | 2.9715 |
| 20 | 3.8697 | 4.2478 | 4.6610 | 5.1120 | 5.6044 | 6.1416 |
| 24 | 5.0724 | 5.6729 | 6.3412 | 7.0846 | 7.9111 | 8.8296 |
| 36 | 11.4239 | 13.5115 | 15.9682 | 18.8569 | 22.2512 | 26.2366 |
| 48 | 25.7289 | 32.1815 | 40.2106 | 50.1912 | 62.5852 | 77.9611 |
| 60 | 57.9464 | 76.6492 | 101.2571 | 133.5932 | 176.0313 | 231.6579 |
| 72 | 130.5065 | 182.5616 | 254.9825 | 355.5831 | 495.1170 | 688.3615 |

| n | Interest rate (i) | | | | | |
|-----|-----------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| | 10.00% | 10.50% | 11.00% | 11.50% | 12.00% | 12.50% |
| 2 | 1.2100 | 1.2210 | 1.2321 | 1.2432 | 1.2544 | 1.2656 |
| 4 | 1.4641 | 1.4909 | 1.5181 | 1.5456 | 1.5735 | 1.6018 |
| 6 | 1.7716 | 1.8204 | 1.8704 | 1.9215 | 1.9738 | 2.0273 |
| 8 | 2.1436 | 2.2228 | 2.3045 | 2.3889 | 2.4760 | 2.5658 |
| 10 | 2.5937 | 2.7141 | 2.8394 | 2.9699 | 3.1059 | 3.2473 |
| 12 | 3.1384 | 3.3140 | 3.4985 | 3.6923 | 3.8960 | 4.1099 |
| 20 | 6.7275 | 7.3662 | 8.0623 | 8.8206 | 9.6463 | 10.5451 |
| 24 | 9.8497 | 10.9823 | 12.2392 | 13.6332 | 15.1786 | 16.8912 |
| 36 | 30.9127 | 36.3950 | 42.8181 | 50.3379 | 59.1356 | 69.4210 |
| 48 | 97.0172 | 120.6117 | 149.7970 | 185.8633 | 230.3908 | 285.3127 |
| 60 | 304.4816 | 399.7023 | 524.0572 | 686.2653 | 897.5969 | 1172.6039 |
| 72 | 955.5938 | 1324.5978 | 1833.3884 | 2533.9057 | 3497.0161 | 4819.2740 |

| n | Interest rate (i) | | | | | |
|-----|-----------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| | 13.00% | 13.50% | 14.00% | 14.50% | 15.00% | 15.50% |
| 2 | 1.2769 | 1.2882 | 1.2996 | 1.3110 | 1.3225 | 1.3340 |
| 4 | 1.6305 | 1.6595 | 1.6890 | 1.7188 | 1.7490 | 1.7796 |
| 6 | 2.0819 | 2.1378 | 2.1950 | 2.2534 | 2.3131 | 2.3741 |
| 8 | 2.6584 | 2.7540 | 2.8526 | 2.9542 | 3.0590 | 3.1671 |
| 10 | 3.3946 | 3.5478 | 3.7072 | 3.8731 | 4.0456 | 4.2249 |
| 12 | 4.3345 | 4.5704 | 4.8179 | 5.0777 | 5.3502 | 5.6362 |
| 20 | 11.5231 | 12.5869 | 13.7435 | 15.0006 | 16.3665 | 17.8501 |
| 24 | 18.7881 | 20.8882 | 23.2122 | 25.7829 | 28.6252 | 31.7664 |
| 36 | 81.4374 | 95.4665 | 111.8342 | 130.9174 | 153.1518 | 179.0406 |
| 48 | 352.9923 | 436.3162 | 538.8066 | 664.7577 | 819.4007 | 1009.1024 |
| 60 | 1530.0535 | 1994.1218 | 2595.9187 | 3375.4307 | 4383.9987 | 5687.4691 |

9.2.2 COMPOUND INTEREST: FIND INTEREST RATE

These tables use Equation (9.1.2) to determine the compound interest rate i that must be obtained from an investment of one dollar ($P = 1$) to yield a final value of A (in dollars) when the initial amount is invested for n time periods. For example, if \$1 is invested for 60 time periods, and the final amount obtained is \$4.00, then the actual interest rate has been 2.34% per time period (see the following table). Analogously, if \$100 had been invested, and the final amount was \$400, then the interest rate would also be 2.34% per time period.

| n | Annuity (A) | | | | | |
|-----|-----------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| | 2.0 | 2.5 | 3.0 | 3.5 | 4.0 | 4.5 |
| 1 | 100.00 | 150.00 | 200.00 | 250.00 | 300.00 | 350.00 |
| 2 | 41.42 | 58.11 | 73.20 | 87.08 | 100.00 | 112.13 |
| 3 | 25.99 | 35.72 | 44.23 | 51.83 | 58.74 | 65.10 |
| 4 | 18.92 | 25.74 | 31.61 | 36.78 | 41.42 | 45.65 |
| 5 | 14.87 | 20.11 | 24.57 | 28.47 | 31.95 | 35.10 |
| 10 | 7.18 | 9.60 | 11.61 | 13.35 | 14.87 | 16.23 |
| 12 | 5.95 | 7.93 | 9.59 | 11.00 | 12.25 | 13.35 |
| 20 | 3.53 | 4.69 | 5.65 | 6.46 | 7.18 | 7.81 |
| 24 | 2.93 | 3.89 | 4.68 | 5.36 | 5.95 | 6.47 |
| 36 | 1.94 | 2.58 | 3.10 | 3.54 | 3.93 | 4.27 |
| 48 | 1.46 | 1.93 | 2.31 | 2.64 | 2.93 | 3.18 |
| 60 | 1.16 | 1.54 | 1.85 | 2.11 | 2.34 | 2.54 |
| 72 | 0.97 | 1.28 | 1.54 | 1.75 | 1.94 | 2.11 |

| n | Annuity (A) | | | | | |
|-----|-----------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| | 5.0 | 5.5 | 6.0 | 6.5 | 7.0 | 7.5 |
| 1 | 400.00 | 450.00 | 500.00 | 550.00 | 600.00 | 650.00 |
| 2 | 123.61 | 134.52 | 144.95 | 154.95 | 164.57 | 173.86 |
| 3 | 71.00 | 76.52 | 81.71 | 86.63 | 91.29 | 95.74 |
| 4 | 49.53 | 53.14 | 56.51 | 59.67 | 62.66 | 65.49 |
| 5 | 37.97 | 40.63 | 43.10 | 45.41 | 47.58 | 49.63 |
| 10 | 17.46 | 18.59 | 19.62 | 20.58 | 21.48 | 22.32 |
| 12 | 14.35 | 15.27 | 16.10 | 16.88 | 17.61 | 18.28 |
| 20 | 8.38 | 8.90 | 9.37 | 9.81 | 10.22 | 10.60 |
| 24 | 6.94 | 7.36 | 7.75 | 8.11 | 8.45 | 8.76 |
| 36 | 4.57 | 4.85 | 5.10 | 5.34 | 5.55 | 5.76 |
| 48 | 3.41 | 3.62 | 3.80 | 3.98 | 4.14 | 4.29 |
| 60 | 2.72 | 2.88 | 3.03 | 3.17 | 3.30 | 3.42 |
| 72 | 2.26 | 2.40 | 2.52 | 2.63 | 2.74 | 2.84 |

| n | Annuity (A) | | | | | |
|-----|-----------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| | 8.0 | 8.5 | 9.0 | 9.5 | 10.0 | 10.5 |
| 1 | 700.00 | 750.00 | 800.00 | 850.00 | 900.00 | 950.00 |
| 2 | 182.84 | 191.55 | 200.00 | 208.22 | 216.23 | 224.04 |
| 3 | 100.00 | 104.08 | 108.01 | 111.79 | 115.44 | 118.98 |
| 4 | 68.18 | 70.75 | 73.20 | 75.56 | 77.83 | 80.01 |
| 5 | 51.57 | 53.42 | 55.19 | 56.87 | 58.49 | 60.04 |
| 10 | 23.11 | 23.86 | 24.57 | 25.25 | 25.89 | 26.51 |
| 12 | 18.92 | 19.52 | 20.09 | 20.64 | 21.15 | 21.65 |
| 20 | 10.96 | 11.29 | 11.61 | 11.91 | 12.20 | 12.48 |
| 24 | 9.05 | 9.33 | 9.59 | 9.83 | 10.07 | 10.29 |
| 36 | 5.95 | 6.12 | 6.29 | 6.45 | 6.61 | 6.75 |
| 48 | 4.43 | 4.56 | 4.68 | 4.80 | 4.91 | 5.02 |
| 60 | 3.53 | 3.63 | 3.73 | 3.82 | 3.91 | 4.00 |
| 72 | 2.93 | 3.02 | 3.10 | 3.18 | 3.25 | 3.32 |

| n | Annuity (A) | | | | | |
|-----|-----------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| | 11.0 | 12.0 | 13.0 | 14.0 | 15.0 | 16.0 |
| 1 | 1000.00 | 1100.00 | 1200.00 | 1300.00 | 1400.00 | 1500.00 |
| 2 | 231.66 | 246.41 | 260.56 | 274.17 | 287.30 | 300.00 |
| 3 | 122.40 | 128.94 | 135.13 | 141.01 | 146.62 | 151.98 |
| 4 | 82.12 | 86.12 | 89.88 | 93.43 | 96.80 | 100.00 |
| 5 | 61.54 | 64.38 | 67.03 | 69.52 | 71.88 | 74.11 |
| 10 | 27.10 | 28.21 | 29.24 | 30.20 | 31.10 | 31.95 |
| 12 | 22.12 | 23.01 | 23.83 | 24.60 | 25.32 | 25.99 |
| 20 | 12.74 | 13.23 | 13.68 | 14.11 | 14.50 | 14.87 |
| 24 | 10.51 | 10.91 | 11.28 | 11.62 | 11.95 | 12.25 |
| 36 | 6.89 | 7.15 | 7.38 | 7.61 | 7.81 | 8.01 |
| 48 | 5.12 | 5.31 | 5.49 | 5.65 | 5.80 | 5.95 |
| 60 | 4.08 | 4.23 | 4.37 | 4.50 | 4.62 | 4.73 |
| 72 | 3.39 | 3.51 | 3.63 | 3.73 | 3.83 | 3.93 |

| n | Annuity (A) | | | | | |
|-----|-----------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| | 17.0 | 18.0 | 19.0 | 20.0 | 25.0 | 30.0 |
| 1 | 1600.00 | 1700.00 | 1800.00 | 1900.00 | 2400.00 | 2900.00 |
| 2 | 312.31 | 324.26 | 335.89 | 347.21 | 400.00 | 447.72 |
| 3 | 157.13 | 162.07 | 166.84 | 171.44 | 192.40 | 210.72 |
| 4 | 103.05 | 105.98 | 108.78 | 111.47 | 123.61 | 134.03 |
| 5 | 76.23 | 78.26 | 80.20 | 82.06 | 90.36 | 97.44 |
| 10 | 32.75 | 33.51 | 34.24 | 34.93 | 37.97 | 40.51 |
| 12 | 26.63 | 27.23 | 27.81 | 28.36 | 30.77 | 32.77 |
| 20 | 15.22 | 15.55 | 15.86 | 16.16 | 17.46 | 18.54 |
| 24 | 12.53 | 12.80 | 13.05 | 13.29 | 14.35 | 15.22 |
| 36 | 8.19 | 8.36 | 8.52 | 8.68 | 9.35 | 9.91 |
| 48 | 6.08 | 6.21 | 6.33 | 6.44 | 6.94 | 7.34 |
| 60 | 4.83 | 4.93 | 5.03 | 5.12 | 5.51 | 5.83 |
| 72 | 4.01 | 4.10 | 4.17 | 4.25 | 4.57 | 4.84 |

9.2.3 COMPOUND INTEREST: FIND ANNUITY

These tables use Equation (9.1.4) to determine the annuity (or mortgage) payment that must be paid each time period, for n time periods, at an interest rate of $i\%$ per time period, to pay off a loan of one dollar ($B = 1$). For example, if \$1 is borrowed at 3% interest per time period, and the amount is to be paid back in equal amounts over 10 time periods, then the amount paid back per time period is \$0.12 (see the following table). Analogously, if \$100 had been borrowed, then the mortgage amount would be \$11.72.

| n | Interest rate (i) | | | | | |
|-----|-----------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| | 2.00% | 2.25% | 2.50% | 2.75% | 3.00% | 3.25% |
| 1 | 1.0200 | 1.0225 | 1.0250 | 1.0275 | 1.0300 | 1.0325 |
| 2 | 0.5151 | 0.5169 | 0.5188 | 0.5207 | 0.5226 | 0.5245 |
| 3 | 0.3468 | 0.3484 | 0.3501 | 0.3518 | 0.3535 | 0.3552 |
| 4 | 0.2626 | 0.2642 | 0.2658 | 0.2674 | 0.2690 | 0.2706 |
| 5 | 0.2122 | 0.2137 | 0.2152 | 0.2168 | 0.2183 | 0.2199 |
| 6 | 0.1785 | 0.1800 | 0.1815 | 0.1831 | 0.1846 | 0.1861 |
| 7 | 0.1545 | 0.1560 | 0.1575 | 0.1590 | 0.1605 | 0.1620 |
| 8 | 0.1365 | 0.1380 | 0.1395 | 0.1410 | 0.1425 | 0.1440 |
| 9 | 0.1225 | 0.1240 | 0.1255 | 0.1269 | 0.1284 | 0.1299 |
| 10 | 0.1113 | 0.1128 | 0.1143 | 0.1157 | 0.1172 | 0.1187 |
| 12 | 0.0946 | 0.0960 | 0.0975 | 0.0990 | 0.1005 | 0.1020 |
| 20 | 0.0612 | 0.0626 | 0.0641 | 0.0657 | 0.0672 | 0.0688 |
| 24 | 0.0529 | 0.0544 | 0.0559 | 0.0575 | 0.0590 | 0.0607 |
| 36 | 0.0392 | 0.0408 | 0.0425 | 0.0441 | 0.0458 | 0.0475 |
| 72 | 0.0263 | 0.0282 | 0.0301 | 0.0320 | 0.0340 | 0.0361 |

| n | Interest rate (i) | | | | | |
|-----|-----------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| | 3.50% | 3.75% | 4.00% | 4.25% | 4.50% | 4.75% |
| 1 | 1.0350 | 1.0375 | 1.0400 | 1.0425 | 1.0450 | 1.0475 |
| 2 | 0.5264 | 0.5283 | 0.5302 | 0.5321 | 0.5340 | 0.5359 |
| 3 | 0.3569 | 0.3586 | 0.3604 | 0.3621 | 0.3638 | 0.3655 |
| 4 | 0.2722 | 0.2739 | 0.2755 | 0.2771 | 0.2787 | 0.2804 |
| 5 | 0.2215 | 0.2230 | 0.2246 | 0.2262 | 0.2278 | 0.2294 |
| 6 | 0.1877 | 0.1892 | 0.1908 | 0.1923 | 0.1939 | 0.1955 |
| 7 | 0.1635 | 0.1651 | 0.1666 | 0.1681 | 0.1697 | 0.1713 |
| 8 | 0.1455 | 0.1470 | 0.1485 | 0.1501 | 0.1516 | 0.1532 |
| 9 | 0.1315 | 0.1330 | 0.1345 | 0.1360 | 0.1376 | 0.1391 |
| 10 | 0.1202 | 0.1218 | 0.1233 | 0.1248 | 0.1264 | 0.1279 |
| 12 | 0.1035 | 0.1050 | 0.1066 | 0.1081 | 0.1097 | 0.1112 |
| 20 | 0.0704 | 0.0720 | 0.0736 | 0.0752 | 0.0769 | 0.0785 |
| 24 | 0.0623 | 0.0639 | 0.0656 | 0.0673 | 0.0690 | 0.0707 |
| 36 | 0.0493 | 0.0511 | 0.0529 | 0.0547 | 0.0566 | 0.0585 |
| 72 | 0.0382 | 0.0403 | 0.0425 | 0.0447 | 0.0470 | 0.0492 |

| n | Interest rate (i) | | | | | |
|-----|-----------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| | 5.00% | 5.25% | 5.50% | 5.75% | 6.00% | 6.25% |
| 1 | 1.0500 | 1.0525 | 1.0550 | 1.0575 | 1.0600 | 1.0625 |
| 2 | 0.5378 | 0.5397 | 0.5416 | 0.5435 | 0.5454 | 0.5474 |
| 3 | 0.3672 | 0.3689 | 0.3706 | 0.3724 | 0.3741 | 0.3758 |
| 4 | 0.2820 | 0.2837 | 0.2853 | 0.2869 | 0.2886 | 0.2903 |
| 5 | 0.2310 | 0.2326 | 0.2342 | 0.2358 | 0.2374 | 0.2390 |
| 6 | 0.1970 | 0.1986 | 0.2002 | 0.2018 | 0.2034 | 0.2050 |
| 7 | 0.1728 | 0.1744 | 0.1760 | 0.1776 | 0.1791 | 0.1807 |
| 8 | 0.1547 | 0.1563 | 0.1579 | 0.1595 | 0.1610 | 0.1626 |
| 9 | 0.1407 | 0.1423 | 0.1438 | 0.1454 | 0.1470 | 0.1486 |
| 10 | 0.1295 | 0.1311 | 0.1327 | 0.1343 | 0.1359 | 0.1375 |
| 12 | 0.1128 | 0.1144 | 0.1160 | 0.1177 | 0.1193 | 0.1209 |
| 20 | 0.0802 | 0.0819 | 0.0837 | 0.0854 | 0.0872 | 0.0890 |
| 24 | 0.0725 | 0.0742 | 0.0760 | 0.0779 | 0.0797 | 0.0815 |
| 36 | 0.0604 | 0.0624 | 0.0644 | 0.0664 | 0.0684 | 0.0704 |
| 72 | 0.0515 | 0.0539 | 0.0562 | 0.0585 | 0.0609 | 0.0633 |

| n | Interest rate (i) | | | | | |
|-----|-----------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| | 6.50% | 6.75% | 7.00% | 7.25% | 7.50% | 7.75% |
| 1 | 1.0650 | 1.0675 | 1.0700 | 1.0725 | 1.0750 | 1.0775 |
| 2 | 0.5493 | 0.5512 | 0.5531 | 0.5550 | 0.5569 | 0.5588 |
| 3 | 0.3776 | 0.3793 | 0.3810 | 0.3828 | 0.3845 | 0.3863 |
| 4 | 0.2919 | 0.2936 | 0.2952 | 0.2969 | 0.2986 | 0.3002 |
| 5 | 0.2406 | 0.2423 | 0.2439 | 0.2455 | 0.2472 | 0.2488 |
| 6 | 0.2066 | 0.2082 | 0.2098 | 0.2114 | 0.2130 | 0.2147 |
| 7 | 0.1823 | 0.1839 | 0.1855 | 0.1872 | 0.1888 | 0.1904 |
| 8 | 0.1642 | 0.1658 | 0.1675 | 0.1691 | 0.1707 | 0.1724 |
| 9 | 0.1502 | 0.1519 | 0.1535 | 0.1551 | 0.1568 | 0.1584 |
| 10 | 0.1391 | 0.1407 | 0.1424 | 0.1440 | 0.1457 | 0.1474 |
| 12 | 0.1226 | 0.1242 | 0.1259 | 0.1276 | 0.1293 | 0.1310 |
| 20 | 0.0908 | 0.0926 | 0.0944 | 0.0962 | 0.0981 | 0.1000 |
| 24 | 0.0834 | 0.0853 | 0.0872 | 0.0891 | 0.0911 | 0.0930 |
| 36 | 0.0725 | 0.0746 | 0.0767 | 0.0789 | 0.0810 | 0.0832 |
| 72 | 0.0657 | 0.0681 | 0.0705 | 0.0730 | 0.0754 | 0.0779 |

| n | Interest rate (i) | | | | | |
|-----|-----------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| | 8.00% | 8.25% | 8.50% | 8.75% | 9.00% | 9.25% |
| 1 | 1.0800 | 1.0825 | 1.0850 | 1.0875 | 1.0900 | 1.0925 |
| 2 | 0.5608 | 0.5627 | 0.5646 | 0.5665 | 0.5685 | 0.5704 |
| 3 | 0.3880 | 0.3898 | 0.3915 | 0.3933 | 0.3951 | 0.3968 |
| 4 | 0.3019 | 0.3036 | 0.3053 | 0.3070 | 0.3087 | 0.3104 |
| 5 | 0.2505 | 0.2521 | 0.2538 | 0.2554 | 0.2571 | 0.2588 |
| 6 | 0.2163 | 0.2180 | 0.2196 | 0.2213 | 0.2229 | 0.2246 |
| 7 | 0.1921 | 0.1937 | 0.1954 | 0.1970 | 0.1987 | 0.2004 |
| 8 | 0.1740 | 0.1757 | 0.1773 | 0.1790 | 0.1807 | 0.1824 |
| 9 | 0.1601 | 0.1618 | 0.1634 | 0.1651 | 0.1668 | 0.1685 |
| 10 | 0.1490 | 0.1507 | 0.1524 | 0.1541 | 0.1558 | 0.1575 |
| 12 | 0.1327 | 0.1344 | 0.1361 | 0.1379 | 0.1396 | 0.1414 |
| 20 | 0.1018 | 0.1037 | 0.1057 | 0.1076 | 0.1095 | 0.1115 |
| 24 | 0.0950 | 0.0970 | 0.0990 | 0.1010 | 0.1030 | 0.1051 |
| 36 | 0.0853 | 0.0875 | 0.0898 | 0.0920 | 0.0942 | 0.0965 |
| 72 | 0.0803 | 0.0828 | 0.0852 | 0.0877 | 0.0902 | 0.0927 |

| n | Interest rate (i) | | | | | |
|-----|-----------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| | 9.50% | 10.00% | 10.50% | 11.00% | 11.50% | 12.00% |
| 1 | 1.0950 | 1.1000 | 1.1050 | 1.1100 | 1.1150 | 1.1200 |
| 2 | 0.5723 | 0.5762 | 0.5801 | 0.5839 | 0.5878 | 0.5917 |
| 3 | 0.3986 | 0.4021 | 0.4057 | 0.4092 | 0.4128 | 0.4163 |
| 4 | 0.3121 | 0.3155 | 0.3189 | 0.3223 | 0.3258 | 0.3292 |
| 5 | 0.2604 | 0.2638 | 0.2672 | 0.2706 | 0.2740 | 0.2774 |
| 6 | 0.2263 | 0.2296 | 0.2330 | 0.2364 | 0.2398 | 0.2432 |
| 7 | 0.2020 | 0.2054 | 0.2088 | 0.2122 | 0.2157 | 0.2191 |
| 8 | 0.1840 | 0.1874 | 0.1909 | 0.1943 | 0.1978 | 0.2013 |
| 9 | 0.1702 | 0.1736 | 0.1771 | 0.1806 | 0.1841 | 0.1877 |
| 10 | 0.1593 | 0.1628 | 0.1663 | 0.1698 | 0.1734 | 0.1770 |
| 12 | 0.1432 | 0.1468 | 0.1504 | 0.1540 | 0.1577 | 0.1614 |
| 20 | 0.1135 | 0.1175 | 0.1215 | 0.1256 | 0.1297 | 0.1339 |
| 24 | 0.1071 | 0.1113 | 0.1155 | 0.1198 | 0.1241 | 0.1285 |
| 36 | 0.0988 | 0.1033 | 0.1080 | 0.1126 | 0.1173 | 0.1221 |
| 72 | 0.0951 | 0.1001 | 0.1051 | 0.1101 | 0.1150 | 0.1200 |

| n | Interest rate (i) | | | | | |
|-----|-----------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| | 12.50% | 13.00% | 13.50% | 14.00% | 14.50% | 15.00% |
| 1 | 1.1250 | 1.1300 | 1.1350 | 1.1400 | 1.1450 | 1.1500 |
| 2 | 0.5956 | 0.5995 | 0.6034 | 0.6073 | 0.6112 | 0.6151 |
| 3 | 0.4199 | 0.4235 | 0.4271 | 0.4307 | 0.4344 | 0.4380 |
| 4 | 0.3327 | 0.3362 | 0.3397 | 0.3432 | 0.3467 | 0.3503 |
| 5 | 0.2808 | 0.2843 | 0.2878 | 0.2913 | 0.2948 | 0.2983 |
| 6 | 0.2467 | 0.2501 | 0.2536 | 0.2572 | 0.2607 | 0.2642 |
| 7 | 0.2226 | 0.2261 | 0.2296 | 0.2332 | 0.2368 | 0.2404 |
| 8 | 0.2048 | 0.2084 | 0.2120 | 0.2156 | 0.2192 | 0.2228 |
| 9 | 0.1913 | 0.1949 | 0.1985 | 0.2022 | 0.2059 | 0.2096 |
| 10 | 0.1806 | 0.1843 | 0.1880 | 0.1917 | 0.1955 | 0.1993 |
| 12 | 0.1652 | 0.1690 | 0.1728 | 0.1767 | 0.1806 | 0.1845 |
| 20 | 0.1381 | 0.1424 | 0.1467 | 0.1510 | 0.1554 | 0.1598 |
| 24 | 0.1329 | 0.1373 | 0.1418 | 0.1463 | 0.1509 | 0.1554 |
| 36 | 0.1268 | 0.1316 | 0.1364 | 0.1413 | 0.1461 | 0.1510 |
| 72 | 0.1250 | 0.1300 | 0.1350 | 0.1400 | 0.1450 | 0.1500 |

| n | Interest rate (i) | | | | | |
|-----|-----------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| | 15.50% | 16.00% | 16.50% | 17.00% | 17.50% | 18.00% |
| 1 | 1.1550 | 1.1600 | 1.1650 | 1.1700 | 1.1750 | 1.1800 |
| 2 | 0.6190 | 0.6230 | 0.6269 | 0.6308 | 0.6348 | 0.6387 |
| 3 | 0.4416 | 0.4453 | 0.4489 | 0.4526 | 0.4562 | 0.4599 |
| 4 | 0.3538 | 0.3574 | 0.3609 | 0.3645 | 0.3681 | 0.3717 |
| 5 | 0.3019 | 0.3054 | 0.3090 | 0.3126 | 0.3162 | 0.3198 |
| 6 | 0.2678 | 0.2714 | 0.2750 | 0.2786 | 0.2823 | 0.2859 |
| 7 | 0.2440 | 0.2476 | 0.2513 | 0.2550 | 0.2586 | 0.2624 |
| 8 | 0.2265 | 0.2302 | 0.2339 | 0.2377 | 0.2415 | 0.2452 |
| 9 | 0.2133 | 0.2171 | 0.2209 | 0.2247 | 0.2285 | 0.2324 |
| 10 | 0.2031 | 0.2069 | 0.2108 | 0.2147 | 0.2186 | 0.2225 |
| 12 | 0.1884 | 0.1924 | 0.1964 | 0.2005 | 0.2045 | 0.2086 |
| 20 | 0.1642 | 0.1687 | 0.1732 | 0.1777 | 0.1822 | 0.1868 |
| 24 | 0.1600 | 0.1647 | 0.1693 | 0.1740 | 0.1787 | 0.1835 |
| 36 | 0.1559 | 0.1608 | 0.1657 | 0.1706 | 0.1755 | 0.1805 |
| 72 | 0.1550 | 0.1600 | 0.1650 | 0.1700 | 0.1750 | 0.1800 |

Chapter

8

Scientific Computing

8.1 BASIC NUMERICAL ANALYSIS

8.1.1 *Approximations and errors*

8.1.2 *Solution to algebraic equations*

8.1.3 *Interpolation*

8.1.4 *Fitting equations to data*

8.2 NUMERICAL LINEAR ALGEBRA

8.2.1 *Solving linear systems*

8.2.2 *Gaussian elimination*

8.2.3 *Gaussian elimination algorithm*

8.2.4 *Pivoting*

8.2.5 *Eigenvalue computation*

8.2.6 *Householder's method*

8.2.7 *QR algorithm*

8.2.8 *Non-linear systems and numerical optimization*

8.3 NUMERICAL INTEGRATION AND DIFFERENTIATION

8.3.1 *Numerical integration*

8.3.2 *Numerical differentiation*

8.3.3 *Numerical summation*

8.4 PROGRAMMING TECHNIQUES

The text *Numerical Analysis*, Seventh Edition, Brooks/Cole, Pacific Grove, CA, 2001, by R. L. Burden and J. D. Faires, was the primary reference for most of the information presented in this chapter.

8.1 BASIC NUMERICAL ANALYSIS

8.1.1 APPROXIMATIONS AND ERRORS

Numerical methods involve finding approximate solutions to mathematical problems. Errors of approximation can result from two sources: error inherent in the method or formula used and round-off error. *Round-off error* results when a calculator or computer is used to perform real-number calculations with a finite number of significant digits. All but the first specified number of digits are either *chopped* or *rounded* to that number of digits.

If p^* is an approximation to p , the *absolute error* is defined to be $|p - p^*|$ and the *relative error* is $|p - p^*|/|p|$, provided that $p \neq 0$.

Iterative techniques often generate sequences that (ideally) converge to an exact solution. It is sometimes desirable to describe the *rate of convergence*.

DEFINITION 8.1.1

Suppose $\lim \beta_n = 0$ and $\lim \alpha_n = \alpha$. If a positive constant K exists with $|\alpha_n - \alpha| < K |\beta_n|$ for large n , then $\{\alpha_n\}$ is said to converge to α with a rate of convergence $O(\beta_n)$. This is read “big oh of β_n ” and written $\alpha_n = \alpha + O(\beta_n)$.

DEFINITION 8.1.2

Suppose $\{p_n\}$ is a sequence that converges to p , with $p_n \neq p$, for all n . If positive constants λ and α exist with $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{|p_{n+1} - p|}{|p_n - p|^\alpha} = \lambda$, then $\{p_n\}$ converges to p of order α , with asymptotic error constant λ .

In general, a higher order of convergence yields a more rapid rate of convergence. A sequence has *linear convergence* if $\alpha = 1$ and *quadratic convergence* if $\alpha = 2$.

8.1.1.1 Aitken’s Δ^2 method

DEFINITION 8.1.3

Given $\{p_n\}_{n=0}^\infty$, the forward difference Δp_n is defined by $\Delta p_n = p_{n+1} - p_n$, for $n \geq 0$. Higher powers $\Delta^k p_n$ are defined recursively by $\Delta^k p_n = \Delta(\Delta^{k-1} p_n)$, for $k \geq 2$. In particular, $\Delta^2 p_n = \Delta(p_{n+1} - p_n) = p_{n+2} - 2p_{n+1} + p_n$.

If a sequence $\{p_n\}$ converges linearly to p and $(p_n - p)(p_{n-1} - p) > 0$, for sufficiently large n , then the new sequence $\{\hat{p}_n\}$ generated by called Aitken’s Δ^2

method,

$$\hat{p}_n = p_n - \frac{(\Delta p_n)^2}{\Delta^2 p_n} \tag{8.1.1}$$

for all $n \geq 0$, satisfies $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\hat{p}_n - p}{p_n - p} = 0$.

8.1.1.2 Richardson's extrapolation

Improved accuracy can be achieved by combining *extrapolation* with a low-order formula. Suppose the unknown value M is approximated by a formula $N(h)$ for which

$$M = N(h) + K_1 h + K_2 h^2 + K_3 h^3 + \dots \tag{8.1.2}$$

for some unspecified constants K_1, K_2, K_3, \dots . To apply extrapolation, set $N_1(h) = N(h)$, and generate new approximations $N_j(h)$ by

$$N_j(h) = N_{j-1}\left(\frac{h}{2}\right) + \frac{N_{j-1}\left(\frac{h}{2}\right) - N_{j-1}(h)}{2^{j-1} - 1}. \tag{8.1.3}$$

Then $M = N_j(h) + O(h^j)$. A table of the following form is generated, one row at a time:

$$\begin{array}{cccc} N_1(h) & & & \\ N_1(h/2) & N_2(h) & & \\ N_1(h/4) & N_2(h/2) & N_3(h) & \\ N_1(h/8) & N_2(h/4) & N_3(h/2) & N_4(h). \end{array}$$

Extrapolation can be applied whenever the truncation error for a formula has the form $\sum_{j=1}^{m-1} K_j h^{\alpha_j} + O(h^{\alpha_m})$ for constants K_j and $\alpha_1 < \alpha_2 < \dots < \alpha_m$. In particular, if $\alpha_j = 2j$, the following computation can be used:

$$N_j(h) = N_{j-1}\left(\frac{h}{2}\right) + \frac{N_{j-1}\left(\frac{h}{2}\right) - N_{j-1}(h)}{4^{j-1} - 1}, \tag{8.1.4}$$

and the entries in the j^{th} column of the table have order $O(h^{2j})$.

8.1.2 SOLUTION TO ALGEBRAIC EQUATIONS

Iterative methods generate sequences $\{p_n\}$ that converge to a solution p of an equation.

DEFINITION 8.1.4

A solution p of $f(x) = 0$ is a zero of multiplicity m if $f(x)$ can be written as $f(x) = (x - p)^m q(x)$, for $x \neq p$, where $\lim_{x \rightarrow p} q(x) \neq 0$. A zero is called simple if $m = 1$.

8.1.2.1 Fixed point iteration

A *fixed point* p for a function g satisfies $g(p) = p$. Given p_0 , generate $\{p_n\}$ by

$$p_{n+1} = g(p_n) \quad \text{for } n \geq 0. \quad (8.1.5)$$

If $\{p_n\}$ converges, then it will converge to a *fixed point* of g and the value p_n can be used as an approximation for p . The following theorem gives conditions that guarantee convergence.

THEOREM 8.1.1 (*Fixed point theorem*)

Let $g \in C[a, b]$ and suppose that $g(x) \in [a, b]$ for all x in $[a, b]$. Suppose also that g' exists on (a, b) with $|g'(x)| \leq k < 1$, for all $x \in (a, b)$. If p_0 is any number in $[a, b]$, then the sequence defined by Equation (8.1.5) converges to the (unique) *fixed point* p in $[a, b]$. Both of the error estimates $|p_n - p| \leq \frac{k^n}{1-k} |p_0 - p_1|$ and $|p_n - p| \leq k^n \max\{p_0 - a, b - p_0\}$ hold, for all $n \geq 1$.

The iteration sometimes converges even if the conditions are not all satisfied.

THEOREM 8.1.2

Suppose g is a function that satisfies the conditions of Theorem 8.1.1 and g' is also continuous on (a, b) . If $g'(p) \neq 0$, then for any number p_0 in $[a, b]$, the sequence generated by Equation (8.1.5) converges only linearly to the unique *fixed point* p in $[a, b]$.

THEOREM 8.1.3

Let p be a solution of the equation $x = g(x)$. Suppose that $g'(p) = 0$ and g'' are continuous and bounded by a constant on an open interval I containing p . Then there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that, for $p_0 \in [p - \delta, p + \delta]$, the sequence defined by Equation (8.1.5) converges at least quadratically to p .

8.1.2.2 Steffensen's method

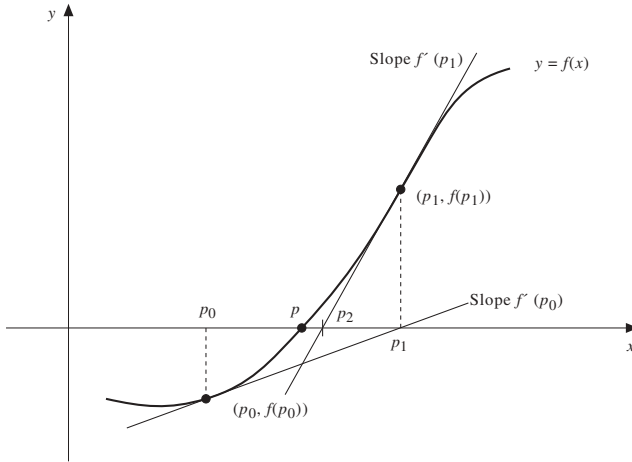
For a linearly convergent *fixed-point* iteration, convergence can be accelerated by applying Aitken's Δ^2 method. This is called *Steffensen's method*. Define $p_0^{(0)} = p_0$, compute $p_1^{(0)} = g(p_0^{(0)})$ and $p_2^{(0)} = g(p_1^{(0)})$. Set $p_0^{(1)} = \hat{p}_0$ which is computed using Equation (8.1.1) applied to $p_0^{(0)}, p_1^{(0)}$, and $p_2^{(0)}$. Use *fixed-point* iteration to compute $p_1^{(1)}$ and $p_2^{(1)}$ and then Equation (8.1.1) to find $p_0^{(2)}$. Continuing, generate $\{p_0^{(n)}\}$.

THEOREM 8.1.4

Suppose that $x = g(x)$ has the solution p with $g'(p) \neq 1$. If there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that $g \in C^3[p - \delta, p + \delta]$, then Steffensen's method gives quadratic convergence for the sequence $\{p_0^{(n)}\}$ for any $p_0 \in [p - \delta, p + \delta]$.

FIGURE 8.1

*Illustration of Newton's method.*¹



8.1.2.3 Newton–Raphson method (Newton's method)

To solve $f(x) = 0$, given an initial approximation p_0 , generate $\{p_n\}$ using

$$p_{n+1} = p_n - \frac{f(p_n)}{f'(p_n)}, \quad \text{for } n \geq 0. \quad (8.1.6)$$

Figure 8.1 describes the method geometrically. Each value p_{n+1} represents the x -intercept of the tangent line to the graph of $f(x)$ at the point $[p_n, f(p_n)]$.

THEOREM 8.1.5

Let $f \in C^2[a, b]$. If $p \in [a, b]$ is such that $f(p) = 0$ and $f'(p) \neq 0$, then there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that Newton's method generates a sequence $\{p_n\}$ converging to p for any initial approximation $p_0 \in [p - \delta, p + \delta]$.

Note:

1. Generally the conditions of the theorem cannot be checked. Therefore one usually generates the sequence $\{p_n\}$ and observes whether or not it converges.
2. An obvious limitation is that the iteration terminates if $f'(p_n) = 0$.
3. For *simple* zeros of f , Theorem 8.1.5 implies that Newton's method converges quadratically. Otherwise, the convergence is much slower.

¹From R.L. Burden and J.D. Faires, *Numerical Analysis*, 7th ed., Brooks/Cole, Pacific Grove, CA, 2001. With permission.

8.1.2.4 Modified Newton's method

Newton's method converges only linearly if p has multiplicity larger than one. However, the function $u(x) = \frac{f(x)}{f'(x)}$ has a simple zero at p . Hence, the Newton iteration formula applied to $u(x)$ yields quadratic convergence to a root of $f(x) = 0$. The iteration simplifies to

$$p_{n+1} = p_n - \frac{f(p_n)f'(p_n)}{[f'(p_n)]^2 - f(p_n)f''(p_n)}, \quad \text{for } n \geq 0. \quad (8.1.7)$$

8.1.2.5 Secant method

To solve $f(x) = 0$, the *secant method* uses the x -intercept of the secant line passing through $(p_n, f(p_n))$ and $(p_{n-1}, f(p_{n-1}))$. The derivative of f is not needed. Given p_0 and p_1 , generate the sequence with

$$p_{n+1} = p_n - f(p_n) \frac{(p_n - p_{n-1})}{f(p_n) - f(p_{n-1})}, \quad \text{for } n \geq 1. \quad (8.1.8)$$

8.1.2.6 Root-bracketing methods

Suppose $f(x)$ is continuous on $[a, b]$ and $f(a)f(b) < 0$. The Intermediate Value Theorem guarantees a number $p \in (a, b)$ exists with $f(p) = 0$. A *root-bracketing method* constructs a sequence of nested intervals $[a_n, b_n]$, each containing a solution of $f(x) = 0$. At each step, compute $p_n \in [a_n, b_n]$ and proceed as follows:

If $f(p_n) = 0$, stop the iteration and $p = p_n$.

Else,

if $f(a_n)f(p_n) < 0$, then set $a_{n+1} = a_n, b_{n+1} = p_n$.

Else, set $a_{n+1} = p_n, b_{n+1} = b_n$.

8.1.2.7 Bisection method

This is a special case of the root-bracketing method. The values p_n are computed by

$$p_n = a_n + \frac{b_n - a_n}{2} = \frac{a_n + b_n}{2}, \quad \text{for } n \geq 1. \quad (8.1.9)$$

Clearly, $|p_n - p| \leq (b - a)/2^n$ for $n \geq 1$. The rate of convergence is $O(2^{-n})$. Although convergence is slow, the exact number of iterations for a specified accuracy ϵ can be determined. To guarantee that $|p_N - p| < \epsilon$, use

$$N > \log_2 \left(\frac{b - a}{\epsilon} \right) = \frac{\ln(b - a) - \ln \epsilon}{\ln 2}. \quad (8.1.10)$$

8.1.2.8 False position (*regula falsi*)

$$p_n = b_n - f(b_n) \frac{b_n - a_n}{f(b_n) - f(a_n)}, \quad \text{for } n \geq 1. \quad (8.1.11)$$

This root-bracketing method also converges if the initial criteria are satisfied.

8.1.2.9 Horner's method with deflation

If Newton's method is used to solve for roots of the polynomial $P(x) = 0$, then the polynomials P and P' are repeatedly evaluated. Horner's method efficiently evaluates a polynomial of degree n using only n multiplications and n additions.

8.1.2.10 Horner's algorithm

To evaluate $P(x) = a_n x^n + a_{n-1} x^{n-1} + \dots + a_0$ and its derivative at x_0 :

INPUT: degree n , coefficients $\{a_0, a_1, \dots, a_n\}$; x_0 .

OUTPUT: $y = P(x_0)$; $z = P'(x_0)$.

Algorithm:

1. Set $y = a_n$; $z = a_n$.
2. For $j = n - 1, n - 2, \dots, 1$,
 set $y = x_0 y + a_j$; $z = x_0 z + y$.
3. Set $y = x_0 y + a_0$.
4. OUTPUT (y, z) . STOP.

When satisfied with the approximation \hat{x}_1 for a root x_1 of P , use synthetic division to compute $Q_1(x)$ so that $P(x) \approx (x - \hat{x}_1)Q_1(x)$. Estimate a root of $Q_1(x)$ and write $P(x) \approx (x - \hat{x}_1)(x - \hat{x}_2)Q_2(x)$, and so on. Eventually, $Q_{n-2}(x)$ will be a quadratic, and the quadratic formula can be applied. This procedure, finding one root at a time, is called *deflation*.

Note: Care must be taken since \hat{x}_1 is an *approximation* for x_1 . Some inaccuracy occurs when computing the coefficients of $Q_1(x)$, etc. Although the estimate \hat{x}_2 of a root of $Q_1(x)$ can be very accurate, it may not be as accurate when estimating a root of $P(x)$.

8.1.3 INTERPOLATION

Interpolation involves fitting a function to a set of data points $(x_0, y_0), (x_1, y_1), \dots, (x_n, y_n)$. The x_i are unique and the y_i may be regarded as the values of some function $f(x)$, that is, $y_i = f(x_i)$ for $i = 0, 1, \dots, n$. The following are polynomial interpolation methods.

8.1.3.1 Lagrange interpolation

The *Lagrange interpolating polynomial*, denoted $P_n(x)$, is the unique polynomial of degree at most n for which $P_n(x_k) = f(x_k)$ for $k = 0, 1, \dots, n$. It is given by

$$P(x) = \sum_{k=0}^n f(x_k) L_{n,k}(x) \quad (8.1.12)$$

where $\{x_0, \dots, x_n\}$ are called *node points*, and

$$L_{n,k}(x) = \frac{(x-x_0)(x-x_1)\cdots(x-x_{k-1})(x-x_{k+1})\cdots(x-x_n)}{(x_k-x_0)(x_k-x_1)\cdots(x_k-x_{k-1})(x_k-x_{k+1})\cdots(x_k-x_n)}$$

$$= \prod_{i=0, i \neq k}^n \frac{(x-x_i)}{(x_k-x_i)}, \quad \text{for } k = 0, 1, \dots, n. \quad (8.1.13)$$

THEOREM 8.1.6 (*Error formula*)

If x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n are distinct numbers in $[a, b]$ and $f \in C^{n+1}[a, b]$, then, for each x in $[a, b]$, a number $\xi(x)$ in (a, b) exists with

$$f(x) = P(x) + \frac{f^{(n+1)}(\xi(x))}{(n+1)!}(x-x_0)(x-x_1)\cdots(x-x_n), \quad (8.1.14)$$

where P is the interpolating polynomial given in Equation (8.1.12).

Although the Lagrange polynomial is unique, it can be expressed and evaluated in several ways. Equation (8.1.12) is tedious to evaluate, and including more nodes affects the *entire* expression. *Neville’s method* evaluates the Lagrange polynomial at a single point *without* explicitly finding the polynomial and the method adapts easily when new nodes are included.

8.1.3.2 Neville’s method

Let P_{m_1, m_2, \dots, m_k} denote the Lagrange polynomial using distinct nodes $\{x_{m_1}, x_{m_2}, \dots, x_{m_k}\}$. If $P(x)$ denotes the Lagrange polynomial using nodes $\{x_0, x_1, \dots, x_k\}$ and x_i and x_j are two distinct numbers in this set, then

$$P(x) = \frac{(x-x_j)P_{0,1,\dots,j-1,j+1,\dots,k}(x) - (x-x_i)P_{0,1,\dots,i-1,i+1,\dots,k}(x)}{(x_i-x_j)}. \quad (8.1.15)$$

8.1.3.3 Neville’s algorithm

Generate a table of entries $Q_{i,j}$ for $j \geq 0$ and $0 \leq i \leq j$ where the terms are $Q_{i,j} = P_{i-j, i-j+1, \dots, i-1, i}$. Calculations use Equation (8.1.15) for a specific value of x as shown:

$$\begin{array}{l} x_0 \quad Q_{0,0} = P_0 \\ x_1 \quad Q_{1,0} = P_1 \quad Q_{1,1} = P_{0,1} \\ x_2 \quad Q_{2,0} = P_2 \quad Q_{2,1} = P_{1,2} \quad Q_{2,2} = P_{0,1,2} \\ x_3 \quad Q_{3,0} = P_3 \quad Q_{3,1} = P_{2,3} \quad Q_{3,2} = P_{1,2,3} \quad Q_{3,3} = P_{0,1,2,3} \end{array}$$

Note that $P_k = P_k(x) = f(x_k)$ and $\{Q_{i,i}\}$ represents successive estimates of $f(x)$ using Lagrange polynomials. Nodes may be added until $|Q_{i,i} - Q_{i-1,i-1}| < \epsilon$ as desired.

8.1.3.4 Divided differences

Some interpolation formulae involve *divided differences*. Given an ordered sequence of values, $\{x_i\}$, and the corresponding function values $f(x_i)$, the *zeroth divided difference* is $f[x_i] = f(x_i)$. The *rst divided difference* is defined by

$$f[x_i, x_{i+1}] = \frac{f(x_{i+1}) - f(x_i)}{x_{i+1} - x_i} = \frac{f[x_{i+1}] - f[x_i]}{x_{i+1} - x_i}. \quad (8.1.16)$$

The *kth divided difference* is defined by

$$\begin{aligned} f[x_i, x_{i+1}, \dots, x_{i+k-1}, x_{i+k}] \\ = \frac{f[x_{i+1}, x_{i+2}, \dots, x_{i+k}] - f[x_i, x_{i+1}, \dots, x_{i+k-1}]}{x_{i+k} - x_i}. \end{aligned} \quad (8.1.17)$$

Divided differences are usually computed by forming a triangular table.

| x | f(x) | First divided differences | Second divided differences | Third divided differences |
|-------|----------|---------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| x_0 | $f[x_0]$ | | | |
| x_1 | $f[x_1]$ | $f[x_0, x_1]$ | | |
| x_2 | $f[x_2]$ | $f[x_1, x_2]$ | $f[x_0, x_1, x_2]$ | |
| x_3 | $f[x_3]$ | $f[x_2, x_3]$ | $f[x_1, x_2, x_3]$ | $f[x_0, x_1, x_2, x_3]$ |

8.1.3.5 Newton's interpolatory divided-difference formula

(also known as the Newton polynomial)

$$P_n(x) = f[x_0] + \sum_{k=1}^n f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_k](x - x_0) \cdots (x - x_{k-1}). \quad (8.1.18)$$

Labeling the nodes as $\{x_n, x_{n-1}, \dots, x_0\}$, a formula similar to Equation (8.1.18) results in *Newton's backward divided-difference formula*,

$$\begin{aligned} P_n(x) = & f[x_n] + f[x_n, x_{n-1}](x - x_n) \\ & + f[x_n, x_{n-1}, x_{n-2}](x - x_n)(x - x_{n-1}) \\ & + \dots + f[x_n, x_{n-1}, \dots, x_0](x - x_n) \cdots (x - x_1). \end{aligned} \quad (8.1.19)$$

If the nodes are equally spaced (that is, $x_i - x_{i-1} = h$), define the parameter s by the equation $x = x_0 + sh$. The following formulae evaluate $P_n(x)$ at a single point:

1. Newton's interpolatory divided-difference formula,

$$P_n(x) = P_n(x_0 + sh) = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{s}{k} k! h^k f[x_0, x_1, \dots, x_k]. \quad (8.1.20)$$

2. Newton's forward-difference formula (Newton–Gregory),

$$P_n(x) = P_n(x_0 + sh) = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{s}{k} \Delta^k f(x_0). \quad (8.1.21)$$

3. Newton–Gregory backward formula (its nodes x_{-n} to x_0),

$$P_n(x) = f(x_0) + \binom{s}{1} \Delta f(x_{-1}) + \binom{s+1}{2} \Delta^2 f(x_{-2}) + \dots + \binom{s+n-1}{n} \Delta^n f(x_{-n}). \quad (8.1.22)$$

4. Newton's backward-difference formula,

$$P_n(x) = \sum_{k=0}^n (-1)^k \binom{-s}{k} \nabla^k f(x_n), \quad (8.1.23)$$

where $\nabla^k f(x_n)$ is the k^{th} backward difference, defined for a sequence $\{p_n\}$, by $\nabla p_n = p_n - p_{n-1}$ for $n \geq 1$. Higher powers are defined recursively by $\nabla^k p_n = \nabla(\nabla^{k-1} p_n)$ for $k \geq 2$. For notation, set $\nabla^0 p_n = p_n$.

5. Stirling's formula (for equally spaced nodes $x_{-m}, \dots, x_{-1}, x_0, x_1, \dots, x_m$),

$$P_n(x) = P_{2m+1}(x) = f[x_0] + \frac{sh}{2}(f[x_{-1}, x_0] + f[x_0, x_1]) + s^2 h^2 f[x_{-1}, x_0, x_1] + \frac{s(s^2 - 1)h^3}{2}(f[x_{-2}, x_{-1}, x_0, x_1] + f[x_{-1}, x_0, x_1, x_2]) + \dots + s^2(s^2 - 1)(s^2 - 4) \dots (s^2 - (m - 1)^2)h^{2m} f[x_{-m}, \dots, x_m] + \frac{s(s^2 - 1) \dots (s^2 - m^2)h^{2m+1}}{2}(f[x_{-m-1}, \dots, x_m] + f[x_{-m}, \dots, x_{m+1}]).$$

Use the entire formula if $n = 2m + 1$ is odd, and omit the last term if $n = 2m$ is even. The following table identifies the desired divided differences used in Stirling's formula:

| x | $f(x)$ | First divided differences | Second divided differences | Third divided differences |
|----------|-------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| x_{-2} | $f[x_{-2}]$ | | | |
| x_{-1} | $f[x_{-1}]$ | $f[x_{-2}, x_{-1}]$ | $f[x_{-2}, x_{-1}, x_0]$ | |
| x_0 | $f[x_0]$ | $f[x_{-1}, x_0]$ | $f[x_{-1}, x_0, x_1]$ | $f[x_{-2}, x_{-1}, x_0, x_1]$ |
| x_1 | $f[x_1]$ | $f[x_0, x_1]$ | $f[x_0, x_1, x_2]$ | $f[x_{-1}, x_0, x_1, x_2]$ |
| x_2 | $f[x_2]$ | $f[x_1, x_2]$ | | |

8.1.3.6 Inverse interpolation

Any method of interpolation which does not require the nodes to be equally spaced may be applied by interchanging the nodes (x values) and the function values (y values).

8.1.3.7 Hermite interpolation

Given distinct numbers $\{x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n\}$, the *Hermite interpolating polynomial* for a function f is the unique polynomial $H(x)$ of degree at most $2n + 1$ that satisfies $H(x_i) = f(x_i)$ and $H'(x_i) = f'(x_i)$ for each $i = 0, 1, \dots, n$.

A technique and formula similar to Equation (8.1.18) can be used. For distinct nodes $\{x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n\}$, define $\{z_0, z_1, \dots, z_{2n+1}\}$ by $z_{2i} = z_{2i+1} = x_i$ for $i = 0, 1, \dots, n$. Construct a divided difference table for the ordered pairs $(z_i, f(z_i))$ using $f'(x_i)$ in place of $f[z_{2i}, z_{2i+1}]$, which would be undefined. Denote the Hermite polynomial by $H_{2n+1}(x)$.

8.1.3.8 Hermite interpolating polynomial

$$\begin{aligned} H_{2n+1}(x) &= f[z_0] + \sum_{k=1}^{2n+1} f[z_0, z_1, \dots, z_k](x - z_0) \cdots (x - z_{k-1}) \\ &= f[z_0] + f[z_0, z_1](x - x_0) + f[z_0, z_1, z_2](x - x_0)^2 \\ &\quad + f[z_0, z_1, z_2, z_3](x - x_0)^2(x - x_1) \\ &\quad + \dots + f[z_0, \dots, z_{2n+1}](x - x_0)^2 \cdots (x - x_{n-1})^2(x - x_n). \end{aligned} \tag{8.1.24}$$

THEOREM 8.1.7 (Error formula)

If $f \in C^{2n+2}[a, b]$, then

$$f(x) = H_{2n+1}(x) + \frac{f^{(2n+2)}(\xi(x))}{(2n+2)!} (x - x_0)^2 \cdots (x - x_n)^2 \tag{8.1.25}$$

for some $\xi(x) \in (a, b)$ and where $x_i \in [a, b]$ for each $i = 0, 1, \dots, n$.

8.1.4 FITTING EQUATIONS TO DATA

8.1.4.1 Piecewise polynomial approximation

An interpolating polynomial has large degree and tends to oscillate greatly for large data sets. *Piecewise polynomial approximation* divides the interval into a collection of subintervals and constructs an approximating polynomial on each subinterval. *Piecewise linear interpolation* consists of simply joining the data points with line segments. This collection is continuous but not differentiable at the node points. Hermite polynomials would require derivative values. *Cubic spline interpolation* is popular since no derivative information is needed.

DEFINITION 8.1.5

Given a function f defined on $[a, b]$ and a set of numbers $a = x_0 < x_1 < \dots < x_n = b$, a cubic spline interpolant, S , for f is a function that satisfies

1. S is a piecewise cubic polynomial, denoted S_j , on $[x_j, x_{j+1}]$ for each $j = 0, 1, \dots, n-1$.
2. $S(x_j) = f(x_j)$ for each $j = 0, 1, \dots, n$.
3. $S_{j+1}(x_{j+1}) = S_j(x_{j+1})$ for each $j = 0, 1, \dots, n-2$.
4. $S'_{j+1}(x_{j+1}) = S'_j(x_{j+1})$ for each $j = 0, 1, \dots, n-2$.
5. $S''_{j+1}(x_{j+1}) = S''_j(x_{j+1})$ for each $j = 0, 1, \dots, n-2$.
6. One of the following sets of boundary conditions is satisfied:
 - (a) $S''(x_0) = S''(x_n) = 0$ (free or natural boundary),
 - (b) $S'(x_0) = f'(x_0)$ and $S'(x_n) = f'(x_n)$ (clamped boundary).

If a function f is defined at all node points, then f has a unique natural spline interpolant. If, in addition, f is differentiable at a and b , then f has a unique clamped spline interpolant. To construct a cubic spline, set

$$S_j(x) = a_j + b_j(x - x_j) + c_j(x - x_j)^2 + d_j(x - x_j)^3$$

for each $j = 0, 1, \dots, n-1$. The constants $\{a_j, b_j, c_j, d_j\}$ are found by solving a tridiagonal system of linear equations, which is included in the following algorithms.

8.1.4.2 Algorithm for natural cubic splines

INPUT: $n, \{x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n\}$,

$$a_0 = f(x_0), a_1 = f(x_1), \dots, a_n = f(x_n).$$

OUTPUT: $\{a_j, b_j, c_j, d_j\}$ for $j = 0, 1, \dots, n-1$.

Algorithm:

1. For $i = 0, 1, \dots, n-1$, set $h_i = x_{i+1} - x_i$.
2. For $i = 1, 2, \dots, n-1$, set $\alpha_i = \frac{3}{h_i}(a_{i+1} - a_i) - \frac{3}{h_{i-1}}(a_i - a_{i-1})$.
3. Set $\ell_0 = 1, \mu_0 = 0, z_0 = 0$.
4. For $i = 1, 2, \dots, n-1$,
set $\ell_i = 2(x_{i+1} - x_{i-1}) - h_{i-1}\mu_{i-1}$;
set $\mu_i = h_i/\ell_i$;
set $z_i = (\alpha_i - h_{i-1}z_{i-1})/\ell_i$.
5. Set $\ell_n = 1, z_n = 0, c_n = 0$.
6. For $j = n-1, n-2, \dots, 0$,
set $c_j = z_j - \mu_j c_{j+1}$;
set $b_j = (a_{j+1} - a_j)/h_j - h_j(c_{j+1} + 2c_j)/3$;
set $d_j = (c_{j+1} - c_j)/(3h_j)$.
7. OUTPUT (a_j, b_j, c_j, d_j) for $j = 0, 1, \dots, n-1$. STOP.

8.1.4.3 Algorithm for clamped cubic splines

INPUT: $n, \{x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n\}$,
 $a_0 = f(x_0), a_1 = f(x_1), \dots, a_n = f(x_n)$,
 $F_0 = f'(x_0), F_n = f'(x_n)$.

OUTPUT: $\{a_j, b_j, c_j, d_j\}$ for $j = 0, 1, \dots, n - 1$.

Algorithm

1. For $i = 0, 1, \dots, n - 1$, set $h_i = x_{i+1} - x_i$.
2. Set $\alpha_0 = 3(a_1 - a_0)/h_0 - 3F_0, \alpha_n = 3F_n - 3(a_n - a_{n-1})/h_{n-1}$.
3. For $i = 1, 2, \dots, n - 1$, set $\alpha_i = \frac{3}{h_i}(a_{i+1} - a_i) - \frac{3}{h_{i-1}}(a_i - a_{i-1})$.
4. Set $\ell_0 = 2h_0, \mu_0 = 0.5, z_0 = \alpha_0/\ell_0$.
5. For $i = 1, 2, \dots, n - 1$,
 set $\ell_i = 2(x_{i+1} - x_{i-1}) - h_{i-1}\mu_{i-1}$;
 set $\mu_i = h_i/\ell_i$;
 set $z_i = (\alpha_i - h_{i-1}z_{i-1})/\ell_i$.
6. Set $\ell_n = h_{n-1}(2 - \mu_{n-1}), z_n = (\alpha_n - h_{n-1}z_{n-1})/\ell_n, c_n = z_n$.
7. For $j = n - 1, n - 2, \dots, 0$,
 set $c_j = z_j - \mu_j c_{j+1}$;
 set $b_j = (a_{j+1} - a_j)/h_j - h_j(c_{j+1} + 2c_j)/3$;
 set $d_j = (c_{j+1} - c_j)/(3h_j)$.
8. OUTPUT (a_j, b_j, c_j, d_j) for $j = 0, 1, \dots, n - 1$. STOP.

8.1.4.4 Discrete approximation

Another approach to fit a function to a set of data points $\{(x_i, y_i) \mid i = 1, 2, \dots, m\}$ is *approximation*. If a polynomial of degree n is used, the polynomial $P_n(x) = \sum_{k=0}^n a_k x^k$ is found that minimizes the *least-squares error* $E = \sum_{i=1}^m [y_i - P_n(x_i)]^2$.

To find $\{a_0, a_1, \dots, a_n\}$, solve the linear system, called the *normal equations*, created by setting partial derivatives of E taken with respect to each a_k equal to zero. The coefficient of a_0 in the first equation is actually the number of data points, m .

8.1.4.5 Normal equations

$$\begin{aligned}
 a_0 \sum_{i=1}^m x_i^0 + a_1 \sum_{i=1}^m x_i^1 + a_2 \sum_{i=1}^m x_i^2 + \dots + a_n \sum_{i=1}^m x_i^n &= \sum_{i=1}^m y_i x_i^0, \\
 a_0 \sum_{i=1}^m x_i^1 + a_1 \sum_{i=1}^m x_i^2 + a_2 \sum_{i=1}^m x_i^3 + \dots + a_n \sum_{i=1}^m x_i^{n+1} &= \sum_{i=1}^m y_i x_i^1, \\
 &\vdots \\
 a_0 \sum_{i=1}^m x_i^n + a_1 \sum_{i=1}^m x_i^{n+1} + a_2 \sum_{i=1}^m x_i^{n+2} + \dots + a_n \sum_{i=1}^m x_i^{2n} &= \sum_{i=1}^m y_i x_i^n.
 \end{aligned} \tag{8.1.26}$$

Note: $P_n(x)$ can be replaced by a function f of specified form. Unfortunately, to minimize E , the resulting system is generally *not* linear. Although these systems can be solved, one technique is to “linearize” the data. For example, if $y = f(x) = be^{ax}$, then $\ln y = \ln b + ax$. The method applied to the data points $(x_i, \ln y_i)$ produces a linear system. Note that this technique does *not* find the approximation for the original problem but, instead, minimizes the least-squares for the “linearized” data.

8.1.4.6 Best-fit line

Given the points $P_1 = (x_1, y_1)$, $P_2 = (x_2, y_2)$, ..., $P_n = (x_n, y_n)$, the *line of best-fit* is given by $y - \bar{y} = m(x - \bar{x})$ where

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{x} &= \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i = \frac{(x_1 + x_2 + \dots + x_n)}{n}, \\ \bar{y} &= \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n y_i = \frac{(y_1 + y_2 + \dots + y_n)}{n}, \\ m &= \frac{(x_1 y_1 + x_2 y_2 + \dots + x_n y_n) - n \bar{x} \bar{y}}{(x_1^2 + x_2^2 + \dots + x_n^2) - n \bar{x}^2} = \frac{\overline{xy} - \bar{x} \bar{y}}{\overline{x^2} - \bar{x}^2}.\end{aligned}\tag{8.1.27}$$

8.2 NUMERICAL LINEAR ALGEBRA

8.2.1 SOLVING LINEAR SYSTEMS

The solution of systems of linear equations using *Gaussian elimination* with backward substitution is described in Section 8.2.2. The algorithm is highly sensitive to round-off error. *Pivoting strategies* can reduce round-off error when solving an $n \times n$ system. For a linear system $\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{b}$, assume that the equivalent matrix equation $\mathbf{A}^{(k)} \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}^{(k)}$ has been constructed. Call the entry, $a_{kk}^{(k)}$, the *pivot element*.

8.2.2 GAUSSIAN ELIMINATION

To solve the system $\mathbf{Ax} = \mathbf{b}$, Gaussian elimination creates the *augmented matrix*

$$A' = [A \mid \mathbf{b}] = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & \dots & a_{1n} & b_1 \\ \vdots & & \vdots & \vdots \\ a_{n1} & \dots & a_{nn} & b_n \end{bmatrix}.\tag{8.2.1}$$

This matrix is turned into an upper-triangular matrix by a sequence of (1) row permutations, and (2) subtracting a multiple of one row from another. The result is a

matrix of the form (the primes denote that the quantities have been modified)

$$\begin{bmatrix} a'_{11} & a'_{12} & \cdots & a'_{1n} & b'_1 \\ 0 & a'_{22} & \cdots & a'_{2n} & b'_2 \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\ 0 & \cdots & 0 & a'_{nn} & b'_n \end{bmatrix}. \quad (8.2.2)$$

This matrix represents a linear system that is equivalent to the original system. If the solution exists and is unique, then back substitution can be used to successively determine $\{x_n, x_{n-1}, \dots\}$.

8.2.3 GAUSSIAN ELIMINATION ALGORITHM

INPUT: number of unknowns and equations n , matrix A , and vector \mathbf{b} .

OUTPUT: solution $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_n)^T$ to the linear system $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$,
or message that the system does not have a unique solution.

Algorithm:

1. Construct the augmented matrix $A' = [A : \mathbf{b}] = (a'_{ij})$
2. For $i = 1, 2, \dots, n - 1$ do (a)–(c): (*Elimination process*)
 - (a) Let p be the least integer with $i \leq p \leq n$ and $a'_{pi} \neq 0$
If no integer can be found, then
OUTPUT(“no unique solution exists”). STOP.
 - (b) If $p \neq i$ interchange rows p and i in A' . Call the new matrix A' .
 - (c) For $j = i + 1, \dots, n$ do i–ii:
 - i. Set $m_{ij} = a'_{ji}/a'_{ii}$.
 - ii. Subtract from row j the quantity (m_{ij} times row i).
Replace row j with this result.
3. If $a'_{nn} = 0$ then OUTPUT(“no unique solution exists”). STOP.
4. Set $x_n = a'_{n,n+1}/a'_{nn}$. (*Start backward substitution*).
5. For $i = n - 1, \dots, 2, 1$ set $x_i = [a'_{i,n+1} - \sum_{j=i+1}^n a'_{ij}x_j] / a'_{ii}$.
6. OUTPUT (x_1, \dots, x_n) , (*Procedure completed successfully*). STOP.

8.2.4 PIVOTING

8.2.4.1 Maximal column pivoting

Maximal column pivoting (often called *partial pivoting*) finds, at each step, the element in the same column as the pivot element that lies on or below the main diagonal having the largest magnitude and moves it to the pivot position. Determine the least $p \geq k$ such that $|a'_{pk}| = \max_{k \leq i \leq n} |a'_{ik}|$ and interchange the k^{th} equation with the p^{th} equation before performing the elimination step.

8.2.4.2 Scaled-column pivoting

Scaled-column pivoting sometimes produces better results, especially when the elements of A differ greatly in magnitude. The desired pivot element is chosen to have the largest magnitude *relative* to the other values in its row. For each row i define a *scale factor* s_i by $s_i = \max_{1 \leq j \leq n} |a_{ij}|$. The desired pivot element at the k^{th} step is determined by choosing the smallest integer p with $\left| a_{pk}^{(k)} \right| / s_p = \max_{k \leq j \leq n} \left| a_{jk}^{(k)} \right| / s_j$.

8.2.4.3 Maximal (or complete) pivoting

The desired pivot element at the k^{th} step is the entry of largest magnitude among $\{a_{ij}\}$ with $i = k, k + 1, \dots, n$ and $j = k, k + 1, \dots, n$. Both row and column interchanges are necessary and additional comparisons are required, resulting in additional execution time.

8.2.5 EIGENVALUE COMPUTATION

8.2.5.1 Power method

Assume that the $n \times n$ matrix A has n eigenvalues $\{\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n\}$ with linearly independent eigenvectors $\{\mathbf{v}^{(1)}, \mathbf{v}^{(2)}, \dots, \mathbf{v}^{(n)}\}$. Assume further that A has a unique dominant eigenvalue λ_1 , that is $|\lambda_1| > |\lambda_2| \geq |\lambda_3| \geq \dots \geq |\lambda_n|$. Note that for any $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$, $\mathbf{x} = \sum_{j=1}^n \alpha_j \mathbf{v}^{(j)}$.

The algorithm is called the *power method* because powers of the input matrix are taken: $\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} A^k \mathbf{x} = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \lambda_1^k \alpha_1 \mathbf{v}^{(1)}$. However, this sequence converges to zero if $|\lambda_1| < 1$ and diverges if $|\lambda_1| > 1$, provided $\alpha_1 \neq 0$. Appropriate scaling of $A^k \mathbf{x}$ is necessary to obtain a meaningful limit. Begin by choosing a unit vector $\mathbf{x}^{(0)}$ having a component $x_{p_0}^{(0)}$ such that $x_{p_0}^{(0)} = 1 = \|\mathbf{x}^{(0)}\|_\infty$.

The algorithm inductively constructs sequences of vectors $\{\mathbf{x}^{(m)}\}_{m=0}^\infty$ and $\{\mathbf{y}^{(m)}\}_{m=0}^\infty$ and a sequence of scalars $\{\mu^{(m)}\}_{m=1}^\infty$ by

$$\mathbf{y}^{(m)} = A\mathbf{x}^{(m-1)}, \quad \mu^{(m)} = y_{p_{m-1}}^{(m)}, \quad \mathbf{x}^{(m)} = \frac{\mathbf{y}^{(m)}}{y_{p_m}^{(m)}}, \quad (8.2.3)$$

where, at each step, p_m represents the least integer for which $\left| y_{p_m}^{(m)} \right| = \|\mathbf{y}^{(m)}\|_\infty$.

The sequence of scalars satisfies $\lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} \mu^{(m)} = \lambda_1$, provided $\alpha_1 \neq 0$, and the sequence of vectors $\{\mathbf{x}^{(m)}\}_{m=0}^\infty$ converges to an eigenvector associated with λ_1 that has l_∞ norm one.

8.2.5.2 Power method algorithm

INPUT: dimension n , matrix A , vector \mathbf{x} , tolerance TOL, and maximum number of iterations N .

OUTPUT: approximate eigenvalue μ ,
approximate eigenvector \mathbf{x} (with $\|\mathbf{x}\|_\infty = 1$),

or a message that the maximum number of iterations was exceeded.

Algorithm:

1. Set $k=1$.
2. Find the smallest integer p with $1 \leq p \leq n$ and $|x_p| = \|\mathbf{x}\|_\infty$.
3. Set $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}/x_p$.
4. While ($k \leq N$) do (a)–(g):
 - (a) Set $\mathbf{y} = A\mathbf{x}$.
 - (b) Set $\mu = y_p$.
 - (c) Find the smallest integer p with $1 \leq p \leq n$ and $|y_p| = \|\mathbf{y}\|_\infty$.
 - (d) If $y_p = 0$ then OUTPUT (“Eigenvector”, \mathbf{x} , “corresponds to eigenvalue 0. Select a new vector \mathbf{x} and restart.”); STOP.
 - (e) Set $\text{ERR} = \|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{y}/y_p\|_\infty$; $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{y}/y_p$.
 - (f) If $\text{ERR} < \text{TOL}$ then OUTPUT (μ, \mathbf{x})
(procedure successful) STOP.
 - (g) Set $k = k + 1$.
5. OUTPUT (“Maximum number of iterations exceeded”). STOP.

Notes:

1. The method does not really require that λ_1 be unique. If the multiplicity is greater than one, the eigenvector obtained depends on the choice of $\mathbf{x}^{(0)}$.
2. The sequence constructed converges linearly, so that Aitken’s Δ^2 method (Equation (8.1.1)) can be applied to accelerate convergence.

8.2.5.3 Inverse power method

The *inverse power method* modifies the power method to yield faster convergence by finding the eigenvalue of A that is closest to a specified number q . Assume that A satisfies the conditions as before. If $q \neq \lambda_i$, for $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$, the eigenvalues of $(A - qI)^{-1}$ are $\frac{1}{\lambda_1 - q}, \frac{1}{\lambda_2 - q}, \dots, \frac{1}{\lambda_n - q}$, with the same eigenvectors $\mathbf{v}^{(1)}, \dots, \mathbf{v}^{(n)}$. Apply the power method to $(A - qI)^{-1}$. At each step, $\mathbf{y}^{(m)} = (A - qI)^{-1}\mathbf{x}^{(m-1)}$. Generally, $\mathbf{y}^{(m)}$ is found by solving $(A - qI)\mathbf{y}^{(m)} = \mathbf{x}^{(m-1)}$ using Gaussian elimination with pivoting. Choose the value q from an initial approximation to the eigenvector $\mathbf{x}^{(0)}$ by $q = \mathbf{x}^{(0)\text{T}}A\mathbf{x}^{(0)} / (\mathbf{x}^{(0)\text{T}}\mathbf{x}^{(0)})$.

The only changes in the algorithm for the power method (see page 742) are to set an initial value q as described (do this prior to step 1), determine \mathbf{y} in step (4a) by solving the linear system $(A - qI)\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{x}$ (if the system does not have a unique solution, output a message that q is an eigenvalue and stop), delete step (4d), and replace step (4f) with

if $\text{ERR} < \text{TOL}$ then set $\mu = \frac{1}{\mu} + q$; OUTPUT(μ, \mathbf{x}); STOP.

8.2.5.4 Wielandt de ation

Once the dominant eigenvalue has been found, remaining eigenvalues can be found by using *de a tion techniques*. A new matrix B is formed having the same eigenvalues as A , except that the dominant eigenvalue of A is replaced by 0. One method is *Wielandt de atio n* which de nes $\mathbf{x} = \frac{1}{\lambda_1 v_i^{(1)}} [a_{i1} \ a_{i2} \ \dots \ a_{in}]^T$, where $v_i^{(1)}$ is a coordinate of $\mathbf{v}^{(1)}$ that is non-zero, and the values $\{a_{i1}, a_{i2}, \dots, a_{in}\}$ are the entries in the i^{th} row of A . Then the matrix $B = A - \lambda_1 \mathbf{v}^{(1)} \mathbf{x}^T$ has eigenvalues $0, \lambda_2, \lambda_3, \dots, \lambda_n$ with associated eigenvectors $\{\mathbf{v}^{(1)}, \mathbf{w}^{(2)}, \mathbf{w}^{(3)}, \dots, \mathbf{w}^{(n)}\}$, where

$$\mathbf{v}^{(i)} = (\lambda_i - \lambda_1) \mathbf{w}^{(i)} + \lambda_1 (\mathbf{x}^T \mathbf{w}^{(i)}) \mathbf{v}^{(1)} \quad (8.2.4)$$

for $i = 2, 3, \dots, n$. The i^{th} row of B consists entirely of zero entries and B may be replaced with an $(n - 1) \times (n - 1)$ matrix B' obtained by deleting the i^{th} row and i^{th} column of B . The power method can be applied to B' to nd its dominant eigenvalue and so on.

8.2.6 HOUSEHOLDER'S METHOD

DEFINITION 8.2.1

Two $n \times n$ matrices A and B are said to be similar if a non-singular matrix S exists with $A = S^{-1}BS$. (Note that if A is similar to B , then they have the same set of eigenvalues.)

Householder's method constructs a symmetric tridiagonal matrix B that is similar to a given symmetric matrix A . After applying this method, the *QR algorithm* can be used ef ciently to approximate the eigenvalues of the resulting symmetric tridiagonal matrix.

8.2.6.1 Algorithm for Householder's method

To construct a symmetric tridiagonal matrix $A^{(n-1)}$ similar to the symmetric matrix $A = A^{(1)}$, construct matrices $A^{(2)}, A^{(3)}, \dots, A^{(n-1)}$, where $A^{(k)} = (a_{ij}^{(k)})$ for $k = 1, 2, \dots, n - 1$.

INPUT: dimension n , matrix A .

OUTPUT: $A^{(n-1)}$. (At each step, A can be overwritten.)

Algorithm:

1. For $k = 1, 2, \dots, n - 2$ do (a)–(k).
 - (a) Set $q = \sum_{j=k+1}^n (a_{jk}^{(k)})^2$.
 - (b) If $a_{k+1,k}^{(k)} = 0$ then set $\alpha = -q^{\frac{1}{2}}$
 else set $\alpha = -q^{\frac{1}{2}} a_{k+1,k}^{(k)} / \left| a_{k+1,k}^{(k)} \right|$.
 - (c) Set $RSQ = \alpha^2 - \alpha a_{k+1,k}^{(k)}$.

- (d) Set $v_k = 0$. (Note: $v_1 = \dots = v_{k-1} = 0$, but are not needed.)
 set $v_{k+1} = a_{k+1,k}^{(k)} - \alpha$;
 for $j = k + 2, \dots, n$ set $v_j = a_{jk}^{(k)}$.
- (e) For $j = k, k + 1, \dots, n$ set $u_j = (\sum_{i=k+1}^n a_{ji}^{(k)} v_i) / \text{RSQ}$.
- (f) Set $\text{PROD} = \sum_{i=k+1}^n v_i u_i$.
- (g) For $j = k, k + 1, \dots, n$ set $z_j = u_j - (\text{PROD} / 2 \text{RSQ}) v_j$.
- (h) For $\ell = k + 1, k + 2, \dots, n - 1$ do i-ii.
 i. For $j = \ell + 1, \dots, n$ set $a_{j\ell}^{(k+1)} = a_{j\ell}^{(k)} - v_\ell z_j - v_j z_\ell$;
 $a_{\ell j}^{(k+1)} = a_{j\ell}^{(k+1)}$.
 ii. Set $a_{\ell\ell}^{(k+1)} = a_{\ell\ell}^{(k)} - 2v_\ell z_\ell$.
- (i) Set $a_{nn}^{(k+1)} = a_{nn}^{(k)} - 2v_n z_n$.
- (j) For $j = k + 2, \dots, n$ set $a_{kj}^{(k+1)} = a_{jk}^{(k+1)} = 0$.
- (k) Set $a_{k+1,k}^{(k+1)} = a_{k+1,k}^{(k)} - v_{k+1} z_k$; $a_{k,k+1}^{(k+1)} = a_{k+1,k}^{(k+1)}$.
 (Note: The other elements of $A^{(k+1)}$ are the same as $A^{(k)}$.)

2. OUTPUT ($A^{(n-1)}$). STOP.

($A^{(n-1)}$ is symmetric, tridiagonal, and similar to A .)

8.2.7 QR ALGORITHM

The *QR algorithm* is generally used (instead of de ation) to determine all of the eigenvalues of a symmetric matrix. The matrix must be symmetric and tridiagonal. If necessary, rst apply Householder's method. Suppose the matrix A has the form

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a_1 & b_2 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ b_2 & a_2 & b_3 & & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & b_3 & a_3 & & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \vdots & & & \ddots & & & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & & a_{n-2} & b_{n-1} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & & b_{n-1} & a_{n-1} & b_n \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & b_n & a_n \end{bmatrix}. \quad (8.2.5)$$

If $b_2 = 0$ or $b_n = 0$, then A has the eigenvalue a_1 or a_n , respectively. If $b_j = 0$ for some j , $2 < j < n$, the problem is reduced to considering the smaller matrices

$$\begin{bmatrix} a_1 & b_2 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ b_2 & a_2 & b_3 & & 0 \\ 0 & b_3 & a_3 & & 0 \\ \vdots & & & \ddots & \\ 0 & 0 & a_{j-2} & b_{j-1} \\ 0 & 0 & b_{j-1} & a_{j-1} \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{bmatrix} a_j & b_{j+1} & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ b_{j+1} & a_{j+1} & b_{j+2} & & 0 \\ 0 & b_{j+2} & a_{j+2} & & 0 \\ \vdots & & & \ddots & \\ 0 & 0 & & a_{n-1} & b_n \\ 0 & 0 & & b_n & a_n \end{bmatrix}. \quad (8.2.6)$$

If no b_j equals zero, the algorithm constructs $A^{(1)}, A^{(2)}, A^{(3)}, \dots$ as follows:

1. $A^{(1)} = A$ is factored as $A^{(1)} = Q^{(1)}R^{(1)}$, with $Q^{(1)}$ orthogonal and $R^{(1)}$ upper-triangular.
2. $A^{(2)}$ is defined as $A^{(2)} = R^{(1)}Q^{(1)}$.

In general, $A^{(i+1)} = R^{(i)}Q^{(i)} = (Q^{(i)T}A^{(i)})Q^{(i)} = Q^{(i)T}A^{(i)}Q^{(i)}$. Each $A^{(i+1)}$ is symmetric and tridiagonal with the same eigenvalues as $A^{(i)}$ and, hence, has the same eigenvalues as A .

8.2.7.1 Algorithm for QR

To obtain eigenvalues of the symmetric, tridiagonal $n \times n$ matrix

$$A \equiv A_1 = \begin{bmatrix} a_1^{(1)} & b_2^{(1)} & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ b_2^{(1)} & a_2^{(1)} & b_3^{(1)} & & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & b_3^{(1)} & a_3^{(1)} & & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \vdots & & & \ddots & & & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & & a_{n-2}^{(1)} & b_{n-1}^{(1)} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & & b_{n-1}^{(1)} & a_{n-1}^{(1)} & b_n^{(1)} \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & b_n^{(1)} & a_n^{(1)} \end{bmatrix}. \quad (8.2.7)$$

INPUT: $n; \{a_1^{(1)}, \dots, a_n^{(1)}, b_2^{(1)}, \dots, b_n^{(1)}\}$, tolerance TOL, and maximum number of iterations M .

OUTPUT: eigenvalues of A , or recommended splitting of A , or a message that the maximum number of iterations was exceeded.

Algorithm:

1. Set $k = 1$; SHIFT = 0. (Accumulated shift)
2. While $k \leq M$, do steps 3–12.
3. Test for success:
 - (a) If $|b_n^{(k)}| \leq \text{TOL}$, then set $\lambda = a_n^{(k)} + \text{SHIFT}$;
OUTPUT (λ); set $n = n - 1$.
 - (b) If $|b_2^{(k)}| \leq \text{TOL}$ then set $\lambda = a_1^{(k)} + \text{SHIFT}$;
OUTPUT (λ);
set $n = n - 1$; $a_1^{(k)} = a_2^{(k)}$;
for $j = 2, \dots, n$ set $a_j^{(k)} = a_{j+1}^{(k)}$; $b_j^{(k)} = b_{j+1}^{(k)}$.
 - (c) If $n = 0$ then STOP.
 - (d) If $n = 1$ then set $\lambda = a_1^{(k)} + \text{SHIFT}$;
OUTPUT(λ); STOP.
 - (e) For $j = 3, \dots, n - 1$
if $|b_j^{(k)}| \leq \text{TOL}$ then
OUTPUT (“split into”, $\{a_1^{(k)}, \dots, a_{j-1}^{(k)}, b_2^{(k)}, \dots, b_{j-1}^{(k)}\}$,
“and” $\{a_j^{(k)}, \dots, a_n^{(k)}, b_{j+1}^{(k)}, \dots, b_n^{(k)}\}$, SHIFT); STOP.

-
4. Compute shift:
Set $b = -(a_{n-1}^{(k)} + a_n^{(k)})$; $c = a_n^{(k)} a_{n-1}^{(k)} - [b_n^{(k)}]^2$; $d = (b^2 - 4c)^{\frac{1}{2}}$.
 5. If $b > 0$, then set $\mu_1 = -2c/(b + d)$; $\mu_2 = -(b + d)/2$;
else set $\mu_1 = (d - b)/2$; $\mu_2 = 2c/(d - b)$.
 6. If $n = 2$, then set $\lambda_1 = \mu_1 + \text{SHIFT}$; $\lambda_2 = \mu_2 + \text{SHIFT}$;
OUTPUT (λ_1, λ_2) ; STOP.
 7. Choose s so that $|s - a_n^{(k)}| = \min\left(|\mu_1 - a_n^{(k)}|, |\mu_2 - a_n^{(k)}|\right)$.
 8. Accumulate shift: Set $\text{SHIFT} = \text{SHIFT} + s$.
 9. Perform shift: For $j = 1, \dots, n$ set $d_j = a_j^{(k)} - s$.
 10. Compute $R^{(k)}$:
 - (a) Set $x_1 = d_1$; $y_1 = b_2$.
 - (b) For $j = 2, \dots, n$
set $z_{j-1} = (x_{j-1}^2 + [b_j^{(k)}]^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}$; $c_j = x_{j-1}/z_{j-1}$;
set $s_j = b_j^{(k)}/z_{j-1}$; $q_{j-1} = c_j y_{j-1} + s_j d_j$;
set $x_j = -s_j y_{j-1} + c_j d_j$.
If $j \neq n$ then set $r_{j-1} = s_j b_{j+1}^{(k)}$; $y_j = c_j b_{j+1}^{(k)}$.

(At this point, $A_j^{(k)} = P_j A_{j-1}^{(k)}$ has been computed (P_j is a rotation matrix) and $R^{(k)} = A_n^{(k)}$.)
 11. Compute $A^{(k+1)}$.
 - (a) Set $z_n = x_n$; $a_1^{(k+1)} = s_2 q_1 + c_2 z_1$; $b_2^{(k+1)} = s_2 z_2$.
 - (b) For $j = 2, 3, \dots, n - 1$,
set $a_j^{(k+1)} = s_{j+1} q_j + c_j c_{j+1} z_j$;
set $b_{j+1}^{(k+1)} = s_{j+1} z_{j+1}$.
 - (c) Set $a_n^{(k+1)} = c_n z_n$.
 12. Set $k = k + 1$.
 13. OUTPUT (“Maximum number of iterations exceeded”);
(Procedure unsuccessful.) STOP.

8.2.8 NON-LINEAR SYSTEMS AND NUMERICAL OPTIMIZATION

8.2.8.1 Newton's method

Many iterative methods exist for solving systems of non-linear equations. *Newton's method* is a natural extension from solving a single equation in one variable. Convergence is generally quadratic but usually requires an initial approximation that is near the true solution. Assume $\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{0}$ where \mathbf{x} is an n -dimensional vector, $\mathbf{F} : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$, and $\mathbf{0}$ is the zero vector. That is,

$$\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{F}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) = [f_1(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n), \dots, f_n(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)]^T. \quad (8.2.8)$$

A x ed-point iteration is performed on $\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{x} - (J(\mathbf{x}))^{-1}\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{x})$ where $J(\mathbf{x})$ is the *Jacobian matrix*,

$$J(\mathbf{x}) = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial f_1(\mathbf{x})}{\partial x_1} & \frac{\partial f_1(\mathbf{x})}{\partial x_2} & \dots & \frac{\partial f_1(\mathbf{x})}{\partial x_n} \\ \frac{\partial f_2(\mathbf{x})}{\partial x_1} & \frac{\partial f_2(\mathbf{x})}{\partial x_2} & \dots & \frac{\partial f_2(\mathbf{x})}{\partial x_n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \frac{\partial f_n(\mathbf{x})}{\partial x_1} & \frac{\partial f_n(\mathbf{x})}{\partial x_2} & \dots & \frac{\partial f_n(\mathbf{x})}{\partial x_n} \end{bmatrix}. \quad (8.2.9)$$

The iteration is given by

$$\mathbf{x}^{(k)} = \mathbf{G}(\mathbf{x}^{(k-1)}) = \mathbf{x}^{(k-1)} - [J(\mathbf{x}^{(k-1)})]^{-1} \mathbf{F}(\mathbf{x}^{(k-1)}). \quad (8.2.10)$$

The algorithm avoids calculating $(J(\mathbf{x}))^{-1}$ at each step. Instead, it finds a vector \mathbf{y} so that $J(\mathbf{x}^{(k-1)})\mathbf{y} = -\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{x}^{(k-1)})$, and then sets $\mathbf{x}^{(k)} = \mathbf{x}^{(k-1)} + \mathbf{y}$.

For the special case of a two-dimensional system (the equations $f(x, y) = 0$ and $g(x, y) = 0$ are to be satisfied), Newton's iteration becomes:

$$\begin{aligned} x_{n+1} &= x_n - \frac{f g_y - f_y g}{f_x g_y - f_y g_x} \Big|_{x=x_n, y=y_n}, \\ y_{n+1} &= y_n - \frac{f_x g - f g_x}{f_x g_y - f_y g_x} \Big|_{x=x_n, y=y_n}. \end{aligned} \quad (8.2.11)$$

8.2.8.2 Method of steepest-descent

The method of *steepest-descent* determines the *local minimum* for a function of the form $g : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. It can also be used to solve a system $\{f_i\}$ of non-linear equations. The system has a solution $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)^T$ when the function

$$g(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) = \sum_{i=1}^n [f_i(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)]^2 \quad (8.2.12)$$

has the minimal value zero.

This method converges only linearly to the solution but it usually converges even for poor initial approximations. It can be used to locate initial approximations that are close enough so that Newton's method will converge. Intuitively, a local minimum for a function $g : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ can be found as follows:

1. Evaluate g at an initial approximation $\mathbf{x}^{(0)} = (x_1^{(0)}, \dots, x_n^{(0)})^T$.
2. Determine a direction from $\mathbf{x}^{(0)}$ that results in a decrease in the value of g .
3. Move an appropriate distance in this direction and call the new vector $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$.
4. Repeat steps 1 through 3 with $\mathbf{x}^{(0)}$ replaced by $\mathbf{x}^{(1)}$.

The direction of greatest decrease in the value of g at \mathbf{x} is the direction given by $-\nabla g(\mathbf{x})$ where $\nabla g(\mathbf{x})$ is the *gradient* of g .

DEFINITION 8.2.2

If $g : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, the gradient of g at $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)^T$, denoted $\nabla g(\mathbf{x})$, is

$$\nabla g(\mathbf{x}) = \left(\frac{\partial g}{\partial x_1}(\mathbf{x}), \frac{\partial g}{\partial x_2}(\mathbf{x}), \dots, \frac{\partial g}{\partial x_n}(\mathbf{x}) \right)^T. \quad (8.2.13)$$

Thus, set $\mathbf{x}^{(1)} = \mathbf{x}^{(0)} - \alpha \nabla g(\mathbf{x}^{(0)})$ for some constant $\alpha > 0$. Ideally the value of α minimizes the function $h(\alpha) = g(\mathbf{x}^{(0)} - \alpha \nabla g(\mathbf{x}^{(0)}))$. Instead of tedious direct calculation, the method interpolates h with a quadratic polynomial using nodes α_1, α_2 , and α_3 that are hopefully close to the minimum value of h .

8.2.8.3 Algorithm for steepest-descent

To approximate a solution to the minimization problem $\min_{\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n} g(\mathbf{x})$, given an initial approximation \mathbf{x} .

INPUT: number n of variables, initial approximation $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)^T$, tolerance TOL, and maximum number of iterations N .

OUTPUT: approximate solution $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)^T$ or a message of failure.

Algorithm:

1. Set $k = 1$.
2. While $(k \leq N)$, do steps (a)–(k).
 - (a) Set: $g_1 = g(x_1, \dots, x_n)$; (Note: $g_1 = g(\mathbf{x}^{(k)})$.)
 $\mathbf{z} = \nabla g(x_1, \dots, x_n)$; (Note: $\mathbf{z} = \nabla g(\mathbf{x}^{(k)})$.)
 $z_0 = \|\mathbf{z}\|_2$.
 - (b) If $z_0 = 0$ then OUTPUT (“Zero gradient”);
 OUTPUT (x_1, \dots, x_n, g_1) ;
 (Procedure completed, may have a minimum.) STOP.
 - (c) Set $\mathbf{z} = \mathbf{z}/z_0$. (Make \mathbf{z} a unit vector.)
 Set $\alpha_1 = 0$; $\alpha_3 = 1$; $g_3 = g(\mathbf{x} - \alpha_3 \mathbf{z})$.
 - (d) While $(g_3 \geq g_1)$, do steps i–ii.
 - i. Set $\alpha_3 = \alpha_3/2$; $g_3 = g(\mathbf{x} - \alpha_3 \mathbf{z})$.
 - ii. If $\alpha_3 < \text{TOL}/2$, then
 OUTPUT (“No likely improvement”);

OUTPUT (x_1, \dots, x_n, g_1) ;
(Procedure completed, may have a minimum.)
STOP.

- (e) Set $\alpha_2 = \alpha_3/2$; $g_2 = g(\mathbf{x} - \alpha_2\mathbf{z})$.
- (f) Set: $h_1 = (g_2 - g_1)/\alpha_2$; $h_2 = (g_3 - g_2)/(\alpha_3 - \alpha_2)$;
 $h_3 = (h_2 - h_1)/\alpha_3$.
- (g) Set: $\alpha_0 = (\alpha_2 - h_1/h_3)/2$ (critical point occurs at α_0).
 $g_0 = g(\mathbf{x} - \alpha_0\mathbf{z})$.
- (h) Find α from $\{\alpha_0, \alpha_3\}$ so that $g = g(\mathbf{x} - \alpha\mathbf{z}) = \min\{g_0, g_3\}$.
- (i) Set $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x} - \alpha\mathbf{z}$.
- (j) If $|g - g_1| < \text{TOL}$ then OUTPUT (x_1, \dots, x_n, g) ;
(Procedure completed successfully.) STOP.
- (k) Set $k = k + 1$.

3. OUTPUT (“Maximum iterations exceeded”);
(Procedure unsuccessful.) STOP.

8.3 NUMERICAL INTEGRATION AND DIFFERENTIATION

8.3.1 NUMERICAL INTEGRATION

Numerical quadrature involves estimating $\int_a^b f(x) dx$ using a formula of the form

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx \approx \sum_{i=0}^n c_i f(x_i). \quad (8.3.1)$$

8.3.1.1 Newton–Cotes formulae

A *closed Newton–Cotes formula* uses nodes $x_i = x_0 + ih$ for $i = 0, 1, \dots, n$, where $h = (b - a)/n$. Note that $x_0 = a$ and $x_n = b$.

An *open Newton–Cotes formula* uses nodes $x_i = x_0 + ih$ for $i = 0, 1, \dots, n$, where $h = (b - a)/(n + 2)$. Here $x_0 = a + h$ and $x_n = b - h$. Set $x_{-1} = a$ and $x_{n+1} = b$. The nodes actually used lie in the *open interval* (a, b) .

In all formulae, ξ is a number for which $a < \xi < b$ and f_i denotes $f(x_i)$.

8.3.1.2 Closed Newton–Cotes formulae

1. ($n = 1$) Trapezoidal rule

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = \frac{h}{2}[f(x_0) + f(x_1)] - \frac{h^3}{12}f''(\xi).$$

2. ($n = 2$) Simpson's rule

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = \frac{h}{3}[f(x_0) + 4f(x_1) + f(x_2)] - \frac{h^5}{90}f^{(4)}(\xi).$$

3. ($n = 3$) Simpson's three-eighths rule

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = \frac{3h}{8}[f(x_0) + 3f(x_1) + 3f(x_2) + f(x_3)] - \frac{3h^5}{80}f^{(4)}(\xi).$$

4. ($n = 4$) Milne's rule (also called Boole's rule)

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = \frac{2h}{45}[7f_0 + 32f_1 + 12f_2 + 32f_3 + 7f_4] - \frac{8h^7}{945}f^{(6)}(\xi).$$

5. ($n = 5$)

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = \frac{5h}{288}[19f_0 + 75f_1 + 50f_2 + 50f_3 + 75f_4 + 19f_5] - \frac{275h^7}{12096}f^{(6)}(\xi).$$

6. ($n = 6$) Weddle's rule

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = \frac{h}{140}[41f_0 + 216f_1 + 27f_2 + 272f_3 + 27f_4 + 216f_5 + 41f_6] - \frac{9h^9}{1400}f^{(8)}(\xi).$$

7. ($n = 7$)

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = \frac{7h}{17280}[751f_0 + 3577f_1 + 1323f_2 + 2989f_3 + 2989f_4 + 1323f_5 + 3577f_6 + 751f_7] - \frac{8183h^9}{518400}f^{(8)}(\xi).$$

8.3.1.3 Open Newton–Cotes formulae

1. ($n = 0$) Midpoint rule

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = 2hf(x_0) + \frac{h^3}{3}f''(\xi).$$

2. ($n = 1$)

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = \frac{3h}{2}[f(x_0) + f(x_1)] + \frac{3h^3}{4}f''(\xi).$$

3. ($n = 2$)

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = \frac{4h}{3}[2f(x_0) - f(x_1) + 2f(x_2)] + \frac{14h^5}{45}f^{(4)}(\xi).$$

4. ($n = 3$)

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = \frac{5h}{24}[11f(x_0) + f(x_1) + f(x_2) + 11f(x_3)] + \frac{95h^5}{144}f^{(4)}(\xi).$$

5. ($n = 4$)

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = \frac{3h}{10}[11f_0 - 14f_1 + 26f_2 - 14f_3 + 11f_4] + \frac{41h^7}{140}f^{(6)}(\xi).$$

6. ($n = 5$)

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = \frac{7h}{1440}[611f_0 - 453f_1 + 562f_2 + 562f_3 - 453f_4 + 611f_5] + \frac{5257h^7}{8640}f^{(6)}(\xi).$$

8.3.1.4 Composite rules

Some Newton–Cotes formulae extend to *composite formulae*. This consists of dividing the interval into subintervals and using Newton–Cotes formulae on each subinterval. In the following, note that $a < \mu < b$.

1. Composite trapezoidal rule for n subintervals: If $f \in C^2[a, b]$, $h = (b - a)/n$, and $x_j = a + jh$, for $j = 0, 1, \dots, n$, then

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = \frac{h}{2} \left[f(a) + 2 \sum_{j=1}^{n-1} f(x_j) + f(b) \right] - \frac{b-a}{12} h^2 f''(\mu).$$

2. Composite Simpson's rule for n subintervals: If $f \in C^4[a, b]$, n is even, $h = (b - a)/n$, and $x_j = a + jh$, for $j = 0, 1, \dots, n$, then

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = \frac{h}{3} \left[f(a) + 2 \sum_{j=1}^{(n/2)-1} f(x_{2j}) + 4 \sum_{j=1}^{n/2} f(x_{2j-1}) + f(b) \right] - \frac{b-a}{180} h^4 f^{(4)}(\mu).$$

3. Composite midpoint rule for $n + 2$ subintervals: If $f \in C^2[a, b]$, n is even, $h = (b - a)/(n + 2)$, and $x_j = a + (j + 1)h$, for $j = -1, 0, 1, \dots, n + 1$, then

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = 2h \sum_{j=0}^{n/2} f(x_{2j}) + \frac{b-a}{6} h^2 f''(\mu).$$

8.3.1.5 Romberg integration

Romberg integration uses the composite trapezoidal rule beginning with $h_1 = b - a$ and $h_k = (b - a)/2^{k-1}$, for $k = 1, 2, \dots$, to give preliminary estimates for $\int_a^b f(x) dx$ and improves these estimates using Richardson's extrapolation. Since many function evaluations would be repeated, the first column of the extrapolation table (with entries denoted $R_{i,j}$) can be more efficiently determined by the following recursion formula:

$$\begin{aligned}
 R_{1,1} &= \frac{h_1}{2} [f(a) + f(b)] = \frac{b-a}{2} [f(a) + f(b)], \\
 R_{k,1} &= \frac{1}{2} \left[R_{k-1,1} + h_{k-1} \sum_{i=1}^{2^{k-2}} f(a + (2i-1)h_k) \right], \tag{8.3.2}
 \end{aligned}$$

for $k = 2, 3, \dots$. Now apply Equation (8.1.4) to complete the extrapolation table.

8.3.1.6 Gregory's formula

Using f_j to represent $f(x_0 + jh)$,

$$\begin{aligned}
 \int_{x_0}^{x_0+nh} f(y) dy &= h \left(\frac{1}{2} f_0 + f_1 + \dots + f_{n-1} + \frac{1}{2} f_n \right) \\
 &\quad + \frac{h}{12} (\Delta f_0 - \Delta f_{n-1}) - \frac{h}{24} (\Delta^2 f_0 + \Delta^2 f_{n-2}) \\
 &\quad + \frac{19h}{720} (\Delta^3 f_0 - \Delta^3 f_{n-3}) - \frac{3h}{160} (\Delta^4 f_0 + \Delta^4 f_{n-4}) + \dots \tag{8.3.3}
 \end{aligned}$$

where Δ 's represent forward differences. The first expression on the right in Equation (8.3.3) is the composite trapezoidal rule, and additional terms provide improved approximations. Care must be taken not to carry this process too far because Gregory's formula is only asymptotically convergent in general and round-off error can be significant when computing higher differences.

FIGURE 8.2

Formulae for integration rules with various weight functions

| Weight $w(x)$ | Interval (α, β) | Abcissas are zeros of | x_i | w_i | K_n |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|---|--|--|--|
| 1 | $(-1, 1)$ | $P_n(x)$ | See table on page 755 | $\frac{-2}{(n+1)P_{n+1}(x_i)P'_n(x_i)}$ | $\frac{2^{2n+1}(n!)^4}{(2n+1)[(2n)!]^3}$ |
| e^{-x} | $(0, \infty)$ | $L_n(x)$ | See table on page 756 | $\frac{(n!)^2 x_i}{(n+1)^2 L_{n+1}^2(x_i)}$ | $\frac{(n!)^2}{(2n)!}$ |
| e^{-x^2} | $(-\infty, \infty)$ | $H_n(x)$ | See table on page 756 | $\frac{2^{n-1} n! \sqrt{\pi}}{n^2 H_{n-1}^2(x_i)}$ | $\frac{n! \sqrt{\pi}}{2^n (2n)!}$ |
| $\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$ | $(-1, 1)$ | $T_n(x)$ | $\cos \frac{(2i-1)\pi}{2n}$ | $\frac{\pi}{n}$ | $\frac{2\pi}{2^{2n}(2n)!}$ |
| $\sqrt{1-x^2}$ | $(-1, 1)$ | $U_n(x)$ | $\cos \left(\frac{i\pi}{n+1} \right)$ | $\frac{\pi}{n+1} \sin^2 \left(\frac{i\pi}{n+1} \right)$ | $\frac{\pi}{2^{2n+1}(2n)!}$ |
| $\sqrt{\frac{x}{1-x}}$ | $(0, 1)$ | $\frac{T_{2n+1}(\sqrt{x})}{\sqrt{x}}$ | $\cos^2 \left(\frac{(2i-1)\pi}{4n+2} \right)$ | $\frac{2\pi}{2n+1} \cos^2 \left(\frac{(2i-1)\pi}{4n+2} \right)$ | $\frac{\pi}{2^{4n+1}(2n)!}$ |
| $\sqrt{\frac{1-x}{1+x}}$ | $(0, 1)$ | $J_n \left(x, \frac{1}{2}, -\frac{1}{2} \right)$ | $\cos \left(\frac{2i\pi}{2n+1} \right)$ | $\frac{4\pi}{2n+1} \sin^2 \left(\frac{i\pi}{2n+1} \right)$ | $\frac{\pi}{2^{2n}(2n)!}$ |
| $\frac{1}{\sqrt{x}}$ | $(0, 1)$ | $P_{2n}(\sqrt{x})$ | $(x_i^+)^2$ | $2h_i$ | $\frac{2^{4n+1}[(2n)!]^3}{(4n+1)[(4n)!]^2}$ |
| \sqrt{x} | $(0, 1)$ | $\frac{P_{2n+1}(\sqrt{x})}{\sqrt{x}}$ | $(x_i^+)^2$ | $2h_i (x_i^+)^2$ | $\frac{2^{4n+3}[(2n+1)!]^4}{(4n+3)[(4n+2)!]^2(2n)!}$ |

In this table, P_n , L_n , H_n , T_n , U_n , and J_n denote the n^{th} Legendre, Laguerre, Hermite, Chebyshev (rst kind T_n , second kind U_n), and Jacobi polynomials, respectively. Also, x_i^+ denotes the i^{th} positive root of $P_{2n}(x)$ or $P_{2n+1}(x)$ of the previous column, and h_i denotes the corresponding weight for x_i^+ in the Gauss–Legendre formula ($w(x) = 1$).

8.3.1.7 Gaussian quadrature

A quadrature formula, whose nodes (abscissae) x_i and coefficients w_i are chosen to achieve a maximum order of accuracy, is called a *Gaussian quadrature formula*. The integrand usually involves a *weight function* w . An integral in t on an interval (a, b) must be converted into an integral in x over the interval (α, β) specified for the weight function involved. This can be accomplished by the transformation $x = \frac{(b\alpha - a\beta)}{(b-a)} + \frac{(\beta - \alpha)t}{(b-a)}$. Gaussian quadrature formulae generally take the form

$$\int_{\alpha}^{\beta} w(x)f(x) dx = \sum_i w_i f(x_i) + E_n \tag{8.3.4}$$

where $E_n = K_n f^{(2n)}(\xi)$ for some $\alpha < \xi < \beta$ and K_n is a specified constant. Many popular weight functions and their associated intervals are summarized in the table on page 754.

The following tables give abscissae and weights for selected formulae. If some x_i are specified (such as one or both end points), then the formulae of Radau and Lobatto may be used.

8.3.1.8 Gauss–Legendre quadrature

Weight function is $w(x) = 1$.

$$\int_{-1}^1 f(x) dx \approx \sum_{i=1}^n w_i f(x_i).$$

| n | Nodes $\{\pm x_i\}$ | Weights $\{w_i\}$ | n | Nodes $\{\pm x_i\}$ | Weights $\{w_i\}$ |
|-----|---|--|-----|--|--|
| 2 | 0.5773502692 | 1 | 8 | 0.1834346425 0.5255324099 0.7966664774 0.9602898565 | 0.3626837834 0.3137066459 0.2223810345 0.1012285363 |
| 3 | 0 0.7745966692 | 0.8888888889 0.5555555556 | 9 | 0 0.3242534234 0.6133714327 0.8360311073 0.9681602395 | 0.3302393550 0.3123470770 0.2606106964 0.1806481607 0.0812743883 |
| 4 | 0.3399810436 0.8611363116 | 0.6521451549 0.3478548451 | 10 | 0.1488743390 0.4333953941 0.6794095683 0.8650633667 0.9739065285 | 0.2955242247 0.2692667193 0.2190863625 0.1494513492 0.0666713443 |
| 5 | 0 0.5384693101 0.9061798459 | 0.5688888889 0.4786286705 0.2369268851 | | | |
| 6 | 0.2386191861 0.6612093865 0.9324695142 | 0.4679139346 0.3607615730 0.1713244924 | | | |
| 7 | 0 0.4058451514 0.7415311856 0.9491079123 | 0.4179591837 0.3818300505 0.2797053915 0.1294849662 | | | |

8.3.1.9 Gauss–Laguerre quadrature

Weight function is $w(x) = e^{-x}$.

$$\int_0^{\infty} e^{-x} f(x) dx \approx \sum_{i=1}^n w_i f(x_i).$$

| n | Nodes $\{x_i\}$ | Weights $\{w_i\}$ | n | Nodes $\{x_i\}$ | Weights $\{w_i\}$ |
|-----|-----------------|-------------------|-----|-----------------|-------------------|
| 2 | 0.5857864376 | 0.8535533905 | 6 | 0.2228466041 | 0.4589646739 |
| | 3.4142135623 | 0.1464466094 | | 1.1889321016 | 0.4170008307 |
| 3 | 0.4157745567 | 0.7110930099 | | 2.9927363260 | 0.1133733820 |
| | 2.2942803602 | 0.2785177335 | | 5.7751435691 | 0.0103991974 |
| | 6.2899450829 | 0.0103892565 | | 9.8374674183 | 0.0002610172 |
| 4 | 0.3225476896 | 0.6031541043 | | 15.9828739806 | 0.0000008985 |
| | 1.7457611011 | 0.3574186924 | 7 | 0.1930436765 | 0.4093189517 |
| | 4.5366202969 | 0.0388879085 | | 1.0266648953 | 0.4218312778 |
| | 9.3950709123 | 0.0005392947 | | 2.5678767449 | 0.1471263486 |
| 5 | 0.2635603197 | 0.5217556105 | | 4.9003530845 | 0.0206335144 |
| | 1.4134030591 | 0.3986668110 | | 8.1821534445 | 0.0010740101 |
| | 3.5964257710 | 0.0759424496 | | 12.7341802917 | 0.0000158654 |
| | 7.0858100058 | 0.0036117586 | | 19.3957278622 | 0.0000000317 |
| | 12.6408008442 | 0.0000233699 | | | |

8.3.1.10 Gauss–Hermite quadrature

Weight function is $w(x) = e^{-x^2}$.

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-x^2} f(x) dx \approx \sum_{i=1}^n w_i f(x_i).$$

| n | Nodes $\{\pm x_i\}$ | Weights $\{w_i\}$ | n | Nodes $\{\pm x_i\}$ | Weights $\{w_i\}$ |
|-----|---------------------|-------------------|--------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| 2 | 0.7071067811 | 0.8862269254 | 7 | 0 | 0.8102646175 |
| 3 | 0 | 1.1816359006 | | 0.8162878828 | 0.4256072526 |
| | 1.2247448713 | 0.2954089751 | | 1.6735516287 | 0.0545155828 |
| 4 | 0.5246476232 | 0.8049140900 | | 2.6519613568 | 0.0009717812 |
| | 1.6506801238 | 0.0813128354 | 8 | 0.3811869902 | 0.6611470125 |
| 5 | 0 | 0.9453087204 | | 1.1571937124 | 0.2078023258 |
| | 0.9585724646 | 0.3936193231 | | 1.9816567566 | 0.0170779830 |
| | 2.0201828704 | 0.0199532420 | 2.9306374202 | 0.0001996040 | |
| 6 | 0.4360774119 | 0.7246295952 | 9 | 0 | 0.7202352156 |
| | 1.3358490740 | 0.1570673203 | | 0.7235510187 | 0.4326515590 |
| | 2.3506049736 | 0.0045300099 | | 1.4685532892 | 0.0884745273 |
| | | 2.2665805845 | | 0.0049436242 | |
| | | 3.1909932017 | | 0.0000396069 | |
| | | | | | |

8.3.1.11 Radau quadrature

$$\int_{-1}^1 f(x) dx = w_1 f(-1) + \sum_{i=2}^n w_i f(x_i) + \frac{2^{2n-1} [n(n-1)!]^4}{[(2n-1)!]^3} f^{(2n-1)}(\xi),$$

where each free node x_i is the i^{th} root of $\frac{P_{n-1}(x)+P_n(x)}{x+1}$ and $w_i = \frac{1-x_i}{n^2[P_{n-1}(x_i)]^2}$ for $i = 2, \dots, n$; see the following table. Note that $x_1 = -1$ and $w_1 = 2/n^2$.

| n | Nodes | Weights $\{w_i\}$ | n | Nodes | Weights $\{w_i\}$ |
|-----|---------------|-------------------|---------------|---------------|-------------------|
| 3 | -0.2898979485 | 1.0249716523 | 8 | -0.8874748789 | 0.1853581548 |
| | 0.6898979485 | 0.7528061254 | | -0.6395186165 | 0.3041306206 |
| 4 | -0.5753189235 | 0.6576886399 | -0.2947505657 | 0.3765175453 | |
| | 0.1810662711 | 0.7763869376 | 0.0943072526 | 0.3915721674 | |
| | 0.8228240809 | 0.4409244223 | 0.4684203544 | 0.3470147956 | |
| 5 | -0.7204802713 | 0.4462078021 | 0.7706418936 | 0.2496479013 | |
| | -0.1671808647 | 0.6236530459 | 0.9550412271 | 0.1145088147 | |
| | 0.4463139727 | 0.5627120302 | 9 | -0.9107320894 | 0.1476540190 |
| | 0.8857916077 | 0.2874271215 | | -0.7112674859 | 0.2471893782 |
| 6 | -0.8029298284 | 0.3196407532 | | -0.4263504857 | 0.3168437756 |
| | -0.3909285467 | 0.4853871884 | | -0.0903733696 | 0.3482730027 |
| | 0.1240503795 | 0.5209267831 | 0.2561356708 | 0.3376939669 | |
| | 0.6039731642 | 0.4169013343 | 0.5713830412 | 0.2863866963 | |
| | 0.9203802858 | 0.2015883852 | 0.8173527842 | 0.2005532980 | |
| 7 | -0.8538913426 | 0.2392274892 | 0.9644401697 | 0.0907145049 | |
| | -0.5384677240 | 0.3809498736 | 10 | -0.9274843742 | 0.1202966705 |
| | -0.1173430375 | 0.4471098290 | | -0.7638420424 | 0.2042701318 |
| | 0.3260306194 | 0.4247037790 | | -0.5256460303 | 0.2681948378 |
| | 0.7038428006 | 0.3182042314 | | -0.2362344693 | 0.3058592877 |
| | 0.9413671456 | 0.1489884711 | | 0.0760591978 | 0.3135824572 |
| | | 0.3806648401 | | 0.2906101648 | |
| | | 0.6477666876 | 0.2391934317 | | |
| | | 0.8512252205 | 0.1643760127 | | |
| | | 0.9711751807 | 0.0736170054 | | |

8.3.1.12 Lobatto quadrature

$$\int_{-1}^1 f(x) dx = w_1 f(-1) + w_n f(1) + \sum_{i=2}^{n-1} w_i f(x_i) - \frac{n(n-1)^3 2^{2n-1} [(n-2)!]^4}{(2n-1)[(2n-2)!]^3} f^{(2n-2)}(\xi)$$

where x_i is the $(i-1)^{\text{st}}$ root of $P'_{n-1}(x)$ and $w_i = \frac{2}{n(n-1)[P'_{n-1}(x_i)]^2}$ for $i = 2, \dots, n-1$. Note that $x_1 = -1$, $x_n = 1$, and $w_1 = w_n = 2/(n(n-1))$. The table lists all x_i and w_i for $n < 13$.

| n | Nodes $\{\pm x_i\}$ | Weights $\{w_i\}$ | n | Nodes $\{\pm x_i\}$ | Weights $\{w_i\}$ |
|--------------|---------------------|-------------------|--------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| 3 | 0 | 1.3333333333 | 10 | 0.1652789576 | 0.3275397611 |
| | 1 | 0.3333333333 | | 0.4779249498 | 0.2920426836 |
| 4 | 0.4472135954 | 0.8333333333 | | 0.7387738651 | 0.2248893420 |
| | 1 | 0.1666666666 | | 0.9195339081 | 0.1333059908 |
| 5 | 0 | 0.7111111111 | 11 | 1 | 0.0222222222 |
| | 0.6546536707 | 0.5444444444 | | 0 | 0.3002175954 |
| | 1 | 0.1000000000 | | 0.2957581355 | 0.2868791247 |
| 6 | 0.2852315164 | 0.5548583770 | | 0.5652353269 | 0.2480481042 |
| | 0.7650553239 | 0.3784749562 | 0.7844834736 | 0.1871698817 | |
| | 1 | 0.0666666666 | 0.9340014304 | 0.1096122732 | |
| | 7 | 0 | 0.4876190476 | 12 | 1 |
| 0.4688487934 | | 0.4317453812 | 0.1365529328 | | 0.2714052409 |
| 0.8302238962 | | 0.2768260473 | 0.3995309409 | | 0.2512756031 |
| 1 | | 0.0476190476 | 0.6328761530 | | 0.2125084177 |
| 8 | 0.2092992179 | 0.4124587946 | 13 | 0.8192793216 | 0.1579747055 |
| | 0.5917001814 | 0.3411226924 | | 0.9448992722 | 0.0916845174 |
| | 0.8717401485 | 0.2107042271 | | 1 | 0.0151515151 |
| | 1 | 0.0357142857 | | 0 | 0.2519308493 |
| 9 | 0 | 0.3715192743 | 0.2492869301 | 0.2440157903 | |
| | 0.3631174638 | 0.3464285109 | 0.4829098210 | 0.2207677935 | |
| | 0.6771862795 | 0.2745387125 | 0.6861884690 | 0.1836468652 | |
| | 0.8997579954 | 0.1654953615 | 0.8463475646 | 0.1349819266 | |
| | 1 | 0.0277777777 | 0.9533098466 | 0.0778016867 | |
| | | | 1 | 0.0128205128 | |

8.3.1.13 Chebyshev quadrature

$$\int_{-1}^1 f(x) dx \approx \frac{2}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n f(x_i).$$

| n | Nodes $\{\pm x_i\}$ |
|-----|---------------------|
| 2 | 0.5773502691 |
| 3 | 0 |
| | 0.7071067811 |
| 4 | 0.1875924740 |
| | 0.7946544722 |

| n | Nodes $\{\pm x_i\}$ |
|-----|---------------------|
| 5 | 0 |
| | 0.3745414095 |
| | 0.8324974870 |
| 6 | 0.2666354015 |
| | 0.4225186537 |
| | 0.8662468181 |

| n | Nodes $\{\pm x_i\}$ |
|-----|---------------------|
| 7 | 0 |
| | 0.3239118105 |
| | 0.5296567752 |
| | 0.8838617007 |

8.3.1.14 Multiple integrals

Quadrature methods can be extended to multiple integrals. The general idea, using a double integral as an example, involves writing the double integral in the form of an iterated integral, applying the quadrature method to the “inner integral” and then applying the method to the “outer integral”.

8.3.1.15 Simpson’s double integral over a rectangle

To integrate a function $f(x, y)$ over the rectangular region $R = \{(x, y) \mid a \leq x \leq b, c \leq y \leq d\}$ using the composite Simpson’s Rule produces an approximating formula given below. Intervals $[a, b]$ and $[c, d]$ must be partitioned using even integers n and m to identify evenly-spaced mesh points x_0, x_1, \dots, x_n and y_0, y_1, \dots, y_m , respectively.

$$\int \int_R f(x, y) dy dx = \int_a^b \int_c^d f(x, y) dy dx = \frac{hk}{9} \sum_{i=0}^n \sum_{j=0}^m c_{i,j} f(x_i, y_j) + E \tag{8.3.5}$$

where the error term E is given by

$$E = -\frac{(d-c)(b-a)}{180} \left[h^4 \frac{\partial^4 f}{\partial x^4}(\bar{\eta}, \bar{\mu}) + k^4 \frac{\partial^4 f}{\partial y^4}(\hat{\eta}, \hat{\mu}) \right] \tag{8.3.6}$$

for some $(\bar{\eta}, \bar{\mu})$ and $(\hat{\eta}, \hat{\mu})$ in R with h and k determined by $h = (b - a)/n$ and $k = (d - c)/m$, and the coefficients $c_{i,j}$ are the entries in the following table.

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|-----|----------|----------|----------|
| m | 1 | 4 | 2 | 4 | 2 | 4 | ... | 2 | 4 | 1 |
| $m - 1$ | 4 | 16 | 8 | 16 | 8 | 16 | ... | 8 | 16 | 4 |
| $m - 2$ | 2 | 8 | 4 | 8 | 4 | 8 | ... | 4 | 8 | 2 |
| $m - 3$ | 4 | 16 | 8 | 16 | 8 | 16 | ... | 8 | 16 | 4 |
| \vdots | \vdots | \vdots | \vdots | \vdots | \vdots | \vdots | | \vdots | \vdots | \vdots |
| 2 | 2 | 8 | 4 | 8 | 4 | 8 | ... | 4 | 8 | 2 |
| 1 | 4 | 16 | 8 | 16 | 8 | 16 | ... | 8 | 16 | 4 |
| 0 | 1 | 4 | 2 | 4 | 2 | 4 | ... | 2 | 4 | 1 |
| j | | | | | | | | | | |
| i | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | ... | $n - 2$ | $n - 1$ | n |

Similarly, Simpson’s Rule can be extended for regions that are not rectangular. It is simpler to give the following algorithm than to state a general formula.

8.3.1.16 Simpson’s double integral algorithm

To approximate the integral $I = \int_a^b \int_{c(x)}^{d(x)} f(x, y) dy dx$:

- INPUT endpoints a, b ; even positive integers m, n ;
 functions $c(x), d(x)$, and $f(x, y)$
 OUTPUT approximation J to I .

Algorithm:

1. Set $h = (b - a)/n$; $J_1 = 0$; (End terms.)
 $J_2 = 0$; (Even terms.) $J_3 = 0$. (Odd terms.)
2. For $i = 0, 1, \dots, n$ do (a)–(d).
 - (a) Set $x = a + ih$;
(Composite Simpson's method for x)
 $HX = (d(x) - c(x))/m$;
 $K_1 = f(x, c(x)) + f(x, d(x))$; (End terms.)
 $K_2 = 0$; (Even terms.)
 $K_3 = 0$. (Odd terms.)
 - (b) For $j = 1, 2, \dots, m - 1$ do i–ii.
 - i. Set $y = c(x) + jHX$; $Q = f(x, y)$.
 - ii. If j is even then set $K_2 = K_2 + Q$ else set $K_3 = K_3 + Q$.
 - (c) Set $L = (K_1 + 2K_2 + 4K_3)HX/3$.
 $(L \approx \int_{c(x_i)}^{d(x_i)} f(x_i, y) dy \text{ by composite Simpson's method.})$
 - (d) If $i = 0$ or $i = n$ then set $J_1 = J_1 + L$;
else if i is even then set $J_2 = J_2 + L$;
else set $J_3 = J_3 + L$.
3. Set $J = h(J_1 + 2J_2 + 4J_3)/3$.
4. OUTPUT(J);
STOP.

8.3.1.17 Gaussian double integral

To apply Gaussian quadrature to $I = \int_a^b \int_{c(x)}^{d(x)} f(x, y) dy dx$ first requires transforming, for each x in $[a, b]$, the interval $[c(x), d(x)]$ to $[-1, 1]$ and then applying Gaussian quadrature. This is performed in the following algorithm.

8.3.1.18 Gauss–Legendre double integral

To approximate the integral $I = \int_a^b \int_{c(x)}^{d(x)} f(x, y) dy dx$:

INPUT endpoints a, b ; positive integers m, n .

(The roots $r_{i,j}$ and coefficients $c_{i,j}$ are found in 8.3.1.8 for $i = \max\{m, n\}$ and for $1 \leq j \leq i$.)

OUTPUT approximation J to I .

Algorithm:

1. Set $h_1 = (b - a)/2$; $h_2 = (b + a)/2$; $J = 0$.
2. For $i = 1, 2, \dots, m$ do (a)–(c).

- (a) Set $JX = 0$;
 $x = h_1 r_{m,i} + h_2$;
 $d_1 = d(x)$; $c_1 = c(x)$;
 $k_1 = (d_1 - c_1)/2$; $k_2 = (d_1 + c_1)/2$.
- (b) For $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$ do
 set $y = k_1 r_{n,j} + k_2$;
 $Q = f(x, y)$;
 $JX = JX + c_{n,j}Q$.
- (c) Set $J = J + c_{m,i}k_1 JX$.

3. Set $J = h_1 J$.

4. OUTPUT(J); STOP.

8.3.1.19 Double integrals of polynomials over polygons

If the vertices of the polygon A are $\{(x_1, y_1), (x_2, y_2), \dots, (x_p, y_p)\}$, and we define $w_i = x_i y_{i+1} - x_{i+1} y_i$ (with $x_{p+1} = x_1$ and $y_{p+1} = y_1$) then

$$\int \int_A x^m y^n dA = \frac{m!n!}{(m+n+2)!} \sum_{i=1}^p w_i \sum_{j=0}^m \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{j+k}{j} \binom{m+n-j-k}{n-k} x_i^{m-j} x_{i+1}^j y_i^{n-k} y_{i+1}^k. \quad (8.3.7)$$

8.3.1.20 Monte–Carlo methods

Monte–Carlo methods, in general, involve the generation of random numbers (actually *pseudorandom* when computer-generated) to represent independent, uniform random variables over $[0, 1]$. [Section 7.6](#) describes random number generation. Such a simulation can provide insight into the solutions of very complex problems.

Monte–Carlo methods are generally not competitive with other numerical methods of this section. However, if the function fails to have continuous derivatives of moderate order, those methods may not be applicable. One advantage of Monte–Carlo methods is that they extend to multidimensional integrals quite easily, although here only a few techniques for one-dimensional integrals $I = \int_a^b g(x) dx$ are given.

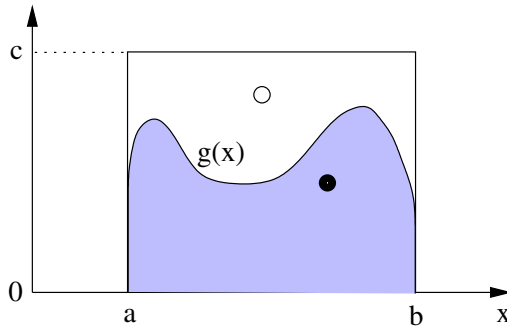
8.3.1.21 Hit or miss method

Suppose $0 \leq g(x) \leq c$, $a \leq x \leq b$, and $\Omega = \{(x, y) \mid a \leq x \leq b, 0 \leq y \leq c\}$. If (X, Y) is a random vector which is uniformly distributed over Ω , then the probability p that (X, Y) lies in S (see [Figure 8.3](#)) is $p = I/(c(b-a))$.

If N independent random vectors $\{(X_i, Y_i)\}_{i=1}^N$ are generated, the parameter p can be estimated by $\hat{p} = N_H/N$ where N_H is the number of times $Y_i \leq g(X_i)$, $i = 1, 2, \dots, N$, called the number of *hits*. (Likewise $N - N_H$ is the number of *misses*.) The value of I is then estimated by the unbiased estimator $\theta_1 = c(b-a)N_H/N$.

FIGURE 8.3

Illustration of the Monte–Carlo method. The sample points are shown as circles. The solid circle is counted as a “hit”, the empty circle is counted as a “miss”.



8.3.1.22 Hit or miss algorithm

1. Generate $\{U_j\}_{j=1}^{2N}$ of $2N$ random numbers, uniformly distributed in $[0, 1)$.
2. Arrange the sequence into N pairs $(U_1, U'_1), (U_2, U'_2), \dots, (U_N, U'_N)$, so that each U_j is used exactly once.
3. Compute $X_i = a + U_i(b - a)$ and $g(X_i)$ for $i = 1, 2, \dots, N$.
4. Count the number of cases N_H for which $g(X_i) \geq cU'_i$.
5. Compute $\theta_1 = c(b - a)N_H/N$. (This is an estimate of I .)

The number of trials N necessary for $P(|\theta_1 - I| < \epsilon) \geq \alpha$ is given by

$$N \geq \frac{(1 - p)p[c(b - a)]^2}{(1 - \alpha)\epsilon^2}. \tag{8.3.8}$$

With the usual notation of z_α for the value of the standard normal random variable Z for which $P(Z > z_\alpha) = \alpha$ (see page 695), a confidence interval for I with confidence level $1 - \alpha$ is

$$\theta_1 \pm z_{\frac{\alpha}{2}} \frac{\sqrt{\hat{p}(1 - \hat{p})}(b - a)c}{\sqrt{N}}. \tag{8.3.9}$$

8.3.1.23 Sample-mean Monte–Carlo method

Write the integral $I = \int_a^b g(x) dx$ as $\int_a^b \frac{g(x)}{f_X(x)} f_X(x) dx$, where f is any probability density function for which $f_X(x) > 0$ when $g(x) \neq 0$. Then $I = E \left[\frac{g(X)}{f_X(X)} \right]$ where the random variable X is distributed according to $f_X(x)$. Values from this distribution can be generated by the methods discussed in Section 7.6.2. For the case where $f_X(x)$ is the uniform distribution on $[0, 1]$, $I = (b - a)E[g(X)]$. An unbiased estimator of I is its sample mean

$$\theta_2 = (b - a) \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^N g(X_i). \tag{8.3.10}$$

It follows that the variance of θ_2 is less than or equal to the variance of θ_1 . In fact,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{var } \theta_1 &= \frac{I}{N} [c(b-a) - I], \\ \text{var } \theta_2 &= \frac{1}{N} \left[(b-a) \int_a^b g^2(x) dx - I^2 \right]. \end{aligned} \tag{8.3.11}$$

Note that to estimate I with θ_1 or θ_2 , $g(x)$ is not needed explicitly. It is only necessary to evaluate $g(x)$ at any point x .

8.3.1.24 Sample-mean algorithm

1. Generate $\{U_i\}_{i=1}^N$ of N random numbers, uniformly distributed in $[0, 1)$.
2. Compute $X_i = a + U_i(b-a)$, for $i = 1, 2, \dots, N$.
3. Compute $g(X_i)$ for $i = 1, 2, \dots, N$.
4. Compute θ_2 according to Equation (8.3.10). (This is an estimate of I .)

8.3.1.25 Integration in the presence of noise

Suppose $g(x)$ is measured with some error: $\tilde{g}(x_i) = g(x_i) + \epsilon_i$, for $i = 1, 2, \dots, N$, where ϵ_i are independent identically distributed random variables with $E[\epsilon_i] = 0$, $\text{var}(\epsilon_i) = \sigma^2$, and $|\epsilon_i| < k < \infty$.

If (X, Y) is uniformly distributed on the rectangle $a \leq x \leq b$, $0 \leq y \leq c_1$, where $c_1 \geq g(x) + k$, set $\tilde{\theta}_1 = c_1(b-a)N_H/N$ as in the hit or miss method. Similarly, set $\tilde{\theta}_2 = \frac{1}{N}(b-a) \sum_{i=1}^N \tilde{g}(X_i)$ as in the sample-mean method. Then both $\tilde{\theta}_1$ and $\tilde{\theta}_2$ are unbiased and converge almost surely to I . Again, $\text{var } \tilde{\theta}_2 \leq \text{var } \tilde{\theta}_1$.

8.3.1.26 Weighted Monte–Carlo integration

Estimate the integral $I = \int_0^1 g(x) dx$ according to the following algorithm:

1. Generate numbers $\{U_1, U_2, \dots, U_N\}$ from the uniform distribution on $[0, 1)$.
2. Arrange U_1, U_2, \dots, U_N in the increasing order $U_{(1)}, U_{(2)}, \dots, U_{(N)}$.
3. Compute $\theta_3 = \frac{1}{2} \left[\sum_{i=0}^N (g(U_{(i)}) + g(U_{(i+1)}))(U_{(i+1)} - U_{(i)}) \right]$, where $U_{(0)} \equiv 0$, $U_{(N+1)} \equiv 1$. This is an estimate of I .

If $g(x)$ has a continuous second derivative on $[0, 1]$, then the estimator θ_3 satisfies $\text{var } \theta_3 = E[(\theta_3 - I)^2] \leq k/N^4$, where k is some positive constant.

8.3.2 NUMERICAL DIFFERENTIATION

8.3.2.1 Derivative estimates

Selected formulae to estimate the derivative of a function at a single point, with error terms, are given. Nodes are equally spaced with $x_i - x_{i-1} = h$; h may be positive or negative and, in the error formulae, ξ lies between the smallest and largest nodes. To shorten some of the formulae, f_j is used to denote $f(x_0 + jh)$ and some error formulae are expressed as $O(h^k)$.

1. Two-point formula for $f'(x_0)$

$$f'(x_0) = \frac{1}{h}(f(x_0 + h) - f(x_0)) - \frac{h}{2}f''(\xi). \quad (8.3.12)$$

This is called the *forward-difference formula* if $h > 0$ and the *backward-difference formula* if $h < 0$.

2. Three-point formulae for $f'(x_0)$

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x_0) &= \frac{1}{2h}[-3f(x_0) + 4f(x_0 + h) - f(x_0 + 2h)] + \frac{h^2}{3}f^{(3)}(\xi) \\ &= \frac{1}{2h}[f(x_0 + h) - f(x_0 - h)] - \frac{h^2}{6}f^{(3)}(\xi). \end{aligned} \quad (8.3.13)$$

3. Four-point formula (or five uniformly spaced points) for $f'(x_0)$

$$f'(x_0) = \frac{1}{12h}[f_{-2} - 8f_{-1} + 8f_1 - f_2] + \frac{h^4}{30}f^{(5)}(\xi). \quad (8.3.14)$$

4. Five-point formula for $f'(x_0)$

$$f'(x_0) = \frac{1}{12h}[-25f_0 + 48f_1 - 36f_2 + 16f_3 - 3f_4] + \frac{h^4}{5}f^{(5)}(\xi). \quad (8.3.15)$$

5. Formulae for the second derivative

$$\begin{aligned} f''(x_0) &= \frac{1}{h^2}[f_{-1} - 2f_0 + f_1] - \frac{h^2}{12}f^{(4)}(\xi) \\ &= \frac{1}{h^2}[f_0 - 2f_1 + f_2] + \frac{h^2}{6}f^{(4)}(\xi_1) - hf^{(3)}(\xi_2). \end{aligned} \quad (8.3.16)$$

6. Formulae for the third derivative

$$\begin{aligned} f^{(3)}(x_0) &= \frac{1}{h^3}[f_3 - 3f_2 + 3f_1 - f_0] + O(h) \\ &= \frac{1}{2h^3}[f_2 - 2f_1 + 2f_{-1} - f_{-2}] + O(h^2). \end{aligned} \quad (8.3.17)$$

7. Formulae for the fourth derivative

$$\begin{aligned}
 f^{(4)}(x_0) &= \frac{1}{h^4} [f_4 - 4f_3 + 6f_2 - 4f_1 + f_0] + O(h) \\
 &= \frac{1}{h^4} [f_2 - 4f_1 + 6f_0 - 4f_{-1} + f_{-2}] + O(h^2).
 \end{aligned}
 \tag{8.3.18}$$

Richardson's extrapolation can be applied to improve estimates. The error term of the formula must satisfy Equation (8.1.2) and an extrapolation procedure must be developed. As a special case, however, Equation (8.1.4) may be used when rst-column entries are generated by Equation (8.3.13).

8.3.2.2 Computational molecules

A computational molecule is a graphical depiction of an approximate partial derivative formula. The following computational molecules are for $h = \Delta x = \Delta y$:

$$(a) \quad \left. \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \right|_{i,j} = \frac{1}{2h} (u_{1,0} - u_{-1,0}) + O(h^2) = \frac{1}{2h} \left\{ \begin{array}{c} (-1) \text{---} (0)_{i,j} \text{---} (1) \end{array} \right\} + O(h^2)$$

$$(b) \quad \left. \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} \right|_{i,j} = \frac{1}{2h} (u_{0,1} - u_{0,-1}) + O(h^2) = \frac{1}{2h} \left\{ \begin{array}{c} (1) \\ | \\ (0)_{i,j} \\ | \\ (-1) \end{array} \right\} + O(h^2)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 (c) \quad \left. \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} \right|_{i,j} &= \frac{1}{h^2} (u_{1,0} - 2u_{0,0} + u_{-1,0}) + O(h^2) \\
 &= \frac{1}{h^2} \left\{ \begin{array}{c} (1) \text{---} (-2)_{i,j} \text{---} (1) \end{array} \right\} + O(h^2)
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 (d) \quad \left. \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y} \right|_{i,j} &= \frac{1}{4h^2} (u_{1,1} - u_{1,-1} - u_{-1,1} + u_{-1,-1}) + O(h^2) \\
 &= \frac{1}{4h^2} \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} (-1) & 0 & 1 \\ | & & | \\ (0) & (0)_{i,j} & (0) \\ | & & | \\ (1) & 0 & (-1) \end{array} \right\} + O(h^2)
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 (e) \quad \left. \nabla^2 u \right|_{i,j} &= \frac{1}{h^2} (u_{1,0} + u_{0,1} + u_{-1,0} + u_{0,-1} - 4u_{00}) + O(h^2) \\
 &= \frac{1}{h^2} \left\{ \begin{array}{c} (1) \\ | \\ (1) \text{---} (-4)_{i,j} \text{---} (1) \\ | \\ (1) \end{array} \right\} + O(h^2)
 \end{aligned}$$

8.3.2.3 Numerical solution of differential equations

Numerical methods to solve differential equations depend on whether small changes in the statement of the problem cause small changes in the solution.

DEFINITION 8.3.1

The initial-value problem,

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = f(t, y), \quad a \leq t \leq b, \quad y(a) = \alpha, \quad (8.3.19)$$

is said to be well posed if

1. A unique solution, $y(t)$, to the problem exists.
2. For any $\epsilon > 0$, there exists a positive constant $k(\epsilon)$ with the property that, whenever $|\epsilon_0| < \epsilon$ and $\delta(t)$ is continuous with $|\delta(t)| < \epsilon$ on $[a, b]$, a unique solution, $z(t)$, to the problem,

$$\frac{dz}{dt} = f(t, z) + \delta(t), \quad a \leq t \leq b, \quad z(a) = \alpha + \epsilon_0,$$

exists and satisfies $|z(t) - y(t)| < k(\epsilon)\epsilon$, for all $a \leq t \leq b$.

This is called the *perturbed problem* associated with the original problem. Although other criteria exist, the following result gives conditions that are easy to check to guarantee that a problem is well posed.

THEOREM 8.3.1 (Well posed condition)

Suppose that f and f_y (its r st partial derivative with respect to y) are continuous for t in $[a, b]$. Then the initial-value problem given by Equation (8.3.19) is well posed.

Using Taylor's theorem, numerical methods for solving the well posed, r st-order differential equation given by Equation (8.3.19) can be derived. Using equally-spaced *mesh points* $t_i = a + ih$ (for $i = 0, 1, 2, \dots, N$) and w_i to denote an approximation to $y_i \equiv y(t_i)$, then methods generally use *difference equations* of the form

$$w_0 = \alpha, \quad w_{i+1} = w_i + h\phi(t_i, w_i),$$

for each $i = 0, 1, 2, \dots, N - 1$. Here ϕ is a function depending on f . The difference method has *local truncation error* given by

$$\tau_{i+1}(h) = \frac{y_{i+1} - y_i}{h} - \phi(t_i, y_i),$$

for each $i = 0, 1, 2, \dots, N - 1$. The following formulae are called *Taylor methods*. Each has local truncation error

$$\frac{h^n}{(n+1)!} f^{(n)}(\xi_i, y(\xi_i)) = \frac{h^n}{(n+1)!} y^{(n+1)}(\xi_i, y(\xi_i))$$

for each $i = 0, 1, 2, \dots, N - 1$, where $\xi_i \in (t_i, t_{i+1})$. Thus, if $y \in C^{n+1}[a, b]$ the local truncation error is $O(h^n)$.

1. Euler's method ($n = 1$):

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + hf(t_i, w_i). \quad (8.3.20)$$

2. Taylor method of order n :

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + hT^{(n)}(t_i, w_i), \quad (8.3.21)$$

where $T^{(n)}(t_i, w_i) = f(t_i, w_i) + \frac{h}{2}f'(t_i, w_i) + \dots + \frac{h^{n-1}}{n!}f^{(n-1)}(t_i, w_i)$.

The *Runge–Kutta methods* below are derived from the n^{th} degree Taylor polynomial in two variables.

3. Midpoint method:

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + h \left[f \left(t_i + \frac{h}{2}, w_i + \frac{h}{2}f(t_i, w_i) \right) \right]. \quad (8.3.22)$$

If all second-order partial derivatives of f are bounded, this method has local truncation error $O(h^2)$, as do the following two methods.

4. Modified Euler method:

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + \frac{h}{2} \{ f(t_i, w_i) + f[t_{i+1}, w_i + hf(t_i, w_i)] \}. \quad (8.3.23)$$

5. Heun's method:

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + \frac{h}{4} \left\{ f(t_i, w_i) + 3f \left[t_i + \frac{2}{3}h, w_i + \frac{2}{3}hf(t_i, w_i) \right] \right\}.$$

6. Runge–Kutta method of order four:

$$w_{i+1} = w_i + \frac{1}{6}(k_1 + 2k_2 + 2k_3 + k_4), \quad (8.3.24)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} k_1 &= hf(t_i, w_i), \\ k_2 &= hf \left(t_i + \frac{h}{2}, w_i + \frac{1}{2}k_1 \right), \\ k_3 &= hf \left(t_i + \frac{h}{2}, w_i + \frac{1}{2}k_2 \right), \\ k_4 &= hf(t_{i+1}, w_i + k_3). \end{aligned}$$

The local truncation error is $O(h^4)$ if the solution $y(t)$ has five continuous derivatives.

8.3.2.4 Multistep methods and predictor-corrector methods

A *multistep method* is a technique whose difference equation to compute w_{i+1} involves more prior values than just w_i . An *explicit method* is one in which the computation of w_{i+1} does not depend on $f(t_{i+1}, w_{i+1})$ whereas an *implicit method* does involve $f(t_{i+1}, w_{i+1})$. For each formula, $i = n - 1, n, \dots, N - 1$.

8.3.2.5 Adams–Bashforth n -step (explicit) methods

1. ($n = 2$):

$$w_0 = \alpha, w_1 = \alpha_1, w_{i+1} = w_i + \frac{h}{2}[3f(t_i, w_i) - f(t_{i-1}, w_{i-1})].$$

Local truncation error is $\tau_{i+1}(h) = \frac{5}{12}y^{(3)}(\mu_i)h^2$, for some $\mu_i \in (t_{i-1}, t_{i+1})$.

2. ($n = 3$):

$$w_0 = \alpha, w_1 = \alpha_1, w_2 = \alpha_2, w_{i+1} = w_i + \frac{h}{12}[23f(t_i, w_i) - 16f(t_{i-1}, w_{i-1}) + 5f(t_{i-2}, w_{i-2})].$$

Local truncation error is $\tau_{i+1}(h) = \frac{3}{8}y^{(4)}(\mu_i)h^3$, for some $\mu_i \in (t_{i-2}, t_{i+1})$.

3. ($n = 4$):

$$w_0 = \alpha, w_1 = \alpha_1, w_2 = \alpha_2, w_3 = \alpha_3, w_{i+1} = w_i + \frac{h}{24}[55f(t_i, w_i) - 59f(t_{i-1}, w_{i-1}) + 37f(t_{i-2}, w_{i-2}) - 9f(t_{i-3}, w_{i-3})].$$

Local truncation error is $\tau_{i+1}(h) = \frac{251}{720}y^{(5)}(\mu_i)h^4$, for some $\mu_i \in (t_{i-3}, t_{i+1})$.

4. ($n = 5$):

$$w_0 = \alpha, w_1 = \alpha_1, w_2 = \alpha_2, w_3 = \alpha_3, w_4 = \alpha_4, w_{i+1} = w_i + \frac{h}{720}[1901f(t_i, w_i) - 2774f(t_{i-1}, w_{i-1}) + 2616f(t_{i-2}, w_{i-2}) - 1274f(t_{i-3}, w_{i-3}) + 251f(t_{i-4}, w_{i-4})].$$

Local truncation error is $\tau_{i+1}(h) = \frac{95}{288}y^{(6)}(\mu_i)h^5$, for some $\mu_i \in (t_{i-4}, t_{i+1})$.

8.3.2.6 Adams–Moulton n -step (implicit) methods

1. ($n = 2$):

$$w_0 = \alpha, w_1 = \alpha_1, w_{i+1} = w_i + \frac{h}{12}[5f(t_{i+1}, w_{i+1}) + 8f(t_i, w_i) - f(t_{i-1}, w_{i-1})].$$

Local truncation error is $\tau_{i+1}(h) = -\frac{1}{24}y^{(4)}(\mu_i)h^3$, for some $\mu_i \in (t_{i-1}, t_{i+1})$.

2. ($n = 3$):

$$w_0 = \alpha, w_1 = \alpha_1, w_2 = \alpha_2, w_{i+1} = w_i + \frac{h}{24}[9f(t_{i+1}, w_{i+1}) + 19f(t_i, w_i) - 5f(t_{i-1}, w_{i-1}) + f(t_{i-2}, w_{i-2})].$$

Local truncation error is $\tau_{i+1}(h) = -\frac{19}{720}y^{(5)}(\mu_i)h^4$,

for some $\mu_i \in (t_{i-2}, t_{i+1})$.

3. ($n = 4$):

$$w_0 = \alpha, w_1 = \alpha_1, w_2 = \alpha_2, w_3 = \alpha_3, w_{i+1} = w_i + \frac{h}{720}[251f(t_{i+1}, w_{i+1}) + 646f(t_i, w_i) - 264f(t_{i-1}, w_{i-1}) + 106f(t_{i-2}, w_{i-2}) - 19f(t_{i-3}, w_{i-3})].$$

Local truncation error is $\tau_{i+1}(h) = -\frac{3}{160}y^{(6)}(\mu_i)h^5$,

for some $\mu_i \in (t_{i-3}, t_{i+1})$.

In practice, implicit methods are not used by themselves. They are used to improve approximations obtained by explicit methods. An explicit method *predicts* an approximation and the implicit method *corrects* this prediction. The combination is called a *predictor-corrector method*. For example, the Adams–Bashforth method with $n = 4$ might be used with the Adams–Moulton method with $n = 3$ since both have comparable errors. Initial values may be computed, say, by the Runge–Kutta method of order four, Equation (8.3.24).

8.3.2.7 Higher-order differential equations and systems

A system of m first-order initial-value problems can be expressed in the form

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{du_1}{dt} &= f_1(t, u_1, u_2, \dots, u_m), & u_1(a) &= \alpha_1, \\ \frac{du_2}{dt} &= f_2(t, u_1, u_2, \dots, u_m), & u_2(a) &= \alpha_2, \\ &\vdots \\ \frac{du_m}{dt} &= f_m(t, u_1, u_2, \dots, u_m), & u_m(a) &= \alpha_m. \end{aligned} \tag{8.3.25}$$

Generalizations of methods for solving first-order equations can be used to solve such systems. An example here uses the Runge-Kutta method of order four.

Partition $[a, b]$ as before, and let $w_{i,j}$ denote the approximation to $u_i(t_j)$ for $j = 0, 1, \dots, N$ and $i = 1, 2, \dots, m$. For the initial conditions, set $w_{1,0} = \alpha_1$, $w_{2,0} = \alpha_2, \dots, w_{m,0} = \alpha_m$. From the values $\{w_{1,j}, w_{2,j}, \dots, w_{m,j}\}$ previously computed, obtain $\{w_{1,j+1}, w_{2,j+1}, \dots, w_{m,j+1}\}$ from

$$\begin{aligned} k_{1,i} &= hf_i(t_j, w_{1,j}, w_{2,j}, \dots, w_{m,j}), \\ k_{2,i} &= hf_i\left(t_j + \frac{h}{2}, w_{1,j} + \frac{1}{2}k_{1,1}, w_{2,j} + \frac{1}{2}k_{1,2}, \dots, w_{m,j} + \frac{1}{2}k_{1,m}\right), \\ k_{3,i} &= hf_i\left(t_j + \frac{h}{2}, w_{1,j} + \frac{1}{2}k_{2,1}, w_{2,j} + \frac{1}{2}k_{2,2}, \dots, w_{m,j} + \frac{1}{2}k_{2,m}\right), \\ k_{4,i} &= hf_i(t_j + h, w_{1,j} + k_{3,1}, w_{2,j} + k_{3,2}, \dots, w_{m,j} + k_{3,m}), \\ w_{i,j+1} &= w_{i,j} + \frac{1}{6}[k_{1,i} + 2k_{2,i} + 2k_{3,i} + k_{4,i}], \end{aligned} \tag{8.3.26}$$

where $i = 1, 2, \dots, m$ for each of the above.

A differential equation of high order can be converted into a system of first-order equations. Suppose that a single differential equation has the form

$$y^{(m)} = f(t, y, y', y'', \dots, y^{(m-1)}), \quad a \leq t \leq b \tag{8.3.27}$$

with initial conditions $y(a) = \alpha_1, y'(a) = \alpha_2, \dots, y^{(m-1)}(a) = \alpha_m$. All derivatives are with respect to t . That is, $y^{(k)} = \frac{d^k y}{dt^k}$. Define $u_1(t) = y(t), u_2(t) = y'(t), \dots, u_m(t) = y^{(m-1)}(t)$. This yields first-order equations

$$\frac{du_1}{dt} = u_2, \quad \frac{du_2}{dt} = u_3, \quad \dots \quad \frac{du_{m-1}}{dt} = u_m, \quad \frac{du_m}{dt} = f(t, u_1, u_2, \dots, u_m), \tag{8.3.28}$$

with initial conditions $u_1(a) = \alpha_1, \dots, u_m(a) = \alpha_m$.

8.3.2.8 Partial differential equations

To develop difference equations for partial differential equations, one needs to estimate the partial derivatives of a function, say, $u(x, y)$. For example,

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial x}(x, y) = \frac{u(x+h, y) - u(x, y)}{h} - \frac{h}{2} \frac{\partial^2 u(\xi, y)}{\partial x^2} \quad \text{for } \xi \in (x, x+h), \quad (8.3.29)$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}(x, y) = \frac{1}{h^2} [u(x+h, y) - 2u(x, y) + u(x-h, y)] - \frac{h^2}{12} \frac{\partial^4 u(\xi, y)}{\partial x^4}, \quad (8.3.30)$$

for $\xi \in (x-h, x+h)$.

Notes:

1. Equation (8.3.29) is simply Equation (8.3.12) applied to estimate the partial derivative. It is given here to emphasize its application for forming difference equations for partial differential equations. A similar formula applies for $\partial u/\partial y$, and others could follow from the formulae in [Section 8.3.2.1](#).
2. An estimate of $\partial^2 u/\partial y^2$ is similar. A formula for $\partial^2 u/\partial x\partial y$ could be given. However, in practice, a change of variables is generally used to eliminate this mixed second partial derivative from the problem.

If a partial differential equation involves partial derivatives with respect to only one of the variables, the methods described for ordinary differential equations can be used. If, however, the equation involves partial derivatives with respect to both variables, the approximation of the partial derivatives requires increments in both variables. The corresponding difference equations form a *system* of linear equations that must be solved.

Three specific forms of partial differential equations with popular methods of solution are given. The domains are assumed to be rectangular. Otherwise, additional considerations must be made for the boundary conditions.

8.3.2.9 Poisson equation

The Poisson equation is an elliptic partial differential equation that has the form

$$\nabla^2 u(x, y) = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}(x, y) + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2}(x, y) = f(x, y) \quad (8.3.31)$$

for $(x, y) \in R = \{(x, y) \mid a < x < b, c < y < d\}$, with $u(x, y) = g(x, y)$ for $(x, y) \in S$, where $S = \partial R$. When the function $f(x, y) = 0$ the equation is called *Laplace's equation*.

To begin, partition $[a, b]$ and $[c, d]$ by choosing integers n and m , define step sizes $h = (b - a)/n$ and $k = (d - c)/m$, and set $x_i = a + ih$ for $i = 0, 1, \dots, n$ and $y_j = c + jk$ for $j = 0, 1, \dots, m$. The lines $x = x_i, y = y_j$, are called *grid lines* and their intersections are called *mesh points*. Estimates $w_{i,j}$ for $u(x_i, y_j)$ can be generated using Equation (8.3.30) to estimate $\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}$ and $\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2}$. The method described here is called the *nite-d ifference method*.

Start with the values

$$w_{0,j} = g(x_0, y_j), \quad w_{n,j} = g(x_n, y_j), \quad w_{i,0} = g(x_i, y_0), \quad w_{i,m} = g(x_i, y_m), \quad (8.3.32)$$

and then solve the resulting system of linear algebraic equations

$$2 \left[\left(\frac{h}{k} \right)^2 + 1 \right] w_{i,j} - (w_{i+1,j} + w_{i-1,j}) - \left(\frac{h}{k} \right)^2 (w_{i,j+1} + w_{i,j-1}) = -h^2 f(x_i, y_j), \quad (8.3.33)$$

for $i = 1, 2, \dots, n-1$ and $j = 1, 2, \dots, m-1$. The local truncation error is $O(h^2 + k^2)$.

If the interior mesh points are labeled $P_\ell = (x_i, y_j)$ and $w_\ell = w_{i,j}$ where $\ell = i + (m-1-j)(n-1)$, for $i = 1, 2, \dots, n-1$, and $j = 1, 2, \dots, m-1$, then the two-dimensional array of values becomes a one-dimensional array. This results in a banded linear system. The case $n = m = 4$ yields $\ell = (n-1)(m-1) = 9$. Using the relabeled grid points, $f_\ell = f(P_\ell)$, the equations at the points P_i are

$$\begin{aligned} P_1: & \quad 4w_1 - w_2 - w_4 = w_{0,3} + w_{1,4} - h^2 f_1, \\ P_2: & \quad 4w_2 - w_3 - w_1 - w_5 = w_{2,4} - h^2 f_2, \\ P_3: & \quad 4w_3 - w_2 - w_6 = w_{4,3} + w_{3,4} - h^2 f_3, \\ P_4: & \quad 4w_4 - w_5 - w_1 - w_7 = w_{0,2} - h^2 f_4, \\ P_5: & \quad 4w_5 - w_6 - w_4 - w_2 - w_8 = 0 - h^2 f_5, \\ P_6: & \quad 4w_6 - w_5 - w_3 - w_9 = w_{4,2} - h^2 f_6, \\ P_7: & \quad 4w_7 - w_8 - w_4 = w_{0,1} + w_{1,0} - h^2 f_7, \\ P_8: & \quad 4w_8 - w_9 - w_7 - w_5 = w_{2,0} - h^2 f_8, \\ P_9: & \quad 4w_9 - w_8 - w_6 = w_{3,0} + w_{4,1} - h^2 f_9, \end{aligned}$$

where the right-hand sides of the equations are obtained from the boundary conditions.

The following algorithm can be used to solve the Poisson equation. Note that, for simplicity, the algorithm incorporates an iterative procedure called Gauss–Seidel for solving linear systems. Instead, Gaussian elimination is recommended (because stability with respect to round-off errors is assured) when the order is small (say, less than 100). For large systems, the SOR (Successive Over-Relaxation) method is recommended. The Gauss–Seidel and SOR methods can be found in Burden and Faires.

8.3.2.10 Poisson equation finite-difference algorithm

To approximate the solution to the Poisson equation

$$\nabla^2 u(x, y) = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}(x, y) + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2}(x, y) = f(x, y), \quad (8.3.34)$$

$$\text{for } a \leq x \leq b \text{ and } c \leq y \leq d,$$

subject to $u(x, y) = g(x, y)$ if $x = a$ or $x = b$ and $c \leq y \leq d$ and $u(x, y) = g(x, y)$ if $y = c$ or $y = d$ and $a \leq x \leq b$:

INPUT endpoints a, b, c, d ; integers $m \geq 3, n \geq 3$; tolerance TOL;
maximum number of iterations N .

OUTPUT approximations $w_{i,j}$ to $u(x_i, y_j)$ for $i = 1, \dots, n-1$
and $j = 1, \dots, m-1$ or a message that N was exceeded.

Algorithm:

1. Set $h = (b - a)/n$; $k = (d - c)/m$.
2. For $i = 1, \dots, n-1$ set $x_i = a + ih$.
3. For $j = 1, \dots, m-1$ set $y_j = c + jk$.
4. For $i = 1, \dots, n-1$
for $j = 1, \dots, m-1$ set $w_{i,j} = 0$.
5. Set $\lambda = h^2/k^2$; $\mu = 2(1 + \lambda)$; $\ell = 1$.
6. While $\ell \leq N$ do (a)–(i)
 - (a) Set

$$z = (-h^2 f(x_1, y_{m-1}) + g(a, y_{m-1}) + \lambda g(x_1, d) + \lambda w_{1,m-2} + w_{2,m-1})/\mu;$$

$$\text{NORM} = |z - w_{1,m-1}|; w_{1,m-1} = z.$$
 - (b) For $i = 2, \dots, n-2$

$$\text{set } z = (-h^2 f(x_i, y_{m-1}) + \lambda g(x_i, d) + w_{i-1,m-1} + w_{i+1,m-1} + \lambda w_{i,m-2})/\mu;$$
 if $|w_{i,m-1} - z| > \text{NORM}$ then set $\text{NORM} = |w_{i,m-1} - z|$;
set $w_{i,m-1} = z$.
 - (c) Set $z = (-h^2 f(x_{n-1}, y_{m-1}) + g(b, y_{m-1}) + \lambda g(x_{n-1}, d) + w_{n-2,m-1} + \lambda w_{n-1,m-2})/\mu;$
if $|w_{n-1,m-1} - z| > \text{NORM}$ then set $\text{NORM} = |w_{n-1,m-1} - z|$;
set $w_{n-1,m-1} = z$.
 - (d) For $j = m-2, \dots, 2$ do i–iii.
 - i. Set $z = (-h^2 f(x_1, y_j) + g(a, y_j) + \lambda w_{1,j+1} + \lambda w_{1,j-1} + w_{2,j})/\mu;$
if $|w_{1,j} - z| > \text{NORM}$ then set $\text{NORM} = |w_{1,j} - z|$;
set $w_{1,j} = z$.
 - ii. For $i = 2, \dots, n-2$

$$\text{set } z = (-h^2 f(x_i, y_j) + w_{i-1,j} + \lambda w_{i,j+1} + w_{i+1,j} + \lambda w_{i,j-1})/\mu;$$
 if $|w_{i,j} - z| > \text{NORM}$ then set $\text{NORM} = |w_{i,j} - z|$;
set $w_{i,j} = z$.
 - iii. Set $z = (-h^2 f(x_{n-1}, y_j) + g(b, y_j) + w_{n-2,j} + \lambda w_{n-1,j+1} + \lambda w_{n-1,j-1})/\mu;$
if $|w_{n-1,j} - z| > \text{NORM}$ then set $\text{NORM} = |w_{n-1,j} - z|$;
set $w_{n-1,j} = z$.
 - (e) Set $z = (-h^2 f(x_1, y_1) + g(a, y_1) + \lambda g(x_1, c) + \lambda w_{1,2} + w_{2,1})/\mu;$
if $|w_{1,1} - z| > \text{NORM}$ then set $\text{NORM} = |w_{1,1} - z|$;
set $w_{1,1} = z$.

-
- (f) For $i = 2, \dots, n - 2$
 set $z = (-h^2 f(x_i, y_1) + \lambda g(x_i, c) + w_{i-1,1} + \lambda w_{i,2} + w_{i+1,1}) / \mu$;
 if $|w_{i,1} - z| > \text{NORM}$ then set $\text{NORM} = |w_{i,1} - z|$;
 set $w_{i,1} = z$.
- (g) Set $z = (-h^2 f(x_{n-1}, y_1) + g(b, y_1) + \lambda g(x_{n-1}, c) + w_{n-2,1} + \lambda w_{n-1,2}) / \mu$;
 if $|w_{n-1,1} - z| > \text{NORM}$ then set $\text{NORM} = |w_{n-1,1} - z|$;
 set $w_{n-1,1} = z$.
- (h) If $\text{NORM} \leq \text{TOL}$ then do i–ii.
 i. For $i = 1, \dots, n - 1$
 for $j = 1, \dots, m - 1$ OUTPUT($x_i, y_j, w_{i,j}$).
 ii. STOP. (Procedure successful.)
- (i) Set $\ell = \ell + 1$.

7. OUTPUT('Maximum number of iterations exceeded.');
- (Procedure unsuccessful.)
- STOP.

8.3.2.11 Heat or diffusion equation

The heat, or diffusion, equation is a parabolic partial differential equation of the form

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t}(x, t) = \alpha^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}(x, t), \quad 0 < x < \ell, \quad t > 0, \quad (8.3.35)$$

where $u(0, t) = 0 = u(\ell, t) = 0$, for $t > 0$, and $u(x, 0) = f(x)$, for $0 \leq x \leq \ell$. An efficient method for solving this type of equation is the *Crank–Nicolson method*.

To apply the method, select an integer $m > 0$, set $h = \ell/m$, and select a time-step size k . Here $x_i = ih$, $i = 0, \dots, m$ and $t_j = jk$, $j = 0, \dots$. The difference equation is given by:

$$\frac{w_{i,j+1} - w_{i,j}}{k} - \frac{\alpha^2}{2} \left[\frac{w_{i+1,j} - 2w_{i,j} + w_{i-1,j}}{h^2} + \frac{w_{i+1,j+1} - 2w_{i,j+1} + w_{i-1,j+1}}{h^2} \right] = 0 \quad (8.3.36)$$

and has local truncation error $O(k^2 + h^2)$. The difference equations can be represented in the matrix form $A\mathbf{w}^{(j+1)} = B\mathbf{w}^{(j)}$, for each $j = 0, 1, 2, \dots$, where

$\lambda = \alpha^2 k/h^2$, $\mathbf{w}^{(j)} = (w_{1,j}, w_{2,j}, \dots, w_{m-1,j})^T$, and the matrices A and B are

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} (1 + \lambda) & -\lambda/2 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 \\ -\lambda/2 & (1 + \lambda) & -\lambda/2 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -\lambda/2 & (1 + \lambda) & -\lambda/2 & & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -\lambda/2 & (1 + \lambda) & & 0 & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & & & \ddots & & \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & & (1 + \lambda) & -\lambda/2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & & -\lambda/2 & (1 + \lambda) \end{bmatrix} \quad (8.3.37)$$

$$B = \begin{bmatrix} (1 - \lambda) & \lambda/2 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 \\ \lambda/2 & (1 - \lambda) & \lambda/2 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda/2 & (1 - \lambda) & \lambda/2 & & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \lambda/2 & (1 - \lambda) & & 0 & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & & & \ddots & & \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & & (1 - \lambda) & \lambda/2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & & \lambda/2 & (1 - \lambda) \end{bmatrix}.$$

8.3.2.12 Crank–Nicolson algorithm

To approximate the solution to the parabolic partial differential equation

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t}(x, t) - \alpha^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}(x, t) = 0, \quad 0 < x < \ell, \quad 0 < t < T,$$

subject to boundary conditions $u(0, t) = u(\ell, t) = 0$ for $0 < t < T$, and the initial conditions $u(x, 0) = f(x)$ for $0 \leq x \leq \ell$.

INPUT endpoint ℓ ; maximum time T ; constant α ;
integers $m \geq 3$; $N \geq 1$.

OUTPUT approximations $w_{i,j}$ to $u(x_i, t_j)$ for $i = 1, \dots, m - 1$, and
 $j = 1, \dots, N$.

Algorithm:

1. Set $h = \ell/m$; $k = T/N$; $\lambda = \alpha^2 k/h^2$; $w_m = 0$.
2. For $i = 1, \dots, m - 1$ set $w_i = f(ih)$.
3. Set $\ell_1 = 1 + \lambda$; $u_1 = -\lambda/(2\ell_1)$.
4. For $i = 2, \dots, m - 2$
set $\ell_i = 1 + \lambda + \lambda u_{i-1}/2$; $u_i = -\lambda/(2\ell_i)$.
5. Set $\ell_{m-1} = 1 + \lambda + \lambda u_{m-2}/2$.
6. For $j = 1, \dots, N$ do (a)–(e).
 - (a) Set $t = jk$; $z_1 = [(1 - \lambda)w_1 + \frac{\lambda}{2}w_2] / \ell_1$.
 - (b) For $i = 2, \dots, m - 1$
set $z_i = [(1 - \lambda)w_i + \frac{\lambda}{2}(w_{i+1} + w_{i-1} + z_{i-1})] / \ell_i$.
 - (c) Set $w_{m-1} = z_{m-1}$.
 - (d) For $i = m - 2, \dots, 1$ set $w_i = z_i - u_i w_{i+1}$.

(e) OUTPUT(t); (Note: $t = t_j$.)
 For $i = 1, \dots, m - 1$ set $x = ih$; OUTPUT(x, w_i).
 (Note: $w_i = w_{i,j}$.)

7. STOP. (Procedure completed.)

8.3.2.13 Wave equation

The wave equation is an example of a hyperbolic partial differential equation and has the form

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2}(x, t) - \alpha^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}(x, t) = 0, \quad 0 < x < \ell, \quad t > 0 \quad (8.3.38)$$

(where α is a constant) subject to $u(0, t) = u(\ell, t) = 0$ for $t > 0$, and $u(x, 0) = f(x)$ and $\frac{\partial u}{\partial t}(x, 0) = g(x)$ for $0 \leq x \leq \ell$.

Select an integer $m > 0$, time-step size $k > 0$, and using $h = \ell/m$, mesh points (x_i, t_j) are defined by $x_i = ih$ and $t_j = jk$. Using $w_{i,j}$ to represent an approximation of $u(x_i, t_j)$ and $\lambda = \alpha k/h$, the difference equation becomes

$$w_{i,j+1} = 2(1 - \lambda^2)w_{i,j} + \lambda^2(w_{i+1,j} + w_{i-1,j}) - w_{i,j-1},$$

with $w_{0,j} = w_{m,j} = 0$ and $w_{i,0} = f(x_i)$, for $i = 1, \dots, m - 1$ and $j = 1, 2, \dots$. Also needed is an estimate for $w_{i,1}$, for each $i = 1, \dots, m - 1$, which can be written

$$w_{i,1} = (1 - \lambda^2)f(x_i) + \frac{\lambda^2}{2}f(x_{i+1}) + \frac{\lambda^2}{2}f(x_{i-1}) + kg(x_i).$$

The local truncation error of the method is $O(h^2 + k^2)$ but the method is extremely accurate if the true solution is infinitely differentiable. For the method to be stable, it is necessary that $\lambda \leq 1$. The following algorithm, applied with $\lambda \leq 1$, is $O(h^2 + k^2)$ convergent if f and g are sufficiently differentiable.

8.3.2.14 Wave equation algorithm

To approximate the solution to the wave equation

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2}(x, t) - \alpha^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}(x, t) = 0, \quad 0 < x < \ell, \quad 0 < t < T,$$

subject to $u(0, t) = u(\ell, t) = 0$ for $0 < t < T$, $u(x, 0) = f(x)$ for $0 \leq x \leq \ell$, and $\frac{\partial u}{\partial t}(x, 0) = g(x)$ for $0 \leq x \leq \ell$.

INPUT endpoint ℓ ; maximum time T ; constant α ; integers $m \geq 2$;
 $N \geq 2$.

OUTPUT approximations $w_{i,j}$ to $u(x_i, t_j)$, $i = 0, \dots, m$, $j = 0, \dots, N$.

Algorithm:

1. Set $h = \ell/m$; $k = T/N$; $\lambda = k\alpha/h$.

-
2. For $j = 1, \dots, N$ set $w_{0,j} = 0$; $w_{m,j} = 0$.
 3. Set $w_{0,0} = f(0)$; $w_{m,0} = f(\ell)$.
 4. For $i = 1, \dots, m - 1$
 - set $w_{i,0} = f(ih)$;
 - $$w_{i,1} = (1 - \lambda^2)f(ih) + \frac{\lambda^2}{2}[f((i + 1)h) + f((i - 1)h)] + kg(ih).$$
 5. For $j = 1, \dots, N - 1$ (Perform matrix multiplication.)
 - for $i = 1, \dots, m - 1$ set

$$w_{i,j+1} = 2(1 - \lambda^2)w_{i,j} + \lambda^2(w_{i+1,j} + w_{i-1,j}) + w_{i,j-1}.$$
 6. For $j = 1, \dots, N$
 - set $t = jk$;
 - for $i = 0, \dots, m$
 - set $x = ih$; OUTPUT($x, t, w_{i,j}$).
 7. STOP. (Procedure completed.)

8.3.3 NUMERICAL SUMMATION

A sum of the form $\sum_{j=0}^n f(x_0 + jh)$ (n may be infinite) can be approximated by the *Euler–MacLaurin sum formula*,

$$\sum_{j=0}^n f(x_0 + jh) = \frac{1}{h} \int_{x_0}^{x_0+nh} f(y) dy + \frac{1}{2}[f(x_0 + nh) + f(x_0)] + \sum_{k=1}^m \frac{B_{2k}}{(2k)!} h^{2k-1} [f^{(2k-1)}(x_0 + nh) - f^{(2k-1)}(x_0)] + E_m \quad (8.3.39)$$

where $E_m = \frac{nh^{2m+2} B_{2m+2}}{(2m+2)!} f^{(2m+2)}(\xi)$, with $x_0 < \xi < x_0 + nh$. The B_n here are *Bernoulli numbers* (see [Section 1.2.7](#)).

The above formula is useful even when n is infinite, although the error can no longer be expressed in this form. A useful error estimate (which also holds when n is finite) is that the error is less than the magnitude of the first neglected term in the summation on the second line of Equation (8.3.39) if $f^{(2m+2)}(x)$ and $f^{(2m+4)}(x)$ do not change sign and are of the same sign for $x_0 < x < x_0 + nh$. If just $f^{(2m+2)}(x)$ does not change sign in the interval, then the error is less than twice the first neglected term.

Quadrature formulae result from Equation (8.3.39) using estimates for the derivatives.

8.4 PROGRAMMING TECHNIQUES

Efficiency and accuracy are the ultimate goal when solving any problem. Listed here are several suggestions to consider when developing algorithms and computer programs.

1. *Every algorithm must have an effective stopping rule.* For example, popular stopping rules for iteration methods described in [Section 8.1.2](#) are based on the estimate of the absolute error, relative error, or function value. One might choose to stop when a combination of the following conditions are satisfied:

$$|p_n - p_{n-1}| < \epsilon_1, \quad \frac{|p_n - p_{n-1}|}{|p_n|} < \epsilon_2, \quad |f(p_n)| < \epsilon_3,$$

where each ϵ_i represents a prescribed tolerance. However, since some iterations are not guaranteed to converge, or converge very slowly, it is *recommended* that an *upper bound*, say N , is *specified for the number of iterations* to be performed (see algorithm on page 742). This will avoid infinite loops.

2. *Avoid the use of arrays whenever possible.* Subscripted values often do not require the use of an array. For example, in Newton's method (see page 731) the calculations may be performed using $p = p_0 - \frac{f(p_0)}{f'(p_0)}$. Then check the stopping rule, say, if $|p - p_0| < \epsilon$, and update the current value by setting $p_0 = p$ before computing the next value of the sequence.
3. *Limit the use of arrays when forming tables.* A two-dimensional array can often be avoided. For example, a divided difference table can be formed and printed as a lower triangular matrix. The entries of any row depend only on the entries of the preceding row. Thus, one-dimensional arrays may be used to save the preceding row and the current row being calculated. It is important to note that usually the *entire array need not be saved*. For example, only special values in the table are needed for the coefficients of an interpolating polynomial.
4. *Avoid using formulae that may be highly susceptible to round off error.* Exercise caution when computing quotients of extremely small values as in Equation (8.3.12) with a very small value of h .
5. *Alter formulae* for iterations to obtain a "small correction" to an approximation. For example, writing $\frac{a+b}{2}$ as $a + \frac{b-a}{2}$ in the bisection method (see page 732) is recommended. Many of the iteration formulae in this chapter have this form.
6. *Pivoting strategies* are recommended when solving linear systems to reduce round-off error.
7. *Eliminate unnecessary steps* that may increase execution time or round-off error.

-
8. Some methods converge very rapidly, when they do converge, but rely on reasonably close initial approximations. A weaker, but reliable, method (such as the bisection method) to obtain such an approximation can be combined with a more powerful method (such as Newton's method). The weaker method might converge slowly and, by itself, is not very efficient. The powerful method might not converge at all. The combination, however, might remedy both difficulties.

Chapter 7

Probability and Statistics

7.1 PROBABILITY THEORY

- 7.1.1 *Introduction*
- 7.1.2 *Multivariate distributions*
- 7.1.3 *Random sums of random variables*
- 7.1.4 *Transforming variables*
- 7.1.5 *Central limit theorem*
- 7.1.6 *Inequalities*
- 7.1.7 *Averages over vectors*
- 7.1.8 *Geometric probability*

7.2 CLASSICAL PROBABILITY PROBLEMS

- 7.2.1 *Raisin cookie problem*
- 7.2.2 *Gambler's ruin problem*
- 7.2.3 *Card games*
- 7.2.4 *Distribution of dice sums*
- 7.2.5 *Birthday problem*

7.3 PROBABILITY DISTRIBUTIONS

- 7.3.1 *Discrete distributions*
- 7.3.2 *Continuous distributions*

7.4 QUEUING THEORY

- 7.4.1 *Variables*
- 7.4.2 *Theorems*

7.5 MARKOV CHAINS

- 7.5.1 *Transition function and matrix*
- 7.5.2 *Recurrence*
- 7.5.3 *Stationary distributions*
- 7.5.4 *Random walks*
- 7.5.5 *Ehrenfest chain*

7.6 RANDOM NUMBER GENERATION

- 7.6.1 *Methods of pseudorandom number generation*
- 7.6.2 *Generating non-uniform random variables*

0 **7.7 CONTROL CHARTS AND RELIABILITY**

- 7.7.1 *Control charts*
- 7.7.2 *Acceptance sampling*
- 7.7.3 *Reliability*
- 7.7.4 *Failure time distributions*

7.8 RISK ANALYSIS AND DECISION RULES

7.9 STATISTICS

- 7.9.1 *Descriptive statistics*
- 7.9.2 *Statistical estimators*
- 7.9.3 *Cramer–Rao bound*
- 7.9.4 *Order statistics*
- 7.9.5 *Classic statistics problems*

7.10 CONFIDENCE INTERVALS

- 7.10.1 *Confidence interval: sample from one population*
- 7.10.2 *Confidence interval: samples from two populations*

7.11 TESTS OF HYPOTHESES

- 7.11.1 *Hypothesis tests: parameter from one population*
- 7.11.2 *Hypothesis tests: parameters from two populations*
- 7.11.3 *Hypothesis tests: distribution of a population*
- 7.11.4 *Hypothesis tests: distributions of two populations*
- 7.11.5 *Sequential probability ratio tests*

7.12 LINEAR REGRESSION

- 7.12.1 *Linear model $y_i = \beta_0 + \beta_1 x_i + \epsilon$*
- 7.12.2 *General model $y = \beta_0 + \beta_1 x_1 + \beta_2 x_2 + \dots + \beta_n x_n + \epsilon$*

7.13 ANALYSIS OF VARIANCE (ANOVA)

- 7.13.1 *One-factor ANOVA*
- 7.13.2 *Unreplicated two-factor ANOVA*
- 7.13.3 *Replicated two-factor ANOVA*

7.14 PROBABILITY TABLES

- 7.14.1 *Critical values*
- 7.14.2 *Table of the normal distribution*
- 7.14.3 *Percentage points, Student's t -distribution*
- 7.14.4 *Percentage points, chi-square distribution*
- 7.14.5 *Percentage points, F -distribution*
- 7.14.6 *Cumulative terms, binomial distribution*
- 7.14.7 *Cumulative terms, Poisson distribution*
- 7.14.8 *Critical values, Kolmogorov–Smirnov test*
- 7.14.9 *Critical values, two sample Kolmogorov–Smirnov test*
- 7.14.10 *Critical values, Spearman's rank correlation*

7.15 SIGNAL PROCESSING

- 7.15.1 *Estimation*
- 7.15.2 *Kalman filters*
- 7.15.3 *Matched filtering (Wiener filter)*
- 7.15.4 *Walsh functions*
- 7.15.5 *Wavelets*

7.1 PROBABILITY THEORY

7.1.1 INTRODUCTION

A *sample space* S associated with an experiment is a set S of elements such that any outcome of the experiment corresponds to a unique element of the set. An *event* E is a subset of a sample space S . An element in a sample space is called a *sample point* or a *simple event*.

7.1.1.1 Definition of probability

If an experiment can occur in n mutually exclusive and equally likely ways, and if exactly m of these ways correspond to an event E , then the *probability* of E is given by

$$P(E) = \frac{m}{n}. \quad (7.1.1)$$

If E is a subset of S , and if to each element subset of S , a non-negative number, called the probability, is assigned, and if E is the union of two or more different simple events, then the probability of E , denoted $P(E)$, is the sum of the probabilities of those simple events whose union is E .

7.1.1.2 Marginal and conditional probability

Suppose a sample space S is partitioned into rs disjoint subsets where the general subset is denoted $E_i \cap F_j$ (with $i = 1, 2, \dots, r$ and $j = 1, 2, \dots, s$). Then the *marginal probability* of E_i is defined as

$$P(E_i) = \sum_{j=1}^s P(E_i \cap F_j), \quad (7.1.2)$$

and the marginal probability of F_j is defined as

$$P(F_j) = \sum_{i=1}^r P(E_i \cap F_j). \quad (7.1.3)$$

The *conditional probability* of E_i , given that F_j has occurred, is defined as

$$P(E_i | F_j) = \frac{P(E_i \cap F_j)}{P(F_j)}, \quad \text{when } P(F_j) \neq 0 \quad (7.1.4)$$

and that of F_j , given that E_i has occurred, is defined as

$$P(F_j | E_i) = \frac{P(E_i \cap F_j)}{P(E_i)}, \quad \text{when } P(E_i) \neq 0. \quad (7.1.5)$$

7.1.1.3 Probability theorems

1. If \emptyset is the null set, then $P(\emptyset) = 0$.
2. If S is the sample space, then $P(S) = 1$.
3. If E and F are two events, then

$$P(E \cup F) = P(E) + P(F) - P(E \cap F). \quad (7.1.6)$$

4. If E and F are *mutually exclusive events*, then

$$P(E \cup F) = P(E) + P(F). \quad (7.1.7)$$

5. If E and E' are *complementary events*, then

$$P(E) = 1 - P(E'). \quad (7.1.8)$$

6. Two events are said to be *independent* if and only if

$$P(E \cap F) = P(E)P(F). \quad (7.1.9)$$

The event E is said to be *statistically independent* of the event F if $P(E | F) = P(E)$ and $P(F | E) = P(F)$.

7. The events $\{E_1, \dots, E_n\}$ are called *mutually independent* for all combinations if and only if every combination of these events taken any number of times is independent.
8. *Bayes' rule*: If $\{E_1, \dots, E_n\}$ are n mutually exclusive events whose union is the sample space S , and if E is any arbitrary event of S such that $P(E) \neq 0$, then

$$P(E_k | E) = \frac{P(E_k)P(E | E_k)}{P(E)} = \frac{P(E_k)P(E | E_k)}{\sum_{j=1}^n P(E_j)P(E | E_j)}. \quad (7.1.10)$$

9. For a uniform probability distribution,

$$P(A) = \frac{\text{Number of outcomes in event } A}{\text{Total number of outcomes}}. \quad (7.1.11)$$

7.1.1.4 Terminology

1. A function whose domain is a sample space S and whose range is some set of real numbers is called a *random variable*. This random variable is called *discrete* if it assumes only a finite or denumerable number of values. It is called *continuous* if it assumes a continuum of values.
2. Random variables are usually represented by capital letters.

-
3. “iid” or “i.i.d.” is often used for the phrase “independent and identically distributed”.
 4. Many probability distributions have special representations:
 - (a) χ_n^2 : chi-square random variable with n degrees of freedom
 - (b) $E(\lambda)$: exponential distribution with parameter λ
 - (c) $N(\mu, \sigma)$: normal random variable with mean μ and standard deviation σ
 - (d) $P(\lambda)$: Poisson distribution with parameter λ
 - (e) $U[a, b]$: uniform random variable on the interval $[a, b]$

7.1.1.5 Characterizing random variables

The *density function* is defined as follows:

1. When X is a continuous random variable, let $f(x) dx$ denote the probability that X lies in the region $[x, x + dx]$; $f(x)$ is called the *probability density function*. (We require $f(x) \geq 0$ and $\int f(x) dx = 1$.) For any event E ,

$$P(E) = P(X \text{ is in } E) = \int_E f(x) dx. \quad (7.1.12)$$

2. When X is a discrete random variable, let p_k for $k = 0, 1, \dots$ be the probability that $X = x_k$ (with $p_k \geq 0$ and $\sum_k p_k = 1$). Mathematically, for any event E ,

$$P(E) = P(X \text{ is in } E) = \sum_{x_k \in E} p_k. \quad (7.1.13)$$

A discrete random variable can be written with the continuous density $f(x) = \sum_k p_k \delta(x - x_k)$.

The *cumulative distribution function*, or simply the *distribution function*, is defined by

$$F(x) = P(X \leq x) = \begin{cases} \sum_{x_k \leq x} p_k, & \text{in the discrete case,} \\ \int_{-\infty}^x f(t) dt, & \text{in the continuous case.} \end{cases} \quad (7.1.14)$$

Note that $F(-\infty) = 0$ and $F(\infty) = 1$. The probability that X is between a and b is

$$P(a < X \leq b) = P(X \leq b) - P(X \leq a) = F(b) - F(a). \quad (7.1.15)$$

Let $g(X)$ be a function of X . The *expected value* (or *expectation*) of $g(X)$, denoted by $E[g(X)]$, is defined by

$$E[g(X)] = \begin{cases} \sum_k p_k g(x_k), & \text{in the discrete case,} \\ \int_{\mathbb{R}} g(t) f(t) dt, & \text{in the continuous case.} \end{cases} \quad (7.1.16)$$

1. $E[aX + bY] = aE[X] + bE[Y]$.
2. $E[XY] = E[X]E[Y]$ if X and Y are statistically independent.

The *moments* of X are defined by $\mu'_k = E[X^k]$. The first moment, μ'_1 , is called the *mean* of X ; it is usually denoted by $\mu = \mu'_1 = E[X]$. The *centered moments* of X are defined by $\mu_k = E[(X - \mu)^k]$. The second centered moment is called the *variance* and is denoted by $\sigma^2 = \mu_2 = E[(X - \mu)^2]$. Here, σ is called the *standard deviation*. The *skewness* is $\gamma_1 = \mu_3/\sigma^3$, and the *excess* or *kurtosis* is $\gamma_2 = (\mu_4/\sigma^4) - 3$.

Using σ_Z^2 to denote the variance for the random variable Z , we have

1. $\sigma_{cX}^2 = c^2\sigma_X^2$.
2. $\sigma_{c+X}^2 = \sigma_X^2$.
3. $\sigma_{aX+b}^2 = a^2\sigma_X^2$.

7.1.1.6 Generating and characteristic functions

In the case of a discrete distribution, the *generating function* corresponding to X (when it exists) is given by $G(s) = G_X(s) = E[s^X] = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} p_k s^{x_k}$. From this function, the moments may be found from

$$\mu'_n = \left(s \frac{\partial}{\partial s} \right)^n G(s) \Big|_{s=1}. \quad (7.1.17)$$

1. If c is a constant, then the generating function of $c + X$ is $s^c G(s)$.
2. If c is a constant, then the generating function of cX is $G(s^c)$.
3. If $Z = X + Y$ where X and Y are independent discrete random variables, then $G_Z(s) = G_X(s)G_Y(s)$.
4. If $Y = \sum_{i=1}^n X_i$, the $\{X_i\}$ are independent, and each X_i has the common generating function $G_X(s)$, then the generating function of Y is $[G_X(s)]^n$.

In the case of a continuous distribution, the *characteristic function* corresponding to X is given by $\phi(t) = E[e^{itX}] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{itx} f(x) dx$, the Fourier transform of $f(x)$. From this function, the moments may be found: $\mu'_n = i^{-n} \phi^{(n)}(0)$. If $Z = X + Y$ where X and Y are independent continuous random variables, then $\phi_Z(t) = \phi_X(t)\phi_Y(t)$.

The *cumulant function* is defined as the logarithm of the characteristic function. The n^{th} *cumulant*, κ_n , is defined as a coefficient in the Taylor series of the cumulant function,

$$\log \phi(t) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \kappa_n \frac{(it)^n}{n!}. \quad (7.1.18)$$

Note that $\kappa_1 = \mu$, $\kappa_2 = \sigma^2$, $\kappa_3 = \mu_3$, and $\kappa_4 = \mu_4 - 3\mu_2^2$. For a normal probability distribution, $\kappa_n = 0$ for $n \geq 3$. The centered moments in terms of cumulants are

$$\begin{aligned}\mu_2 &= \kappa_2, \\ \mu_3 &= \kappa_3, \\ \mu_4 &= \kappa_4 + 3\kappa_2^2, \\ \mu_5 &= \kappa_5 + 10\kappa_3\kappa_2, \\ \mu_6 &= \kappa_6 + 15\kappa_4\kappa_2 + 10\kappa_3^2 + 15\kappa_2^3.\end{aligned}\tag{7.1.19}$$

7.1.2 MULTIVARIATE DISTRIBUTIONS

7.1.2.1 Discrete case

The k -dimensional random variable (X_1, \dots, X_k) is a k -dimensional discrete random variable if it assumes values only at a finite or denumerable number of points (x_1, \dots, x_k) . Define

$$P(X_1 = x_1, X_2 = x_2, \dots, X_k = x_k) = f(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k)\tag{7.1.20}$$

for every value that the random variable can assume. The function $f(x_1, \dots, x_k)$ is called the *joint density* of the k -dimensional random variable. If E is any subset of the set of values that the random variable can assume, then

$$P(E) = P[(X_1, \dots, X_k) \text{ is in } E] = \sum_E f(x_1, \dots, x_k)\tag{7.1.21}$$

where the sum is over all the points (x_1, \dots, x_k) in E . The cumulative distribution function is defined as

$$F(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k) = \sum_{z_1 \leq x_1} \sum_{z_2 \leq x_2} \cdots \sum_{z_k \leq x_k} f(z_1, z_2, \dots, z_k).\tag{7.1.22}$$

7.1.2.2 Continuous case

The k random variables (X_1, \dots, X_k) are said to be jointly distributed if a function f exists so that $f(x_1, \dots, x_k) \geq 0$ for all $-\infty < x_i < \infty$ ($i = 1, \dots, k$) and so that, for any given event E ,

$$\begin{aligned}P(E) &= P[(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_k) \text{ is in } E] \\ &= \int \cdots \int_E f(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k) dx_1 dx_2 \cdots dx_k.\end{aligned}\tag{7.1.23}$$

The function $f(x_1, \dots, x_k)$ is called the *joint density* of the random variables X_1, X_2, \dots, X_k . The cumulative distribution function is defined as

$$F(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k) = \int_{-\infty}^{x_1} \int_{-\infty}^{x_2} \cdots \int_{-\infty}^{x_k} f(z_1, z_2, \dots, z_k) dz_k \cdots dz_2 dz_1.\tag{7.1.24}$$

Given the cumulative distribution function, the probability density may be found from

$$f(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k) = \frac{\partial}{\partial x_1} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_2} \cdots \frac{\partial}{\partial x_k} F(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k).\tag{7.1.25}$$

7.1.2.3 Moments

The r^{th} moment of X_i is defined as

$$E[X_i^r] = \begin{cases} \sum_{x_1}^{\infty} \cdots \sum_{x_k}^{\infty} x_i^r f(x_1, \dots, x_k), & \text{in the discrete case,} \\ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \cdots \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_i^r f(x_1, \dots, x_k) dx_1 \cdots dx_k & \text{in the continuous case.} \end{cases} \quad (7.1.26)$$

Joint moments about the origin are defined as $E[X_1^{r_1} X_2^{r_2} \cdots X_k^{r_k}]$ where $r_1 + r_2 + \cdots + r_k$ is the order of the moment. Joint moments about the mean are defined as $E[(X_1 - \mu_1)^{r_1} (X_2 - \mu_2)^{r_2} \cdots (X_k - \mu_k)^{r_k}]$, where $\mu_k = E[X_k]$.

7.1.2.4 Marginal and conditional distributions

If the random variables X_1, \dots, X_k have the joint density function $f(x_1, \dots, x_k)$, then the *marginal distribution* of the subset of the random variables, say, X_1, \dots, X_p (with $p < k$), is given by

$$g(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_p) = \begin{cases} \sum_{x_{p+1}}^{\infty} \sum_{x_{p+2}}^{\infty} \cdots \sum_{x_k} f(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k), & \text{in the discrete case,} \\ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \cdots \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x_1, \dots, x_k) dx_{p+1} \cdots dx_k, & \text{in the continuous case.} \end{cases} \quad (7.1.27)$$

The *conditional distribution* of a certain subset of the random variables is the joint distribution of this subset under the condition that the remaining variables are given certain values. The conditional distribution of X_1, X_2, \dots, X_p , given $X_{p+1}, X_{p+2}, \dots, X_k$, is

$$h(x_1, \dots, x_p \mid x_{p+1}, \dots, x_k) = \frac{f(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k)}{g(x_{p+1}, x_{p+2}, \dots, x_k)} \quad (7.1.28)$$

if $g(x_{p+1}, x_{p+2}, \dots, x_k) \neq 0$.

The *variance* σ_{ii} of X_i and the *covariance* σ_{ij} of X_i and X_j are given by

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_{ii}^2 &= \sigma_i^2 = E[(X_i - \mu_i)^2], \\ \sigma_{ij}^2 &= \rho_{ij} \sigma_i \sigma_j = E[(X_i - \mu_i)(X_j - \mu_j)], \end{aligned} \quad (7.1.29)$$

where ρ_{ij} is the *correlation coefficient*, and σ_i and σ_j are the standard deviations of X_i and X_j .

7.1.3 RANDOM SUMS OF RANDOM VARIABLES

If $T = \sum_{i=1}^N X_i$, and if N is an integer-valued random variable with generating function $G_N(s)$, and if the $\{X_i\}$ are discrete independent and identically distributed random variables with generating function $G_X(s)$, and the $\{X_i\}$ are independent of N , then the generating function for T is $G_T(s) = G_N(G_X(s))$. (If the $\{X_i\}$ are continuous random variables, then $\phi_T(t) = G_N(\phi_X(t))$.) Hence,

1. $\mu_T = \mu_N \mu_X$.
2. $\sigma_T^2 = \mu_N \sigma_X^2 + \mu_X \sigma_N^2$.

7.1.4 TRANSFORMING VARIABLES

1. Suppose that the random variable X has the probability density function $f_X(x)$ and the random variable Y is defined by $Y = g(X)$. If g is measurable and one-to-one, then

$$f_Y(y) = f_X(h(y)) \left| \frac{dh}{dy} \right| \quad (7.1.30)$$

where $h(y) = g^{-1}(y)$.

2. If the random variables X and Y are independent and if their densities f_X and f_Y , respectively, exist almost everywhere, then the probability density of their sum, $Z = X + Y$, is given by the convolution

$$f_Z(z) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f_X(x) f_Y(z - x) dx. \quad (7.1.31)$$

3. If the random variables X and Y are independent and if their densities f_X and f_Y , respectively, exist almost everywhere, then the probability density of their product, $Z = XY$, is given by the formula,

$$f_Z(z) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{|x|} f_X(x) f_Y\left(\frac{z}{x}\right) dx. \quad (7.1.32)$$

7.1.5 CENTRAL LIMIT THEOREM

If $\{X_i\}$ are independent and identically distributed random variables with mean μ and finite variance σ^2 , then the random variable

$$Z = \frac{(X_1 + X_2 + \cdots + X_n) - n\mu}{\sqrt{n}\sigma} \quad (7.1.33)$$

tends (as $n \rightarrow \infty$) to a normal random variable with mean zero and variance one.

7.1.6 INEQUALITIES

1. *Markov's Inequality*: If X is a random variable which takes only non-negative values, then for any $a > 0$,

$$P(X \geq a) \leq \frac{E[X]}{a}. \quad (7.1.34)$$

2. *Cauchy-Schwartz Inequality*: Let X and Y be random variables for which $E[X^2]$ and $E[Y^2]$ exist, then

$$(E[XY])^2 \leq E[X^2] E[Y^2]. \quad (7.1.35)$$

3. *One-Sided Chebyshev Inequality*: Let X be a random variable with zero mean (i.e., $E[X] = 0$) and variance σ^2 . Then, for any positive a ,

$$P(X > a) \leq \frac{\sigma^2}{\sigma^2 + a^2}. \quad (7.1.36)$$

4. *Chebyshev's Inequality*: Let c be any real number and let X be a random variable for which $E[(X - c)^2]$ is finite. Then, for every $\epsilon > 0$ the following holds:

$$P(|X - c| \geq \epsilon) \leq \frac{1}{\epsilon^2} E[(X - c)^2]. \quad (7.1.37)$$

5. *Bienaymé–Chebyshev's Inequality*: If $E[|X|^r] < \infty$ for all $r > 0$ (r not necessarily an integer) then, for every $a > 0$,

$$P(|X| \geq a) \leq \frac{E[|X|^r]}{a^r}. \quad (7.1.38)$$

6. *Generalized Bienaymé–Chebyshev's Inequality*: Let $g(x)$ be a non-decreasing non-negative function defined on $(0, \infty)$. Then, for $a \geq 0$,

$$P(|X| \geq a) \leq \frac{E[g(|X|)]}{g(a)}. \quad (7.1.39)$$

7. *Chernoff bound*: This bound is useful for sums of random variables. Let $Y_n = \sum_{i=1}^n X_i$ where the $\{X_i\}$ are iid. Let $M(t) = E_x[e^{tX}]$ be the same moment generating function for each of the $\{X_i\}$, and define $g(t) = \log M(t)$. Then (the prime in this formula denotes a derivative),

$$\begin{aligned} P(Y_n \geq ng'(t)) &\leq e^{-n[tg'(t) - g(t)]}, & \text{if } t \geq 0, \\ P(Y_n \leq ng'(t)) &\leq e^{-n[tg'(t) - g(t)]}, & \text{if } t \leq 0. \end{aligned}$$

8. *Kolmogorov's Inequality*: Let X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n be n independent random variables such that $E[X_i] = 0$ and $\text{Var}(X_i) = \sigma_{X_i}^2$ is finite. Then, for all $a > 0$,

$$P\left(\max_{i=1, \dots, n} |X_1 + X_2 + \dots + X_i| > a\right) \leq \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{\sigma_i^2}{a^2}. \quad (7.1.40)$$

9. *Jensen's Inequality*: If $E[X]$ exists, and if $f(x)$ is a convex \cup ("convex cup") function, then

$$E[f(X)] \geq f(E[X]). \quad (7.1.41)$$

7.1.7 AVERAGES OVER VECTORS

Let $\overline{f(\mathbf{n})}$ denote the expectation of the function f as the unit vector \mathbf{n} varies uniformly in all directions in three dimensions. If \mathbf{a} , \mathbf{b} , \mathbf{c} , and \mathbf{d} are constant vectors, then

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{|\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{n}|^2} &= |\mathbf{a}|^2 / 3, \\ \overline{(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{n})(\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{n})} &= (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}) / 3, \\ \overline{(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{n})\mathbf{n}} &= \mathbf{a} / 3, \\ \overline{|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{n}|^2} &= 2|\mathbf{a}|^2 / 3, \\ \overline{(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{n}) \cdot (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{n})} &= 2\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} / 3, \\ \overline{(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{n})(\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{n})(\mathbf{c} \cdot \mathbf{n})(\mathbf{d} \cdot \mathbf{n})} &= [(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b})(\mathbf{c} \cdot \mathbf{d}) + (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c})(\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{d}) + (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{d})(\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{c})] / 15. \end{aligned} \tag{7.1.42}$$

Now let $\overline{f(\mathbf{n})}$ denote the average of the function f as the unit vector \mathbf{n} varies uniformly in all directions in two dimensions. If \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} are constant vectors, then

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{|\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{n}|^2} &= |\mathbf{a}|^2 / 2, \\ \overline{(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{n})(\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{n})} &= (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}) / 2, \\ \overline{(\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{n})\mathbf{n}} &= \mathbf{a} / 2. \end{aligned} \tag{7.1.43}$$

7.1.8 GEOMETRIC PROBABILITY

1. Points in a line segment:

If A and B are uniformly and independently chosen from the interval $[0, 1)$, and X is the distance between A and B (that is, $X = |A - B|$) then the probability density of X is $f_X(x) = 2(1 - x)$.

2. Many points in a line segment:

Uniformly and independently choose $n - 1$ random values in the interval $[0, 1)$. This creates n intervals.

$$\begin{aligned} P_k(x) &= \text{Probability (exactly } k \text{ intervals have length larger than } x) \\ &= \binom{n}{k} \left\{ [1 - kx]^{n-1} - \binom{n-k}{1} [1 - (k+1)x]^{n-1} + \right. \\ &\quad \left. \dots + (-1)^s \binom{n-k}{s} [1 - (k+s)x]^{n-1} \right\}, \end{aligned} \tag{7.1.44}$$

where $s = \left\lfloor \frac{1}{x} - k \right\rfloor$. From this, the probability that the largest interval length exceeds x is

$$1 - P_0(x) = \binom{n}{1} (1 - x)^{n-1} - \binom{n}{2} (1 - 2x)^{n-1} + \dots \tag{7.1.45}$$

3. Points in the plane:

Assume that the number of points in any region A of the plane is a Poisson variate with mean λA (λ is the “density” of the points). Given a fixed point P define R_1, R_2, \dots , to be the distance to the point nearest to P , second nearest to P , etc. Then

$$f_{R_s}(r) = \frac{2(\lambda\pi)^s}{(s-1)!} r^{2s-1} e^{-\lambda\pi r^2}. \quad (7.1.46)$$

4. Points in three-dimensional space:

Assume that the number of points in any volume V is a Poisson variate with mean λV (λ is the “density” of the points). Given a fixed point P define R_1, R_2, \dots , to be the distance to the point nearest to P , second nearest to P , etc. Then

$$f_{R_s}(r) = \frac{3\left(\frac{4}{3}\lambda\pi\right)^s}{\Gamma(s)} r^{3s-1} e^{-\frac{4}{3}\lambda\pi r^3}. \quad (7.1.47)$$

5. Points on a checkerboard:

Consider the unit squares on a checkerboard and select one point uniformly and independently in each square. The following results concern the average distance between points:

- (a) For adjacent squares (a black and white square with a common side) the mean distance between points is 1.088.
- (b) For diagonal squares (two white squares with a point in common) the mean between points is 1.473.

6. Points in a cube:

Choose two points uniformly and independently within a unit cube. The distance between these points has mean 0.66171 and standard deviation 0.06214.

7. Points in an n -dimensional cube:

Select two points uniformly and independently within a unit n -dimensional cube. The expected distance between the points, $\Delta(n)$, is

| | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| $\Delta(1) = \frac{1}{3}$ | $\Delta(5) \approx 0.87852$ |
| $\Delta(2) \approx 0.54141$ | $\Delta(6) \approx 0.96895$ |
| $\Delta(3) \approx 0.66171$ | $\Delta(7) \approx 1.05159$ |
| $\Delta(4) \approx 0.77766$ | $\Delta(8) \approx 1.12817$ |

8. Points on a circle:

Select three points uniformly and independently on a unit circle. These points determine a triangle with area A . The mean and variance of this area are:

$$\begin{aligned} \mu_A &= \frac{3}{2\pi} \approx 0.4775 \\ \sigma_A^2 &= \frac{3(\pi^2 - 6)}{8\pi^2} \approx 0.1470 \end{aligned} \quad (7.1.48)$$

9. Buffon's needle problem:

A needle of length L is placed at random on a plane on which are ruled parallel lines a distance D apart. If $\frac{L}{D} < 1$ then only one intersection is possible. The probability P that the needle intersects a line is

$$P = \begin{cases} \frac{2L}{\pi D} & \text{if } 0 < L \leq D, \\ \frac{2L}{\pi D} \left(1 - \sqrt{1 - \left(\frac{D}{L}\right)^2} \right) + \left(1 - \frac{2}{\pi} \sin^{-1} \frac{D}{L} \right) & \text{if } 0 < D \leq L. \end{cases} \quad (7.1.49)$$

7.2 CLASSICAL PROBABILITY PROBLEMS

7.2.1 RAISIN COOKIE PROBLEM

A baker creates enough cookie dough for $C = 1000$ raisin cookies. The number of raisins to be added to the dough, R , is to be determined.

1. If you want to be 99% certain that the r st cookie will have at least one raisin, then $1 - \left(\frac{C-1}{C}\right)^R = 1 - \left(\frac{999}{1000}\right)^R \geq 0.99$, or $R \geq 4603$.
2. If you want to be 99% certain that *every* cookie will have at least one raisin, then $P(C, R) \geq 0.99$, where $P(C, R) = C^{-R} \sum_{i=0}^C \binom{C}{i} (-1)^i (C - i)^R$. Hence $R \geq 11508$.

7.2.2 GAMBLER'S RUIN PROBLEM

A gambler starts with z dollars. For each turn, with probability p he wins one dollar, with probability q he loses one dollar (with $p + q = 1$). Gambling stops when he has either lost z dollars ("is ruined", the gambler holds zero dollars), or won $a - z$ dollars ("gambler's success", the gambler holds a dollars).

If q_z denotes the probability of stopping with zero dollars ("is ruined") then

$$q_z = \begin{cases} \frac{(q/p)^a - (q/p)^z}{(q/p)^a - 1} & \text{if } p \neq q, \\ 1 - \frac{z}{a} & \text{if } p = q = \frac{1}{2}. \end{cases} \quad (7.2.1)$$

For example:

| | | | | | |
|----------------|-----|-----|------|-------|-------|
| | p | q | z | a | q_z |
| fair game | 0.5 | 0.5 | 9 | 10 | .900 |
| | 0.5 | 0.5 | 90 | 100 | .900 |
| | 0.5 | 0.5 | 900 | 1000 | .900 |
| | 0.5 | 0.5 | 9000 | 10000 | .900 |
| biased game | 0.4 | 0.6 | 90 | 100 | .017 |
| | 0.4 | 0.6 | 90 | 99 | .667 |

7.2.3 CARD GAMES

If the odds are $a:b$ against, the probability of the event is $p = \frac{b}{a+b}$; If the odds are $a:b$ for, the probability of the event is $p = \frac{a}{a+b}$.

1. Poker hands

The number of distinct 5-card poker hands is $\binom{52}{5} = 2,598,960$.

| Hand | Probability | Odds against |
|-----------------|--|--------------|
| royal ush | $1.54 \times 10^{-6} = 4/\binom{52}{5}$ | 649,739:1 |
| straight ush | $1.39 \times 10^{-5} = 36/\binom{52}{5}$ | 72,192:1 |
| four of a kind | $2.40 \times 10^{-4} = 624/\binom{52}{5}$ | 4,164:1 |
| full house | $1.44 \times 10^{-3} = 3744/\binom{52}{5}$ | 693:1 |
| ush | 1.97×10^{-3} | 508:1 |
| straight | 3.92×10^{-3} | 254:1 |
| three of a kind | 0.0211 | 46:1 |
| two pair | 0.0475 | 20:1 |
| one pair | $0.423 = \frac{352}{833}$ | 1.37:1 |

2. Bridge hands

The number of distinct 13-card bridge hands is $\binom{52}{13} = 635,013,559,600$.

In bridge, the *honors* are the ten, jack, queen, king, and ace of each of the four suits. Obtaining the three top cards (ace, king, and queen) of three suits and the ace, king, queen, and jack of the remaining suit is called *13 top honors*. Obtaining all cards of the same suit is called a *13-card suit*. Obtaining 12 cards of the same suit with ace high and the 13th card not an ace is called a *12-card suit, ace high*. Obtaining no honors is called a *Yarborough*.

| Hand | Probability | Odds against |
|------------------------|---|-------------------|
| 13 top honors | $6.30 \times 10^{-12} = 4/\binom{52}{13}$ | 158,753,389,899:1 |
| 13-card suit | $6.30 \times 10^{-12} = 4/\binom{52}{13}$ | 158,753,389,899:1 |
| 12-card suit, ace high | 2.72×10^{-9} | 367,484,698:1 |
| Yarborough | 5.47×10^{-4} | 1,827:1 |
| four aces | 2.64×10^{-3} | 378:1 |
| nine honors | 9.51×10^{-3} | 104:1 |

7.2.4 DISTRIBUTION OF DICE SUMS

A common die is a cube with six faces; the faces are numbered one through six. It is usually unbiased, all faces are equally likely.

When rolling two dice, the probability distribution of the sum is

$$\text{Prob}(\text{sum of } s) = \frac{6 - |s - 7|}{36} \quad \text{for } 2 \leq s \leq 12. \quad (7.2.2)$$

When rolling three dice, the probability distribution of the sum is

$$\text{Prob}(\text{sum of } s) = \frac{1}{216} \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2}(s-1)(s-2) & \text{for } 3 \leq s \leq 8 \\ -s^2 + 21s - 83 & \text{for } 9 \leq s \leq 14 \\ \frac{1}{2}(19-s)(20-s) & \text{for } 15 \leq s \leq 18 \end{cases} \quad (7.2.3)$$

For two dice, the most common roll is a 7 (probability $\frac{1}{6}$). For three dice, the most common rolls are 10 and 11 (probability $\frac{1}{8}$ each). For four dice, the most common roll is a 14 (probability $\frac{73}{648}$).

7.2.5 BIRTHDAY PROBLEM

The probability that n people have different birthdays (neglecting February 29th) is

$$q_n = \left(\frac{364}{365}\right) \cdot \left(\frac{363}{365}\right) \cdots \left(\frac{366-n}{365}\right). \quad (7.2.4)$$

Let $p_n = 1 - q_n$. For 23 independent people the probability of at least two people having the same birthday is more than half ($p_{23} = 1 - q_{23} > 1/2$).

| | | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| n | 10 | 20 | 23 | 30 | 40 | 50 |
| p_n | 0.117 | 0.411 | 0.507 | 0.706 | 0.891 | 0.970 |

That is, the number of people needed to have a 50% chance of two people having the same birthday is 23. The number of people needed to have a 50% chance of three people having the same birthday is 88. For four, five, and six people having the same birthday the number of people necessary is 187, 313, and 460.

The number of people needed so that there is a 50% chance that two people have a birthday within one day of each other is 14. In general, in an n -day year the probability that p people all have birthdays at least k days apart (so $k = 1$ is the original birthday problem) is

$$\text{probability} = \binom{n - p(k-1) - 1}{p-1} \frac{(p-1)!}{n^{p-1}}. \quad (7.2.5)$$

7.3 PROBABILITY DISTRIBUTIONS

7.3.1 DISCRETE DISTRIBUTIONS

1. *Discrete uniform distribution:* If the random variable X has a probability density function given by

$$P(X = x) = f(x) = \frac{1}{n}, \quad \text{for } x = x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n, \quad (7.3.1)$$

then the variable X is said to possess a discrete uniform probability distribution.

Properties: When $x_i = i$ for $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ then

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Mean} = \mu &= \frac{n+1}{2}, \\ \text{Variance} = \sigma^2 &= \frac{n^2-1}{12}, \\ \text{Standard deviation} = \sigma &= \sqrt{\frac{n^2-1}{12}}, \\ \text{Moment generating function} = G(t) &= \frac{e^t(1-e^{nt})}{n(1-e^t)}. \end{aligned} \quad (7.3.2)$$

2. *Binomial distribution:* If the random variable X has a probability density function given by

$$P(X = x) = f(x) = \binom{n}{x} \theta^x (1-\theta)^{n-x}, \quad \text{for } x = 0, 1, \dots, n, \quad (7.3.3)$$

then the variable X is said to possess a binomial distribution. Note that $f(x)$ is the general term in the expansion of $[\theta + (1-\theta)]^n$.

Properties:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Mean} = \mu &= n\theta, \\ \text{Variance} = \sigma^2 &= n\theta(1-\theta), \\ \text{Standard deviation} = \sigma &= \sqrt{n\theta(1-\theta)}, \\ \text{Moment generating function} = G(t) &= [\theta e^t + (1-\theta)]^n. \end{aligned} \quad (7.3.4)$$

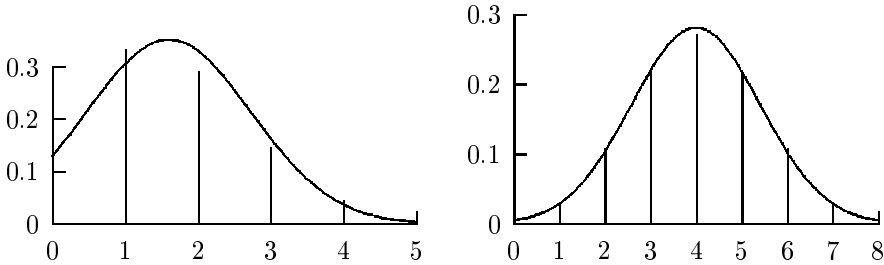
As $n \rightarrow \infty$ the binomial distribution approximates a normal distribution with a mean of $n\theta$ and variance of $n\theta(1-\theta)$; see [Figure 7.1](#).

3. *Geometric distribution:* If the random variable X has a probability density function given by

$$P(X = x) = f(x) = \theta(1-\theta)^{x-1} \quad \text{for } x = 1, 2, 3, \dots, \quad (7.3.5)$$

FIGURE 7.1

Comparison of $P(x)$ for a binomial distribution and the approximating normal distribution. Left curve is for $(n = 8, \theta = 0.2)$, right curve is for $(n = 8, \theta = 0.4)$; horizontal axis is x .



then the variable X is said to possess a geometric distribution.

Properties:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Mean} &= \mu = \frac{1}{\theta}, \\ \text{Variance} &= \sigma^2 = \frac{1 - \theta}{\theta^2}, \\ \text{Standard deviation} &= \sigma = \sqrt{\frac{1 - \theta}{\theta^2}}, \\ \text{Moment generating function} &= G(t) = \frac{\theta e^t}{1 - e^t(1 - \theta)}. \end{aligned} \tag{7.3.6}$$

4. *Hypergeometric distribution:* If the random variable X has a probability density function given by

$$P(X = x) = f(x) = \frac{\binom{k}{x} \binom{N-k}{n-x}}{\binom{N}{n}} \quad \text{for } x = 1, 2, 3, \dots, \min(n, k) \tag{7.3.7}$$

then the variable X is said to possess a hypergeometric distribution.

Properties:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Mean} &= \mu = \frac{kn}{N}, \\ \text{Variance} &= \sigma^2 = \frac{k(N-k)n(N-n)}{N^2(N-1)}, \\ \text{Standard deviation} &= \sigma = \sqrt{\frac{k(N-k)n(N-n)}{N^2(N-1)}}. \end{aligned} \tag{7.3.8}$$

5. *Negative binomial distribution*: If the random variable X has a probability density function given by

$$P(X = x) = f(x) = \binom{x + r - 1}{r - 1} \theta^r (1 - \theta)^x \quad \text{for } x = 0, 1, 2, \dots, \quad (7.3.9)$$

then the variable X is said to possess a negative binomial distribution (also known as a *Pascal* or *Polya distribution*).

Properties:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Mean} = \mu &= \frac{r}{\theta} - r, \\ \text{Variance} = \sigma^2 &= \frac{r}{\theta} \left(\frac{1}{\theta} - 1 \right) = \frac{r(1 - \theta)}{\theta^2}, \\ \text{Standard deviation} &= \sqrt{\frac{r}{\theta} \left(\frac{1}{\theta} - 1 \right)} = \sqrt{\frac{r(1 - \theta)}{\theta^2}}, \end{aligned} \quad (7.3.10)$$

$$\text{Moment generating function} = G(t) = \theta^r [1 - (1 - \theta)e^t]^{-r}.$$

6. *Poisson distribution*: If the random variable X has a probability density function given by

$$P(X = x) = f(x) = \frac{e^{-\lambda} \lambda^x}{x!} \quad \text{for } x = 0, 1, 2, \dots, \quad (7.3.11)$$

with $\lambda > 0$, then the variable X is said to possess a Poisson distribution.

Properties:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Mean} = \mu &= \lambda, \\ \text{Variance} = \sigma^2 &= \lambda, \\ \text{Standard deviation} = \sigma &= \sqrt{\lambda}, \\ \text{Moment generating function} = G(t) &= e^{\lambda(e^t - 1)}. \end{aligned} \quad (7.3.12)$$

7. *Multinomial distribution*: If a set of random variables X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n has a probability function given by

$$\begin{aligned} P(X_1 = x_1, X_2 = x_2, \dots, X_n = x_n) &= f(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) \\ &= N! \prod_{i=1}^n \frac{\theta_i^{x_i}}{x_i!} \end{aligned} \quad (7.3.13)$$

where the $\{x_i\}$ are positive integers, each $\theta_i > 0$, and

$$\sum_{i=1}^n \theta_i = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad \sum_{i=1}^n x_i = N, \quad (7.3.14)$$

then the joint distribution of X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n is called the multinomial distribution. Note that $f(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$ is a term in the expansion of $(\theta_1 + \theta_2 + \dots + \theta_n)^N$.

Properties:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Mean of } X_i &= \mu_i = N\theta_i, \\ \text{Variance of } X_i &= \sigma_i^2 = N\theta_i(1 - \theta_i), \\ \text{Covariance of } X_i \text{ and } X_j &= \sigma_{ij}^2 = -N\theta_i\theta_j, \\ \text{Joint moment generating function} &= (\theta_1 e^{t_1} + \cdots + \theta_n e^{t_n})^N.\end{aligned}\tag{7.3.15}$$

7.3.2 CONTINUOUS DISTRIBUTIONS

1. *Uniform distribution:* If the random variable X has a density function of the form

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\beta - \alpha}, \quad \text{for } \alpha < x < \beta,\tag{7.3.16}$$

then the variable X is said to possess a uniform distribution.

Properties:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Mean} = \mu &= \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2}, \\ \text{Variance} = \sigma^2 &= \frac{(\beta - \alpha)^2}{12}, \\ \text{Standard deviation} = \sigma &= \sqrt{\frac{(\beta - \alpha)^2}{12}}, \\ \text{Moment generating function} = G(t) &= \frac{e^{\beta t} - e^{\alpha t}}{(\beta - \alpha)t} \\ &= \frac{2}{(\beta - \alpha)t} \sinh \left[\frac{(\beta - \alpha)t}{2} \right] e^{(\alpha + \beta)t/2}.\end{aligned}\tag{7.3.17}$$

2. *Normal distribution:* If the random variable X has a density function of the form

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}\sigma} \exp \left(-\frac{(x - \mu)^2}{2\sigma^2} \right), \quad \text{for } -\infty < x < \infty,\tag{7.3.18}$$

then the variable X is said to possess a normal distribution.

Properties:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Mean} &= \mu, \\ \text{Variance} &= \sigma^2, \\ \text{Standard deviation} &= \sigma, \\ \text{Moment generating function} = G(t) &= \exp \left(\mu t + \frac{\sigma^2 t^2}{2} \right).\end{aligned}\tag{7.3.19}$$

- (a) Set $y = \frac{x-\mu}{\sigma}$ to obtain a standard normal distribution.
 (b) The cumulative distribution function is

$$F(x) = \Phi(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}\sigma} \int_{-\infty}^x \exp\left(-\frac{(t-\mu)^2}{2\sigma^2}\right) dt.$$

3. Multi-dimensional normal distribution:

The random vector \mathbf{X} is said to be a *multivariate normal* (or a multi-dimensional normal) if and only if the linear combination $\mathbf{a}^T \mathbf{X}$ is normal for all vectors \mathbf{a} . If the mean of \mathbf{X} is μ , and if the second moment matrix $R = E[(\mathbf{X} - \mu)(\mathbf{X} - \mu)^T]$ is non-singular, the density function of \mathbf{X} is

$$f(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{n/2} \sqrt{\det R}} \exp\left[-\frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{x} - \mu)^T R^{-1}(\mathbf{x} - \mu)\right]. \quad (7.3.20)$$

Sometimes integrals of the form $I_k = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \cdots \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (\mathbf{x}^T M \mathbf{x})^k f(\mathbf{x}) d\mathbf{x}$ are desired. Denoting $a_k = \text{tr}(M R)^k$, we find:

$$\begin{aligned} I_0 &= 1, \\ I_1 &= a_1, \\ I_2 &= a_1^2 + 2a_2, \\ I_3 &= a_1^3 + 6a_1 a_2 + 8a_3, \\ I_4 &= a_1^4 + 12a_1^2 a_2 + 32a_1 a_3 + 12a_2^2 + 48a_4. \end{aligned} \quad (7.3.21)$$

4. Gamma distribution: If the random variable X has a density function of the form

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\Gamma(1 + \alpha)\beta^{1+\alpha}} x^\alpha e^{-x/\beta}, \quad \text{for } 0 < x < \infty, \quad (7.3.22)$$

with $\alpha > -1$ and $\beta > 0$, then the variable X is said to possess a gamma distribution.

Properties:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Mean} &= \mu = \beta(1 + \alpha), \\ \text{Variance} &= \sigma^2 = \beta^2(1 + \alpha), \\ \text{Standard deviation} &= \sigma = \beta\sqrt{1 + \alpha} \\ \text{Moment generating function} &= G(t) = (1 - \beta t)^{-1-\alpha}, \quad \text{for } t < \beta^{-1}. \end{aligned} \quad (7.3.23)$$

5. Exponential distribution: If the random variable X has a density function of the form

$$f(x) = \frac{e^{-x/\theta}}{\theta}, \quad \text{for } 0 < x < \infty, \quad (7.3.24)$$

where $\theta > 0$, then the variable X is said to possess an exponential distribution.

Properties:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Mean} &= \mu = \theta, \\ \text{Variance} &= \sigma^2 = \theta^2, \\ \text{Standard deviation} &= \sigma = \theta, \\ \text{Moment generating function} &= G(t) = (1 - \theta t)^{-1}.\end{aligned}\tag{7.3.25}$$

6. *Beta distribution:* If the random variable X has a density function of the form

$$f(x) = B(1 + \alpha, 1 + \beta)x^\alpha(1 - x)^\beta = \frac{\Gamma(\alpha + \beta + 2)}{\Gamma(1 + \alpha)\Gamma(1 + \beta)}x^\alpha(1 - x)^\beta,\tag{7.3.26}$$

for $0 < x < 1$, where $\alpha > -1$ and $\beta > -1$, then the variable X is said to possess a beta distribution.

Properties:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Mean} &= \mu = \frac{1 + \alpha}{2 + \alpha + \beta}, \\ \text{Variance} &= \sigma^2 = \frac{(1 + \alpha)(1 + \beta)}{(2 + \alpha + \beta)^2(3 + \alpha + \beta)}, \\ r^{\text{th}} \text{ moment about the origin} &= \nu_r = \frac{\Gamma(2 + \alpha + \beta)\Gamma(1 + \alpha + r)}{\Gamma(2 + \alpha + \beta + r)\Gamma(1 + \alpha)}.\end{aligned}\tag{7.3.27}$$

7. *Chi-square distribution:* If the random variable X has a density function of the form

$$f(x) = \frac{x^{(n-2)/2}e^{-x/2}}{2^{n/2}\Gamma(n/2)} \quad \text{for } 0 < x < \infty\tag{7.3.28}$$

then the variable X is said to possess a chi-square (χ^2) distribution with n degrees of freedom.

Properties:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Mean} &= \mu = n, \\ \text{Variance} &= \sigma^2 = 2n, \\ \text{Standard deviation} &= \sigma = \sqrt{2n}.\end{aligned}\tag{7.3.29}$$

- (a) If Y_1, Y_2, \dots, Y_n are independent and identically distributed normal random variables with a mean of 0 and a variance of 1, then $\chi^2 = \sum_{i=1}^n Y_i^2$ is distributed as chi-square with n degrees of freedom.
- (b) If $\chi_1^2, \chi_2^2, \dots, \chi_k^2$ are independent random variables and have chi-square distributions with n_1, n_2, \dots, n_k degrees of freedom, then $\sum_{i=1}^k \chi_i^2$ has a chi-squared distribution with $n = \sum_{i=1}^k n_i$ degrees of freedom.

8. *Snedecor's F-distribution*: If the random variable X has a density function of the form

$$f(x) = \frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{n+m}{2}\right) \left(\frac{m}{n}\right)^{m/2} x^{(m-2)/2}}{\Gamma\left(\frac{m}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) \left(1 + \frac{m}{n}x\right)^{(n+m)/2}}, \quad \text{for } 0 < x < \infty, \quad (7.3.30)$$

then the variable X is said to possess a F -distribution with m and n degrees of freedom.

Properties:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Mean} = \mu &= \frac{n}{n-2}, & \text{for } n > 2, \\ \text{Variance} &= \frac{2n^2(m+n-2)}{m(n-2)^2(n-4)}, & \text{for } n > 4. \end{aligned} \quad (7.3.31)$$

- (a) The transformation $w = \frac{mx/n}{1 + \frac{mx}{n}}$ transforms the F -density to the beta density.
- (b) If the random variable X has a χ^2 -distribution with m degrees of freedom, the random variable Y has a χ^2 -distribution with n degrees of freedom, and X and Y are independent, then $F = \frac{X/m}{Y/n}$ is distributed as an F -distribution with m and n degrees of freedom.

9. *Student's t-distribution*: If the random variable X has a density function of the form

$$f(x) = \frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{n+1}{2}\right)}{\sqrt{n\pi}\Gamma\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) \left(1 + \frac{x^2}{n}\right)^{(n+1)/2}}, \quad \text{for } -\infty < x < \infty. \quad (7.3.32)$$

then the variable X is said to possess a t -distribution with n degrees of freedom.

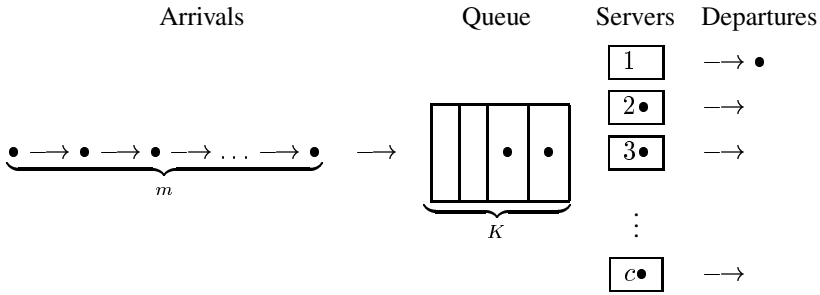
Properties:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Mean} = \mu &= 0, \\ \text{Variance} = \sigma^2 &= \frac{n}{n-2}, & \text{for } n > 2. \end{aligned} \quad (7.3.33)$$

- (a) If the random variable X is normally distributed with mean 0 and variance σ^2 , and if Y^2/σ^2 has a χ^2 distribution with n degrees of freedom, and if X and Y are independent, then $t = \frac{X\sqrt{n}}{Y}$ is distributed as a t -distribution with n degrees of freedom.

FIGURE 7.2

Conceptual layout of a queue.



7.4 QUEUING THEORY

A queue is represented as $A/B/c/K/m/Z$ where (see Figure 7.2):

1. A and B represent the interarrival times and service times:
 - GI general independent interarrival time,
 - G general service time distribution,
 - H_k k -stage hyperexponential interarrival or service time distribution,
 - E_k Erlang- k interarrival or service time distribution,
 - M exponential interarrival or service time distribution,
 - D deterministic (constant) interarrival or service time distribution.
2. c is the number of identical servers.
3. K is the system capacity.
4. m is the number in the source.
5. Z is the queue discipline:
 - FCFS** first come, first served (also known as FIFO: “first in, first out”),
 - LIFO** last in, first out,
 - RSS** random,
 - PRI** priority service.

When not all variables are present, the trailing ones have the default values, $K = \infty$, $m = \infty$, and Z is FIFO. Note that the m and Z are rarely used.

7.4.1 VARIABLES

1. Proportions
 - (a) a_n : proportion of customers that find n customers already in the system when they arrive.
 - (b) d_n : proportion of customers leaving behind n customers in the system.

(c) p_n : proportion of time the system contains n customers.

2. Intrinsic queue parameters

- (a) λ : average arrival rate of customers to the system (number per unit time).
- (b) μ : average service rate per server (number per unit time), $\mu = 1/E[T_s]$.
- (c) u : traffic intensity, $u = \lambda/\mu$.
- (d) ρ : server utilization, the probability that any particular server is busy,
 $\rho = u/c = (\lambda/\mu)/c$.

3. Derived queue parameters

- (a) L : average number of customers in the system.
- (b) L_Q : average number of customers in the queue.
- (c) N : number in system.
- (d) W : average time for customer in system.
- (e) W_Q : average time for customer in the queue.
- (f) T_s : service time.

4. Probability functions

- (a) $f_s(x)$: probability density function of customer's service time.
- (b) $f_w(x)$: probability density function of customer's time in system.
- (c) $\pi(z)$: probability generating function of p_n : $\pi_n = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} p_n z^n$.
- (d) $\pi_Q(z)$: probability generating function of the number in the queue.
- (e) $\alpha(s)$: Laplace Transform of $f_w(x)$: $\alpha(s) = \int_0^{\infty} f_w(x) e^{-xs} dx$.
- (f) $\alpha_T(s)$: Laplace Transform of the service time.

7.4.2 THEOREMS

1. Little's law: $L = \lambda W$ and $L_Q = \lambda W_Q$.
2. If the arrivals have a Poisson distribution: $p_n = a_n$.
3. If customers arrive one at a time and are served one at a time: $a_n = d_n$.
4. For an $M/M/1$ queue with $\rho < 1$,
 - (a) $p_n = (1 - \rho)\rho^n$,
 - (b) $L = \rho/(1 - \rho)$,
 - (c) $L_Q = \rho^2/(1 - \rho)$,
 - (d) $W = 1/(\mu - \lambda)$,
 - (e) $W_Q = \rho/(\mu - \lambda)$,
 - (f) $\pi(z) = (1 - \rho)/(1 - z\rho)$,
 - (g) $\alpha(s) = (\lambda - \mu)/(\lambda - \mu - s)$.

5. For an $M/M/c$ queue with $\rho < 1$ (so that $\mu_n = n\mu$ for $n = 1, 2, \dots, c$ and $\mu_n = c\mu$ for $n > c$),

$$(a) p_0 = \left[\frac{u^c}{c!(1-\rho)} + \sum_{n=0}^{c-1} \frac{u^n}{n!} \right]^{-1},$$

$$(b) p_n = \begin{cases} p_0 u^n / n! & \text{for } n = 0, 1, \dots, c, \\ p_0 u^n / c! c^{n-c} & \text{for } n > c, \end{cases}$$

$$(c) L_Q = p_0 u^c \rho / c! (1-\rho)^2,$$

$$(d) W_Q = L_Q / \lambda,$$

$$(e) W = W_Q + 1/\mu,$$

$$(f) L = \lambda W.$$

6. *Pollaczek–Khinchine formula*: For an $M/G/1$ queue with $\rho < 1$ and $E[T_s^2] < \infty$

$$(a) L = L_Q + \rho,$$

$$(b) L = \lambda W,$$

$$(c) L_Q = \frac{\lambda^2 E[T_s^2]}{2(1-\rho)},$$

$$(d) L_Q = \lambda W_Q,$$

$$(e) \pi(z) = \pi_Q(z) \alpha_T (\lambda - \lambda z),$$

$$(f) \pi_Q(z) = (1-\rho)(1-z) / (\alpha(\lambda - \lambda z) - z).$$

7. For an $M/G/\infty$ queue

$$(a) p_n = e^{-u} u^n / n!,$$

$$(b) \pi(z) = \exp(-(1-z)u).$$

8. *Erlang B formula*: For an $M/G/c/c$ queue, $p_c = \frac{u^c}{c!} \left(\sum_{k=0}^c \frac{u^k}{k!} \right)^{-1}$.

9. *Distributional form of Little's law*: For any single server system for which: (i) Arrivals are Poisson at rate λ , (ii) all arriving customers enter the system and remain in the system until served (i.e., there is no balking or reneging), (iii) the customers leave the system one at a time in order of arrival, (iv) for any time t , the arrival process after time t and the time in the system for any customer arriving before t are independent, then (here L and W do not denote averages)

$$(a) \pi(z) = \alpha(\lambda(1-z)),$$

$$(b) E[L^n] = \sum_{k=1}^n S(n, k) E[(\lambda W)^k]$$

where $S(n, k)$ is Stirling number of the second kind. For example:

- i. $E[L] = \lambda E[W]$ (*Little's law*),
- ii. $E[L^2] = E[(\lambda W)^2] + E[\lambda W]$.

7.5 MARKOV CHAINS

A *discrete parameter stochastic process* is a collection of random variables $\{X(t), t = 0, 1, 2, \dots\}$. The values of $X(t)$ are called the *states* of the process. The collection of states is called the *state space*. The values of t usually represent points in time. The number of states is either finite or countably infinite. A discrete parameter stochastic process is called a *Markov chain* if, for any set of n time points $t_1 < t_2 < \dots < t_n$, the conditional distribution of $X(t_n)$ given values for $X(t_1), X(t_2), \dots, X(t_{n-1})$ depends only on $X(t_{n-1})$. It is expressed by

$$P[X(t_n) \leq x_n \mid X(t_1) = x_1, \dots, X(t_{n-1}) = x_{n-1}] = P[X(t_n) \leq x_n \mid X(t_{n-1}) = x_{n-1}]. \quad (7.5.1)$$

A Markov chain is said to be *stationary* if the value of the conditional probability $P[X(t_{n+1}) = x_{n+1} \mid X(t_n) = x_n]$ is independent of n . This discussion will be restricted to stationary Markov chains.

7.5.1 TRANSITION FUNCTION AND MATRIX

7.5.1.1 Transition function

Let x and y be states and let $\{t_n\}$ be time points in $T = \{0, 1, 2, \dots\}$. The *transition function*, $P(x, y)$, is defined by

$$P(x, y) = P_{n, n+1}(x, y) = P[X(t_{n+1}) = y \mid X(t_n) = x], \quad t_n, t_{n+1} \in T. \quad (7.5.2)$$

$P(x, y)$ is the probability that a Markov chain in state x at time t_n will be in state y at time t_{n+1} . Some properties of the transition function are that $P(x, y) \geq 0$ and $\sum_y P(x, y) = 1$. The values of $P(x, y)$ are commonly called the *one-step transition probabilities*.

The function $\pi_0(x) = P(X(0) = x)$, with $\pi_0(x) \geq 0$ and $\sum_x \pi_0(x) = 1$, is called the *initial distribution* of the Markov chain. It is the probability distribution when the chain is started. Thus,

$$P[X(0) = x_0, X(1) = x_1, \dots, X(n) = x_n] = \pi_0(x_0)P_{0,1}(x_0, x_1)P_{1,2}(x_1, x_2) \cdots P_{n-1,n}(x_{n-1}, x_n). \quad (7.5.3)$$

7.5.1.2 Transition matrix

A convenient way to summarize the transition function of a Markov chain is by using the *one-step transition matrix*. It is defined as

$$\mathbf{P} = \begin{bmatrix} P(0,0) & P(0,1) & \dots & P(0,n) & \dots \\ P(1,0) & P(1,1) & \dots & P(1,n) & \dots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \\ P(n,0) & P(n,1) & \dots & P(n,n) & \dots \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots & \end{bmatrix}. \quad (7.5.4)$$

Define the n -step transition matrix by $\mathbf{P}^{(n)}$ as the matrix with entries

$$P^{(n)}(x, y) = P[X(t_{m+n}) = y \mid X(t_m) = x]. \quad (7.5.5)$$

This can be written in terms of the one-step transition matrix as $\mathbf{P}^{(n)} = \mathbf{P}^n$.

Suppose the state space is finite. The one-step transition matrix is said to be *regular* if, for some positive power m , all of the elements of \mathbf{P}^m are strictly positive.

THEOREM 7.5.1 (Chapman–Kolmogorov equation)

Let $P(x, y)$ be the one-step transition function of a Markov chain and define $P^{(0)}(x, y) = 1$, if $x = y$, and 0, otherwise. Then, for any pair of non-negative integers, s and t , such that $s + t = n$,

$$P^{(n)}(x, y) = \sum_z P^{(s)}(x, z)P^{(t)}(z, y). \quad (7.5.6)$$

7.5.2 RECURRENCE

Define the probability that a Markov chain starting in state x returns to state x for the first time after n steps by

$$f^n(x, x) = P[X(t_n) = x, X(t_{n-1}) \neq x, \dots, X(t_1) \neq x \mid X(t_0) = x]. \quad (7.5.7)$$

It follows that $P^n(x, x) = \sum_{k=1}^n f^k(x, x)P^{n-k}(x, x)$. A state x is said to be *recurrent* if $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} f^n(x, x) = 1$. This means that a state x is recurrent if, after starting in x , the probability of returning to it after some finite length of time is one. A state which is not recurrent is said to be *transient*.

THEOREM 7.5.2

A state x of a Markov chain is recurrent if and only if $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} P^n(x, x) = \infty$.

Two states, x and y , are said to *communicate* if, for some $n > 0$, $P^n(x, y) > 0$. This theorem implies that, if x is a recurrent state and x communicates with y , y is also a recurrent state. A Markov chain is said to be *irreducible* if every state communicates with every other state and with itself.

Let x be a recurrent state and define T_x the (*return time*) as the number of stages for a Markov chain to return to state x , having begun there. A recurrent state x is said to be *null recurrent* if $E[T_x] = \infty$. A recurrent state that is not null recurrent is said to be *positive recurrent*.

7.5.3 STATIONARY DISTRIBUTIONS

Let $\{X(t), t = 0, 1, 2, \dots\}$ be a Markov chain having a one-step transition function $P(x, y)$. A function $\pi(x)$ where each $\pi(x)$ is non-negative, $\sum_x \pi(x)P(x, y) = \pi(y)$, and $\sum_y \pi(y) = 1$, is called a *stationary distribution*. If a Markov chain has a

stationary distribution and $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} P^n(x, y) = \pi(y)$ for every x , then, regardless of the initial distribution, $\pi_0(x)$, the distribution of $X(t_n)$ approaches $\pi(x)$ as n tends to infinity. When this happens, $\pi(x)$ is often referred to as the *steady state distribution*. The following categorizes those Markov chains with stationary distributions.

THEOREM 7.5.3

Let X_P denote the set of positive recurrent states of a Markov chain.

1. If X_P is empty, the chain has no stationary distribution.
2. If X_P is a non-empty irreducible set, the chain has a unique stationary distribution.
3. If X_P is non-empty but not irreducible, the chain has an infinite number of distinct stationary distributions.

The *period* of a state x is denoted by $d(x)$ and is defined as the greatest common divisor of all integers, $n \geq 1$, for which $P^n(x, x) > 0$. If $P^n(x, x) = 0$ for all $n \geq 1$, then define $d(x) = 0$. If each state of a Markov chain has $d(x) = 1$, the chain is said to be *aperiodic*. If each state has period $d > 1$, the chain is said to be *periodic* with period d . The vast majority of Markov chains encountered in practice are aperiodic. An irreducible, positive recurrent, aperiodic Markov chain always possesses a steady-state distribution. An important special case occurs when the state space is finite. Suppose that $X = \{1, 2, \dots, K\}$. Let $\pi_0 = \{\pi_0(1), \pi_0(2), \dots, \pi_0(K)\}$.

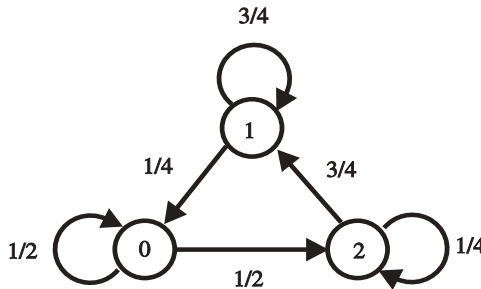
THEOREM 7.5.4

Let P be a regular one-step transition matrix and π_0 be an arbitrary vector of initial probabilities. Then $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \pi_0(x)P^n = \mathbf{y}$, where $\mathbf{y}P = \mathbf{y}$, and $\sum_{i=1}^K \pi_0(y_i) = 1$.

7.5.3.1 Example: A simple three-state Markov chain

A Markov chain having three states $\{0, 1, 2\}$ with a one-step transition matrix of

$$P = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & 0 & \frac{1}{2} \\ \frac{1}{4} & \frac{3}{4} & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{3}{4} & \frac{1}{4} \end{bmatrix} \text{ is diagrammed below.}$$



The one-step transition matrix gives a two-step transition matrix

$$P^{(2)} = P^2 = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{4} & \frac{3}{8} & \frac{3}{8} \\ \frac{5}{16} & \frac{9}{16} & \frac{1}{8} \\ \frac{3}{16} & \frac{3}{4} & \frac{1}{16} \end{bmatrix}. \quad (7.5.8)$$

The one-step transition matrix is regular. This Markov chain is irreducible, and all three states are recurrent. In addition, all three states are positive recurrent. Since all states have period 1, the chain is aperiodic. The unique steady state distribution is $\pi(0) = 3/11$, $\pi(1) = 6/11$, and $\pi(2) = 2/11$.

7.5.4 RANDOM WALKS

Let $\eta(t_1), \eta(t_2), \dots$ be independent random variables having a common density $f(x)$, and let t_1, t_2, \dots be integers. Let X_0 be an integer-valued random variable that is independent of $\eta(t_1), \eta(t_2), \dots$, and $X(t_n) = X_0 + \sum_{i=1}^n \eta(t_i)$. The sequence $\{X(t_i), i = 0, 1, \dots\}$ is called a *random walk*. An important special case is a *simple random walk*. It is defined by

$$P(x, y) = \begin{cases} p, & \text{if } y = x - 1, \\ r, & \text{if } y = x, \\ q, & \text{if } y = x + 1, \end{cases} \quad \text{where } p + q + r = 1, \text{ and } P(0, 0) = p + r. \quad (7.5.9)$$

Here, an object begins at a certain point in a lattice and at each step either stays at that point or moves to a neighboring lattice point.

This one-dimensional random walk can be extended to higher-dimensional lattices. A common case is that an object can only transition to an adjacent lattice point, and all such transitions are equally likely. In this case, with a one- or two-dimensional lattice, if a random walk begins at a lattice point x , then it will return to that lattice point with probability 1. In this case, with a three-dimensional lattice, the probability that it will return to its starting point is only about 0.3405.

7.5.5 EHRENFEST CHAIN

A simple model of gas exchange between two isolated bodies is as follows. Suppose that there are two boxes, Box I and Box II, where Box I contains K molecules numbered $1, 2, \dots, K$ and Box II contains $N - K$ molecules numbered $K + 1, K + 2, \dots, N$. A number is chosen at random from $\{1, 2, \dots, N\}$, and the molecule with that number is transferred from its box to the other one. Let $X(t_n)$ be the number of molecules in Box I after n trials. Then the sequence $\{X(t_n), n = 0, 1, \dots\}$ is a Markov chain with one-stage transition function of

$$P(x, y) = \begin{cases} \frac{x}{N}, & y = x - 1, \\ 1 - \frac{x}{N}, & y = x + 1, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (7.5.10)$$

7.6 RANDOM NUMBER GENERATION

7.6.1 METHODS OF PSEUDORANDOM NUMBER GENERATION

In Monte Carlo applications, and other computational situations where randomness is required, one must appeal to random numbers for assistance. While it has been argued that numbers measured from a physical process known to be random should be used, it has been in nitely more practical to use simple recursions that produce numbers that behave as random in applications and with respect to statistical tests of randomness. These are so-called *pseudorandom numbers* and are produced by a pseudorandom number generator (PRNG). Depending on the application, either integers in some range or floating point numbers in $[0, 1)$ are the desired output from a PRNG. Since most PRNGs use integer recursions, a conversion into integers in a desired range or into a floating point number in $[0, 1)$ is required. If x_n is an integer produced by some PRNG in the range $0 \leq x_n \leq M - 1$, then an integer in the range $0 \leq x_n \leq N - 1$, with $N \leq M$, is given by $y_n = \lfloor \frac{N}{M} x_n \rfloor$. If $N \ll M$, then $y_n = x_n \pmod{N}$ may be used. Alternately, if a floating point value in $[0, 1)$ is desired, let $y_n = x_n/M$.

7.6.1.1 Linear congruential generators

Perhaps the oldest generator still in use is the *linear congruential generator* (LCG). The underlying integer recursion for LCGs is

$$x_n = ax_{n-1} + b \pmod{M}. \tag{7.6.1}$$

Equation (7.6.1) defines a periodic sequence of integers modulo M starting with x_0 , the initial seed. The constants of the recursion are referred to as the *modulus* M , *multiplier* a , and *additive constant* b . If $M = 2^m$, a very efficient implementation is possible. Alternately, there are theoretical reasons why choosing M prime is optimal. Hence, the only moduli that are used in practical implementations are $M = 2^m$ or the prime $M = 2^p - 1$ (i.e., M is a Mersenne prime). With a Mersenne prime or any modulus “close to” 2^p , modular multiplication can be implemented at about twice the computational cost of multiplication modulo 2^p .

Equation (7.6.1) yields a sequence $\{x_n\}$ whose period, denoted $\text{Per}(x_n)$, depends on M , a , and b . The values of the maximal period for the three most common cases used and the conditions required to obtain them are

| a | b | M | $\text{Per}(x_n)$ |
|-----------------------|-----------|-------|-------------------|
| Primitive root of M | Anything | Prime | $M - 1$ |
| 3 or 5 (mod 8) | 0 | 2^m | 2^{m-2} |
| 1 (mod 4) | 1 (mod 2) | 2^m | 2^m |

A major shortcoming of LCGs modulo a power-of-two compared with prime modulus LCGs derives from the following theorem for LCGs:

THEOREM 7.6.1

De ne the following LCG sequence: $x_n = ax_{n-1} + b \pmod{M_1}$. If M_2 divides M_1 then $y_n = x_n \pmod{M_2}$ satis es $y_n = ay_{n-1} + b \pmod{M_2}$.

Theorem 7.6.1 implies that the k least-signi cant bits of any power-of-two modulus LCG with $\text{Per}(x_n) = 2^m = M$ has $\text{Per}(y_n) = 2^k, 0 < k \leq m$. Since a long period is crucial in PRNGs, when these types of LCGs are employed in a manner that makes use of only a few least-signi cant- bits, their quality may be compromised. When M is prime, no such problem arises.

Since LCGs are in such common usage, here is a list of parameter values mentioned in the literature. The Park–Miller LCG is widely considered a minimally acceptable PRNG. Using any values other than those in the following table may result in a “weaker” LCG.

| a | b | M | Source |
|-------|-------|--------------|--------------|
| 7^5 | 0 | $2^{31} - 1$ | Park–Miller |
| 131 | 0 | 2^{35} | Neave |
| 16333 | 25887 | 2^{15} | Oakenfull |
| 3432 | 6789 | 9973 | Oakenfull |
| 171 | 0 | 30269 | Wichman–Hill |

7.6.1.2 Shift-register generators

Another popular method of generating pseudorandom numbers is using binary shift-register sequences to produce pseudorandom bits. A *binary shift-register sequence* (SRS) is de ned by a binary recursion of the type,

$$x_n = x_{n-j_1} \oplus x_{n-j_2} \oplus \dots \oplus x_{n-j_k}, \quad j_1 < j_2 < \dots < j_k = \ell, \quad (7.6.2)$$

where \oplus is the exclusive “or” operation. Note that $x \oplus y \equiv x + y \pmod{2}$. Thus the new bit, x_n , is produced by adding k previously computed bits together modulo 2. The implementation of this recurrence requires keeping the last ℓ bits from the sequence in a shift register, hence the name. The longest possible period is equal to the number of non-zero ℓ -dimensional binary vectors, namely $2^\ell - 1$.

A suf cient condition for achieving $\text{Per}(x_n) = 2^\ell - 1$ is that the characteristic polynomial, corresponding to Equation (7.6.2), be primitive modulo 2. Since primitive trinomials of nearly all degrees of interest have been found, SRSs are usually implemented using two-term recursions of the form,

$$x_n = x_{n-k} \oplus x_{n-\ell}, \quad 0 < k < \ell. \quad (7.6.3)$$

In these two-term recursions, k is the *lag* and ℓ is the register length. Proper choice of the pair (ℓ, k) leads to SRSs with $\text{Per}(x_n) = 2^\ell - 1$. Here is a list with suitable (ℓ, k) pairs:

| Primitive trinomial exponents | | | | | |
|-------------------------------|--------|--------|---------|---------|----------|
| (5,2) | (7,1) | (7,3) | (17,3) | (17,5) | (17,6) |
| (31,3) | (31,6) | (31,7) | (31,13) | (127,1) | (521,32) |

7.6.1.3 Lagged-Fibonacci generators

Another way of producing pseudorandom numbers uses lagged-Fibonacci generators. The term “lagged-Fibonacci” refers to two-term recurrences of the form,

$$x_n = x_{n-k} \diamond x_{n-\ell}, \quad 0 < k < \ell, \quad (7.6.4)$$

where \diamond refers to one of the three common methods of combination: (1) addition modulo 2^m , (2) multiplication modulo 2^m , or (3) bitwise exclusive ‘OR’ing of m -long bit vectors. Combination method (3) can be thought of as a special implementation of a two-term shift-register sequence.

Using combination method (1) leads to *additive lagged-Fibonacci sequences* (ALFSs). If x_n is given by

$$x_n = x_{n-k} + x_{n-\ell} \pmod{2^m}, \quad 0 < k < \ell, \quad (7.6.5)$$

then the maximal period is $\text{Per}(x_n) = (2^\ell - 1)2^{m-1}$.

ALFSs are especially suitable for producing output point deviates using the real-valued recursion $y_n = y_{n-k} + y_{n-\ell} \pmod{1}$. This circumvents the need to convert from integers to output point values and allows output point hardware to be used. One caution with ALFSs is that Theorem 7.6.1 holds, and so the low-order bits have periods that are shorter than the maximal period. However, this is not nearly the problem as in the LCG case. With ALFSs, the j least-significant bits will have period $(2^\ell - 1)2^{j-1}$, so, if ℓ is large, there really is no problem. Note that one can use the table of primitive trinomial exponents to find (ℓ, k) pairs that give maximal period ALFSs.

7.6.1.4 Non-linear generators

A recent development among PRNGs are non-linear integer recurrences. For example, if in Equation (7.6.4) “ \diamond ” referred to multiplication modulo 2^m , then this recurrence would be a *multiplicative lagged-Fibonacci generator* (MLFG), a non-linear generator. The mathematical structure of non-linear generators is qualitatively different than that of linear generators. Thus, their defects and deficiencies are thought to be complementary to their linear counterparts.

The maximal period of a MLFG is $\text{Per}(x_n) = (2^\ell - 1)2^{m-3}$, a factor of 4 shorter than the corresponding ALFS. However, there are benefits to using multiplication as the combining function due to the bit mixing achieved. Because of this, the perceived quality of the MLFG is considered superior to an ALFS with the same lag, ℓ .

We conclude by defining two non-linear generators, the *inversive congruential generators* (ICGs), which were designed as non-linear analogs of the LCG.

1. The *implicit ICG* is defined by the following recurrence that is almost that of an LCG

$$x_n = a\overline{x_{n-1}} + b \pmod{M}. \quad (7.6.6)$$

The difference is that we must also take the multiplicative inverse of x_{n-1} , which is defined by $\overline{x_{n-1}} x_{n-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{M}$, and $\overline{0} = 0$. This recurrence is indeed non-linear, and avoids some of the problems inherent in linear recurrences, such as the fact that linear tuples must lie on hyperplanes.

2. The *explicit ICG* is

$$x_n = \overline{an + b} \pmod{M}. \quad (7.6.7)$$

One drawback of ICGs is the cost of inversion, which is $O(\log_2 M)$ times the cost of multiplication modulo M .

7.6.2 GENERATING NON-UNIFORM RANDOM VARIABLES

Suppose we want deviates from a distribution with probability density function $f(x)$ and distribution function $F(x) = \int_{-\infty}^x f(u) du$. In the following “ y is $U[0, 1]$ ” means y is uniformly distributed on $[0, 1]$.

Two general techniques for converting uniform random variables into those from other distributions are as follows:

1. The *inverse transform method*:

If y is $U[0, 1]$, then the random variable $F^{-1}(y)$ will have its density equal to $f(x)$. (Note that $F^{-1}(y)$ exists since $0 \leq F(x) \leq 1$.)

2. The *acceptance-rejection method*:

Suppose the density can be written as $f(x) = Ch(x)g(x)$ where $h(x)$ is the density of a computable random variable, the function g satisfies $0 < g(x) \leq 1$, and $C^{-1} = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(u)g(u) du$ is a normalization constant. If x is $U[0, 1]$, y has density $h(x)$, and if $x < g(y)$, then x has density $f(x)$. Thus one generates $\{x, y\}$ pairs, rejecting both if $x \geq g(y)$ and returning x if $x < g(y)$.

Examples of the inverse transform method:

1. *Exponential distribution*: The exponential distribution with rate λ has $f(x) = \lambda e^{-\lambda x}$ (for $x \geq 0$) and $F(x) = 1 - e^{-\lambda x}$. Thus $u = F(x)$ can be solved to give $x = F^{-1}(u) = -\lambda^{-1} \ln(1 - u)$. If u is $U[0, 1]$, then so is $1 - u$. Hence $x = -\lambda^{-1} \ln u$ is exponentially distributed with rate λ .
2. *Normal distribution*: Suppose the z_i 's are normally distributed with density function $f(z) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-z^2/2}$. The polar transformation then gives random variables $r = \sqrt{z_1^2 + z_2^2}$ (exponentially distributed with $\lambda = 2$) and $\theta = \tan^{-1}(z_2/z_1)$ (uniformly distributed on $[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}]$). Inverting these relationships results in $z_1 = \sqrt{-2 \ln x_1} \cos 2\pi x_2$ and $z_2 = \sqrt{-2 \ln x_1} \sin 2\pi x_2$; each is normally distributed when x_1 and x_2 are $U[0, 1]$. (This is the *Box-Muller technique*.)

Examples of the rejection method:

1. *Exponential distribution with $\lambda = 1$* :

- (a) Generate random numbers $\{U_i\}_{i=1}^N$ uniformly in $[0, 1]$, stopping at $N = \min\{n \mid U_1 \geq U_2 \geq U_{n-1} < U_n\}$.
- (b) If N is even, accept that run, and go to step (c). If N is odd reject the run, and return to step (a).

- (c) Set X equal to the number of failed runs plus U_1 (the first random number in the successful run).

2. *Normal distribution:*

- (a) Select two random variables (V_1, V_2) from $U[0, 1]$. Form $R = V_1^2 + V_2^2$.
 (b) If $R > 1$, then reject the (V_1, V_2) pair, and select another pair.
 (c) If $R < 1$, then $x = V_1 \sqrt{-2 \frac{\ln R}{R}}$ has a $N(0, 1)$ distribution.

3. *Normal distribution:*

- (a) Select two exponentially distributed random variables with rate 1: (V_1, V_2) .
 (b) If $V_2 \geq (V_1 - 1)^2/2$, then reject the (V_1, V_2) pair, and select another pair.
 (c) Otherwise, V_1 has a $N(0, 1)$ distribution.

4. *Cauchy distribution:* To generate values of X from $f(x) = \frac{1}{\pi(1+x^2)}$ on $-\infty < x < \infty$,

- (a) Generate random numbers U_1, U_2 (uniform on $[0, 1]$), and set $Y_1 = U_1 - \frac{1}{2}, Y_2 = U_2 - \frac{1}{2}$.
 (b) If $Y_1^2 + Y_2^2 \leq \frac{1}{4}$, then return $X = Y_1/Y_2$. Otherwise return to step (a).

To generate values of X from a Cauchy distribution with parameters β and θ , $f(x) = \frac{\beta}{\pi[\beta^2 + (x - \theta)^2]}$, for $-\infty < x < \infty$, construct X as above, and then use $\beta X + \theta$.

7.6.2.1 Discrete random variables

The density function of a discrete random variable that attains finitely many values can be represented as a vector $\mathbf{p} = (p_0, p_1, \dots, p_{n-1}, p_n)$ by defining the probabilities $P(x = j) = p_j$ (for $j = 0, \dots, n$). The distribution function can be defined by the vector $\mathbf{c} = (c_0, c_1, \dots, c_{n-1}, 1)$, where $c_j = \sum_{i=0}^j p_i$. Given this representation of $F(x)$, we can apply the inverse transform by computing x to be $U[0, 1]$, and then finding the index j so that $c_j \leq x < c_{j+1}$. In this case event j will have occurred. Examples:

1. (Binomial distribution) The binomial distribution with n trials of mean p has $p_j = \binom{n}{j} p^j (1-p)^{n-j}$, for $j = 0, \dots, n$.
- (a) As an example, consider the result of flipping a fair coin. In 2 flips, the probability of obtaining $(0, 1, 2)$ heads is $\mathbf{p} = (\frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{4})$. Hence $\mathbf{c} = (\frac{1}{4}, \frac{3}{4}, 1)$. If x (chosen from $U[0, 1]$) turns out to be say, 0.4, then “1 head” is returned (since $\frac{1}{4} \leq 0.4 < \frac{3}{4}$).
- (b) Note that, when n is large, it is costly to compute the density and distribution vectors. When n is large and relatively few binomially distributed pseudorandom numbers are desired, an alternative is to use the normal approximation to the binomial.

(c) Alternately, one can form the sum $\sum_{i=1}^n [u_i + p]$, where each u_i is $U[0, 1)$.

2. (Geometric distribution) To simulate a value from $P(X = i) = p(1 - p)^{i-1}$ for $i \geq 1$, use $X = 1 + \left\lceil \frac{\log U}{\log(1 - p)} \right\rceil$.
3. (Poisson distribution) The Poisson distribution with mean λ has $p_j = \lambda^j e^{-\lambda} / j!$ for $j \geq 0$. The Poisson distribution counts the number of events in a unit time interval if the times are exponentially distributed with rate λ . Thus if the times t_i are exponentially distributed with rate λ , then j will be Poisson distributed with mean λ when $\sum_{i=0}^j t_i \leq 1 \leq \sum_{i=0}^{j+1} t_i$. Since $t_i = -\lambda^{-1} \ln u_i$, where u_i is $U[0, 1)$, the previous equation may be written as $\prod_{i=0}^j u_i \geq e^{-\lambda} \geq \prod_{i=0}^{j+1} u_i$. This allows us to compute Poisson random variables by iteratively computing $P_j = \prod_{i=0}^j u_i$ until $P_j < e^{-\lambda}$. The first such j that makes this inequality true will have the desired distribution.

Random variables can be simulated using the following table (each U and U_i is uniform on the interval $[0, 1)$):

| Distribution | Density | Formula for deviate |
|--------------|---|--------------------------|
| Binomial | $p_j = \binom{n}{j} p^j (1 - p)^{n-j}$ | $\sum_{i=1}^n [U_i + p]$ |
| Cauchy | $f(x) = \frac{\sigma}{\pi(x^2 + \sigma^2)}$ | $\sigma \tan(\pi U)$ |
| Exponential | $f(x) = \lambda e^{-\lambda x}$ | $-\lambda^{-1} \ln U$ |
| Pareto | $f(x) = ab^a / x^{a+1}$ | $b / U^{1/a}$ |
| Rayleigh | $f(x) = x / \sigma e^{-x^2 / 2\sigma^2}$ | $\sigma \sqrt{-\ln U}$ |

7.6.2.2 Testing pseudorandom numbers

The prudent way to check a complicated computation that makes use of pseudorandom numbers is to run it several times with different types of pseudorandom number generators and see if the results appear consistent across the generators. The fact that this is not always possible or practical has led researchers to develop statistical tests of randomness that should be passed by general purpose pseudorandom number generators. Some common tests are the spectral test, the equidistribution test, the serial test, the runs test, the coupon collector test, and the birthday spacing test.

7.7 CONTROL CHARTS AND RELIABILITY

7.7.1 CONTROL CHARTS

Control charts are graphical tools used to assess and maintain the stability of a process. They are used to separate random variation from specific causes. Data measurements are plotted versus time along with upper and lower control limits and a center line. If the process is in control and the underlying distribution is normal, then the control limits represent three standard deviations from the center line (mean).

If all of the data points are contained within the control limits, the process is considered stable and the mean and standard deviations can be reliably calculated. The variations between data points occur from random causes. Data outside the control limits or forming abnormal patterns point to unstable, out-of-control processes.

In the tables, k denotes the number of samples taken, i is an index for the samples ($i = 1 \dots k$), n is the sample size (number of elements in each sample), and R is the range of the values in a sample (maximum element value minus minimum element value). The mean is μ and the standard deviation is σ . Control chart upper and lower control limits are denoted UCL and LCL.

Types of control charts, their statistics, and uses

| Chart | Statistics | Statistical quantity |
|-----------------|---|--|
| | Applications | |
| $\bar{x} - R$ | Gaussian | Average value and range |
| | Charts continuous measurable quantities. Measurements taken on small sample sets. | |
| $\tilde{x} - R$ | Gaussian | Median value and range |
| | Similar to $\bar{x} - R$ chart but fewer calculations needed for plotting. | |
| $x - Rs$ | Gaussian | Individual measured values |
| | Similar to $\bar{x} - R$ chart but single measurements are made. Used when measurements are expensive or dispersion of measured values is small. $Rs = x_i - x_{i-1} $. | |
| pn | Binomial | Number of defective units |
| | Charts number of defective units in sets of fixed size. | |
| p | Binomial | Percent defective |
| | Charts number of defective units in sets of varying size. | |
| c | Poisson | Number of defects |
| | Charts number of flaws in a product of fixed size. | |
| u | Poisson | Defect density (defects per quantity unit) |
| | Charts the defect density on a product of varying size. | |

Types of control charts and limits (“P” stands for parameter)

| Chart | (μ, σ) known? | P | Centerline | UCL | LCL |
|-----------------|---------------------------|-------------|--|---|---|
| $\bar{x} - R$ | No | \bar{x} | $\bar{\bar{x}} = \frac{\sum \bar{x}}{k}$ | $\bar{\bar{x}} + A_2 \bar{R}$ | $\bar{\bar{x}} - A_2 \bar{R}$ |
| $\bar{x} - R$ | No | R | $\bar{R} = \frac{\sum R}{k}$ | $D_4 \bar{R}$ | $D_3 \bar{R}$ |
| $\bar{x} - R$ | Yes | \bar{x} | $\bar{\bar{x}} = \mu$ | $\mu + \frac{3\sigma}{\sqrt{n}}$ | $\mu - \frac{3\sigma}{\sqrt{n}}$ |
| $\bar{x} - R$ | Yes | R | $\bar{R} = d_2 \sigma$ | $D_2 \sigma$ | $D_1 \sigma$ |
| $\tilde{x} - R$ | No | \tilde{x} | $\bar{\tilde{x}} = \frac{\sum \tilde{x}}{k}$ | $\bar{\tilde{x}} + m_3 A_2$ | $\bar{\tilde{x}} - m_3 A_2$ |
| $\tilde{x} - R$ | No | R | $\bar{R} = \frac{\sum R}{k}$ | $D_4 \bar{R}$ | $D_3 \bar{R}$ |
| $x - R_s$ | No | x | $\bar{x} = \frac{\sum x}{k}$ | $\bar{x} + 2.66 \bar{R}_s$ | $\bar{x} - 2.66 \bar{R}_s$ |
| $x - R_s$ | No | R_s | $\bar{R}_s = \frac{\sum R_s}{k}$ | $3.27 \bar{R}_s$ | — |
| pn | No | pn | $\bar{pn} = \frac{\sum pn}{k}$ | $\bar{pn} + \sqrt{\bar{pn}(1 - \bar{p})}$ | $\bar{pn} - \sqrt{\bar{pn}(1 - \bar{p})}$ |
| p | No | p | $\bar{p} = \frac{\sum pn}{\sum n}$ | $\bar{pn} + 3\sqrt{\frac{\bar{p}(1 - \bar{p})}{n}}$ | $\bar{pn} - 3\sqrt{\frac{\bar{p}(1 - \bar{p})}{n}}$ |
| c | No | c | $\bar{c} = \frac{\sum c}{k}$ | $\bar{c} + 3\sqrt{\bar{c}}$ | $\bar{c} - 3\sqrt{\bar{c}}$ |
| u | No | u | $\bar{u} = \frac{\sum c}{\sum n}$ | $\bar{u} + 3\sqrt{\frac{\bar{u}}{n}}$ | $\bar{u} - 3\sqrt{\frac{\bar{u}}{n}}$ |

| Sample size n | A_2 | d_2 | D_1 | D_2 | D_3 | D_4 | m_3 | $m_3 A_2$ |
|-----------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-----------|
| 2 | 1.880 | 1.128 | 0 | 3.686 | — | 3.267 | 1.000 | 1.880 |
| 3 | 1.023 | 1.693 | 0 | 4.358 | — | 2.575 | 1.160 | 1.187 |
| 4 | 0.729 | 2.059 | 0 | 4.698 | — | 2.282 | 1.092 | 0.796 |
| 5 | 0.577 | 2.326 | 0 | 4.918 | — | 2.115 | 1.198 | 0.691 |
| 6 | 0.483 | 2.534 | 0 | 5.078 | — | 2.004 | 1.135 | 0.549 |
| 7 | 0.419 | 2.704 | 0.205 | 5.203 | 0.076 | 1.924 | 1.214 | 0.509 |
| 8 | 0.373 | 2.847 | 0.387 | 5.307 | 0.136 | 1.864 | 1.160 | 0.432 |
| 9 | 0.337 | 2.970 | 0.546 | 5.394 | 0.184 | 1.816 | 1.223 | 0.412 |
| 10 | 0.308 | 3.078 | 0.687 | 5.469 | 0.223 | 1.777 | 1.176 | 0.363 |
| 11 | 0.285 | 3.173 | 0.812 | 5.534 | 0.256 | 1.744 | | |
| 12 | 0.266 | 3.258 | 0.924 | 5.592 | 0.284 | 1.716 | | |
| 13 | 0.249 | 3.336 | 1.026 | 5.646 | 0.308 | 1.692 | | |
| 14 | 0.235 | 3.407 | 1.121 | 5.693 | 0.329 | 1.671 | | |
| 15 | 0.223 | 3.472 | 1.207 | 5.737 | 0.348 | 1.652 | | |
| 16 | 0.212 | 3.532 | 1.285 | 5.779 | 0.364 | 1.636 | | |
| 17 | 0.203 | 3.588 | 1.359 | 5.817 | 0.379 | 1.621 | | |
| 18 | 0.194 | 3.640 | 1.426 | 5.854 | 0.392 | 1.608 | | |
| 19 | 0.187 | 3.689 | 1.490 | 5.888 | 0.404 | 1.596 | | |
| 20 | 0.180 | 3.735 | 1.548 | 5.922 | 0.414 | 1.586 | | |
| 21 | 0.173 | 3.778 | 1.605 | 5.951 | 0.425 | 1.575 | | |
| 22 | 0.167 | 3.819 | 1.659 | 5.979 | 0.434 | 1.566 | | |
| 23 | 0.162 | 3.858 | 1.710 | 6.006 | 0.443 | 1.557 | | |
| 24 | 0.157 | 3.895 | 1.759 | 6.031 | 0.452 | 1.548 | | |
| 25 | 0.153 | 3.931 | 1.806 | 6.056 | 0.459 | 1.541 | | |

Abnormal Distributions of Points in Control Charts

| Abnormality | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Sequence | Seven or more consecutive points on one side of the center line. Denotes the average value has shifted. |
| Bias | Fewer than seven consecutive points on one side of the center line, but most of the points are on that side. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 10 of 11 consecutive points • 12 or more of 14 consecutive points • 14 or more of 17 consecutive points • 16 or more of 20 consecutive points |
| Trend | Seven or more consecutive rising or falling points. |
| Approaching the limit | Two out of three or three or more out of seven consecutive points are more than two-thirds the distance from the center line to a control limit. |
| Periodicity | The data points vary in a regular periodic pattern. |

7.7.2 ACCEPTANCE SAMPLING

| Expression | Meaning |
|-----------------|--|
| AQL | acceptable quality level |
| AOQ | average outgoing quality |
| AOQL | average outgoing quality limit (maximum value of AOQ for varying incoming quality) |
| LTPD | lot tolerance percent defective |
| producer's risk | Type I error (percentage of "good" lots rejected) |
| consumer's risk | Type II error (percentage of "bad" lots accepted) |

Military standard 105 D is a widely used sampling plan. There are three general levels of inspection corresponding to different consumer's risks. (Inspection level II is usually chosen; level I uses smaller sample sizes and level III uses larger sample sizes.) There are also three types of inspections: normal, tightened, and reduced. Tables are available for single, double, and multiple sampling.

To use MIL-STD-105 D for single sampling, determine the sample size code letter from [Figure 7.3](#). Using this sample size code letter find the sample size and the acceptance and rejection numbers from the table on page 654.

EXAMPLE Suppose that MIL-STD-105 D is to be used with incoming lots of 1,000 items, inspection level II is to be used in conjunction with normal inspection, and an AQL of 2.5 percent is desired. How should the inspections be carried out?

1. From [Figure 7.3](#) the sample size code letter is J.
2. From page 654, for column J, the lot size is 80. Using the row labeled 2.5 the acceptance number is 5 and the rejection number is 6.
3. Thus, if a single sample of size 80 (selected randomly from each lot of 1,000 items) contains 5 or fewer defectives then the lot is to be accepted. If it contains 6 or more

FIGURE 7.3

Sample size code letters for MIL-STD-105 D.

| Lot or batch size | | general inspection levels | | |
|-------------------|---------|---------------------------|----|-----|
| | | I | II | III |
| 2 to | 8 | A | A | B |
| 9 to | 15 | A | B | C |
| 16 to | 25 | B | C | D |
| 26 to | 50 | C | D | E |
| 51 to | 90 | C | E | F |
| 91 to | 150 | D | F | G |
| 151 to | 280 | E | G | H |
| 281 to | 500 | F | H | J |
| 501 to | 1,200 | G | J | K |
| 1,201 to | 3,200 | H | K | L |
| 3,201 to | 10,000 | J | L | M |
| 10,001 to | 35,000 | K | M | N |
| 35,001 to | 150,000 | L | N | P |
| 150,001 to | 500,000 | M | P | Q |
| 500,001 and | over | N | Q | R |

defectives, then the lot is to be rejected.

7.7.3 RELIABILITY

1. The *reliability* of a product is the probability that the product will function within specified limits for at least a specified period of time.
2. A *series system* is one in which the entire system will fail if any of its components fail.
3. A *parallel system* is one in which the entire system will fail only if all of its components fail.
4. Let R_i denote the reliability of the i^{th} component.
5. Let R_s denote the reliability of a series system.
6. Let R_p denote the reliability of a parallel system.

The *product law of reliabilities* states

$$R_s = \prod_{i=1}^n R_i. \quad (7.7.1)$$

The *product law of unreliabilities* states

$$R_p = 1 - \prod_{i=1}^n (1 - R_i). \quad (7.7.2)$$

FIGURE 7.4

Master table for single sampling inspection (normal inspection) MIL-STD-105 D.

| AQL | Sample size code letter and sample size | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|---|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| | A | B | C | D | E | F | G | H | J | K | L | M | N | P | Q | R |
| AQL | 2 | 3 | 5 | 8 | 13 | 20 | 32 | 50 | 80 | 125 | 200 | 315 | 500 | 800 | 1250 | 2000 |
| 0.010 | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | 0 1 | ← |
| 0.015 | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | 0 1 | ← | ← |
| 0.025 | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | 0 1 | ← | → | 1 2 |
| 0.040 | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | 0 1 | ← | → | 1 2 | 2 3 |
| 0.065 | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | 0 1 | ← | → | 1 2 | 2 3 | 3 4 | 3 4 |
| 0.10 | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | 0 1 | ← | → | 1 2 | 2 3 | 3 4 | 5 6 |
| 0.15 | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | 0 1 | ← | → | 1 2 | 2 3 | 3 4 | 5 6 | 7 8 |
| 0.25 | → | → | → | → | → | → | → | 0 1 | ← | → | 1 2 | 2 3 | 3 4 | 5 6 | 7 8 | 10 11 |
| 0.40 | → | → | → | → | → | → | 0 1 | ← | → | 1 2 | 2 3 | 3 4 | 5 6 | 7 8 | 10 11 | 14 15 |
| 0.65 | → | → | → | → | → | 0 1 | ← | → | 1 2 | 2 3 | 3 4 | 5 6 | 7 8 | 10 11 | 14 15 | 21 22 |
| 1.0 | → | → | → | → | 0 1 | ← | → | 1 2 | 2 3 | 3 4 | 5 6 | 7 8 | 10 11 | 14 15 | 21 22 | ← |
| 1.5 | → | → | → | 0 1 | ← | → | 1 2 | 2 3 | 3 4 | 5 6 | 7 8 | 10 11 | 14 15 | 21 22 | ← | ← |
| 2.5 | → | → | 0 1 | ← | → | 1 2 | 2 3 | 3 4 | 5 6 | 7 8 | 10 11 | 14 15 | 21 22 | ← | ← | ← |
| 4.0 | → | 0 1 | ← | → | 1 2 | 2 3 | 3 4 | 5 6 | 7 8 | 10 11 | 14 15 | 21 22 | ← | ← | ← | ← |
| 6.5 | 0 1 | ← | → | 1 2 | 2 3 | 3 4 | 5 6 | 7 8 | 10 11 | 14 15 | 21 22 | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← |
| 10 | → | → | 1 2 | 2 3 | 3 4 | 5 6 | 7 8 | 10 11 | 14 15 | 21 22 | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← |
| 15 | → | 1 2 | 2 3 | 3 4 | 5 6 | 7 8 | 10 11 | 14 15 | 21 22 | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← |
| 25 | 1 2 | 2 3 | 3 4 | 5 6 | 7 8 | 10 11 | 14 15 | 21 22 | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← |
| 40 | 2 3 | 3 4 | 5 6 | 7 8 | 10 11 | 14 15 | 21 22 | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← |
| 65 | 3 4 | 5 6 | 7 8 | 10 11 | 14 15 | 21 22 | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← |
| 100 | 5 6 | 7 8 | 10 11 | 14 15 | 21 22 | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← |
| 150 | 7 8 | 10 11 | 14 15 | 21 22 | 30 31 | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← |
| 250 | 10 11 | 14 15 | 21 22 | 30 31 | 44 45 | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← |
| 400 | 14 15 | 21 22 | 30 31 | 44 45 | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← |
| 650 | 21 22 | 30 31 | 44 45 | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← |
| 1000 | 30 31 | 44 45 | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← | ← |

AQL Acceptable quality level (normal inspection).

Ac/Re Accept if Ac or fewer are found, reject if Re or more are found.

← Use rst sampling procedure to left.

→ Use rst sampling procedure to right. If sample size equals, or exceeds, lot or batch size, do 100 percent inspection.

7.7.4 FAILURE TIME DISTRIBUTIONS

1. Let the probability of an item failing between times t and $t + \Delta t$ be $f(t)\Delta t + o(\Delta t)$ as $\Delta t \rightarrow 0$.
2. The probability that an item will fail in the interval from 0 to t is

$$F(t) = \int_0^t f(x) dx. \quad (7.7.3)$$

3. The *reliability function* is the probability that an item survives to time t

$$R(t) = 1 - F(t). \quad (7.7.4)$$

4. The *instantaneous hazard rate*, $Z(t)$, is approximately the probability of failure in the interval from t to $t + \Delta t$, given that the item survived to time t

$$Z(t) = \frac{f(t)}{R(t)} = \frac{f(t)}{1 - F(t)}. \quad (7.7.5)$$

Note the relationships:

$$R(t) = e^{-\int_0^t Z(x) dx} \quad f(t) = Z(t)e^{-\int_0^t Z(x) dx} \quad (7.7.6)$$

EXAMPLE If $f(t) = \alpha\beta t^{\beta-1}e^{-\alpha t^\beta}$ with $\alpha > 0$ and $\beta > 0$, the probability distribution function for a Weibull random variable, then the failure rate is $Z(t) = \alpha\beta t^{\beta-1}$ and $R(t) = e^{-\alpha t^\beta}$. Note that failure rate decreases with time if $\beta < 1$ and increases with time if $\beta > 1$.

7.7.4.1 Use of the exponential distribution

If the hazard rate is a constant $Z(t) = \alpha$ (with $\alpha > 0$) then $f(t) = \alpha e^{-\alpha t}$ (for $t > 0$) which is the probability density function for an exponential random variable. If a failed item is replaced with another having the same constant hazard rate α , then the sequence of occurrence of failures is a Poisson process. The constant $1/\alpha$ is called the *mean time between failures* (MTBF). The reliability function is $R(t) = e^{-\alpha t}$.

If a series system has n components, each with constant hazard rate $\{\alpha_i\}$, then

$$R_s(t) = \exp\left(-\sum_{i=1}^n \alpha_i t\right). \quad (7.7.7)$$

The MTBF for the series system is μ_s

$$\mu_s = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{\mu_1} + \frac{1}{\mu_2} + \cdots + \frac{1}{\mu_n}}. \quad (7.7.8)$$

If a parallel system has n components, each with identical constant hazard rate α , then the MTBF for the parallel system is μ_p

$$\mu_p = \frac{1}{\alpha} \left(1 + \frac{1}{2} + \cdots + \frac{1}{n}\right). \quad (7.7.9)$$

7.8 RISK ANALYSIS AND DECISION RULES

Suppose knowledge of a specific state of a system is desired, and those states can be delineated as $\{\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots\}$. (In a weather application the states might be *rain* and *no rain*.) Decision rules are actions that may be taken based on the state of a system. For example, in making a decision about a trip, there are the decision rules: *stay home*, *go with an umbrella*, and *go without an umbrella*.

A *loss function* is a function that depends on a specific state and a decision rule. For example, consider the following loss function $\ell(\theta, a)$:

Loss function data

| Possible actions | | System state | |
|------------------------|-------|-------------------|----------------------|
| | | θ_1 (rain) | θ_2 (no rain) |
| Stay home | a_1 | 4 | 4 |
| Go without an umbrella | a_2 | 5 | 0 |
| Go with an umbrella | a_3 | 2 | 5 |

It is possible to determine the “best” decision, under different models, even without obtaining any data.

1. Minimax principle

With this principle one should expect and prepare for the worst. That is, for each action it is possible to determine the minimum possible loss that may be incurred. This loss is assigned to each action; the action with the smallest (or minimum) maximum loss is the action chosen.

For the given loss function data the maximum loss is 4 for action a_1 and 5 for either of the actions a_2 or a_3 . Under a minimax principle, the chosen action would be a_1 and the minimax loss would be 4.

2. Minimax principle for mixed actions

It is possible to minimize the maximum loss when the action taken is a statistical distribution, \mathbf{p} , of actions. Assume that action a_i is taken with probability p_i (with $p_1 + p_2 + p_3 = 1$). Then the expected loss $L(\theta_i)$ is given by $L(\theta_i) = E_a[\ell(\theta_i, a)] = p_1\ell(\theta_i, a_1) + p_2\ell(\theta_i, a_2) + p_3\ell(\theta_i, a_3)$. The given loss function data results in the following expected losses:

$$\begin{bmatrix} L(\theta_1) \\ L(\theta_2) \end{bmatrix} = p_1 \begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix} + p_2 \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + p_3 \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (7.8.1)$$

It can be shown that the minimax point of this mixed action case has to satisfy $L(\theta_1) = L(\theta_2)$. Solving equation (7.8.1) with this constraint leads to $5p_2 = 3p_3$. Using this and $p_1 + p_2 + p_3 = 1$ in equation (7.8.1) results in $L(\theta_1) = L(\theta_2) = 4 - 7p_3/5$. This indicates that p_3 should be as large as possible. Hence, the maximum value is obtained by the mixed distribution $\mathbf{p} = (\frac{0}{8}, \frac{3}{8}, \frac{5}{8})$.

Hence, if action a_2 is chosen $3/8$'s of the time, and action a_3 is chosen $5/8$'s of the time, then the minimax loss is equal to $L = 25/8$. This is a smaller loss than using a pure strategy of only choosing a single action.

3. Bayes actions

If the probability distribution of the states $\{\theta_1, \theta_2, \dots\}$ is given by the density function $g(\theta_i)$, then the loss has a known distribution with an expectation of $B(a) = E_i[\ell(\theta_i, a)] = \sum_i g(\theta_i)\ell(\theta_i, a)$. This quantity is known as the *Bayes loss* for action a . A *Bayes action* is an action that minimizes the Bayes loss.

For example, assuming that the prior distribution is given by $g(\theta_1) = 0.4$ and $g(\theta_2) = 0.6$, then $B(a_1) = 4$, $B(a_2) = 2$, and $B(a_3) = 3.8$. This leads to the choice of action a_2 .

A course of action can also be based on data about the states of interest. For example, a weather report Z will give data for the predictions of *rain* and *no rain*. Continuing the example, assume that the correctness of these predictions is given as follows:

| | | θ_1 (rain) | θ_2 (no rain) |
|-----------------|-------|-------------------|----------------------|
| Predict rain | z_1 | 0.8 | 0.1 |
| Predict no rain | z_2 | 0.2 | 0.9 |

That is, when it will rain, then the prediction is correct 80% of the time.

A *decision function* is an assignment of data to actions. Since there are nitely many possible actions and nitely many possible values of Z , the number of decision functions is nite. For this example there are $3^2 = 9$ possible decision functions, $\{d_1, d_2, \dots, d_9\}$; they are de ned to be:

| | Decision functions | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| | d_1 | d_2 | d_3 | d_4 | d_5 | d_6 | d_7 | d_8 | d_9 |
| Predict z_1 , take action | a_1 | a_2 | a_3 | a_1 | a_2 | a_1 | a_3 | a_2 | a_3 |
| Predict z_2 , take action | a_1 | a_2 | a_3 | a_2 | a_1 | a_3 | a_1 | a_3 | a_2 |

The *risk function* $R(\theta, d_i)$ is the expected value of the loss when a speci c decision function is being used: $R(\theta, d_i) = E_Z[\ell(\theta, d_i(Z))]$. It is straightforward to compute the risk function for all values of $\{d_i\}$ and $\{a_j\}$. This results in the following values:

| Risk function evaluation | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| Decision Function | θ_1 (rain) | θ_2 (no rain) |
| d_1 | 4 | 4 |
| d_2 | 5 | 0 |
| d_3 | 2 | 5 |
| d_4 | 4.2 | 0.4 |
| d_5 | 4.8 | 3.6 |
| d_6 | 3.6 | 4.9 |
| d_7 | 2.4 | 4.1 |
| d_8 | 4.4 | 4.5 |
| d_9 | 2.6 | 0.5 |

This array can now be treated as though it gave the loss function in a no-data problem. The minimax principle for mixed action results in the “best” solution being rule d_3 for $\frac{7}{17}$'s of the time and rule d_9 for $\frac{10}{17}$'s of the time. This leads to a minimax loss of $\frac{40}{17}$. Before the data Z is received, the minimax loss was $\frac{25}{8}$. Hence, the data Z is “worth” $\frac{25}{8} - \frac{40}{17} = \frac{105}{136}$ in using the minimax approach.

The *regret function* (also called the *opportunity loss function*) $r(\theta, a)$ is the loss, $\ell(\theta, a)$, minus the minimum loss for the given θ : $r(\theta, a) = \ell(\theta, a) - \min_b \ell(\theta, b)$. For each state, the least loss is determined if that state were known to be true. This is the contribution to loss that even a good decision cannot avoid. The quantity $r(\theta, a)$ represents the loss that could have been avoided had the state been known—hence the term regret.

For the given loss function data, the minimum loss for $\theta = \theta_1$ is 2, and the minimum loss for $\theta = \theta_2$ is 0. Hence, the regret function is

| | θ_1 (rain) | θ_2 (no rain) |
|-------|-------------------|----------------------|
| a_1 | 2 | 4 |
| a_2 | 3 | 0 |
| a_3 | 0 | 5 |

Most of the computations performed for a loss function could also be performed with the risk function. If the minimax principle is used to determine the “best” action, then, in this example, the “best” action is a_2 .

7.9 STATISTICS

7.9.1 DESCRIPTIVE STATISTICS

1. Sample distribution and density functions

(a) Sample distribution function:

$$\hat{F}(x) = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n u(x - x_i) \quad (7.9.1)$$

where $u(x)$ is the unit step function (or Heaviside function) defined by $u(x) = 0$ for $x \leq 0$ and $u(x) = 1$ for $x > 0$.

(b) Sample density function or histogram:

$$\hat{f}(x) = \frac{\hat{F}(x_0 + (i + 1)w) - \hat{F}(x_0 + iw)}{w} \quad (7.9.2)$$

for $x \in [x_0 + iw, x_0 + (i + 1)w)$. The interval $[x_0 + iw, x_0 + (i + 1)w)$ is called the i^{th} bin, w is the bin width, and $f_i = \hat{F}(x_0 + (i + 1)w) - \hat{F}(x_0 + iw)$ is the *bin frequency*.

2. Order statistics and quantiles:

- (a) Order statistics are obtained by arranging the sample values $\{x_1, \dots, x_n\}$ in increasing order, denoted by

$$x_{(1)} \leq x_{(2)} \leq \dots \leq x_{(n)}. \quad (7.9.3)$$

- i. $x_{(1)}$ and $x_{(n)}$ are the minimum and maximum data values, respectively.
 - ii. For $i = 1, \dots, n$, $x_{(i)}$ is called the i^{th} order statistic.
- (b) *Quantiles*: If $0 < p < 1$, then the *quantile of order p* , ξ_p , is defined as the $p(n+1)^{\text{th}}$ order statistic. It may be necessary to interpolate between successive values.
- i. If $p = j/4$ for $j = 1, 2$, or 3 , then $\xi_{\frac{j}{4}}$ is called the j^{th} *quartile*.
 - ii. If $p = j/10$ for $j = 1, 2, \dots, 9$, then $\xi_{\frac{j}{10}}$ is called the j^{th} *decile*.
 - iii. If $p = j/100$ for $j = 1, 2, \dots, 99$, then $\xi_{\frac{j}{100}}$ is called the j^{th} *percentile*.

3. Measures of central tendency

- (a) *Arithmetic mean*:

$$\bar{x} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i = \frac{x_1 + x_2 + \dots + x_n}{n}. \quad (7.9.4)$$

- (b) α -*trimmed mean*:

$$\bar{x}_\alpha = \frac{1}{n(1-2\alpha)} \left((1-r)(x_{(k+1)} + x_{(n-k)}) + \sum_{i=k+2}^{n-k-1} x_{(i)} \right), \quad (7.9.5)$$

where $k = \lfloor \alpha n \rfloor$ is the greatest integer less than or equal to αn , and $r = \alpha n - k$. If $\alpha = 0$ then $\bar{x}_\alpha = \bar{x}$.

- (c) *Weighted mean*: If to each x_i is associated a weight $w_i \geq 0$ so that

$$\sum_{i=1}^n w_i = 1, \quad \text{then } \bar{x}_w = \sum_{i=1}^n w_i x_i. \quad (7.9.6)$$

- (d) *Geometric mean*:

$$\text{G.M.} = \left(\prod_{i=1}^n x_i \right)^{\frac{1}{n}} = (x_1 x_2 \dots x_n)^{\frac{1}{n}}. \quad (7.9.7)$$

(e) *Harmonic mean:*

$$\text{H.M.} = \frac{n}{\sum_{i=1}^n \frac{1}{x_i}} = \frac{n}{\frac{1}{x_1} + \frac{1}{x_2} + \dots + \frac{1}{x_n}}. \quad (7.9.8)$$

(f) Relationship between arithmetic, geometric, and harmonic means:

$$\text{H.M.} \leq \text{G.M.} \leq \bar{x} \quad (7.9.9)$$

with equality holding only when all sample values are equal.

(g) The *mode* is the data value that occurs with the greatest frequency. Note that the mode may not be unique.

(h) *Median:*

i. If n is odd and $n = 2k + 1$, then $M = x_{(k+1)}$.

ii. If n is even and $n = 2k$, then $M = (x_{(k)} + x_{(k+1)})/2$.

(i) *Midrange:*

$$\text{mid} = \frac{x_{(1)} + x_{(n)}}{2}. \quad (7.9.10)$$

4. Measures of dispersion

(a) *Mean deviation or absolute deviation:*

$$\text{M.D.} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n |x_i - \bar{x}|, \quad \text{or} \quad \text{A.D.} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n |x_i - M|. \quad (7.9.11)$$

(b) *Sample standard deviation:*

$$s = \sqrt{\frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - \bar{x})^2} = \sqrt{\frac{\sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 - n\bar{x}^2}{n-1}}. \quad (7.9.12)$$

(c) The *sample variance* is the square of the sample standard deviation.

(d) *Root mean square:* $\text{R.M.S.} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2}$.

(e) *Sample range:* $x_{(n)} - x_{(1)}$.

(f) *Interquartile range:* $\xi_{\frac{3}{4}} - \xi_{\frac{1}{4}}$.

(g) The quartile deviation or semi-interquartile range is one half the interquartile range.

5. Higher-order statistics

(a) Sample moments: $m_k = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^k$.

(b) Sample central moments, or sample moments about the mean:

$$\mu_k = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - \bar{x})^k. \quad (7.9.13)$$

7.9.2 STATISTICAL ESTIMATORS

7.9.2.1 Definitions

1. A function of a set of random variables is a *statistic*. It is a function of observable random variables that does not contain any unknown parameters. A statistic is itself an observable random variable.
2. Let θ be a parameter appearing in the density function for the random variable X . Suppose that we know a formula for computing an approximate value $\hat{\theta}$ of θ from a given sample $\{x_1, \dots, x_n\}$ (call such a function g). Then $\hat{\theta} = g(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$ can be considered as a single observation of the random variable $\hat{\Theta} = g(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n)$. The random variable $\hat{\Theta}$ is an *estimator* for the parameter θ .
3. A *hypothesis* is an assumption about the distribution of a random variable X . This may usually be cast into the form $\theta \in \Theta_0$. We use H_0 to denote the *null hypothesis* and H_1 to denote an *alternative hypothesis*.
4. In *significance testing*, a *test statistic* $T = T(X_1, \dots, X_n)$ is used to *reject* H_0 , or to *not reject* H_0 . Generally, if $T \in C$, where C is a *critical region*, then H_0 is rejected.
5. A *type I error*, denoted α , is to reject H_0 when it should not be rejected. A *type II error*, denoted β , is to not reject H_0 when it should be rejected.
6. The power of a test is $\eta = 1 - \beta$.

| | Unknown truth | |
|---------------------|---|---|
| | H_0 | H_1 |
| Do not reject H_0 | True decision. Probability is $1 - \alpha$ | Type II error. Probability is β |
| Reject H_0 | Type I error. Probability is α | True decision. Probability is $\eta = 1 - \beta$ |

7.9.2.2 Consistent estimators

Let $\hat{\Theta} = g(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n)$ be an estimator for the parameter θ , and suppose that g is defined for arbitrarily large values of n . If the estimator has the property, $E[(\hat{\Theta} - \theta)^2] \rightarrow 0$, as $n \rightarrow \infty$, then the estimator is called a *consistent estimator*.

1. A consistent estimator is not unique.
2. A consistent estimator may be meaningless.
3. A consistent estimator is not necessarily unbiased.

7.9.2.3 Efficient estimators

An unbiased estimator $\hat{\Theta} = g(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n)$ for a parameter θ is said to be *efficient* if it has finite variance ($E[(\hat{\Theta} - \Theta)^2] < \infty$) and if there does not exist another estimator $\hat{\Theta}^* = g^*(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n)$ for θ , whose variance is smaller than that of $\hat{\Theta}$. The *efficiency* of an unbiased estimator is the ratio,

$$\frac{\text{Cramer-Rao lower bound}}{\text{Actual variance}}$$

The *relative efficiency* of two unbiased estimators is the ratio of their variances.

7.9.2.4 Maximum likelihood estimators (MLE)

Suppose X is a random variable whose density function is $f(x; \theta)$, where $\theta = (\theta_1, \dots, \theta_r)$. If the independent sample values x_1, \dots, x_n are obtained, then define the likelihood function as $L = \prod_{i=1}^n f(x_i; \theta)$. The MLE estimate for θ is the solution of the simultaneous equations, $\frac{\partial L}{\partial \theta_i} = 0$, for $i = 1, \dots, r$.

1. A MLE need not be consistent.
2. A MLE may not be unbiased.
3. A MLE need not be unique.
4. If a single sufficient statistic T exists for the parameter θ , the MLE of θ must be a function of T .
5. Let $\hat{\Theta}$ be a MLE of θ . If $\tau(\cdot)$ is a function with a single-valued inverse, then a MLE of $\tau(\theta)$ is $\tau(\hat{\Theta})$.

Define $\bar{x} = \sum_{i=1}^n X_i/n$ and $S^2 = \sum_{i=1}^n (X_i - \bar{x})^2/n$ (note that $S \neq s$). Then:

| Distribution | Estimated parameter | MLE estimate of parameter |
|--------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| Exponential $E(\lambda)$ | $1/\lambda$ | $1/\bar{x}$ |
| Exponential $E(\lambda)$ | $\lambda^2 = \sigma^2$ | \bar{x}^2 |
| Normal $N(\mu, \sigma)$ | μ | \bar{x} |
| Normal $N(\mu, \sigma)$ | σ^2 | S^2 |
| Poisson $P(\lambda)$ | λ | \bar{x} |
| Uniform $U(0, \theta)$ | θ | X_{\max} |

7.9.2.5 Method of moments (MOM)

Let $\{X_i\}$ be independent and identically distributed random variables with density $f(x; \theta)$. Let $\mu'_r(\theta) = E[X^r]$ be the r^{th} moment (if it exists). Let $m'_r = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^r$ be the r^{th} sample moment. Form the k equations, $\mu'_r = m'_r$, and solve to obtain an estimate of θ .

1. MOM estimators are not necessarily uniquely defined.
2. MOM estimators may not be functions of sufficient or complete statistics.

7.9.2.6 Sufficient statistics

A statistic $G = g(X_1, \dots, X_n)$ is called a *sufficient statistic* if, and only if, the conditional distribution of H , given G , does not depend on θ for any statistic $H = h(X_1, \dots, X_n)$.

Let $\{X_i\}$ be independent and identically distributed random variables, with density $f(x; \theta)$. The statistics $\{G_1, \dots, G_r\}$ are said to be *jointly sufficient statistics* if, and only if, the conditional distribution of X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n given $G_1 = g_1, G_2 = g_2, \dots, G_r = g_r$ does not depend on θ .

1. A single sufficient statistic may not exist.

7.9.2.7 UMVU estimators

A *uniformly minimum variance unbiased estimator*, called a UMVU estimator, is unbiased and has the minimum variance among all unbiased estimators.

Denote, as usual, $\bar{x} = \sum_{i=1}^n X_i/n$ and $s^2 = \sum_{i=1}^n (X_i - \bar{x})^2/(n - 1)$. Then:

| Distribution | Estimated parameter | UMVU estimate of parameter | Variance of estimator |
|--------------------------|---------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Exponential $E(\lambda)$ | λ | $\frac{n - 1}{s}$ | $\frac{\lambda^2}{n - 2}$ |
| Exponential $E(\lambda)$ | $\frac{1}{\lambda}$ | \bar{x} | $\frac{1}{n\lambda^2}$ |
| Normal $N(\mu, \sigma)$ | μ | \bar{x} | $\frac{\sigma^2}{n}$ |
| Normal $N(\mu, \sigma)$ | σ^2 | s^2 | $\frac{2\sigma^4}{n - 1}$ |
| Poisson $P(\lambda)$ | λ | \bar{x} | $\frac{\lambda^2}{n}$ |
| Uniform $U(0, \theta)$ | θ | $\frac{n + 1}{n} X_{\max}$ | $\frac{\theta^2}{n(n + 2)}$ |

7.9.2.8 Unbiased estimators

An estimator $g(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n)$ for a parameter θ is said to be *unbiased* if

$$E[g(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n)] = \theta. \tag{7.9.14}$$

1. An unbiased estimator may not exist.
2. An unbiased estimator is not unique.
3. An unbiased estimator may be meaningless.
4. An unbiased estimator is not necessarily consistent.

7.9.3 CRAMER–RAO BOUND

The *Cramer–Rao bound* gives a lower bound on the variance of an unknown unbiased statistical parameter, when n samples are taken. When the single unknown parameter is θ ,

$$\sigma^2(\theta) \geq \frac{1}{-nE\left[\frac{\partial^2}{\partial\theta^2} \log f(x; \theta)\right]} = \frac{1}{nE\left[\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta} \log f(x; \theta)\right)^2\right]}. \quad (7.9.15)$$

EXAMPLES

1. For a normal random variable with unknown mean θ and known variance σ^2 , the density is $f(x; \theta) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}\sigma} \exp\left(-\frac{(x-\theta)^2}{2\sigma^2}\right)$. Hence, $\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta} \log f(x; \theta) = (x - \theta)/\sigma^2$. The computation

$$E\left[\frac{(x - \theta)^2}{\sigma^4}\right] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{(x - \theta)^2}{\sigma^4} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}\sigma} e^{-(x-\theta)^2/2\sigma^2} dx = \frac{1}{\sigma^2}$$

results in $\sigma^2(\theta) \geq \frac{\sigma^2}{n}$.

2. For a normal random variable with known mean μ and unknown variance $\theta = \sigma^2$, the density is $f(x; \theta) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\theta}} \exp\left(-\frac{(x-\mu)^2}{2\theta}\right)$. Hence, $\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta} \log f(x; \theta) = ((x - \mu)^2 - 2\theta)/(2\theta)^2$. The computation $E\left[\frac{(x-\mu)^2 - 2\theta}{(2\theta)^2}\right] = \frac{1}{2\theta^2} = \frac{1}{2\sigma^4}$ results in $\sigma^2(\theta) \geq 2\sigma^4/n$.

3. For a Poisson random variable with unknown mean θ , the density is $f(x; \theta) = \theta^x e^{-\theta}/x!$. Hence, $\frac{\partial}{\partial\theta} \log f(x; \theta) = x/\theta - 1$. The computation

$$E\left[\left(\frac{x}{\theta} - 1\right)^2\right] = \sum_{x=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{x}{\theta} - 1\right)^2 \frac{\theta^x e^{-\theta}}{x!} = \frac{1}{\theta} \text{ results in } \sigma^2(\theta) \geq \theta/n.$$

7.9.4 ORDER STATISTICS

When $\{X_i\}$ are n independent and identically distributed random variables with the common distribution function $F_X(x)$, let Z_m be the m^{th} largest of the values ($m = 1, 2, \dots, n$). Hence Z_1 is the maximum of the n values and Z_n is the minimum of the n values. Then

$$F_{Z_m}(x) = \sum_{i=m}^n \binom{n}{i} [F_X(x)]^i [1 - F_X(x)]^{n-i}. \quad (7.9.16)$$

Hence

$$F_{\max}(z) = [F_X(z)]^n, \quad f_{\max}(z) = n[F_X(z)]^{n-1} f_X(z), \quad (7.9.17)$$

$$F_{\min}(z) = 1 - [1 - F_X(z)]^n, \quad f_{\min}(z) = n[1 - F_X(z)]^{n-1} f_X(z). \quad (7.9.18)$$

The expected value of the i^{th} order statistic is given by

$$E[x_{(i)}] = \frac{n!}{(i-1)!(n-i)!} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x f(x) F^{i-1}(x) [1 - F(x)]^{n-i} dx. \quad (7.9.19)$$

7.9.4.1 Uniform distribution:

If X is uniformly distributed on the interval $[0, 1)$ then

$$E [x_{(i)}] = \frac{n!}{(i-1)!(n-i)!} \int_0^1 x^i (1-x)^{n-i} dx. \quad (7.9.20)$$

The expected value of the largest of n samples is $\frac{n}{n+1}$; the expected value of the least of n samples is $\frac{1}{n+1}$.

7.9.4.2 Normal distribution:

The following table gives values of $E [x_{(i)}]$ for a standard normal distribution. Missing values (indicated by a dash) may be obtained from $E [x_{(i)}] = -E [x_{(n-i+1)}]$.

| i | $n=2$ | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 10 |
|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1 | 0.5642 | 0.8463 | 1.0294 | 1.1630 | 1.2672 | 1.3522 | 1.4236 | 1.5388 |
| 2 | — | 0.0000 | 0.2970 | 0.4950 | 0.6418 | 0.7574 | 0.8522 | 1.0014 |
| 3 | | — | — | 0.0000 | 0.2016 | 0.3527 | 0.4728 | 0.6561 |
| 4 | | | — | — | — | 0.0000 | 0.1522 | 0.3756 |
| 5 | | | | — | — | — | — | 0.1226 |
| 6 | | | | | — | — | — | — |

EXAMPLE If a person of average intelligence takes n intelligence tests (each test having a normal distribution with a mean of 100 and a standard deviation of 20), then the expected value of the largest score is $100 + (1.1630)(20) \approx 123$.

7.9.5 CLASSIC STATISTICS PROBLEMS

7.9.5.1 Sample size problem

Suppose that a Bernoulli random variable is to be estimated from a sample. What sample size n is required so that, with 99% certainty, the error is no more than $e = 5$ percentage points (i.e., $\text{Prob}(|\hat{p} - p| < 0.05) > 0.99$)?

If an *a priori* estimate of p is available, then the minimum sample size is $n_p = z_{\alpha/2}^2 p(1-p)/e^2$. If no *a priori* estimate is available, then $n_n = z_{\alpha/2}^2/4e^2 \geq n_p$. For the numbers above, $n \geq n_n = 664$.

7.9.5.2 Large scale testing with infrequent success

Suppose that a disease occurs in one person out of every 1000. Suppose that a test for this disease has a type I and a type II error of 1% (that is, $\alpha = \beta = 0.01$). Imagine that 100,000 people are tested. Of the 100 people who have the disease, 99 will be diagnosed as having it. Of the 99,900 people who do not have the disease, 999 will be diagnosed as having it. Hence, only $\frac{99}{1098} \approx 9\%$ of the people who test positive for the disease actually have it.

7.10 CONFIDENCE INTERVALS

A probability distribution may have one or more unknown parameters. A *confidence interval* is an assertion that an unknown parameter lies in a computed range, with a specified probability. Before constructing a confidence interval, first select a confidence coefficient, denoted $1 - \alpha$. Typically, $1 - \alpha = 0.95, 0.99$, or the like. The definitions of z_α , t_α , and χ_α^2 are in [Section 7.14.1](#) on page 695.

7.10.1 CONFIDENCE INTERVAL: SAMPLE FROM ONE POPULATION

The following confidence intervals assume a random sample of size n , given by $\{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n\}$.

1. Find mean μ of the normal distribution with known variance σ^2 .
 - (a) Determine the critical value $z_{\alpha/2}$ such that $\Phi(z_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $\Phi(z)$ is the standard normal distribution function.
 - (b) Compute the mean \bar{x} of the sample.
 - (c) Compute $k = z_{\alpha/2}\sigma/\sqrt{n}$.
 - (d) The $100(1-\alpha)$ percent confidence interval for μ is given by $[\bar{x} - k, \bar{x} + k]$.
2. Find mean μ of the normal distribution with unknown variance σ^2 .
 - (a) Determine the critical value $t_{\alpha/2}$ such that $F(t_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the t -distribution with $n - 1$ degrees of freedom.
 - (b) Compute the mean \bar{x} and standard deviation s of the sample.
 - (c) Compute $k = t_{\alpha/2}s/\sqrt{n}$.
 - (d) The $100(1-\alpha)$ percent confidence interval for μ is given by $[\bar{x} - k, \bar{x} + k]$.
3. Find the probability of success p for Bernoulli trials with large sample size.
 - (a) Determine the critical value $z_{\alpha/2}$ such that $\Phi(z_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $\Phi(z)$ is the standard normal distribution function.
 - (b) Compute the proportion \hat{p} of “successes” out of n trials.
 - (c) Compute $k = z_{\alpha/2}\sqrt{\frac{\hat{p}(1-\hat{p})}{n}}$.
 - (d) The $100(1-\alpha)$ percent confidence interval for p is given by $[\hat{p} - k, \hat{p} + k]$.
4. Find variance σ^2 of the normal distribution.
 - (a) Determine the critical values $\chi_{\alpha/2}^2$ and $\chi_{1-\alpha/2}^2$ such that $F(\chi_{\alpha/2}^2) = 1 - \alpha/2$ and $F(\chi_{1-\alpha/2}^2) = \alpha/2$, where $F(z)$ is the chi-square distribution function with $n - 1$ degrees of freedom.
 - (b) Compute the standard deviation s .

- (c) Compute $k_1 = \frac{(n-1)s^2}{\chi_{\alpha/2}^2}$ and $k_2 = \frac{(n-1)s^2}{\chi_{1-\alpha/2}^2}$.
- (d) The $100(1-\alpha)$ percent confidence interval for σ^2 is given by $[k_1, k_2]$.
- (e) The $100(1-\alpha)$ percent confidence interval for the standard deviation σ is given by $[\sqrt{k_1}, \sqrt{k_2}]$.

5. Find quantile ξ_p of order p for large sample sizes.

- (a) Determine the critical value $z_{\alpha/2}$ such that $\Phi(z_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $\Phi(z)$ is the standard normal distribution function.
- (b) Compute the order statistics $x_{(1)}, x_{(2)}, \dots, x_{(n)}$.
- (c) Compute $k_1 = \left[np - z_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{np(1-p)} \right]$ and $k_2 = \left[np + z_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{np(1-p)} \right]$.
- (d) The $100(1-\alpha)$ percent confidence interval for ξ_p is given by $[x_{(k_1)}, x_{(k_2)}]$.

6. Find median M based on the Wilcoxon one-sample statistic for a large sample.

- (a) Determine the critical value $z_{\alpha/2}$ such that $\Phi(z_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $\Phi(z)$ is the standard normal distribution function.
- (b) Compute the order statistics $w_{(1)}, w_{(2)}, \dots, w_{(N)}$ of the $N = n(n-1)/2$ averages $(x_i + x_j)/2$, for $1 \leq i < j \leq n$.
- (c) Compute $k_1 = \left[\frac{N}{2} - \frac{z_{\alpha/2}N}{\sqrt{3n}} \right]$ and $k_2 = \left[\frac{N}{2} + \frac{z_{\alpha/2}N}{\sqrt{3n}} \right]$.
- (d) The $100(1-\alpha)$ percent confidence interval for M is given by $[w_{(k_1)}, w_{(k_2)}]$.

7.10.2 CONFIDENCE INTERVAL: SAMPLES FROM TWO POPULATIONS

The following confidence intervals assume random samples from two large populations: one sample of size n , given by $\{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n\}$, and one sample of size m , given by $\{y_1, y_2, \dots, y_m\}$.

1. Find the difference in population means μ_x and μ_y from independent samples with known variances σ_x^2 and σ_y^2 .
- (a) Determine the critical value $z_{\alpha/2}$ such that $\Phi(z_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $\Phi(z)$ is the standard normal distribution function.
- (b) Compute the means \bar{x} and \bar{y} .
- (c) Compute $k = z_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{\frac{\sigma_x^2}{n} + \frac{\sigma_y^2}{m}}$.
- (d) The $100(1-\alpha)$ percent confidence interval for $\mu_x - \mu_y$ is given by $[(\bar{x} - \bar{y}) - k, (\bar{x} - \bar{y}) + k]$.

2. Find the difference in population means μ_x and μ_y from independent samples with unknown variances σ_x^2 and σ_y^2 .

(a) Determine the critical value $z_{\alpha/2}$ such that $\Phi(z_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $\Phi(z)$ is the standard normal distribution function.

(b) Compute the means \bar{x} and \bar{y} , and the standard deviations s_x and s_y .

(c) Compute $k = z_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{\frac{s_x^2}{n} + \frac{s_y^2}{m}}$.

(d) The $100(1 - \alpha)$ percent confidence interval for $\mu_x - \mu_y$ is given by $[(\bar{x} - \bar{y}) - k, (\bar{x} - \bar{y}) + k]$.

3. Find the difference in population means μ_x and μ_y from independent samples with unknown but equal variances $\sigma_x^2 = \sigma_y^2$.

(a) Determine the critical value $t_{\alpha/2}$ such that $F(t_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the t -distribution with $n + m - 2$ degrees of freedom.

(b) Compute the means \bar{x} and \bar{y} , the standard deviations s_x and s_y , and the pooled standard deviation estimate,

$$s = \sqrt{\frac{(n-1)s_x^2 + (m-1)s_y^2}{n+m-2}}. \quad (7.10.1)$$

(c) Compute $k = t_{\alpha/2} s \sqrt{\frac{1}{n} + \frac{1}{m}}$.

(d) The $100(1 - \alpha)$ percent confidence interval for $\mu_x - \mu_y$ is given by $[(\bar{x} - \bar{y}) - k, (\bar{x} - \bar{y}) + k]$.

4. Find the difference in population means μ_x and μ_y for paired samples with unknown but equal variances $\sigma_x^2 = \sigma_y^2$.

(a) Determine the critical value $t_{\alpha/2}$ such that $F(t_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the t -distribution with $n - 1$ degrees of freedom.

(b) Compute the mean $\bar{\mu}_d$ and standard deviation s_d of the paired differences $x_1 - y_1, x_2 - y_2, \dots, x_n - y_n$.

(c) Compute $k = t_{\alpha/2} s_d / \sqrt{n}$.

(d) The $100(1 - \alpha)$ percent confidence interval for $\mu_d = \mu_x - \mu_y$ is given by $[\bar{\mu}_d - k, \bar{\mu}_d + k]$.

5. Find the difference in Bernoulli trial success rates, $p_x - p_y$, for large, independent samples.

(a) Determine the critical value $z_{\alpha/2}$ such that $\Phi(z_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $\Phi(z)$ is the standard normal distribution function.

(b) Compute the proportions \hat{p}_x and \hat{p}_y of “successes” for the samples.

(c) Compute $k = z_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{\frac{\hat{p}_x(1 - \hat{p}_x)}{n} + \frac{\hat{p}_y(1 - \hat{p}_y)}{m}}$.

(d) The $100(1 - \alpha)$ percent confidence interval for $p_x - p_y$ is given by $[(\hat{p}_x - \hat{p}_y) - k, (\hat{p}_x - \hat{p}_y) + k]$.

6. Find the difference in medians $M_x - M_y$ based on the Mann–Whitney–Wilcoxon procedure.

- (a) Determine the critical value $z_{\alpha/2}$ such that $\Phi(z_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $\Phi(z)$ is the standard normal distribution function.
- (b) Compute the order statistics $w_{(1)}, w_{(2)}, \dots, w_{(N)}$ of the $N = nm$ differences $x_i - y_j$, for $1 \leq i \leq n$ and $1 \leq j \leq m$.
- (c) Compute

$$k_1 = \frac{nm}{2} + \left[0.5 - z_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{\frac{nm(n+m+1)}{12}} \right]$$

and

$$k_2 = \left[\frac{nm}{2} - 0.5 + z_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{\frac{nm(n+m+1)}{12}} \right].$$

(d) The $100(1 - \alpha)$ percent confidence interval for $M_x - M_y$ is given by $[w_{(k_1)}, w_{(k_2)}]$.

7. Find the ratio of variances σ_x^2/σ_y^2 , for independent samples.

- (a) Determine the critical values $F_{\alpha/2}$ and $F_{1-\alpha/2}$ such that $F(F_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$ and $F(F_{1-\alpha/2}) = \alpha/2$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the F -distribution with $m - 1$ and $n - 1$ degrees of freedom.
- (b) Compute the standard deviations s_x and s_y of the samples.
- (c) Compute $k_1 = F_{1-\alpha/2}$ and $k_2 = F_{\alpha/2}$.
- (d) The $100(1 - \alpha)$ percent confidence interval for σ_x^2/σ_y^2 is given by $\left[\frac{s_x^2}{s_y^2} k_1, \frac{s_x^2}{s_y^2} k_2 \right]$.

7.11 TESTS OF HYPOTHESES

A statistical hypothesis is a statement about the distribution of a random variable. A statistical test of a hypothesis is a procedure in which a sample is used to determine whether we should “reject” or “not reject” the hypothesis. Before employing a hypothesis test, first select a *significance level* α . Typically, $\alpha = 0.05, 0.01$, or the like.

7.11.1 HYPOTHESIS TESTS: PARAMETER FROM ONE POPULATION

The following hypothesis tests assume a random sample of size n , given by $\{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n\}$.

1. Test of the hypothesis $\mu = \mu_0$ against the alternative $\mu \neq \mu_0$ of the mean of a normal distribution with known variance σ^2 :
 - (a) Determine the critical value $z_{\alpha/2}$ such that $\Phi(z_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $\Phi(z)$ is the standard normal distribution function.
 - (b) Compute the mean \bar{x} of the sample.
 - (c) Compute the test statistic $z = \frac{(\bar{x} - \mu_0) \sqrt{n}}{\sigma}$.
 - (d) If $|z| > z_{\alpha/2}$, then reject the hypothesis. If $|z| \leq z_{\alpha/2}$, then do not reject the hypothesis.
2. Test of the hypothesis $\mu = \mu_0$ against the alternative $\mu > \mu_0$ (or $\mu < \mu_0$) of the mean of a normal distribution with known variance σ^2 :
 - (a) Determine the critical value z_α such that $\Phi(z_\alpha) = 1 - \alpha$, where $\Phi(z)$ is the standard normal distribution function.
 - (b) Compute the mean \bar{x} of the sample.
 - (c) Compute the test statistic $z = \frac{(\bar{x} - \mu_0) \sqrt{n}}{\sigma}$. (For the alternative $\mu < \mu_0$, multiply z by -1 .)
 - (d) If $z > z_\alpha$, then reject the hypothesis. If $z \leq z_\alpha$, then do not reject the hypothesis.
3. Test of the hypothesis $\mu = \mu_0$ against the alternative $\mu \neq \mu_0$ of the mean of a normal distribution with unknown variance σ^2 :
 - (a) Determine the critical value $t_{\alpha/2}$ such that $F(t_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the t -distribution with $n - 1$ degrees of freedom.
 - (b) Compute the mean \bar{x} and standard deviation s of the sample.
 - (c) Compute the test statistic $t = \frac{(\bar{x} - \mu_0) \sqrt{n}}{s}$.
 - (d) If $|t| > t_{\alpha/2}$, then reject the hypothesis. If $|t| \leq t_{\alpha/2}$, then do not reject the hypothesis.
4. Test of the hypothesis $\mu = \mu_0$ against the alternative $\mu > \mu_0$ (or $\mu < \mu_0$) of the mean of a normal distribution with unknown variance σ^2 :
 - (a) Determine the critical value t_α such that $F(t_\alpha) = 1 - \alpha$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the t -distribution with $n - 1$ degrees of freedom.
 - (b) Compute the mean \bar{x} and standard deviation s of the sample.
 - (c) Compute the test statistic $t = \frac{(\bar{x} - \mu_0) \sqrt{n}}{s}$. (For the alternative $\mu < \mu_0$, multiply t by -1 .)

-
- (d) If $t > t_\alpha$, then reject the hypothesis. If $t \leq t_\alpha$, then do not reject the hypothesis.
5. Test of the hypothesis $p = p_0$ against the alternative $p \neq p_0$ of the probability of success for a binomial distribution, large sample:
- Determine the critical value $z_{\alpha/2}$ such that $\Phi(z_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $\Phi(z)$ is the standard normal distribution function.
 - Compute the proportion \hat{p} of “successes” for the sample.
 - Compute the test statistic $z = \frac{\hat{p} - p_0}{\sqrt{\frac{p_0(1-p_0)}{n}}}$.
 - If $|z| > z_{\alpha/2}$, then reject the hypothesis. If $|z| \leq z_{\alpha/2}$, then do not reject the hypothesis.
6. Test of the hypothesis $p = p_0$ against the alternative $p > p_0$ (or $p < p_0$) of the probability of success for a binomial distribution, large sample:
- Determine the critical value z_α such that $\Phi(z_\alpha) = 1 - \alpha$, where $\Phi(z)$ is the standard normal distribution function.
 - Compute the proportion \hat{p} of “successes” for the sample.
 - Compute the test statistic $z = \frac{\hat{p} - p_0}{\sqrt{\frac{p_0(1-p_0)}{n}}}$. (For the alternative $p < p_0$, multiply z by -1 .)
 - If $z > z_\alpha$, then reject the hypothesis. If $z \leq z_\alpha$, then do not reject the hypothesis.
7. Wilcoxon signed rank test of the hypothesis $M = M_0$ against the alternative $M \neq M_0$ of the median of a population, large sample:
- Determine the critical value $z_{\alpha/2}$ such that $\Phi(z_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $\Phi(z)$ is the standard normal distribution.
 - Compute the quantities $|x_i - M_0|$, and keep track of the sign of $x_i - M_0$. If $|x_i - M_0| = 0$, then remove it from the list and reduce n by one.
 - Order the $|x_i - M_0|$ from smallest to largest, assigning rank 1 to the smallest and rank n to the largest; $|x_i - M_0|$ has rank r_i if it is the r_i^{th} entry in the ordered list. In case of ties (i.e., $|x_i - M_0| = |x_j - M_0|$ for 2 or more values) assign each the average of their ranks.
 - Compute the sum of the signed ranks $R = \sum_{i=1}^n \text{sign}(x_i - M_0) r_i$.
 - Compute the test statistic $z = \frac{R}{\sqrt{\frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6}}}$.
 - If $|z| > z_{\alpha/2}$, then reject the hypothesis. If $|z| \leq z_{\alpha/2}$, then do not reject the hypothesis.

8. Wilcoxon signed rank test of the hypothesis $M = M_0$ against the alternative $M > M_0$ (or $M < M_0$) of the median of a population, large sample:

- (a) Determine the critical value z_α such that $\Phi(z_\alpha) = 1 - \alpha$, where $\Phi(z)$ is the standard normal distribution.
- (b) Compute the quantities $|x_i - M_0|$, and keep track of the sign of $x_i - M_0$. If $|x_i - M_0| = 0$, then remove it from the list and reduce n by one.
- (c) Order the $|x_i - M_0|$ from smallest to largest, assigning rank 1 to the smallest and rank n to the largest; $|x_i - M_0|$ has rank r_i if it is the r_i^{th} entry in the ordered list. If $|x_i - M_0| = |x_j - M_0|$, then assign each the average of their ranks.
- (d) Compute the sum of the signed ranks $R = \sum_{i=1}^n \text{sign}(x_i - M_0) r_i$.
- (e) Compute the test statistic $z = \frac{R}{\sqrt{\frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6}}}$. (For the alternative $M < M_0$, multiply the test statistic by -1 .)
- (f) If $z > z_\alpha$, then reject the hypothesis. If $z \leq z_\alpha$, then do not reject the hypothesis.

9. Test of the hypothesis $\sigma^2 = \sigma_0^2$ against the alternative $\sigma^2 \neq \sigma_0^2$ of the variance of a normal distribution:

- (a) Determine the critical values $\chi_{\alpha/2}^2$ and $\chi_{1-\alpha/2}^2$ such that $F(\chi_{\alpha/2}^2) = 1 - \alpha/2$ and $F(\chi_{1-\alpha/2}^2) = \alpha/2$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the chi-square distribution function with $n - 1$ degrees of freedom.
- (b) Compute the standard deviation s of the sample.
- (c) Compute the test statistic $\chi^2 = \frac{(n-1)s^2}{\sigma_0^2}$.
- (d) If $\chi^2 < \chi_{1-\alpha/2}^2$ or $\chi^2 > \chi_{\alpha/2}^2$, then reject the hypothesis.
- (e) If $\chi_{1-\alpha/2}^2 \leq \chi^2 \leq \chi_{\alpha/2}^2$, then do not reject the hypothesis.

10. Test of the hypothesis $\sigma^2 = \sigma_0^2$ against the alternative $\sigma^2 > \sigma_0^2$ (or $\sigma^2 < \sigma_0^2$) of the variance of a normal distribution:

- (a) Determine the critical value χ_α^2 ($\chi_{1-\alpha}^2$ for the alternative $\sigma^2 < \sigma_0^2$) such that $F(\chi_\alpha^2) = 1 - \alpha$ ($F(\chi_{1-\alpha}^2) = \alpha$), where $F(\cdot)$ is the chi-square distribution function with $n - 1$ degrees of freedom.
- (b) Compute the standard deviation s of the sample.
- (c) Compute the test statistic $\chi^2 = \frac{(n-1)s^2}{\sigma_0^2}$.
- (d) If $\chi^2 > \chi_\alpha^2$ ($\chi^2 < \chi_{1-\alpha}^2$), then reject the hypothesis.
- (e) If $\chi^2 \leq \chi_\alpha^2$ ($\chi_{1-\alpha}^2 \leq \chi^2$), then do not reject the hypothesis.

7.11.2 HYPOTHESIS TESTS: PARAMETERS FROM TWO POPULATIONS

The following hypothesis tests assume a random sample of size n , given by $\{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n\}$, and a random sample of size m , given by $\{y_1, y_2, \dots, y_m\}$.

1. Test of the hypothesis $\mu_x = \mu_y$ against the alternative $\mu_x \neq \mu_y$ of the means of independent normal distributions with known variances σ_x^2 and σ_y^2 :
 - (a) Determine the critical value $z_{\alpha/2}$ such that $\Phi(z_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $\Phi(z)$ is the standard normal distribution function.
 - (b) Compute the means, \bar{x} and \bar{y} , of the samples.
 - (c) Compute the test statistic $z = \frac{\bar{x} - \bar{y}}{\sqrt{\frac{\sigma_x^2}{n} + \frac{\sigma_y^2}{m}}}$.
 - (d) If $|z| > z_{\alpha/2}$, then reject the hypothesis. If $|z| \leq z_{\alpha/2}$, then do not reject the hypothesis.
2. Test of the hypothesis $\mu_x = \mu_y$ against the alternative $\mu_x > \mu_y$ (or $\mu_x < \mu_y$) of the means of independent normal distributions with known variances σ_x^2 and σ_y^2 :
 - (a) Determine the critical value z_α such that $\Phi(z_\alpha) = 1 - \alpha$, where $\Phi(z)$ is the standard normal distribution function.
 - (b) Compute the means \bar{x} and \bar{y} of the samples.
 - (c) Compute the test statistic $z = \frac{\bar{x} - \bar{y}}{\sqrt{\frac{\sigma_x^2}{n} + \frac{\sigma_y^2}{m}}}$. (For the alternative $\mu_x < \mu_y$, multiply z by -1 .)
 - (d) If $z > z_\alpha$, then reject the hypothesis. If $z \leq z_\alpha$, then do not reject the hypothesis.
3. Test of the hypothesis $\mu_x = \mu_y$ against the alternative $\mu_x \neq \mu_y$ of the means of independent normal distributions with unknown variances σ_x^2 and σ_y^2 , large sample:
 - (a) Determine the critical value $z_{\alpha/2}$ such that $\Phi(z_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $\Phi(z)$ is the standard normal distribution.
 - (b) Compute the means, \bar{x} and \bar{y} , and standard deviations, s_x^2 and s_y^2 , of the samples.
 - (c) Compute the test statistic $z = \frac{\bar{x} - \bar{y}}{\sqrt{\frac{s_x^2}{n} + \frac{s_y^2}{m}}}$.
 - (d) If $|z| > z_{\alpha/2}$, then reject the hypothesis. If $|z| \leq z_{\alpha/2}$, then do not reject the hypothesis.
4. Test of the hypothesis $\mu_x = \mu_y$ against the alternative $\mu_x > \mu_y$ (or $\mu_x < \mu_y$) of the means of independent normal distributions with unknown variances, σ_x^2 and σ_y^2 , large sample:

-
- (a) Determine the critical value z_α such that $\Phi(z_\alpha) = 1 - \alpha$, where $\Phi(z)$ is the standard normal distribution function.
- (b) Compute the means, \bar{x} and \bar{y} , and standard deviations, s_x^2 and s_y^2 , of the samples.
- (c) Compute the test statistic $z = \frac{\bar{x} - \bar{y}}{\sqrt{\frac{s_x^2}{n} + \frac{s_y^2}{m}}}$. (For the alternative $\mu_x < \mu_y$, multiply z by -1 .)
- (d) If $z > z_\alpha$, then reject the hypothesis. If $z \leq z_\alpha$, then do not reject the hypothesis.
5. Test of the hypothesis $\mu_x = \mu_y$ against the alternative $\mu_x \neq \mu_y$ of the means of independent normal distributions with unknown variances $\sigma_x^2 = \sigma_y^2$:
- (a) Determine the critical value $t_{\alpha/2}$ such that $F(t_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the t -distribution with $n + m - 2$ degrees of freedom.
- (b) Compute the means, \bar{x} and \bar{y} , and standard deviations, s_x^2 and s_y^2 , of the samples.
- (c) Compute the test statistic $t = \frac{\bar{x} - \bar{y}}{\sqrt{\frac{(n-1)s_x^2 + (m-1)s_y^2}{n+m-2}} \sqrt{\frac{1}{n} + \frac{1}{m}}}$.
- (d) If $|t| > t_{\alpha/2}$, then reject the hypothesis. If $|t| \leq t_{\alpha/2}$, then do not reject the hypothesis.
6. Test of the hypothesis $\mu_x = \mu_y$ against the alternative $\mu_x > \mu_y$ (or $\mu_x < \mu_y$) of the means of independent normal distributions with unknown variances $\sigma_x^2 = \sigma_y^2$:
- (a) Determine the critical value t_α such that $F(t_\alpha) = 1 - \alpha$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the t -distribution with $n + m - 2$ degrees of freedom.
- (b) Compute the means, \bar{x} and \bar{y} , and standard deviations, s_x^2 and s_y^2 , of the samples.
- (c) Compute the test statistic $t = \frac{\bar{x} - \bar{y}}{\sqrt{\frac{(n-1)s_x^2 + (m-1)s_y^2}{n+m-2}} \sqrt{\frac{1}{n} + \frac{1}{m}}}$. (For the alternative $\mu_x < \mu_y$, multiply t by -1 .)
- (d) If $t > t_\alpha$, then reject the hypothesis. If $t \leq t_\alpha$, then do not reject the hypothesis.
7. Test of the hypothesis $\mu_x = \mu_y$ against the alternative $\mu_x \neq \mu_y$ of the means of paired normal samples:
- (a) Determine the critical value $t_{\alpha/2}$ so that $F(t_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the t -distribution with $n - 1$ degrees of freedom.
- (b) Compute the mean, $\hat{\mu}_d$, and standard deviation, s_d , of the differences $x_1 - y_1, x_2 - y_2, \dots, x_n - y_n$.
- (c) Compute the test statistic $t = \frac{\hat{\mu}_d \sqrt{n}}{s_d}$.

-
- (d) If $|t| > t_{\alpha/2}$, then reject the hypothesis. If $|t| \leq t_{\alpha/2}$, then do not reject the hypothesis.
8. Test of the hypothesis $\mu_x = \mu_y$ against the alternative $\mu_x > \mu_y$ (or $\mu_x < \mu_y$) of the means of paired normal samples:
- Determine the critical value t_α so that $F(t_\alpha) = 1 - \alpha$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the t -distribution with $n - 1$ degrees of freedom.
 - Compute the mean, $\hat{\mu}_d$, and standard deviation, s_d , of the differences $x_1 - y_1, x_2 - y_2, \dots, x_n - y_n$.
 - Compute the test statistic $t = \frac{\hat{\mu}_d \sqrt{n}}{s_d}$. (For the alternative $\mu_x < \mu_y$, multiply t by -1 .)
 - If $t > t_\alpha$, then reject the hypothesis. If $t \leq t_\alpha$, then do not reject the hypothesis.
9. Test of the hypothesis $p_x = p_y$ against the alternative $p_x \neq p_y$ of the probability of success for a binomial distribution, large sample:
- Determine the critical value $z_{\alpha/2}$ such that $\Phi(z_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $\Phi(z)$ is the standard normal distribution function.
 - Compute the proportions, \hat{p}_x and \hat{p}_y , of “successes” for the samples.
 - Compute the test statistic $z = \frac{\hat{p}_x - \hat{p}_y}{\sqrt{\frac{\hat{p}_x(1-\hat{p}_x)}{n} + \frac{\hat{p}_y(1-\hat{p}_y)}{m}}}$.
 - If $|z| > z_{\alpha/2}$, then reject the hypothesis. If $|z| \leq z_{\alpha/2}$, then do not reject the hypothesis.
10. Test of the hypothesis $p_x = p_y$ against the alternative $p_x > p_y$ (or $p_x < p_y$) of the probability of success for a binomial distribution, large sample:
- Determine the critical value z_α such that $\Phi(z_\alpha) = 1 - \alpha$, where $\Phi(z)$ is the standard normal distribution function.
 - Compute the proportions, \hat{p}_x and \hat{p}_y , of “successes” for the samples.
 - Compute the test statistic $z = \frac{\hat{p}_x - \hat{p}_y}{\sqrt{\frac{\hat{p}_x(1-\hat{p}_x)}{n} + \frac{\hat{p}_y(1-\hat{p}_y)}{m}}}$. (Multiply it by -1 for the alternative $p_x < p_y$.)
 - If $z > z_\alpha$, then reject the hypothesis. If $z \leq z_\alpha$, then do not reject the hypothesis.
11. Mann–Whitney–Wilcoxon test of the hypothesis $M_x = M_y$ against the alternative $M_x \neq M_y$ of the medians of independent samples, large sample:
- Determine the critical value $z_{\alpha/2}$ such that $\Phi(z_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $\Phi(z)$ is the standard normal distribution.
 - Pool the $N = m + n$ observations, but keep track of which sample the observation was drawn from.

-
- (c) Order the pooled observations from smallest to largest, assigning rank 1 to the smallest and rank N to the largest; an observation has rank r_i if it is the r_i^{th} entry in the ordered list. If two observations are equal, then assign each the average of their ranks.
 - (d) Compute the sum of the ranks from the r st sample T_x .
 - (e) Compute the test statistic $z = \frac{T_x - \frac{m(N+1)}{2}}{\sqrt{\frac{mn(N+1)}{12}}}$.
 - (f) If $|z| > z_{\alpha/2}$, then reject the hypothesis. If $|z| \leq z_{\alpha/2}$, then do not reject the hypothesis.

12. Mann–Whitney–Wilcoxon test of the hypothesis $M_x = M_y$ against the alternative $M_x > M_y$ (or $M_x < M_y$) of the medians of independent samples, large sample:

- (a) Determine the critical value z_α such that $\Phi(z_\alpha) = 1 - \alpha$, where $\Phi(z)$ is the standard normal distribution.
- (b) Pool the $N = m + n$ observations, but keep track of which sample the observation was drawn from.
- (c) Order the pooled observations from smallest to largest, assigning rank 1 to the smallest and rank N to the largest; an observation has rank r_i if it is the r_i^{th} entry in the ordered list. If two observations are equal, then assign each the average of their ranks.
- (d) Compute the sum of the ranks from the r st sample T_x .
- (e) Compute the test statistic $z = \frac{T_x - \frac{m(N+1)}{2}}{\sqrt{\frac{mn(N+1)}{12}}}$. (For the alternative $M_x < M_y$, multiply the test statistic by -1 .)
- (f) If $|z| > z_\alpha$, then reject the hypothesis. If $|z| \leq z_\alpha$, then do not reject the hypothesis.

13. Wilcoxon signed rank test of the hypothesis $M_x = M_y$ against the alternative $M_x \neq M_y$ of the medians of paired samples, large sample:

- (a) Determine the critical value $z_{\alpha/2}$ such that $\Phi(z_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $\Phi(z)$ is the standard normal distribution.
- (b) Compute the paired differences $d_i = x_i - y_i$, for $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$.
- (c) Compute the quantities $|d_i|$ and keep track of the sign of d_i . If $d_i = 0$, then remove it from the list and reduce n by one.
- (d) Order the $|d_i|$ from smallest to largest, assigning rank 1 to the smallest and rank n to the largest; $|d_i|$ has rank r_i if it is the r_i^{th} entry in the ordered list. In case of ties (i.e., $|d_i| = |d_j|$ for 2 or more values) assign each the average of their ranks.
- (e) Compute the sum of the signed ranks $R = \sum_{i=1}^n \text{sign}(d_i) r_i$.
- (f) Compute the test statistic $z = \frac{R}{\sqrt{\frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6}}}$.

(g) If $|z| > z_{\alpha/2}$, then reject the hypothesis. If $|z| \leq z_{\alpha/2}$, then do not reject the hypothesis.

14. Wilcoxon signed rank test of the hypothesis $M_x = M_y$ against the alternative $M_x > M_y$ (or $M_x < M_y$) of the medians of paired samples, large sample:

(a) Determine the critical value z_α such that $\Phi(z_\alpha) = 1 - \alpha$, where $\Phi(z)$ is the standard normal distribution.

(b) Compute the paired differences $d_i = x_i - y_i$, for $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$.

(c) Compute the quantities $|d_i|$ and keep track of the sign of d_i . If $d_i = 0$, then remove it from the list and reduce n by one.

(d) Order the $|d_i|$ from smallest to largest, assigning rank 1 to the smallest and rank n to the largest; $|d_i|$ has rank r_i if it is the r_i^{th} entry in the ordered list. In case of ties (i.e., $|d_i| = |d_j|$ for 2 or more values) assign each the average of their ranks.

(e) Compute the sum of the signed ranks $R = \sum_{i=1}^n \text{sign}(d_i) r_i$.

(f) Compute the test statistic $z = \frac{R}{\sqrt{\frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6}}}$. (For the alternative $M_x < M_y$, multiply the test statistic by -1 .)

(g) If $z > z_\alpha$, then reject the hypothesis. If $z \leq z_\alpha$, then do not reject the hypothesis.

15. Test of the hypothesis $\sigma_x^2 = \sigma_y^2$ against the alternative $\sigma_x^2 \neq \sigma_y^2$ (or $\sigma_x^2 > \sigma_y^2$) of the variances of independent normal samples:

(a) Determine the critical value $F_{\alpha/2}$ (F_α for the alternative $\sigma_x^2 > \sigma_y^2$) such that $F(F_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$ ($F(F_\alpha) = 1 - \alpha$), where $F(\cdot)$ is the F -distribution function with $n - 1$ and $m - 1$ degrees of freedom.

(b) Compute the standard deviations s_x and s_y of the samples.

(c) Compute the test statistic $F = \frac{s_x^2}{s_y^2}$. (For the two-sided test, put the larger value in the numerator.)

(d) If $F > F_{\alpha/2}$ ($F > F_\alpha$), then reject the hypothesis. If $F \leq F_{\alpha/2}$ ($F \leq F_\alpha$), then do not reject the hypothesis.

7.11.3 HYPOTHESIS TESTS: DISTRIBUTION OF A POPULATION

The following hypothesis tests assume a random sample of size n , given by $\{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n\}$.

1. Run test for randomness of a sample of binary values, large sample:

-
- (a) Determine the critical value $z_{\alpha/2}$ such that $\Phi(z_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $\Phi(z)$ is the standard normal distribution function.
- (b) Since the data are binary, denote the possible values of x_i by 0 and 1. Count the total number of zeros, and call this n_1 ; count the total number of ones, and call this n_2 . Group the data into maximal sub-sequences of consecutive zeros and ones, and call each such sub-sequence a *run*. Let R be the number of runs in the sample.
- (c) Compute $\mu_R = \frac{2n_1n_2}{n_1 + n_2} + 1$, and $\sigma_R^2 = \frac{(\mu_R-1)(\mu_R-2)}{n_1+n_2-1}$.
- (d) Compute the test statistic $z = \frac{R - \mu_R}{\sigma_R}$.
- (e) If $|z| > z_{\alpha/2}$, then reject the hypothesis. If $|z| \leq z_{\alpha/2}$, then do not reject the hypothesis.
2. Run test for randomness against an alternative that a trend is present in a sample of binary values, large sample:
- (a) Determine the critical value z_α such that $\Phi(z_\alpha) = 1 - \alpha$, where $\Phi(z)$ is the standard normal distribution function.
- (b) Since the data are binary, denote the possible values of x_i by 0 and 1. Count the total number of zeros, and call this n_1 ; count the total number of ones, and call this n_2 . Group the data into maximal sub-sequences of consecutive zeros and ones, and call each such sub-sequence a run. Let R be the number of runs in the sample.
- (c) Compute $\mu_R = \frac{2n_1n_2}{n_1 + n_2} + 1$, and $\sigma_R^2 = \frac{(\mu_R-1)(\mu_R-2)}{n_1+n_2-1}$.
- (d) Compute the test statistic $z = \frac{R - \mu_R}{\sigma_R}$.
- (e) If $z < -z_\alpha$, then reject the hypothesis (this suggests the presence of a trend in the data). If $z \geq -z_\alpha$, then do not reject the hypothesis.
3. Run test for randomness against an alternative that the data are periodic for a sample of binary values, large sample:
- (a) Determine the critical value z_α such that $\Phi(z_\alpha) = 1 - \alpha$, where $\Phi(z)$ is the standard normal distribution function.
- (b) Since the data are binary, denote the possible values of x_i by 0 and 1. Count the total number of zeros, and call this n_1 ; count the total number of ones, and call this n_2 . Group the data into maximal sub-sequences of consecutive zeros and ones, and call each such sub-sequence a run. Let R be the number of runs in the sample.
- (c) Compute $\mu_R = \frac{2n_1n_2}{n_1 + n_2} + 1$, and $\sigma_R^2 = \frac{(\mu_R-1)(\mu_R-2)}{n_1+n_2-1}$.
- (d) Compute the test statistic $z = \frac{R - \mu_R}{\sigma_R}$.
- (e) If $z > z_\alpha$, then reject the hypothesis (this suggests the data are periodic). If $z \leq z_\alpha$, then do not reject the hypothesis.

4. Chi-square test that the data are drawn from a specific k -parameter multinomial distribution, large sample:

- Determine the critical value χ_α^2 such that $F(\chi_\alpha^2) = 1 - \alpha$, where $F(x)$ is the chi-square distribution with $k - 1$ degrees of freedom.
- The k -parameter multinomial has k possible outcomes A_1, A_2, \dots, A_k with probabilities p_1, p_2, \dots, p_k . For $i = 1, 2, \dots, k$, compute n_i , the number of x_j 's corresponding to A_i .
- For $i = 1, 2, \dots, k$, compute the sample multinomial parameters $\hat{p}_i = n_i/n$.
- Compute the test statistic $\chi^2 = \sum_{i=1}^k \frac{(n_i - np_i)^2}{np_i}$.
- If $\chi^2 > \chi_\alpha^2$, then reject the hypothesis. If $\chi^2 \leq \chi_\alpha^2$, then do not reject the hypothesis.

5. Chi-square test for independence of attributes A and B having possible outcomes A_1, A_2, \dots, A_k and B_1, B_2, \dots, B_m :

- Determine the critical value χ_α^2 such that $F(\chi_\alpha^2) = 1 - \alpha$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the chi-square distribution with $(k - 1)(m - 1)$ degrees of freedom.
- For $i = 1, 2, \dots, k$ and $j = 1, 2, \dots, m$, define o_{ij} to be the number of observations having attributes A_i and B_j , and define $o_{i.} = \sum_{j=1}^m o_{ij}$ and $o_{.j} = \sum_{i=1}^k o_{ij}$.
- The variables defined above are often collected into a table, called a *contingency table*:

| Attribute | B_1 | B_2 | \dots | B_m | Totals |
|-----------|----------|----------|---------|----------|----------|
| A_1 | o_{11} | o_{12} | \dots | o_{1m} | $o_{1.}$ |
| A_2 | o_{21} | o_{22} | \dots | o_{2m} | $o_{2.}$ |
| \vdots | \vdots | \vdots | \dots | \vdots | \vdots |
| A_k | o_{k1} | o_{k2} | \dots | o_{km} | $o_{k.}$ |
| Totals | $o_{.1}$ | $o_{.2}$ | \dots | $o_{.m}$ | n |

- For $i = 1, 2, \dots, k$ and $j = 1, 2, \dots, m$, compute the sample mean number of observations in the ij^{th} cell of the contingency table $e_{ij} = \frac{o_{i.}o_{.j}}{n}$.
- Compute the test statistic, $\chi^2 = \sum_{i=1}^k \sum_{j=1}^m \frac{(o_{ij} - e_{ij})^2}{e_{ij}}$.
- If $\chi^2 > \chi_\alpha^2$, then reject the hypothesis (that is, conclude that the attributes are not independent). If $\chi^2 \leq \chi_\alpha^2$, then do not reject the hypothesis.

6. Kolmogorov–Smirnov test that $F_0(x)$ is the distribution of the population from which the sample was drawn:

- Determine the critical value D_α such that $Q(D_\alpha) = 1 - \alpha$, where $Q(D)$ is the distribution function for the Kolmogorov–Smirnov test statistic D .

- (b) Compute the sample distribution function $\widehat{F}(x)$.
- (c) Compute the test statistic, given the maximum deviation of the sample and target distribution functions $D = \max | \widehat{F}(x) - F_0(x) |$.
- (d) If $D > D_\alpha$, then reject the hypothesis (that is, conclude that the data are not drawn from $F_0(x)$). If $D \leq D_\alpha$, then do not reject the hypothesis.

7.11.4 HYPOTHESIS TESTS: DISTRIBUTIONS OF TWO POPULATIONS

The following hypothesis tests assume a random sample of size n , given by $\{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n\}$, and a random sample of size m , given by $\{y_1, y_2, \dots, y_m\}$.

1. Chi-square test that two k -parameter multinomial distributions are equal, large sample:
 - (a) Determine the critical value χ_α^2 such that $F(\chi_\alpha^2) = 1 - \alpha$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the chi-square distribution with $k - 1$ degrees of freedom.
 - (b) The k -parameter multinomials have k possible outcomes A_1, A_2, \dots, A_k . For $i = 1, 2, \dots, k$, compute n_i , the number of x_j 's corresponding to A_i , and compute m_i , the number of y_j 's corresponding to A_i .
 - (c) For $i = 1, 2, \dots, k$, compute the sample multinomial parameters $\hat{p}_i = \frac{n_i + m_i}{n + m}$.
 - (d) Compute the test statistic,

$$\chi^2 = \sum_{i=1}^k \frac{(n_i - n\hat{p}_i)^2}{n\hat{p}_i} + \sum_{i=1}^k \frac{(m_i - m\hat{p}_i)^2}{m\hat{p}_i}. \quad (7.11.1)$$

- (e) If $\chi^2 > \chi_\alpha^2$, then reject the hypothesis. If $\chi^2 \leq \chi_\alpha^2$, then do not reject the hypothesis.
2. Mann–Whitney–Wilcoxon test for equality of independent continuous distributions, large sample:
 - (a) Determine the critical value $z_{\alpha/2}$ such that $\Phi(z_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $\Phi(z)$ is the normal distribution function.
 - (b) For $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ and $j = 1, 2, \dots, m$, define $S_{ij} = 1$ if $x_i < y_j$ and $S_{ij} = 0$ if $x_i > y_j$.
 - (c) Compute $U = \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^m S_{ij}$.
 - (d) Compute the test statistic $z = \frac{U - \frac{mn}{2}}{\sqrt{\frac{mn(m+n+1)}{12}}}$.
 - (e) If $|z| > z_{\alpha/2}$, then reject the hypothesis. If $|z| \leq z_{\alpha/2}$, then do not reject the hypothesis.

3. Spearman rank correlation coefficient for independence of paired samples, large sample:

- (a) Determine the critical value $R_{\alpha/2}$ such that $F(R_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $F(R)$ is the distribution function for the Spearman rank correlation coefficient.
- (b) The samples are ordered, with the smallest x_i assigned the rank r_1 and the largest assigned the rank r_n ; for $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$, x_i is assigned rank r_i if it occupies the i^{th} position in the ordered list. Similarly the y_i 's are assigned ranks s_i . In case of a tie within a sample, the ranks are averaged.
- (c) Compute the test statistic

$$R = \frac{n \sum_{i=1}^n r_i s_i - \left(\sum_{i=1}^n r_i \right) \left(\sum_{i=1}^n s_i \right)}{\sqrt{\left(n \sum_{i=1}^n r_i^2 - \left(\sum_{i=1}^n r_i \right)^2 \right) \left(n \sum_{i=1}^n s_i^2 - \left(\sum_{i=1}^n s_i \right)^2 \right)}}$$

- (d) If $|R| > R_{\alpha/2}$, then reject the hypothesis. If $|R| \leq R_{\alpha/2}$, then do not reject the hypothesis.

7.11.5 SEQUENTIAL PROBABILITY RATIO TESTS

Given two simple hypotheses and m observations, compute:

1. $P_{0m} = \text{Prob}(\text{observations} \mid H_0)$.
2. $P_{1m} = \text{Prob}(\text{observations} \mid H_1)$.
3. $v_m = P_{1m}/P_{0m}$.

Then make one of the following decisions:

1. If $v_m \geq \frac{1 - \beta}{\alpha}$ then reject H_0 .
2. If $v_m \leq \frac{\beta}{1 - \alpha}$ then reject H_1 .
3. If $\frac{\beta}{1 - \alpha} < v_m < \frac{1 - \beta}{\alpha}$ then make another observation.

Hence, the number of samples taken is not *x ed a priori*, but determined as sampling occurs.

EXAMPLES

1. Let θ denote the fraction of defective items. Two simple hypotheses are $H_0: \theta = \theta_0 = 0.05$ and $H_1: \theta = \theta_1 = 0.15$. Choose $\alpha = 5\%$ and $\beta = 10\%$ (i.e., reject lot with

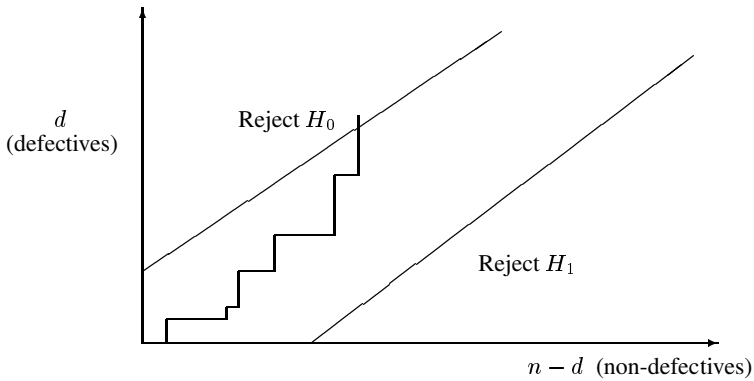
$\theta = \theta_0$ about 5% of the time; accept lot with $\theta = \theta_1$ about 10% of the time). If, after m observations, there are d defective items, then

$$P_{im} = \binom{m}{d} \theta_i^d (1 - \theta_i)^{m-d} \quad \text{and} \quad v_m = \left(\frac{\theta_1}{\theta_0} \right)^d \left(\frac{1 - \theta_1}{1 - \theta_0} \right)^{m-d} \quad (7.11.2)$$

or $v_m = 3^d (0.895)^{m-d}$, using the above numbers. The critical values are $\frac{\beta}{1-\alpha} = 0.105$ and $\frac{1-\beta}{\alpha} = 18$. The decision to perform another observation depends on whether or not

$$0.105 \leq 3^d (0.895)^{m-d} \leq 18. \quad (7.11.3)$$

Taking logarithms, a $(m - d, d)$ control chart can be drawn with the following lines: $d = 0.101(m - d) - 2.049$ and $d = 0.101(m - d) + 2.63$. On the figure below, a sample path leading to rejection of H_0 has been indicated:



- Let X be normally distributed with unknown mean μ and known standard deviation σ . Consider the two simple hypotheses, $H_0 : \mu = \mu_0$ and $H_1 : \mu = \mu_1$. If Y is the sum of the first m observations of X , then a (Y, m) control chart is constructed with the two lines:

$$\begin{aligned} Y &= \frac{\mu_0 + \mu_1}{2} m + \frac{\sigma^2}{\mu_1 - \mu_0} \log \frac{\beta}{1 - \alpha}, \\ Y &= \frac{\mu_0 + \mu_1}{2} m + \frac{\sigma^2}{\mu_1 - \mu_0} \log \frac{1 - \beta}{\alpha}. \end{aligned} \quad (7.11.4)$$

7.12 LINEAR REGRESSION

- The general linear statistical model assumes that the observed data values $\{y_1, y_2, \dots, y_m\}$ are of the form

$$y_i = \beta_0 + \beta_1 x_{i1} + \beta_2 x_{i2} + \dots + \beta_n x_{in} + \epsilon_i,$$

for $i = 1, 2, \dots, m$.

2. For $i = 1, 2, \dots, m$ and $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$, the independent variables x_{ij} are known (nonrandom).
3. $\{\beta_0, \beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_n\}$ are unknown parameters.
4. For each i , ϵ_i is a zero-mean normal random variable with unknown variance σ^2 .

7.12.1 LINEAR MODEL $y_i = \beta_0 + \beta_1 x_i + \epsilon$

1. Point estimate of β_1 :

$$\hat{\beta}_1 = \frac{m \sum_{i=1}^m x_i y_i - \left(\sum_{i=1}^m x_i \right) \left(\sum_{i=1}^m y_i \right)}{m \left(\sum_{i=1}^m x_i^2 \right) - \left(\sum_{i=1}^m x_i \right)^2}.$$

2. Point estimate of β_0 :

$$\hat{\beta}_0 = \bar{y} - \hat{\beta}_1 \bar{x}.$$

3. Point estimate of the correlation coefficient:

$$r = \hat{\rho} = \frac{m \sum_{i=1}^m x_i y_i - \left(\sum_{i=1}^m x_i \right) \left(\sum_{i=1}^m y_i \right)}{\sqrt{m \left(\sum_{i=1}^m x_i^2 \right) - \left(\sum_{i=1}^m x_i \right)^2} \sqrt{m \left(\sum_{i=1}^m y_i^2 \right) - \left(\sum_{i=1}^m y_i \right)^2}}.$$

4. Point estimate of error variance σ^2 : $\hat{\sigma}^2 = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^m (y_i - \hat{\beta}_0 - \hat{\beta}_1 x_i)^2}{m-2}$.

5. The standard error of the estimate is defined as $s_e = \sqrt{\hat{\sigma}^2}$.

6. Least-squares regression line: $\hat{y} = \hat{\beta}_0 + \hat{\beta}_1 x$.

7. Confidence interval for β_0 :

(a) Determine the critical value $t_{\alpha/2}$ such that $F(t_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the cumulative distribution function for the t -distribution with $m - 2$ degrees of freedom.

(b) Compute the point estimate $\hat{\beta}_0$.

(c) Compute $k = t_{\alpha/2} s_e \sqrt{\frac{1}{m} + \frac{\bar{x}^2}{\sum_{i=1}^m (x_i - \bar{x})^2}}$.

- (d) The $100(1 - \alpha)$ percent confidence interval for β_0 is given by $[\hat{\beta}_0 - k, \hat{\beta}_0 + k]$.

8. Confidence interval for β_1 :

- (a) Determine the critical value $t_{\alpha/2}$ such that $F(t_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the cumulative distribution function for the t -distribution with $m - 2$ degrees of freedom.
- (b) Compute the point estimate $\hat{\beta}_1$.
- (c) Compute $k = t_{\alpha/2} \frac{s_e}{\sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^m (x_i - \bar{x})^2}}$.
- (d) The $100(1 - \alpha)$ percent confidence interval for β_1 is given by $[\hat{\beta}_1 - k, \hat{\beta}_1 + k]$.

9. Confidence interval for σ^2 :

- (a) Determine the critical values $\chi_{\alpha/2}^2$ and $\chi_{1-\alpha/2}^2$ such that $F(\chi_{\alpha/2}^2) = 1 - \alpha/2$ and $F(\chi_{1-\alpha/2}^2) = \alpha/2$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the cumulative distribution function for the chi-square distribution function with $m - 2$ degrees of freedom.
- (b) Compute the point estimate $\widehat{\sigma^2}$.
- (c) Compute $k_1 = \frac{(n - 2)\widehat{\sigma^2}}{\chi_{\alpha/2}^2}$ and $k_2 = \frac{(n - 2)\widehat{\sigma^2}}{\chi_{1-\alpha/2}^2}$.
- (d) The $100(1 - \alpha)$ percent confidence interval for σ^2 is given by $[k_1, k_2]$.

10. Confidence interval (predictive interval) for y , given x_0 :

- (a) Determine the critical value $t_{\alpha/2}$ such that $F(t_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the cumulative distribution function for the t -distribution with $m - 2$ degrees of freedom.
- (b) Compute the point estimates $\hat{\beta}_0$, $\hat{\beta}_1$, and s_e .
- (c) Compute $k = t_{\alpha/2} s_e \sqrt{\frac{1}{m} + \frac{(x_0 - \bar{x})^2}{\sum_{i=1}^m (x_i - \bar{x})^2}}$ and $\hat{y} = \hat{\beta}_0 + \hat{\beta}_1 x_0$.
- (d) The $100(1 - \alpha)$ percent confidence interval for β_1 is given by $[\hat{y} - k, \hat{y} + k]$.

11. Test of the hypothesis $\beta_1 = 0$ against the alternative $\beta_1 \neq 0$:

- (a) Determine the critical value $t_{\alpha/2}$ such that $F(t_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the cumulative distribution function for the t -distribution with $m - 2$ degrees of freedom.

- (b) Compute the point estimates $\hat{\beta}_1$ and s_e .
- (c) Compute the test statistic $t = \frac{\hat{\beta}_1}{s_e} \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^m (x_i - \bar{x})^2}$.
- (d) If $|t| > t_{\alpha/2}$, then reject the hypothesis. If $|t| \leq t_{\alpha/2}$, then do not reject the hypothesis.

7.12.2 GENERAL MODEL $\mathbf{y} = \beta_0 + \beta_1 \mathbf{x}_1 + \beta_2 \mathbf{x}_2 + \cdots + \beta_n \mathbf{x}_n + \epsilon$

1. The m equations ($i = 1, 2, \dots, m$)

$$y_i = \beta_0 + \beta_1 x_{i1} + \beta_2 x_{i2} + \cdots + \beta_n x_{in} + \epsilon_i \quad (7.12.1)$$

can be written in matrix notation as $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{X}\beta + \epsilon$ where

$$\mathbf{y} = \begin{bmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \\ \vdots \\ y_m \end{bmatrix}, \quad \beta = \begin{bmatrix} \beta_0 \\ \beta_1 \\ \vdots \\ \beta_n \end{bmatrix}, \quad \epsilon = \begin{bmatrix} \epsilon_1 \\ \epsilon_2 \\ \vdots \\ \epsilon_m \end{bmatrix}, \quad (7.12.2)$$

and

$$\mathbf{X} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & x_{11} & x_{12} & \cdots & x_{1n} \\ 1 & x_{21} & x_{22} & \cdots & x_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 1 & x_{m1} & x_{m2} & \cdots & x_{mn} \end{bmatrix}. \quad (7.12.3)$$

2. Throughout the remainder of the section, we assume \mathbf{X} has full column rank.
3. The least-squares estimate $\hat{\beta}$ satisfies the *normal equations* $\mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X} \hat{\beta} = \mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{y}$. That is, $\hat{\beta} = (\mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X})^{-1} \mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{y}$.
4. Point estimate of σ^2 :

$$\hat{\sigma}^2 = \frac{1}{m - n - 1} (\mathbf{y}^T \mathbf{y} - \hat{\beta}^T (\mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{y})).$$

5. The standard error of the estimate is defined as $s_e = \sqrt{\hat{\sigma}^2}$.
6. Least-squares regression line: $\hat{y} = \mathbf{x}^T \hat{\beta}$.
7. In the following, let c_{ij} denote the (i, j) th entry in the matrix $(\mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X})^{-1}$.
8. Confidence interval for β_i :

- (a) Determine the critical value $t_{\alpha/2}$ such that $F(t_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the cumulative distribution function for the t -distribution with $m - n - 1$ degrees of freedom.

- (b) Compute the point estimate $\widehat{\beta}_i$ by solving the normal equations, and compute s_e .
- (c) Compute $k_i = t_{\alpha/2} s_e \sqrt{c_{ii}}$.
- (d) The $100(1 - \alpha)$ percent confidence interval for β_i is given by $[\widehat{\beta}_i - k_i, \widehat{\beta}_i + k_i]$.

9. Confidence interval for σ^2 :

- (a) Determine the critical values $\chi_{\alpha/2}^2$ and $\chi_{1-\alpha/2}^2$ such that $F(\chi_{\alpha/2}^2) = 1 - \alpha/2$ and $F(\chi_{1-\alpha/2}^2) = \alpha/2$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the cumulative distribution function for the chi-square distribution with $m - n - 1$ degrees of freedom.
- (b) Compute the point estimate $\widehat{\sigma}^2$.
- (c) Compute $k_1 = \frac{(m - n - 1)\widehat{\sigma}^2}{\chi_{\alpha/2}^2}$ and $k_2 = \frac{(m - n - 1)\widehat{\sigma}^2}{\chi_{1-\alpha/2}^2}$.
- (d) The $100(1 - \alpha)$ percent confidence interval for σ^2 is given by $[k_1, k_2]$.

10. Confidence interval (predictive interval) for y , given \mathbf{x}_0 :

- (a) Determine the critical value $t_{\alpha/2}$ such that $F(t_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the cumulative distribution function for the t -distribution with $n - m - 1$ degrees of freedom.
- (b) Compute the point estimate $\widehat{\beta}_i$ by solving the normal equations, and compute s_e .
- (c) Compute $k = t_{\alpha/2} s_e \sqrt{1 + \mathbf{x}_0^T (\mathbf{X}^T \mathbf{X})^{-1} \mathbf{x}_0}$ and $\widehat{y} = \mathbf{x}_0^T \widehat{\beta}$.
- (d) The $100(1 - \alpha)$ percent confidence interval for β_1 is given by $[\widehat{y} - k, \widehat{y} + k]$.

11. Test of the hypothesis $\beta_i = 0$ against the alternative $\beta_i \neq 0$:

- (a) Determine the critical value $t_{\alpha/2}$ such that $F(t_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the cumulative distribution function for the t -distribution with $m - n - 1$ degrees of freedom.
- (b) Compute the point estimates $\widehat{\beta}_i$ and s_e by solving the normal equations.
- (c) Compute the test statistic $t = \frac{\widehat{\beta}_i}{s_e \sqrt{c_{ii}}}$.
- (d) If $|t| > t_{\alpha/2}$, then reject the hypothesis. If $|t| \leq t_{\alpha/2}$, then do not reject the hypothesis.

7.13 ANALYSIS OF VARIANCE (ANOVA)

Analysis of variance (ANOVA) is a statistical methodology for determining information about means. The analysis uses variances both between and within samples.

7.13.1 ONE-FACTOR ANOVA

1. Suppose we have k samples from k populations, with the j^{th} population consisting of n_j observations,

$$\begin{array}{c} y_{11}, y_{21}, \dots, y_{n_1 1} \\ y_{12}, y_{22}, \dots, y_{n_2 2} \\ \vdots \\ y_{1k}, y_{2k}, \dots, y_{n_k k}. \end{array}$$

2. One-factor model:

- (a) The one-factor ANOVA assumes that the i^{th} observation from the j^{th} sample is of the form $y_{ij} = \mu + \tau_j + e_{ij}$.
- (b) For $j = 1, 2, \dots, k$, the parameter $\mu_j = \mu + \tau_j$ is the unknown mean of the j^{th} population, and $\sum_{j=1}^k \tau_j = 0$.
- (c) For $i = 1, 2, \dots, k$ and $j = 1, 2, \dots, n_j$, the random variables e_{ij} are independent and normally distributed with mean zero and variance σ^2 .
- (d) The total number of observations is $n = n_1 + n_2 + \dots + n_k$.

3. Point estimates of means:

- (a) Total sample mean $\hat{y} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{j=1}^k \sum_{i=1}^{n_j} y_{ij}$.
- (b) Sample mean of j^{th} sample $\hat{y}_j = \frac{1}{n_j} \sum_{i=1}^{n_j} y_{ij}$.

4. Sums of squares:

- (a) Sum of squares between samples $SS_b = \sum_{j=1}^k n_j (\hat{y}_j - \hat{y})^2$.
- (b) Sum of squares within samples $SS_w = \sum_{j=1}^k \sum_{i=1}^{n_j} (y_{ij} - \hat{y}_j)^2$.
- (c) Total sum of squares Total SS = $\sum_{j=1}^k \sum_{i=1}^{n_j} (y_{ij} - \hat{y})^2$.
- (d) Partition of total sum of squares Total SS = $SS_b + SS_w$.

5. Degrees of freedom:

- (a) Between samples, $k - 1$.
- (b) Within samples, $n - k$.
- (c) Total, $n - 1$.

6. Mean squares:

- (a) Obtained by dividing sums of squares by their respective degrees of freedom.
- (b) Between samples, $MS_b = \frac{SS_b}{k - 1}$.
- (c) Within samples (also called the *residual mean square*), $MS_w = \frac{SS_w}{n - k}$.

7. Test of the hypothesis $\mu_1 = \mu_2 = \dots = \mu_k$ against the alternative $\mu_i \neq \mu_j$ for some i and j ; equivalently, test the null hypothesis $\tau_1 = \tau_2 = \dots = \tau_k = 0$ against the hypothesis $\tau_j \neq 0$ for some j :

- (a) Determine the critical value F_α such that $F(F_\alpha) = 1 - \alpha$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the cumulative distribution function for the F -distribution with $k - 1$ and $n - k$ degrees of freedom.
- (b) Compute the point estimates \hat{y} and \hat{y}_j for $j = 1, 2, \dots, k$.
- (c) Compute the sums of squares SS_b and SS_w .
- (d) Compute the mean squares MS_b and MS_w .
- (e) Compute the test statistic $F = \frac{MS_b}{MS_w}$.
- (f) If $F > F_\alpha$, then reject the hypothesis. If $F \leq F_\alpha$, then do not reject the hypothesis.
- (g) The above computations are often organized into an ANOVA table:

| Source | SS | D.O.F. | MS | F Ratio |
|-----------------|----------|---------|--------|-------------------------|
| Between samples | SS_b | $k - 1$ | MS_b | $F = \frac{MS_b}{MS_w}$ |
| Within samples | SS_w | $n - k$ | MS_w | |
| Total | Total SS | $n - 1$ | | |

8. Confidence interval for $\mu_i - \mu_j$, for $i \neq j$:

- (a) Determine the critical value $t_{\alpha/2}$ such that $F(t_{\alpha/2}) = 1 - \alpha/2$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the cumulative distribution function for the t -distribution with $n - k$ degrees of freedom.
- (b) Compute the point estimates \hat{y}_i and \hat{y}_j .
- (c) Compute the residual mean square MS_w .
- (d) Compute $k = t_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{MS_w \left(\frac{1}{n_i} + \frac{1}{n_j} \right)}$.
- (e) The $100(1 - \alpha)$ percent confidence interval for $\mu_i - \mu_j$ is given by $[(\hat{y}_i - \hat{y}_j) - k, (\hat{y}_i - \hat{y}_j) + k]$.

9. Confidence interval for contrast in the means, defined by $C = c_1\mu_1 + c_2\mu_2 + \dots + c_k\mu_k$, where $c_1 + c_2 + \dots + c_k = 0$:

- (a) Determine the critical value F_α such that $F(F_\alpha) = 1 - \alpha$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the cumulative distribution function for the F -distribution with $k - 1$ and $n - k$ degrees of freedom.

(b) Compute the point estimates \hat{y}_j for $j = 1, 2, \dots, k$.

(c) Compute the residual mean square MS_w .

(d) Compute $k = \sqrt{F_\alpha MS_w \left(\frac{k-1}{n} \sum_{j=1}^k c_j^2 \right)}$.

(e) The $100(1 - \alpha)$ percent confidence interval for the contrast C is given by $\left[\sum_{j=1}^k c_j \hat{y}_j - k, \sum_{j=1}^k c_j \hat{y}_j + k \right]$.

7.13.2 UNREPLICATED TWO-FACTOR ANOVA

1. Suppose we have a sample of observations y_{ij} indexed by two factors $i = 1, 2, \dots, m$ and $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$.

2. Unreplicated two-factor model:

(a) The unreplicated two-factor ANOVA assumes that the ij^{th} observation is of the form $y_{ij} = \mu + \beta_i + \tau_j + e_{ij}$.

(b) μ is the overall mean, β_i is the i^{th} differential effect of factor one, τ_j is the j^{th} differential effect of factor two, and

$$\sum_{i=1}^m \beta_i = \sum_{j=1}^n \tau_j = 0.$$

(c) For $i = 1, 2, \dots, m$ and $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$, the random variables e_{ij} are independent and normally distributed with mean zero and variance σ^2 .

(d) Total number of observations is mn .

3. Point estimates of means:

(a) Total sample mean $\hat{y} = \frac{1}{mn} \sum_{i=1}^m \sum_{j=1}^n y_{ij}$.

(b) i^{th} factor-one sample mean $\hat{y}_{i\cdot} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{j=1}^n y_{ij}$.

(c) j^{th} factor-two sample mean $\hat{y}_{\cdot j} = \frac{1}{m} \sum_{i=1}^m y_{ij}$.

4. Sums of squares:

(a) Factor-one sum of squares $SS_1 = n \sum_{i=1}^m (\hat{y}_{i\cdot} - \hat{y})^2$.

(b) Factor-two sum of squares $SS_2 = m \sum_{j=1}^n (\hat{y}_{\cdot j} - \hat{y})^2$.

-
- (c) Residual sum of squares $SS_r = \sum_{i=1}^m \sum_{j=1}^n (y_{ij} - \hat{y}_{i.} - \hat{y}_{.j} + \hat{y})^2$.
- (d) Total sum of squares Total SS = $\sum_{j=1}^n \sum_{i=1}^m (y_{ij} - \hat{y})^2$.
- (e) Partition of total sum of squares Total SS = $SS_1 + SS_2 + SS_r$.

5. Degrees of freedom:

- (a) Factor one, $m - 1$.
- (b) Factor two, $n - 1$.
- (c) Residual, $(m - 1)(n - 1)$.
- (d) Total, $mn - 1$.

6. Mean squares:

- (a) Obtained by dividing sums of squares by their respective degrees of freedom.
- (b) Factor-one mean square $MS_1 = \frac{SS_1}{m - 1}$.
- (c) Factor-two mean square $MS_2 = \frac{SS_2}{n - 1}$.
- (d) Residual mean square $MS_r = \frac{SS_r}{(m - 1)(n - 1)}$.

7. Test of the null hypothesis $\beta_1 = \beta_2 = \dots = \beta_m = 0$ (no factor-one effects) against the alternative hypothesis $\beta_i \neq 0$ for some i :

- (a) Determine the critical value F_α such that $F(F_\alpha) = 1 - \alpha$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the cumulative distribution function for the F -distribution with $m - 1$ and $(m - 1)(n - 1)$ degrees of freedom.
- (b) Compute the point estimates \hat{y} and $\hat{y}_{i.}$ for $i = 1, 2, \dots, m$.
- (c) Compute the sums of squares SS_1 and SS_r .
- (d) Compute the mean squares MS_1 and MS_r .
- (e) Compute the test statistic $F = \frac{MS_1}{MS_r}$.
- (f) If $F > F_\alpha$, then reject the hypothesis. If $F \leq F_\alpha$, then do not reject the hypothesis.

8. Test of the null hypothesis $\tau_1 = \tau_2 = \dots = \tau_n = 0$ (no factor-two effects) against the alternative hypothesis $\tau_j \neq 0$ for some j :

- (a) Determine the critical value F_α such that $F(F_\alpha) = 1 - \alpha$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the cumulative distribution function for the F -distribution with $n - 1$ and $(m - 1)(n - 1)$ degrees of freedom.
- (b) Compute the point estimates \hat{y} and $\hat{y}_{.j}$ for $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$.
- (c) Compute the sums of squares SS_2 and SS_r .

- (d) Compute the mean squares MS_2 and MS_r .
- (e) Compute the test statistic $F = \frac{MS_2}{MS_r}$.
- (f) If $F > F_\alpha$, then reject the hypothesis. If $F \leq F_\alpha$, then do not reject the hypothesis.
- (g) The above computations are often organized into an ANOVA table:

| Source | SS | D.O.F. | MS | F Ratio |
|------------|----------|------------------|--------|-------------------------|
| Factor one | SS_1 | $m - 1$ | MS_1 | $F = \frac{MS_1}{MS_r}$ |
| Factor two | SS_2 | $n - 1$ | MS_2 | $F = \frac{MS_2}{MS_r}$ |
| Residual | SS_r | $(m - 1)(n - 1)$ | MS_r | |
| Total | Total SS | $mn - 1$ | | |

9. Confidence interval for contrast in the factor-one means, defined by $C = c_1\beta_1 + c_2\beta_2 + \cdots + c_m\beta_m$, where $c_1 + c_2 + \cdots + c_m = 0$:

- (a) Determine the critical value F_α such that $F(F_\alpha) = 1 - \alpha$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the cumulative distribution function for the F -distribution with $m - 1$ and $(m - 1)(n - 1)$ degrees of freedom.
- (b) Compute the point estimates \hat{y}_i , for $i = 1, 2, \dots, m$.
- (c) Compute the residual mean square MS_r .

(d) Compute $k = \sqrt{F_\alpha MS_r \left(\frac{m - 1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^m c_i^2 \right)}$.

- (e) The $100(1 - \alpha)$ percent confidence interval for the contrast C is given by

$$\left[\sum_{i=1}^m c_i \hat{y}_i - k, \sum_{i=1}^m c_i \hat{y}_i + k \right].$$

10. Confidence interval for contrast in the factor-two means, defined by $C = c_1\tau_1 + c_2\tau_2 + \cdots + c_n\tau_n$, where $c_1 + c_2 + \cdots + c_n = 0$:

- (a) Determine the critical value F_α such that $F(F_\alpha) = 1 - \alpha$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the cumulative distribution function for the F -distribution with $n - 1$ and $(m - 1)(n - 1)$ degrees of freedom.
- (b) Compute the point estimates $\hat{y}_{\cdot j}$ for $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$.
- (c) Compute the residual mean square MS_r .

(d) Compute $k = \sqrt{F_\alpha MS_r \left(\frac{n - 1}{m} \sum_{j=1}^n c_j^2 \right)}$.

- (e) The $100(1 - \alpha)$ percent confidence interval for the contrast C is given by

$$\left[\sum_{j=1}^n c_j \hat{y}_{\cdot j} - k, \sum_{j=1}^n c_j \hat{y}_{\cdot j} + k \right].$$

7.13.3 REPLICATED TWO-FACTOR ANOVA

1. Suppose we have a sample of observations y_{ijk} indexed by two factors $i = 1, 2, \dots, m$ and $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$. Moreover, there are p observations per factor pair (i, j) , indexed by $k = 1, 2, \dots, p$.
2. Replicated two-factor model:
 - (a) The replicated two-factor ANOVA assumes that the ijk^{th} observation is of the form $y_{ijk} = \mu + \beta_i + \tau_j + \gamma_{ij} + e_{ijk}$.
 - (b) μ is the overall mean, β_i is the i^{th} differential effect of factor one, τ_j is the j differential effect of factor two, and

$$\sum_{i=1}^m \beta_i = \sum_{j=1}^n \tau_j = 0.$$

- (c) For $i = 1, 2, \dots, m$ and $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$, γ_{ij} is the ij^{th} interaction effect of factors one and two.
 - (d) For $i = 1, 2, \dots, m$, $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$, and $k = 1, 2, \dots, p$, the random variables e_{ijk} are independent and normally distributed with mean zero and variance σ^2 .
 - (e) Total number of observations is mnp .
3. Point estimates of means:

- (a) Total sample mean $\hat{y} = \frac{1}{mnp} \sum_{i=1}^m \sum_{j=1}^n \sum_{k=1}^p y_{ijk}$.

- (b) i^{th} factor-one sample mean $\hat{y}_{i..} = \frac{1}{np} \sum_{j=1}^n \sum_{k=1}^p y_{ijk}$.

- (c) j^{th} factor-two sample mean $\hat{y}_{.j.} = \frac{1}{mp} \sum_{i=1}^m \sum_{k=1}^p y_{ijk}$.

- (d) ij^{th} interaction mean $\hat{y}_{ij.} = \frac{1}{p} \sum_{k=1}^p y_{ijk}$.

4. Sums of squares:

- (a) Factor-one sum of squares $SS_1 = np \sum_{i=1}^m (\hat{y}_{i..} - \hat{y})^2$.

- (b) Factor-two sum of squares $SS_2 = mp \sum_{j=1}^n (\hat{y}_{.j.} - \hat{y})^2$.

- (c) Interaction sum of squares $SS_{12} = p \sum_{i=1}^m \sum_{j=1}^n (\hat{y}_{ij.} - \hat{y})^2$.

- (d) Residual sum of squares $SS_r = \sum_{i=1}^m \sum_{j=1}^n \sum_{k=1}^p (y_{ijk} - \hat{y}_{i..} - \hat{y}_{.j.} + \hat{y})^2$.
- (e) Total sum of squares Total SS = $\sum_{i=1}^m \sum_{j=1}^n \sum_{k=1}^p (y_{ijk} - \hat{y})^2$.
- (f) Partition of total sum of squares Total SS = $SS_1 + SS_2 + SS_{12} + SS_r$.

5. Degrees of freedom:

- (a) Factor one, $m - 1$.
- (b) Factor two, $n - 1$.
- (c) Interaction, $(m - 1)(n - 1)$.
- (d) Residual, $mn(p - 1)$.
- (e) Total, $mnp - 1$.

6. Mean squares:

- (a) Obtained by dividing sums of squares by their respective degrees of freedom.
- (b) Factor-one mean square $MS_1 = \frac{SS_1}{m - 1}$.
- (c) Factor-two mean square $MS_2 = \frac{SS_2}{n - 1}$.
- (d) Interaction mean square $MS_{12} = \frac{SS_{12}}{(m - 1)(n - 1)}$.
- (e) Residual mean square $MS_r = \frac{SS_r}{mn(p - 1)}$.

7. Test of the null hypothesis $\beta_1 = \beta_2 = \dots = \beta_m = 0$ (no factor-one effects) against the alternative hypothesis $\beta_i \neq 0$ for some i :

- (a) Determine the critical value F_α such that $F(F_\alpha) = 1 - \alpha$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the cumulative distribution function for the F -distribution with $m - 1$ and $mn(p - 1)$ degrees of freedom.
- (b) Compute the point estimates \hat{y} and $\hat{y}_{i..}$ for $i = 1, 2, \dots, m$.
- (c) Compute the sums of squares SS_1 and SS_r .
- (d) Compute the mean squares MS_1 and MS_r .
- (e) Compute the test statistic $F = \frac{MS_1}{MS_r}$.
- (f) If $F > F_\alpha$, then reject the hypothesis. If $F \leq F_\alpha$, then do not reject the hypothesis.

8. Test of the null hypothesis $\tau_1 = \tau_2 = \dots = \tau_n = 0$ (no factor-two effects) against the alternative hypothesis $\tau_j \neq 0$ for some j :

- (a) Determine the critical value F_α such that $F(F_\alpha) = 1 - \alpha$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the cumulative distribution function for the F -distribution with $n - 1$ and $mn(p - 1)$ degrees of freedom.

- (b) Compute the point estimates \hat{y} and $\hat{y}_{\cdot j}$ for $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$.
- (c) Compute the sums of squares SS_2 and SS_r .
- (d) Compute the mean squares MS_2 and MS_r .
- (e) Compute the test statistic $F = \frac{MS_2}{MS_r}$.
- (f) If $F > F_\alpha$, then reject the hypothesis. If $F \leq F_\alpha$, then do not reject the hypothesis.

9. Test of the null hypothesis $\gamma_{ij} = 0$ for $i = 1, 2, \dots, m$ and $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$ (no factor-one effects) against the alternative hypothesis $\gamma_{ij} \neq 0$ for some i and j :

- (a) Determine the critical value F_α such that $F(F_\alpha) = 1 - \alpha$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the cumulative distribution function for the F -distribution with $(m - 1)(n - 1)$ and $mn(p - 1)$ degrees of freedom.
- (b) Compute the point estimates \hat{y} , $\hat{y}_{i\cdot}$, $\hat{y}_{\cdot j}$, and \hat{y}_{ij} for $i = 1, 2, \dots, m$ and $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$.
- (c) Compute the sums of squares SS_{12} and SS_r .
- (d) Compute the mean squares MS_{12} and MS_r .
- (e) Compute the test statistic $F = \frac{MS_{12}}{MS_r}$.
- (f) If $F > F_\alpha$, then reject the hypothesis. If $F \leq F_\alpha$, then do not reject the hypothesis.
- (g) The above computations are often organized into an ANOVA table:

| Source | SS | D.O.F. | MS | F Ratio |
|-------------|-----------|------------------|-----------|--------------------|
| Factor one | SS_1 | $m - 1$ | MS_1 | $F = MS_1/MS_r$ |
| Factor two | SS_2 | $n - 1$ | MS_2 | $F = MS_2/MS_r$ |
| Interaction | SS_{12} | $(m - 1)(n - 1)$ | MS_{12} | $F = MS_{12}/MS_r$ |
| Residual | SS_r | $mn(p - 1)$ | MS_r | |
| Total | Total SS | $mnp - 1$ | | |

10. Confidence interval for contrast in the factor-one means, defined by $C = c_1\beta_1 + c_2\beta_2 + \dots + c_m\beta_m$, where $c_1 + c_2 + \dots + c_m = 0$:

- (a) Determine the critical value F_α such that $F(F_\alpha) = 1 - \alpha$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the cumulative distribution function for the F -distribution with $m - 1$ and $mn(p - 1)$ degrees of freedom.
- (b) Compute the point estimates $\hat{y}_{i\cdot}$ for $i = 1, 2, \dots, m$.
- (c) Compute the residual mean square MS_r .
- (d) Compute $k = \sqrt{F_\alpha MS_r \left(\frac{m - 1}{np} \sum_{i=1}^m c_i^2 \right)}$.
- (e) The $100(1 - \alpha)$ percent confidence interval for the contrast C is given by

$$\left[\sum_{i=1}^m c_i \hat{y}_{i\cdot} - k, \sum_{i=1}^m c_i \hat{y}_{i\cdot} + k \right].$$

11. Confidence interval for contrast in the factor-two means, defined by $C = c_1\tau_1 + c_2\tau_2 + \dots + c_n\tau_n$, where $c_1 + c_2 + \dots + c_n = 0$:

(a) Determine the critical value F_α such that $F(F_\alpha) = 1 - \alpha$, where $F(\cdot)$ is the cumulative distribution function for the F -distribution with $n - 1$ and $mn(p - 1)$ degrees of freedom.

(b) Compute the point estimates $\hat{y}_{.j}$, for $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$.

(c) Compute the residual mean square MS_r .

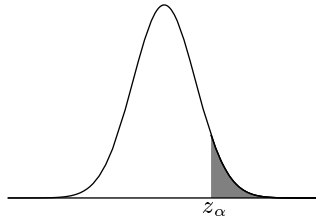
(d) Compute $k = \sqrt{F_\alpha MS_r \left(\frac{n - 1}{mp} \sum_{j=1}^n c_j^2 \right)}$.

(e) The $100(1 - \alpha)$ percent confidence interval for the contrast C is given by

$$\left[\sum_{j=1}^n c_j \hat{y}_{.j} - k, \sum_{j=1}^n c_j \hat{y}_{.j} + k \right].$$

FIGURE 7.5

The shaded region is defined by $X \geq z_\alpha$ and has area α (here X is $N(0, 1)$).



7.14 PROBABILITY TABLES

7.14.1 CRITICAL VALUES

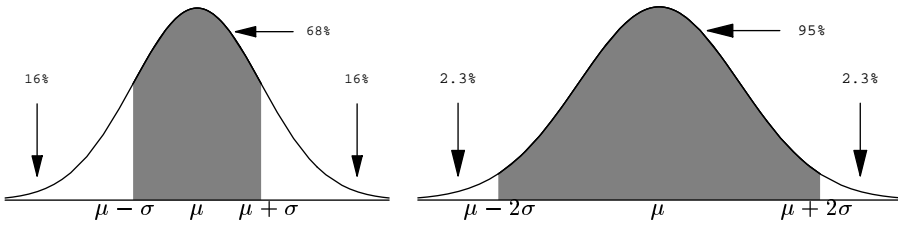
1. The critical value z_α satisfies $\Phi(z_\alpha) = 1 - \alpha$ (where, as usual, $\Phi(z)$ is the distribution function for the standard normal). See Figure 7.5.

$$\Phi(z) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-t^2/2} dt = \frac{1}{2} \left(1 + \operatorname{erf} \left(\frac{z}{\sqrt{2}} \right) \right) \quad (7.14.1)$$

2. The critical value t_α satisfies $F(t_\alpha) = 1 - \alpha$ where $F(\cdot)$ is the distribution function for the t -distribution (for a specified number of degrees of freedom).

FIGURE 7.6

Illustration of σ and 2σ regions of a normal distribution.



3. The critical value χ^2_α satisfies $F(\chi^2_\alpha) = 1 - \alpha$ where $F(\cdot)$ is the distribution function for the χ^2 -distribution (for a specified number of degrees of freedom).
4. The critical value F_α satisfies $F(F_\alpha) = 1 - \alpha$ where $F(\cdot)$ is the distribution function for the F -distribution (for a specified number of degrees of freedom).

7.14.2 TABLE OF THE NORMAL DISTRIBUTION

For a standard normal random variable (see Figure 7.6):

| Limits | | Proportion of the total area | Remaining area |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|----------------|
| $\mu - \lambda\sigma$ | $\mu + \lambda\sigma$ | (%) | (%) |
| $\mu - \sigma$ | $\mu + \sigma$ | 68.27 | 31.73 |
| $\mu - 1.65\sigma$ | $\mu + 1.65\sigma$ | 90 | 10 |
| $\mu - 1.96\sigma$ | $\mu + 1.96\sigma$ | 95 | 5 |
| $\mu - 2\sigma$ | $\mu + 2\sigma$ | 95.45 | 4.55 |
| $\mu - 2.58\sigma$ | $\mu + 2.58\sigma$ | 99.0 | 0.99 |
| $\mu - 3\sigma$ | $\mu + 3\sigma$ | 99.73 | 0.27 |
| $\mu - 3.09\sigma$ | $\mu + 3.09\sigma$ | 99.8 | 0.2 |
| $\mu - 3.29\sigma$ | $\mu + 3.29\sigma$ | 99.9 | 0.1 |

| x | 1.282 | 1.645 | 1.960 | 2.326 | 2.576 | 3.090 |
|------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| $\Phi(x)$ | 0.90 | 0.95 | 0.975 | 0.99 | 0.995 | 0.999 |
| $2[1 - \Phi(x)]$ | 0.20 | 0.10 | 0.05 | 0.02 | 0.01 | 0.002 |

| x | 3.09 | 3.72 | 4.26 | 4.75 | 5.20 | 5.61 | 6.00 | 6.36 |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| $1 - \Phi(x)$ | 10^{-3} | 10^{-4} | 10^{-5} | 10^{-6} | 10^{-7} | 10^{-8} | 10^{-9} | 10^{-10} |

For large values of x :

$$\left[\frac{e^{-x^2/2}}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \left(\frac{1}{x} - \frac{1}{x^3} \right) \right] < 1 - \Phi(x) < \left[\frac{e^{-x^2/2}}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \left(\frac{1}{x} \right) \right] \tag{7.14.2}$$

| x | $F(x)$ | $1 - F(x)$ | $f(x)$ | x | $F(x)$ | $1 - F(x)$ | $f(x)$ |
|------|---------|------------|---------|------|---------|------------|---------|
| 0.01 | 0.50399 | 0.49601 | 0.39892 | 0.02 | 0.50798 | 0.49202 | 0.39886 |
| 0.03 | 0.51197 | 0.48803 | 0.39876 | 0.04 | 0.51595 | 0.48405 | 0.39862 |
| 0.05 | 0.51994 | 0.48006 | 0.39844 | 0.06 | 0.52392 | 0.47608 | 0.39822 |
| 0.07 | 0.52790 | 0.47210 | 0.39797 | 0.08 | 0.53188 | 0.46812 | 0.39767 |
| 0.09 | 0.53586 | 0.46414 | 0.39733 | 0.10 | 0.53983 | 0.46017 | 0.39695 |
| 0.11 | 0.54380 | 0.45621 | 0.39654 | 0.12 | 0.54776 | 0.45224 | 0.39608 |
| 0.13 | 0.55172 | 0.44828 | 0.39559 | 0.14 | 0.55567 | 0.44433 | 0.39505 |
| 0.15 | 0.55962 | 0.44038 | 0.39448 | 0.16 | 0.56356 | 0.43644 | 0.39387 |
| 0.17 | 0.56749 | 0.43250 | 0.39322 | 0.18 | 0.57142 | 0.42858 | 0.39253 |
| 0.19 | 0.57534 | 0.42466 | 0.39181 | 0.20 | 0.57926 | 0.42074 | 0.39104 |
| 0.21 | 0.58317 | 0.41683 | 0.39024 | 0.22 | 0.58706 | 0.41294 | 0.38940 |
| 0.23 | 0.59095 | 0.40905 | 0.38853 | 0.24 | 0.59484 | 0.40516 | 0.38762 |
| 0.25 | 0.59871 | 0.40129 | 0.38667 | 0.26 | 0.60257 | 0.39743 | 0.38568 |
| 0.27 | 0.60642 | 0.39358 | 0.38466 | 0.28 | 0.61026 | 0.38974 | 0.38361 |
| 0.29 | 0.61409 | 0.38591 | 0.38251 | 0.30 | 0.61791 | 0.38209 | 0.38139 |
| 0.31 | 0.62172 | 0.37828 | 0.38023 | 0.32 | 0.62552 | 0.37448 | 0.37903 |
| 0.33 | 0.62930 | 0.37070 | 0.37780 | 0.34 | 0.63307 | 0.36693 | 0.37654 |
| 0.35 | 0.63683 | 0.36317 | 0.37524 | 0.36 | 0.64058 | 0.35942 | 0.37391 |
| 0.37 | 0.64431 | 0.35569 | 0.37255 | 0.38 | 0.64803 | 0.35197 | 0.37115 |
| 0.39 | 0.65173 | 0.34827 | 0.36973 | 0.40 | 0.65542 | 0.34458 | 0.36827 |
| 0.41 | 0.65910 | 0.34090 | 0.36678 | 0.42 | 0.66276 | 0.33724 | 0.36526 |
| 0.43 | 0.66640 | 0.33360 | 0.36371 | 0.44 | 0.67003 | 0.32997 | 0.36213 |
| 0.45 | 0.67365 | 0.32636 | 0.36053 | 0.46 | 0.67724 | 0.32276 | 0.35889 |
| 0.47 | 0.68082 | 0.31918 | 0.35723 | 0.48 | 0.68439 | 0.31561 | 0.35553 |
| 0.49 | 0.68793 | 0.31207 | 0.35381 | 0.50 | 0.69146 | 0.30854 | 0.35207 |
| 0.51 | 0.69497 | 0.30503 | 0.35029 | 0.52 | 0.69847 | 0.30153 | 0.34849 |
| 0.53 | 0.70194 | 0.29806 | 0.34667 | 0.54 | 0.70540 | 0.29460 | 0.34482 |
| 0.55 | 0.70884 | 0.29116 | 0.34294 | 0.56 | 0.71226 | 0.28774 | 0.34105 |
| 0.57 | 0.71566 | 0.28434 | 0.33912 | 0.58 | 0.71904 | 0.28096 | 0.33718 |
| 0.59 | 0.72240 | 0.27759 | 0.33521 | 0.60 | 0.72575 | 0.27425 | 0.33322 |
| 0.61 | 0.72907 | 0.27093 | 0.33121 | 0.62 | 0.73237 | 0.26763 | 0.32918 |
| 0.63 | 0.73565 | 0.26435 | 0.32713 | 0.64 | 0.73891 | 0.26109 | 0.32506 |
| 0.65 | 0.74215 | 0.25785 | 0.32297 | 0.66 | 0.74537 | 0.25463 | 0.32086 |
| 0.67 | 0.74857 | 0.25143 | 0.31874 | 0.68 | 0.75175 | 0.24825 | 0.31659 |
| 0.69 | 0.75490 | 0.24510 | 0.31443 | 0.70 | 0.75804 | 0.24196 | 0.31225 |
| 0.71 | 0.76115 | 0.23885 | 0.31006 | 0.72 | 0.76424 | 0.23576 | 0.30785 |
| 0.73 | 0.76731 | 0.23270 | 0.30563 | 0.74 | 0.77035 | 0.22965 | 0.30339 |
| 0.75 | 0.77337 | 0.22663 | 0.30114 | 0.76 | 0.77637 | 0.22363 | 0.29887 |
| 0.77 | 0.77935 | 0.22065 | 0.29659 | 0.78 | 0.78231 | 0.21769 | 0.29430 |
| 0.79 | 0.78524 | 0.21476 | 0.29200 | 0.80 | 0.78814 | 0.21185 | 0.28969 |

| x | $F(x)$ | $1 - F(x)$ | $f(x)$ | x | $F(x)$ | $1 - F(x)$ | $f(x)$ |
|------|---------|------------|---------|------|---------|------------|---------|
| 0.81 | 0.79103 | 0.20897 | 0.28737 | 0.82 | 0.79389 | 0.20611 | 0.28504 |
| 0.83 | 0.79673 | 0.20327 | 0.28269 | 0.84 | 0.79955 | 0.20045 | 0.28034 |
| 0.85 | 0.80234 | 0.19766 | 0.27798 | 0.86 | 0.80510 | 0.19490 | 0.27562 |
| 0.87 | 0.80785 | 0.19215 | 0.27324 | 0.88 | 0.81057 | 0.18943 | 0.27086 |
| 0.89 | 0.81327 | 0.18673 | 0.26848 | 0.90 | 0.81594 | 0.18406 | 0.26609 |
| 0.91 | 0.81859 | 0.18141 | 0.26369 | 0.92 | 0.82121 | 0.17879 | 0.26129 |
| 0.93 | 0.82381 | 0.17619 | 0.25888 | 0.94 | 0.82639 | 0.17361 | 0.25647 |
| 0.95 | 0.82894 | 0.17106 | 0.25406 | 0.96 | 0.83147 | 0.16853 | 0.25164 |
| 0.97 | 0.83398 | 0.16602 | 0.24923 | 0.98 | 0.83646 | 0.16354 | 0.24681 |
| 0.99 | 0.83891 | 0.16109 | 0.24439 | 1.00 | 0.84135 | 0.15865 | 0.24197 |
| 1.01 | 0.84375 | 0.15625 | 0.23955 | 1.02 | 0.84614 | 0.15386 | 0.23713 |
| 1.03 | 0.84849 | 0.15151 | 0.23471 | 1.04 | 0.85083 | 0.14917 | 0.23230 |
| 1.05 | 0.85314 | 0.14686 | 0.22988 | 1.06 | 0.85543 | 0.14457 | 0.22747 |
| 1.07 | 0.85769 | 0.14231 | 0.22506 | 1.08 | 0.85993 | 0.14007 | 0.22265 |
| 1.09 | 0.86214 | 0.13786 | 0.22025 | 1.10 | 0.86433 | 0.13567 | 0.21785 |
| 1.11 | 0.86650 | 0.13350 | 0.21546 | 1.12 | 0.86864 | 0.13136 | 0.21307 |
| 1.13 | 0.87076 | 0.12924 | 0.21069 | 1.14 | 0.87286 | 0.12714 | 0.20831 |
| 1.15 | 0.87493 | 0.12507 | 0.20594 | 1.16 | 0.87698 | 0.12302 | 0.20357 |
| 1.17 | 0.87900 | 0.12100 | 0.20121 | 1.18 | 0.88100 | 0.11900 | 0.19886 |
| 1.19 | 0.88298 | 0.11702 | 0.19652 | 1.20 | 0.88493 | 0.11507 | 0.19419 |
| 1.21 | 0.88686 | 0.11314 | 0.19186 | 1.22 | 0.88877 | 0.11123 | 0.18954 |
| 1.23 | 0.89065 | 0.10935 | 0.18724 | 1.24 | 0.89251 | 0.10749 | 0.18494 |
| 1.25 | 0.89435 | 0.10565 | 0.18265 | 1.26 | 0.89616 | 0.10383 | 0.18037 |
| 1.27 | 0.89796 | 0.10204 | 0.17810 | 1.28 | 0.89973 | 0.10027 | 0.17585 |
| 1.29 | 0.90148 | 0.09853 | 0.17360 | 1.30 | 0.90320 | 0.09680 | 0.17137 |
| 1.31 | 0.90490 | 0.09510 | 0.16915 | 1.32 | 0.90658 | 0.09342 | 0.16694 |
| 1.33 | 0.90824 | 0.09176 | 0.16474 | 1.34 | 0.90988 | 0.09012 | 0.16256 |
| 1.35 | 0.91149 | 0.08851 | 0.16038 | 1.36 | 0.91309 | 0.08692 | 0.15823 |
| 1.37 | 0.91466 | 0.08534 | 0.15608 | 1.38 | 0.91621 | 0.08379 | 0.15395 |
| 1.39 | 0.91774 | 0.08226 | 0.15183 | 1.40 | 0.91924 | 0.08076 | 0.14973 |
| 1.41 | 0.92073 | 0.07927 | 0.14764 | 1.42 | 0.92220 | 0.07780 | 0.14556 |
| 1.43 | 0.92364 | 0.07636 | 0.14350 | 1.44 | 0.92507 | 0.07493 | 0.14146 |
| 1.45 | 0.92647 | 0.07353 | 0.13943 | 1.46 | 0.92785 | 0.07215 | 0.13742 |
| 1.47 | 0.92922 | 0.07078 | 0.13542 | 1.48 | 0.93056 | 0.06944 | 0.13343 |
| 1.49 | 0.93189 | 0.06811 | 0.13147 | 1.50 | 0.93319 | 0.06681 | 0.12952 |
| 1.51 | 0.93448 | 0.06552 | 0.12758 | 1.52 | 0.93575 | 0.06426 | 0.12566 |
| 1.53 | 0.93699 | 0.06301 | 0.12376 | 1.54 | 0.93822 | 0.06178 | 0.12188 |
| 1.55 | 0.93943 | 0.06057 | 0.12001 | 1.56 | 0.94062 | 0.05938 | 0.11816 |
| 1.57 | 0.94179 | 0.05821 | 0.11632 | 1.58 | 0.94295 | 0.05705 | 0.11450 |
| 1.59 | 0.94408 | 0.05592 | 0.11270 | 1.60 | 0.94520 | 0.05480 | 0.11092 |

| x | $F(x)$ | $1 - F(x)$ | $f(x)$ | x | $F(x)$ | $1 - F(x)$ | $f(x)$ |
|------|---------|------------|---------|------|---------|------------|---------|
| 1.61 | 0.94630 | 0.05370 | 0.10916 | 1.62 | 0.94738 | 0.05262 | 0.10741 |
| 1.63 | 0.94845 | 0.05155 | 0.10568 | 1.64 | 0.94950 | 0.05050 | 0.10396 |
| 1.65 | 0.95053 | 0.04947 | 0.10226 | 1.66 | 0.95154 | 0.04846 | 0.10059 |
| 1.67 | 0.95254 | 0.04746 | 0.09892 | 1.68 | 0.95352 | 0.04648 | 0.09728 |
| 1.69 | 0.95449 | 0.04551 | 0.09566 | 1.70 | 0.95544 | 0.04457 | 0.09405 |
| 1.71 | 0.95637 | 0.04363 | 0.09246 | 1.72 | 0.95728 | 0.04272 | 0.09089 |
| 1.73 | 0.95818 | 0.04181 | 0.08933 | 1.74 | 0.95907 | 0.04093 | 0.08780 |
| 1.75 | 0.95994 | 0.04006 | 0.08628 | 1.76 | 0.96080 | 0.03920 | 0.08478 |
| 1.77 | 0.96164 | 0.03836 | 0.08329 | 1.78 | 0.96246 | 0.03754 | 0.08183 |
| 1.79 | 0.96327 | 0.03673 | 0.08038 | 1.80 | 0.96407 | 0.03593 | 0.07895 |
| 1.81 | 0.96485 | 0.03515 | 0.07754 | 1.82 | 0.96562 | 0.03438 | 0.07614 |
| 1.83 | 0.96637 | 0.03363 | 0.07477 | 1.84 | 0.96712 | 0.03288 | 0.07341 |
| 1.85 | 0.96784 | 0.03216 | 0.07207 | 1.86 | 0.96856 | 0.03144 | 0.07074 |
| 1.87 | 0.96926 | 0.03074 | 0.06943 | 1.88 | 0.96995 | 0.03005 | 0.06814 |
| 1.89 | 0.97062 | 0.02938 | 0.06687 | 1.90 | 0.97128 | 0.02872 | 0.06562 |
| 1.91 | 0.97193 | 0.02807 | 0.06438 | 1.92 | 0.97257 | 0.02743 | 0.06316 |
| 1.93 | 0.97320 | 0.02680 | 0.06195 | 1.94 | 0.97381 | 0.02619 | 0.06076 |
| 1.95 | 0.97441 | 0.02559 | 0.05960 | 1.96 | 0.97500 | 0.02500 | 0.05844 |
| 1.97 | 0.97558 | 0.02442 | 0.05730 | 1.98 | 0.97615 | 0.02385 | 0.05618 |
| 1.99 | 0.97671 | 0.02329 | 0.05508 | 2.00 | 0.97725 | 0.02275 | 0.05399 |
| 2.01 | 0.97778 | 0.02222 | 0.05292 | 2.02 | 0.97831 | 0.02169 | 0.05186 |
| 2.03 | 0.97882 | 0.02118 | 0.05082 | 2.04 | 0.97933 | 0.02067 | 0.04980 |
| 2.05 | 0.97982 | 0.02018 | 0.04879 | 2.06 | 0.98030 | 0.01970 | 0.04780 |
| 2.07 | 0.98077 | 0.01923 | 0.04682 | 2.08 | 0.98124 | 0.01876 | 0.04586 |
| 2.09 | 0.98169 | 0.01831 | 0.04491 | 2.10 | 0.98214 | 0.01786 | 0.04398 |
| 2.11 | 0.98257 | 0.01743 | 0.04307 | 2.12 | 0.98300 | 0.01700 | 0.04217 |
| 2.13 | 0.98341 | 0.01659 | 0.04128 | 2.14 | 0.98382 | 0.01618 | 0.04041 |
| 2.15 | 0.98422 | 0.01578 | 0.03955 | 2.16 | 0.98461 | 0.01539 | 0.03871 |
| 2.17 | 0.98500 | 0.01500 | 0.03788 | 2.18 | 0.98537 | 0.01463 | 0.03706 |
| 2.19 | 0.98574 | 0.01426 | 0.03626 | 2.20 | 0.98610 | 0.01390 | 0.03547 |
| 2.21 | 0.98645 | 0.01355 | 0.03470 | 2.22 | 0.98679 | 0.01321 | 0.03394 |
| 2.23 | 0.98713 | 0.01287 | 0.03319 | 2.24 | 0.98745 | 0.01255 | 0.03246 |
| 2.25 | 0.98778 | 0.01222 | 0.03174 | 2.26 | 0.98809 | 0.01191 | 0.03103 |
| 2.27 | 0.98840 | 0.01160 | 0.03034 | 2.28 | 0.98870 | 0.01130 | 0.02966 |
| 2.29 | 0.98899 | 0.01101 | 0.02899 | 2.30 | 0.98928 | 0.01072 | 0.02833 |
| 2.31 | 0.98956 | 0.01044 | 0.02768 | 2.32 | 0.98983 | 0.01017 | 0.02705 |
| 2.33 | 0.99010 | 0.00990 | 0.02643 | 2.34 | 0.99036 | 0.00964 | 0.02582 |
| 2.35 | 0.99061 | 0.00939 | 0.02522 | 2.36 | 0.99086 | 0.00914 | 0.02463 |
| 2.37 | 0.99111 | 0.00889 | 0.02406 | 2.38 | 0.99134 | 0.00866 | 0.02349 |
| 2.39 | 0.99158 | 0.00842 | 0.02294 | 2.40 | 0.99180 | 0.00820 | 0.02240 |

| x | $F(x)$ | $1 - F(x)$ | $f(x)$ | x | $F(x)$ | $1 - F(x)$ | $f(x)$ |
|------|---------|------------|---------|------|---------|------------|---------|
| 2.41 | 0.99202 | 0.00798 | 0.02186 | 2.42 | 0.99224 | 0.00776 | 0.02134 |
| 2.43 | 0.99245 | 0.00755 | 0.02083 | 2.44 | 0.99266 | 0.00734 | 0.02033 |
| 2.45 | 0.99286 | 0.00714 | 0.01984 | 2.46 | 0.99305 | 0.00695 | 0.01936 |
| 2.47 | 0.99324 | 0.00676 | 0.01888 | 2.48 | 0.99343 | 0.00657 | 0.01842 |
| 2.49 | 0.99361 | 0.00639 | 0.01797 | 2.50 | 0.99379 | 0.00621 | 0.01753 |
| 2.51 | 0.99396 | 0.00604 | 0.01709 | 2.52 | 0.99413 | 0.00587 | 0.01667 |
| 2.53 | 0.99430 | 0.00570 | 0.01625 | 2.54 | 0.99446 | 0.00554 | 0.01585 |
| 2.55 | 0.99461 | 0.00539 | 0.01545 | 2.56 | 0.99477 | 0.00523 | 0.01506 |
| 2.57 | 0.99491 | 0.00509 | 0.01468 | 2.58 | 0.99506 | 0.00494 | 0.01431 |
| 2.59 | 0.99520 | 0.00480 | 0.01394 | 2.60 | 0.99534 | 0.00466 | 0.01358 |
| 2.61 | 0.99547 | 0.00453 | 0.01323 | 2.62 | 0.99560 | 0.00440 | 0.01289 |
| 2.63 | 0.99573 | 0.00427 | 0.01256 | 2.64 | 0.99586 | 0.00415 | 0.01223 |
| 2.65 | 0.99598 | 0.00402 | 0.01191 | 2.66 | 0.99609 | 0.00391 | 0.01160 |
| 2.67 | 0.99621 | 0.00379 | 0.01129 | 2.68 | 0.99632 | 0.00368 | 0.01100 |
| 2.69 | 0.99643 | 0.00357 | 0.01071 | 2.70 | 0.99653 | 0.00347 | 0.01042 |
| 2.71 | 0.99664 | 0.00336 | 0.01014 | 2.72 | 0.99674 | 0.00326 | 0.00987 |
| 2.73 | 0.99683 | 0.00317 | 0.00961 | 2.74 | 0.99693 | 0.00307 | 0.00935 |
| 2.75 | 0.99702 | 0.00298 | 0.00909 | 2.76 | 0.99711 | 0.00289 | 0.00885 |
| 2.77 | 0.99720 | 0.00280 | 0.00860 | 2.78 | 0.99728 | 0.00272 | 0.00837 |
| 2.79 | 0.99736 | 0.00264 | 0.00814 | 2.80 | 0.99745 | 0.00255 | 0.00792 |
| 2.81 | 0.99752 | 0.00248 | 0.00770 | 2.82 | 0.99760 | 0.00240 | 0.00748 |
| 2.83 | 0.99767 | 0.00233 | 0.00727 | 2.84 | 0.99774 | 0.00226 | 0.00707 |
| 2.85 | 0.99781 | 0.00219 | 0.00687 | 2.86 | 0.99788 | 0.00212 | 0.00668 |
| 2.87 | 0.99795 | 0.00205 | 0.00649 | 2.88 | 0.99801 | 0.00199 | 0.00631 |
| 2.89 | 0.99807 | 0.00193 | 0.00613 | 2.90 | 0.99813 | 0.00187 | 0.00595 |
| 2.91 | 0.99819 | 0.00181 | 0.00578 | 2.92 | 0.99825 | 0.00175 | 0.00562 |
| 2.93 | 0.99830 | 0.00169 | 0.00545 | 2.94 | 0.99836 | 0.00164 | 0.00530 |
| 2.95 | 0.99841 | 0.00159 | 0.00514 | 2.96 | 0.99846 | 0.00154 | 0.00499 |
| 2.97 | 0.99851 | 0.00149 | 0.00485 | 2.98 | 0.99856 | 0.00144 | 0.00470 |
| 2.99 | 0.99860 | 0.00139 | 0.00457 | 3.00 | 0.99865 | 0.00135 | 0.00443 |
| 3.01 | 0.99869 | 0.00131 | 0.00430 | 3.02 | 0.99874 | 0.00126 | 0.00417 |
| 3.03 | 0.99878 | 0.00122 | 0.00405 | 3.04 | 0.99882 | 0.00118 | 0.00393 |
| 3.05 | 0.99886 | 0.00114 | 0.00381 | 3.06 | 0.99889 | 0.00111 | 0.00369 |
| 3.07 | 0.99893 | 0.00107 | 0.00358 | 3.08 | 0.99896 | 0.00103 | 0.00347 |
| 3.09 | 0.99900 | 0.00100 | 0.00337 | 3.10 | 0.99903 | 0.00097 | 0.00327 |
| 3.11 | 0.99906 | 0.00093 | 0.00317 | 3.12 | 0.99910 | 0.00090 | 0.00307 |
| 3.13 | 0.99913 | 0.00087 | 0.00298 | 3.14 | 0.99916 | 0.00085 | 0.00288 |
| 3.15 | 0.99918 | 0.00082 | 0.00279 | 3.16 | 0.99921 | 0.00079 | 0.00271 |
| 3.17 | 0.99924 | 0.00076 | 0.00262 | 3.18 | 0.99926 | 0.00074 | 0.00254 |
| 3.19 | 0.99929 | 0.00071 | 0.00246 | 3.20 | 0.99931 | 0.00069 | 0.00238 |

| x | $F(x)$ | $1 - F(x)$ | $f(x)$ | x | $F(x)$ | $1 - F(x)$ | $f(x)$ |
|------|---------|------------|---------|------|---------|------------|---------|
| 3.21 | 0.99934 | 0.00066 | 0.00231 | 3.22 | 0.99936 | 0.00064 | 0.00224 |
| 3.23 | 0.99938 | 0.00062 | 0.00216 | 3.24 | 0.99940 | 0.00060 | 0.00210 |
| 3.25 | 0.99942 | 0.00058 | 0.00203 | 3.26 | 0.99944 | 0.00056 | 0.00196 |
| 3.27 | 0.99946 | 0.00054 | 0.00190 | 3.28 | 0.99948 | 0.00052 | 0.00184 |
| 3.29 | 0.99950 | 0.00050 | 0.00178 | 3.30 | 0.99952 | 0.00048 | 0.00172 |
| 3.31 | 0.99953 | 0.00047 | 0.00167 | 3.32 | 0.99955 | 0.00045 | 0.00161 |
| 3.33 | 0.99957 | 0.00043 | 0.00156 | 3.34 | 0.99958 | 0.00042 | 0.00151 |
| 3.35 | 0.99960 | 0.00040 | 0.00146 | 3.36 | 0.99961 | 0.00039 | 0.00141 |
| 3.37 | 0.99962 | 0.00038 | 0.00136 | 3.38 | 0.99964 | 0.00036 | 0.00132 |
| 3.39 | 0.99965 | 0.00035 | 0.00128 | 3.40 | 0.99966 | 0.00034 | 0.00123 |
| 3.41 | 0.99967 | 0.00032 | 0.00119 | 3.42 | 0.99969 | 0.00031 | 0.00115 |
| 3.43 | 0.99970 | 0.00030 | 0.00111 | 3.44 | 0.99971 | 0.00029 | 0.00108 |
| 3.45 | 0.99972 | 0.00028 | 0.00104 | 3.46 | 0.99973 | 0.00027 | 0.00100 |
| 3.47 | 0.99974 | 0.00026 | 0.00097 | 3.48 | 0.99975 | 0.00025 | 0.00094 |
| 3.49 | 0.99976 | 0.00024 | 0.00090 | 3.50 | 0.99977 | 0.00023 | 0.00087 |
| 3.51 | 0.99978 | 0.00022 | 0.00084 | 3.52 | 0.99979 | 0.00021 | 0.00081 |
| 3.53 | 0.99979 | 0.00021 | 0.00078 | 3.54 | 0.99980 | 0.00020 | 0.00076 |
| 3.55 | 0.99981 | 0.00019 | 0.00073 | 3.56 | 0.99982 | 0.00018 | 0.00071 |
| 3.57 | 0.99982 | 0.00018 | 0.00068 | 3.58 | 0.99983 | 0.00017 | 0.00066 |
| 3.59 | 0.99984 | 0.00016 | 0.00063 | 3.60 | 0.99984 | 0.00016 | 0.00061 |
| 3.61 | 0.99985 | 0.00015 | 0.00059 | 3.62 | 0.99985 | 0.00015 | 0.00057 |
| 3.63 | 0.99986 | 0.00014 | 0.00055 | 3.64 | 0.99986 | 0.00014 | 0.00053 |
| 3.65 | 0.99987 | 0.00013 | 0.00051 | 3.66 | 0.99987 | 0.00013 | 0.00049 |
| 3.67 | 0.99988 | 0.00012 | 0.00047 | 3.68 | 0.99988 | 0.00012 | 0.00046 |
| 3.69 | 0.99989 | 0.00011 | 0.00044 | 3.70 | 0.99989 | 0.00011 | 0.00042 |
| 3.71 | 0.99990 | 0.00010 | 0.00041 | 3.72 | 0.99990 | 0.00010 | 0.00039 |
| 3.73 | 0.99990 | 0.00010 | 0.00038 | 3.74 | 0.99991 | 0.00009 | 0.00037 |
| 3.75 | 0.99991 | 0.00009 | 0.00035 | 3.76 | 0.99991 | 0.00009 | 0.00034 |
| 3.77 | 0.99992 | 0.00008 | 0.00033 | 3.78 | 0.99992 | 0.00008 | 0.00032 |
| 3.79 | 0.99992 | 0.00007 | 0.00030 | 3.80 | 0.99993 | 0.00007 | 0.00029 |
| 3.81 | 0.99993 | 0.00007 | 0.00028 | 3.82 | 0.99993 | 0.00007 | 0.00027 |
| 3.83 | 0.99994 | 0.00006 | 0.00026 | 3.84 | 0.99994 | 0.00006 | 0.00025 |
| 3.85 | 0.99994 | 0.00006 | 0.00024 | 3.86 | 0.99994 | 0.00006 | 0.00023 |
| 3.87 | 0.99995 | 0.00005 | 0.00022 | 3.88 | 0.99995 | 0.00005 | 0.00021 |
| 3.89 | 0.99995 | 0.00005 | 0.00021 | 3.90 | 0.99995 | 0.00005 | 0.00020 |
| 3.91 | 0.99995 | 0.00005 | 0.00019 | 3.92 | 0.99996 | 0.00004 | 0.00018 |
| 3.93 | 0.99996 | 0.00004 | 0.00018 | 3.94 | 0.99996 | 0.00004 | 0.00017 |
| 3.95 | 0.99996 | 0.00004 | 0.00016 | 3.96 | 0.99996 | 0.00004 | 0.00016 |
| 3.97 | 0.99996 | 0.00004 | 0.00015 | 3.98 | 0.99997 | 0.00003 | 0.00015 |
| 3.99 | 0.99997 | 0.00003 | 0.00014 | 4.00 | 0.99997 | 0.00003 | 0.00013 |

7.14.3 PERCENTAGE POINTS, STUDENT'S t -DISTRIBUTION

For a given value of n and α this table gives the value of $t_{\alpha,n}$ such that

$$F(t_{\alpha,n}) = \int_{-\infty}^{t_{\alpha,n}} \frac{\Gamma((n+1)/2)}{\sqrt{n\pi}\Gamma(n/2)} \left(1 + \frac{x^2}{n}\right)^{-(n+1)/2} dx = 1 - \alpha. \quad (7.14.3)$$

The t -distribution is symmetrical, so that $F(-t) = 1 - F(t)$.

EXAMPLE The table gives $t_{\alpha=0.60,n=2} = 0.325$.
Hence, when $n = 2$, $F(0.325) = 0.4$.

| n | $F(t) =$ | | | | | | | | |
|----------|----------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|---------|---------|
| | 0.6000 | 0.7500 | 0.9000 | 0.9500 | 0.9750 | 0.9900 | 0.9950 | 0.9990 | 0.9995 |
| 1 | 0.325 | 1.000 | 3.078 | 6.314 | 12.706 | 31.821 | 63.657 | 318.309 | 636.619 |
| 2 | 0.289 | 0.816 | 1.886 | 2.920 | 4.303 | 6.965 | 9.925 | 22.327 | 31.599 |
| 3 | 0.277 | 0.765 | 1.638 | 2.353 | 3.182 | 4.541 | 5.841 | 10.215 | 12.924 |
| 4 | 0.271 | 0.741 | 1.533 | 2.132 | 2.776 | 3.747 | 4.604 | 7.173 | 8.610 |
| 5 | 0.267 | 0.727 | 1.476 | 2.015 | 2.571 | 3.365 | 4.032 | 5.893 | 6.869 |
| 6 | 0.265 | 0.718 | 1.440 | 1.943 | 2.447 | 3.143 | 3.707 | 5.208 | 5.959 |
| 7 | 0.263 | 0.711 | 1.415 | 1.895 | 2.365 | 2.998 | 3.499 | 4.785 | 5.408 |
| 8 | 0.262 | 0.706 | 1.397 | 1.860 | 2.306 | 2.896 | 3.355 | 4.501 | 5.041 |
| 9 | 0.261 | 0.703 | 1.383 | 1.833 | 2.262 | 2.821 | 3.250 | 4.297 | 4.781 |
| 10 | 0.260 | 0.700 | 1.372 | 1.812 | 2.228 | 2.764 | 3.169 | 4.144 | 4.587 |
| 11 | 0.260 | 0.697 | 1.363 | 1.796 | 2.201 | 2.718 | 3.106 | 4.025 | 4.437 |
| 12 | 0.259 | 0.695 | 1.356 | 1.782 | 2.179 | 2.681 | 3.055 | 3.930 | 4.318 |
| 13 | 0.259 | 0.694 | 1.350 | 1.771 | 2.160 | 2.650 | 3.012 | 3.852 | 4.221 |
| 14 | 0.258 | 0.692 | 1.345 | 1.761 | 2.145 | 2.624 | 2.977 | 3.787 | 4.140 |
| 15 | 0.258 | 0.691 | 1.341 | 1.753 | 2.131 | 2.602 | 2.947 | 3.733 | 4.073 |
| 16 | 0.258 | 0.690 | 1.337 | 1.746 | 2.120 | 2.583 | 2.921 | 3.686 | 4.015 |
| 17 | 0.257 | 0.689 | 1.333 | 1.740 | 2.110 | 2.567 | 2.898 | 3.646 | 3.965 |
| 18 | 0.257 | 0.688 | 1.330 | 1.734 | 2.101 | 2.552 | 2.878 | 3.610 | 3.922 |
| 19 | 0.257 | 0.688 | 1.328 | 1.729 | 2.093 | 2.539 | 2.861 | 3.579 | 3.883 |
| 20 | 0.257 | 0.687 | 1.325 | 1.725 | 2.086 | 2.528 | 2.845 | 3.552 | 3.850 |
| 25 | 0.256 | 0.684 | 1.316 | 1.708 | 2.060 | 2.485 | 2.787 | 3.450 | 3.725 |
| 50 | 0.255 | 0.679 | 1.299 | 1.676 | 2.009 | 2.403 | 2.678 | 3.261 | 3.496 |
| 100 | 0.254 | 0.677 | 1.290 | 1.660 | 1.984 | 2.364 | 2.626 | 3.174 | 3.390 |
| ∞ | 0.253 | 0.674 | 1.282 | 1.645 | 1.960 | 2.326 | 2.576 | 3.091 | 3.291 |

7.14.4 PERCENTAGE POINTS, CHI-SQUARE DISTRIBUTION

For a given value of n this table gives the value of χ^2 such that

$$F(\chi^2) = \int_0^{\chi^2} \frac{x^{(n-2)/2} e^{-x/2}}{2^{n/2} \Gamma(n/2)} dx \quad (7.14.4)$$

is a specified number.

| n | $F =$ | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----|-----------|-----------|-----------|---------|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| | 0.005 | 0.010 | 0.025 | 0.050 | 0.100 | 0.250 | 0.500 | 0.750 | 0.900 | 0.950 | 0.975 | 0.990 | 0.995 |
| 1 | 0.0000393 | 0.0001571 | 0.0009821 | 0.00393 | 0.0158 | 0.102 | 0.455 | 1.32 | 2.71 | 3.84 | 5.02 | 6.63 | 7.88 |
| 2 | 0.0100 | 0.0201 | 0.0506 | 0.103 | 0.211 | 0.575 | 1.39 | 2.77 | 4.61 | 5.99 | 7.38 | 9.21 | 10.6 |
| 3 | 0.0717 | 0.115 | 0.216 | 0.352 | 0.584 | 1.21 | 2.37 | 4.11 | 6.25 | 7.81 | 9.35 | 11.3 | 12.8 |
| 4 | 0.207 | 0.297 | 0.484 | 0.711 | 1.06 | 1.92 | 3.36 | 5.39 | 7.78 | 9.49 | 11.1 | 13.3 | 14.9 |
| 5 | 0.412 | 0.554 | 0.831 | 1.15 | 1.61 | 2.67 | 4.35 | 6.63 | 9.24 | 11.1 | 12.8 | 15.1 | 16.7 |
| 6 | 0.676 | 0.872 | 1.24 | 1.64 | 2.20 | 3.45 | 5.35 | 7.84 | 10.6 | 12.6 | 14.4 | 16.8 | 18.5 |
| 7 | 0.989 | 1.24 | 1.69 | 2.17 | 2.83 | 4.25 | 6.35 | 9.04 | 12.0 | 14.1 | 16.0 | 18.5 | 20.3 |
| 8 | 1.34 | 1.65 | 2.18 | 2.73 | 3.49 | 5.07 | 7.34 | 10.2 | 13.4 | 15.5 | 17.5 | 20.1 | 22.0 |
| 9 | 1.73 | 2.09 | 2.70 | 3.33 | 4.17 | 5.90 | 8.34 | 11.4 | 14.7 | 16.9 | 19.0 | 21.7 | 23.6 |
| 10 | 2.16 | 2.56 | 3.25 | 3.94 | 4.87 | 6.74 | 9.34 | 12.5 | 16.0 | 18.3 | 20.5 | 23.2 | 25.2 |
| 11 | 2.60 | 3.05 | 3.82 | 4.57 | 5.58 | 7.58 | 10.3 | 13.7 | 17.3 | 19.7 | 21.9 | 24.7 | 26.8 |
| 12 | 3.07 | 3.57 | 4.40 | 5.23 | 6.30 | 8.44 | 11.3 | 14.8 | 18.5 | 21.0 | 23.3 | 26.2 | 28.3 |
| 13 | 3.57 | 4.11 | 5.01 | 5.89 | 7.04 | 9.30 | 12.3 | 16.0 | 19.8 | 22.4 | 24.7 | 27.7 | 29.8 |
| 14 | 4.07 | 4.66 | 5.63 | 6.57 | 7.79 | 10.2 | 13.3 | 17.1 | 21.1 | 23.7 | 26.1 | 29.1 | 31.3 |
| 15 | 4.60 | 5.23 | 6.26 | 7.26 | 8.55 | 11.0 | 14.3 | 18.2 | 22.3 | 25.0 | 27.5 | 30.6 | 32.8 |
| 16 | 5.14 | 5.81 | 6.91 | 7.96 | 9.31 | 11.9 | 15.3 | 19.4 | 23.5 | 26.3 | 28.8 | 32.0 | 34.3 |
| 17 | 5.70 | 6.41 | 7.56 | 8.67 | 10.1 | 12.8 | 16.3 | 20.5 | 24.8 | 27.6 | 30.2 | 33.4 | 35.7 |
| 18 | 6.26 | 7.01 | 8.23 | 9.39 | 10.9 | 13.7 | 17.3 | 21.6 | 26.0 | 28.9 | 31.5 | 34.8 | 37.2 |
| 19 | 6.84 | 7.63 | 8.91 | 10.1 | 11.7 | 14.6 | 18.3 | 22.7 | 27.2 | 30.1 | 32.9 | 36.2 | 38.6 |
| 20 | 7.43 | 8.26 | 9.59 | 10.9 | 12.4 | 15.5 | 19.3 | 23.8 | 28.4 | 31.4 | 34.2 | 37.6 | 40.0 |
| 21 | 8.03 | 8.90 | 10.3 | 11.6 | 13.2 | 16.3 | 20.3 | 24.9 | 29.6 | 32.7 | 35.5 | 38.9 | 41.4 |
| 22 | 8.64 | 9.54 | 11.0 | 12.3 | 14.0 | 17.2 | 21.3 | 26.0 | 30.8 | 33.9 | 36.8 | 40.3 | 42.8 |
| 23 | 9.26 | 10.2 | 11.7 | 13.1 | 14.8 | 18.1 | 22.3 | 27.1 | 32.0 | 35.2 | 38.1 | 41.6 | 44.2 |
| 24 | 9.89 | 10.9 | 12.4 | 13.8 | 15.7 | 19.0 | 23.3 | 28.2 | 33.2 | 36.4 | 39.4 | 43.0 | 45.6 |
| 25 | 10.5 | 11.5 | 13.1 | 14.6 | 16.5 | 19.9 | 24.3 | 29.3 | 34.4 | 37.7 | 40.6 | 44.3 | 46.9 |
| 30 | 13.8 | 15.0 | 16.8 | 18.5 | 20.6 | 24.5 | 29.3 | 34.8 | 40.3 | 43.8 | 47.0 | 50.9 | 53.7 |
| 35 | 17.2 | 18.5 | 20.6 | 22.5 | 24.8 | 29.1 | 34.3 | 40.2 | 46.1 | 49.8 | 53.2 | 57.3 | 60.3 |
| 50 | 28.0 | 29.7 | 32.4 | 34.8 | 37.7 | 42.9 | 43.9 | 56.3 | 63.2 | 67.5 | 71.4 | 76.2 | 79.5 |

7.14.5 PERCENTAGE POINTS, F -DISTRIBUTION

Given n and m this gives the value of f such that

$$F(f) = \int_0^f \frac{\Gamma((n+m)/2)}{\Gamma(m/2)\Gamma(n/2)} m^{m/2} n^{n/2} x^{m/2-1} (n+mx)^{-(m+n)/2} dx = \mathbf{0.9}.$$

| n | $m =$ | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|----------|
| | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 50 | 100 | ∞ |
| 1 | 39.86 | 49.50 | 53.59 | 55.83 | 57.24 | 58.20 | 58.91 | 59.44 | 59.86 | 60.19 | 62.69 | 63.01 | 63.33 |
| 2 | 8.53 | 9.00 | 9.16 | 9.24 | 9.29 | 9.33 | 9.35 | 9.37 | 9.38 | 9.39 | 9.47 | 9.48 | 9.49 |
| 3 | 5.54 | 5.46 | 5.39 | 5.34 | 5.31 | 5.28 | 5.27 | 5.25 | 5.24 | 5.23 | 5.15 | 5.14 | 5.13 |
| 4 | 4.54 | 4.32 | 4.19 | 4.11 | 4.05 | 4.01 | 3.98 | 3.95 | 3.94 | 3.92 | 3.80 | 3.78 | 3.76 |
| 5 | 4.06 | 3.78 | 3.62 | 3.52 | 3.45 | 3.40 | 3.37 | 3.34 | 3.32 | 3.30 | 3.15 | 3.13 | 3.10 |
| 6 | 3.78 | 3.46 | 3.29 | 3.18 | 3.11 | 3.05 | 3.01 | 2.98 | 2.96 | 2.94 | 2.77 | 2.75 | 2.72 |
| 7 | 3.59 | 3.26 | 3.07 | 2.96 | 2.88 | 2.83 | 2.78 | 2.75 | 2.72 | 2.70 | 2.52 | 2.50 | 2.47 |
| 8 | 3.46 | 3.11 | 2.92 | 2.81 | 2.73 | 2.67 | 2.62 | 2.59 | 2.56 | 2.54 | 2.35 | 2.32 | 2.29 |
| 9 | 3.36 | 3.01 | 2.81 | 2.69 | 2.61 | 2.55 | 2.51 | 2.47 | 2.44 | 2.42 | 2.22 | 2.19 | 2.16 |
| 10 | 3.29 | 2.92 | 2.73 | 2.61 | 2.52 | 2.46 | 2.41 | 2.38 | 2.35 | 2.32 | 2.12 | 2.09 | 2.06 |
| 11 | 3.23 | 2.86 | 2.66 | 2.54 | 2.45 | 2.39 | 2.34 | 2.30 | 2.27 | 2.25 | 2.04 | 2.01 | 1.97 |
| 12 | 3.18 | 2.81 | 2.61 | 2.48 | 2.39 | 2.33 | 2.28 | 2.24 | 2.21 | 2.19 | 1.97 | 1.94 | 1.90 |
| 13 | 3.14 | 2.76 | 2.56 | 2.43 | 2.35 | 2.28 | 2.23 | 2.20 | 2.16 | 2.14 | 1.92 | 1.88 | 1.85 |
| 14 | 3.10 | 2.73 | 2.52 | 2.39 | 2.31 | 2.24 | 2.19 | 2.15 | 2.12 | 2.10 | 1.87 | 1.83 | 1.80 |
| 15 | 3.07 | 2.70 | 2.49 | 2.36 | 2.27 | 2.21 | 2.16 | 2.12 | 2.09 | 2.06 | 1.83 | 1.79 | 1.76 |
| 16 | 3.05 | 2.67 | 2.46 | 2.33 | 2.24 | 2.18 | 2.13 | 2.09 | 2.06 | 2.03 | 1.79 | 1.76 | 1.72 |
| 17 | 3.03 | 2.64 | 2.44 | 2.31 | 2.22 | 2.15 | 2.10 | 2.06 | 2.03 | 2.00 | 1.76 | 1.73 | 1.69 |
| 18 | 3.01 | 2.62 | 2.42 | 2.29 | 2.20 | 2.13 | 2.08 | 2.04 | 2.00 | 1.98 | 1.74 | 1.70 | 1.66 |
| 19 | 2.99 | 2.61 | 2.40 | 2.27 | 2.18 | 2.11 | 2.06 | 2.02 | 1.98 | 1.96 | 1.71 | 1.67 | 1.63 |
| 20 | 2.97 | 2.59 | 2.38 | 2.25 | 2.16 | 2.09 | 2.04 | 2.00 | 1.96 | 1.94 | 1.69 | 1.65 | 1.61 |
| 25 | 2.92 | 2.53 | 2.32 | 2.18 | 2.09 | 2.02 | 1.97 | 1.93 | 1.89 | 1.87 | 1.61 | 1.56 | 1.52 |
| 50 | 2.81 | 2.41 | 2.20 | 2.06 | 1.97 | 1.90 | 1.84 | 1.80 | 1.76 | 1.73 | 1.44 | 1.39 | 1.34 |
| 100 | 2.76 | 2.36 | 2.14 | 2.00 | 1.91 | 1.83 | 1.78 | 1.73 | 1.69 | 1.66 | 1.35 | 1.29 | 1.20 |
| ∞ | 2.71 | 2.30 | 2.08 | 1.94 | 1.85 | 1.77 | 1.72 | 1.67 | 1.63 | 1.60 | 1.24 | 1.17 | 1.00 |

Given n and m this gives the value of f such that

$$F(f) = \int_0^f \frac{\Gamma((n+m)/2)}{\Gamma(m/2)\Gamma(n/2)} m^{m/2} n^{n/2} x^{m/2-1} (n+mx)^{-(m+n)/2} dx = \mathbf{0.95}.$$

| n | $m =$ | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|----------|
| | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 50 | 100 | ∞ |
| 1 | 161.4 | 199.5 | 215.7 | 224.6 | 230.2 | 234.0 | 236.8 | 238.9 | 240.5 | 241.9 | 251.8 | 253.0 | 254.3 |
| 2 | 18.51 | 19.00 | 19.16 | 19.25 | 19.30 | 19.33 | 19.35 | 19.37 | 19.38 | 19.40 | 19.48 | 19.49 | 19.50 |
| 3 | 10.13 | 9.55 | 9.28 | 9.12 | 9.01 | 8.94 | 8.89 | 8.85 | 8.81 | 8.79 | 8.58 | 8.55 | 8.53 |
| 4 | 7.71 | 6.94 | 6.59 | 6.39 | 6.26 | 6.16 | 6.09 | 6.04 | 6.00 | 5.96 | 5.70 | 5.66 | 5.63 |
| 5 | 6.61 | 5.79 | 5.41 | 5.19 | 5.05 | 4.95 | 4.88 | 4.82 | 4.77 | 4.74 | 4.44 | 4.41 | 4.36 |
| 6 | 5.99 | 5.14 | 4.76 | 4.53 | 4.39 | 4.28 | 4.21 | 4.15 | 4.10 | 4.06 | 3.75 | 3.71 | 3.67 |
| 7 | 5.59 | 4.74 | 4.35 | 4.12 | 3.97 | 3.87 | 3.79 | 3.73 | 3.68 | 3.64 | 3.32 | 3.27 | 3.23 |
| 8 | 5.32 | 4.46 | 4.07 | 3.84 | 3.69 | 3.58 | 3.50 | 3.44 | 3.39 | 3.35 | 3.02 | 2.97 | 2.93 |
| 9 | 5.12 | 4.26 | 3.86 | 3.63 | 3.48 | 3.37 | 3.29 | 3.23 | 3.18 | 3.14 | 2.80 | 2.76 | 2.71 |
| 10 | 4.96 | 4.10 | 3.71 | 3.48 | 3.33 | 3.22 | 3.14 | 3.07 | 3.02 | 2.98 | 2.64 | 2.59 | 2.54 |
| 11 | 4.84 | 3.98 | 3.59 | 3.36 | 3.20 | 3.09 | 3.01 | 2.95 | 2.90 | 2.85 | 2.51 | 2.46 | 2.40 |
| 12 | 4.75 | 3.89 | 3.49 | 3.26 | 3.11 | 3.00 | 2.91 | 2.85 | 2.80 | 2.75 | 2.40 | 2.35 | 2.30 |
| 13 | 4.67 | 3.81 | 3.41 | 3.18 | 3.03 | 2.92 | 2.83 | 2.77 | 2.71 | 2.67 | 2.31 | 2.26 | 2.21 |
| 14 | 4.60 | 3.74 | 3.34 | 3.11 | 2.96 | 2.85 | 2.76 | 2.70 | 2.65 | 2.60 | 2.24 | 2.19 | 2.13 |
| 15 | 4.54 | 3.68 | 3.29 | 3.06 | 2.90 | 2.79 | 2.71 | 2.64 | 2.59 | 2.54 | 2.18 | 2.12 | 2.07 |
| 16 | 4.49 | 3.63 | 3.24 | 3.01 | 2.85 | 2.74 | 2.66 | 2.59 | 2.54 | 2.49 | 2.12 | 2.07 | 2.01 |
| 17 | 4.45 | 3.59 | 3.20 | 2.96 | 2.81 | 2.70 | 2.61 | 2.55 | 2.49 | 2.45 | 2.08 | 2.02 | 1.96 |
| 18 | 4.41 | 3.55 | 3.16 | 2.93 | 2.77 | 2.66 | 2.58 | 2.51 | 2.46 | 2.41 | 2.04 | 1.98 | 1.92 |
| 19 | 4.38 | 3.52 | 3.13 | 2.90 | 2.74 | 2.63 | 2.54 | 2.48 | 2.42 | 2.38 | 2.00 | 1.94 | 1.88 |
| 20 | 4.35 | 3.49 | 3.10 | 2.87 | 2.71 | 2.60 | 2.51 | 2.45 | 2.39 | 2.35 | 1.97 | 1.91 | 1.84 |
| 25 | 4.24 | 3.39 | 2.99 | 2.76 | 2.60 | 2.49 | 2.40 | 2.34 | 2.28 | 2.24 | 1.84 | 1.78 | 1.71 |
| 50 | 4.03 | 3.18 | 2.79 | 2.56 | 2.40 | 2.29 | 2.20 | 2.13 | 2.07 | 2.03 | 1.60 | 1.52 | 1.45 |
| 100 | 3.94 | 3.09 | 2.70 | 2.46 | 2.31 | 2.19 | 2.10 | 2.03 | 1.97 | 1.93 | 1.48 | 1.39 | 1.28 |
| ∞ | 3.84 | 3.00 | 2.60 | 2.37 | 2.21 | 2.10 | 2.01 | 1.94 | 1.88 | 1.83 | 1.35 | 1.25 | 1.00 |

Given n and m this gives the value of f such that

$$F(f) = \int_0^f \frac{\Gamma((n+m)/2)}{\Gamma(m/2)\Gamma(n/2)} n^{m/2} n^{n/2} x^{m/2-1} (n+mx)^{-(m+n)/2} dx = \mathbf{0.975}.$$

| n | $m =$ | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|----------|
| | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 50 | 100 | ∞ |
| 1 | 647.8 | 799.5 | 864.2 | 899.6 | 921.8 | 937.1 | 948.2 | 956.7 | 963.3 | 968.6 | 1008 | 1013 | 1018 |
| 2 | 38.51 | 39.00 | 39.17 | 39.25 | 39.30 | 39.33 | 39.36 | 39.37 | 39.39 | 39.40 | 39.48 | 39.49 | 39.50 |
| 3 | 17.44 | 16.04 | 15.44 | 15.10 | 14.88 | 14.73 | 14.62 | 14.54 | 14.47 | 14.42 | 14.01 | 13.96 | 13.90 |
| 4 | 12.22 | 10.65 | 9.98 | 9.60 | 9.36 | 9.20 | 9.07 | 8.98 | 8.90 | 8.84 | 8.38 | 8.32 | 8.26 |
| 5 | 10.01 | 8.43 | 7.76 | 7.39 | 7.15 | 6.98 | 6.85 | 6.76 | 6.68 | 6.62 | 6.14 | 6.08 | 6.02 |
| 6 | 8.81 | 7.26 | 6.60 | 6.23 | 5.99 | 5.82 | 5.70 | 5.60 | 5.52 | 5.46 | 4.98 | 4.92 | 4.85 |
| 7 | 8.07 | 6.54 | 5.89 | 5.52 | 5.29 | 5.12 | 4.99 | 4.90 | 4.82 | 4.76 | 4.28 | 4.21 | 4.14 |
| 8 | 7.57 | 6.06 | 5.42 | 5.05 | 4.82 | 4.65 | 4.53 | 4.43 | 4.36 | 4.30 | 3.81 | 3.74 | 3.67 |
| 9 | 7.21 | 5.71 | 5.08 | 4.72 | 4.48 | 4.32 | 4.20 | 4.10 | 4.03 | 3.96 | 3.47 | 3.40 | 3.33 |
| 10 | 6.94 | 5.46 | 4.83 | 4.47 | 4.24 | 4.07 | 3.95 | 3.85 | 3.78 | 3.72 | 3.22 | 3.15 | 3.08 |
| 11 | 6.72 | 5.26 | 4.63 | 4.28 | 4.04 | 3.88 | 3.76 | 3.66 | 3.59 | 3.53 | 3.03 | 2.96 | 2.88 |
| 12 | 6.55 | 5.10 | 4.47 | 4.12 | 3.89 | 3.73 | 3.61 | 3.51 | 3.44 | 3.37 | 2.87 | 2.80 | 2.72 |
| 13 | 6.41 | 4.97 | 4.35 | 4.00 | 3.77 | 3.60 | 3.48 | 3.39 | 3.31 | 3.25 | 2.74 | 2.67 | 2.60 |
| 14 | 6.30 | 4.86 | 4.24 | 3.89 | 3.66 | 3.50 | 3.38 | 3.29 | 3.21 | 3.15 | 2.64 | 2.56 | 2.49 |
| 15 | 6.20 | 4.77 | 4.15 | 3.80 | 3.58 | 3.41 | 3.29 | 3.20 | 3.12 | 3.06 | 2.55 | 2.47 | 2.40 |
| 16 | 6.12 | 4.69 | 4.08 | 3.73 | 3.50 | 3.34 | 3.22 | 3.12 | 3.05 | 2.99 | 2.47 | 2.40 | 2.32 |
| 17 | 6.04 | 4.62 | 4.01 | 3.66 | 3.44 | 3.28 | 3.16 | 3.06 | 2.98 | 2.92 | 2.41 | 2.33 | 2.25 |
| 18 | 5.98 | 4.56 | 3.95 | 3.61 | 3.38 | 3.22 | 3.10 | 3.01 | 2.93 | 2.87 | 2.35 | 2.27 | 2.19 |
| 19 | 5.92 | 4.51 | 3.90 | 3.56 | 3.33 | 3.17 | 3.05 | 2.96 | 2.88 | 2.82 | 2.30 | 2.22 | 2.13 |
| 20 | 5.87 | 4.46 | 3.86 | 3.51 | 3.29 | 3.13 | 3.01 | 2.91 | 2.84 | 2.77 | 2.25 | 2.17 | 2.09 |
| 25 | 5.69 | 4.29 | 3.69 | 3.35 | 3.13 | 2.97 | 2.85 | 2.75 | 2.68 | 2.61 | 2.08 | 2.00 | 1.91 |
| 50 | 5.34 | 3.97 | 3.39 | 3.05 | 2.83 | 2.67 | 2.55 | 2.46 | 2.38 | 2.32 | 1.75 | 1.66 | 1.54 |
| 100 | 5.18 | 3.83 | 3.25 | 2.92 | 2.70 | 2.54 | 2.42 | 2.32 | 2.24 | 2.18 | 1.59 | 1.48 | 1.37 |
| ∞ | 5.02 | 3.69 | 3.12 | 2.79 | 2.57 | 2.41 | 2.29 | 2.19 | 2.11 | 2.05 | 1.43 | 1.27 | 1.00 |

Given n and m this gives the value of f such that

$$F(f) = \int_0^f \frac{\Gamma((n+m)/2)}{\Gamma(m/2)\Gamma(n/2)} m^{m/2} n^{n/2} x^{m/2-1} (n+mx)^{-(m+n)/2} dx = \mathbf{0.99}.$$

| n | $m =$ | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|----------|
| | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 50 | 100 | ∞ |
| 1 | 4052 | 5000 | 5403 | 5625 | 5764 | 5859 | 5928 | 5981 | 6022 | 6056 | 6303 | 6334 | 6336 |
| 2 | 98.50 | 99.00 | 99.17 | 99.25 | 99.30 | 99.33 | 99.36 | 99.37 | 99.39 | 99.40 | 99.48 | 99.49 | 99.50 |
| 3 | 34.12 | 30.82 | 29.46 | 28.71 | 28.24 | 27.91 | 27.67 | 27.49 | 27.35 | 27.23 | 26.35 | 26.24 | 26.13 |
| 4 | 21.20 | 18.00 | 16.69 | 15.98 | 15.52 | 15.21 | 14.98 | 14.80 | 14.66 | 14.55 | 13.69 | 13.58 | 13.46 |
| 5 | 16.26 | 13.27 | 12.06 | 11.39 | 10.97 | 10.67 | 10.46 | 10.29 | 10.16 | 10.05 | 9.24 | 9.13 | 9.02 |
| 6 | 13.75 | 10.92 | 9.78 | 9.15 | 8.75 | 8.47 | 8.26 | 8.10 | 7.98 | 7.87 | 7.09 | 6.99 | 6.88 |
| 7 | 12.25 | 9.55 | 8.45 | 7.85 | 7.46 | 7.19 | 6.99 | 6.84 | 6.72 | 6.62 | 5.86 | 5.75 | 5.65 |
| 8 | 11.26 | 8.65 | 7.59 | 7.01 | 6.63 | 6.37 | 6.18 | 6.03 | 5.91 | 5.81 | 5.07 | 4.96 | 4.86 |
| 9 | 10.56 | 8.02 | 6.99 | 6.42 | 6.06 | 5.80 | 5.61 | 5.47 | 5.35 | 5.26 | 4.52 | 4.41 | 4.31 |
| 10 | 10.04 | 7.56 | 6.55 | 5.99 | 5.64 | 5.39 | 5.20 | 5.06 | 4.94 | 4.85 | 4.12 | 4.01 | 3.91 |
| 11 | 9.65 | 7.21 | 6.22 | 5.67 | 5.32 | 5.07 | 4.89 | 4.74 | 4.63 | 4.54 | 3.81 | 3.71 | 3.60 |
| 12 | 9.33 | 6.93 | 5.95 | 5.41 | 5.06 | 4.82 | 4.64 | 4.50 | 4.39 | 4.30 | 3.57 | 3.47 | 3.36 |
| 13 | 9.07 | 6.70 | 5.74 | 5.21 | 4.86 | 4.62 | 4.44 | 4.30 | 4.19 | 4.10 | 3.38 | 3.27 | 3.17 |
| 14 | 8.86 | 6.51 | 5.56 | 5.04 | 4.69 | 4.46 | 4.28 | 4.14 | 4.03 | 3.94 | 3.22 | 3.11 | 3.00 |
| 15 | 8.68 | 6.36 | 5.42 | 4.89 | 4.56 | 4.32 | 4.14 | 4.00 | 3.89 | 3.80 | 3.08 | 2.98 | 2.87 |
| 16 | 8.53 | 6.23 | 5.29 | 4.77 | 4.44 | 4.20 | 4.03 | 3.89 | 3.78 | 3.69 | 2.97 | 2.86 | 2.75 |
| 17 | 8.40 | 6.11 | 5.18 | 4.67 | 4.34 | 4.10 | 3.93 | 3.79 | 3.68 | 3.59 | 2.87 | 2.76 | 2.65 |
| 18 | 8.29 | 6.01 | 5.09 | 4.58 | 4.25 | 4.01 | 3.84 | 3.71 | 3.60 | 3.51 | 2.78 | 2.68 | 2.57 |
| 19 | 8.18 | 5.93 | 5.01 | 4.50 | 4.17 | 3.94 | 3.77 | 3.63 | 3.52 | 3.43 | 2.71 | 2.60 | 2.49 |
| 20 | 8.10 | 5.85 | 4.94 | 4.43 | 4.10 | 3.87 | 3.70 | 3.56 | 3.46 | 3.37 | 2.64 | 2.54 | 2.42 |
| 25 | 7.77 | 5.57 | 4.68 | 4.18 | 3.85 | 3.63 | 3.46 | 3.32 | 3.22 | 3.13 | 2.40 | 2.29 | 2.17 |
| 50 | 7.17 | 5.06 | 4.20 | 3.72 | 3.41 | 3.19 | 3.02 | 2.89 | 2.78 | 2.70 | 1.95 | 1.82 | 1.70 |
| 100 | 6.90 | 4.82 | 3.98 | 3.51 | 3.21 | 2.99 | 2.82 | 2.69 | 2.59 | 2.50 | 1.74 | 1.60 | 1.45 |
| ∞ | 6.63 | 4.61 | 3.78 | 3.32 | 3.02 | 2.80 | 2.64 | 2.51 | 2.41 | 2.32 | 1.53 | 1.32 | 1.00 |

Given n and m this gives the value of f such that

$$F(f) = \int_0^f \frac{\Gamma((n+m)/2)}{\Gamma(m/2)\Gamma(n/2)} n^{m/2} n^{n/2} x^{m/2-1} (n+mx)^{-(m+n)/2} dx = \mathbf{0.995}.$$

| n | $m =$ | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|----------|
| | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 50 | 100 | ∞ |
| 1 | 16211 | 20000 | 21615 | 22500 | 23056 | 23437 | 23715 | 23925 | 24091 | 24224 | 25211 | 25337 | 25465 |
| 2 | 198.5 | 199.0 | 199.2 | 199.2 | 199.3 | 199.3 | 199.4 | 199.4 | 199.4 | 199.4 | 199.5 | 199.5 | 199.5 |
| 3 | 55.55 | 49.80 | 47.47 | 46.19 | 45.39 | 44.84 | 44.43 | 44.13 | 43.88 | 43.69 | 42.21 | 42.02 | 41.83 |
| 4 | 31.33 | 26.28 | 24.26 | 23.15 | 22.46 | 21.97 | 21.62 | 21.35 | 21.14 | 20.97 | 19.67 | 19.50 | 19.32 |
| 5 | 22.78 | 18.31 | 16.53 | 15.56 | 14.94 | 14.51 | 14.20 | 13.96 | 13.77 | 13.62 | 12.45 | 12.30 | 12.14 |
| 6 | 18.63 | 14.54 | 12.92 | 12.03 | 11.46 | 11.07 | 10.79 | 10.57 | 10.39 | 10.25 | 9.17 | 9.03 | 8.88 |
| 7 | 16.24 | 12.40 | 10.88 | 10.05 | 9.52 | 9.16 | 8.89 | 8.68 | 8.51 | 8.38 | 7.35 | 7.22 | 7.08 |
| 8 | 14.69 | 11.04 | 9.60 | 8.81 | 8.30 | 7.95 | 7.69 | 7.50 | 7.34 | 7.21 | 6.22 | 6.09 | 5.95 |
| 9 | 13.61 | 10.11 | 8.72 | 7.96 | 7.47 | 7.13 | 6.88 | 6.69 | 6.54 | 6.42 | 5.45 | 5.32 | 5.19 |
| 10 | 12.83 | 9.43 | 8.08 | 7.34 | 6.87 | 6.54 | 6.30 | 6.12 | 5.97 | 5.85 | 4.90 | 4.77 | 4.64 |
| 11 | 12.23 | 8.91 | 7.60 | 6.88 | 6.42 | 6.10 | 5.86 | 5.68 | 5.54 | 5.42 | 4.49 | 4.36 | 4.23 |
| 12 | 11.75 | 8.51 | 7.23 | 6.52 | 6.07 | 5.76 | 5.52 | 5.35 | 5.20 | 5.09 | 4.17 | 4.04 | 3.90 |
| 13 | 11.37 | 8.19 | 6.93 | 6.23 | 5.79 | 5.48 | 5.25 | 5.08 | 4.94 | 4.82 | 3.91 | 3.78 | 3.65 |
| 14 | 11.06 | 7.92 | 6.68 | 6.00 | 5.56 | 5.26 | 5.03 | 4.86 | 4.72 | 4.60 | 3.70 | 3.57 | 3.44 |
| 15 | 10.80 | 7.70 | 6.48 | 5.80 | 5.37 | 5.07 | 4.85 | 4.67 | 4.54 | 4.42 | 3.52 | 3.39 | 3.26 |
| 16 | 10.58 | 7.51 | 6.30 | 5.64 | 5.21 | 4.91 | 4.69 | 4.52 | 4.38 | 4.27 | 3.37 | 3.25 | 3.11 |
| 17 | 10.38 | 7.35 | 6.16 | 5.50 | 5.07 | 4.78 | 4.56 | 4.39 | 4.25 | 4.14 | 3.25 | 3.12 | 2.98 |
| 18 | 10.22 | 7.21 | 6.03 | 5.37 | 4.96 | 4.66 | 4.44 | 4.28 | 4.14 | 4.03 | 3.14 | 3.01 | 2.87 |
| 19 | 10.07 | 7.09 | 5.92 | 5.27 | 4.85 | 4.56 | 4.34 | 4.18 | 4.04 | 3.93 | 3.04 | 2.91 | 2.78 |
| 20 | 9.94 | 6.99 | 5.82 | 5.17 | 4.76 | 4.47 | 4.26 | 4.09 | 3.96 | 3.85 | 2.96 | 2.83 | 2.69 |
| 25 | 9.48 | 6.60 | 5.46 | 4.84 | 4.43 | 4.15 | 3.94 | 3.78 | 3.64 | 3.54 | 2.65 | 2.52 | 2.38 |
| 50 | 8.63 | 5.90 | 4.83 | 4.23 | 3.85 | 3.58 | 3.38 | 3.22 | 3.09 | 2.99 | 2.10 | 1.95 | 1.81 |
| 100 | 8.24 | 5.59 | 4.54 | 3.96 | 3.59 | 3.33 | 3.13 | 2.97 | 2.85 | 2.74 | 1.84 | 1.68 | 1.51 |
| ∞ | 7.88 | 5.30 | 4.28 | 3.72 | 3.35 | 3.09 | 2.90 | 2.74 | 2.62 | 2.52 | 1.60 | 1.36 | 1.00 |

Given n and m this gives the value of f such that

$$F(f) = \int_0^f \frac{\Gamma((n+m)/2)}{\Gamma(m/2)\Gamma(n/2)} x^{n/2} x^{m/2} x^{n/2-1} (n+mx)^{-(m+n)/2} dx = \mathbf{0.999}.$$

| n | $m =$ | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|----------|
| | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 50 | 100 | ∞ |
| 2 | 998.5 | 999.0 | 999.2 | 999.2 | 999.3 | 999.3 | 999.4 | 999.4 | 999.4 | 999.4 | 999.5 | 999.5 | 999.5 |
| 3 | 167.0 | 148.5 | 141.1 | 137.1 | 134.6 | 132.8 | 131.6 | 130.6 | 129.9 | 129.2 | 124.7 | 124.1 | 123.5 |
| 4 | 74.14 | 61.25 | 56.18 | 53.44 | 51.71 | 50.53 | 49.66 | 49.00 | 48.47 | 48.05 | 44.88 | 44.47 | 44.05 |
| 5 | 47.18 | 37.12 | 33.20 | 31.09 | 29.75 | 28.83 | 28.16 | 27.65 | 27.24 | 26.92 | 24.44 | 24.12 | 23.79 |
| 6 | 35.51 | 27.00 | 23.70 | 21.92 | 20.80 | 20.03 | 19.46 | 19.03 | 18.69 | 18.41 | 16.31 | 16.03 | 15.75 |
| 7 | 29.25 | 21.69 | 18.77 | 17.20 | 16.21 | 15.52 | 15.02 | 14.63 | 14.33 | 14.08 | 12.20 | 11.95 | 11.70 |
| 8 | 25.41 | 18.49 | 15.83 | 14.39 | 13.48 | 12.86 | 12.40 | 12.05 | 11.77 | 11.54 | 9.80 | 9.57 | 9.33 |
| 9 | 22.86 | 16.39 | 13.90 | 12.56 | 11.71 | 11.13 | 10.70 | 10.37 | 10.11 | 9.89 | 8.26 | 8.04 | 7.81 |
| 10 | 21.04 | 14.91 | 12.55 | 11.28 | 10.48 | 9.93 | 9.52 | 9.20 | 8.96 | 8.75 | 7.19 | 6.98 | 6.76 |
| 11 | 19.69 | 13.81 | 11.56 | 10.35 | 9.58 | 9.05 | 8.66 | 8.35 | 8.12 | 7.92 | 6.42 | 6.21 | 6.00 |
| 12 | 18.64 | 12.97 | 10.80 | 9.63 | 8.89 | 8.38 | 8.00 | 7.71 | 7.48 | 7.29 | 5.83 | 5.63 | 5.42 |
| 13 | 17.82 | 12.31 | 10.21 | 9.07 | 8.35 | 7.86 | 7.49 | 7.21 | 6.98 | 6.80 | 5.37 | 5.17 | 4.97 |
| 14 | 17.14 | 11.78 | 9.73 | 8.62 | 7.92 | 7.44 | 7.08 | 6.80 | 6.58 | 6.40 | 5.00 | 4.81 | 4.60 |
| 15 | 16.59 | 11.34 | 9.34 | 8.25 | 7.57 | 7.09 | 6.74 | 6.47 | 6.26 | 6.08 | 4.70 | 4.51 | 4.31 |
| 16 | 16.12 | 10.97 | 9.01 | 7.94 | 7.27 | 6.80 | 6.46 | 6.19 | 5.98 | 5.81 | 4.45 | 4.26 | 4.06 |
| 17 | 15.72 | 10.66 | 8.73 | 7.68 | 7.02 | 6.56 | 6.22 | 5.96 | 5.75 | 5.58 | 4.24 | 4.05 | 3.85 |
| 18 | 15.38 | 10.39 | 8.49 | 7.46 | 6.81 | 6.35 | 6.02 | 5.76 | 5.56 | 5.39 | 4.06 | 3.87 | 3.67 |
| 19 | 15.08 | 10.16 | 8.28 | 7.27 | 6.62 | 6.18 | 5.85 | 5.59 | 5.39 | 5.22 | 3.90 | 3.71 | 3.51 |
| 20 | 14.82 | 9.95 | 8.10 | 7.10 | 6.46 | 6.02 | 5.69 | 5.44 | 5.24 | 5.08 | 3.77 | 3.58 | 3.38 |
| 25 | 13.88 | 9.22 | 7.45 | 6.49 | 5.89 | 5.46 | 5.15 | 4.91 | 4.71 | 4.56 | 3.28 | 3.09 | 2.89 |
| 50 | 12.22 | 7.96 | 6.34 | 5.46 | 4.90 | 4.51 | 4.22 | 4.00 | 3.82 | 3.67 | 2.44 | 2.25 | 2.06 |
| 100 | 11.50 | 7.41 | 5.86 | 5.02 | 4.48 | 4.11 | 3.83 | 3.61 | 3.44 | 3.30 | 2.08 | 1.87 | 1.65 |
| ∞ | 10.83 | 6.91 | 5.42 | 4.62 | 4.10 | 3.74 | 3.47 | 3.27 | 3.10 | 2.96 | 1.75 | 1.45 | 1.00 |

7.14.6 CUMULATIVE TERMS, BINOMIAL DISTRIBUTION

$$B(n, x; p) = \sum_{k=0}^x \binom{n}{k} p^k (1-p)^{n-k}.$$

Note that $B(n, x; p) = B(n, n-x; 1-p)$.

If p is the probability of success, then $B(n, x; p)$ is the probability of x or fewer successes in n independent trials. For example, if a biased coin has a probability $p = 0.4$ of being a head, and the coin is independently flipped 5 times, then there is a 68% chance that there will be 2 or fewer heads (since $B(5, 2; 0.4) = 0.6826$).

| n | x | p | | | | | | | |
|---|---|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| | | 0.05 | 0.10 | 0.15 | 0.20 | 0.25 | 0.30 | 0.40 | 0.50 |
| 2 | 0 | 0.9025 | 0.8100 | 0.7225 | 0.6400 | 0.5625 | 0.4900 | 0.3600 | 0.2500 |
| | 1 | 0.9975 | 0.9900 | 0.9775 | 0.9600 | 0.9375 | 0.9100 | 0.8400 | 0.7500 |
| 3 | 0 | 0.8574 | 0.7290 | 0.6141 | 0.5120 | 0.4219 | 0.3430 | 0.2160 | 0.1250 |
| | 1 | 0.9928 | 0.9720 | 0.9393 | 0.8960 | 0.8438 | 0.7840 | 0.6480 | 0.5000 |
| | 2 | 0.9999 | 0.9990 | 0.9966 | 0.9920 | 0.9844 | 0.9730 | 0.9360 | 0.8750 |
| 4 | 0 | 0.8145 | 0.6561 | 0.5220 | 0.4096 | 0.3164 | 0.2401 | 0.1296 | 0.0625 |
| | 1 | 0.9860 | 0.9477 | 0.8905 | 0.8192 | 0.7383 | 0.6517 | 0.4752 | 0.3125 |
| | 2 | 0.9995 | 0.9963 | 0.9880 | 0.9728 | 0.9492 | 0.9163 | 0.8208 | 0.6875 |
| | 3 | 1.0000 | 0.9999 | 0.9995 | 0.9984 | 0.9961 | 0.9919 | 0.9744 | 0.9375 |
| 5 | 0 | 0.7738 | 0.5905 | 0.4437 | 0.3277 | 0.2373 | 0.1681 | 0.0778 | 0.0312 |
| | 1 | 0.9774 | 0.9185 | 0.8352 | 0.7373 | 0.6328 | 0.5282 | 0.3370 | 0.1875 |
| | 2 | 0.9988 | 0.9914 | 0.9734 | 0.9421 | 0.8965 | 0.8369 | 0.6826 | 0.5000 |
| | 3 | 1.0000 | 0.9995 | 0.9978 | 0.9933 | 0.9844 | 0.9692 | 0.9130 | 0.8125 |
| | 4 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9999 | 0.9997 | 0.9990 | 0.9976 | 0.9898 | 0.9688 |
| 6 | 0 | 0.7351 | 0.5314 | 0.3771 | 0.2621 | 0.1780 | 0.1177 | 0.0467 | 0.0156 |
| | 1 | 0.9672 | 0.8857 | 0.7765 | 0.6554 | 0.5339 | 0.4202 | 0.2333 | 0.1094 |
| | 2 | 0.9978 | 0.9841 | 0.9527 | 0.9011 | 0.8306 | 0.7443 | 0.5443 | 0.3438 |
| | 3 | 0.9999 | 0.9987 | 0.9941 | 0.9830 | 0.9624 | 0.9295 | 0.8208 | 0.6562 |
| | 4 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9996 | 0.9984 | 0.9954 | 0.9891 | 0.9590 | 0.8906 |
| | 5 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9999 | 0.9998 | 0.9993 | 0.9959 | 0.9844 |
| 7 | 0 | 0.6983 | 0.4783 | 0.3206 | 0.2097 | 0.1335 | 0.0824 | 0.0280 | 0.0078 |
| | 1 | 0.9556 | 0.8503 | 0.7166 | 0.5767 | 0.4450 | 0.3294 | 0.1586 | 0.0625 |
| | 2 | 0.9962 | 0.9743 | 0.9262 | 0.8520 | 0.7564 | 0.6471 | 0.4199 | 0.2266 |
| | 3 | 0.9998 | 0.9973 | 0.9879 | 0.9667 | 0.9294 | 0.8740 | 0.7102 | 0.5000 |
| | 4 | 1.0000 | 0.9998 | 0.9988 | 0.9953 | 0.9871 | 0.9712 | 0.9037 | 0.7734 |
| | 5 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9999 | 0.9996 | 0.9987 | 0.9962 | 0.9812 | 0.9375 |
| | 6 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9999 | 0.9998 | 0.9984 | 0.9922 |

| n | x | p | | | | | | | |
|-----|-----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| | | 0.05 | 0.10 | 0.15 | 0.20 | 0.25 | 0.30 | 0.40 | 0.50 |
| 8 | 0 | 0.6634 | 0.4305 | 0.2725 | 0.1678 | 0.1001 | 0.0576 | 0.0168 | 0.0039 |
| | 1 | 0.9428 | 0.8131 | 0.6572 | 0.5033 | 0.3671 | 0.2553 | 0.1064 | 0.0352 |
| | 2 | 0.9942 | 0.9619 | 0.8948 | 0.7969 | 0.6785 | 0.5518 | 0.3154 | 0.1445 |
| | 3 | 0.9996 | 0.9950 | 0.9787 | 0.9437 | 0.8862 | 0.8059 | 0.5941 | 0.3633 |
| | 4 | 1.0000 | 0.9996 | 0.9971 | 0.9896 | 0.9727 | 0.9420 | 0.8263 | 0.6367 |
| | 5 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9998 | 0.9988 | 0.9958 | 0.9887 | 0.9502 | 0.8555 |
| | 6 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9999 | 0.9996 | 0.9987 | 0.9915 | 0.9648 |
| | 7 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9999 | 0.9993 | 0.9961 |
| 9 | 0 | 0.6302 | 0.3874 | 0.2316 | 0.1342 | 0.0751 | 0.0403 | 0.0101 | 0.0019 |
| | 1 | 0.9288 | 0.7748 | 0.5995 | 0.4362 | 0.3003 | 0.1960 | 0.0705 | 0.0195 |
| | 2 | 0.9916 | 0.9470 | 0.8591 | 0.7382 | 0.6007 | 0.4628 | 0.2318 | 0.0898 |
| | 3 | 0.9994 | 0.9917 | 0.9661 | 0.9144 | 0.8343 | 0.7297 | 0.4826 | 0.2539 |
| | 4 | 1.0000 | 0.9991 | 0.9944 | 0.9804 | 0.9511 | 0.9012 | 0.7334 | 0.5000 |
| | 5 | 1.0000 | 0.9999 | 0.9994 | 0.9969 | 0.9900 | 0.9747 | 0.9006 | 0.7461 |
| | 6 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9997 | 0.9987 | 0.9957 | 0.9750 | 0.9102 |
| | 7 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9999 | 0.9996 | 0.9962 | 0.9805 |
| 10 | 0 | 0.5987 | 0.3487 | 0.1969 | 0.1074 | 0.0563 | 0.0283 | 0.0060 | 0.0010 |
| | 1 | 0.9139 | 0.7361 | 0.5443 | 0.3758 | 0.2440 | 0.1493 | 0.0464 | 0.0107 |
| | 2 | 0.9885 | 0.9298 | 0.8202 | 0.6778 | 0.5256 | 0.3828 | 0.1673 | 0.0547 |
| | 3 | 0.9990 | 0.9872 | 0.9500 | 0.8791 | 0.7759 | 0.6496 | 0.3823 | 0.1719 |
| | 4 | 0.9999 | 0.9984 | 0.9901 | 0.9672 | 0.9219 | 0.8497 | 0.6331 | 0.3770 |
| | 5 | 1.0000 | 0.9999 | 0.9986 | 0.9936 | 0.9803 | 0.9526 | 0.8338 | 0.6230 |
| | 6 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9999 | 0.9991 | 0.9965 | 0.9894 | 0.9452 | 0.8281 |
| | 7 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9999 | 0.9996 | 0.9984 | 0.9877 | 0.9453 |
| | 8 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9999 | 0.9983 | 0.9893 |
| | 9 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9999 | 0.9990 |
| 11 | 0 | 0.5688 | 0.3138 | 0.1673 | 0.0859 | 0.0422 | 0.0198 | 0.0036 | 0.0005 |
| | 1 | 0.8981 | 0.6974 | 0.4922 | 0.3221 | 0.1971 | 0.1130 | 0.0302 | 0.0059 |
| | 2 | 0.9848 | 0.9104 | 0.7788 | 0.6174 | 0.4552 | 0.3127 | 0.1189 | 0.0327 |
| | 3 | 0.9984 | 0.9815 | 0.9306 | 0.8389 | 0.7133 | 0.5696 | 0.2963 | 0.1133 |
| | 4 | 0.9999 | 0.9972 | 0.9841 | 0.9496 | 0.8854 | 0.7897 | 0.5328 | 0.2744 |
| | 5 | 1.0000 | 0.9997 | 0.9973 | 0.9883 | 0.9657 | 0.9218 | 0.7535 | 0.5000 |
| | 6 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9997 | 0.9980 | 0.9924 | 0.9784 | 0.9006 | 0.7256 |
| | 7 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9998 | 0.9988 | 0.9957 | 0.9707 | 0.8867 |
| | 8 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9999 | 0.9994 | 0.9941 | 0.9673 |
| | 9 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9993 | 0.9941 |
| | 10 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9995 |

| n | x | p | | | | | | | |
|----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| | | 0.05 | 0.10 | 0.15 | 0.20 | 0.25 | 0.30 | 0.40 | 0.50 |
| 12 | 0 | 0.5404 | 0.2824 | 0.1422 | 0.0687 | 0.0317 | 0.0138 | 0.0022 | 0.0002 |
| | 1 | 0.8816 | 0.6590 | 0.4435 | 0.2749 | 0.1584 | 0.0850 | 0.0196 | 0.0032 |
| | 2 | 0.9804 | 0.8891 | 0.7358 | 0.5584 | 0.3907 | 0.2528 | 0.0834 | 0.0193 |
| | 3 | 0.9978 | 0.9744 | 0.9078 | 0.7946 | 0.6488 | 0.4925 | 0.2253 | 0.0730 |
| | 4 | 0.9998 | 0.9957 | 0.9761 | 0.9274 | 0.8424 | 0.7237 | 0.4382 | 0.1938 |
| | 5 | 1.0000 | 0.9995 | 0.9954 | 0.9806 | 0.9456 | 0.8821 | 0.6652 | 0.3872 |
| | 6 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9993 | 0.9961 | 0.9858 | 0.9614 | 0.8418 | 0.6128 |
| | 7 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9999 | 0.9994 | 0.9972 | 0.9905 | 0.9427 | 0.8062 |
| | 8 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9999 | 0.9996 | 0.9983 | 0.9847 | 0.9270 |
| | 9 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9998 | 0.9972 | 0.9807 |
| | 10 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9997 | 0.9968 |
| | 11 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9998 |
| 13 | 0 | 0.5133 | 0.2542 | 0.1209 | 0.0550 | 0.0238 | 0.0097 | 0.0013 | 0.0001 |
| | 1 | 0.8646 | 0.6213 | 0.3983 | 0.2336 | 0.1267 | 0.0637 | 0.0126 | 0.0017 |
| | 2 | 0.9755 | 0.8661 | 0.6920 | 0.5017 | 0.3326 | 0.2025 | 0.0579 | 0.0112 |
| | 3 | 0.9969 | 0.9658 | 0.8820 | 0.7473 | 0.5843 | 0.4206 | 0.1686 | 0.0461 |
| | 4 | 0.9997 | 0.9935 | 0.9658 | 0.9009 | 0.7940 | 0.6543 | 0.3530 | 0.1334 |
| | 5 | 1.0000 | 0.9991 | 0.9925 | 0.9700 | 0.9198 | 0.8346 | 0.5744 | 0.2905 |
| | 6 | 1.0000 | 0.9999 | 0.9987 | 0.9930 | 0.9757 | 0.9376 | 0.7712 | 0.5000 |
| | 7 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9998 | 0.9988 | 0.9943 | 0.9818 | 0.9023 | 0.7095 |
| | 8 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9998 | 0.9990 | 0.9960 | 0.9679 | 0.8666 |
| | 9 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9999 | 0.9993 | 0.9922 | 0.9539 |
| | 10 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9999 | 0.9987 | 0.9888 |
| | 11 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9999 | 0.9983 |
| 12 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 0.9999 | |

7.14.7 CUMULATIVE TERMS, POISSON DISTRIBUTION

$$F(x; \lambda) = \sum_{k=0}^x e^{-\lambda} \frac{\lambda^k}{k!}.$$

If λ is the rate of Poisson arrivals, then $F(x; \lambda)$ is the probability of x or fewer arrivals occurring in a unit of time. For example, if customers arrive at the rate of $\lambda = 0.5$ customers per hour, then the probability of having no customers in any specified hour is 0.61 (the probability of one or fewer customers is 0.91).

| λ | x | | | | | | | | | |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 |
| 0.02 | 0.980 | 1.000 | | | | | | | | |
| 0.04 | 0.961 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | | | | | |
| 0.06 | 0.942 | 0.998 | 1.000 | | | | | | | |
| 0.08 | 0.923 | 0.997 | 1.000 | | | | | | | |
| 0.10 | 0.905 | 0.995 | 1.000 | | | | | | | |
| 0.15 | 0.861 | 0.990 | 1.000 | 1.000 | | | | | | |
| 0.20 | 0.819 | 0.983 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | | | | |
| 0.25 | 0.779 | 0.974 | 0.998 | 1.000 | | | | | | |
| 0.30 | 0.741 | 0.963 | 0.996 | 1.000 | | | | | | |

| λ | x | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 |
| 0.35 | 0.705 | 0.951 | 0.995 | 1.000 | | | | | | |
| 0.40 | 0.670 | 0.938 | 0.992 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | | | |
| 0.45 | 0.638 | 0.925 | 0.989 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | | | |
| 0.50 | 0.607 | 0.910 | 0.986 | 0.998 | 1.000 | | | | | |
| 0.55 | 0.577 | 0.894 | 0.982 | 0.998 | 1.000 | | | | | |
| 0.60 | 0.549 | 0.878 | 0.977 | 0.997 | 1.000 | | | | | |
| 0.65 | 0.522 | 0.861 | 0.972 | 0.996 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | | |
| 0.70 | 0.497 | 0.844 | 0.966 | 0.994 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | | |
| 0.75 | 0.472 | 0.827 | 0.960 | 0.993 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | | |
| 0.80 | 0.449 | 0.809 | 0.953 | 0.991 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | | |
| 0.85 | 0.427 | 0.791 | 0.945 | 0.989 | 0.998 | 1.000 | | | | |
| 0.90 | 0.407 | 0.772 | 0.937 | 0.987 | 0.998 | 1.000 | | | | |
| 0.95 | 0.387 | 0.754 | 0.929 | 0.984 | 0.997 | 1.000 | | | | |
| 1.00 | 0.368 | 0.736 | 0.920 | 0.981 | 0.996 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | |
| 1.1 | 0.333 | 0.699 | 0.900 | 0.974 | 0.995 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | |
| 1.2 | 0.301 | 0.663 | 0.879 | 0.966 | 0.992 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | |
| 1.3 | 0.273 | 0.627 | 0.857 | 0.957 | 0.989 | 0.998 | 1.000 | | | |
| 1.4 | 0.247 | 0.592 | 0.834 | 0.946 | 0.986 | 0.997 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | |
| 1.5 | 0.223 | 0.558 | 0.809 | 0.934 | 0.981 | 0.996 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | |
| 1.6 | 0.202 | 0.525 | 0.783 | 0.921 | 0.976 | 0.994 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | |
| 1.7 | 0.183 | 0.493 | 0.757 | 0.907 | 0.970 | 0.992 | 0.998 | 1.000 | | |
| 1.8 | 0.165 | 0.463 | 0.731 | 0.891 | 0.964 | 0.990 | 0.997 | 0.999 | 1.000 | |
| 1.9 | 0.150 | 0.434 | 0.704 | 0.875 | 0.956 | 0.987 | 0.997 | 0.999 | 1.000 | |
| 2.0 | 0.135 | 0.406 | 0.677 | 0.857 | 0.947 | 0.983 | 0.996 | 0.999 | 1.000 | |
| 2.2 | 0.111 | 0.355 | 0.623 | 0.819 | 0.927 | 0.975 | 0.993 | 0.998 | 1.000 | |
| 2.4 | 0.091 | 0.308 | 0.570 | 0.779 | 0.904 | 0.964 | 0.988 | 0.997 | 0.999 | 1.000 |
| 2.6 | 0.074 | 0.267 | 0.518 | 0.736 | 0.877 | 0.951 | 0.983 | 0.995 | 0.999 | 1.000 |
| 2.8 | 0.061 | 0.231 | 0.469 | 0.692 | 0.848 | 0.935 | 0.976 | 0.992 | 0.998 | 0.999 |
| 3.0 | 0.050 | 0.199 | 0.423 | 0.647 | 0.815 | 0.916 | 0.967 | 0.988 | 0.996 | 0.999 |
| 3.2 | 0.041 | 0.171 | 0.380 | 0.603 | 0.781 | 0.895 | 0.955 | 0.983 | 0.994 | 0.998 |
| 3.4 | 0.033 | 0.147 | 0.340 | 0.558 | 0.744 | 0.871 | 0.942 | 0.977 | 0.992 | 0.997 |
| 3.6 | 0.027 | 0.126 | 0.303 | 0.515 | 0.706 | 0.844 | 0.927 | 0.969 | 0.988 | 0.996 |
| 3.8 | 0.022 | 0.107 | 0.269 | 0.473 | 0.668 | 0.816 | 0.909 | 0.960 | 0.984 | 0.994 |
| 4.0 | 0.018 | 0.092 | 0.238 | 0.433 | 0.629 | 0.785 | 0.889 | 0.949 | 0.979 | 0.992 |
| 4.2 | 0.015 | 0.078 | 0.210 | 0.395 | 0.590 | 0.753 | 0.868 | 0.936 | 0.972 | 0.989 |
| 4.4 | 0.012 | 0.066 | 0.185 | 0.359 | 0.551 | 0.720 | 0.844 | 0.921 | 0.964 | 0.985 |
| 4.6 | 0.010 | 0.056 | 0.163 | 0.326 | 0.513 | 0.686 | 0.818 | 0.905 | 0.955 | 0.981 |
| 4.8 | 0.008 | 0.048 | 0.142 | 0.294 | 0.476 | 0.651 | 0.791 | 0.887 | 0.944 | 0.975 |
| 5.0 | 0.007 | 0.040 | 0.125 | 0.265 | 0.441 | 0.616 | 0.762 | 0.867 | 0.932 | 0.968 |
| 5.2 | 0.005 | 0.034 | 0.109 | 0.238 | 0.406 | 0.581 | 0.732 | 0.845 | 0.918 | 0.960 |
| 5.4 | 0.004 | 0.029 | 0.095 | 0.213 | 0.373 | 0.546 | 0.702 | 0.822 | 0.903 | 0.951 |

| λ | x | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 |
| 5.6 | 0.004 | 0.024 | 0.082 | 0.191 | 0.342 | 0.512 | 0.670 | 0.797 | 0.886 | 0.941 |
| 5.8 | 0.003 | 0.021 | 0.071 | 0.170 | 0.313 | 0.478 | 0.638 | 0.771 | 0.867 | 0.929 |
| 6.0 | 0.003 | 0.017 | 0.062 | 0.151 | 0.285 | 0.446 | 0.606 | 0.744 | 0.847 | 0.916 |
| 6.2 | 0.002 | 0.015 | 0.054 | 0.134 | 0.259 | 0.414 | 0.574 | 0.716 | 0.826 | 0.902 |
| 6.4 | 0.002 | 0.012 | 0.046 | 0.119 | 0.235 | 0.384 | 0.542 | 0.687 | 0.803 | 0.886 |
| 6.6 | 0.001 | 0.010 | 0.040 | 0.105 | 0.213 | 0.355 | 0.511 | 0.658 | 0.780 | 0.869 |
| 6.8 | 0.001 | 0.009 | 0.034 | 0.093 | 0.192 | 0.327 | 0.480 | 0.628 | 0.755 | 0.850 |
| 7.0 | 0.001 | 0.007 | 0.030 | 0.082 | 0.173 | 0.301 | 0.450 | 0.599 | 0.729 | 0.831 |
| 7.2 | 0.001 | 0.006 | 0.025 | 0.072 | 0.155 | 0.276 | 0.420 | 0.569 | 0.703 | 0.810 |
| 7.4 | 0.001 | 0.005 | 0.022 | 0.063 | 0.140 | 0.253 | 0.392 | 0.539 | 0.676 | 0.788 |
| 7.6 | 0.001 | 0.004 | 0.019 | 0.055 | 0.125 | 0.231 | 0.365 | 0.510 | 0.648 | 0.765 |
| 7.8 | 0.000 | 0.004 | 0.016 | 0.049 | 0.112 | 0.210 | 0.338 | 0.481 | 0.620 | 0.741 |
| 8.0 | 0.000 | 0.003 | 0.014 | 0.042 | 0.100 | 0.191 | 0.313 | 0.453 | 0.593 | 0.717 |
| 8.5 | 0.000 | 0.002 | 0.009 | 0.030 | 0.074 | 0.150 | 0.256 | 0.386 | 0.523 | 0.653 |
| 9.0 | 0.000 | 0.001 | 0.006 | 0.021 | 0.055 | 0.116 | 0.207 | 0.324 | 0.456 | 0.587 |
| 9.5 | 0.000 | 0.001 | 0.004 | 0.015 | 0.040 | 0.088 | 0.165 | 0.269 | 0.392 | 0.522 |
| 10.0 | 0.000 | 0.001 | 0.003 | 0.010 | 0.029 | 0.067 | 0.130 | 0.220 | 0.333 | 0.458 |
| 10.5 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.002 | 0.007 | 0.021 | 0.050 | 0.102 | 0.178 | 0.279 | 0.397 |
| 11.0 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.001 | 0.005 | 0.015 | 0.037 | 0.079 | 0.143 | 0.232 | 0.341 |
| 11.5 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.001 | 0.003 | 0.011 | 0.028 | 0.060 | 0.114 | 0.191 | 0.289 |
| 12.0 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.001 | 0.002 | 0.008 | 0.020 | 0.046 | 0.089 | 0.155 | 0.242 |
| 12.5 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.002 | 0.005 | 0.015 | 0.035 | 0.070 | 0.125 | 0.201 |
| 13.0 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.001 | 0.004 | 0.011 | 0.026 | 0.054 | 0.100 | 0.166 |
| 13.5 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.001 | 0.003 | 0.008 | 0.019 | 0.042 | 0.079 | 0.135 |
| 14.0 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.001 | 0.002 | 0.005 | 0.014 | 0.032 | 0.062 | 0.109 |
| 14.5 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.001 | 0.004 | 0.011 | 0.024 | 0.048 | 0.088 |
| 15.0 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.001 | 0.003 | 0.008 | 0.018 | 0.037 | 0.070 |

| λ | x | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|----|----|----|----|
| | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 |
| 2.8 | 1.000 | | | | | | | | | |
| 3.0 | 1.000 | | | | | | | | | |
| 3.2 | 1.000 | | | | | | | | | |
| 3.4 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | | | | | | |
| 3.6 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | | | | | | |
| 3.8 | 0.998 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | | | | | |
| 4.0 | 0.997 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | | | | | |
| 4.2 | 0.996 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | | | | | |
| 4.4 | 0.994 | 0.998 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | | | | |
| 4.6 | 0.992 | 0.997 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | | | | |
| 4.8 | 0.990 | 0.996 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | | | | |
| 5.0 | 0.986 | 0.995 | 0.998 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | | | |
| 5.2 | 0.982 | 0.993 | 0.997 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | | | |
| 5.4 | 0.978 | 0.990 | 0.996 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | | | |
| 5.6 | 0.972 | 0.988 | 0.995 | 0.998 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | | |

| λ | x | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 |
| 5.8 | 0.965 | 0.984 | 0.993 | 0.997 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | | |
| 6.0 | 0.957 | 0.980 | 0.991 | 0.996 | 0.999 | 1.000 | 1.000 | | | |
| 6.2 | 0.949 | 0.975 | 0.989 | 0.995 | 0.998 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | |
| 6.4 | 0.939 | 0.969 | 0.986 | 0.994 | 0.997 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | |
| 6.6 | 0.927 | 0.963 | 0.982 | 0.992 | 0.997 | 0.999 | 1.000 | 1.000 | | |
| 6.8 | 0.915 | 0.955 | 0.978 | 0.990 | 0.996 | 0.998 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | |
| 7.0 | 0.901 | 0.947 | 0.973 | 0.987 | 0.994 | 0.998 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | |
| 7.2 | 0.887 | 0.937 | 0.967 | 0.984 | 0.993 | 0.997 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | |
| 7.4 | 0.871 | 0.926 | 0.961 | 0.981 | 0.991 | 0.996 | 0.998 | 0.999 | 1.000 | |
| 7.6 | 0.854 | 0.915 | 0.954 | 0.976 | 0.989 | 0.995 | 0.998 | 0.999 | 1.000 | |
| 7.8 | 0.835 | 0.902 | 0.945 | 0.971 | 0.986 | 0.993 | 0.997 | 0.999 | 1.000 | |
| 8.0 | 0.816 | 0.888 | 0.936 | 0.966 | 0.983 | 0.992 | 0.996 | 0.998 | 0.999 | 1.000 |
| 8.5 | 0.763 | 0.849 | 0.909 | 0.949 | 0.973 | 0.986 | 0.993 | 0.997 | 0.999 | 1.000 |
| 9.0 | 0.706 | 0.803 | 0.876 | 0.926 | 0.959 | 0.978 | 0.989 | 0.995 | 0.998 | 0.999 |
| 9.5 | 0.645 | 0.752 | 0.836 | 0.898 | 0.940 | 0.967 | 0.982 | 0.991 | 0.996 | 0.998 |
| 10.0 | 0.583 | 0.697 | 0.792 | 0.865 | 0.916 | 0.951 | 0.973 | 0.986 | 0.993 | 0.997 |
| 10.5 | 0.521 | 0.639 | 0.742 | 0.825 | 0.888 | 0.932 | 0.960 | 0.978 | 0.989 | 0.994 |
| 11.0 | 0.460 | 0.579 | 0.689 | 0.781 | 0.854 | 0.907 | 0.944 | 0.968 | 0.982 | 0.991 |
| 11.5 | 0.402 | 0.520 | 0.633 | 0.733 | 0.815 | 0.878 | 0.924 | 0.954 | 0.974 | 0.986 |
| 12.0 | 0.347 | 0.462 | 0.576 | 0.681 | 0.772 | 0.844 | 0.899 | 0.937 | 0.963 | 0.979 |
| 12.5 | 0.297 | 0.406 | 0.519 | 0.628 | 0.725 | 0.806 | 0.869 | 0.916 | 0.948 | 0.969 |
| 13.0 | 0.252 | 0.353 | 0.463 | 0.573 | 0.675 | 0.764 | 0.836 | 0.890 | 0.930 | 0.957 |
| 13.5 | 0.211 | 0.304 | 0.409 | 0.518 | 0.623 | 0.718 | 0.797 | 0.861 | 0.908 | 0.942 |
| 14.0 | 0.176 | 0.260 | 0.358 | 0.464 | 0.570 | 0.669 | 0.756 | 0.827 | 0.883 | 0.923 |
| 14.5 | 0.145 | 0.220 | 0.311 | 0.412 | 0.518 | 0.619 | 0.711 | 0.790 | 0.853 | 0.901 |
| 15.0 | 0.118 | 0.185 | 0.268 | 0.363 | 0.466 | 0.568 | 0.664 | 0.749 | 0.820 | 0.875 |

| λ | x | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 |
| 8.5 | 1.000 | | | | | | | | | |
| 9.0 | 1.000 | | | | | | | | | |
| 9.5 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | | | | | | |
| 10.0 | 0.998 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | | | | | |
| 10.5 | 0.997 | 0.999 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | | | | |
| 11.0 | 0.995 | 0.998 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | | | | |
| 11.5 | 0.993 | 0.996 | 0.998 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | | | |
| 12.0 | 0.988 | 0.994 | 0.997 | 0.999 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | | |
| 12.5 | 0.983 | 0.991 | 0.995 | 0.998 | 0.999 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | |
| 13.0 | 0.975 | 0.986 | 0.992 | 0.996 | 0.998 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | |
| 13.5 | 0.965 | 0.980 | 0.989 | 0.994 | 0.997 | 0.998 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | |
| 14.0 | 0.952 | 0.971 | 0.983 | 0.991 | 0.995 | 0.997 | 0.999 | 0.999 | 1.000 | |
| 14.5 | 0.936 | 0.960 | 0.976 | 0.986 | 0.992 | 0.996 | 0.998 | 0.999 | 1.000 | 1.000 |
| 15.0 | 0.917 | 0.947 | 0.967 | 0.981 | 0.989 | 0.994 | 0.997 | 0.998 | 0.999 | 1.000 |

| λ | x | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 |
| 16 | 0.001 | 0.004 | 0.010 | 0.022 | 0.043 | 0.077 | 0.127 | 0.193 | 0.275 | 0.367 |
| 17 | 0.001 | 0.002 | 0.005 | 0.013 | 0.026 | 0.049 | 0.085 | 0.135 | 0.201 | 0.281 |
| 18 | 0.000 | 0.001 | 0.003 | 0.007 | 0.015 | 0.030 | 0.055 | 0.092 | 0.143 | 0.208 |
| 19 | 0.000 | 0.001 | 0.002 | 0.004 | 0.009 | 0.018 | 0.035 | 0.061 | 0.098 | 0.150 |
| 20 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.001 | 0.002 | 0.005 | 0.011 | 0.021 | 0.039 | 0.066 | 0.105 |
| 21 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.001 | 0.003 | 0.006 | 0.013 | 0.025 | 0.043 | 0.072 |
| 22 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.001 | 0.002 | 0.004 | 0.008 | 0.015 | 0.028 | 0.048 |
| 23 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.001 | 0.002 | 0.004 | 0.009 | 0.017 | 0.031 |
| 24 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.001 | 0.003 | 0.005 | 0.011 | 0.020 |
| 25 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.001 | 0.001 | 0.003 | 0.006 | 0.012 |
| 26 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.001 | 0.002 | 0.004 | 0.008 |
| 27 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.001 | 0.002 | 0.005 |
| 28 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.001 | 0.001 | 0.003 |
| 29 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.001 | 0.002 |
| 30 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.001 |

| λ | x | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 |
| 16 | 0.467 | 0.566 | 0.659 | 0.742 | 0.812 | 0.868 | 0.911 | 0.942 | 0.963 | 0.978 |
| 17 | 0.371 | 0.468 | 0.564 | 0.655 | 0.736 | 0.805 | 0.862 | 0.905 | 0.937 | 0.959 |
| 18 | 0.287 | 0.375 | 0.469 | 0.562 | 0.651 | 0.731 | 0.799 | 0.855 | 0.899 | 0.932 |
| 19 | 0.215 | 0.292 | 0.378 | 0.469 | 0.561 | 0.647 | 0.726 | 0.793 | 0.849 | 0.893 |
| 20 | 0.157 | 0.221 | 0.297 | 0.381 | 0.470 | 0.559 | 0.644 | 0.721 | 0.787 | 0.843 |
| 21 | 0.111 | 0.163 | 0.227 | 0.302 | 0.384 | 0.471 | 0.558 | 0.640 | 0.716 | 0.782 |
| 22 | 0.077 | 0.117 | 0.169 | 0.233 | 0.306 | 0.387 | 0.472 | 0.556 | 0.637 | 0.712 |
| 23 | 0.052 | 0.082 | 0.123 | 0.175 | 0.238 | 0.310 | 0.389 | 0.472 | 0.555 | 0.635 |
| 24 | 0.034 | 0.056 | 0.087 | 0.128 | 0.180 | 0.243 | 0.314 | 0.392 | 0.473 | 0.554 |
| 25 | 0.022 | 0.038 | 0.060 | 0.092 | 0.134 | 0.185 | 0.247 | 0.318 | 0.394 | 0.473 |
| 26 | 0.014 | 0.025 | 0.041 | 0.065 | 0.097 | 0.139 | 0.191 | 0.252 | 0.321 | 0.396 |
| 27 | 0.009 | 0.016 | 0.027 | 0.044 | 0.069 | 0.102 | 0.144 | 0.195 | 0.256 | 0.324 |
| 28 | 0.005 | 0.010 | 0.018 | 0.030 | 0.048 | 0.073 | 0.106 | 0.148 | 0.200 | 0.260 |
| 29 | 0.003 | 0.006 | 0.011 | 0.020 | 0.033 | 0.051 | 0.077 | 0.110 | 0.153 | 0.204 |
| 30 | 0.002 | 0.004 | 0.007 | 0.013 | 0.022 | 0.035 | 0.054 | 0.081 | 0.115 | 0.157 |

| λ | x | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 | 31 | 32 | 33 | 34 |
| 16 | 0.987 | 0.993 | 0.996 | 0.998 | 0.999 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | | |
| 17 | 0.975 | 0.985 | 0.991 | 0.995 | 0.997 | 0.999 | 0.999 | 1.000 | | |
| 18 | 0.955 | 0.972 | 0.983 | 0.990 | 0.994 | 0.997 | 0.998 | 0.999 | 1.000 | |
| 19 | 0.927 | 0.951 | 0.969 | 0.981 | 0.988 | 0.993 | 0.996 | 0.998 | 0.999 | 0.999 |
| 20 | 0.888 | 0.922 | 0.948 | 0.966 | 0.978 | 0.987 | 0.992 | 0.995 | 0.997 | 0.999 |
| 21 | 0.838 | 0.883 | 0.917 | 0.944 | 0.963 | 0.976 | 0.985 | 0.991 | 0.995 | 0.997 |
| 22 | 0.777 | 0.832 | 0.877 | 0.913 | 0.940 | 0.960 | 0.974 | 0.983 | 0.990 | 0.994 |
| 23 | 0.708 | 0.772 | 0.827 | 0.873 | 0.908 | 0.936 | 0.956 | 0.971 | 0.981 | 0.988 |
| 24 | 0.632 | 0.704 | 0.768 | 0.823 | 0.868 | 0.904 | 0.932 | 0.953 | 0.969 | 0.979 |

7.14.8 CRITICAL VALUES, KOLMOGOROV–SMIRNOV TEST

| One-sided test | $p = 0.90$ | 0.95 | 0.975 | 0.99 | 0.995 |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| Two-sided test | $p = 0.80$ | 0.90 | 0.95 | 0.98 | 0.99 |
| $n = 1$ | 0.900 | 0.950 | 0.975 | 0.990 | 0.995 |
| 2 | 0.684 | 0.776 | 0.842 | 0.900 | 0.929 |
| 3 | 0.565 | 0.636 | 0.708 | 0.785 | 0.829 |
| 4 | 0.493 | 0.565 | 0.624 | 0.689 | 0.734 |
| 5 | 0.447 | 0.509 | 0.563 | 0.627 | 0.669 |
| 6 | 0.410 | 0.468 | 0.519 | 0.577 | 0.617 |
| 7 | 0.381 | 0.436 | 0.483 | 0.538 | 0.576 |
| 8 | 0.358 | 0.410 | 0.454 | 0.507 | 0.542 |
| 9 | 0.339 | 0.387 | 0.430 | 0.480 | 0.513 |
| 10 | 0.323 | 0.369 | 0.409 | 0.457 | 0.489 |
| 11 | 0.308 | 0.352 | 0.391 | 0.437 | 0.468 |
| 12 | 0.296 | 0.338 | 0.375 | 0.419 | 0.449 |
| 13 | 0.285 | 0.325 | 0.361 | 0.404 | 0.432 |
| 14 | 0.275 | 0.314 | 0.349 | 0.390 | 0.418 |
| 15 | 0.266 | 0.304 | 0.338 | 0.377 | 0.404 |
| 20 | 0.232 | 0.265 | 0.294 | 0.329 | 0.352 |
| 25 | 0.208 | 0.238 | 0.264 | 0.295 | 0.317 |
| 30 | 0.190 | 0.218 | 0.242 | 0.270 | 0.290 |
| 35 | 0.177 | 0.202 | 0.224 | 0.251 | 0.269 |
| 40 | 0.165 | 0.189 | 0.210 | 0.235 | 0.252 |
| Approximation for $n > 40$: | $\frac{1.07}{\sqrt{n}}$ | $\frac{1.22}{\sqrt{n}}$ | $\frac{1.36}{\sqrt{n}}$ | $\frac{1.52}{\sqrt{n}}$ | $\frac{1.63}{\sqrt{n}}$ |

7.14.9 CRITICAL VALUES, TWO SAMPLE KOLMOGOROV–SMIRNOV TEST

The value of D listed below is so large that the hypothesis H_0 , the two distributions are the same, is to be rejected at the indicated level of signi cance. Here, n_1 and n_2 are assumed to be large, and $D = \max |F_{n_1}(x) - F_{n_2}(x)|$.

| Level of signi cance | Value of D |
|----------------------|---|
| $\alpha = 0.10$ | $1.22 \sqrt{\frac{n_1 + n_2}{n_1 n_2}}$ |
| $\alpha = 0.05$ | $1.36 \sqrt{\frac{n_1 + n_2}{n_1 n_2}}$ |
| $\alpha = 0.025$ | $1.48 \sqrt{\frac{n_1 + n_2}{n_1 n_2}}$ |
| $\alpha = 0.01$ | $1.63 \sqrt{\frac{n_1 + n_2}{n_1 n_2}}$ |
| $\alpha = 0.005$ | $1.73 \sqrt{\frac{n_1 + n_2}{n_1 n_2}}$ |
| $\alpha = 0.001$ | $1.95 \sqrt{\frac{n_1 + n_2}{n_1 n_2}}$ |

7.14.10 CRITICAL VALUES, SPEARMAN'S RANK CORRELATION

Spearman's coefficient of rank correlation, ρ_s , measures the correspondence between two rankings. Let d_i be the difference between the ranks of the i^{th} pair of a set of n pairs of elements. Then Spearman's rho is defined as

$$\rho_s = 1 - \frac{6 \sum_{i=1}^n d_i^2}{n^3 - n} = 1 - \frac{6S_r}{n^3 - n}$$

where $S_r = \sum_{i=1}^n d_i^2$. The table below gives critical values for S_r when there is complete independence.

| n | $p = 0.90$ | $p = 0.95$ | $p = 0.99$ | $p = 0.999$ |
|-----|------------|------------|------------|-------------|
| 4 | 0.8000 | 0.8000 | — | — |
| 5 | 0.7000 | 0.8000 | 0.9000 | — |
| 6 | 0.6000 | 0.7714 | 0.8857 | — |
| 7 | 0.5357 | 0.6786 | 0.8571 | 0.9643 |
| 8 | 0.5000 | 0.6190 | 0.8095 | 0.9286 |
| 9 | 0.4667 | 0.5833 | 0.7667 | 0.9000 |
| 10 | 0.4424 | 0.5515 | 0.7333 | 0.8667 |
| 11 | 0.4182 | 0.5273 | 0.7000 | 0.8364 |
| 12 | 0.3986 | 0.4965 | 0.6713 | 0.8182 |
| 13 | 0.3791 | 0.4780 | 0.6429 | 0.7912 |
| 14 | 0.3626 | 0.4593 | 0.6220 | 0.7670 |
| 15 | 0.3500 | 0.4429 | 0.6000 | 0.7464 |
| 20 | 0.2977 | 0.3789 | 0.5203 | 0.6586 |
| 25 | 0.2646 | 0.3362 | 0.4654 | 0.5962 |
| 30 | 0.2400 | 0.3059 | 0.4251 | 0.5479 |

7.15 SIGNAL PROCESSING

7.15.1 ESTIMATION

Let $\{e_t\}$ be a white noise process (so that $E[e_t] = \mu$, $\text{Var}[e_t] = \sigma^2$, and $\text{Cov}[e_t, e_s] = 0$ for $s \neq t$). Suppose that $\{X_t\}$ is a time series. A non-anticipating linear model presumes that $\sum_{u=0}^{\infty} h_u X_{t-u} = e_t$, where the $\{h_u\}$ are constants. This can be written $H(z)X_t = e_t$ where $H(z) = \sum_{u=0}^{\infty} h_u z^u$ and $z^n X_t = X_{t-n}$. Alternately, $X_t = H^{-1}(z)e_t$. In practice, several types of models are used:

1. AR(k), autoregressive model of order k : This assumes that $H(z) = 1 + a_1 z + \dots + a_k z^k$ and so

$$X_t + a_1 X_{t-1} + \dots + a_k X_{t-k} = e_t. \quad (7.15.1)$$

2. MA(l), moving average of order l : This assumes that $H^{-1}(z) = 1 + b_1z + \dots + b_lz^l$ and so

$$X_t = e_t + b_1e_{t-1} + \dots + b_l e_{t-l}. \quad (7.15.2)$$

3. ARMA(k, l), mixed autoregressive/moving average of order (k, l): This assumes that $H^{-1}(z) = \frac{1+b_1z+\dots+b_lz^l}{1+a_1z+\dots+a_kz^k}$ and so

$$X_t + a_1X_{t-1} + \dots + a_kX_{t-k} = e_t + b_1e_{t-1} + \dots + b_l e_{t-l}. \quad (7.15.3)$$

7.15.2 KALMAN FILTERS

Kalman filtering is a linear least-squares recursive estimator. It is used when the state space has a higher dimension than the observation space. For example, in some airport radars the distance to aircraft is measured and the velocity of each aircraft is inferred.

1. \mathbf{x} is the unknown state to be estimated
2. $\hat{\mathbf{x}}$ is the estimate of \mathbf{x}
3. \mathbf{z} is an observation
4. $\{\mathbf{w}, \mathbf{v}\}$ are noise terms
5. $\{Q, R\}$ are spectral density matrices
6. “ $\mathbf{a} \sim N(\mathbf{b}, C)$ ” means that the random variable \mathbf{a} has a normal distribution with a mean of \mathbf{b} and a covariance matrix of C .
7. “Extended Kalman filter”: State propagation is achieved through sequential linearizations of the system model and the measurement model.
8. “(-)” is the value before a new discrete observation and “(+)” is the value after a new discrete observation

7.15.2.1 Discrete Kalman filter

| | | |
|--------------------------------|--|--|
| System model | $\mathbf{x}_k = \Phi_{k-1}\mathbf{x}_{k-1} + \mathbf{w}_{k-1};$ | $\mathbf{w}_k \sim N(\mathbf{0}, Q_k)$ |
| Measurement model | $\mathbf{z}_k = H_k\mathbf{x}_k + \mathbf{v}_k;$ | $\mathbf{v}_k \sim N(\mathbf{0}, R_k)$ |
| Initial conditions | $E[\mathbf{x}(0)] = \hat{\mathbf{x}}_0, E[(\mathbf{x}(0) - \hat{\mathbf{x}}_0)(\mathbf{x}(0) - \hat{\mathbf{x}}_0)^T] = P_0$ | |
| Other assumptions | $E[\mathbf{w}_k \mathbf{v}_j^T] = 0$ for all j and k | |
| State estimate extrapolation | $\hat{\mathbf{x}}_k(-) = \Phi_{k-1}\hat{\mathbf{x}}_{k-1}(+)$ | |
| Error covariance extrapolation | $P_k(-) = \Phi_{k-1}P_{k-1}(+)\Phi_{k-1}^T + Q_{k-1}$ | |
| State estimate update | $\hat{\mathbf{x}}_k(+) = \hat{\mathbf{x}}_k(-) + K_k[\mathbf{z}_k - H_k\hat{\mathbf{x}}_k(-)]$ | |
| Error covariance update | $P_k(+) = [I - K_kH_k]P_k(-)$ | |
| Kalman gain matrix | $K_k = P_k(-)H_k^T [H_kP_k(-)H_k^T + R_k]^{-1}$ | |

7.15.2.2 Continuous Kalman Iter

| | |
|------------------------------|---|
| System model | $\dot{\mathbf{x}}(t) = F(t)\mathbf{x}(t) + G(t)\mathbf{w}(t); \quad \mathbf{w}(t) \sim N(\mathbf{0}, Q(t))$ |
| Measurement model | $\mathbf{z}(t) = H(t)\mathbf{x}(t) + \mathbf{v}(t); \quad \mathbf{v}(t) \sim N(\mathbf{0}, R(t))$ |
| Initial conditions | $\hat{\mathbf{x}}(0) = \hat{\mathbf{x}}_0, \quad P(0) = P_0,$ $E[\mathbf{x}(0)] = \hat{\mathbf{x}}_0, \quad E[(\mathbf{x}(0) - \hat{\mathbf{x}}_0)(\mathbf{x}(0) - \hat{\mathbf{x}}_0)^T] = P_0$ |
| Other assumptions | $R^{-1}(t)$ exists, $E[\mathbf{w}(t)\mathbf{v}^T(\tau)] = C(t)\delta(t - \tau)$ |
| State estimate propagation | $\dot{\hat{\mathbf{x}}}(t) = F(t)\hat{\mathbf{x}}(t) + K(t) [\mathbf{z}(t) - H(t)\hat{\mathbf{x}}(t)]$ |
| Error covariance propagation | $\dot{P}(t) = F(t)P(t) + P(t)F^T(t) + G(t)Q(t)G^T(t) - K(t)R(t)K^T(t)$ |
| Kalman gain matrix | $K(t) = [P(t)H^T(t) + G(t)C(t)] R^{-1}(t)$ |

7.15.2.3 Continuous extended Kalman Iter

| | |
|------------------------------|--|
| System model | $\dot{\mathbf{x}}(t) = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}(t), t) + \mathbf{w}(t); \quad \mathbf{w}(t) \sim N(\mathbf{0}, Q(t))$ |
| Measurement model | $\mathbf{z}(t) = \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{x}(t), t) + \mathbf{v}(t); \quad \mathbf{v}(t) \sim N(\mathbf{0}, R(t))$ |
| Initial conditions | $\mathbf{x}(0) \sim N(\hat{\mathbf{x}}_0, P_0)$ |
| Other assumptions | $E[\mathbf{w}(t)\mathbf{v}^T(\tau)] = 0$ for all t and all τ |
| State estimate propagation | $\dot{\hat{\mathbf{x}}}(t) = \mathbf{f}(\hat{\mathbf{x}}(t), t) + K(t) [\mathbf{z}(t) - \mathbf{h}(\hat{\mathbf{x}}(t), t)]$ |
| Error covariance propagation | $\dot{P}(t) = F(\hat{\mathbf{x}}(t), t)P(t) + P(t)F^T(\hat{\mathbf{x}}(t), t) + Q(t) - P(t)H^T(\hat{\mathbf{x}}(t), t)R^{-1}(t)H(\hat{\mathbf{x}}(t), t)P(t)$ |
| Gain equation | $K(t) = P(t)H^T(\hat{\mathbf{x}}(t), t)R^{-1}(t)$ |
| Definitions | $F(\hat{\mathbf{x}}(t), t) = \left. \frac{\partial \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}(t), t)}{\partial \mathbf{x}(t)} \right _{\mathbf{x}(t)=\hat{\mathbf{x}}(t)}$ $H(\hat{\mathbf{x}}(t), t) = \left. \frac{\partial \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{x}(t), t)}{\partial \mathbf{x}(t)} \right _{\mathbf{x}(t)=\hat{\mathbf{x}}(t)}$ |

7.15.2.4 Continuous-discrete extended Kalman Iter

| | |
|------------------------------|--|
| System model | $\dot{\mathbf{x}}(t) = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}(t), t) + \mathbf{w}(t); \quad \mathbf{w}(t) \sim N(\mathbf{0}, Q(t))$ |
| Measurement model | $\mathbf{z}_k = \mathbf{h}_k(\mathbf{x}(t_k)) + \mathbf{v}_k; \quad \mathbf{v}_k \sim N(\mathbf{0}, R_k)$ $k = 1, 2, \dots$ |
| Initial conditions | $\mathbf{x}(0) \sim N(\hat{\mathbf{x}}_0, P_0)$ |
| Other assumptions | $E[\mathbf{w}(t)\mathbf{v}_k^T] = 0$ for all k and all t |
| State estimate propagation | $\dot{\hat{\mathbf{x}}}(t) = \mathbf{f}(\hat{\mathbf{x}}(t), t)$ |
| Error covariance propagation | $\dot{P}(t) = F(\hat{\mathbf{x}}(t), t)P(t) + P(t)F^T(\hat{\mathbf{x}}(t), t) + Q(t)$ |
| State estimate update | $\hat{\mathbf{x}}_k(+)=\hat{\mathbf{x}}_k(-)+K_k[\mathbf{z}_k-\mathbf{h}_k(\hat{\mathbf{x}}_k(-))]$ |
| Error covariance update | $P_k(+)=[I-K_kH_k(\hat{\mathbf{x}}_k(-))]P_k(-)$ |
| Gain matrix | $K_k=P_k(-)H_k^T(\hat{\mathbf{x}}_k(-))\times[H_k(\hat{\mathbf{x}}_k(-))P_k(-)H_k^T(\hat{\mathbf{x}}_k(-))+R_k]^{-1}$ |
| Definition s | $F(\hat{\mathbf{x}}(t), t)=\left.\frac{\partial \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}(t), t)}{\partial \mathbf{x}(t)}\right _{\mathbf{x}(t)=\hat{\mathbf{x}}(t)}$ $H_k(\hat{\mathbf{x}}_k(-))=\left.\frac{\partial \mathbf{h}_k(\mathbf{x}(t_k))}{\partial \mathbf{x}(t_k)}\right _{\mathbf{x}(t_k)=\hat{\mathbf{x}}_k(-)}$ |

7.15.3 MATCHED FILTERING (WIENER FILTER)

Let $X(t)$ represent a signal to be recovered, let $N(t)$ represent noise, and let $Y(t) = X(t) + N(t)$ represent the observable signal. A prediction of the signal is

$$X_p(t) = \int_0^\infty K(z)Y(t-z) dz, \quad (7.15.4)$$

where $K(z)$ is a filter. The mean square error is $E[(X(t) - X_p(t))^2]$; this is minimized by the optimal (Wiener) filter $K_{\text{opt}}(z)$.

When X and Y are stationary, define their autocorrelation functions as $R_{XX}(t-s) = E[X(t)X(s)]$ and $R_{YY}(t-s) = E[Y(t)Y(s)]$. If \mathcal{F} represents the Fourier transform (see page 576), then the optimal filter is given by

$$\mathcal{F}[K_{\text{opt}}(t)] = \frac{1}{2\pi} \frac{\mathcal{F}[R_{XX}(t)]}{\mathcal{F}[R_{YY}(t)]}. \quad (7.15.5)$$

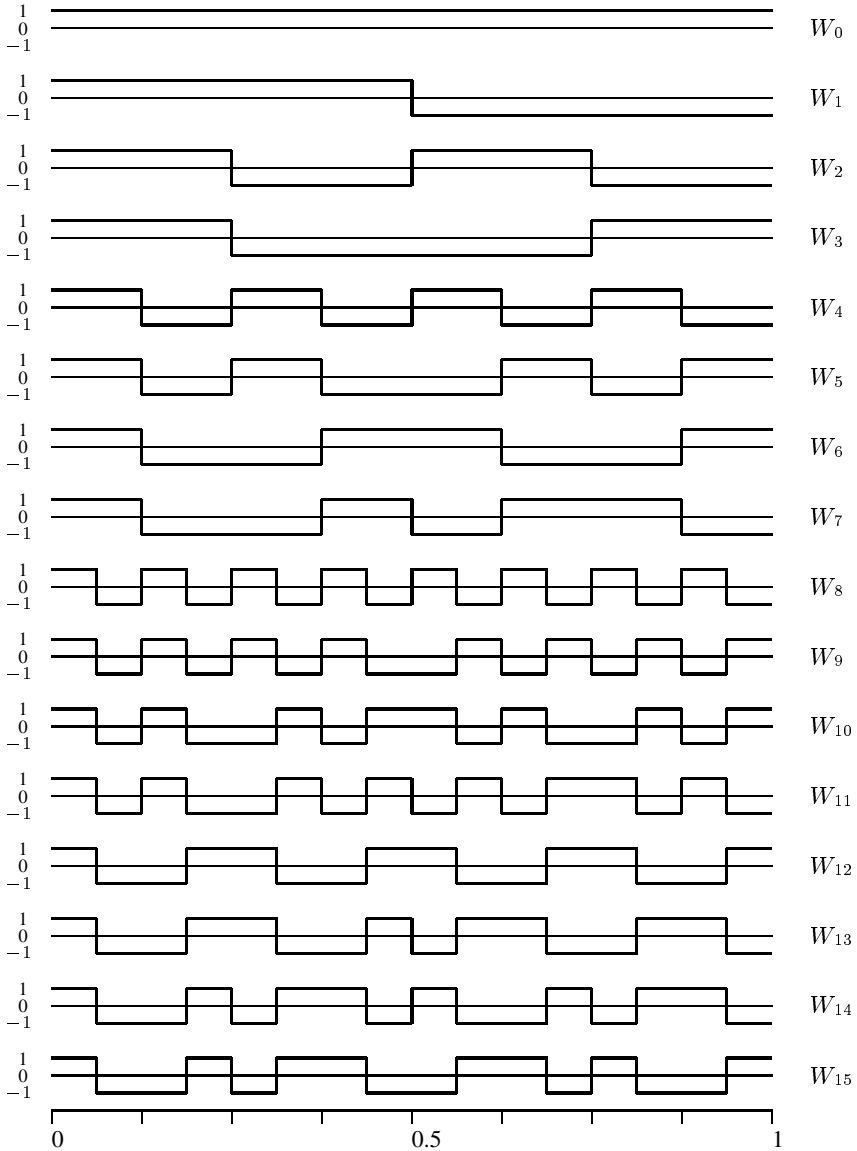
For example, if X and N are uncorrelated, then

$$\mathcal{F}[K_{\text{opt}}(t)] = \frac{1}{2\pi} \frac{\mathcal{F}[R_{XX}(t)]}{\mathcal{F}[R_{XX}(t)] + \mathcal{F}[R_{NN}(t)]}. \quad (7.15.6)$$

In the case of no noise, $\mathcal{F}[K_{\text{opt}}(t)] = \frac{1}{2\pi}$, $K_{\text{opt}}(t) = \delta(t)$, and $S_p(t) = Y(t)$.

7.15.4 WALSH FUNCTIONS

The *Rademacher functions* are defined by $r_k(x) = \text{sgn} \sin(2^{k+1}\pi x)$. If the binary expansion of n has the form $n = 2^{i_1} + 2^{i_2} + \dots + 2^{i_m}$, then the *Walsh function* of order n is $W_n(x) = r_{i_1}(x)r_{i_2}(x)\dots r_{i_m}(x)$.



7.15.5 WAVELETS

The *Haar wavelet* is $H(x) = 1$ if $0 \leq x < 1/2$, -1 if $1/2 \leq x < 1$, and 0 otherwise. Define $H_{j,k}(x) = 2^{j/2} H(2^j x - k)$. Then the *Haar system*, $\{H_{j,k}\}_{j,k=-\infty}^{+\infty}$, forms an orthonormal basis for the Hilbert space, $L^2(\mathbb{R})$, consisting of functions f with finite energy, i.e., $\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} |f(x)|^2 dx < \infty$.

7.15.5.1 Definitions

The construction of other wavelet orthonormal bases $\{\psi_{j,k}\}_{j,k=-\infty}^{+\infty}$ begins by choosing real coefficients h_0, \dots, h_n which satisfy the following conditions (we set $h_k = 0$ if $k < 0$ or $k > n$):

1. *Normalization*: $\sum_k h_k = \sqrt{2}$.
2. *Orthogonality*: $\sum_k h_k h_{k-2j} = 1$ if $j = 0$ and 0 if $j \neq 0$.
3. *Accuracy p* : $\sum_k (-1)^k k^j h_k = 0$ for $j = 0, \dots, p-1$ with $p > 0$.
4. *Cohen–Lawton criterion*: A technical condition only rarely violated by coefficients which satisfy the normalization, orthogonality, and accuracy p conditions.

The terms *order of approximation* or *Strang–Fix conditions* are often used in place of “accuracy”. The orthogonality condition implies that n is odd.

The four conditions above imply the existence of a solution $\varphi \in L^2(\mathbb{R})$, called the *scaling function*, to the following *re-norming equation*:

$$\varphi(x) = \sqrt{2} \sum_{k=0}^n h_k \varphi(2x - k). \quad (7.15.7)$$

The scaling function has a non-vanishing integral which we normalize: $\int \varphi(x) dx = 1$. Then $\varphi(x)$ is unique, and it vanishes outside of the interval $[0, n]$. The maximum possible accuracy is $p = (n+1)/2$. Thus, increasing the accuracy requires increasing the number of coefficients h_k . High accuracy is desirable, as it implies that each of the polynomials $1, x, \dots, x^{p-1}$ can be written as an infinite linear combination of the integer translates $\varphi(x - k)$. In particular, $\sum_k \varphi(x - k) = 1$. Also, the smoothness of φ is limited by the accuracy; φ can have at most $n - 2$ derivatives, although in practice it usually has fewer.

For each fixed integer j , let V_j be the closed subspace of $L^2(\mathbb{R})$ spanned by the functions, $\{\varphi_{j,k}\}_{k=-\infty}^{+\infty}$, where $\varphi_{j,k}(x) = 2^{j/2} \varphi(2^j x - k)$. The sequence of subspaces $\{V_j\}_{j=-\infty}^{+\infty}$ forms a *multi-resolution analysis* for $L^2(\mathbb{R})$, meaning that:

1. The subspaces are nested: $\dots \subset V_{-1} \subset V_0 \subset V_1 \dots$.
2. They are obtained from each other by dilation by 2: $v(x) \in V_j \iff v(2x) \in V_{j+1}$.
3. V_0 is integer translation invariant: $v(x) \in V_0 \iff v(x+1) \in V_0$.
4. The V_j increase to all of $L^2(\mathbb{R})$ and decrease to zero: $\cup V_j$ is dense in $L^2(\mathbb{R})$ and $\cap V_j = \{0\}$.
5. The set of integer translates $\{\varphi(x - k)\}_{k=-\infty}^{+\infty}$ forms an orthonormal basis for V_0 .

The projection of $f(x)$ onto the subspace V_j is an approximation at resolution level 2^{-j} . It is given by $f_j(x) = \sum_k c_{j,k} \varphi_{j,k}(x)$ with

$$c_{j,k} = \langle f, \varphi_{j,k} \rangle = \int f(x) \varphi_{j,k}(x) dx. \quad (7.15.8)$$

The wavelet ψ is derived from the scaling function φ by the formula,

$$\psi(x) = \sqrt{2} \sum_{k=0}^n g_k \varphi(2x - k), \quad \text{where } g_k = (-1)^k h_{n-k}. \quad (7.15.9)$$

The wavelet ψ has the same smoothness as φ , and the accuracy p condition implies vanishing moments for ψ : $\int x^j \psi(x) dx = 0$ for $j = 0, \dots, p - 1$. The functions $\psi_{j,k}(x) = 2^{j/2} \psi(2^j x - k)$ are orthonormal, and the entire collection $\{\psi_{j,k}\}_{j,k=-\infty}^{+\infty}$ forms an orthonormal basis for $L^2(\mathbb{R})$.

With j fixed, let W_j be the closed subspace of $L^2(\mathbb{R})$ spanned by $\psi(2^j x - k)$ for integer k . Then V_j and W_j are orthogonal subspaces whose direct sum is V_{j+1} . Let f be a function and let $p_j = \sum_k d_{j,k} \varphi_{j,k}(x)$ be its projection onto W_j , where $d_{j,k} = \langle f, \psi_{j,k} \rangle$. Then the approximation f_{j+1} with resolution $2^{-(j+1)}$ is $f_{j+1} = f_j + p_j$, the sum of the approximation f_j at resolution 2^{-j} and the additional details p_j needed to give the next higher resolution level.

The *discrete wavelet transform* is an algorithm for computing the coefficients $c_{j,k}$ and $d_{j,k}$ from the coefficients $c_{j+1,k}$. It can also be interpreted as an algorithm dealing directly with discrete data, dividing data $c_{j+1,k}$ into a *low-pass* part $c_{j,k}$ and a *high-pass* part $d_{j,k}$. Specifically,

$$c_{j,l} = \sum_k h_{k-2l} c_{j+1,k} \quad \text{and} \quad d_{j,l} = \sum_k g_{k-2l} c_{j+1,k}. \quad (7.15.10)$$

The inverse transform is

$$c_{j+1,k} = \sum_l h_{k-2l} c_{j,l} + \sum_l g_{k-2l} d_{j,l}. \quad (7.15.11)$$

The discrete wavelet transform is closely related to engineering techniques known as *sub-band coding* and *quadrature mirror filtering*.

EXAMPLE *The Daubechies family.* For each even integer $N > 0$, there is a unique set of coefficients h_0, \dots, h_{N-1} which satisfy the normalization and orthogonality conditions with maximal accuracy $p = N/2$. The corresponding φ and ψ are the *Daubechies scaling function* D_N and *Daubechies wavelet* W_N . The Haar wavelet H is the same as the Daubechies wavelet W_2 . For the Haar wavelet, the coefficients are $h_0 = h_1 = 1/\sqrt{2}$ and the subspace V_j consists of all functions which are piecewise constant on each interval $[k2^{-j}, (k+1)2^{-j})$. The coefficients for D_4 are: $h_0 = (1 + \sqrt{3})/(4\sqrt{2})$, $h_1 = (3 + \sqrt{3})/(4\sqrt{2})$, $h_2 = (3 - \sqrt{3})/(4\sqrt{2})$, and $h_3 = (1 - \sqrt{3})/(4\sqrt{2})$.

7.15.5.2 Generalizations

For a given number of coefficients, the Daubechies wavelet has the highest accuracy. Other wavelets reduce the accuracy in exchange for other properties. In the *Coi et*

family the scaling function and the wavelet possesses vanishing moments, leading to simple one-point quadrature formulae. The “least asymmetric” wavelets are close to being symmetric or antisymmetric (perfect symmetry is incompatible with orthogonality, except for the Haar wavelet).

Wavelet packets are libraries of basis functions defined recursively from the scaling functions ϕ and ψ . The *Walsh functions* are wavelet packets based on the Haar wavelet.

Allowing in nitely many coefficients results in wavelets supported on the entire real line. The *Meyer wavelet* is band-limited, possesses in nitely many derivatives, and has accuracy $p = \infty$. The *Battle–Lemarié* wavelets are piecewise splines and have exponential decay.

M-band wavelets replace the ubiquitous dilation factor 2 by another integer M . *Multiwavelets* replace the coefficients h_k by $r \times r$ matrices and the scaling function and wavelet by vector-valued functions $(\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_r)$ and (ψ_1, \dots, ψ_r) , resulting in an orthonormal basis for $L^2(\mathbb{R})$ generated by the several wavelets ψ_1, \dots, ψ_r .

For higher dimensions, a *separable* wavelet basis is constructed via a tensor product, with scaling function $\varphi(x)\varphi(y)$ and three wavelets $\varphi(x)\psi(y)$, $\psi(x)\varphi(y)$, $\psi(x)\psi(y)$. *Non-separable wavelets* replace the dilation factor 2 by a *dilation matrix*.

Biorthogonal wavelets allow greater flexibility of design by relaxing the requirement that the wavelet system $\{\psi_{j,k}\}$ form an orthonormal basis to requiring only that it form a Riesz basis. The *Cohen–Daubechies–Feauveau wavelets* are symmetric and their coefficients h_k are dyadic rationals. The *Chui–Wang–Aldroubi–Unser semiorthogonal wavelets* are splines with explicit analytic formulae.

The basis condition may be further relaxed by allowing $\{\psi_{j,k}\}$ to be a *frame*, an over-complete system with basis-like properties. Introducing further redundancy, the *continuous wavelet transform* uses all possible dilates and translates $a^{1/2}\psi(ax + b)$.

7.15.5.3 Wavelet coefficients and figures

Coefficients for Daubechies scaling functions¹

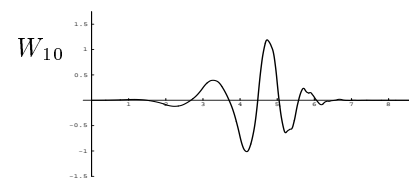
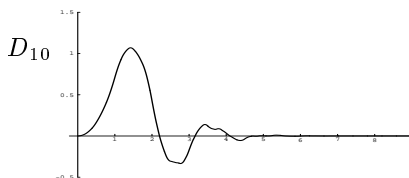
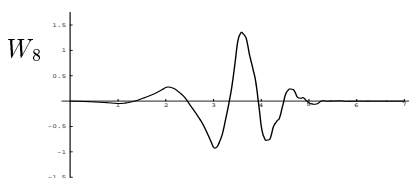
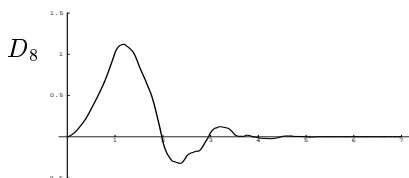
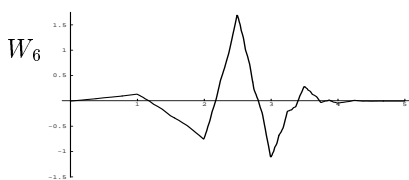
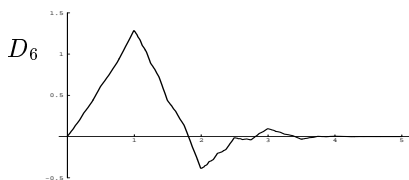
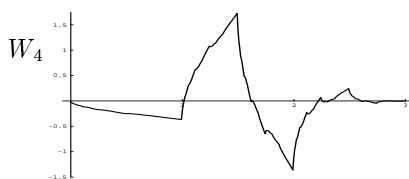
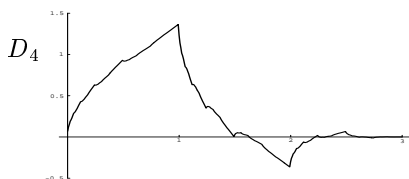
| | | | | | |
|---------|---------|-----------------|---------|---------|-----------------|
| D_2 : | h_0 : | 0.707106781187 | D_6 : | h_0 : | 0.332670552950 |
| | h_1 : | 0.707106781187 | | h_1 : | 0.806891509311 |
| | | | | h_2 : | 0.459877502118 |
| D_4 : | h_0 : | 0.482962913145 | | h_3 : | -0.135011020010 |
| | h_1 : | 0.836516303738 | | h_4 : | -0.085441273882 |
| | h_2 : | 0.224143868042 | | h_5 : | 0.035226291886 |
| | h_3 : | -0.129409522551 | | | |

¹The tables and figures shown below are reprinted with permission from Daubechies, I., *Ten Lectures on Wavelets*. Copyright © 1992 by the Society for Industrial and Applied Mathematics, Philadelphia, PA. All rights reserved.

D_8 : h_0 : 0.230377813309
 h_1 : 0.714846570553
 h_2 : 0.630880767930
 h_3 : -0.027983769417
 h_4 : -0.187034811719
 h_5 : 0.030841381836
 h_6 : 0.032883011667
 h_7 : -0.010597401785

D_{12} : h_0 : 0.111540743350
 h_1 : 0.494623890398
 h_2 : 0.751133908021
 h_3 : 0.315250351709
 h_4 : -0.226264693965
 h_5 : -0.129766867567
 h_6 : 0.097501605587
 h_7 : 0.027522865530
 h_8 : -0.031582039317
 h_9 : 0.000553842201
 h_{10} : 0.00477257511
 h_{11} : -0.001077301085

D_{10} : h_0 : 0.160102397974
 h_1 : 0.603829269797
 h_2 : 0.724308528438
 h_3 : 0.138428145901
 h_4 : -0.242294887066
 h_5 : -0.032244869585
 h_6 : 0.077571493840
 h_7 : -0.006241490213
 h_8 : -0.012580751999
 h_9 : 0.003335725285



6.1 TRIGONOMETRIC OR CIRCULAR FUNCTIONS

- 6.1.1 *Definition of angles*
- 6.1.2 *Characterization of angles*
- 6.1.3 *Circular functions*
- 6.1.4 *Circular functions of special angles*
- 6.1.5 *Evaluating sines and cosines at multiples of π*
- 6.1.6 *Symmetry and periodicity relationships*
- 6.1.7 *Functions in terms of angles in the first quadrant*
- 6.1.8 *One circular function in terms of another*
- 6.1.9 *Circular functions in terms of exponentials*
- 6.1.10 *Fundamental identities*
- 6.1.11 *Angle sum and difference relationships*
- 6.1.12 *Double-angle formulae*
- 6.1.13 *Multiple-angle formulae*
- 6.1.14 *Half-angle formulae*
- 6.1.15 *Powers of circular functions*
- 6.1.16 *Products of sine and cosine*
- 6.1.17 *Sums of circular functions*

6.2 CIRCULAR FUNCTIONS AND PLANAR TRIANGLES

- 6.2.1 *Right triangles*
- 6.2.2 *General plane triangles*
- 6.2.3 *Half-angle formulae*
- 6.2.4 *Solution of triangles*
- 6.2.5 *Tables of trigonometric functions*

6.3 INVERSE CIRCULAR FUNCTIONS

- 6.3.1 *Definition in terms of an integral*
- 6.3.2 *Principal values of the inverse circular functions*
- 6.3.3 *Fundamental identities*
- 6.3.4 *Functions of negative arguments*
- 6.3.5 *Relationship to inverse hyperbolic functions*
- 6.3.6 *Sum and difference of two inverse circular functions*

6.4 CEILING AND FLOOR FUNCTIONS

6.5 EXPONENTIAL FUNCTION

- 6.5.1 *Exponentiation*
- 6.5.2 *Definition of e^z*
- 6.5.3 *Derivative and integral of e^x*

6.6 LOGARITHMIC FUNCTIONS

- 6.6.1 Definition of the natural logarithm*
- 6.6.2 Logarithm of special values*
- 6.6.3 Relating the logarithm to the exponential*
- 6.6.4 Identities*
- 6.6.5 Series expansions for the natural logarithm*
- 6.6.6 Derivative and integration formulae*

6.7 HYPERBOLIC FUNCTIONS

- 6.7.1 Definitions of the hyperbolic functions*
- 6.7.2 Range of values*
- 6.7.3 Hyperbolic functions in terms of one another*
- 6.7.4 Relations among hyperbolic functions*
- 6.7.5 Relationship to circular functions*
- 6.7.6 Series expansions*
- 6.7.7 Symmetry relationships*
- 6.7.8 Sum and difference formulae*
- 6.7.9 Multiple argument relations*
- 6.7.10 Sums of functions*
- 6.7.11 Products of functions*
- 6.7.12 Half-argument formulae*
- 6.7.13 Differentiation formulae*

6.8 INVERSE HYPERBOLIC FUNCTIONS

- 6.8.1 Range of values*
- 6.8.2 Relationships among inverse hyperbolic functions*
- 6.8.3 Relationships with logarithmic functions*
- 6.8.4 Relationships with circular functions*
- 6.8.5 Sum and difference of functions*

6.9 GUDERMANNIAN FUNCTION

- 6.9.1 Fundamental identities*
- 6.9.2 Derivatives of Gudermannian*
- 6.9.3 Relationship to hyperbolic and circular functions*
- 6.9.4 Numerical values of hyperbolic functions*

6.10 ORTHOGONAL POLYNOMIALS

- 6.10.1 Hermite polynomials*
- 6.10.2 Jacobi polynomials*
- 6.10.3 Laguerre polynomials*
- 6.10.4 Generalized Laguerre polynomials*
- 6.10.5 Legendre polynomials*
- 6.10.6 Chebyshev polynomials, first kind*
- 6.10.7 Chebyshev polynomials, second kind*
- 6.10.8 Tables of orthogonal polynomials*
- 6.10.9 Zernike polynomials*
- 6.10.10 Spherical harmonics*

6.11 GAMMA FUNCTION

- 6.11.1 Recursion formula*
- 6.11.2 Gamma function of special values*
- 6.11.3 Properties*
- 6.11.4 Asymptotic expansion*
- 6.11.5 Logarithmic derivative of the gamma function*

6.11.6 *Numerical values*

6.12 BETA FUNCTION

6.12.1 *Numerical values of the beta function*

6.13 ERROR FUNCTIONS

6.13.1 *Properties*

6.13.2 *Error function of special values*

6.13.3 *Expansions*

6.13.4 *Special cases*

6.14 FRESNEL INTEGRALS

6.14.1 *Properties*

6.14.2 *Asymptotic expansion*

6.14.3 *Numerical values of error functions and Fresnel integrals*

6.15 SINE, COSINE, AND EXPONENTIAL INTEGRALS

6.15.1 *Sine and cosine integrals*

6.15.2 *Exponential integrals*

6.15.3 *Logarithmic integral*

6.15.4 *Numerical values*

6.16 POLYLOGARITHMS

6.16.1 *Polylogarithms of special values*

6.16.2 *Polylogarithm properties*

6.17 HYPERGEOMETRIC FUNCTIONS

6.17.1 *Special cases*

6.17.2 *Properties*

6.17.3 *Recursion formulae*

6.18 LEGENDRE FUNCTIONS

6.18.1 *Differential equation: Legendre function*

6.18.2 *Definition*

6.18.3 *Singular points*

6.18.4 *Relationships*

6.18.5 *Recursion relationships*

6.18.6 *Integrals*

6.18.7 *Polynomial case*

6.18.8 *Differential equation: associated Legendre function*

6.18.9 *Relationships between the associated and ordinary Legendre functions*

6.18.10 *Orthogonality relationship*

6.18.11 *Recursion relationships*

6.19 BESSEL FUNCTIONS

6.19.1 *Differential equation*

6.19.2 *Singular points*

6.19.3 *Relationships*

6.19.4 *Series expansions*

6.19.5 *Recurrence relationships*

6.19.6 *Behavior as $z \rightarrow 0$*

6.19.7 *Integrals*

6.19.8 *Fourier expansion*

-
- 6.19.9 *Auxiliary functions*
 - 6.19.10 *Inverse relationships*
 - 6.19.11 *Asymptotic expansions*
 - 6.19.12 *Zeros of Bessel functions*
 - 6.19.13 *Half order Bessel functions*
 - 6.19.14 *Modified Bessel functions*
 - 6.19.15 *Airy functions*
 - 6.19.16 *Numerical values for the Bessel functions*

6.20 ELLIPTIC INTEGRALS

- 6.20.1 *Definitions*
- 6.20.2 *Properties*
- 6.20.3 *Numerical values of the elliptic integrals*

6.21 JACOBIAN ELLIPTIC FUNCTIONS

- 6.21.1 *Properties*
- 6.21.2 *Derivatives and integrals*
- 6.21.3 *Series expansions*

6.22 CLEBSCH–GORDAN COEFFICIENTS

6.23 INTEGRAL TRANSFORMS: PRELIMINARIES

6.24 FOURIER TRANSFORM

- 6.24.1 *Existence*
- 6.24.2 *Properties*
- 6.24.3 *Inversion formula*
- 6.24.4 *Poisson summation formula*
- 6.24.5 *Shannon's sampling theorem*
- 6.24.6 *Uncertainty principle*
- 6.24.7 *Fourier sine and cosine transforms*

2 6.25 DISCRETE FOURIER TRANSFORM (DFT)

- 6.25.1 *Properties*

6.26 FAST FOURIER TRANSFORM (FFT)

6.27 MULTIDIMENSIONAL FOURIER TRANSFORM

6.28 LAPLACE TRANSFORM

- 6.28.1 *Existence and domain of convergence*
- 6.28.2 *Properties*
- 6.28.3 *Inversion formulae*
- 6.28.4 *Convolution*

6.29 HANKEL TRANSFORM

- 6.29.1 *Properties*

6.30 HARTLEY TRANSFORM

6.31 HILBERT TRANSFORM

-
- 6.31.1 Existence
 - 6.31.2 Properties
 - 6.31.3 Relationship with the Fourier transform

6.32 Z-TRANSFORM

- 6.32.1 Examples
- 6.32.2 Properties
- 6.32.3 Inversion formula
- 6.32.4 Convolution and product

6.33 TABLES OF TRANSFORMS

6.1 TRIGONOMETRIC OR CIRCULAR FUNCTIONS

6.1.1 DEFINITION OF ANGLES

If two lines intersect and one line is rotated about the point of intersection, the angle of rotation is designated positive if the rotation is counterclockwise. Angles are commonly measured in units of radians or degrees. Degrees are a historical unit related to the calendar defined by a complete revolution equalling 360 degrees (the approximate number of days in a year), written 360° . Radians are the angular unit usually used for mathematics and science. The radian measure of an angle is defined as the arc length traced by the tip of a rotating line divided by the length of that line. Thus a complete rotation of a line about the origin corresponds to 2π radians of rotation. It is a convenient convention that a full rotation of 2π radians is divided into four angular segments of $\pi/2$ each and that these are referred to as the four quadrants designated by Roman numerals I, II, III, and IV (see Figure 6.1).

6.1.2 CHARACTERIZATION OF ANGLES

A *right* angle is the angle between two perpendicular lines. It is equal to $\pi/2$ radians or 90 degrees. An *acute* angle is a positive angle less than $\pi/2$ radians. An *obtuse* angle is one between $\pi/2$ and π radians. A *convex* angle is one between 0 and π radians.

FIGURE 6.1

The four quadrants (left) and notation for trigonometric functions (right).

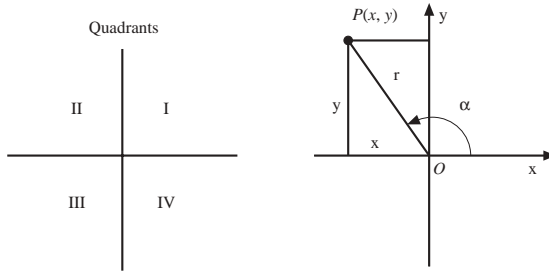
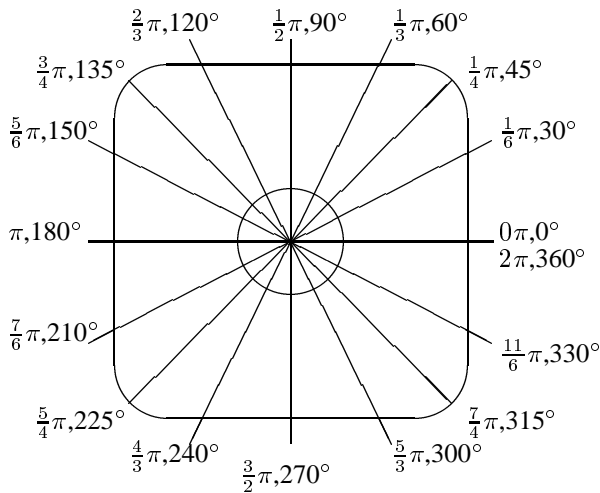


FIGURE 6.2

Definitions of angles.



6.1.2.1 Relation between radians and degrees

The angle π radians corresponds to 180 degrees. Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{one radian} &= \frac{180}{\pi} \text{ degrees} = 57.30 \text{ degrees}, \\ \text{one degree} &= \frac{\pi}{180} \text{ radians} = 0.01745 \text{ radians}. \end{aligned} \tag{6.1.1}$$

6.1.3 CIRCULAR FUNCTIONS

Consider the rectangular coordinate system shown in Figure 6.1. The coordinate x is positive to the right of the origin and the coordinate y is positive above the origin. The radius vector r shown terminating on the point $P(x, y)$ is shown rotated by the angle α up from the x axis. The radius vector r has component values x and y .

The trigonometric or circular functions of the angle α are defined in terms of the signed coordinates x and y and the length r , which is always positive. Note that the coordinate x is negative in quadrants II and III and the coordinate y is negative in quadrants III and IV. The definitions of the trigonometric functions in terms of the Cartesian coordinates x and y of the point $P(x, y)$ are shown below. In formulae, the angle α is usually specified in radian measure.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{sine } \alpha &= \sin \alpha = y/r, & \text{cosine } \alpha &= \cos \alpha = x/r, \\
 \text{tangent } \alpha &= \tan \alpha = y/x, & \text{cotangent } \alpha &= \cot \alpha = x/y, \\
 \text{cosecant } \alpha &= \csc \alpha = r/y, & \text{secant } \alpha &= \sec \alpha = r/x.
 \end{aligned}
 \tag{6.1.2}$$

There are also the following seldom used functions:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{versed sine of } \alpha &= \text{versine of } \alpha = \text{vers } \alpha = 1 - \cos \alpha, \\
 \text{covered sine of } \alpha &= \text{versed cosine of } \alpha = \text{covers } \alpha = 1 - \sin \alpha, \\
 \text{exsecant of } \alpha &= \text{exsec } \alpha = \sec \alpha - 1, \\
 \text{haversine of } \alpha &= \text{hav } \alpha = \frac{1}{2} \text{vers } \alpha = \frac{1}{2}(1 - \cos \alpha).
 \end{aligned}$$

6.1.3.1 Signs in the four quadrants

| Quadrant | sin | cos | tan | csc | sec | cot |
|----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| I | + | + | + | + | + | + |
| II | + | - | - | + | - | - |
| III | - | - | + | - | - | + |
| IV | - | + | - | - | + | - |

FIGURE 6.3

Sine and cosine; angles are in radians.

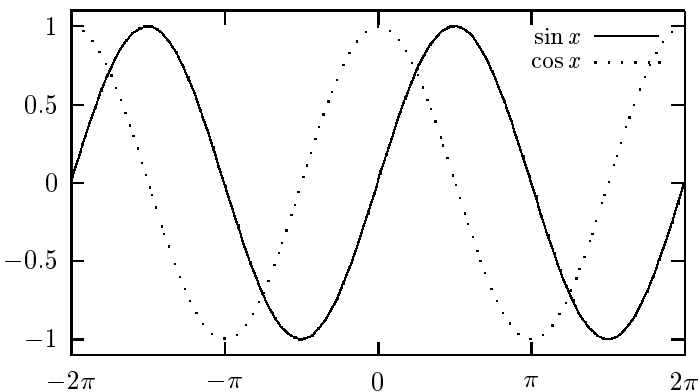
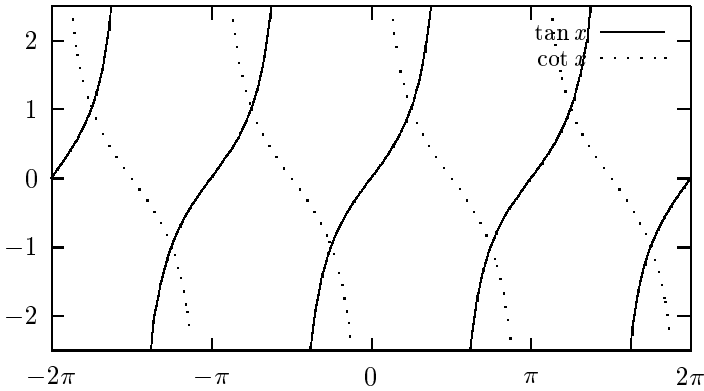


FIGURE 6.4

Tangent and cotangent; angles are in radians.



6.1.4 CIRCULAR FUNCTIONS OF SPECIAL ANGLES

| Angle | $0 = 0^\circ$ | $\pi/12 = 15^\circ$ | $\pi/6 = 30^\circ$ | $\pi/4 = 45^\circ$ | $\pi/3 = 60^\circ$ |
|-------|---------------|------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| sin | 0 | $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}(\sqrt{3} - 1)$ | 1/2 | $\sqrt{2}/2$ | $\sqrt{3}/2$ |
| cos | 1 | $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}(\sqrt{3} + 1)$ | $\sqrt{3}/2$ | $\sqrt{2}/2$ | 1/2 |
| tan | 0 | $2 - \sqrt{3}$ | $\sqrt{3}/3$ | 1 | $\sqrt{3}$ |
| csc | ∞ | $\sqrt{2}(\sqrt{3} + 1)$ | 2 | $\sqrt{2}$ | $2\sqrt{3}/3$ |
| sec | 1 | $\sqrt{2}(\sqrt{3} - 1)$ | $2\sqrt{3}/3$ | $\sqrt{2}$ | 2 |
| cot | ∞ | $2 + \sqrt{3}$ | $\sqrt{3}$ | 1 | $\sqrt{3}/3$ |

| Angle | $5\pi/12 = 75^\circ$ | $\pi/2 = 90^\circ$ | $7\pi/12 = 105^\circ$ | $2\pi/3 = 120^\circ$ |
|-------|------------------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------|
| sin | $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}(\sqrt{3} + 1)$ | 1 | $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}(\sqrt{3} + 1)$ | $\sqrt{3}/2$ |
| cos | $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}(\sqrt{3} - 1)$ | 0 | $-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}(\sqrt{3} - 1)$ | -1/2 |
| tan | $2 + \sqrt{3}$ | ∞ | $-(2 + \sqrt{3})$ | $-\sqrt{3}$ |
| csc | $\sqrt{2}(\sqrt{3} - 1)$ | 1 | $\sqrt{2}(\sqrt{3} - 1)$ | $2\sqrt{3}/3$ |
| sec | $\sqrt{2}(\sqrt{3} + 1)$ | ∞ | $-\sqrt{2}(\sqrt{3} + 1)$ | -2 |
| cot | $2 - \sqrt{3}$ | 0 | $-(2 - \sqrt{3})$ | $-\sqrt{3}/3$ |

| Angle | $3\pi/4 = 135^\circ$ | $5\pi/6 = 150^\circ$ | $11\pi/12 = 165^\circ$ | $\pi = 180^\circ$ |
|-------|----------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------|
| sin | $\sqrt{2}/2$ | 1/2 | $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}(\sqrt{3} - 1)$ | 0 |
| cos | $-\sqrt{2}/2$ | $-\sqrt{3}/2$ | $-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}(\sqrt{3} + 1)$ | -1 |
| tan | -1 | $-\sqrt{3}/3$ | $-(2 - \sqrt{3})$ | 0 |
| csc | $\sqrt{2}$ | 2 | $\sqrt{2}(\sqrt{3} + 1)$ | ∞ |
| sec | $-\sqrt{2}$ | $-2\sqrt{3}/3$ | $-\sqrt{2}(\sqrt{3} - 1)$ | -1 |
| cot | -1 | $-\sqrt{3}$ | $-(2 + \sqrt{3})$ | ∞ |

6.1.5 EVALUATING SINES AND COSINES AT MULTIPLES OF π

The following table is useful for evaluating sines and cosines in multiples of π :

| | n an integer | n even | n odd | $n/2$ odd | $n/2$ even |
|---------------|----------------|--------------|------------------|-----------|------------|
| $\sin n\pi$ | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| $\cos n\pi$ | $(-1)^n$ | +1 | -1 | +1 | +1 |
| $\sin n\pi/2$ | | 0 | $(-1)^{(n-1)/2}$ | 0 | 0 |
| $\cos n\pi/2$ | | $(-1)^{n/2}$ | 0 | -1 | +1 |

| | n odd | $n/2$ odd | $n/2$ even |
|---------------|---------------------------------|------------------|------------|
| $\sin n\pi/4$ | $(-1)^{(n^2+4n+11)/8}/\sqrt{2}$ | $(-1)^{(n-2)/4}$ | 0 |

Note the useful formulae (where $i^2 = -1$)

$$\sin \frac{n\pi}{2} = \frac{i^{n+1}}{2} [(-1)^n - 1], \quad \cos \frac{n\pi}{2} = \frac{i^n}{2} [(-1)^n + 1]. \quad (6.1.3)$$

6.1.6 SYMMETRY AND PERIODICITY RELATIONSHIPS

$$\sin(-\alpha) = -\sin \alpha, \quad \cos(-\alpha) = +\cos \alpha, \quad \tan(-\alpha) = -\tan \alpha. \quad (6.1.4)$$

When n is any integer,

$$\begin{aligned} \sin(\alpha + n2\pi) &= \sin \alpha, \\ \cos(\alpha + n2\pi) &= \cos \alpha, \\ \tan(\alpha + n\pi) &= \tan \alpha. \end{aligned} \quad (6.1.5)$$

6.1.7 FUNCTIONS IN TERMS OF ANGLES IN THE FIRST QUADRANT

When n is any integer:

| | $-\alpha$ | $\frac{\pi}{2} \pm \alpha$ | $\pi \pm \alpha$ | $\frac{3\pi}{2} \pm \alpha$ | $2n\pi \pm \alpha$ |
|-----|----------------|----------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------|
| sin | $-\sin \alpha$ | $\cos \alpha$ | $\mp \sin \alpha$ | $-\cos \alpha$ | $\pm \sin \alpha$ |
| cos | $\cos \alpha$ | $\mp \sin \alpha$ | $-\cos \alpha$ | $\pm \sin \alpha$ | $+\cos \alpha$ |
| tan | $-\tan \alpha$ | $\mp \cot \alpha$ | $\pm \tan \alpha$ | $\mp \cot \alpha$ | $\pm \tan \alpha$ |
| csc | $-\csc \alpha$ | $\sec \alpha$ | $\mp \csc \alpha$ | $-\sec \alpha$ | $\pm \csc \alpha$ |
| sec | $\sec \alpha$ | $\mp \csc \alpha$ | $-\sec \alpha$ | $\pm \csc \alpha$ | $\sec \alpha$ |
| cot | $-\cot \alpha$ | $\mp \tan \alpha$ | $\pm \cot \alpha$ | $\mp \tan \alpha$ | $\pm \cot \alpha$ |

6.1.8 ONE CIRCULAR FUNCTION IN TERMS OF ANOTHER

For $0 \leq x \leq \pi/2$,

| | $\sin x$ | $\cos x$ | $\tan x$ |
|------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| $\sin x =$ | $\sin x$ | $\sqrt{1 - \cos^2 x}$ | $\frac{\tan x}{\sqrt{1 + \tan^2 x}}$ |
| $\cos x =$ | $\sqrt{1 - \sin^2 x}$ | $\cos x$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \tan^2 x}}$ |
| $\tan x =$ | $\frac{\sin x}{\sqrt{1 - \sin^2 x}}$ | $\frac{\sqrt{1 - \cos^2 x}}{\cos x}$ | $\tan x$ |
| $\csc x =$ | $\frac{1}{\sin x}$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - \cos^2 x}}$ | $\frac{\sqrt{1 + \tan^2 x}}{\tan x}$ |
| $\sec x =$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - \sin^2 x}}$ | $\frac{1}{\cos x}$ | $\sqrt{1 + \tan^2 x}$ |
| $\cot x =$ | $\frac{\sqrt{1 - \sin^2 x}}{\sin x}$ | $\frac{\cos x}{\sqrt{1 - \cos^2 x}}$ | $\frac{1}{\tan x}$ |

| | $\csc x$ | $\sec x$ | $\cot x$ |
|------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| $\sin x =$ | $\frac{1}{\csc x}$ | $\frac{\sqrt{\sec^2 x - 1}}{\sec x}$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \cot^2 x}}$ |
| $\cos x =$ | $\frac{\sqrt{\csc^2 x - 1}}{\csc x}$ | $\frac{1}{\sec x}$ | $\frac{\cot x}{\sqrt{1 + \cot^2 x}}$ |
| $\tan x =$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{\csc^2 x - 1}}$ | $\sqrt{\sec^2 x - 1}$ | $\frac{1}{\cot x}$ |
| $\csc x =$ | $\csc x$ | $\frac{\sec x}{\sqrt{\sec^2 x - 1}}$ | $\sqrt{1 + \cot^2 x}$ |
| $\sec x =$ | $\frac{\csc x}{\sqrt{\csc^2 x - 1}}$ | $\sec x$ | $\frac{\sqrt{1 + \cot^2 x}}{\cot x}$ |
| $\cot x =$ | $\frac{\sqrt{\csc^2 x - 1}}{\csc x}$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{\sec^2 x - 1}}$ | $\cot x$ |

6.1.9 CIRCULAR FUNCTIONS IN TERMS OF EXPONENTIALS

$$\cos z = \frac{e^{iz} + e^{-iz}}{2}$$

$$e^{iz} = \cos z + i \sin z$$

$$\sin z = \frac{e^{iz} - e^{-iz}}{2i}$$

$$e^{-iz} = \cos z - i \sin z$$

$$\tan z = \frac{\sin z}{\cos z} = \frac{e^{iz} - e^{-iz}}{i(e^{iz} + e^{-iz})}$$

where $i^2 = -1$ and z may be complex

6.1.10 FUNDAMENTAL IDENTITIES

1. Reciprocal relations

$$\begin{aligned}\sin \alpha &= \frac{1}{\csc \alpha}, & \cos \alpha &= \frac{1}{\sec \alpha}, & \tan \alpha &= \frac{\sin \alpha}{\cos \alpha} = \frac{1}{\cot \alpha}, \\ \csc \alpha &= \frac{1}{\sin \alpha}, & \sec \alpha &= \frac{1}{\cos \alpha}, & \cot \alpha &= \frac{\cos \alpha}{\sin \alpha} = \frac{1}{\tan \alpha}.\end{aligned}$$

2. Pythagorean theorem

$$\sin^2 z + \cos^2 z = 1$$

$$\sec^2 z - \tan^2 z = 1$$

$$\csc^2 z - \cot^2 z = 1$$

3. Product relations

$$\sin \alpha = \tan \alpha \cos \alpha \qquad \cos \alpha = \cot \alpha \sin \alpha$$

$$\tan \alpha = \sin \alpha \sec \alpha \qquad \cot \alpha = \cos \alpha \csc \alpha$$

$$\sec \alpha = \csc \alpha \tan \alpha \qquad \csc \alpha = \sec \alpha \cot \alpha$$

4. Quotient relations

$$\sin \alpha = \frac{\tan \alpha}{\sec \alpha} \qquad \cos \alpha = \frac{\cot \alpha}{\csc \alpha} \qquad \tan \alpha = \frac{\sin \alpha}{\cos \alpha}$$

$$\csc \alpha = \frac{\sec \alpha}{\tan \alpha} \qquad \sec \alpha = \frac{\csc \alpha}{\cot \alpha} \qquad \cot \alpha = \frac{\cos \alpha}{\sin \alpha}$$

6.1.11 ANGLE SUM AND DIFFERENCE RELATIONSHIPS

$$\sin(\alpha \pm \beta) = \sin \alpha \cos \beta \pm \cos \alpha \sin \beta$$

$$\cos(\alpha \pm \beta) = \cos \alpha \cos \beta \mp \sin \alpha \sin \beta$$

$$\tan(\alpha \pm \beta) = \frac{\tan \alpha \pm \tan \beta}{1 \mp \tan \alpha \tan \beta}$$

$$\cot(\alpha \pm \beta) = \frac{\cot \alpha \cot \beta \mp 1}{\cot \beta \pm \cot \alpha}$$

6.1.12 DOUBLE-ANGLE FORMULAE

$$\sin 2\alpha = 2 \sin \alpha \cos \alpha = \frac{2 \tan \alpha}{1 + \tan^2 \alpha}$$

$$\cos 2\alpha = 2 \cos^2 \alpha - 1 = 1 - 2 \sin^2 \alpha = \cos^2 \alpha - \sin^2 \alpha = \frac{1 - \tan^2 \alpha}{1 + \tan^2 \alpha}$$

$$\tan 2\alpha = \frac{2 \tan \alpha}{1 - \tan^2 \alpha}$$

$$\cot 2\alpha = \frac{\cot^2 \alpha - 1}{2 \cot \alpha}$$

6.1.13 MULTIPLE-ANGLE FORMULAE

$$\sin 3\alpha = -4 \sin^3 \alpha + 3 \sin \alpha.$$

$$\sin 4\alpha = -8 \sin^3 \alpha \cos \alpha + 4 \sin \alpha \cos \alpha.$$

$$\sin 5\alpha = 16 \sin^5 \alpha - 20 \sin^3 \alpha + 5 \sin \alpha.$$

$$\sin 6\alpha = 32 \sin \alpha \cos^5 \alpha - 32 \sin \alpha \cos^3 \alpha + 6 \sin \alpha \cos \alpha.$$

$$\sin n\alpha = 2 \sin (n-1)\alpha \cos \alpha - \sin (n-2)\alpha.$$

$$\cos 3\alpha = 4 \cos^3 \alpha - 3 \cos \alpha.$$

$$\cos 4\alpha = 8 \cos^4 \alpha - 8 \cos^2 \alpha + 1.$$

$$\cos 5\alpha = 16 \cos^5 \alpha - 20 \cos^3 \alpha + 5 \cos \alpha.$$

$$\cos 6\alpha = 32 \cos^6 \alpha - 48 \cos^4 \alpha + 18 \cos^2 \alpha - 1.$$

$$\cos n\alpha = 2 \cos (n-1)\alpha \cos \alpha - \cos (n-2)\alpha.$$

$$\tan 3\alpha = \frac{-\tan^3 \alpha + 3 \tan \alpha}{-3 \tan^2 \alpha + 1}.$$

$$\tan 4\alpha = \frac{-4 \tan^3 \alpha + 4 \tan \alpha}{\tan^4 \alpha - 6 \tan^2 \alpha + 1}.$$

$$\tan n\alpha = \frac{\tan (n-1)\alpha + \tan \alpha}{-\tan (n-1)\alpha \tan \alpha + 1}.$$

6.1.14 HALF-ANGLE FORMULAE

$$\cos \frac{\alpha}{2} = \pm \sqrt{\frac{1 + \cos \alpha}{2}}$$

(positive if $\alpha/2$ is in quadrant I or IV, negative if in II or III).

$$\sin \frac{\alpha}{2} = \pm \sqrt{\frac{1 - \cos \alpha}{2}}$$

(positive if $\alpha/2$ is in quadrant I or II, negative if in III or IV).

$$\tan \frac{\alpha}{2} = \frac{1 - \cos \alpha}{\sin \alpha} = \frac{\sin \alpha}{1 + \cos \alpha} = \pm \sqrt{\frac{1 - \cos \alpha}{1 + \cos \alpha}}$$

(positive if $\alpha/2$ is in quadrant I or III, negative if in II or IV).

$$\cot \frac{\alpha}{2} = \frac{1 + \cos \alpha}{\sin \alpha} = \frac{\sin \alpha}{1 - \cos \alpha} = \pm \sqrt{\frac{1 + \cos \alpha}{1 - \cos \alpha}}$$

(positive if $\alpha/2$ is in quadrant I or III, negative if in II or IV).

6.1.15 POWERS OF CIRCULAR FUNCTIONS

$$\begin{aligned}\sin^2 \alpha &= \frac{1}{2}(1 - \cos 2\alpha). & \cos^2 \alpha &= \frac{1}{2}(1 + \cos 2\alpha). \\ \sin^3 \alpha &= \frac{1}{4}(-\sin 3\alpha + 3\sin \alpha). & \cos^3 \alpha &= \frac{1}{4}(\cos 3\alpha + 3\cos \alpha). \\ \sin^4 \alpha &= \frac{1}{8}(3 - 4\cos 2\alpha + \cos 4\alpha). & \cos^4 \alpha &= \frac{1}{8}(3 + 4\cos 2\alpha + \cos 4\alpha). \\ \tan^2 \alpha &= \frac{1 - \cos 2\alpha}{1 + \cos 2\alpha}. & \cot^2 \alpha &= \frac{1 + \cos 2\alpha}{1 - \cos 2\alpha}.\end{aligned}$$

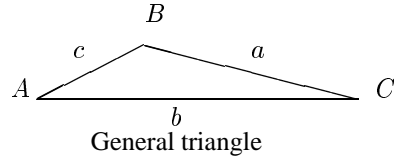
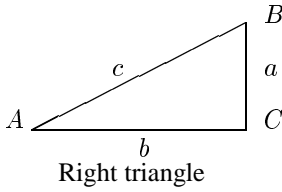
6.1.16 PRODUCTS OF SINE AND COSINE

$$\begin{aligned}\cos \alpha \cos \beta &= \frac{1}{2} \cos(\alpha - \beta) + \frac{1}{2} \cos(\alpha + \beta). \\ \sin \alpha \sin \beta &= \frac{1}{2} \cos(\alpha - \beta) - \frac{1}{2} \cos(\alpha + \beta). \\ \sin \alpha \cos \beta &= \frac{1}{2} \sin(\alpha - \beta) + \frac{1}{2} \sin(\alpha + \beta).\end{aligned}$$

6.1.17 SUMS OF CIRCULAR FUNCTIONS

$$\begin{aligned}\sin \alpha \pm \sin \beta &= 2 \sin \frac{\alpha \pm \beta}{2} \cos \frac{\alpha \mp \beta}{2}. \\ \cos \alpha + \cos \beta &= 2 \cos \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} \cos \frac{\alpha - \beta}{2}. \\ \cos \alpha - \cos \beta &= -2 \sin \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2} \sin \frac{\alpha - \beta}{2}. \\ \tan \alpha \pm \tan \beta &= \frac{\sin \alpha \pm \beta}{\cos \alpha \cos \beta}. \\ \cot \alpha \pm \cot \beta &= \frac{\sin \beta \pm \alpha}{\sin \alpha \sin \beta}. \\ \frac{\sin \alpha + \sin \beta}{\sin \alpha - \sin \beta} &= \frac{\tan \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2}}{\tan \frac{\alpha - \beta}{2}}. \\ \frac{\sin \alpha + \sin \beta}{\cos \alpha - \cos \beta} &= \cot \frac{-\alpha + \beta}{2}. \\ \frac{\sin \alpha + \sin \beta}{\cos \alpha + \cos \beta} &= \tan \frac{\alpha + \beta}{2}. \\ \frac{\sin \alpha - \sin \beta}{\cos \alpha + \cos \beta} &= \tan \frac{\alpha - \beta}{2}.\end{aligned}$$

6.2 CIRCULAR FUNCTIONS AND PLANAR TRIANGLES



6.2.1 RIGHT TRIANGLES

Let A , B , and C designate the vertices of a right triangle with C the right angle and a , b , and c the lengths of the sides opposite the corresponding vertices.

1. Trigonometric functions in terms of angle sides

$$\begin{aligned}\sin A &= \frac{a}{c} = \frac{1}{\csc A}, \\ \cos A &= \frac{b}{c} = \frac{1}{\sec A}, \\ \tan A &= \frac{a}{b} = \frac{1}{\cot A}.\end{aligned}\tag{6.2.1}$$

2. The Pythagorean theorem states that $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$.
3. The sum of the interior angles equals π , i.e., $A + B + C = \pi$.

6.2.2 GENERAL PLANE TRIANGLES

Let A , B , and C designate the interior angles of a general triangle and let a , b , and c be the length of the sides opposite those angles.

1. Radius of the inscribed circle:

$$r = \sqrt{\frac{(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)}{s}},\tag{6.2.2}$$

where the semi-perimeter is

$$s = \frac{1}{2}(a+b+c).\tag{6.2.3}$$

2. Radius of the circumscribed circle:

$$R = \frac{a}{2 \sin A} = \frac{b}{2 \sin B} = \frac{c}{2 \sin C} = \frac{abc}{4(\text{Area})}.$$

3. Law of sines:

$$\frac{a}{\sin A} = \frac{b}{\sin B} = \frac{c}{\sin C}.$$

4. Law of cosines:

$$\begin{aligned} a^2 &= c^2 + b^2 - 2bc \cos A, & \cos A &= \frac{c^2 + b^2 - a^2}{2bc}. \\ b^2 &= a^2 + c^2 - 2ca \cos B, & \cos B &= \frac{a^2 + c^2 - b^2}{2ca}. \\ c^2 &= b^2 + a^2 - 2ab \cos C, & \cos C &= \frac{b^2 + a^2 - c^2}{2ab}. \end{aligned}$$

5. Triangle sides in terms of other components:

$$\begin{aligned} a &= b \cos C + c \cos B, \\ c &= b \cos A + a \cos B, \\ b &= a \cos C + c \cos A. \end{aligned}$$

6. Law of tangents:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{a+b}{a-b} &= \frac{\tan \frac{A+B}{2}}{\tan \frac{A-B}{2}}, \\ \frac{b+c}{b-c} &= \frac{\tan \frac{B+C}{2}}{\tan \frac{B-C}{2}}, \\ \frac{a+c}{a-c} &= \frac{\tan \frac{A+C}{2}}{\tan \frac{A-C}{2}}. \end{aligned}$$

7. Area of general triangle:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Area} &= \frac{bc \sin A}{2} = \frac{ac \sin B}{2} = \frac{ab \sin C}{2}, \\ &= \frac{c^2 \sin A \sin B}{2 \sin C} = \frac{b^2 \sin A \sin C}{2 \sin B} = \frac{a^2 \sin B \sin C}{2 \sin A}, \\ &= rs = \frac{abc}{4R} = \sqrt{s(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)} \quad (\text{Heron's formula}). \end{aligned}$$

8. Mollweide's formulae:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{b-c}{a} &= \frac{\sin \frac{1}{2}(B-C)}{\cos \frac{1}{2}A}, \\ \frac{c-a}{b} &= \frac{\sin \frac{1}{2}(C-A)}{\cos \frac{1}{2}B}, \\ \frac{a-b}{c} &= \frac{\sin \frac{1}{2}(A-B)}{\cos \frac{1}{2}C}. \end{aligned}$$

9. Newton's formulae:

$$\frac{b+c}{a} = \frac{\cos \frac{1}{2}(B-C)}{\sin \frac{1}{2}A},$$
$$\frac{c+a}{b} = \frac{\cos \frac{1}{2}(C-A)}{\sin \frac{1}{2}B},$$
$$\frac{a+b}{c} = \frac{\cos \frac{1}{2}(A-B)}{\sin \frac{1}{2}C}.$$

6.2.3 HALF-ANGLE FORMULAE

$$\tan \frac{A}{2} = \frac{r}{s-a} \quad \tan \frac{B}{2} = \frac{r}{s-b} \quad \tan \frac{C}{2} = \frac{r}{s-c}$$

$$\sin \frac{A}{2} = \sqrt{\frac{(s-b)(s-c)}{bc}} \quad \cos \frac{A}{2} = \sqrt{\frac{s(s-a)}{bc}}$$

$$\sin \frac{B}{2} = \sqrt{\frac{(s-c)(s-a)}{ca}} \quad \cos \frac{B}{2} = \sqrt{\frac{s(s-b)}{ca}}$$

$$\sin \frac{C}{2} = \sqrt{\frac{(s-a)(s-b)}{ab}} \quad \cos \frac{C}{2} = \sqrt{\frac{s(s-c)}{ab}}$$

6.2.4 SOLUTION OF TRIANGLES

A triangle is totally described by specifying any side and two additional parameters: either the remaining two sides (if they satisfy the triangle inequality), another side and the included angle, or two specified angles. If two sides are given and an angle that is not the included angle, then there might be 0, 1, or 2 such triangles. Two angles alone specify the shape of a triangle, but not its size, which requires specification of a side.

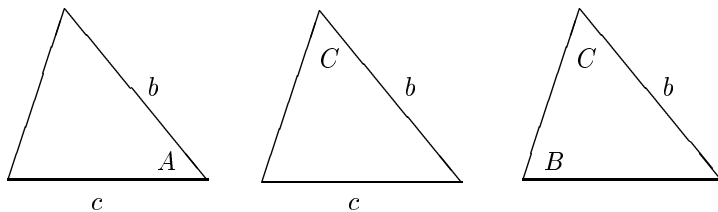
6.2.4.1 Three sides given

Formulae for any one of the angles:

$$\cos A = \frac{c^2 + b^2 - a^2}{2bc}, \quad \sin A = \frac{2}{bc} \sqrt{s(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)},$$
$$\sin \frac{A}{2} = \sqrt{\frac{(s-b)(s-c)}{bc}}, \quad \cos \frac{A}{2} = \sqrt{\frac{s(s-a)}{bc}},$$
$$\tan \frac{A}{2} = \sqrt{\frac{(s-b)(s-c)}{s(s-a)}} = \frac{r}{s-a}.$$

FIGURE 6.5

Different triangles requiring solution.



6.2.4.2 Given two sides (b, c) and the included angle (A)

See Figure 6.5, left. The remaining side and angles can be determined by repeated use of the law of cosines. For example,

1. “Non-logarithmic solution”; perform these steps sequentially:

- $a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2bc \cos A$
- $\cos B = (a^2 + c^2 - b^2)/2ca$
- $\cos C = (a^2 + b^2 - c^2)/2ba$

2. “Logarithmic solution”; perform these steps sequentially:

- $B + C = \pi - A$
- $\tan \frac{(B - C)}{2} = \frac{b - c}{b + c} \tan \frac{(B + C)}{2}$
- $B = \frac{B + C}{2} + \frac{B - C}{2}$
- $C = \frac{B + C}{2} - \frac{B - C}{2}$
- $a = \frac{b \sin A}{\sin B}$

6.2.4.3 Given two sides (b, c) and an angle (C), not the included angle

See Figure 6.5, middle. The remaining angles and side are determined by use of the law of sines and the fact that the sum of the angles is π ($A + B + C = \pi$).

$$\sin B = \frac{b \sin C}{c}, \quad A = \pi - B - C, \quad a = \frac{b \sin A}{\sin B}. \quad (6.2.4)$$

6.2.4.4 Given one side (b) and two angles (B, C)

See Figure 6.5, right. The third angle is specified by $A = \pi - B - C$. The remaining sides are found by

$$a = \frac{b \sin A}{\sin B}, \quad c = \frac{b \sin C}{\sin B}. \quad (6.2.5)$$

6.2.5 TABLES OF TRIGONOMETRIC FUNCTIONS

| (degrees) x | $\sin x$ | $\cos x$ | $\tan x$ | $\cot x$ | $\sec x$ | $\csc x$ |
|------------------|----------|----------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | $\pm\infty$ | 1 | $\pm\infty$ |
| 5 | 0.0872 | 0.9962 | 0.0875 | 11.4300 | 1.0038 | 11.4737 |
| 10 | 0.1736 | 0.9848 | 0.1763 | 5.6713 | 1.0154 | 5.7588 |
| 15 | 0.2588 | 0.9659 | 0.2680 | 3.7321 | 1.0353 | 3.8637 |
| 20 | 0.3420 | 0.9397 | 0.3640 | 2.7475 | 1.0642 | 2.9238 |
| 25 | 0.4226 | 0.9063 | 0.4663 | 2.1445 | 1.1034 | 2.3662 |
| 30 | 0.5000 | 0.8660 | 0.5774 | 1.7321 | 1.1547 | 2.0000 |
| 35 | 0.5736 | 0.8192 | 0.7002 | 1.4282 | 1.2208 | 1.7434 |
| 40 | 0.6428 | 0.7660 | 0.8391 | 1.1918 | 1.3054 | 1.5557 |
| 45 | 0.7071 | 0.7071 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | 1.4142 | 1.4142 |
| 50 | 0.7660 | 0.6428 | 1.1918 | 0.8391 | 1.5557 | 1.3054 |
| 55 | 0.8192 | 0.5736 | 1.4282 | 0.7002 | 1.7434 | 1.2208 |
| 60 | 0.8660 | 0.5000 | 1.7321 | 0.5774 | 2.0000 | 1.1547 |
| 65 | 0.9063 | 0.4226 | 2.1445 | 0.4663 | 2.3662 | 1.1034 |
| 70 | 0.9397 | 0.3420 | 2.7475 | 0.3640 | 2.9238 | 1.0642 |
| 75 | 0.9659 | 0.2588 | 3.7321 | 0.2680 | 3.8637 | 1.0353 |
| 80 | 0.9848 | 0.1736 | 5.6713 | 0.1763 | 5.7588 | 1.0154 |
| 85 | 0.9962 | 0.0872 | 11.4300 | 0.0875 | 11.4737 | 1.0038 |
| 90 | 1 | 0 | $\pm\infty$ | 0 | $\pm\infty$ | 1 |
| 105 | 0.9659 | -0.2588 | -3.7321 | -0.2680 | -3.8637 | 1.0353 |
| 120 | 0.8660 | -0.5000 | -1.7321 | -0.5774 | -2.0000 | 1.1547 |
| 135 | 0.7071 | -0.7071 | -1.0000 | -1.0000 | -1.4142 | 1.4142 |
| 150 | 0.5000 | -0.8660 | -0.5774 | -1.7321 | -1.1547 | 2.0000 |
| 165 | 0.2588 | -0.9659 | -0.2680 | -3.7321 | -1.0353 | 3.8637 |
| 180 | 0 | -1 | 0 | $\pm\infty$ | -1 | $\pm\infty$ |
| 195 | -0.2588 | -0.9659 | 0.2680 | 3.7321 | -1.0353 | -3.8637 |
| 210 | -0.5000 | -0.8660 | 0.5774 | 1.7321 | -1.1547 | -2.0000 |
| 225 | -0.7071 | -0.7071 | 1.0000 | 1.0000 | -1.4142 | -1.4142 |
| 240 | -0.8660 | -0.5000 | 1.7321 | 0.5774 | -2.0000 | -1.1547 |
| 255 | -0.9659 | -0.2588 | 3.7321 | 0.2680 | -3.8637 | -1.0353 |
| 270 | -1 | 0 | $\pm\infty$ | 0 | $\pm\infty$ | -1 |
| 285 | -0.9659 | 0.2588 | -3.7321 | -0.2680 | 3.8637 | -1.0353 |
| 300 | -0.8660 | 0.5000 | -1.7321 | -0.5774 | 2.0000 | -1.1547 |
| 315 | -0.7071 | 0.7071 | -1.0000 | -1.0000 | 1.4142 | -1.4142 |
| 330 | -0.5000 | 0.8660 | -0.5774 | -1.7321 | 1.1547 | -2.0000 |
| 345 | -0.2588 | 0.9659 | -0.2680 | -3.7321 | 1.0353 | -3.8637 |
| 360 | 0 | 1 | 0 | $\pm\infty$ | 1 | $\pm\infty$ |

| (radians) | $\sin x$ | $\cos x$ | $\tan x$ | $\cot x$ | $\sec x$ | $\csc x$ |
|-----------|----------|----------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| x | | | | | | |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | $\pm\infty$ | 1 | $\pm\infty$ |
| 0.1 | 0.0998 | 0.9950 | 0.1003 | 9.9666 | 1.0050 | 10.0167 |
| 0.2 | 0.1987 | 0.9801 | 0.2027 | 4.9332 | 1.0203 | 5.0335 |
| 0.3 | 0.2955 | 0.9553 | 0.3093 | 3.2327 | 1.0468 | 3.3839 |
| 0.4 | 0.3894 | 0.9211 | 0.4228 | 2.3652 | 1.0857 | 2.5679 |
| 0.5 | 0.4794 | 0.8776 | 0.5463 | 1.8305 | 1.1395 | 2.0858 |
| 0.6 | 0.5646 | 0.8253 | 0.6841 | 1.4617 | 1.2116 | 1.7710 |
| 0.7 | 0.6442 | 0.7648 | 0.8423 | 1.1872 | 1.3075 | 1.5523 |
| 0.8 | 0.7174 | 0.6967 | 1.0296 | 0.9712 | 1.4353 | 1.3940 |
| 0.9 | 0.7833 | 0.6216 | 1.2602 | 0.7936 | 1.6087 | 1.2766 |
| 1.0 | 0.8415 | 0.5403 | 1.5574 | 0.6421 | 1.8508 | 1.1884 |
| 1.1 | 0.8912 | 0.4536 | 1.9648 | 0.5090 | 2.2046 | 1.1221 |
| 1.2 | 0.9320 | 0.3624 | 2.5722 | 0.3888 | 2.7597 | 1.0729 |
| 1.3 | 0.9636 | 0.2675 | 3.6021 | 0.2776 | 3.7383 | 1.0378 |
| 1.4 | 0.9854 | 0.1700 | 5.7979 | 0.1725 | 5.8835 | 1.0148 |
| 1.5 | 0.9975 | 0.0707 | 14.1014 | 0.0709 | 14.1368 | 1.0025 |
| $\pi/2$ | 1 | 0 | $\pm\infty$ | 0 | $\pm\infty$ | 1 |
| 1.6 | 0.9996 | -0.0292 | -34.2325 | -0.0292 | -34.2471 | 1.0004 |
| 1.7 | 0.9917 | -0.1288 | -7.6966 | -0.1299 | -7.7613 | 1.0084 |
| 1.8 | 0.9738 | -0.2272 | -4.2863 | -0.2333 | -4.4014 | 1.0269 |
| 1.9 | 0.9463 | -0.3233 | -2.9271 | -0.3416 | -3.0932 | 1.0567 |
| 2.0 | 0.9093 | -0.4161 | -2.1850 | -0.4577 | -2.4030 | 1.0998 |
| 2.1 | 0.8632 | -0.5048 | -1.7098 | -0.5848 | -1.9808 | 1.1585 |
| 2.2 | 0.8085 | -0.5885 | -1.3738 | -0.7279 | -1.6992 | 1.2369 |
| 2.3 | 0.7457 | -0.6663 | -1.1192 | -0.8935 | -1.5009 | 1.3410 |
| 2.4 | 0.6755 | -0.7374 | -0.9160 | -1.0917 | -1.3561 | 1.4805 |
| 2.5 | 0.5985 | -0.8011 | -0.7470 | -1.3386 | -1.2482 | 1.6709 |
| 2.6 | 0.5155 | -0.8569 | -0.6016 | -1.6622 | -1.1670 | 1.9399 |
| 2.7 | 0.4274 | -0.9041 | -0.4727 | -2.1154 | -1.1061 | 2.3398 |
| 2.8 | 0.3350 | -0.9422 | -0.3555 | -2.8127 | -1.0613 | 2.9852 |
| 2.9 | 0.2392 | -0.9710 | -0.2464 | -4.0584 | -1.0299 | 4.1797 |
| 3.0 | 0.1411 | -0.9900 | -0.1425 | -7.0153 | -1.0101 | 7.0862 |
| 3.1 | 0.0416 | -0.9991 | -0.0416 | -24.0288 | -1.0009 | 24.0496 |
| π | 0 | -1 | 0 | $\pm\infty$ | -1 | $\pm\infty$ |

6.3 INVERSE CIRCULAR FUNCTIONS

6.3.1 DEFINITION IN TERMS OF AN INTEGRAL

$$\begin{aligned}\arcsin(z) &= \sin^{-1} z = \int_0^z \frac{dt}{\sqrt{1-t^2}}, \\ \arccos(z) &= \cos^{-1} z = \int_z^1 \frac{dt}{\sqrt{1-t^2}} = \frac{\pi}{2} - \sin^{-1} z, \\ \arctan(z) &= \tan^{-1} z = \int_0^z \frac{dt}{1+t^2} = \frac{\pi}{2} - \cot^{-1} z,\end{aligned}\tag{6.3.1}$$

where z can be complex. The path of integration must not cross the real axis in the first two cases. In the third case, it must not cross the imaginary axis except possibly inside the unit circle. If $-1 \leq x \leq 1$, then $\sin^{-1} x$ and $\cos^{-1} x$ are real, $-\frac{\pi}{2} \leq \sin^{-1} x \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$, and $0 \leq \cos^{-1} x \leq \pi$.

$$\begin{aligned}\operatorname{csc}^{-1} z &= \sin^{-1}(1/z), \\ \operatorname{sec}^{-1} z &= \cos^{-1}(1/z), \\ \operatorname{cot}^{-1} z &= \tan^{-1}(1/z), \\ \operatorname{sec}^{-1} z + \operatorname{csc}^{-1} z &= \pi/2.\end{aligned}\tag{6.3.2}$$

6.3.2 PRINCIPAL VALUES OF THE INVERSE CIRCULAR FUNCTIONS

The general solutions of $\{\sin t = z, \cos t = z, \tan t = z\}$ are, respectively:

$$\begin{aligned}t &= \sin^{-1} z = (-1)^k t_0 + k\pi, && \text{with } \sin t_0 = z, \\ t &= \cos^{-1} z = \pm t_1 + 2k\pi, && \text{with } \sin t_1 = z, \\ t &= \tan^{-1} z = t_2 + k\pi, && \text{with } \sin t_2 = z,\end{aligned}$$

where k is an arbitrary integer. While “ $\sin^{-1} x$ ” can denote, as above, any angle whose sin is x , the function $\sin^{-1} x$ usually denotes the *principal value*. The principal values of the inverse trigonometric functions are defined as follows:

1. When $-1 \leq x \leq 1$, then $-\pi/2 \leq \sin^{-1} x \leq \pi/2$.
2. When $-1 \leq x \leq 1$, then $0 \leq \cos^{-1} x \leq \pi$.
3. When $-\infty \leq x \leq \infty$, then $-\pi/2 \leq \tan^{-1} x \leq \pi/2$.
4. When $1 \leq x$, then $0 \leq \operatorname{csc}^{-1} x \leq \pi/2$.
When $x \leq -1$, then $-\pi/2 \leq \operatorname{csc}^{-1} x \leq 0$.
5. When $1 \leq x$, then $0 \leq \operatorname{sec}^{-1} x \leq \pi/2$.
When $x \leq -1$, then $\pi/2 \leq \operatorname{sec}^{-1} x \leq \pi$.
6. When $-\infty \leq x \leq \infty$, then $0 \leq \operatorname{cot}^{-1} x \leq \pi$.

6.3.3 FUNDAMENTAL IDENTITIES

$$\sin^{-1} x + \cos^{-1} x = \pi/2.$$

$$\tan^{-1} x + \cot^{-1} x = \pi/2.$$

If $\alpha = \sin^{-1} x$, then

$$\begin{aligned} \sin \alpha &= x, & \cos \alpha &= \sqrt{1-x^2}, & \tan \alpha &= \frac{x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}, \\ \csc \alpha &= \frac{1}{x}, & \sec \alpha &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}, & \cot \alpha &= \frac{\sqrt{1-x^2}}{x}. \end{aligned}$$

If $\alpha = \cos^{-1} x$, then

$$\begin{aligned} \sin \alpha &= \sqrt{1-x^2}, & \cos \alpha &= x, & \tan \alpha &= \frac{\sqrt{1-x^2}}{x}, \\ \csc \alpha &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}, & \sec \alpha &= \frac{1}{x}, & \cot \alpha &= \frac{x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}. \end{aligned}$$

If $\alpha = \tan^{-1} x$, then

$$\begin{aligned} \sin \alpha &= \frac{x}{\sqrt{1+x^2}}, & \cos \alpha &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+x^2}}, & \tan \alpha &= x, \\ \csc \alpha &= \frac{\sqrt{1+x^2}}{x}, & \sec \alpha &= \sqrt{1+x^2}, & \cot \alpha &= \frac{1}{x}. \end{aligned}$$

6.3.4 FUNCTIONS OF NEGATIVE ARGUMENTS

$$\sin^{-1}(-z) = -\sin^{-1} z,$$

$$\sec^{-1}(-z) = \pi - \sec^{-1} z,$$

$$\cos^{-1}(-z) = \pi - \cos^{-1} z,$$

$$\csc^{-1}(-z) = -\csc^{-1} z,$$

$$\tan^{-1}(-z) = -\tan^{-1} z,$$

$$\cot^{-1}(-z) = \pi - \cot^{-1} z.$$

6.3.5 RELATIONSHIP TO INVERSE HYPERBOLIC FUNCTIONS

$$\sin^{-1} z = -i \sinh^{-1}(iz),$$

$$\csc^{-1} z = i \operatorname{csch}^{-1}(iz),$$

$$\tan^{-1} z = -i \tanh^{-1}(iz),$$

$$\cot^{-1} z = i \operatorname{coth}^{-1}(iz).$$

6.3.6 SUM AND DIFFERENCE OF TWO INVERSE CIRCULAR FUNCTIONS

$$\sin^{-1} z_1 \pm \sin^{-1} z_2 = \sin^{-1} \left(z_1 \sqrt{1 - z_2^2} \pm z_2 \sqrt{1 - z_1^2} \right).$$

$$\cos^{-1} z_1 \pm \cos^{-1} z_2 = \cos^{-1} \left(z_1 z_2 \mp \sqrt{(1 - z_2^2)(1 - z_1^2)} \right).$$

$$\tan^{-1} z_1 \pm \tan^{-1} z_2 = \tan^{-1} \left(\frac{z_1 \pm z_2}{1 \mp z_1 z_2} \right).$$

$$\begin{aligned} \sin^{-1} z_1 \pm \cos^{-1} z_2 &= \sin^{-1} \left(z_1 z_2 \pm \sqrt{(1 - z_1^2)(1 - z_2^2)} \right), \\ &= \cos^{-1} \left(z_2 \sqrt{1 - z_1^2} \mp z_1 \sqrt{1 - z_2^2} \right). \end{aligned}$$

$$\tan^{-1} z_1 \pm \cot^{-1} z_2 = \tan^{-1} \left(\frac{z_1 z_2 \pm 1}{z_2 \mp z_1} \right) = \cot^{-1} \left(\frac{z_2 \mp z_1}{z_1 z_2 \pm 1} \right).$$

6.4 CEILING AND FLOOR FUNCTIONS

The *ceiling function* of x , denoted $\lceil x \rceil$, is the least integer that is not smaller than x . For example, $\lceil \pi \rceil = 4$, $\lceil 5 \rceil = 5$, and $\lceil -1.5 \rceil = -1$.

The *floor function* of x , denoted $\lfloor x \rfloor$, is the largest integer that is not larger than x . For example, $\lfloor \pi \rfloor = 3$, $\lfloor 5 \rfloor = 5$, and $\lfloor -1.5 \rfloor = -2$.

6.5 EXPONENTIAL FUNCTION

6.5.1 EXPONENTIATION

For a any real number and m a positive integer, the *exponential* a^m is defined as

$$a^m = \underbrace{a \cdot a \cdot a \cdots a}_{m \text{ terms}}. \quad (6.5.1)$$

The following three laws of exponents follow for $a \neq 0$:

1. $a^n \cdot a^m = a^{n+m}$.
2. $\frac{a^m}{a^n} = \begin{cases} a^{m-n}, & \text{if } m > n, \\ 1, & \text{if } m = n, \\ \frac{1}{a^{n-m}}, & \text{if } m < n. \end{cases}$

3. $(a^m)^n = a^{(mn)}$.

The n^{th} root function is defined as the inverse of the n^{th} power function:

$$\text{If } b^n = a, \text{ then } b = \sqrt[n]{a} = a^{(1/n)}. \quad (6.5.2)$$

If n is odd, there will be a unique real number satisfying the above definition of $\sqrt[n]{a}$, for any real value of a . If n is even, for positive values of a there will be two real values for $\sqrt[n]{a}$, one positive and one negative. By convention, the symbol $\sqrt[n]{a}$ means the positive value. If n is even and a is negative, then there are no real values for $\sqrt[n]{a}$.

To extend the definition to include a^t (for t not necessarily a positive integer) so as to maintain the laws of exponents, the following definitions are required (where we now restrict a to be positive; p and q are integers):

$$a^0 = 1 \quad a^{p/q} = \sqrt[q]{a^p} \quad a^{-t} = \frac{1}{a^t}. \quad (6.5.3)$$

With these restrictions, the second law of exponents can be written as $\frac{a^m}{a^n} = a^{m-n}$.

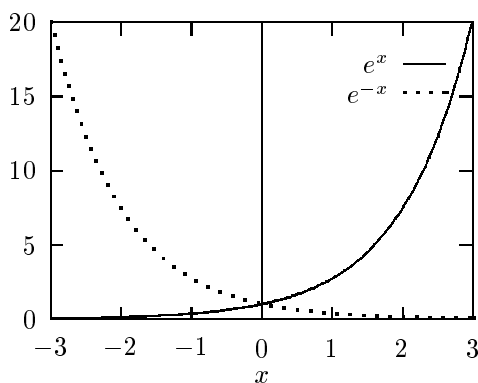
If $a > 1$, then the function a^x is monotonically increasing while, if $0 < a < 1$ then the function a^x is monotonically decreasing.

6.5.2 DEFINITION OF e^z

$$\begin{aligned} \exp(z) = e^z &= \lim_{m \rightarrow \infty} \left(1 + \frac{z}{m}\right)^m \\ &= 1 + z + \frac{z^2}{2!} + \frac{z^3}{3!} + \frac{z^4}{4!} + \dots \end{aligned} \quad (6.5.4)$$

If $z = x + iy$, then $e^z = e^x e^{iy} = e^x (\cos y + i \sin y)$.

The numerical value of e is given on page 15.



6.5.3 DERIVATIVE AND INTEGRAL OF e^x

The derivative of e^x is e^x . The integral of e^x is e^x .

6.6 LOGARITHMIC FUNCTIONS

6.6.1 DEFINITION OF THE NATURAL LOGARITHM

The *natural logarithm* (also known as the *Napierian logarithm*) of z is written as $\ln z$ or as $\log_e z$. It is sometimes written $\log z$ (this is also used to represent a “generic” logarithm, a logarithm to any base). One definition is

$$\ln z = \int_1^z \frac{dt}{t}, \quad (6.6.1)$$

where the integration path from 1 to z does not cross the origin or the negative real axis.

For complex values of z the natural logarithm, as defined above, can be represented in terms of its magnitude and phase. If $z = x + iy = re^{i\theta}$, then

$$\ln z = \ln r + i(\theta + 2k\pi), \quad (6.6.2)$$

for some $k = 0, \pm 1, \dots$, where $r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$, $x = r \cos \theta$, and $y = r \sin \theta$. Usually, the value of k is chosen so that $0 \leq (\theta + 2k\pi) < 2\pi$.

6.6.1.1 Logarithms to a base other than e

The logarithmic function to the base a , written \log_a , is defined as

$$\log_a z = \frac{\log_b z}{\log_b a} = \frac{\ln z}{\ln a}. \quad (6.6.3)$$

Note the properties:

1. $\log_a a^p = p$.
2. $\log_a b = \frac{1}{\log_b a}$.
3. $\log_{10} z = \frac{\ln z}{\ln 10} = (\log_{10} e) \ln z \approx (0.4342944819) \ln z$.
4. $\ln z = (\ln 10) \log_{10} z \approx (2.3025850929) \log_{10} z$.

6.6.2 LOGARITHM OF SPECIAL VALUES

$$\begin{aligned} \ln 0 &= -\infty, & \ln 1 &= 0, & \ln e &= 1, \\ \ln(-1) &= i\pi + 2\pi ik, & \ln(\pm i) &= \pm \frac{i\pi}{2} + 2\pi ik. \end{aligned}$$

6.6.3 RELATING THE LOGARITHM TO THE EXPONENTIAL

For real values of z the logarithm is a monotonic function, as is the exponential. Any monotonic function has a single-valued inverse function; the natural logarithm is the inverse of the exponential. If $x = e^y$, then $y = \ln x$, and $x = e^{\ln x}$. The same inverse relations hold for bases other than e . That is, if $u = a^w$, then $w = \log_a u$, and $u = a^{\log_a u}$.

6.6.4 IDENTITIES

$$\begin{aligned} \log_a z_1 z_2 &= \log_a z_1 + \log_a z_2, & \text{for } (-\pi < \arg z_1 + \arg z_2 < \pi). \\ \log_a \frac{z_1}{z_2} &= \log_a z_1 - \log_a z_2, & \text{for } (-\pi < \arg z_1 - \arg z_2 < \pi). \\ \log_a z^n &= n \log_a z, & \text{for } (-\pi < n \arg z < \pi), \text{ when } n \text{ is an integer.} \end{aligned}$$

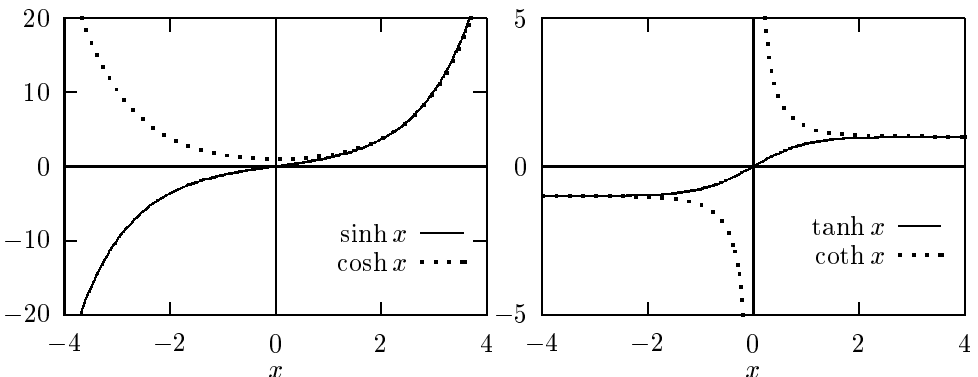
6.6.5 SERIES EXPANSIONS FOR THE NATURAL LOGARITHM

$$\begin{aligned} \ln(1+z) &= z - \frac{1}{2}z^2 + \frac{1}{3}z^3 - \dots, & \text{for } |z| < 1. \\ \ln z &= \left(\frac{z-1}{z}\right) + \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{z-1}{z}\right)^2 + \frac{1}{3}\left(\frac{z-1}{z}\right)^3 + \dots, & \text{for } \operatorname{Re} z \geq \frac{1}{2}. \end{aligned}$$

6.6.6 DERIVATIVE AND INTEGRATION FORMULAE

$$\frac{d \ln z}{dz} = \frac{1}{z}, \quad \int \frac{dz}{z} = \ln z, \quad \int \ln z \, dz = z \ln z - z.$$

6.7 HYPERBOLIC FUNCTIONS



6.7.1 DEFINITIONS OF THE HYPERBOLIC FUNCTIONS

$$\begin{aligned} \sinh z &= \frac{e^z - e^{-z}}{2}, & \operatorname{csch} z &= \frac{1}{\sinh z}, \\ \cosh z &= \frac{e^z + e^{-z}}{2}, & \operatorname{sech} z &= \frac{1}{\cosh z}, \\ \tanh z &= \frac{e^z - e^{-z}}{e^z + e^{-z}} = \frac{\sinh z}{\cosh z}, & \operatorname{coth} z &= \frac{1}{\tanh z}. \end{aligned}$$

When $z = x + iy$,

$$\begin{aligned} \sinh z &= \sinh x \cos y + i \cosh x \sin y, & \tanh z &= \frac{\sinh 2x + i \sin 2y}{\cosh 2x + \cos 2y}, \\ \cosh z &= \cosh x \cos y + i \sinh x \sin y, & \operatorname{coth} z &= \frac{\sinh 2x - i \sin 2y}{\cosh 2x - \cos 2y}. \end{aligned}$$

6.7.2 RANGE OF VALUES

| Function | Domain (interval of u) | Range (interval of function) | Remarks |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| $\sinh u$ | $(-\infty, +\infty)$ | $(-\infty, +\infty)$ | Two branches, pole at $u = 0$. |
| $\cosh u$ | $(-\infty, +\infty)$ | $[1, +\infty)$ | |
| $\tanh u$ | $(-\infty, +\infty)$ | $(-1, +1)$ | |
| $\operatorname{csch} u$ | $(-\infty, 0)$ $(0, +\infty)$ | $(0, -\infty)$ $(+\infty, 0)$ | |
| $\operatorname{sech} u$ | $(-\infty, +\infty)$ | $(0, 1]$ | Two branches, pole at $u = 0$. |
| $\operatorname{coth} u$ | $(-\infty, 0)$ $(0, +\infty)$ | $(-1, -\infty)$ $(+\infty, 1)$ | |

6.7.3 HYPERBOLIC FUNCTIONS IN TERMS OF ONE ANOTHER

| Function | $\sinh x$ | $\cosh x$ | $\tanh x$ |
|---------------------------|--|--|--|
| $\sinh x =$ | $\sinh x$ | $\pm \sqrt{(\cosh x)^2 - 1}$ | $\frac{\tanh x}{\sqrt{1 - (\tanh x)^2}}$ |
| $\cosh x =$ | $\sqrt{1 + (\sinh x)^2}$ | $\cosh x$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - (\tanh x)^2}}$ |
| $\tanh x =$ | $\frac{\sinh x}{\sqrt{1 + (\sinh x)^2}}$ | $\pm \frac{\sqrt{(\cosh x)^2 - 1}}{\cosh x}$ | $\tanh x$ |
| $\operatorname{csch} x =$ | $\frac{1}{\sinh x}$ | $\pm \frac{1}{\sqrt{(\cosh x)^2 - 1}}$ | $\frac{\sqrt{1 - (\tanh x)^2}}{\tanh x}$ |
| $\operatorname{sech} x =$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + (\sinh x)^2}}$ | $\frac{1}{\cosh x}$ | $\sqrt{1 - (\tanh x)^2}$ |
| $\operatorname{coth} x =$ | $\frac{\sqrt{1 + (\sinh x)^2}}{\sinh x}$ | $\pm \frac{\cosh x}{\sqrt{(\cosh x)^2 - 1}}$ | $\frac{1}{\tanh x}$ |

| Function | $\operatorname{csch} x$ | $\operatorname{sech} x$ | $\operatorname{coth} x$ |
|---------------------------|--|--|--|
| $\sinh x =$ | $\frac{1}{\operatorname{csch} x}$ | $\pm \frac{\sqrt{1 - (\operatorname{sech} x)^2}}{\operatorname{sech} x}$ | $\pm \frac{1}{\sqrt{(\operatorname{coth} x)^2 - 1}}$ |
| $\cosh x =$ | $\pm \frac{\sqrt{(\operatorname{csch} x)^2 + 1}}{\operatorname{csch} x}$ | $\frac{1}{\operatorname{sech} x}$ | $\pm \frac{\operatorname{coth} x}{\sqrt{(\operatorname{coth} x)^2 - 1}}$ |
| $\tanh x =$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{(\operatorname{csch} x)^2 + 1}}$ | $\pm \sqrt{1 - (\operatorname{sech} x)^2}$ | $\frac{1}{\operatorname{coth} x}$ |
| $\operatorname{csch} x =$ | $\operatorname{csch} x$ | $\pm \frac{\operatorname{sech} x}{\sqrt{1 - (\operatorname{sech} x)^2}}$ | $\pm \sqrt{(\operatorname{coth} x)^2 - 1}$ |
| $\operatorname{sech} x =$ | $\pm \frac{\operatorname{csch} x}{\sqrt{(\operatorname{csch} x)^2 + 1}}$ | $\operatorname{sech} x$ | $\pm \frac{\sqrt{(\operatorname{coth} x)^2 - 1}}{\operatorname{coth} x}$ |
| $\operatorname{coth} x =$ | $\sqrt{(\operatorname{csch} x)^2 + 1}$ | $\pm \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - (\operatorname{sech} x)^2}}$ | $\operatorname{coth} x$ |

6.7.4 RELATIONS AMONG HYPERBOLIC FUNCTIONS

$$e^z = \cosh z + \sinh z, \quad e^{-z} = \cosh z - \sinh z,$$

$$(\cosh z)^2 - (\sinh z)^2 = (\tanh z)^2 + (\operatorname{sech} z)^2 = (\operatorname{coth} z)^2 - (\operatorname{csch} z)^2 = 1.$$

6.7.5 RELATIONSHIP TO CIRCULAR FUNCTIONS

$$\cosh z = \cos iz, \quad \sinh z = -i \sin iz, \quad \tanh z = -i \tan iz.$$

6.7.6 SERIES EXPANSIONS

$$\cosh z = 1 + \frac{z^2}{2!} + \frac{z^4}{4!} + \frac{z^6}{6!} + \dots, \quad |z| < \infty.$$

$$\sinh z = z + \frac{z^3}{3!} + \frac{z^5}{5!} + \frac{z^7}{7!} + \dots, \quad |z| < \infty.$$

$$\tanh z = z - \frac{z^3}{3} + \frac{2z^5}{15} - \frac{17z^7}{315} + \dots, \quad |z| < \frac{\pi}{2}.$$

6.7.7 SYMMETRY RELATIONSHIPS

$$\cosh(-z) = +\cosh z, \quad \sinh(-z) = -\sinh z, \quad \tanh(-z) = -\tanh z.$$

6.7.8 SUM AND DIFFERENCE FORMULAE

$$\cosh(z_1 \pm z_2) = \cosh z_1 \cosh z_2 \pm \sinh z_1 \sinh z_2,$$

$$\sinh(z_1 \pm z_2) = \sinh z_1 \cosh z_2 \pm \cosh z_1 \sinh z_2,$$

$$\tanh(z_1 \pm z_2) = \frac{\tanh z_1 \pm \tanh z_2}{1 \pm \tanh z_1 \tanh z_2} = \frac{\sinh 2z_1 \pm \sinh 2z_2}{\cosh 2z_1 \pm \cosh 2z_2},$$

$$\coth(z_1 \pm z_2) = \frac{1 \pm \coth z_1 \coth z_2}{\coth z_1 \pm \coth z_2} = \frac{\sinh 2z_1 \mp \sinh 2z_2}{\cosh 2z_1 - \cosh 2z_2}.$$

6.7.9 MULTIPLE ARGUMENT RELATIONS

$$\sinh 2\alpha = 2 \sinh \alpha \cosh \alpha = \frac{2 \tanh \alpha}{1 - \tanh^2 \alpha}.$$

$$\sinh 3\alpha = 3 \sinh \alpha + 4 \sinh^3 \alpha = \sinh \alpha (4 \cosh^2 \alpha - 1).$$

$$\sinh 4\alpha = 4 \sinh^3 \alpha \cosh \alpha + 4 \cosh^3 \alpha \sinh \alpha.$$

$$\cosh 2\alpha = \cosh^2 \alpha + \sinh^2 \alpha = 2 \cosh^2 \alpha - 1,$$

$$= 1 + 2 \sinh^2 \alpha = \frac{1 + \tanh^2 \alpha}{1 - \tanh^2 \alpha}.$$

$$\cosh 3\alpha = -3 \cosh \alpha + 4 \cosh^3 \alpha = \cosh \alpha (4 \sinh^2 \alpha + 1).$$

$$\cosh 4\alpha = \cosh^4 \alpha + 6 \sinh^2 \alpha \cosh^2 \alpha + 6 \sinh^4 \alpha.$$

$$\tanh 2\alpha = \frac{2 \tanh \alpha}{1 + \tanh^2 \alpha}.$$

$$\tanh 3\alpha = \frac{3 \tanh \alpha + \tanh^3 \alpha}{1 + 3 \tanh^2 \alpha}.$$

$$\coth 2\alpha = \frac{1 + \coth^2 \alpha}{2 \coth \alpha}.$$

$$\coth 3\alpha = \frac{3 \coth \alpha + \coth^3 \alpha}{1 + 3 \coth^2 \alpha}.$$

6.7.10 SUMS OF FUNCTIONS

$$\sinh u \pm \sinh w = 2 \sinh \frac{u \pm w}{2} \cosh \frac{u \mp w}{2},$$

$$\cosh u + \cosh w = 2 \cosh \frac{u + w}{2} \cosh \frac{u - w}{2},$$

$$\cosh u - \cosh w = 2 \sinh \frac{u + w}{2} \sinh \frac{u - w}{2},$$

$$\tanh u \pm \tanh w = \frac{\sinh u \pm w}{\cosh u \cosh w},$$

$$\coth u \pm \coth w = \frac{\sinh u \pm w}{\sinh u \sinh w}.$$

6.7.11 PRODUCTS OF FUNCTIONS

$$\begin{aligned}\sinh u \sinh w &= \frac{1}{2} (\cosh(u+w) - \cosh(u-w)), \\ \sinh u \cosh w &= \frac{1}{2} (\sinh(u+w) + \sinh(u-w)), \\ \cosh u \cosh w &= \frac{1}{2} (\cosh(u+w) + \cosh(u-w)).\end{aligned}$$

6.7.12 HALF-ARGUMENT FORMULAE

$$\begin{aligned}\sinh \frac{z}{2} &= \pm \sqrt{\frac{\cosh z - 1}{2}}, & \cosh \frac{z}{2} &= +\sqrt{\frac{\cosh z + 1}{2}}, \\ \tanh \frac{z}{2} &= \pm \sqrt{\frac{\cosh z - 1}{\cosh z + 1}} = \frac{\sinh z}{\cosh z + 1}, & \coth \frac{z}{2} &= \pm \sqrt{\frac{\cosh z + 1}{\cosh z - 1}} = \frac{\sinh z}{\cosh z - 1}.\end{aligned}$$

6.7.13 DIFFERENTIATION FORMULAE

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d \sinh z}{dz} &= \cosh z, & \frac{d \cosh z}{dz} &= \sinh z, \\ \frac{d \tanh z}{dz} &= (\operatorname{sech} z)^2, & \frac{d \operatorname{csch} z}{dz} &= -\operatorname{csch} z \coth z, \\ \frac{d \operatorname{sech} z}{dz} &= -\operatorname{sech} z \tanh z, & \frac{d \coth z}{dz} &= -(\operatorname{csch} z)^2.\end{aligned}$$

6.8 INVERSE HYPERBOLIC FUNCTIONS

$$\cosh^{-1} z = \int_0^z \frac{dt}{\sqrt{t^2 - 1}}, \quad \sinh^{-1} z = \int_0^z \frac{dt}{\sqrt{1 + t^2}}, \quad \tanh^{-1} z = \int_0^z \frac{dt}{1 - t^2}.$$

6.8.1 RANGE OF VALUES

| Function | Domain | Range | Remarks |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------|--|
| $\sinh^{-1} u$ | $(-\infty, +\infty)$ | $(-\infty, +\infty)$ | Odd function |
| $\cosh^{-1} u$ | $[1, +\infty)$ | $(-\infty, +\infty)$ | Even function, double valued |
| $\tanh^{-1} u$ | $(-1, +1)$ | $(-\infty, +\infty)$ | Odd function |
| $\operatorname{csch}^{-1} u$ | $(-\infty, 0), (0, \infty)$ | $(0, -\infty), (\infty, 0)$ | Odd function, two branches, Pole at $u = 0$ |
| $\operatorname{sech}^{-1} u$ | $(0, 1]$ | $(-\infty, +\infty)$ | Double valued |
| $\operatorname{coth}^{-1} u$ | $(-\infty, -1), (1, \infty)$ | $(-\infty, 0), (\infty, 0)$ | Odd function, two branches |

6.8.2 RELATIONSHIPS AMONG INVERSE HYPERBOLIC FUNCTIONS

| Function | $\sinh^{-1} x$ | $\cosh^{-1} x$ | $\tanh^{-1} x$ |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|
| $\sinh^{-1} x =$ | $\sinh^{-1} x$ | $\pm \cosh^{-1} \sqrt{x^2 + 1}$ | $\tanh^{-1} \frac{x}{\sqrt{1 + x^2}}$ |
| $\cosh^{-1} x =$ | $\pm \sinh^{-1} \sqrt{x^2 - 1}$ | $\cosh^{-1} x$ | $\pm \tanh^{-1} \frac{\sqrt{x^2 - 1}}{x}$ |
| $\tanh^{-1} x =$ | $\sinh^{-1} \frac{x}{\sqrt{1 - x^2}}$ | $\pm \cosh^{-1} \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - x^2}}$ | $\tanh^{-1} x$ |
| $\operatorname{csch}^{-1} x =$ | $\sinh^{-1} \frac{1}{x}$ | $\pm \cosh^{-1} \frac{\sqrt{1 + x^2}}{x}$ | $\tanh^{-1} \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + x^2}}$ |
| $\operatorname{sech}^{-1} x =$ | $\pm \sinh^{-1} \frac{\sqrt{1 - x^2}}{x}$ | $\cosh^{-1} \frac{1}{x}$ | $\pm \tanh^{-1} \sqrt{1 - x^2}$ |
| $\operatorname{coth}^{-1} x =$ | $\sinh^{-1} \frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2 - 1}}$ | $\pm \cosh^{-1} \frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2 - 1}}$ | $\tanh^{-1} \frac{1}{x}$ |

| Function | $\operatorname{csch}^{-1} x$ | $\operatorname{sech}^{-1} x$ | $\operatorname{coth}^{-1} x$ |
|--------------------------------|---|---|---|
| $\sinh^{-1} x =$ | $\operatorname{csch}^{-1} \frac{1}{x}$ | $\pm \operatorname{sech}^{-1} \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + x^2}}$ | $\operatorname{coth}^{-1} \frac{\sqrt{1 + x^2}}{x}$ |
| $\cosh^{-1} x =$ | $\pm \operatorname{csch}^{-1} \frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2 - 1}}$ | $\operatorname{sech}^{-1} \frac{1}{x}$ | $\pm \operatorname{coth}^{-1} \frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2 - 1}}$ |
| $\tanh^{-1} x =$ | $\operatorname{csch}^{-1} \frac{\sqrt{1 - x^2}}{x}$ | $\pm \operatorname{sech}^{-1} \sqrt{1 - x^2}$ | $\operatorname{coth}^{-1} \frac{1}{x}$ |
| $\operatorname{csch}^{-1} x =$ | $\operatorname{csch}^{-1} x$ | $\pm \operatorname{sech}^{-1} \frac{x}{\sqrt{1 + x^2}}$ | $\operatorname{coth}^{-1} \sqrt{1 + x^2}$ |
| $\operatorname{sech}^{-1} x =$ | $\pm \operatorname{csch}^{-1} \frac{x}{\sqrt{1 - x^2}}$ | $\operatorname{sech}^{-1} x$ | $\pm \operatorname{coth}^{-1} \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - x^2}}$ |
| $\operatorname{coth}^{-1} x =$ | $\operatorname{csch}^{-1} \sqrt{x^2 - 1}$ | $\operatorname{sech}^{-1} \frac{\sqrt{x^2 - 1}}{x}$ | $\operatorname{coth}^{-1} x$ |

6.8.3 RELATIONSHIPS WITH LOGARITHMIC FUNCTIONS

$$\begin{aligned}\sinh^{-1} x &= \log \left(x + \sqrt{x^2 + 1} \right), & \operatorname{csch}^{-1} x &= \log \left(\frac{1 \pm \sqrt{1 + x^2}}{x} \right), \\ \cosh^{-1} x &= \log \left(x \pm \sqrt{x^2 - 1} \right), & \operatorname{sech}^{-1} x &= \log \left(\frac{1 \pm \sqrt{1 - x^2}}{x} \right), \\ \tanh^{-1} x &= \frac{1}{2} \log \left(\frac{1 + x}{1 - x} \right), & \operatorname{coth}^{-1} x &= \frac{1}{2} \log \left(\frac{x + 1}{x - 1} \right).\end{aligned}$$

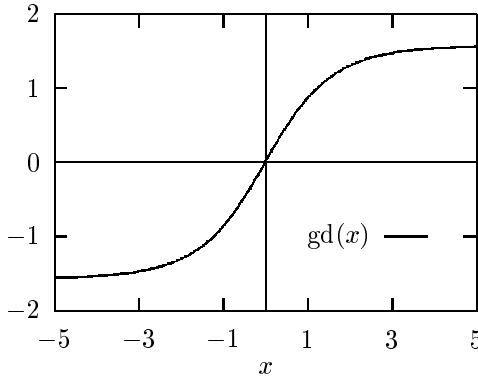
6.8.4 RELATIONSHIPS WITH CIRCULAR FUNCTIONS

$$\begin{aligned}\sinh^{-1} x &= -i \sin^{-1} ix & \sinh^{-1} ix &= +i \sin^{-1} x \\ \tanh^{-1} x &= -i \tan^{-1} ix & \tanh^{-1} ix &= +i \tan^{-1} x \\ \operatorname{csch}^{-1} x &= +i \operatorname{csc}^{-1} ix & \operatorname{csch}^{-1} ix &= -i \operatorname{csc}^{-1} x \\ \operatorname{coth}^{-1} x &= +i \operatorname{cot}^{-1} ix & \operatorname{coth}^{-1} ix &= -i \operatorname{cot}^{-1} x\end{aligned}$$

6.8.5 SUM AND DIFFERENCE OF FUNCTIONS

$$\begin{aligned}\sinh^{-1} x \pm \sinh^{-1} y &= \sinh^{-1} \left(x\sqrt{1 + y^2} \pm y\sqrt{1 + x^2} \right), \\ \cosh^{-1} x \pm \cosh^{-1} y &= \cosh^{-1} \left(xy \pm \sqrt{(y^2 - 1)(x^2 - 1)} \right), \\ \tanh^{-1} x \pm \tanh^{-1} y &= \tanh^{-1} \left(\frac{x \pm y}{xy \pm 1} \right), \\ \sinh^{-1} x \pm \cosh^{-1} y &= \sinh^{-1} \left(xy \pm \sqrt{(1 + x^2)(y^2 - 1)} \right), \\ &= \cosh^{-1} \left(y\sqrt{1 + x^2} \pm x\sqrt{y^2 - 1} \right), \\ \tanh^{-1} x \pm \operatorname{coth}^{-1} y &= \tanh^{-1} \left(\frac{xy \pm 1}{y \pm x} \right), \\ &= \operatorname{coth}^{-1} \left(\frac{y \pm x}{xy \pm 1} \right).\end{aligned}$$

6.9 GUDERMANNIAN FUNCTION



This function relates circular and hyperbolic functions without the use of functions of imaginary argument. The Gudermannian is a monotonic odd function which is asymptotic to $\pm \frac{\pi}{2}$ as $x \rightarrow \pm\infty$. It is zero at the origin.

$\text{gd } x =$ the Gudermannian of x

$$= \int_0^x \frac{dt}{\cosh t} = 2 \tan^{-1} \left(\tanh \frac{x}{2} \right) = 2 \tan^{-1} e^x - \frac{\pi}{2}. \quad (6.9.1)$$

$\text{gd}^{-1} x =$ the inverse Gudermannian of x

$$= \int_0^x \frac{dt}{\cos t} = \log \left[\tan \left(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{x}{2} \right) \right] = \log (\sec x + \tan x).$$

If $\text{gd}(x + iy) = \alpha + i\beta$, then

$$\begin{aligned} \tan \alpha &= \frac{\sinh x}{\cos y}, & \tanh \beta &= \frac{\sin y}{\cosh x}, \\ \tanh x &= \frac{\sin \alpha}{\cosh \beta}, & \tan y &= \frac{\sin \beta}{\cosh \alpha}. \end{aligned}$$

6.9.1 FUNDAMENTAL IDENTITIES

$$\begin{aligned} \tanh \left(\frac{x}{2} \right) &= \tan \left(\frac{\text{gd } x}{2} \right), \\ e^x &= \cosh x + \sinh x = \sec \text{gd } x + \tan \text{gd } x, \\ &= \tan \left(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{\text{gd } x}{2} \right) = \frac{1 + \sin(\text{gd } x)}{\cos(\text{gd } x)}, \\ i \text{gd}^{-1} x &= \text{gd}^{-1}(ix), \quad \text{where } i = \sqrt{-1}. \end{aligned}$$

6.9.2 DERIVATIVES OF GUDERMANNIAN

$$\frac{d(\text{gd } x)}{dx} = \text{sech } x \quad \frac{d(\text{gd}^{-1} x)}{dx} = \sec x.$$

6.9.3 RELATIONSHIP TO HYPERBOLIC AND CIRCULAR FUNCTIONS

$$\begin{aligned} \sinh x &= \tan(\operatorname{gd} x), & \operatorname{csch} x &= \cot(\operatorname{gd} x), \\ \cosh x &= \sec(\operatorname{gd} x), & \operatorname{sech} x &= \cos(\operatorname{gd} x), \\ \tanh x &= \sin(\operatorname{gd} x), & \operatorname{coth} x &= \csc(\operatorname{gd} x). \end{aligned}$$

6.9.4 NUMERICAL VALUES OF HYPERBOLIC FUNCTIONS

| x | e^x | $\ln x$ | $\operatorname{gd} x$ | $\sinh x$ | $\cosh x$ | $\tanh x$ |
|-----|---------|-----------|-----------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 0 | 1 | $-\infty$ | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| 0.1 | 1.1052 | -2.3026 | 0.0998 | 0.1002 | 1.0050 | 0.0997 |
| 0.2 | 1.2214 | -1.6094 | 0.1987 | 0.2013 | 1.0201 | 0.1974 |
| 0.3 | 1.3499 | -1.2040 | 0.2956 | 0.3045 | 1.0453 | 0.2913 |
| 0.4 | 1.4918 | -0.9163 | 0.3897 | 0.4108 | 1.0811 | 0.3799 |
| 0.5 | 1.6487 | -0.6931 | 0.4804 | 0.5211 | 1.1276 | 0.4621 |
| 0.6 | 1.8221 | -0.5108 | 0.5669 | 0.6367 | 1.1855 | 0.5370 |
| 0.7 | 2.0138 | -0.3567 | 0.6490 | 0.7586 | 1.2552 | 0.6044 |
| 0.8 | 2.2255 | -0.2231 | 0.7262 | 0.8881 | 1.3374 | 0.6640 |
| 0.9 | 2.4596 | -0.1054 | 0.7985 | 1.0265 | 1.4331 | 0.7163 |
| 1.0 | 2.7183 | -0.0000 | 0.8658 | 1.1752 | 1.5431 | 0.7616 |
| 1.1 | 3.0042 | 0.0953 | 0.9281 | 1.3356 | 1.6685 | 0.8005 |
| 1.2 | 3.3201 | 0.1823 | 0.9857 | 1.5095 | 1.8107 | 0.8337 |
| 1.3 | 3.6693 | 0.2624 | 1.0387 | 1.6984 | 1.9709 | 0.8617 |
| 1.4 | 4.0552 | 0.3365 | 1.0872 | 1.9043 | 2.1509 | 0.8854 |
| 1.5 | 4.4817 | 0.4055 | 1.1317 | 2.1293 | 2.3524 | 0.9051 |
| 1.6 | 4.9530 | 0.4700 | 1.1724 | 2.3756 | 2.5775 | 0.9217 |
| 1.7 | 5.4739 | 0.5306 | 1.2094 | 2.6456 | 2.8283 | 0.9354 |
| 1.8 | 6.0496 | 0.5878 | 1.2432 | 2.9422 | 3.1075 | 0.9468 |
| 1.9 | 6.6859 | 0.6419 | 1.2739 | 3.2682 | 3.4177 | 0.9562 |
| 2.0 | 7.3891 | 0.6931 | 1.3018 | 3.6269 | 3.7622 | 0.9640 |
| 2.1 | 8.1662 | 0.7419 | 1.3271 | 4.0219 | 4.1443 | 0.9705 |
| 2.2 | 9.0250 | 0.7885 | 1.3501 | 4.4571 | 4.5679 | 0.9757 |
| 2.3 | 9.9742 | 0.8329 | 1.3709 | 4.9370 | 5.0372 | 0.9801 |
| 2.4 | 11.0232 | 0.8755 | 1.3899 | 5.4662 | 5.5569 | 0.9837 |
| 2.5 | 12.1825 | 0.9163 | 1.4070 | 6.0502 | 6.1323 | 0.9866 |
| 2.6 | 13.4637 | 0.9555 | 1.4225 | 6.6947 | 6.7690 | 0.9890 |
| 2.7 | 14.8797 | 0.9933 | 1.4366 | 7.4063 | 7.4735 | 0.9910 |

continued on next page

| <i>continued from previous page</i> | | | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------|---------|-----------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| x | e^x | $\ln x$ | $\operatorname{gd} x$ | $\sinh x$ | $\cosh x$ | $\tanh x$ |
| 2.8 | 16.4446 | 1.0296 | 1.4493 | 8.1919 | 8.2527 | 0.9926 |
| 2.9 | 18.1741 | 1.0647 | 1.4609 | 9.0596 | 9.1146 | 0.9940 |
| 3.0 | 20.0855 | 1.0986 | 1.4713 | 10.0179 | 10.0677 | 0.9951 |
| 3.1 | 22.1980 | 1.1314 | 1.4808 | 11.0765 | 11.1215 | 0.9959 |
| 3.2 | 24.5325 | 1.1632 | 1.4893 | 12.2459 | 12.2866 | 0.9967 |
| 3.3 | 27.1126 | 1.1939 | 1.4971 | 13.5379 | 13.5748 | 0.9973 |
| 3.4 | 29.9641 | 1.2238 | 1.5041 | 14.9654 | 14.9987 | 0.9978 |
| 3.5 | 33.1155 | 1.2528 | 1.5104 | 16.5426 | 16.5728 | 0.9982 |
| 3.6 | 36.5982 | 1.2809 | 1.5162 | 18.2855 | 18.3128 | 0.9985 |
| 3.7 | 40.4473 | 1.3083 | 1.5214 | 20.2113 | 20.2360 | 0.9988 |
| 3.8 | 44.7012 | 1.3350 | 1.5261 | 22.3394 | 22.3618 | 0.9990 |
| 3.9 | 49.4024 | 1.3610 | 1.5303 | 24.6911 | 24.7113 | 0.9992 |
| 4.0 | 54.5982 | 1.3863 | 1.5342 | 27.2899 | 27.3082 | 0.9993 |

6.10 ORTHOGONAL POLYNOMIALS

Orthogonal polynomials are classes of polynomials, $\{p_n(x)\}$, which obey an orthogonality relationship of the form

$$\int_I w(x) p_n(x) p_m(x) dx = c_n \delta_{nm} \quad (6.10.1)$$

for a given *weight function* $w(x)$ and interval I .

6.10.1 HERMITE POLYNOMIALS

Symbol: $H_n(x)$.

Interval: $(-\infty, \infty)$.

Differential equation: $y'' - 2xy' + 2ny = 0$.

Explicit expression: $H_n(x) = \sum_{m=0}^{\lfloor n/2 \rfloor} \frac{(-1)^m n! (2x)^{n-2m}}{m!(n-2m)!}$.

Recurrence relation: $H_{n+1}(x) = 2xH_n(x) - 2nH_{n-1}(x)$.

Weight: e^{-x^2} .

Standardization: $H_n(x) = 2^n x^n + \dots$

Norm: $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-x^2} [H_n(x)]^2 dx = 2^n n! \sqrt{\pi}$.

Rodrigues' formula: $H_n(x) = (-1)^n e^{x^2} \frac{d^n}{dx^n} (e^{-x^2})$.

Generating function: $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} H_n(x) \frac{z^n}{n!} = e^{-z^2 + 2zx}$.

Inequality: $|H_n(x)| < \sqrt{2^n e^{x^2} n!}$.

6.10.2 JACOBI POLYNOMIALS

Symbol: $P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x)$.

Interval: $[-1, 1]$.

Differential equation: $(1-x^2)y'' + [\beta - \alpha - (\alpha + \beta + 2)x]y' + n(n + \alpha + \beta + 1)y = 0$.

Explicit expression:

$$P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x) = \frac{1}{2^n} \sum_{m=0}^n \binom{n+\alpha}{m} \binom{n+\beta}{n-m} (x-1)^{n-m} (x+1)^m.$$

Recurrence relation: $2(n+1)(n+\alpha+\beta+1)(2n+\alpha+\beta)P_{n+1}^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x)$
 $= (2n+\alpha+\beta+1)[(\alpha^2-\beta^2) + (2n+\alpha+\beta+2)(2n+\alpha+\beta)x]P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x)$
 $- 2(n+\alpha)(n+\beta)(2n+\alpha+\beta+2)P_{n-1}^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x)$.

Weight: $(1-x)^\alpha(1+x)^\beta$.

Standardization: $P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(1) = \binom{n+\alpha}{n}$.

Norm: $\int_{-1}^1 (1-x)^\alpha(1+x)^\beta [P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x)]^2 dx = \frac{2^{\alpha+\beta+1}\Gamma(n+\alpha+1)\Gamma(n+\beta+1)}{(2n+\alpha+\beta+1)n!\Gamma(n+\alpha+\beta+1)}$.

Rodrigues' formula: $P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x) = \frac{(-1)^n}{2^n n! (1-x)^\alpha (1+x)^\beta} \frac{d^n}{dx^n} [(1-x)^{n+\alpha} (1+x)^{n+\beta}]$.

Generating function: $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x)z^n = 2^{\alpha+\beta} R^{-1} (1-z+R)^{-\alpha} (1+z+R)^{-\beta}$,

where $R = \sqrt{1-2xz+z^2}$ and $|z| < 1$.

Inequality: $\max_{-1 \leq x \leq 1} |P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x)| = \begin{cases} \binom{n+q}{n} \sim n^q, & \text{if } q = \max(\alpha, \beta) \geq -\frac{1}{2}, \\ |P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x')| \sim n^{-1/2}, & \text{if } q = \max(\alpha, \beta) < -\frac{1}{2}, \end{cases}$

where $\alpha, \beta > -1$ and x' (in the second result) is one of the two maximum points nearest $(\beta - \alpha)/(\alpha + \beta + 1)$.

6.10.3 LAGUERRE POLYNOMIALS

Symbol: $L_n(x)$.

Interval: $[0, \infty)$.

$L_n(x)$ is the same as $L_n^{(0)}(x)$ (see the generalized Laguerre polynomials).

6.10.4 GENERALIZED LAGUERRE POLYNOMIALS

Symbol: $L_n^{(\alpha)}(x)$.

Interval: $[0, \infty)$.

Differential equation: $xy'' + (\alpha + 1 - x)y' + ny = 0$.

Explicit expression: $L_n^{(\alpha)}(x) = \sum_{m=0}^n \frac{(-1)^m}{m!} \binom{n+\alpha}{n-m} x^m$.

Recurrence relation:

$$(n + 1)L_{n+1}^{(\alpha)}(x) = [(2n + \alpha + 1) - x]L_n^{(\alpha)}(x) - (n + \alpha)L_{n-1}^{(\alpha)}(x).$$

Weight: $x^\alpha e^{-x}$.

Standardization: $L_n^{(\alpha)}(x) = \frac{(-1)^n}{n!} x^n + \dots$

Norm: $\int_0^\infty x^\alpha e^{-x} [L_n^{(\alpha)}(x)]^2 dx = \frac{\Gamma(n + \alpha + 1)}{n!}$.

Rodrigues' formula: $L_n^{(\alpha)}(x) = \frac{1}{n! x^\alpha e^{-x}} \frac{d^n}{dx^n} [x^{n+\alpha} e^{-x}]$.

Generating function: $\sum_{n=0}^\infty L_n^{(\alpha)}(x) z^n = (1 - z)^{-\alpha-1} \exp\left(\frac{xz}{z-1}\right)$.

Inequality: $|L_n^{(\alpha)}(x)| \leq \begin{cases} \frac{\Gamma(n+\alpha+1)}{n!\Gamma(\alpha+1)} e^{x/2}, & \text{if } x \geq 0 \text{ and } \alpha > 0, \\ \left[2 - \frac{\Gamma(n+\alpha+1)}{n!\Gamma(\alpha+1)}\right] e^{x/2}, & \text{if } x \geq 0 \text{ and } -1 < \alpha < 0. \end{cases}$

Note that $\alpha > -1$ and $L_n^{(m)}(x) = (-1)^m \frac{d^m}{dx^m} [L_{n+m}(x)]$.

6.10.5 LEGENDRE POLYNOMIALS

Symbol: $P_n(x)$.

Interval: $[-1, 1]$.

Differential equation: $(1 - x^2)y'' - 2xy' + n(n + 1)y = 0$.

Explicit expression: $P_n(x) = \frac{1}{2^n} \sum_{m=0}^{\lfloor n/2 \rfloor} (-1)^m \binom{n}{m} \binom{2n - 2m}{n} x^{n-2m}$.

Recurrence relation: $(n + 1)P_{n+1}(x) = (2n + 1)xP_n(x) - nP_{n-1}(x)$.

Weight: 1.

Standardization: $P_n(1) = 1$.

Norm: $\int_{-1}^1 [P_n(x)]^2 dx = \frac{2}{2n + 1}$.

Rodrigues' formula: $P_n(x) = \frac{(-1)^n}{2^n n!} \frac{d^n}{dx^n} [(1 - x^2)^n]$.

Generating function: $\sum_{n=0}^\infty P_n(x) z^n = (1 - 2xz + z^2)^{-1/2}$,
for $-1 < x < 1$ and $|z| < 1$.

Inequality: $|P_n(x)| \leq 1$ for $-1 \leq x \leq 1$.

See Section 6.18.7 on page 556.

6.10.6 CHEBYSHEV POLYNOMIALS, FIRST KIND

Symbol: $T_n(x)$.

Interval: $[-1, 1]$.

Differential equation: $(1 - x^2)y'' - xy' + n^2y = 0$.

Explicit expression: $T_n(x) = \cos(n \cos^{-1} x) = \frac{n}{2} \sum_{m=0}^{\lfloor n/2 \rfloor} (-1)^m \frac{(n - m - 1)!}{m!(n - 2m)!} (2x)^{n-2m}$.

Recurrence relation: $T_{n+1}(x) = 2xT_n(x) - T_{n-1}(x)$.

Weight: $(1 - x^2)^{-1/2}$.

Standardization: $T_n(1) = 1$.

$$\text{Norm: } \int_{-1}^1 (1 - x^2)^{-1/2} [T_n(x)]^2 dx = \begin{cases} \pi, & n = 0, \\ \pi/2, & n \neq 0. \end{cases}$$

$$\text{Rodrigues' formula: } T_n(x) = \frac{\sqrt{\pi(1-x^2)}}{(-2)^n \Gamma(n + \frac{1}{2})} \frac{d^n}{dx^n} [(1-x^2)^{n-1/2}].$$

$$\text{Generating function: } \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} T_n(x)z^n = \frac{1-xz}{1-2xz+z^2}, \text{ for } -1 < x < 1 \text{ and } |z| < 1.$$

Inequality: $|T_n(x)| \leq 1$, for $-1 \leq x \leq 1$.

Note that $T_n(x) = \frac{n! \sqrt{\pi}}{\Gamma(n + \frac{1}{2})} P_n^{(-1/2, -1/2)}(x)$.

6.10.7 CHEBYSHEV POLYNOMIALS, SECOND KIND

Symbol: $U_n(x)$.

Interval: $[-1, 1]$.

Differential equation: $(1 - x^2)y'' - 3xy' + n(n + 2)y = 0$.

$$\text{Explicit expression: } U_n(x) = \sum_{m=0}^{\lfloor n/2 \rfloor} \frac{(-1)^m (m - n)!}{m!(n - 2m)!} (2x)^{n-2m}$$

$$U_n(\cos \theta) = \frac{\sin[(n + 1)\theta]}{\sin \theta}.$$

Recurrence relation: $U_{n+1}(x) = 2xU_n(x) - U_{n-1}(x)$.

Weight: $(1 - x^2)^{1/2}$.

Standardization: $U_n(1) = n + 1$.

$$\text{Norm: } \int_{-1}^1 (1 - x^2)^{1/2} [U_n(x)]^2 dx = \frac{\pi}{2}.$$

$$\text{Rodrigues' formula: } U_n(x) = \frac{(-1)^n (n + 1) \sqrt{\pi}}{(1 - x^2)^{1/2} 2^{n+1} \Gamma(n + \frac{3}{2})} \frac{d^n}{dx^n} [(1 - x^2)^{n+(1/2)}].$$

$$\text{Generating function: } \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} U_n(x)z^n = \frac{1}{1 - 2xz + z^2}, \text{ for } -1 < x < 1 \text{ and } |z| < 1.$$

Inequality: $|U_n(x)| \leq n + 1$, for $-1 \leq x \leq 1$.

Note that $U_n(x) = \frac{(n+1)! \sqrt{\pi}}{2\Gamma(n + \frac{3}{2})} P_n^{(1/2, 1/2)}(x)$.

6.10.8 TABLES OF ORTHOGONAL POLYNOMIALS

$$H_0 = 1 \quad x^{10} = (30240H_0 + 75600H_2 + 25200H_4 + 2520H_6 + 90H_8 + H_{10})/1024$$

$$H_1 = 2x \quad x^9 = (15120H_1 + 10080H_3 + 1512H_5 + 72H_7 + H_9)/512$$

$$H_2 = 4x^2 - 2 \quad x^8 = (1680H_0 + 3360H_2 + 840H_4 + 56H_6 + H_8)/256$$

$$H_3 = 8x^3 - 12x \quad x^7 = (840H_1 + 420H_3 + 42H_5 + H_7)/128$$

$$\begin{aligned}
H_4 &= 16x^4 - 48x^2 + 12 & x^6 &= (120H_0 + 180H_2 + 30H_4 + H_6)/64 \\
H_5 &= 32x^5 - 160x^3 + 120x & x^5 &= (60H_1 + 20H_3 + H_5)/32 \\
H_6 &= 64x^6 - 480x^4 + 720x^2 - 120 & x^4 &= (12H_0 + 12H_2 + H_4)/16 \\
H_7 &= 128x^7 - 1344x^5 + 3360x^3 - 1680x & x^3 &= (6H_1 + H_3)/8 \\
H_8 &= 256x^8 - 3584x^6 + 13440x^4 - 13440x^2 + 1680 & x^2 &= (2H_0 + H_2)/4 \\
H_9 &= 512x^9 - 9216x^7 + 48384x^5 - 80640x^3 + 30240x & x &= (H_1)/2 \\
H_{10} &= 1024x^{10} - 23040x^8 + 161280x^6 - 403200x^4 + 302400x^2 - 30240 & 1 &= H_0
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
L_0 &= 1 & x^6 &= 720L_0 - 4320L_1 + 10800L_2 - 14400L_3 + 10800L_4 - 4320L_5 + 720L_6 \\
L_1 &= -x + 1 & x^5 &= 120L_0 - 600L_1 + 1200L_2 - 1200L_3 + 600L_4 - 120L_5 \\
L_2 &= (x^2 - 4x + 2)/2 & x^4 &= 24L_0 - 96L_1 + 144L_2 - 96L_3 + 24L_4 \\
L_3 &= (-x^3 + 9x^2 - 18x + 6)/6 & x^3 &= 6L_0 - 18L_1 + 18L_2 - 6L_3 \\
L_4 &= (x^4 - 16x^3 + 72x^2 - 96x + 24)/24 & x^2 &= 2L_0 - 4L_1 + 2L_2 \\
L_5 &= (-x^5 + 25x^4 - 200x^3 + 600x^2 - 600x + 120)/120 & x &= L_0 - L_1 \\
L_6 &= (x^6 - 36x^5 + 450x^4 - 2400x^3 + 5400x^2 - 4320x + 720)/720 & 1 &= L_0
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
P_0 &= 1 & x^{10} &= (4199P_0 + 16150P_2 + 15504P_4 + 7904P_6 + 2176P_8 + 256P_{10})/46189 \\
P_1 &= x & x^9 &= (3315P_1 + 4760P_3 + 2992P_5 + 960P_7 + 128P_9)/12155 \\
P_2 &= (3x^2 - 1)/2 & x^8 &= (715P_0 + 2600P_2 + 2160P_4 + 832P_6 + 128P_8)/6435 \\
P_3 &= (5x^3 - 3x)/2 & x^7 &= (143P_1 + 182P_3 + 88P_5 + 16P_7)/429 \\
P_4 &= (35x^4 - 30x^2 + 3)/8 & x^6 &= (33P_0 + 110P_2 + 72P_4 + 16P_6)/231 \\
P_5 &= (63x^5 - 70x^3 + 15x)/8 & x^5 &= (27P_1 + 28P_3 + 8P_5)/63 \\
P_6 &= (231x^6 - 315x^4 + 105x^2 - 5)/16 & x^4 &= (7P_0 + 20P_2 + 8P_4)/35 \\
P_7 &= (429x^7 - 693x^5 + 315x^3 - 35x)/16 & x^3 &= (3P_1 + 2P_3)/5 \\
P_8 &= (6435x^8 - 12012x^6 + 6930x^4 - 1260x^2 + 35)/128 & x^2 &= (P_0 + 2P_2)/3 \\
P_9 &= (12155x^9 - 25740x^7 + 18018x^5 - 4620x^3 + 315x)/128 & x &= P_1 \\
P_{10} &= (46189x^{10} - 109395x^8 + 90090x^6 - 30030x^4 + 3465x^2 - 63)/256 & 1 &= P_0
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
T_0 &= 1 & x^{10} &= (126T_0 + 210T_2 + 120T_4 + 45T_6 + 10T_8 + T_{10})/512 \\
T_1 &= x & x^9 &= (126T_1 + 84T_3 + 36T_5 + 9T_7 + T_9)/256 \\
T_2 &= 2x^2 - 1 & x^8 &= (35T_0 + 56T_2 + 28T_4 + 8T_6 + T_8)/128 \\
T_3 &= 4x^3 - 3x & x^7 &= (35T_1 + 21T_3 + 7T_5 + T_7)/64 \\
T_4 &= 8x^4 - 8x^2 + 1 & x^6 &= (10T_0 + 15T_2 + 6T_4 + T_6)/32 \\
T_5 &= 16x^5 - 20x^3 + 5x & x^5 &= (10T_1 + 5T_3 + T_5)/16 \\
T_6 &= 32x^6 - 48x^4 + 18x^2 - 1 & x^4 &= (3T_0 + 4T_2 + T_4)/8 \\
T_7 &= 64x^7 - 112x^5 + 56x^3 - 7x & x^3 &= (3T_1 + T_3)/4 \\
T_8 &= 128x^8 - 256x^6 + 160x^4 - 32x^2 + 1 & x^2 &= (T_0 + T_2)/2 \\
T_9 &= 256x^9 - 576x^7 + 432x^5 - 120x^3 + 9x & x &= T_1 \\
T_{10} &= 512x^{10} - 1280x^8 + 1120x^6 - 400x^4 + 50x^2 - 1 & 1 &= T_0
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
U_0 &= 1 & x^{10} &= (42U_0 + 90U_2 + 75U_4 + 35U_6 + 9U_8 + U_{10})/1024 \\
U_1 &= 2x & x^9 &= (42U_1 + 48U_3 + 27U_5 + 8U_7 + U_9)/512 \\
U_2 &= 4x^2 - 1 & x^8 &= (14U_0 + 28U_2 + 20U_4 + 7U_6 + U_8)/256 \\
U_3 &= 8x^3 - 4x & x^7 &= (14U_1 + 14U_3 + 6U_5 + U_7)/128 \\
U_4 &= 16x^4 - 12x^2 + 1 & x^6 &= (5U_0 + 9U_2 + 5U_4 + U_6)/64 \\
U_5 &= 32x^5 - 32x^3 + 6x & x^5 &= (5U_1 + 4U_3 + U_5)/32 \\
U_6 &= 64x^6 - 80x^4 + 24x^2 - 1 & x^4 &= (2U_0 + 3U_2 + U_4)/16 \\
U_7 &= 128x^7 - 192x^5 + 80x^3 - 8x & x^3 &= (2U_1 + U_3)/8 \\
U_8 &= 256x^8 - 448x^6 + 240x^4 - 40x^2 + 1 & x^2 &= (U_0 + U_2)/4 \\
U_9 &= 512x^9 - 1024x^7 + 672x^5 - 160x^3 + 10x & x &= (U_1)/2 \\
U_{10} &= 1024x^{10} - 2304x^8 + 1792x^6 - 560x^4 + 60x^2 - 1 & 1 &= U_0
\end{aligned}$$

6.10.8.1 Table of Jacobi polynomials

Notation: $(m)_n = m(m+1)\dots(m+n-1)$.

$$P_0^{(\alpha,\beta)}(x) = 1.$$

$$P_1^{(\alpha,\beta)}(x) = \frac{1}{2} \left(2(\alpha+1) + (\alpha+\beta+2)(x-1) \right).$$

$$P_2^{(\alpha,\beta)}(x) = \frac{1}{8} \left(4(\alpha+1)_2 + 4(\alpha+\beta+3)(\alpha+2)(x-1) + (\alpha+\beta+3)_2(x-1)^2 \right).$$

$$P_3^{(\alpha,\beta)}(x) = \frac{1}{48} \left(8(\alpha+1)_3 + 12(\alpha+\beta+4)(\alpha+2)_2(x-1) + 6(\alpha+\beta+4)_2(\alpha+3)(x-1)^2 + (\alpha+\beta+4)_3(x-1)^3 \right).$$

$$P_4^{(\alpha,\beta)}(x) = \frac{1}{384} \left(16(\alpha+1)_4 + 32(\alpha+\beta+5)(\alpha+2)_3(x-1) + 24(\alpha+\beta+5)_2(\alpha+3)_2(x-1)^2 + 8(\alpha+\beta+5)_3(\alpha+4)(x-1)^3 + (\alpha+\beta+5)_4(x-1)^4 \right).$$

6.10.9 ZERNIKE POLYNOMIALS

The *circle polynomials* or *Zernike polynomials* form a complete orthogonal set over the interior of the unit circle. They are given by

$$U_n^m(r, \theta) = R_n^m(r) e^{im\theta} \tag{6.10.2}$$

where $R_n^m(r)$ are *radial polynomials* (see below), n and m are integers with $n - |m|$ even and $0 \leq |m| \leq n$.

6.10.9.1 Properties

1. Orthogonality

$$\int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^1 \overline{U_n^m(r, \theta)} U_{n'}^{m'}(r, \theta) r dr d\theta = \frac{\pi}{n+1} \delta_{nn'} \delta_{mm'} \tag{6.10.3}$$

$$\int_0^1 R_n^m(r) R_{n'}^m(r) r dr = \frac{1}{2(n+1)} \delta_{nn'}.$$

2. Explicit formula for the radial polynomials

$$R_n^{\pm m}(r) = \frac{1}{\left(\frac{n-|m|}{2}\right)! r^{|m|}} \left\{ \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial(r^2)} \right)^{\frac{n-|m|}{2}} \left[(r^2)^{\frac{n+|m|}{2}} (r^2-1)^{\frac{n-|m|}{2}} \right] \right\}$$

$$= \sum_{s=0}^{\frac{n-|m|}{2}} \frac{(-1)^s (n-s)!}{s! \left(\frac{n+|m|}{2} - s\right)! \left(\frac{n-|m|}{2} - s\right)!} r^{n-2s}. \tag{6.10.4}$$

3. Expansions in Zernike polynomials

(a) If $f(r, \theta)$ is a piecewise continuous function then

$$f(r, \theta) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \sum_{m=-n}^n A_n^m U_n^m(r, \theta) \quad \text{where } n - |m| \text{ is even.} \quad (6.10.5)$$

$$A_n^m = \overline{A_n^{-m}} = \frac{n+1}{\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^1 \overline{U_n^m(r, \theta)} f(r, \theta) r dr d\theta.$$

(b) If $f(r, \theta)$ is a real piecewise continuous function then

$$f(r, \theta) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \sum_{m=0}^n [C_n^m \cos(m\theta) + S_n^m \sin(m\theta)] R_n^m(r)$$

where $n - |m|$ is even. (6.10.6)

$$\begin{bmatrix} C_n^m \\ S_n^m \end{bmatrix} = \frac{\epsilon_m (n+1)}{\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^1 f(r, \theta) R_n^m(r) \begin{bmatrix} \cos(m\theta) \\ \sin(m\theta) \end{bmatrix} r dr d\theta$$

where $\epsilon_m = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } m = 0 \\ 2 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$

6.10.9.2 Tables of Zernike polynomials

| n | $m = 0$ | 2 | 4 |
|-----|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 0 | 1 | | |
| 2 | $2r^2 - 1$ | r^2 | |
| 4 | $6r^4 - 6r^2 + 1$ | $4r^4 - 3r^2$ | r^4 |
| 6 | $20r^6 - 30r^4 + 12r^2 - 1$ | $15r^6 - 20r^4 + 6r^2$ | $6r^6 - 5r^4$ |
| 8 | $70r^8 - 140r^6 + 90r^4 - 20r^2 + 1$ | $56r^8 - 105r^6 + 60r^4 - 10r^2$ | $28r^8 - 42r^6 + 15r^4$ |

| n | $m = 1$ | 3 | 5 |
|-----|---|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 | r | | |
| 3 | $3r^3 - 2r$ | r^3 | |
| 5 | $10r^5 - 12r^3 + 3r$ | $5r^5 - 4r^3$ | r^5 |
| 7 | $35r^7 - 60r^5 + 30r^3 - 4r$ | $21r^7 - 30r^5 + 10r^3$ | $7r^7 - 6r^5$ |
| 9 | $126r^9 - 280r^7 + 210r^5 - 60r^3 + 5r$ | $84r^9 - 168r^7 + 105r^5 - 20r^3$ | $36r^9 - 56r^7 + 21r^5$ |

6.10.10 SPHERICAL HARMONICS

The *spherical harmonics* are defined by

$$Y_{lm}(\theta, \phi) = \sqrt{\frac{2l+1}{4\pi} \frac{(l-m)!}{(l+m)!}} P_l^m(\cos \theta) e^{im\phi} \quad (6.10.7)$$

for l an integer and $m = -l, -l + 1, \dots, l - 1, l$. They satisfy

$$\begin{aligned}
 Y_{l,-m}(\theta, \phi) &= (-1)^m \overline{Y_{l,m}(\theta, \phi)}, \\
 Y_{l0}(\theta, \phi) &= \sqrt{\frac{2l+1}{4\pi}} P_l(\cos \theta), \\
 Y_{lm}\left(\frac{\pi}{2}, \phi\right) &= \begin{cases} \sqrt{\frac{(2l+1)(l-m)!(l+m)!}{4\pi}} \frac{(-1)^{(l+m)/2} e^{im\phi}}{2^l \left(\frac{l-m}{2}\right)! \left(\frac{l+m}{2}\right)!}, & \frac{l+m}{2} \text{ integral,} \\ 0, & \frac{l+m}{2} \text{ not integral.} \end{cases}
 \end{aligned} \tag{6.10.8}$$

The normalization and orthogonality conditions are

$$\int_0^{2\pi} d\phi \int_0^\pi \sin \theta d\theta \overline{Y_{l'm'}(\theta, \phi)} Y_{lm}(\theta, \phi) = \delta_{ll'} \delta_{mm'}, \tag{6.10.9}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}
 &\int_0^{2\pi} d\phi \int_0^\pi \sin \theta d\theta \overline{Y_{l_1 m_2}(\theta, \phi)} Y_{l_2 m_2}(\theta, \phi) Y_{l_3 m_3}(\theta, \phi), \\
 &= \sqrt{\frac{(2l_2+1)(2l_3+1)}{4\pi(2l_1+1)}} \begin{pmatrix} l_1 & l_3 & | & l_1 \\ m_2 & m_3 & | & m_1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} l_1 & l_3 & | & l_1 \\ 0 & 0 & | & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{6.10.10}
 \end{aligned}$$

where the terms on the right hand side are Clebsch–Gordan coefficients (see page 574).

Because of the (distributional) completeness relation,

$$\sum_{l=0}^{\infty} \sum_{m=-l}^l Y_{lm}(\theta, \phi) \overline{Y_{lm}(\theta', \phi')} = \delta(\phi - \phi') \delta(\cos \theta - \cos \theta'), \tag{6.10.11}$$

an arbitrary function $g(\theta, \phi)$ can be expanded in spherical harmonics as

$$g(\theta, \phi) = \sum_{l=0}^{\infty} \sum_{m=-l}^l A_{lm} Y_{lm}(\theta, \phi), \quad A_{lm} = \int \overline{Y_{lm}(\theta, \phi)} g(\theta, \phi) d\Omega. \tag{6.10.12}$$

In spherical coordinates,

$$\nabla^2 [f(r) Y_{lm}(\theta, \phi)] = \left[\frac{1}{r^2} \frac{d}{dr} \left(r^2 \frac{df}{dr} \right) - l(l+1) \frac{f(r)}{r^2} \right] Y_{lm}(\theta, \phi). \tag{6.10.13}$$

6.10.10.1 Table of spherical harmonics

$$\begin{aligned}l = 0 & \quad Y_{00} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{4\pi}}. \\l = 1 & \quad \begin{cases} Y_{11} = -\sqrt{\frac{3}{8\pi}} \sin \theta e^{i\phi}, \\ Y_{10} = \sqrt{\frac{3}{4\pi}} \cos \theta. \end{cases} \\l = 2 & \quad \begin{cases} Y_{22} = \frac{1}{4} \sqrt{\frac{15}{2\pi}} \sin^2 \theta e^{2i\phi}, \\ Y_{21} = -\sqrt{\frac{15}{8\pi}} \sin \theta \cos \theta e^{i\phi}, \\ Y_{20} = \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{5}{4\pi}} (3 \cos^2 \theta - 1). \end{cases} \\l = 3 & \quad \begin{cases} Y_{33} = -\frac{1}{4} \sqrt{\frac{35}{4\pi}} \sin^3 \theta e^{3i\phi}, \\ Y_{32} = \frac{1}{4} \sqrt{\frac{105}{2\pi}} \sin^2 \theta \cos \theta e^{2i\phi}, \\ Y_{31} = -\frac{1}{4} \sqrt{\frac{21}{4\pi}} \sin \theta (5 \cos^2 \theta - 1) e^{i\phi}, \\ Y_{30} = \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{7}{4\pi}} (5 \cos^3 \theta - 3 \cos \theta). \end{cases}\end{aligned}$$

6.11 GAMMA FUNCTION

$$\Gamma(z) = \int_0^\infty t^{z-1} e^{-t} dt, \quad z = x + iy, \quad x > 0.$$

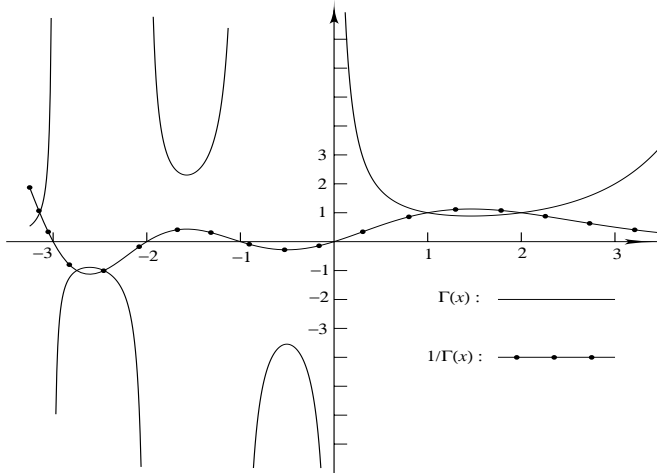
6.11.1 RECURSION FORMULA

$$\Gamma(z+1) = z \Gamma(z).$$

The relation $\Gamma(z) = \Gamma(z+1)/z$ can be used to extend the gamma function to the left half plane for all z except when z is a non-positive integer (i.e., $z \neq 0, -1, -2, \dots$).

FIGURE 6.6

Graphs of $\Gamma(x)$ and $1/\Gamma(x)$ for x real. (From Temme, N. M., *Special Functions: An Introduction to the Classical Functions of Mathematical Physics*, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1996. With permission.)



6.11.2 GAMMA FUNCTION OF SPECIAL VALUES

$$\Gamma(n+1) = n! \quad \text{if } n = 0, 1, 2, \dots, \text{ where } 0! = 1,$$

$$\Gamma(1) = 1, \quad \Gamma(2) = 1, \quad \Gamma(3) = 2, \quad \Gamma\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) = \sqrt{\pi},$$

$$\Gamma\left(m + \frac{1}{2}\right) = \frac{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdots (2m-1)}{2^m} \sqrt{\pi}, \quad m = 1, 2, 3, \dots,$$

$$\Gamma\left(-m + \frac{1}{2}\right) = \frac{(-1)^m 2^m}{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdots (2m-1)} \sqrt{\pi}, \quad m = 1, 2, 3, \dots$$

$$\Gamma\left(\frac{1}{4}\right) = 3.6256099082,$$

$$\Gamma\left(\frac{1}{3}\right) = 2.6789385347,$$

$$\Gamma\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) = \sqrt{\pi} = 1.7724538509,$$

$$\Gamma\left(\frac{2}{3}\right) = 1.3541179394,$$

$$\Gamma\left(\frac{3}{4}\right) = 1.2254167024,$$

$$\Gamma\left(\frac{3}{2}\right) = \sqrt{\pi}/2 = 0.8862269254.$$

6.11.3 PROPERTIES

1. Singular points:

The gamma function has simple poles at $z = -n$ (for $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$), with the respective residues $(-1)^n/n!$; that is,

$$\lim_{z \rightarrow -n} (z+n)\Gamma(z) = \frac{(-1)^n}{n!}.$$

2. Definition by products:

$$\Gamma(z) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{n! n^z}{z(z+1) \cdots (z+n)},$$

$$\frac{1}{\Gamma(z)} = z e^{\gamma z} \prod_{n=1}^{\infty} \left[(1 + z/n) e^{-z/n} \right], \quad \gamma \text{ is Euler's constant.}$$

3. Other integrals:

$$\Gamma(z) \cos \frac{\pi z}{2} = \int_0^{\infty} t^{z-1} \cos t \, dt, \quad 0 < \operatorname{Re} z < 1,$$

$$\Gamma(z) \sin \frac{\pi z}{2} = \int_0^{\infty} t^{z-1} \sin t \, dt, \quad -1 < \operatorname{Re} z < 1.$$

4. Derivative at $x = 1$:

$$\Gamma'(1) = \int_0^{\infty} \ln t e^{-t} \, dt = -\gamma.$$

5. Multiplication formula:

$$\Gamma(2z) = \pi^{-1/2} 2^{2z-1} \Gamma(z) \Gamma\left(z + \frac{1}{2}\right).$$

6. Reflection formulae:

$$\Gamma(z) \Gamma(1-z) = \frac{\pi}{\sin \pi z},$$

$$\Gamma\left(\frac{1}{2} + z\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{1}{2} - z\right) = \frac{\pi}{\cos \pi z},$$

$$\Gamma(z-n) = (-1)^n \Gamma(z) \frac{\Gamma(1-z)}{\Gamma(n+1-z)} = \frac{(-1)^n \pi}{\sin \pi z \Gamma(n+1-z)}.$$

6.11.4 ASYMPTOTIC EXPANSION

For $z \rightarrow \infty$, $|\arg z| < \pi$:

$$\Gamma(z) \sim \sqrt{\frac{2\pi}{z}} z^z e^{-z} \left[1 + \frac{1}{12z} + \frac{1}{288z^2} - \frac{139}{51840z^3} + \cdots \right],$$

$$\ln \Gamma(z) \sim \ln \left(\sqrt{\frac{2\pi}{z}} z^z e^{-z} \right) + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{B_{2n}}{2n(2n-1)} \frac{1}{z^{2n-1}} \quad (6.11.1)$$

$$\sim \ln \left(\sqrt{\frac{2\pi}{z}} z^z e^{-z} \right) + \frac{1}{12z} - \frac{1}{360z^3} + \frac{1}{1260z^5} - \frac{1}{1680z^7} + \cdots,$$

where B_n are the Bernoulli numbers. If we let $z = n$ a large positive integer, then a useful approximation for $n!$ is given by *Stirling's formula*,

$$\Gamma(n+1) = n! \sim \sqrt{2\pi n} n^n e^{-n}, \quad n \rightarrow \infty. \quad (6.11.2)$$

6.11.5 LOGARITHMIC DERIVATIVE OF THE GAMMA FUNCTION

1. Definition:

$$\psi(z) = \frac{d}{dz} \ln \Gamma(z) = -\gamma + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{n+1} - \frac{1}{z+n} \right), \quad z \neq 0, -1, -2, \dots$$

2. Special values:

$$\psi(1) = -\gamma, \quad \psi\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) = -\gamma - 2 \ln 2.$$

3. Asymptotic expansion:

For $z \rightarrow \infty$, $|\arg z| < \pi$:

$$\begin{aligned} \psi(z) &\sim \ln z - \frac{1}{2z} - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{B_{2n}}{2nz^{2n}} \\ &\sim \ln z - \frac{1}{2z} - \frac{1}{12z^2} + \frac{1}{120z^4} - \frac{1}{252z^6} + \dots \end{aligned}$$

6.11.6 NUMERICAL VALUES

| x | $\Gamma(x)$ | $\ln \Gamma(x)$ | $\psi(x)$ | $\psi'(x)$ |
|------|-------------|-----------------|-------------|------------|
| 1.00 | 1.00000000 | 0.00000000 | -0.57721566 | 1.64493407 |
| 1.04 | 0.97843820 | -0.02179765 | -0.51327488 | 1.55371164 |
| 1.08 | 0.95972531 | -0.04110817 | -0.45279934 | 1.47145216 |
| 1.12 | 0.94359019 | -0.05806333 | -0.39545533 | 1.39695222 |
| 1.16 | 0.92980307 | -0.07278247 | -0.34095315 | 1.32920818 |
| 1.20 | 0.91816874 | -0.08537409 | -0.28903990 | 1.26737721 |
| 1.24 | 0.90852106 | -0.09593721 | -0.23949368 | 1.21074707 |
| 1.28 | 0.90071848 | -0.10456253 | -0.19211890 | 1.15871230 |
| 1.32 | 0.89464046 | -0.11133336 | -0.14674236 | 1.11075532 |
| 1.36 | 0.89018453 | -0.11632650 | -0.10321006 | 1.06643142 |
| 1.40 | 0.88726382 | -0.11961291 | -0.06138454 | 1.02535659 |
| 1.44 | 0.88580506 | -0.12125837 | -0.02114267 | 0.98719773 |
| 1.48 | 0.88574696 | -0.12132396 | 0.01762627 | 0.95166466 |
| 1.52 | 0.88703878 | -0.11986657 | 0.05502211 | 0.91850353 |
| 1.56 | 0.88963920 | -0.11693929 | 0.09113519 | 0.88749142 |
| 1.60 | 0.89351535 | -0.11259177 | 0.12604745 | 0.85843189 |
| 1.64 | 0.89864203 | -0.10687051 | 0.15983345 | 0.83115118 |
| 1.68 | 0.90500103 | -0.09981920 | 0.19256120 | 0.80549511 |
| 1.72 | 0.91258058 | -0.09147889 | 0.22429289 | 0.78132645 |

| x | $\Gamma(x)$ | $\ln \Gamma(x)$ | $\psi(x)$ | $\psi'(x)$ |
|------|-------------|-----------------|------------|------------|
| 1.76 | 0.92137488 | -0.08188828 | 0.25508551 | 0.75852269 |
| 1.80 | 0.93138377 | -0.07108387 | 0.28499143 | 0.73697414 |
| 1.84 | 0.94261236 | -0.05910015 | 0.31405886 | 0.71658233 |
| 1.88 | 0.95507085 | -0.04596975 | 0.34233226 | 0.69725865 |
| 1.92 | 0.96877431 | -0.03172361 | 0.36985272 | 0.67892313 |
| 1.96 | 0.98374254 | -0.01639106 | 0.39665832 | 0.66150345 |
| 2.00 | 1.00000000 | 0.00000000 | 0.42278434 | 0.64493407 |

6.12 BETA FUNCTION

$$B(p, q) = \int_0^1 t^{p-1} (1-t)^{q-1} dt, \quad \operatorname{Re} p > 0, \quad \operatorname{Re} q > 0. \quad (6.12.1)$$

1. Relations:

$$B(p, q) = B(q, p),$$

$$B(p, q+1) = \frac{q}{p} B(p+1, q) = \frac{q}{p+q} B(p, q),$$

$$B(p, q) B(p+q, r) = \frac{\Gamma(p) \Gamma(q) \Gamma(r)}{\Gamma(p+q+r)}.$$

2. Relation with the gamma function:

$$B(p, q) = \frac{\Gamma(p) \Gamma(q)}{\Gamma(p+q)}.$$

3. Other integrals (in all cases $\operatorname{Re} p > 0$ and $\operatorname{Re} q > 0$):

$$\begin{aligned} B(p, q) &= 2 \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2p-1} \theta \cos^{2q-1} \theta d\theta \\ &= \int_0^\infty \frac{t^{p-1}}{(t+1)^{p+q}} dt \\ &= \int_0^\infty e^{-pt} (1-e^{-t})^{q-1} dt \\ &= r^q (r+1)^p \int_0^1 \frac{t^{p-1} (1-t)^{q-1}}{(r+t)^{p+q}} dt, \quad r > 0. \end{aligned}$$

6.12.1 NUMERICAL VALUES OF THE BETA FUNCTION

| p | $q = 0.100$ | 0.200 | 0.300 | 0.400 | 0.500 | 0.600 | 0.700 | 0.800 | 0.900 | 1.000 |
|-----|-------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 0.1 | 19.715 | 14.599 | 12.831 | 11.906 | 11.323 | 10.914 | 10.607 | 10.365 | 10.166 | 10.000 |
| 0.2 | 14.599 | 9.502 | 7.748 | 6.838 | 6.269 | 5.872 | 5.576 | 5.345 | 5.157 | 5.000 |
| 0.3 | 12.831 | 7.748 | 6.010 | 5.112 | 4.554 | 4.169 | 3.883 | 3.661 | 3.482 | 3.333 |
| 0.4 | 11.906 | 6.838 | 5.112 | 4.226 | 3.679 | 3.303 | 3.027 | 2.813 | 2.641 | 2.500 |
| 0.5 | 11.323 | 6.269 | 4.554 | 3.679 | 3.142 | 2.775 | 2.506 | 2.299 | 2.135 | 2.000 |
| 0.6 | 10.914 | 5.872 | 4.169 | 3.303 | 2.775 | 2.415 | 2.154 | 1.954 | 1.796 | 1.667 |
| 0.7 | 10.607 | 5.576 | 3.883 | 3.027 | 2.506 | 2.154 | 1.899 | 1.705 | 1.552 | 1.429 |
| 0.8 | 10.365 | 5.345 | 3.661 | 2.813 | 2.299 | 1.954 | 1.705 | 1.517 | 1.369 | 1.250 |
| 0.9 | 10.166 | 5.157 | 3.482 | 2.641 | 2.135 | 1.796 | 1.552 | 1.369 | 1.226 | 1.111 |
| 1.0 | 10.000 | 5.000 | 3.333 | 2.500 | 2.000 | 1.667 | 1.429 | 1.250 | 1.111 | 1.000 |
| 1.2 | 9.733 | 4.751 | 3.099 | 2.279 | 1.791 | 1.468 | 1.239 | 1.069 | 0.938 | 0.833 |
| 1.4 | 9.525 | 4.559 | 2.921 | 2.113 | 1.635 | 1.321 | 1.101 | 0.938 | 0.813 | 0.714 |
| 1.6 | 9.355 | 4.404 | 2.779 | 1.982 | 1.513 | 1.208 | 0.994 | 0.837 | 0.718 | 0.625 |
| 1.8 | 9.213 | 4.276 | 2.663 | 1.875 | 1.415 | 1.117 | 0.909 | 0.758 | 0.644 | 0.556 |
| 2.0 | 9.091 | 4.167 | 2.564 | 1.786 | 1.333 | 1.042 | 0.840 | 0.694 | 0.585 | 0.500 |
| 2.2 | 8.984 | 4.072 | 2.480 | 1.710 | 1.264 | 0.979 | 0.783 | 0.641 | 0.536 | 0.455 |
| 2.4 | 8.890 | 3.989 | 2.406 | 1.644 | 1.205 | 0.925 | 0.734 | 0.597 | 0.495 | 0.417 |
| 2.6 | 8.805 | 3.915 | 2.340 | 1.586 | 1.153 | 0.878 | 0.692 | 0.558 | 0.460 | 0.385 |
| 2.8 | 8.728 | 3.848 | 2.282 | 1.534 | 1.107 | 0.837 | 0.655 | 0.525 | 0.430 | 0.357 |
| 3.0 | 8.658 | 3.788 | 2.230 | 1.488 | 1.067 | 0.801 | 0.622 | 0.496 | 0.403 | 0.333 |

6.13 ERROR FUNCTIONS

$$\operatorname{erf} x = \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} \int_0^x e^{-t^2} dt,$$

$$\operatorname{erfc} x = \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} \int_x^\infty e^{-t^2} dt.$$

The function $\operatorname{erf} x$ is known as the *error function*. The function $\operatorname{erfc} x$ is known as the *complementary error function*.

6.13.1 PROPERTIES

1. Relationships:

$$\operatorname{erf} x + \operatorname{erfc} x = 1, \quad \operatorname{erf}(-x) = -\operatorname{erf} x, \quad \operatorname{erfc}(-x) = 2 - \operatorname{erfc} x.$$

2. Relationship with normal probability function:

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_0^x e^{-\frac{1}{2}t^2} dt = \frac{1}{2} \operatorname{erf} \left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{2}} \right).$$

6.13.2 ERROR FUNCTION OF SPECIAL VALUES

$$\begin{aligned}\operatorname{erf}(\pm\infty) &= \pm 1, & \operatorname{erfc}(-\infty) &= 2, & \operatorname{erfc} \infty &= 0, \\ \operatorname{erf} x_0 &= \operatorname{erfc} x_0 = \frac{1}{2} & \text{if } x_0 &\approx 0.476936.\end{aligned}$$

6.13.3 EXPANSIONS

1. Series expansions:

$$\begin{aligned}\operatorname{erf} x &= \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)n!} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} \left(x - \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{1}{2!} \frac{x^5}{5} - \frac{1}{3!} \frac{x^7}{7} + \dots \right) \\ &= \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{3}{2}\right) e^{-x^2}}{\Gamma\left(n + \frac{3}{2}\right)} x^{2n+1} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} e^{-x^2} \left(x + \frac{2}{3} x^3 + \frac{4}{15} x^5 \dots \right).\end{aligned}$$

2. Asymptotic expansion:

For $z \rightarrow \infty$, $|\arg z| < \frac{3}{4}\pi$,

$$\begin{aligned}\operatorname{erfc} z &\sim \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} \frac{e^{-z^2}}{2z} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n (2n)!}{n!(2z)^{2n}} \\ &\sim \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} \frac{e^{-z^2}}{2z} \left(1 - \frac{1}{2z^2} + \frac{3}{4z^4} - \frac{15}{8z^6} + \dots \right).\end{aligned}$$

6.13.4 SPECIAL CASES

1. Dawson's integral

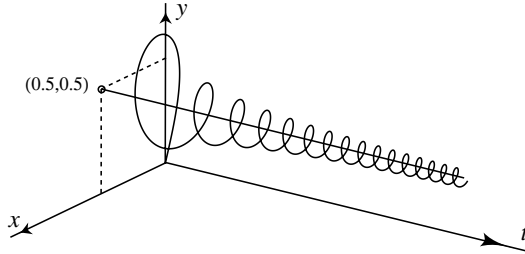
$$F(x) = e^{-x^2} \int_0^x e^{t^2} dt = -\frac{1}{2} i \sqrt{\pi} e^{-x^2} \operatorname{erf}(ix).$$

2. Plasma dispersion function

$$\begin{aligned}w(z) &= e^{-z^2} \operatorname{erfc}(-iz) \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi i} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-t^2}}{t-z} dt, \quad \operatorname{Im} z > 0 \\ &= 2 e^{-z^2} - w(-z) \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(iz)^n}{\Gamma(n/2 + 1)}.\end{aligned}$$

FIGURE 6.7

Cornu's spiral, formed from Fresnel functions, is the set $\{x, y, t\}$ where $x = C(t)$, $y = S(t)$, $t \geq 0$. (From Temme, N. M., *Special Functions: An Introduction to the Classical Functions of Mathematical Physics*, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1996. With permission.)



6.14 FRESNEL INTEGRALS

$$C(z) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_0^z \cos t^2 dt, \quad S(z) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_0^z \sin t^2 dt.$$

6.14.1 PROPERTIES

1. Relations:

$$C(z) + iS(z) = \frac{1+i}{2} \operatorname{erf} \frac{(1-i)z}{\sqrt{2}}.$$

2. Limits:

$$\lim_{z \rightarrow \infty} C(z) = \frac{1}{2}, \quad \lim_{z \rightarrow \infty} S(z) = \frac{1}{2}.$$

3. Representations:

$$C(z) = \frac{1}{2} + f(z) \sin(z^2) - g(z) \cos(z^2),$$

$$S(z) = \frac{1}{2} - f(z) \cos(z^2) - g(z) \sin(z^2),$$

where

$$f(z) = \frac{1}{\pi\sqrt{2}} \int_0^\infty \frac{e^{-z^2 t}}{\sqrt{t}(t^2+1)} dt, \quad g(z) = \frac{1}{\pi\sqrt{2}} \int_0^\infty \frac{\sqrt{t}e^{-z^2 t}}{(t^2+1)} dt.$$

4. Cornu's spiral:

$$\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_z^\infty e^{it^2} dt = [g(z) + if(z)] e^{iz^2}.$$

6.14.2 ASYMPTOTIC EXPANSION

And for $z \rightarrow \infty$, $|\arg z| < \frac{1}{2}\pi$,

$$f(z) \sim \frac{1}{\pi\sqrt{2}} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (-1)^n \frac{\Gamma(2n+1/2)}{z^{2n+1/2}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi z}} \left[1 - \frac{3}{4z^2} + \frac{105}{16z^4} - \dots \right],$$

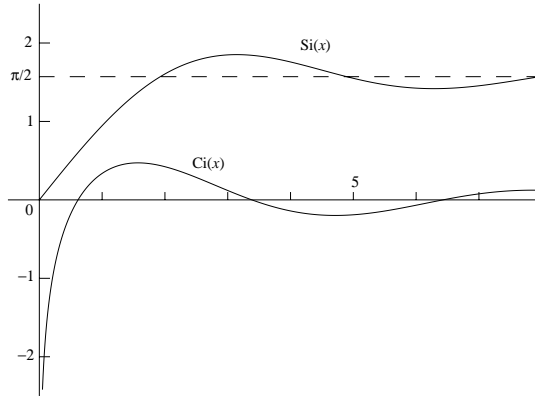
$$g(z) \sim \frac{1}{\pi\sqrt{2}} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (-1)^n \frac{\Gamma(2n+3/2)}{z^{2n+3/2}} = \frac{1}{2z\sqrt{2\pi z}} \left[1 - \frac{15}{4z^2} + \frac{945}{16z^4} - \dots \right].$$

6.14.3 NUMERICAL VALUES OF ERROR FUNCTIONS AND FRESNEL INTEGRALS

| x | $\operatorname{erf}(x)$ | $e^{x^2} \operatorname{erfc}(x)$ | $C(x)$ | $S(x)$ |
|-----|-------------------------|----------------------------------|------------|------------|
| 0.0 | 0.00000000 | 1.00000000 | 0.00000000 | 0.00000000 |
| 0.2 | 0.22270259 | 0.80901952 | 0.15955138 | 0.00212745 |
| 0.4 | 0.42839236 | 0.67078779 | 0.31833776 | 0.01699044 |
| 0.6 | 0.60385609 | 0.56780472 | 0.47256350 | 0.05691807 |
| 0.8 | 0.74210096 | 0.48910059 | 0.61265370 | 0.13223984 |
| 1.0 | 0.84270079 | 0.42758358 | 0.72170592 | 0.24755829 |
| 1.2 | 0.91031398 | 0.37853742 | 0.77709532 | 0.39584313 |
| 1.4 | 0.95228512 | 0.33874354 | 0.75781398 | 0.55244498 |
| 1.6 | 0.97634838 | 0.30595299 | 0.65866707 | 0.67442706 |
| 1.8 | 0.98909050 | 0.27856010 | 0.50694827 | 0.71289443 |
| 2.0 | 0.99532227 | 0.25539568 | 0.36819298 | 0.64211874 |
| 2.2 | 0.99813715 | 0.23559296 | 0.32253723 | 0.49407286 |
| 2.4 | 0.99931149 | 0.21849873 | 0.40704642 | 0.36532279 |
| 2.6 | 0.99976397 | 0.20361325 | 0.55998756 | 0.36073841 |
| 2.8 | 0.99992499 | 0.19054888 | 0.64079292 | 0.48940140 |
| 3.0 | 0.99997791 | 0.17900115 | 0.56080398 | 0.61721360 |
| 3.2 | 0.99999397 | 0.16872810 | 0.41390216 | 0.58920847 |
| 3.4 | 0.99999848 | 0.15953536 | 0.39874249 | 0.44174492 |
| 3.6 | 0.99999964 | 0.15126530 | 0.53845493 | 0.39648758 |
| 3.8 | 0.99999992 | 0.14378884 | 0.60092662 | 0.52778933 |
| 4.0 | 0.99999998 | 0.13699946 | 0.47431072 | 0.59612656 |
| 4.2 | 1.00000000 | 0.13080849 | 0.41041217 | 0.46899697 |
| 4.4 | 1.00000000 | 0.12514166 | 0.54218734 | 0.41991084 |
| 4.6 | 1.00000000 | 0.11993626 | 0.56533023 | 0.55685845 |
| 4.8 | 1.00000000 | 0.11513908 | 0.42894668 | 0.54293254 |
| 5.0 | 1.00000000 | 0.11070464 | 0.48787989 | 0.42121705 |

FIGURE 6.8

Sine and cosine integrals $\text{Si}(x)$ and $\text{Ci}(x)$, for $0 \leq x \leq 8$. (From Temme, N. M., *Special Functions: An Introduction to the Classical Functions of Mathematical Physics*, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1996. With permission.)



6.15 SINE, COSINE, AND EXPONENTIAL INTEGRALS

6.15.1 SINE AND COSINE INTEGRALS

$$\text{Si}(z) = \int_0^z \frac{\sin t}{t} dt, \quad \text{Ci}(z) = \gamma + \ln z + \int_0^z \frac{\cos t - 1}{t} dt,$$

where γ is Euler's constant.

1. Alternative definitions:

$$\text{Si}(z) = \frac{1}{2} \pi - \int_z^\infty \frac{\sin t}{t} dt, \quad \text{Ci}(z) = - \int_z^\infty \frac{\cos t}{t} dt.$$

2. Limits:

$$\lim_{z \rightarrow \infty} \text{Si}(z) = \frac{1}{2} \pi, \quad \lim_{z \rightarrow \infty} \text{Ci}(z) = 0.$$

3. Representations:

$$\text{Si}(z) = -f(z) \cos z - g(z) \sin z + \frac{1}{2} \pi,$$

$$\text{Ci}(z) = +f(z) \sin z - g(z) \cos z,$$

where

$$f(z) = \int_0^\infty \frac{e^{-zt}}{t^2 + 1} dt, \quad g(z) = \int_0^\infty \frac{te^{-zt}}{t^2 + 1} dt.$$

4. Asymptotic expansion:

For $z \rightarrow \infty$, $|\arg z| < \pi$,

$$f(z) \sim \frac{1}{z} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (-1)^n \frac{(2n)!}{z^{2n}}, \quad g(z) \sim \frac{1}{z^2} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (-1)^n \frac{(2n+1)!}{z^{2n}}.$$

6.15.2 EXPONENTIAL INTEGRALS

$$\begin{aligned} E_n(z) &= \int_1^{\infty} \frac{e^{-zt}}{t^n} dt, \quad \operatorname{Re} z > 0, \quad n = 1, 2, \dots \\ &= \frac{z^{n-1} e^{-z}}{\Gamma(n)} \int_0^{\infty} \frac{e^{-zt} t^{n-1}}{t+1} dt, \quad \operatorname{Re} z > 0. \end{aligned}$$

1. Special case:

$$E_1(z) = \int_z^{\infty} \frac{e^{-t}}{t} dt, \quad |\arg z| < \pi.$$

For real values of $z = x$,

$$\operatorname{Ei}(x) = \int_{-\infty}^x \frac{e^t}{t} dt,$$

where for $x > 0$ the integral should be interpreted as a Cauchy principal value integral.

2. Representations:

$$\begin{aligned} E_1(z) &= -\gamma - \ln z + \int_0^z \frac{1 - e^{-t}}{t} dt, \\ E_1\left(ze^{\frac{1}{2}\pi i}\right) &= -\gamma - \ln z - \operatorname{Ci}(z) + i \left[-\frac{1}{2}\pi + \operatorname{Si}(z)\right], \\ E_1(x) &= -\operatorname{Ei}(-x), \quad x > 0 \end{aligned}$$

6.15.3 LOGARITHMIC INTEGRAL

$$\operatorname{li}(x) = \int_0^x \frac{dt}{\ln t} = \operatorname{Ei}(\ln x),$$

where for $x > 1$ the integral should be interpreted as a Cauchy principal value integral.

6.15.4 NUMERICAL VALUES

| x | $\text{Si}(x)$ | $\text{Ci}(x)$ | $e^x E_1(x)$ | $e^{-x} \text{Ei}(x)$ | $\text{li}(x)$ |
|-----|----------------|----------------|--------------|-----------------------|----------------|
| 0.0 | 0.000000 | $-\infty$ | ∞ | $-\infty$ | 0.000000 |
| 0.2 | 0.199556 | -1.042206 | 1.493349 | -0.672801 | -0.085126 |
| 0.4 | 0.396461 | -0.378809 | 1.047828 | 0.070226 | -0.252949 |
| 0.6 | 0.588129 | -0.022271 | 0.827933 | 0.422520 | -0.546851 |
| 0.8 | 0.772096 | 0.198279 | 0.691245 | 0.605424 | -1.134012 |
| 1.0 | 0.946083 | 0.337404 | 0.596347 | 0.697175 | $-\infty$ |
| 1.2 | 1.108047 | 0.420459 | 0.525935 | 0.735544 | -0.933787 |
| 1.4 | 1.256227 | 0.462007 | 0.471293 | 0.741568 | -0.144991 |
| 1.6 | 1.389180 | 0.471733 | 0.427488 | 0.727902 | 0.353748 |
| 1.8 | 1.505817 | 0.456811 | 0.391492 | 0.702498 | 0.732637 |
| 2.0 | 1.605413 | 0.422981 | 0.361329 | 0.670483 | 1.045164 |
| 2.2 | 1.687625 | 0.375075 | 0.335651 | 0.635192 | 1.315238 |
| 2.4 | 1.752486 | 0.317292 | 0.313502 | 0.598799 | 1.555671 |
| 2.6 | 1.800394 | 0.253337 | 0.294186 | 0.562705 | 1.774145 |
| 2.8 | 1.832097 | 0.186488 | 0.277179 | 0.527789 | 1.975643 |
| 3.0 | 1.848653 | 0.119630 | 0.262084 | 0.494576 | 2.163589 |
| 3.2 | 1.851401 | 0.055257 | 0.248588 | 0.463356 | 2.340436 |
| 3.4 | 1.841914 | -0.004518 | 0.236446 | 0.434256 | 2.508008 |
| 3.6 | 1.821948 | -0.057974 | 0.225460 | 0.407294 | 2.667700 |
| 3.8 | 1.793390 | -0.103778 | 0.215471 | 0.382424 | 2.820603 |
| 4.0 | 1.758203 | -0.140982 | 0.206346 | 0.359552 | 2.967585 |
| 4.2 | 1.718369 | -0.169013 | 0.197976 | 0.338561 | 3.109354 |
| 4.4 | 1.675834 | -0.187660 | 0.190270 | 0.319321 | 3.246490 |
| 4.6 | 1.632460 | -0.197047 | 0.183151 | 0.301697 | 3.379479 |
| 4.8 | 1.589975 | -0.197604 | 0.176554 | 0.285555 | 3.508729 |
| 5.0 | 1.549931 | -0.190030 | 0.170422 | 0.270766 | 3.634588 |

6.16 POLYLOGARITHMS

$$\text{Li}_1(z) = \int_0^z \frac{dt}{1-t} = -\ln(1-z), \quad \text{logarithm,}$$

$$\text{Li}_2(z) = \int_0^z \frac{\text{Li}_1(t)}{t} dt = -\int_0^z \frac{\ln(1-t)}{t} dt, \quad \text{dilogarithm,}$$

$$\text{Li}_n(z) = \int_0^z \frac{\text{Li}_{n-1}(t)}{t} dt, \quad n \geq 2, \quad \text{polylogarithm,}$$

$$\text{Li}_\nu(z) = \frac{z}{\Gamma(\nu)} \int_0^\infty \frac{t^{\nu-1}}{e^t - z} dt, \quad \text{Re } \nu > 0, z \notin \{\text{Re } z \in [1, \infty], \text{Im } z = 0\}.$$

6.16.1 POLYLOGARITHMS OF SPECIAL VALUES

$$\begin{aligned} \operatorname{Li}_2(1) &= \frac{\pi^2}{6}, & \operatorname{Li}_2(-1) &= -\frac{\pi^2}{12}, & \operatorname{Li}_2\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) &= \frac{\pi^2}{12} - \frac{(\ln 2)^2}{2}, \\ \operatorname{Li}_\nu(1) &= \zeta(\nu), & \operatorname{Re} \nu &> 1 & \text{(Riemann zeta function)}. \end{aligned}$$

6.16.2 POLYLOGARITHM PROPERTIES

1. Definition: For any complex ν

$$\operatorname{Li}_\nu(z) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{z^k}{k^\nu}, \quad |z| < 1.$$

2. Singular points:

$z = 1$ is a singular point of $\operatorname{Li}_\nu(z)$.

3. Generating function:

$$\sum_{n=2}^{\infty} w^{n-1} \operatorname{Li}_n(z) = z \int_0^{\infty} \frac{e^{wt} - 1}{e^t - z} dt, \quad z \notin [1, \infty).$$

The series converges for $|w| < 1$; the integral is defined for $\operatorname{Re} w < 1$.

4. Functional equations for dilogarithms:

$$\begin{aligned} \operatorname{Li}_2(z) + \operatorname{Li}_2(1-z) &= \frac{1}{6}\pi^2 - \ln z \ln(1-z), \\ \frac{1}{2}\operatorname{Li}_2(x^2) &= \operatorname{Li}_2(x) + \operatorname{Li}_2(-x), \\ \operatorname{Li}_2(-1/x) + \operatorname{Li}_2(-x) &= -\frac{1}{6}\pi^2 - \frac{1}{2}(\ln x)^2, \\ 2\operatorname{Li}_2(x) + 2\operatorname{Li}_2(y) + 2\operatorname{Li}_2(z) &= \\ \operatorname{Li}_2(-xy/z) + \operatorname{Li}_2(-yz/x) + \operatorname{Li}_2(-zx/y), \end{aligned}$$

where $1/x + 1/y + 1/z = 1$.

6.17 HYPERGEOMETRIC FUNCTIONS

Recall the geometric series and binomial expansion ($|z| < 1$),

$$(1-z)^{-1} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} z^n, \quad (1-z)^{-a} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \binom{-a}{n} (-z)^n = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(a)_n}{n!} z^n,$$

where the shifted factorial, $(a)_n$, is defined in Section 1.2.6.

The *Gauss hypergeometric function*, F , is defined by:

$$\begin{aligned} F(a, b; c; z) &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(a)_n (b)_n}{(c)_n n!} z^n \\ &= 1 + \frac{ab}{c} z + \frac{a(a+1)b(b+1)}{c(c+1)2!} z^2 + \dots, \quad |z| < 1, \\ &= F(b, a; c; z) \end{aligned} \tag{6.17.1}$$

where a, b and c may all assume complex values, $c \neq 0, -1, -2, \dots$

6.17.1 SPECIAL CASES

1. $F(a, b; b; z) = (1 - z)^{-a}$
2. $F(1, 1; 2; z) = -\frac{\ln(1 - z)}{z}$
3. $F\left(\frac{1}{2}, 1; \frac{3}{2}; z^2\right) = \frac{1}{2z} \ln\left(\frac{1+z}{1-z}\right)$
4. $F\left(\frac{1}{2}, 1; \frac{3}{2}; -z^2\right) = \frac{\tan^{-1} z}{z}$
5. $F\left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}; \frac{3}{2}; z^2\right) = \frac{\sin^{-1} z}{z}$
6. $F\left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}; \frac{3}{2}; -z^2\right) = \frac{\ln(z + \sqrt{1 + z^2})}{z}$
7. Polynomial case; for $m = 0, 1, 2, \dots$

$$F(-m, b; c; z) = \sum_{n=0}^m \frac{(-m)_n (b)_n}{(c)_n n!} z^n = \sum_{n=0}^m (-1)^n \binom{m}{n} \frac{(b)_n}{(c)_n} z^n. \tag{6.17.2}$$

6.17.2 PROPERTIES

1. Derivatives:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dz} F(a, b; c; z) &= \frac{ab}{c} F(a+1, b+1; c+1; z), \\ \frac{d^n}{dz^n} F(a, b; c; z) &= \frac{(a)_n (b)_n}{(c)_n} F(a+n, b+n; c+n; z). \end{aligned}$$

2. Special values; when $\text{Re}(c - a - b) > 0$:

$$F(a, b; c; 1) = \frac{\Gamma(c)\Gamma(c-a-b)}{\Gamma(c-a)\Gamma(c-b)}.$$

3. Integral; when $\text{Re } c > \text{Re } b > 0$:

$$F(a, b; c; z) = \frac{\Gamma(c)}{\Gamma(b)\Gamma(c-b)} \int_0^1 t^{b-1} (1-t)^{c-b-1} (1-tz)^{-a} dt.$$

4. Functional relationships:

$$\begin{aligned}F(a, b; c; z) &= (1 - z)^{-a} F\left(a, c - b; c; \frac{z}{z - 1}\right) \\ &= (1 - z)^{-b} F\left(c - a, b; c; \frac{z}{z - 1}\right) \\ &= (1 - z)^{c - a - b} F(c - a, c - b; c; z).\end{aligned}$$

5. Differential equation:

$$z(1 - z)F'' + [c - (a + b + 1)z]F' - abF = 0,$$

with (regular) singular points $z = 0, 1, \infty$.

6.17.3 RECURSION FORMULAE

Notation: F is $F(a, b; c; z)$; $F(a+)$, $F(a-)$ are $F(a + 1, b; c; z)$, $F(a - 1, b; c; z)$, respectively, etc.

1. $(c - a)F(a-) + (2a - c - az + bz)F + a(z - 1)F(a+) = 0$
2. $c(c - 1)(z - 1)F(c-) + c[c - 1 - (2c - a - b - 1)z]F + (c - a)(c - b)zF(c+) = 0$
3. $c[a + (b - c)z]F - ac(1 - z)F(a+) + (c - a)(c - b)zF(c+) = 0$
4. $c(1 - z)F - cF(a-) + (c - b)zF(c+) = 0$
5. $(b - a)F + aF(a+) - bF(b+) = 0$
6. $(c - a - b)F + a(1 - z)F(a+) - (c - b)F(b-) = 0$
7. $(c - a - 1)F + aF(a+) - (c - 1)F(c-) = 0$
8. $(b - a)(1 - z)F - (c - a)F(a-) + (c - b)F(b-) = 0$
9. $[a - 1 + (b + 1 - c)z]F + (c - a)F(a-) - (c - 1)(1 - z)F(c-) = 0$

6.18 LEGENDRE FUNCTIONS

6.18.1 DIFFERENTIAL EQUATION: LEGENDRE FUNCTION

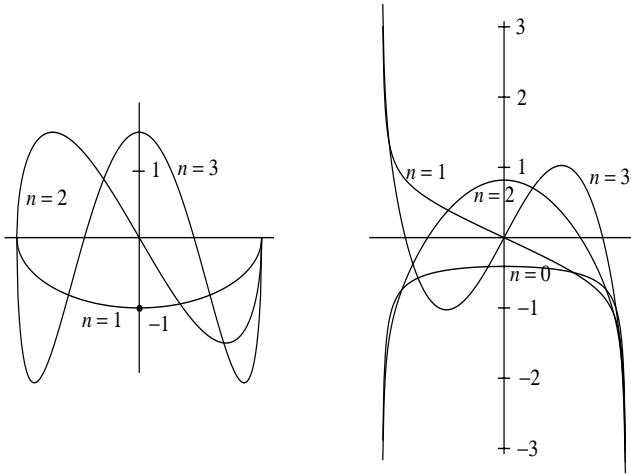
The Legendre differential equation is,

$$(1 - z^2)w'' - 2zw' + \nu(\nu + 1)w = 0.$$

The solutions $P_\nu(z)$, $Q_\nu(z)$ can be given in terms of Gaussian hypergeometric functions.

FIGURE 6.9

Legendre functions $P_n(x)$, $n = 1, 2, 3$ (left) and $Q_n(x)$, $n = 0, 1, 2, 3$ (right) on the interval $[-1, 1]$. (From Temme, N. M., *Special Functions: An Introduction to the Classical Functions of Mathematical Physics*, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1996. With permission.)



6.18.2 DEFINITION

$$P_\nu(z) = F\left(-\nu, \nu + 1; 1; \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2}z\right),$$

$$Q_\nu(z) = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}\Gamma(\nu + 1)}{\Gamma\left(\nu + \frac{3}{2}\right)(2z)^{\nu+1}} F\left(\frac{1}{2}\nu + 1, \frac{1}{2}\nu + \frac{1}{2}; \nu + \frac{3}{2}; z^{-2}\right).$$

The Q_ν function is not defined if $\nu = -1, -2, \dots$

6.18.3 SINGULAR POINTS

$P_\nu(z)$ has a singular point at $z = -1$ and is analytic in the remaining part of the complex plane, with a branch cut along $(-\infty, -1]$. $Q_\nu(z)$ has singular points at $z = \pm 1$ and is analytic in the remaining part of the complex z -plane, with a branch cut along $(-\infty, +1]$.

6.18.4 RELATIONSHIPS

$$P_{-\nu-1}(z) = P_\nu(z),$$

$$Q_{-\nu-1}(z) = Q_\nu(z) - \pi \cot \nu \pi P_\nu(z).$$

6.18.5 RECURSION RELATIONSHIPS

$$\begin{aligned}
 (\nu + 1)P_{\nu+1}(z) &= (2\nu + 1)zP_{\nu}(z) - \nu P_{\nu-1}(z), \\
 (2\nu + 1)P_{\nu}(z) &= P'_{\nu+1}(z) - P'_{\nu-1}(z), \\
 (\nu + 1)P_{\nu}(z) &= P'_{\nu+1}(z) - zP'_{\nu}(z), \\
 \nu P_{\nu}(z) &= zP'_{\nu}(z) - P'_{\nu-1}(z), \\
 (1 - z^2)P'_{\nu}(z) &= \nu P_{\nu-1}(z) - \nu zP_{\nu}(z).
 \end{aligned}$$

The functions $Q_{\nu}(z)$ satisfy the same relations.

6.18.6 INTEGRALS

$$\begin{aligned}
 P_{\nu}(\cosh \alpha) &= \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^{\alpha} \frac{\cosh(\nu + \frac{1}{2})\theta}{\sqrt{2 \cosh \alpha - 2 \cosh \theta}} d\theta \\
 &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\alpha}^{\alpha} \frac{e^{-(\nu+1/2)\theta}}{\sqrt{2 \cosh \alpha - 2 \cosh \theta}} d\theta \\
 &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{\pi} \frac{d\psi}{(\cosh \alpha + \sinh \alpha \cos \psi)^{\nu+1}} \\
 &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{\pi} (\cosh \alpha + \sinh \alpha \cos \psi)^{\nu} d\psi.
 \end{aligned} \tag{6.18.1}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 P_{\nu}(\cos \beta) &= \frac{2}{\pi} \int_0^{\beta} \frac{\cos(\nu + \frac{1}{2})\theta}{\sqrt{2 \cos \theta - 2 \cos \beta}} d\theta \\
 &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{\pi} \frac{d\psi}{(\cos \beta + i \sin \beta \cos \psi)^{\nu+1}} \\
 &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{\pi} (\cos \beta + i \sin \beta \cos \psi)^{\nu} d\psi.
 \end{aligned} \tag{6.18.2}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 Q_{\nu}(z) &= 2^{-\nu-1} \int_{-1}^1 \frac{(1-t^2)^{\nu}}{(z-t)^{\nu+1}} dt \quad \operatorname{Re} \nu > -1, |\arg z| < \pi, z \notin [-1, 1] \\
 &= \int_0^{\infty} [z + \sqrt{z^2 - 1} \cosh \phi]^{-\nu-1} d\phi \\
 &= \int_{\alpha}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-(\nu+1/2)\theta}}{\sqrt{2 \cosh \theta - 2 \cosh \alpha}} d\theta, \quad z = \cosh \alpha.
 \end{aligned} \tag{6.18.3}$$

6.18.7 POLYNOMIAL CASE

Legendre polynomials are special cases (see Section 6.10.5) when $\nu = n = 0, 1, \dots$,

$$\begin{aligned}
 P_n(x) &= F\left(-n, n+1; 1; \frac{1}{2} - \frac{x}{2}\right) \\
 &= \sum_{k=0}^m \frac{(-1)^k (2n-2k)!}{2^n k! (n-k)! (n-2k)!} x^{n-2k}, \quad m = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2}n, & \text{if } n \text{ even,} \\ \frac{1}{2}(n-1), & \text{if } n \text{ odd.} \end{cases}
 \end{aligned} \tag{6.18.4}$$

The Legendre polynomials satisfy $\int_{-1}^1 P_n(x)P_m(x) dx = \frac{2}{2m+1}\delta_{nm}$.

The Legendre series representation is

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} A_n P_n(x), \quad A_n = \frac{2n+1}{2} \int_{-1}^1 f(x)P_n(x) dx. \quad (6.18.5)$$

For integer order, we distinguish two cases: $Q_n(x)$ (defined for $x \in (-1, 1)$) and $Q_n(z)$ (defined for $\text{Re } z \notin [-1, 1]$):

$$Q_0(x) = \frac{1}{2} \ln \frac{1+x}{1-x}, \quad Q_1(x) = \frac{1}{2} x \ln \frac{1+x}{1-x} - 1, \quad (6.18.6)$$

and

$$Q_0(z) = \frac{1}{2} \ln \frac{z+1}{z-1}, \quad Q_1(z) = \frac{1}{2} z \ln \frac{z+1}{z-1} - 1. \quad (6.18.7)$$

In both cases

$$Q_n(y) = P_n(y)Q_0(y) - \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \frac{(2k+1)[1 - (-1)^{n+k}]}{(n+k+1)(n-k)} P_k(y). \quad (6.18.8)$$

Legendre polynomials $P_n(x)$ and functions $Q_n(x)$, $x \in (-1, 1)$.

| n | $P_n(x)$ | $Q_n(x)$ |
|-----|------------------------------------|---|
| 0 | 1 | $\frac{1}{2} \ln[(1+x)/(1-x)]$ |
| 1 | x | $P_1(x)Q_0(x) - 1$ |
| 2 | $\frac{1}{2}(3x^2 - 1)$ | $P_2(x)Q_0(x) - \frac{3}{2}x$ |
| 3 | $\frac{1}{2}x(5x^2 - 3)$ | $P_3(x)Q_0(x) - \frac{5}{2}x^2 + \frac{2}{3}$ |
| 4 | $\frac{1}{8}(35x^4 - 30x^2 + 3)$ | $P_4(x)Q_0(x) - \frac{35}{8}x^3 + \frac{55}{24}x$ |
| 5 | $\frac{1}{8}x(63x^4 - 70x^2 + 15)$ | $P_5(x)Q_0(x) - \frac{63}{8}x^4 + \frac{49}{8}x^2 - \frac{8}{15}$ |

6.18.8 DIFFERENTIAL EQUATION: ASSOCIATED LEGENDRE FUNCTION

The associated Legendre differential equation is

$$(1 - z^2)y'' - 2zy' + \left[\nu(\nu + 1) - \frac{\mu^2}{1 - z^2} \right] y = 0.$$

The solutions $P_\nu^\mu(z)$, $Q_\nu^\mu(z)$, the associated Legendre functions, can be given in terms of Gauss hypergeometric functions. We only consider integer values of μ, ν , and replace them with m, n , respectively. Then the associated differential equation follows from the Legendre differential equation after it has been differentiated m times.

6.18.9 RELATIONSHIPS BETWEEN THE ASSOCIATED AND ORDINARY LEGENDRE FUNCTIONS

The following relationships are for $z \notin [-1, 1]$

$$\begin{aligned}
 P_n^m(z) &= (z^2 - 1)^{\frac{1}{2}m} \frac{d^m}{dz^m} P_n(z), \\
 &= \frac{(-1)^m}{2^n n!} (z^2 - 1)^{\frac{1}{2}m} \frac{d^{n+m}}{dx^{n+m}} (z^2 - 1)^n, \\
 P_n^{-m}(z) &= \frac{(n-m)!}{(n+m)!} P_n^m(z), \\
 Q_n^m(z) &= (z^2 - 1)^{\frac{1}{2}m} \frac{d^m}{dz^m} Q_n(z), \\
 Q_n^{-m}(z) &= \frac{(n-m)!}{(n+m)!} Q_n^m(z), \\
 P_n^{-m}(z) &= (z^2 - 1)^{-\frac{1}{2}m} \underbrace{\int_1^z \cdots \int_1^z}_{m} P_n(z) (dz)^m, \\
 Q_n^{-m}(z) &= (-1)^m (z^2 - 1)^{-\frac{1}{2}m} \underbrace{\int_z^\infty \cdots \int_z^\infty}_{m} Q_n(z) (dz)^m, \\
 P_{-n-1}^m(z) &= P_n^m(z).
 \end{aligned}$$

6.18.10 ORTHOGONALITY RELATIONSHIP

Let $n \geq m$, then

$$\int_{-1}^1 P_n^m(x) P_k^m(x) dx = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } k \neq n, \\ \frac{2}{2n+1} \frac{(n+m)!}{(n-m)!}, & \text{if } k = n. \end{cases}$$

6.18.11 RECURSION RELATIONSHIPS

$$\begin{aligned}
 P_n^{m+1}(z) + \frac{2mz}{\sqrt{z^2 - 1}} P_n^m(z) &= (n - m + 1)(n + m) P_n^{m-1}(z), \\
 (z^2 - 1) \frac{dP_n^m(z)}{dz} &= mz P_n^m(z) + \sqrt{z^2 - 1} P_n^{m+1}(z), \\
 (2n + 1)z P_n^m(z) &= (n - m + 1) P_{n+1}^m(z) + (n + m) P_{n-1}^m(z), \\
 (z^2 - 1) \frac{dP_n^m(z)}{dz} &= (n - m + 1) P_{n+1}^m(z) - (n + 1)z P_n^m(z), \\
 P_{n-1}^m(z) - P_{n+1}^m(z) &= -(2n + 1) \sqrt{z^2 - 1} P_n^{m-1}(z).
 \end{aligned}$$

The functions $Q_n^m(z)$ satisfy the same relations.

6.19 BESSEL FUNCTIONS

6.19.1 DIFFERENTIAL EQUATION

The *Bessel differential equation* is

$$z^2 y'' + zy' + (z^2 - \nu^2)y = 0.$$

The solutions are denoted with

$$J_\nu(z), \quad Y_\nu(z) \quad (\text{the ordinary Bessel functions})$$

and

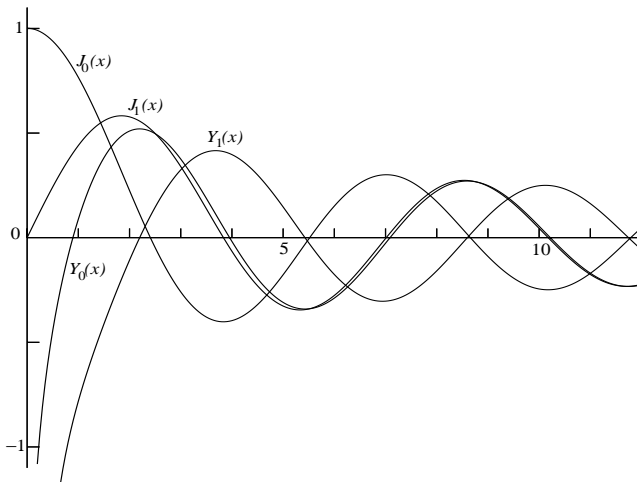
$$H_\nu^{(1)}(z), \quad H_\nu^{(2)}(z) \quad (\text{the Hankel functions}).$$

Further solutions are

$$J_{-\nu}(z), \quad Y_{-\nu}(z), \quad H_{-\nu}^{(1)}(z), \quad H_{-\nu}^{(2)}(z).$$

When ν is an integer,

$$J_{-n}(z) = (-1)^n J_n(z), \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$$



Bessel functions $J_0(x)$, $J_1(x)$, $Y_0(x)$, $Y_1(x)$, $0 \leq x \leq 12$.

6.19.2 SINGULAR POINTS

The Bessel differential equation has a regular singularity at $z = 0$ and an irregular singularity at $z = \infty$.

6.19.3 RELATIONSHIPS

$$H_\nu^{(1)}(z) = J_\nu(z) + iY_\nu(z), \quad H_\nu^{(2)}(z) = J_\nu(z) - iY_\nu(z).$$

Neumann function: If $\nu \neq 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$

$$Y_\nu(z) = \frac{\cos \nu \pi J_\nu(z) - J_{-\nu}(z)}{\sin \nu \pi}.$$

When $\nu = n$ (integer) then the limit $\nu \rightarrow n$ should be taken in the right-hand side of this equation. Complete solutions to Bessel's equation may be written as

$$\begin{aligned} c_1 J_\nu(z) + c_2 J_{-\nu}(z), & \quad \text{if } \nu \text{ is not an integer,} \\ c_1 J_\nu(z) + c_2 Y_\nu(z), & \quad \text{for any value of } \nu, \\ c_1 H_\nu^{(1)}(z) + c_2 H_\nu^{(2)}(z), & \quad \text{for any value of } \nu. \end{aligned}$$

6.19.4 SERIES EXPANSIONS

For any complex z ,

$$\begin{aligned} J_\nu(z) &= \left(\frac{1}{2}z\right)^\nu \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n \left(\frac{1}{2}z\right)^{2n}}{\Gamma(n+\nu+1)n!}, \\ J_0(z) &= 1 - \frac{1}{2!}z^2 + \frac{1}{2!2!}\left(\frac{1}{2}z\right)^4 - \frac{1}{3!3!}\left(\frac{1}{2}z\right)^6 + \dots, \\ J_1(z) &= \frac{1}{2}z \left[1 - \frac{1}{1!2!}\left(\frac{1}{2}z\right)^2 + \frac{1}{2!3!}\left(\frac{1}{2}z\right)^4 - \frac{1}{3!4!}\left(\frac{1}{2}z\right)^6 + \dots \right], \\ Y_n(z) &= \frac{2}{\pi}J_n(z) \ln\left(\frac{1}{2}z\right) - \frac{\left(\frac{1}{2}z\right)^{-n}}{\pi} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \frac{(n-k-1)!}{k!} \left(\frac{1}{2}z\right)^{2k} - \\ &\quad \frac{\left(\frac{1}{2}z\right)^n}{\pi} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} [\psi(k+1) + \psi(n+k+1)] \frac{(-1)^k \left(\frac{1}{2}z\right)^{2k}}{k!(n+k)!}, \end{aligned}$$

where ψ is the logarithmic derivative of the gamma function.

6.19.5 RECURRENCE RELATIONSHIPS

$$\begin{aligned} C_{\nu-1}(z) + C_{\nu+1}(z) &= \frac{2\nu}{z}C_\nu(z), \\ C_{\nu-1}(z) - C_{\nu+1}(z) &= 2C'_\nu(z), \\ C'_\nu(z) &= C_{\nu-1}(z) - \frac{\nu}{z}C_\nu(z), \\ C'_\nu(z) &= -C_{\nu+1}(z) + \frac{\nu}{z}C_\nu(z), \end{aligned}$$

where $C_\nu(z)$ denotes one of the functions $J_\nu(z)$, $Y_\nu(z)$, $H_\nu^{(1)}(z)$, $H_\nu^{(2)}(z)$.

6.19.6 BEHAVIOR AS $z \rightarrow 0$

Let $\operatorname{Re} \nu > 0$, then

$$J_\nu(z) \sim \frac{\left(\frac{1}{2}z\right)^\nu}{\Gamma(\nu+1)}, \quad Y_\nu(z) \sim -\frac{1}{\pi}\Gamma(\nu) \left(\frac{2}{z}\right)^\nu,$$
$$H_\nu^{(1)}(z) \sim \frac{1}{\pi i}\Gamma(\nu) \left(\frac{2}{z}\right)^\nu, \quad H_\nu^{(2)}(z) \sim -\frac{1}{\pi i}\Gamma(\nu) \left(\frac{2}{z}\right)^\nu.$$

The same relations hold as $\operatorname{Re} \nu \rightarrow \infty$, with z fixed.

6.19.7 INTEGRALS

Let $\operatorname{Re} z > 0$ and ν be any complex number.

$$J_\nu(z) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^\pi \cos(\nu\theta - z \sin \theta) d\theta - \frac{\sin \nu\pi}{\pi} \int_0^\infty e^{-\nu t - z \sinh t} dt$$
$$= \frac{(z/2)^\nu}{\sqrt{\pi}\Gamma(\nu + \frac{1}{2})} \int_{-1}^1 (1-t^2)^{\nu-\frac{1}{2}} \cos zt dt, \quad \operatorname{Re} \nu > -\frac{1}{2}, z \text{ complex}, z \neq 0,$$
$$= \frac{2\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)^{-\nu}}{\sqrt{\pi}\Gamma\left(\frac{1}{2}-\nu\right)} \int_1^\infty \frac{\sin xt}{(t^2-1)^{\nu+\frac{1}{2}}} dt, \quad x > 0, |\operatorname{Re} \nu| < -\frac{1}{2},$$
$$Y_\nu(z) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^\pi \sin(z \sin \theta - \nu\theta) d\theta - \int_0^\infty (e^{\nu t} + e^{-\nu t} \cos \nu\pi) e^{-z \sinh t} dt$$
$$= -\frac{2\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)^{-\nu}}{\sqrt{\pi}\Gamma\left(\frac{1}{2}-\nu\right)} \int_1^\infty \frac{\cos xt}{(t^2-1)^{\nu+\frac{1}{2}}} dt, \quad x > 0, |\operatorname{Re} \nu| < -\frac{1}{2}.$$

When $\nu = n$ (an integer), the second integral in the first relation disappears.

6.19.8 FOURIER EXPANSION

For any complex z ,

$$e^{-iz \sin t} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-int} J_n(z),$$

with Parseval relation

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} J_n^2(z) = 1.$$

6.19.9 AUXILIARY FUNCTIONS

Let $\chi = z - \left(\frac{1}{2}\nu + \frac{1}{4}\right)\pi$ and define

$$P(\nu, z) = \sqrt{\pi z/2} [J_\nu(z) \cos \chi + Y_\nu(z) \sin \chi],$$
$$Q(\nu, z) = \sqrt{\pi z/2} [-J_\nu(z) \sin \chi + Y_\nu(z) \cos \chi].$$

6.19.10 INVERSE RELATIONSHIPS

$$J_\nu(z) = \sqrt{2/(\pi z)} [P(\nu, z) \cos \chi - Q(\nu, z) \sin \chi],$$

$$Y_\nu(z) = \sqrt{2/(\pi z)} [P(\nu, z) \sin \chi + Q(\nu, z) \cos \chi].$$

For the Hankel functions,

$$H_\nu^{(1)}(z) = \sqrt{2/(\pi z)} [P(\nu, z) + iQ(\nu, z)]e^{i\chi},$$

$$H_\nu^{(2)}(z) = \sqrt{2/(\pi z)} [P(\nu, z) - iQ(\nu, z)]e^{-i\chi}.$$

The functions $P(\nu, z)$, $Q(\nu, z)$ are the slowly varying components in the asymptotic expansions of the oscillatory Bessel and Hankel functions.

6.19.11 ASYMPTOTIC EXPANSIONS

Let (α, n) be defined by

$$(\alpha, n) = \frac{2^{-2n}}{n!} \{ (4\alpha^2 - 1)(4\alpha^2 - 3^2) \cdots (4\alpha^2 - (2n - 1)^2) \}$$

$$= \frac{\Gamma(\frac{1}{2} + \alpha + n)}{n! \Gamma(\frac{1}{2} + \alpha - n)}, \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \dots,$$

$$= \frac{(-1)^n \cos(\pi\alpha)}{\pi n!} \Gamma(\frac{1}{2} + \alpha + n) \Gamma(\frac{1}{2} - \alpha + n),$$

with recursion

$$(\alpha, n + 1) = -\frac{(n + \frac{1}{2})^2 - \alpha^2}{n + 1} (\alpha, n), \quad n = 1, 2, 3, \dots, \quad (\alpha, 0) = 1.$$

Then, for $z \rightarrow \infty$,

$$P(\nu, z) \sim \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (-1)^n \frac{(\nu, 2n)}{(2z)^{2n}}, \quad Q(\nu, z) \sim \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (-1)^n \frac{(\nu, 2n + 1)}{(2z)^{2n+1}}.$$

With $\mu = 4\nu^2$,

$$P(\nu, z) \sim 1 - \frac{(\mu - 1)(\mu - 9)}{2! (8z)^2} + \frac{(\mu - 1)(\mu - 9)(\mu - 25)(\mu - 49)}{4! (8z)^4} - \dots,$$

$$Q(\nu, z) \sim \frac{\mu - 1}{8z} - \frac{(\mu - 1)(\mu - 9)(\mu - 25)}{3! (8z)^3} + \dots$$

For large positive values of x ,

$$J_\nu(x) = \sqrt{2/(\pi x)} \left[\cos\left(x - \frac{1}{2} \nu\pi - \frac{1}{4} \pi\right) + O(x^{-1}) \right],$$

$$Y_\nu(x) = \sqrt{2/(\pi x)} \left[\sin\left(x - \frac{1}{2} \nu\pi - \frac{1}{4} \pi\right) + O(x^{-1}) \right].$$

6.19.12 ZEROS OF BESSEL FUNCTIONS

For $\nu \geq 0$, the zeros $j_{\nu,k}$ (and $y_{\nu,k}$) of $J_\nu(x)$ (and $Y_\nu(x)$) can be arranged as sequences

$$0 < j_{\nu,1} < j_{\nu,2} < \cdots < j_{\nu,n} < \cdots, \quad \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} j_{\nu,n} = \infty,$$

$$0 < y_{\nu,1} < y_{\nu,2} < \cdots < y_{\nu,n} < \cdots, \quad \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} y_{\nu,n} = \infty.$$

Between two consecutive positive zeros of $J_\nu(x)$, there is exactly one zero of $J_{\nu+1}(x)$. Conversely, between two consecutive positive zeros of $J_{\nu+1}(x)$, there is exactly one zero of $J_\nu(x)$. The same holds for the zeros of $Y_\nu(x)$. Moreover, between each pair of consecutive positive zeros of $J_\nu(x)$, there is exactly one zero of $Y_\nu(x)$, and conversely.

6.19.12.1 Asymptotic expansions of the zeros

When ν is fixed, $s \gg \nu$, and $\mu = 4\nu^2$,

$$j_{\nu,s} \sim \alpha - \frac{\mu - 1}{8\alpha} \left[1 - \frac{4(7\mu^2 - 31)}{3(8\alpha)^2} - \frac{32(83\mu^2 - 982\mu + 3779)}{15(8\alpha)^4} + \cdots \right]$$

where $\alpha = (s + \frac{1}{2}\nu - \frac{1}{4})\pi$; $y_{\nu,s}$ has the same asymptotic expansion with $\alpha = (s + \frac{1}{2}\nu - \frac{3}{4})\pi$.

| n | $j_{0,n}$ | $j_{1,n}$ | $y_{0,n}$ | $y_{1,n}$ |
|-----|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1 | 2.40483 | 3.83171 | 0.89358 | 2.19714 |
| 2 | 5.52008 | 7.01559 | 3.95768 | 5.42968 |
| 3 | 8.65373 | 10.17347 | 7.08605 | 8.59601 |
| 4 | 11.79153 | 13.32369 | 10.22235 | 11.74915 |
| 5 | 14.93092 | 16.47063 | 13.36110 | 14.89744 |
| 6 | 18.07106 | 19.61586 | 16.50092 | 18.04340 |
| 7 | 21.21164 | 22.76008 | 19.64131 | 21.18807 |

Positive zeros $j_{\nu,n}, y_{\nu,n}$ of Bessel functions $J_\nu(x), Y_\nu(x)$, $\nu = 0, 1$.

6.19.13 HALF ORDER BESSEL FUNCTIONS

For integer values of n , let

$$j_n(z) = \sqrt{\pi/(2z)} J_{n+\frac{1}{2}}(z), \quad y_n(z) = \sqrt{\pi/(2z)} Y_{n+\frac{1}{2}}(z).$$

Then

$$j_0(z) = y_{-1}(z) = \frac{\sin z}{z}, \quad y_0(z) = -j_{-1}(z) = -\frac{\cos z}{z},$$

and, for $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$,

$$j_n(z) = (-z)^n \left[\frac{1}{z} \frac{d}{dz} \right]^n \frac{\sin z}{z}, \quad y_n(z) = -(-z)^n \left[\frac{1}{z} \frac{d}{dz} \right]^n \frac{\cos z}{z}.$$

6.19.13.1 Recursion relationships

The functions $j_n(z)$, $y_n(z)$ both satisfy

$$\begin{aligned} z[f_{n-1}(z) + f_{n+1}(z)] &= (2n+1)f_n(z), \\ nf_{n-1}(z) - (n+1)f_{n+1}(z) &= (2n+1)f'_n(z). \end{aligned}$$

6.19.13.2 Differential equation

$$z^2 f'' + 2z f' + [z^2 - n(n+1)]f = 0.$$

6.19.14 MODIFIED BESSEL FUNCTIONS

1. Differential equation

$$z^2 y'' + zy' - (z^2 + \nu^2)y = 0.$$

2. Solutions $I_\nu(z)$, $K_\nu(z)$,

$$\begin{aligned} I_\nu(z) &= \left(\frac{z}{2}\right)^\nu \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(z/2)^{2n}}{\Gamma(n+\nu+1)n!}, \\ K_\nu(z) &= \frac{\pi}{2} \frac{I_{-\nu}(z) - I_\nu(z)}{\sin \nu\pi}, \end{aligned}$$

where the right-hand side should be determined by l'Hôpital's rule when ν assumes integer values. When $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$,

$$\begin{aligned} K_n(z) &= (-1)^{n+1} I_n(z) \ln \frac{z}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{2}{z}\right)^n \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \frac{(n-k-1)!}{k!} \left(-\frac{z^2}{4}\right)^k \\ &\quad + \frac{(-1)^n}{2} \left(\frac{z}{2}\right)^n \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} [\psi(k+1) + \psi(n+k+1)] \frac{(z/2)^{2k}}{k!(n+k)!}. \end{aligned}$$

3. Relations with the ordinary Bessel functions

$$\begin{aligned} I_\nu(z) &= e^{-\frac{1}{2}\nu\pi i} J_\nu\left(ze^{\frac{1}{2}\pi i}\right), & -\pi < \arg z \leq \frac{\pi}{2}, \\ I_\nu(z) &= e^{\frac{3}{2}\nu\pi i} J_\nu\left(ze^{-\frac{3}{2}\pi i}\right), & \frac{\pi}{2} < \arg z \leq \pi, \\ K_\nu(z) &= \frac{\pi}{2} i e^{\frac{1}{2}\nu\pi i} H_\nu^{(1)}\left(ze^{\frac{1}{2}\pi i}\right), & -\pi < \arg z \leq \frac{\pi}{2}, \\ K_\nu(z) &= -\frac{\pi}{2} i e^{-\frac{1}{2}\nu\pi i} H_\nu^{(2)}\left(ze^{-\frac{1}{2}\pi i}\right), & -\frac{\pi}{2} < \arg z \leq \pi, \\ Y_\nu\left(ze^{\frac{1}{2}\pi i}\right) &= e^{\frac{1}{2}(\nu+1)\pi i} I_\nu(z) - \frac{2}{\pi} e^{-\frac{1}{2}\nu\pi i} K_\nu(z), & -\pi < \arg z \leq \frac{\pi}{2}. \end{aligned}$$

For $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$,

$$\begin{aligned} I_n(z) &= i^{-n} J_n(iz), & Y_n(iz) &= i^{n+1} I_n(z) - \frac{2}{\pi} i^{-n} K_n(z), \\ I_{-n}(z) &= I_n(z), & K_{-\nu}(z) &= K_\nu(z), \quad \text{for any } \nu. \end{aligned}$$

4. Recursion relationships

$$I_{\nu-1}(z) - I_{\nu+1}(z) = \frac{2\nu}{z} I_{\nu}(z), \quad K_{\nu+1}(z) - K_{\nu-1}(z) = \frac{2\nu}{z} K_{\nu}(z),$$

$$I_{\nu-1}(z) + I_{\nu+1}(z) = 2I'_{\nu}(z), \quad K_{\nu-1}(z) + K_{\nu+1}(z) = -2K'_{\nu}(z).$$

5. Integrals

$$I_{\nu}(z) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{\pi} e^{z \cos \theta} \cos(\nu \theta) d\theta - \frac{\sin \nu \pi}{\pi} \int_0^{\infty} e^{-\nu t - z \cosh t} dt$$

$$= \frac{(2z)^{\nu} e^z}{\sqrt{\pi} \Gamma(\nu + \frac{1}{2})} \int_0^1 e^{-2zt} [t(1-t)]^{\nu - \frac{1}{2}} dt,$$

$\operatorname{Re} \nu > -\frac{1}{2}, z \text{ complex}, z \neq 0.$

$$K_{\nu}(z) = \int_0^{\infty} e^{-z \cosh t} \cosh(\nu t) dt$$

$$= \frac{\sqrt{\pi} (\frac{z}{2})^{\nu} e^{-z}}{\Gamma(\nu + \frac{1}{2})} \int_0^{\infty} e^{-2zt} t^{\nu - \frac{1}{2}} (t+1)^{\nu - \frac{1}{2}} dt,$$

$\operatorname{Re} \nu > -\frac{1}{2}, \operatorname{Re} z > 0.$

$$K_{\nu}(xz) = \frac{\Gamma(\nu + \frac{1}{2}) (2z)^{\nu}}{\sqrt{\pi} x^{\nu}} \int_0^{\infty} \frac{\cos xt dt}{(t^2 + z^2)^{\nu + \frac{1}{2}}} dt,$$

$\operatorname{Re} \nu > -\frac{1}{2}, x > 0, |\arg z| < \frac{1}{2}\pi.$

When $\nu = n$ (an integer), the second integral in the first relation disappears.

6.19.15 AIRY FUNCTIONS

1. Differential equation

$$y'' - zy = 0.$$

2. Solutions are Ai(z) and Bi(z):

$$\operatorname{Ai}(z) = c_1 f(z) - c_2 g(z),$$

$$\operatorname{Bi}(z) = \sqrt{3} [c_1 f(z) + c_2 g(z)]$$

where

$$f(z) = 1 + \frac{1}{3!} z^3 + \frac{1 \cdot 4}{6!} z^6 + \frac{1 \cdot 4 \cdot 7}{9!} z^9 + \dots,$$

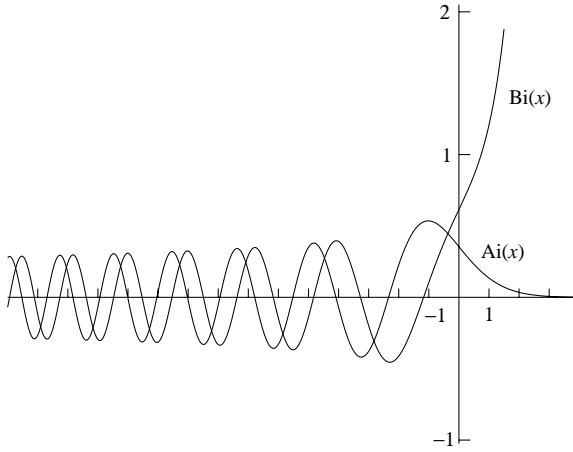
$$g(z) = z + \frac{2}{4!} z^4 + \frac{2 \cdot 5}{7!} z^7 + \frac{2 \cdot 5 \cdot 8}{10!} z^{10} + \dots,$$

$$c_1 = \operatorname{Ai}(0) = \operatorname{Bi}(0)/\sqrt{3} = 3^{-2/3} \Gamma(\frac{2}{3}) = 0.35502 80538 87817,$$

$$c_2 = -\operatorname{Ai}'(0) = \operatorname{Bi}'(0)/\sqrt{3} = 3^{-1/3} \Gamma(\frac{1}{3}) = 0.25881 94037 92807.$$

FIGURE 6.10

Graphs of the Airy functions $\text{Ai}(x)$ and $\text{Bi}(x)$, x real.



3. Wronskian relation

$$\text{Ai}(z) \text{Bi}'(z) - \text{Ai}'(z) \text{Bi}(z) = \frac{1}{\pi}.$$

4. Relations with the Bessel functions

Let $\zeta = \frac{2}{3}z^{\frac{3}{2}}$, then

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Ai}(z) &= \frac{1}{3}\sqrt{z} \left[I_{-\frac{1}{3}}(\zeta) - I_{\frac{1}{3}}(\zeta) \right] = \frac{1}{\pi}\sqrt{\frac{z}{3}} K_{\frac{1}{3}}(\zeta). \\ \text{Ai}(-z) &= \frac{1}{3}\sqrt{z} \left[J_{\frac{1}{3}}(\zeta) + J_{-\frac{1}{3}}(\zeta) \right]. \\ \text{Bi}(z) &= \sqrt{\frac{z}{3}} \left[I_{-\frac{1}{3}}(\zeta) + I_{\frac{1}{3}}(\zeta) \right]. \\ \text{Bi}(-z) &= \sqrt{\frac{z}{3}} \left[J_{-\frac{1}{3}}(\zeta) - J_{\frac{1}{3}}(\zeta) \right].\end{aligned}$$

5. Integrals for real x

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Ai}(x) &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{\infty} \cos\left(\frac{1}{3}t^3 + xt\right) dt, \\ \text{Bi}(x) &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{\infty} e^{-\frac{1}{3}t^3 + xt} dt + \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{\infty} \sin\left(\frac{1}{3}t^3 + xt\right) dt.\end{aligned}$$

6. Asymptotic behavior

Let $\zeta = \frac{2}{3}z^{\frac{3}{2}}$. Then, for $z \rightarrow \infty$,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Ai}(z) &= \frac{1}{2\sqrt{\pi}} z^{-\frac{1}{4}} e^{-\zeta} [1 + O(\zeta^{-1})], & |\arg z| < \pi, \\ \text{Bi}(z) &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi}} z^{-\frac{1}{4}} e^{\zeta} [1 + O(\zeta^{-1})], & |\arg z| < \frac{1}{3}\pi, \\ \text{Ai}(-z) &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi}} z^{-\frac{1}{4}} [\sin(\zeta + \frac{1}{4}\pi) + O(\zeta^{-1})], & |\arg z| < \frac{2}{3}\pi, \\ \text{Bi}(-z) &= -\frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi}} z^{-\frac{1}{4}} [\cos(\zeta + \frac{1}{4}\pi) + O(\zeta^{-1})], & |\arg z| < \frac{2}{3}\pi. \end{aligned}$$

6.19.16 NUMERICAL VALUES FOR THE BESSEL FUNCTIONS

| x | $J_0(x)$ | $J_1(x)$ | $Y_0(x)$ | $Y_1(x)$ |
|-----|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| 0.0 | 1.00000000 | 0.00000000 | $-\infty$ | $-\infty$ |
| 0.2 | 0.99002497 | 0.09950083 | -1.08110532 | -3.32382499 |
| 0.4 | 0.96039823 | 0.19602658 | -0.60602457 | -1.78087204 |
| 0.6 | 0.91200486 | 0.28670099 | -0.30850987 | -1.26039135 |
| 0.8 | 0.84628735 | 0.36884205 | -0.08680228 | -0.97814418 |
| 1.0 | 0.76519769 | 0.44005059 | 0.08825696 | -0.78121282 |
| 1.2 | 0.67113274 | 0.49828906 | 0.22808350 | -0.62113638 |
| 1.4 | 0.56685512 | 0.54194771 | 0.33789513 | -0.47914697 |
| 1.6 | 0.45540217 | 0.56989594 | 0.42042690 | -0.34757801 |
| 1.8 | 0.33998641 | 0.58151695 | 0.47743171 | -0.22366487 |
| 2.0 | 0.22389078 | 0.57672481 | 0.51037567 | -0.10703243 |
| 2.2 | 0.11036227 | 0.55596305 | 0.52078429 | 0.00148779 |
| 2.4 | 0.00250768 | 0.52018527 | 0.51041475 | 0.10048894 |
| 2.6 | -0.09680495 | 0.47081827 | 0.48133059 | 0.18836354 |
| 2.8 | -0.18503603 | 0.40970925 | 0.43591599 | 0.26354539 |
| 3.0 | -0.26005195 | 0.33905896 | 0.37685001 | 0.32467442 |
| 3.2 | -0.32018817 | 0.26134325 | 0.30705325 | 0.37071134 |
| 3.4 | -0.36429560 | 0.17922585 | 0.22961534 | 0.40101529 |
| 3.6 | -0.39176898 | 0.09546555 | 0.14771001 | 0.41539176 |
| 3.8 | -0.40255641 | 0.01282100 | 0.06450325 | 0.41411469 |
| 4.0 | -0.39714981 | -0.06604333 | -0.01694074 | 0.39792571 |
| 4.2 | -0.37655705 | -0.13864694 | -0.09375120 | 0.36801281 |
| 4.4 | -0.34225679 | -0.20277552 | -0.16333646 | 0.32597067 |
| 4.6 | -0.29613782 | -0.25655284 | -0.22345995 | 0.27374524 |
| 4.8 | -0.24042533 | -0.29849986 | -0.27230379 | 0.21356517 |
| 5.0 | -0.17759677 | -0.32757914 | -0.30851763 | 0.14786314 |

| x | $e^{-x}I_0(x)$ | $e^{-x}I_1(x)$ | $e^xK_0(x)$ | $e^xK_1(x)$ |
|-----|----------------|----------------|-------------|-------------|
| 0.0 | 1.00000000 | 0.00000000 | ∞ | ∞ |
| 0.2 | 0.82693855 | 0.08228312 | 2.14075732 | 5.83338603 |
| 0.4 | 0.69740217 | 0.13676322 | 1.66268209 | 3.25867388 |
| 0.6 | 0.59932720 | 0.17216442 | 1.41673762 | 2.37392004 |
| 0.8 | 0.52414894 | 0.19449869 | 1.25820312 | 1.91793030 |
| 1.0 | 0.46575961 | 0.20791042 | 1.14446308 | 1.63615349 |
| 1.2 | 0.41978208 | 0.21525686 | 1.05748453 | 1.44289755 |
| 1.4 | 0.38306252 | 0.21850759 | 0.98807000 | 1.30105374 |
| 1.6 | 0.35331500 | 0.21901949 | 0.93094598 | 1.19186757 |
| 1.8 | 0.32887195 | 0.21772628 | 0.88283353 | 1.10480537 |
| 2.0 | 0.30850832 | 0.21526929 | 0.84156822 | 1.03347685 |
| 2.2 | 0.29131733 | 0.21208773 | 0.80565398 | 0.97377017 |
| 2.4 | 0.27662232 | 0.20848109 | 0.77401814 | 0.92291367 |
| 2.6 | 0.26391400 | 0.20465225 | 0.74586824 | 0.87896728 |
| 2.8 | 0.25280553 | 0.20073741 | 0.72060413 | 0.84053006 |
| 3.0 | 0.24300035 | 0.19682671 | 0.69776160 | 0.80656348 |
| 3.2 | 0.23426883 | 0.19297862 | 0.67697511 | 0.77628028 |
| 3.4 | 0.22643140 | 0.18922985 | 0.65795227 | 0.74907206 |
| 3.6 | 0.21934622 | 0.18560225 | 0.64045596 | 0.72446066 |
| 3.8 | 0.21290013 | 0.18210758 | 0.62429158 | 0.70206469 |
| 4.0 | 0.20700192 | 0.17875084 | 0.60929767 | 0.68157595 |
| 4.2 | 0.20157738 | 0.17553253 | 0.59533899 | 0.66274241 |
| 4.4 | 0.19656556 | 0.17245023 | 0.58230127 | 0.64535587 |
| 4.6 | 0.19191592 | 0.16949973 | 0.57008720 | 0.62924264 |
| 4.8 | 0.18758620 | 0.16667571 | 0.55861332 | 0.61425660 |
| 5.0 | 0.18354081 | 0.16397227 | 0.54780756 | 0.60027386 |

6.20 ELLIPTIC INTEGRALS

6.20.1 DEFINITIONS

Any integral of the type $\int R(x, y) dx$, where $R(x, y)$ is a rational function of x and y , with y^2 being a polynomial of the third or fourth degree in x (that is $y^2 = a_0x^4 + a_1x^3 + a_2x^2 + a_3x + a_4$ with $|a_0| + |a_1| > 0$) is called an *elliptic integral*. All elliptic integrals can be reduced to three basic types.

1. *Elliptic integral of the first kind*

$$\begin{aligned} F(\phi, k) &= \int_0^\phi \frac{d\theta}{\sqrt{1 - k^2 \sin^2 \theta}} \\ &= \int_0^x \frac{dt}{\sqrt{(1 - t^2)(1 - k^2 t^2)}}, \quad x = \sin \phi, \quad k^2 < 1. \end{aligned}$$

2. *Elliptic integral of the second kind*

$$\begin{aligned} E(\phi, k) &= \int_0^\phi \sqrt{1 - k^2 \sin^2 \theta} d\theta \\ &= \int_0^x \frac{\sqrt{1 - k^2 t^2}}{\sqrt{1 - t^2}} dt, \quad x = \sin \phi, \quad k^2 < 1. \end{aligned}$$

3. *Elliptic integral of the third kind*

$$\begin{aligned} \Pi(n; \phi, k) &= \int_0^\phi \frac{1}{1 + n \sin^2 \theta} \frac{d\theta}{\sqrt{1 - k^2 \sin^2 \theta}} \\ &= \int_0^x \frac{1}{1 + n t^2} \frac{dt}{\sqrt{(1 - t^2)(1 - k^2 t^2)}}, \quad x = \sin \phi, \quad k^2 < 1, \end{aligned}$$

where for $n < -1$ the integral should be interpreted as a Cauchy principal value integral.

6.20.2 PROPERTIES

1. The *complete elliptic integrals* of the first and second kinds are

$$K = K(k) = F\left(\frac{\pi}{2}, k\right) = \int_0^{\pi/2} (1 - k^2 \sin^2 t)^{-1/2} dt = \frac{\pi}{2} F\left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}; 1; k^2\right),$$

$$K(\alpha) = \int_0^{\pi/2} (1 - \sin^2 \alpha \sin^2 t)^{-1/2} dt,$$

$$E = E(k) = E\left(\frac{\pi}{2}, k\right) = \int_0^{\pi/2} (1 - k^2 \sin^2 t)^{1/2} dt = \frac{\pi}{2} F\left(-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}; 1; k^2\right),$$

$$E(\alpha) = \int_0^{\pi/2} (1 - \sin^2 \alpha \sin^2 t)^{1/2} dt,$$

where $F\left(\pm\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}; 1; k^2\right)$ is the Gauss hypergeometric function.

2. *Complementary integrals*

In these expressions, primes do not mean derivatives.

$$K' = K'(k) = K(k') = \int_0^{\pi/2} (1 - (1 - k^2) \sin^2 t)^{-1/2} dt = F\left(\frac{\pi}{2}, k'\right),$$

$$E' = E'(k) = E(k') = \int_0^{\pi/2} (1 - (1 - k^2) \sin^2 t)^{1/2} dt = E\left(\frac{\pi}{2}, k'\right),$$

k is called the *modulus*; $k' = \sqrt{1 - k^2}$ is called the *complementary modulus*.

3. The *Legendre relation* is

$$K E' + E K' - K K' = \frac{\pi}{2}.$$

4. Extension of the range of ϕ

$$F(\pi, k) = 2K, \quad E(\pi, k) = 2E,$$

and, for $m = 0, 1, 2, \dots$,

$$F(\phi + m\pi, k) = mF(\pi, k) + F(\phi, k) = 2mK + F(\phi, k),$$

$$E(\phi + m\pi, k) = mE(\pi, k) + E(\phi, k) = 2mE + E(\phi, k).$$

6.20.3 NUMERICAL VALUES OF THE ELLIPTIC INTEGRALS

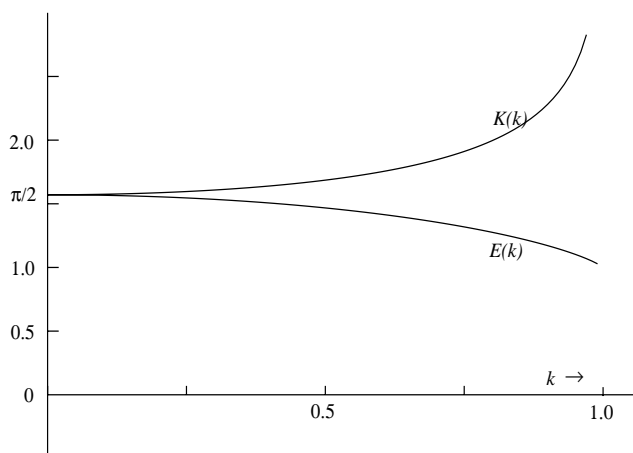
$$F(\phi, \alpha) = \int_0^\phi (1 - \sin^2 \alpha \sin^2 t)^{-1/2} dt \quad (\text{note that } k = \sin \alpha)$$

| ϕ | α | | | | | | | | | |
|------------|-----------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|
| | 0° | 10° | 20° | 30° | 40° | 50° | 60° | 70° | 80° | 90° |
| 0° | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 |
| 10° | 0.175 | 0.175 | 0.175 | 0.175 | 0.175 | 0.175 | 0.175 | 0.175 | 0.175 | 0.175 |
| 20° | 0.349 | 0.349 | 0.350 | 0.351 | 0.352 | 0.353 | 0.354 | 0.355 | 0.356 | 0.356 |
| 30° | 0.524 | 0.524 | 0.526 | 0.529 | 0.533 | 0.538 | 0.542 | 0.546 | 0.548 | 0.549 |
| 40° | 0.698 | 0.700 | 0.704 | 0.712 | 0.721 | 0.732 | 0.744 | 0.754 | 0.760 | 0.763 |
| 50° | 0.873 | 0.876 | 0.884 | 0.898 | 0.917 | 0.940 | 0.965 | 0.988 | 1.004 | 1.011 |
| 60° | 1.047 | 1.052 | 1.066 | 1.090 | 1.123 | 1.164 | 1.213 | 1.262 | 1.301 | 1.317 |
| 70° | 1.222 | 1.229 | 1.250 | 1.285 | 1.337 | 1.407 | 1.494 | 1.596 | 1.692 | 1.735 |
| 80° | 1.396 | 1.406 | 1.434 | 1.485 | 1.560 | 1.666 | 1.813 | 2.012 | 2.265 | 2.436 |
| 90° | 1.571 | 1.583 | 1.620 | 1.686 | 1.787 | 1.936 | 2.157 | 2.505 | 3.153 | ∞ |

$$E(\phi, \alpha) = \int_0^\phi (1 - \sin^2 \alpha \sin^2 t)^{1/2} dt \quad (\text{note that } k = \sin \alpha)$$

| ϕ | α | | | | | | | | | |
|------------|-----------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|
| | 0° | 10° | 20° | 30° | 40° | 50° | 60° | 70° | 80° | 90° |
| 0° | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 | 0.000 |
| 10° | 0.175 | 0.175 | 0.174 | 0.174 | 0.174 | 0.174 | 0.174 | 0.174 | 0.174 | 0.174 |
| 20° | 0.349 | 0.349 | 0.348 | 0.347 | 0.346 | 0.345 | 0.344 | 0.343 | 0.342 | 0.342 |
| 30° | 0.524 | 0.523 | 0.521 | 0.518 | 0.514 | 0.510 | 0.506 | 0.503 | 0.501 | 0.500 |
| 40° | 0.698 | 0.697 | 0.692 | 0.685 | 0.676 | 0.667 | 0.657 | 0.650 | 0.645 | 0.643 |
| 50° | 0.873 | 0.870 | 0.861 | 0.848 | 0.832 | 0.813 | 0.795 | 0.780 | 0.770 | 0.766 |
| 60° | 1.047 | 1.043 | 1.029 | 1.008 | 0.980 | 0.949 | 0.918 | 0.891 | 0.873 | 0.866 |
| 70° | 1.222 | 1.215 | 1.195 | 1.163 | 1.122 | 1.075 | 1.027 | 0.983 | 0.951 | 0.940 |
| 80° | 1.396 | 1.387 | 1.360 | 1.316 | 1.259 | 1.193 | 1.122 | 1.056 | 1.005 | 0.985 |
| 90° | 1.571 | 1.559 | 1.524 | 1.467 | 1.393 | 1.306 | 1.211 | 1.118 | 1.040 | 1.000 |

| α | $K(\alpha)$ | $K'(\alpha)$ | $E(\alpha)$ | $E'(\alpha)$ | k^2 | $K(k)$ | $K'(k)$ | $E(k)$ | $E'(k)$ |
|------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|-------|----------|----------|---------|---------|
| 0° | $\pi/2$ | ∞ | $\pi/2$ | 1 | 0 | $\pi/2$ | ∞ | $\pi/2$ | 1 |
| 5° | 1.574 | 3.832 | 1.568 | 1.013 | 0.05 | 1.591 | 2.908 | 1.551 | 1.060 |
| 10° | 1.583 | 3.153 | 1.559 | 1.040 | 0.10 | 1.612 | 2.578 | 1.531 | 1.105 |
| 15° | 1.598 | 2.768 | 1.544 | 1.076 | 0.15 | 1.635 | 2.389 | 1.510 | 1.143 |
| 20° | 1.620 | 2.505 | 1.524 | 1.118 | 0.20 | 1.660 | 2.257 | 1.489 | 1.178 |
| 25° | 1.649 | 2.309 | 1.498 | 1.164 | 0.25 | 1.686 | 2.157 | 1.467 | 1.211 |
| 30° | 1.686 | 2.157 | 1.467 | 1.211 | 0.30 | 1.714 | 2.075 | 1.445 | 1.242 |
| 35° | 1.731 | 2.035 | 1.432 | 1.259 | 0.35 | 1.744 | 2.008 | 1.423 | 1.271 |
| 40° | 1.787 | 1.936 | 1.393 | 1.306 | 0.40 | 1.778 | 1.950 | 1.399 | 1.298 |
| 45° | 1.854 | 1.854 | 1.351 | 1.351 | 0.45 | 1.814 | 1.899 | 1.375 | 1.325 |
| 50° | 1.936 | 1.787 | 1.306 | 1.393 | 0.50 | 1.854 | 1.854 | 1.351 | 1.351 |
| 55° | 2.035 | 1.731 | 1.259 | 1.432 | 0.55 | 1.899 | 1.814 | 1.325 | 1.375 |
| 60° | 2.157 | 1.686 | 1.211 | 1.467 | 0.60 | 1.950 | 1.778 | 1.298 | 1.399 |
| 65° | 2.309 | 1.649 | 1.164 | 1.498 | 0.65 | 2.008 | 1.744 | 1.271 | 1.423 |
| 70° | 2.505 | 1.620 | 1.118 | 1.524 | 0.70 | 2.075 | 1.714 | 1.242 | 1.445 |
| 75° | 2.768 | 1.598 | 1.076 | 1.544 | 0.75 | 2.157 | 1.686 | 1.211 | 1.467 |
| 80° | 3.153 | 1.583 | 1.040 | 1.559 | 0.80 | 2.257 | 1.660 | 1.178 | 1.489 |
| 85° | 3.832 | 1.574 | 1.013 | 1.568 | 0.85 | 2.389 | 1.635 | 1.143 | 1.510 |
| 90° | ∞ | $\pi/2$ | 1 | $\pi/2$ | 0.90 | 2.578 | 1.612 | 1.105 | 1.531 |
| | | | | | 0.95 | 2.908 | 1.591 | 1.060 | 1.551 |
| | | | | | 1 | ∞ | $\pi/2$ | 1 | $\pi/2$ |



The complete elliptic integrals $E(k)$ and $K(k)$, $0 \leq k \leq 1$.¹

¹From Temme, N.M., *Special Functions: An Introduction to the Classical Functions of Mathematical Physics*, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1996. With permission.

6.21 JACOBIAN ELLIPTIC FUNCTIONS

The *Jacobian Elliptic functions* are the inverses of elliptic integrals. If $u = F(\phi, k)$ (the elliptic integral of the first kind)

$$u = \int_0^\phi \frac{d\theta}{\sqrt{1 - k^2 \sin^2 \theta}} = \int_0^{\sin \phi} \frac{dt}{\sqrt{(1 - t^2)(1 - k^2 t^2)}}, \quad (6.21.1)$$

with $k^2 < 1$, then the inverse function is

$$\phi = \operatorname{am} u \quad (\text{the amplitude of } u). \quad (6.21.2)$$

(Note that the parameter k is not always explicitly written.) The Jacobian elliptic functions are then defined as

1. $\operatorname{sn} u = \operatorname{sn}(u, k) = \sin \phi = \sin(\operatorname{am} u)$
2. $\operatorname{cn} u = \operatorname{cn}(u, k) = \cos \phi = \cos(\operatorname{am} u) = \sqrt{1 - \operatorname{sn}^2 u}$
3. $\operatorname{dn} u = \operatorname{dn}(u, k) = \sqrt{1 - k^2 \sin^2 \phi} = \sqrt{1 - k^2 \operatorname{sn}^2 u}$

Note that

$$u = \int_1^{\operatorname{cn}(u, k)} \frac{dt}{\sqrt{(1 - t^2)(k'^2 + k^2 t^2)}}, \quad (6.21.3)$$

$$u = \int_1^{\operatorname{dn}(u, k)} \frac{dt}{\sqrt{(1 - t^2)(t^2 - k'^2)}}.$$

6.21.1 PROPERTIES

1. Relationships

$$\begin{aligned} \operatorname{sn}^2(u, k) + \operatorname{cn}^2(u, k) &= 1, \\ \operatorname{dn}^2(u, k) + k^2 \operatorname{sn}^2(u, k) &= 1, \\ \operatorname{dn}^2(u, k) - k^2 \operatorname{cn}^2(u, k) &= 1 - k^2 = k'^2. \end{aligned}$$

2. Special values

- | | | |
|------------------------------------|---|--|
| (a) $\operatorname{sn}(0, k) = 0,$ | (e) $\operatorname{sn}(u, 0) = \sin u,$ | (h) $\operatorname{sn}(u, 1) = \tanh u,$ |
| (b) $\operatorname{cn}(0, k) = 1,$ | (f) $\operatorname{cn}(u, 0) = \cos u,$ | (i) $\operatorname{cn}(u, 1) = \operatorname{sech} u,$ |
| (c) $\operatorname{dn}(0, k) = 1,$ | (g) $\operatorname{dn}(u, 0) = 1,$ | (j) $\operatorname{dn}(u, 1) = \operatorname{sech} u.$ |
| (d) $\operatorname{am}(0, k) = 0,$ | | |

3. Symmetry properties

$$(a) \operatorname{sn}(-u) = -\operatorname{sn}(u),$$

$$(c) \operatorname{dn}(-u) = \operatorname{dn}(u),$$

$$(b) \operatorname{cn}(-u) = \operatorname{cn}(u),$$

$$(d) \operatorname{am}(-u) = -\operatorname{am}(u).$$

4. Addition formulae

$$(a) \operatorname{sn}(u \pm v) = \frac{\operatorname{sn} u \operatorname{cn} v \operatorname{dn} v \pm \operatorname{cn} u \operatorname{sn} v \operatorname{dn} u}{1 - k^2 \operatorname{sn}^2 u \operatorname{sn}^2 v},$$

$$(b) \operatorname{cn}(u \pm v) = \frac{\operatorname{cn} u \operatorname{cn} v \mp \operatorname{sn} u \operatorname{dn} u \operatorname{sn} v \operatorname{dn} v}{1 - k^2 \operatorname{sn}^2 u \operatorname{sn}^2 v},$$

$$(c) \operatorname{dn}(u \pm v) = \frac{\operatorname{dn} u \operatorname{dn} v \mp k^2 \operatorname{sn} u \operatorname{cn} u \operatorname{sn} v \operatorname{cn} v}{1 - k^2 \operatorname{sn}^2 u \operatorname{sn}^2 v}.$$

5. The elliptic functions are *doubly periodic functions* with respect to the variable u . The periods of

$$\operatorname{sn}(u, k) \quad \text{are} \quad 4K \quad \text{and} \quad 2iK',$$

$$\operatorname{cn}(u, k) \quad \text{are} \quad 4K' \quad \text{and} \quad 2K + 2iK',$$

$$\operatorname{dn}(u, k) \quad \text{are} \quad 2K \quad \text{and} \quad 4iK'.$$

6.21.2 DERIVATIVES AND INTEGRALS

$$1. \frac{d}{du} \operatorname{sn} u = \operatorname{cn} u \operatorname{dn} u.$$

$$4. \int \operatorname{sn} u \, du = \frac{1}{k} (\operatorname{dn} u - k \operatorname{cn} u).$$

$$2. \frac{d}{du} \operatorname{cn} u = -\operatorname{sn} u \operatorname{dn} u.$$

$$5. \int \operatorname{cn} u \, du = \frac{1}{k} \cos^{-1}(\operatorname{dn} u).$$

$$3. \frac{d}{du} \operatorname{dn} u = -k^2 \operatorname{cn} u \operatorname{dn} u.$$

$$6. \int \operatorname{dn} u \, du = \operatorname{am} u = \sin^{-1}(\operatorname{sn} u).$$

6.21.3 SERIES EXPANSIONS

$$\begin{aligned} \operatorname{sn}(u, k) &= u - (1 + k^2) \frac{u^3}{3!} + (1 + 14k^2 + k^4) \frac{u^5}{5!} \\ &\quad - (1 + 135k^2 + 135k^4 + k^6) \frac{u^7}{7!} + \dots, \end{aligned} \tag{6.21.4}$$

$$\operatorname{cn}(u, k) = 1 - \frac{u^2}{2!} + (1 + 4k^2) \frac{u^4}{4!} - (1 + 44k^2 + 16k^4) \frac{u^6}{6!} + \dots,$$

$$\operatorname{dn}(u, k) = 1 - k^2 \frac{u^2}{2!} + k^2(4 + k^2) \frac{u^4}{4!} - k^2(16 + 44k^2 + k^4) \frac{u^6}{6!} + \dots$$

Let the nome q be defined by $q = e^{-\pi K/K'}$ and $v = \pi u/(2K)$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \operatorname{sn}(u, k) &= \frac{2\pi}{kK} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{q^{n+\frac{1}{2}}}{1-q^{2n+1}} \sin[(2n+1)v], \\ \operatorname{cn}(u, k) &= \frac{2\pi}{kK} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{q^{n+\frac{1}{2}}}{1+q^{2n+1}} \cos[(2n+1)v], \\ \operatorname{dn}(u, k) &= \frac{\pi}{2K} + \frac{2\pi}{K} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{q^n}{1+q^{2n}} \cos(2nv). \end{aligned} \tag{6.21.5}$$

6.22 CLEBSCH–GORDAN COEFFICIENTS

These coefficients arise in the integration of three spherical harmonic functions (see equation 6.10.10 on page 539).

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{pmatrix} j_1 & j_2 & j \\ m_1 & m_2 & m \end{pmatrix} &= \delta_{m, m_1+m_2} \sqrt{\frac{(j_1+j_2-j)!(j+j_1-j_2)!(j+j_2-j_1)!(2j+1)}{(j+j_1+j_2+1)!}} \\ &\times \sum_k \frac{(-1)^k \sqrt{(j_1+m_1)!(j_1-m_1)!(j_2+m_2)!(j_2-m_2)!(j+m)!(j-m)!}}{k!(j_1+j_2-j-k)!(j_1-m_1-k)!(j_2+m_2-k)!(j-j_2+m_1+k)!(j-j_1-m_2+k)!}. \end{aligned}$$

1. Conditions:

- (a) Each of $\{j_1, j_2, j, m_1, m_2, m\}$ may be an integer, or half an integer. Additionally: $j > 0$, $j_1 > 0$, $j_2 > 0$ and $j + j_1 + j_2$ is an integer.
- (b) $j_1 + j_2 - j \geq 0$.
- (c) $j_1 - j_2 + j \geq 0$.
- (d) $-j_1 + j_2 + j \geq 0$.
- (e) $|m_1| \leq j_1$, $|m_2| \leq j_2$, $|m| \leq j$.

2. Special values:

- (a) $\begin{pmatrix} j_1 & j_2 & j \\ m_1 & m_2 & m \end{pmatrix} = 0$ if $m_1 + m_2 \neq m$.
- (b) $\begin{pmatrix} j_1 & 0 & j \\ m_1 & 0 & m \end{pmatrix} = \delta_{j_1, j} \delta_{m_1, m}$.
- (c) $\begin{pmatrix} j_1 & j_2 & j \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = 0$ when $j_1 + j_2 + j$ is an odd integer.
- (d) $\begin{pmatrix} j_1 & j_1 & j \\ m_1 & m_1 & m \end{pmatrix} = 0$ when $2j_1 + j$ is an odd integer.

3. Symmetry relations: all of the following are equal to $\begin{pmatrix} j_1 & j_2 & j \\ m_1 & m_2 & m \end{pmatrix}$:

- (a) $\begin{pmatrix} j_2 & j_1 & j \\ -m_2 & -m_1 & -m \end{pmatrix}$,

- (b) $(-1)^{j_1+j_2-j} \begin{pmatrix} j_2 & j_1 & j \\ m_1 & m_2 & m \end{pmatrix},$
(c) $(-1)^{j_1+j_2-j} \begin{pmatrix} j_1 & j_2 & j \\ -m_1 & -m_2 & -m \end{pmatrix},$
(d) $\sqrt{\frac{2j+1}{2j_1+1}} (-1)^{j_2+m_2} \begin{pmatrix} j & j_2 & j_1 \\ -m & m_2 & -m_1 \end{pmatrix},$
(e) $\sqrt{\frac{2j+1}{2j_1+1}} (-1)^{j_1-m_1+j-m} \begin{pmatrix} j & j_2 & j_1 \\ m & -m_2 & m_1 \end{pmatrix},$
(f) $\sqrt{\frac{2j+1}{2j_1+1}} (-1)^{j-m+j_1-m_1} \begin{pmatrix} j_2 & j & j_1 \\ m_2 & -m & -m_1 \end{pmatrix},$
(g) $\sqrt{\frac{2j+1}{2j_2+1}} (-1)^{j_1-m_1} \begin{pmatrix} j_1 & j & j_2 \\ m_1 & -m & -m_2 \end{pmatrix},$
(h) $\sqrt{\frac{2j+1}{2j_2+1}} (-1)^{j_1-m_1} \begin{pmatrix} j & j_1 & j_2 \\ m & -m_1 & m_2 \end{pmatrix}.$

By use of the symmetry relations, Clebsch–Gordan coefficients may be put in the standard form $j_1 \leq j_2 \leq j$ and $m \geq 0$.

| m_2 | m | j_1 | j | $\begin{pmatrix} j_1 & \frac{1}{2} & j \\ m_1 & m_2 & m \end{pmatrix}$ | m_2 | m | j_1 | j | $\begin{pmatrix} j_1 & 1 & j \\ m_1 & m_2 & m \end{pmatrix}$ |
|----------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|--|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|--|
| $-\frac{1}{2}$ | 0 | $\frac{1}{2}$ | 1 | $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \approx 0.707107$ | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \approx 0.707107$ |
| 0 | $\frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{1}{2}$ | 1 | $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \approx 0.866025$ | $\frac{1}{2}$ | 0 | $\frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{3}{2}$ | $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \approx 0.707107$ |
| $\frac{1}{2}$ | 0 | $\frac{1}{2}$ | 1 | $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \approx 0.707107$ | $\frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{1}{2}$ | 1 | 1 | $-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{4} \approx -0.353553$ |
| $\frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{1}{2}$ | 1 | $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \approx 0.866025$ | $\frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{1}{2}$ | 1 | 2 | $\frac{\sqrt{10}}{4} \approx 0.790569$ |
| $\frac{1}{2}$ | 1 | $\frac{1}{2}$ | 1 | 1 ≈ 1.000000 | $\frac{1}{2}$ | 1 | $\frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{3}{2}$ | $\frac{\sqrt{30}}{6} \approx 0.912871$ |
| | | | | | $\frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{3}{2}$ | 1 | 2 | $\frac{\sqrt{105}}{12} \approx 0.853913$ |
| -1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \approx 0.707107$ | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | $-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \approx -0.707107$ |
| -1 | 0 | 1 | 2 | $\frac{\sqrt{6}}{6} \approx 0.408248$ | 1 | 0 | 1 | 2 | $\frac{\sqrt{6}}{6} \approx 0.408248$ |
| $-\frac{1}{2}$ | 0 | $\frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{3}{2}$ | $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \approx 0.707107$ | 1 | $\frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{3}{2}$ | $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{3} \approx 0.577350$ |
| $-\frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{1}{2}$ | 1 | 1 | $\frac{3}{4} \approx 0.750000$ | 1 | $\frac{1}{2}$ | 1 | 1 | $-\frac{3}{4} \approx -0.750000$ |
| $-\frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{1}{2}$ | 1 | 2 | $\frac{\sqrt{5}}{4} \approx 0.559017$ | 1 | $\frac{1}{2}$ | 1 | 2 | $\frac{\sqrt{5}}{4} \approx 0.559017$ |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 2 | $\frac{\sqrt{6}}{3} \approx 0.816496$ | 1 | 1 | $\frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{3}{2}$ | $\frac{\sqrt{10}}{4} \approx 0.790569$ |
| 0 | 0 | $\frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{3}{2}$ | $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \approx 0.866025$ | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | $-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \approx -0.707107$ |
| 0 | $\frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{3}{2}$ | $\frac{\sqrt{6}}{3} \approx 0.8164967$ | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \approx 0.707107$ |
| 0 | $\frac{1}{2}$ | 1 | 1 | $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{4} \approx 0.353553$ | 1 | $\frac{3}{2}$ | $\frac{1}{2}$ | $\frac{3}{2}$ | 1 ≈ 1.000000 |
| 0 | $\frac{1}{2}$ | 1 | 2 | $\frac{\sqrt{10}}{4} \approx 0.790569$ | 1 | $\frac{3}{2}$ | 1 | 2 | $\frac{\sqrt{105}}{12} \approx 0.853913$ |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \approx 0.707107$ | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 ≈ 1.000000 |

6.23 INTEGRAL TRANSFORMS: PRELIMINARIES

1. $I = (a, b)$ is an interval, where $-\infty \leq a < b \leq \infty$.
2. $L^1(I)$ is the set of all absolutely integrable functions on I . In particular, $L^1(\mathbb{R})$ is the set of all absolutely integrable functions on the real line \mathbb{R} .
3. $L^2(I)$ is the set of all square integrable functions on I (i.e., $\int_I |f(x)|^2 dx < \infty$).
4. If f is integrable over every finite closed subinterval of I , but not necessarily on I itself, we say that f is *locally integrable* on I . For example, the function $f(x) = 1/x$ is not integrable on the interval $I = (0, 1)$, yet it is locally integrable on it.
5. A function $f(x)$, defined on a closed interval $[a, b]$, is said to be of *bounded variation* if there is an $M > 0$ such that, for any partition $a = x_0 < x_1 < \dots < x_n = b$, the following relation holds:
$$\sum_{i=1}^n |f(x_i) - f(x_{i-1})| \leq M.$$
6. If f has a derivative f' at every point of $[a, b]$, then by the mean value theorem, for any $a \leq x < y \leq b$, we have $f(x) - f(y) = f'(z)(x - y)$, for some $x < z < y$. If f' is bounded, then f is of bounded variation.
7. The left limit of a function $f(x)$ at a point t (if it exists) will be denoted by $\lim_{x \rightarrow t^-} f(x) = f(t^-)$, and likewise the right limit at t will be denoted by $\lim_{x \rightarrow t^+} f(x) = f(t^+)$.

6.24 FOURIER TRANSFORM

The origin of the Fourier integral transformation can be traced to Fourier's celebrated work on the *Analytical Theory of Heat*, which appeared in 1822. Fourier's major finding was to show that an "arbitrary" function defined on a finite interval could be expanded in a trigonometric series (series of sinusoidal functions, see Section 1.4). In an attempt to extend his results to functions defined on the infinite interval $(-\infty, \infty)$, Fourier introduced what is now known as the Fourier integral transform.

The *Fourier integral transform* of a function $f(t)$ is defined by

$$\mathcal{F}(f)(\omega) = \hat{f}(\omega) = F(\omega) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(t)e^{it\omega} dt, \quad (6.24.1)$$

whenever the integral exists.

There is no universal agreement on the definition of the Fourier integral transform. Some authors take the kernel of the transformation as $e^{-it\omega}$, so that the kernel

of the inverse transformation is $e^{it\omega}$. In either case, if we define the Fourier transform as

$$\hat{f}(\omega) = a \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(t)e^{\pm it\omega} dt,$$

$$\text{then its inverse is } f(t) = b \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{f}(\omega)e^{\mp it\omega} d\omega, \quad (6.24.2)$$

for some constants a and b , with $ab = 1/2\pi$. Again there is no agreement on the choice of the constants; sometimes one of them is taken as 1 so that the other is $1/(2\pi)$. For the sake of symmetry, we choose $a = b = 1/\sqrt{2\pi}$. The functions f and \hat{f} are called a *Fourier transform pair*.

Another definition that is popular in the engineering literature is the one in which the kernel of the transform is taken as $e^{2\pi it\omega}$ (or $e^{-2\pi it\omega}$) so that the kernel of the inverse transform is $e^{-2\pi it\omega}$ (or $e^{2\pi it\omega}$). The main advantage of this definition is that the constants a and b disappear and the Fourier transform pair becomes

$$\hat{f}(\omega) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(t)e^{\pm 2\pi it\omega} dt \quad \text{and} \quad f(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{f}(\omega)e^{\mp 2\pi it\omega} d\omega. \quad (6.24.3)$$

The Fourier cosine and sine coefficients of $f(t)$ are defined by

$$a(\omega) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(t) \cos \omega t dt \quad \text{and} \quad b(\omega) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(t) \sin \omega t dt. \quad (6.24.4)$$

The Fourier cosine and sine coefficients are related to the Fourier cosine and sine integral transforms. For example, if f is even, then $a(\omega) = \sqrt{2/\pi}F_c(\omega)$ and, if f is odd, $b(\omega) = \sqrt{2/\pi}F_s(\omega)$ (see Section 6.24.7).

Two other integrals related to the Fourier integral transform are Fourier's repeated integral and the allied integral. *Fourier's repeated integral*, $S(f, t)$, of $f(t)$ is defined by

$$\begin{aligned} S(f, t) &= \int_0^{\infty} (a(\omega) \cos t\omega + b(\omega) \sin t\omega) d\omega, \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{\infty} d\omega \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) \cos \omega(t-x) dx. \end{aligned} \quad (6.24.5)$$

The *allied Fourier integral*, $\tilde{S}(f, t)$, of f is defined by

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{S}(f, t) &= \int_0^{\infty} (b(\omega) \cos t\omega - a(\omega) \sin t\omega) d\omega, \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{\infty} d\omega \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) \sin \omega(x-t) dx. \end{aligned} \quad (6.24.6)$$

6.24.1 EXISTENCE

For the Fourier integral transform to exist, it is sufficient that f be absolutely integrable on $(-\infty, \infty)$, i.e., $f \in L^1(\mathbb{R})$.

THEOREM 6.24.1 (Riemann–Lebesgue lemma)

If $f \in L^1(\mathbb{R})$, then its Fourier transform $\hat{f}(\omega)$ is defined everywhere, uniformly continuous, and tends to zero as $\omega \rightarrow \pm\infty$.

The uniform continuity follows from the relationship

$$\left| \hat{f}(\omega + h) - \hat{f}(\omega) \right| \leq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |f(t)| |e^{iht} - 1| dt,$$

and the tendency toward zero as $\omega \rightarrow \pm\infty$ is a consequence of the Riemann–Lebesgue lemma.

THEOREM 6.24.2 (Generalized Riemann–Lebesgue lemma)

Let $f \in L^1(I)$, where $I = (a, b)$ is finite or infinite and let ω be a real variable. Let $a \leq a' < b' \leq b$ and $\hat{f}_\omega(\lambda, a', b') = \int_{a'}^{b'} f(t)e^{i\lambda\omega t} dt$. Then $\lim_{\omega \rightarrow \pm\infty} \hat{f}_\omega(\lambda, a', b') = 0$, and the convergence is uniform in a' and b' . In particular, $\lim_{\omega \rightarrow \pm\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(t)e^{i\omega t} dt = 0$.

6.24.2 PROPERTIES

1. *Linearity:* The Fourier transform is linear,

$$\mathcal{F}[af(t) + bg(t)](\omega) = a\mathcal{F}[f(t)](\omega) + b\mathcal{F}[g(t)](\omega) = a\hat{f}(\omega) + b\hat{g}(\omega),$$

where a and b are complex numbers.

2. *Translation:* $\mathcal{F}[f(t - b)](\omega) = e^{ib\omega} \hat{f}(\omega)$.
3. *Dilation (scaling):* $\mathcal{F}[f(at)](\omega) = \frac{1}{a} \hat{f}\left(\frac{\omega}{a}\right)$, $a > 0$.
4. *Translation and dilation:*

$$\mathcal{F}[f(at - b)](\omega) = \frac{1}{a} e^{ib\omega/a} \hat{f}\left(\frac{\omega}{a}\right), \quad a > 0.$$

5. *Complex conjugation:* $\mathcal{F}[\overline{f(t)}](\omega) = \overline{\hat{f}(-\omega)}$.

6. *Modulation:* $\mathcal{F}[e^{iat}f(t)](\omega) = \hat{f}(\omega + a)$, and

$$\mathcal{F}[e^{iat}f(bt)](\omega) = \frac{1}{b} \hat{f}\left(\frac{\omega + a}{b}\right), \quad b > 0. \quad (6.24.7)$$

7. *Differentiation:* If $f^{(k)} \in L^1(\mathbb{R})$, for $k = 0, 1, 2, \dots, n$ and $\lim_{|t| \rightarrow \infty} f^{(k)}(t) = 0$ for $k = 0, 1, 2, \dots, n - 1$, then

$$\mathcal{F}[f^{(n)}(t)](\omega) = (-i\omega)^n \hat{f}(\omega). \quad (6.24.8)$$

8. *Integration:* Let $f \in L^1(\mathbb{R})$, and define $g(x) = \int_{-\infty}^x f(t) dt$. If $g \in L^1(\mathbb{R})$, then $\hat{g}(\omega) = -\hat{f}(\omega)/(i\omega)$.

9. *Multiplication by polynomials:* If $t^k f(t) \in L^1(\mathbb{R})$ for $k = 0, 1, \dots, n$, then

$$\mathcal{F}[t^k f(t)](\omega) = \frac{1}{(i)^k} \hat{f}^{(k)}(\omega), \quad (6.24.9)$$

and hence,

$$\mathcal{F}\left[\left(\sum_{k=0}^n a_k t^k\right) f(t)\right](\omega) = \sum_{k=0}^n \frac{a_k}{(i)^k} \hat{f}^{(k)}(\omega). \quad (6.24.10)$$

10. *Convolution:* The convolution operation, \star , associated with the Fourier transform is defined as

$$h(t) = (f \star g)(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x)g(t-x)dx,$$

where f and g are defined over the whole real line.

THEOREM 6.24.3

If f and g belong to $L^1(\mathbb{R})$, then so does h . Moreover, $\hat{h}(\omega) = \hat{f}(\omega)\hat{g}(\omega)$. If \hat{f} and \hat{g} belong to $L^1(\mathbb{R})$, then $(\hat{f} \star \hat{g})(\omega) = \widehat{(fg)}(\omega)$.

11. *Parseval's relation:* If $f, g \in L^2(\mathbb{R})$, and if F and G are the Fourier transforms of f and g respectively, then Parseval's relation is

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} F(\omega)G(\omega) d\omega = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(t)g(-t) dt. \quad (6.24.11)$$

Replacing G by \overline{G} (so that $g(-t)$ is replaced by $\overline{g(t)}$) results in a more convenient form of Parseval's relation

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} F(\omega)\overline{G}(\omega) d\omega = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(t)\overline{g(t)} dt. \quad (6.24.12)$$

In particular, for $f = g$,

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |F(\omega)|^2 d\omega = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |f(t)|^2 dt. \quad (6.24.13)$$

6.24.3 INVERSION FORMULA

Many of the theorems on the inversion of the Fourier transform are based on *Dini's condition* which can be stated as follows:

If $f \in L^1(\mathbb{R})$, then a necessary and sufficient condition for

$$S(f, x) = \lim_{\lambda \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(t) \frac{\sin \lambda(x-t)}{(x-t)} dt = a \quad (6.24.14)$$

is that

$$\lim_{\lambda \rightarrow \infty} \int_0^{\delta} (f(x+y) + f(x-y) - 2a) \frac{\sin \lambda y}{y} dy = 0, \quad (6.24.15)$$

for any fixed $\delta > 0$.

By the Riemann–Lebesgue lemma, this condition is satisfied if

$$\int_0^{\delta} \left| \frac{f(x+y) + f(x-y) - 2a}{y} \right| dy < \infty, \quad (6.24.16)$$

for some $\delta > 0$. In particular, condition (6.24.16) holds for $a = f(x)$, if f is differentiable at x , and for $a = [f(x+) + f(x-)]/2$, if f is of bounded variation in a neighborhood of x .

THEOREM 6.24.4 (*Inversion theorem*)

Let f be a locally integrable function, of bounded variation in a neighborhood of the point x . If f satisfies either one of the following conditions:

1. $f(t) \in L^1(\mathbb{R})$, or
2. $f(t)/(1+|t|) \in L^1(\mathbb{R})$, and the integral $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(t)e^{i\omega t} dt$ converges uniformly on every finite interval of ω ,

then

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{f}(\omega) e^{-ix\omega} d\omega = \lim_{\lambda \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\lambda}^{\lambda} \hat{f}(\omega) e^{-ix\omega} d\omega$$

is equal to $[f(x+) + f(x-)]/2$ whenever the expression has meaning, to $f(x)$ whenever $f(x)$ is continuous at x , and to $f(x)$ almost everywhere. If f is continuous and of bounded variation in the interval (a, b) , then the convergence is uniform in any interval interior to (a, b) .

6.24.4 POISSON SUMMATION FORMULA

The Poisson summation formula may be written in the form

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} f\left(t + \frac{k\pi}{\sigma}\right) = \frac{\sigma}{\pi} \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{f}(2k\sigma) e^{-2ikt\sigma}, \quad \sigma > 0, \quad (6.24.17)$$

provided that the two series converge. A sufficient condition for the validity of Equation (6.24.17) is that $f = O(1 + |t|)^{-\alpha}$ as $|t| \rightarrow \infty$, and $\hat{f} = O((1 + |\omega|)^{-\alpha})$ as $|\omega| \rightarrow \infty$ for some $\alpha > 1$.

Another version of the Poisson summation formula is

$$\sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} \hat{f}(\omega + k\sigma) \bar{g}(\omega + k\sigma) = \frac{1}{\sigma} \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} \left(\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(t) \bar{g} \left(t - \frac{2\pi k}{\sigma} \right) dt \right) e^{2\pi i k \omega / \sigma}. \quad (6.24.18)$$

6.2.4.5 SHANNON'S SAMPLING THEOREM

If f is a function *band-limited* to $[-\sigma, \sigma]$, i.e.,

$$f(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\sigma}^{\sigma} F(\omega) e^{it\omega} d\omega,$$

with $F \in L^2(-\sigma, \sigma)$, then it can be reconstructed from its sample values at the points $t_k = (k\pi)/\sigma, k = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$, via the formula

$$f(t) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} f(t_k) \frac{\sin \sigma(t - t_k)}{\sigma(t - t_k)}, \quad (6.24.19)$$

with the series absolutely and uniformly convergent on compact sets.

The series on the right-hand side of Equation (6.24.19) can be written as $\sin \sigma t \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} f(t_k) \frac{(-1)^k}{(\sigma t - k\pi)}$, which is a special case of a Cardinal series (these series have the form $\sin \sigma t \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} C_k \frac{(-1)^k}{(\sigma t - k\pi)}$).

6.2.4.6 UNCERTAINTY PRINCIPLE

Let T and W be two real numbers defined by

$$T^2 = \frac{1}{E} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} t^2 |f(t)|^2 dt \quad \text{and} \quad W^2 = \frac{1}{E} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \omega^2 |\hat{f}(\omega)|^2 d\omega, \quad (6.24.20)$$

where

$$E = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |f(t)|^2 dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |\hat{f}(\omega)|^2 d\omega. \quad (6.24.21)$$

Assuming that f is differentiable and $\lim_{|t| \rightarrow \infty} t f^2(t) = 0$, then $2TW \geq 1$, or

$$\left(\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} t^2 |f(t)|^2 dt \right)^{1/2} \left(\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \omega^2 |\hat{f}(\omega)|^2 d\omega \right)^{1/2} \geq \frac{1}{2} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |f(t)|^2 dt. \quad (6.24.22)$$

This means that f and \hat{f} cannot both be very small. Another related property of the Fourier transform is that, if either one of the functions f or \hat{f} vanishes outside some finite interval, then the other one must trail on to infinity. In other words, they can not both vanish outside any finite interval.

6.24.7 FOURIER SINE AND COSINE TRANSFORMS

The *Fourier cosine transform*, $F_c(\omega)$, and the *Fourier sine transform*, $F_s(\omega)$, of $f(t)$ are defined for $\omega > 0$ as

$$F_c(\omega) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_0^\infty f(t) \cos \omega t dt \quad \text{and} \quad F_s(\omega) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_0^\infty f(t) \sin \omega t dt. \quad (6.24.23)$$

The inverse transforms have the same functional form:

$$f(t) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_0^\infty F_c(\omega) \cos \omega t d\omega = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_0^\infty F_s(\omega) \sin \omega t d\omega. \quad (6.24.24)$$

If f is even, i.e., $f(t) = f(-t)$, then $F(\omega) = F_c(\omega)$, and if f is odd, i.e., $f(t) = -f(-t)$, then $F(\omega) = iF_s(\omega)$.

6.25 DISCRETE FOURIER TRANSFORM (DFT)

The *discrete Fourier transform* of the sequence $\{a_n\}_{n=0}^{N-1}$, where $N \geq 1$, is a sequence $\{A_m\}_{m=0}^{N-1}$, defined by

$$A_m = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} a_n (W_N)^{mn}, \quad \text{for } m = 0, 1, \dots, N-1, \quad (6.25.1)$$

where $W_N = e^{2\pi i/N}$. Note that $\sum_{m=0}^{N-1} W_N^{m(k-n)} = N\delta_{kn}$. For example, the DFT of the sequence $\{1, 0, 1, 1\}$ is $\{3, -i, 1, i\}$.

The inversion formula is

$$a_n = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{m=0}^{N-1} A_m W_N^{-mn}, \quad n = 0, 1, \dots, N-1. \quad (6.25.2)$$

Equations (6.25.1) and (6.25.2) are called a discrete Fourier transform (DFT) pair of order N . The factor $1/N$ and the negative sign in the exponent of W_N that appear in Equation (6.25.2) are sometimes introduced in Equation (6.25.1) instead. We use the notation

$$\mathcal{F}_N[(a_n)] = A_m \quad \mathcal{F}_N^{-1}[(A_m)] = a_n, \quad (6.25.3)$$

to indicate that the discrete Fourier transform of order N of the sequence $\{a_n\}$ is $\{A_m\}$ and that the inverse transform of $\{A_m\}$ is $\{a_n\}$.

Because $W_N^{\pm(m+N)n} = W_N^{\pm mn}$, Equations (6.25.1) and (6.25.2) can be used to extend the sequences $\{a_n\}_{n=0}^{N-1}$ and $\{A_m\}_{m=0}^{N-1}$, as periodic sequences with period N . This means that $A_{m+N} = A_m$, and $a_{n+N} = a_n$. This will be used in what follows without explicit note. Using this, the summation limits, 0 and $N-1$, can

be replaced with n_1 and $n_1 + N - 1$, respectively, where n_1 is any integer. In the special case where $n_1 = -M$ and $N = 2M + 1$, Equations (6.25.1) and (6.25.2) become

$$A_m = \sum_{n=-M}^M a_n W_N^{mn}, \quad \text{for } m = -M, -M + 1, \dots, M - 1, M, \quad (6.25.4)$$

and

$$a_n = \frac{1}{2M + 1} \sum_{m=-M}^M A_m W_N^{-mn}, \quad \text{for } n = -M, -M + 1, \dots, M - 1, M. \quad (6.25.5)$$

6.25.1 PROPERTIES

1. *Linearity:* The discrete Fourier transform is linear, that is

$$\mathcal{F}_N[\alpha(a_n) + \beta(b_n)] = \alpha A_m + \beta B_m,$$

for any complex numbers α and β , where the sum of two sequences is defined as $(a_n) + (b_n) = (a_n + b_n)$.

2. *Translation:* $\mathcal{F}_N[(a_{n-k})] = W_N^{mk} A_m$, or $e^{2\pi imk/N} A_m = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} a_{n-k} W_N^{mn}$.

3. *Modulation:* $\mathcal{F}_N[(W_N^{nk} a_n)] = A_{m+k}$, or $A_{m+k} = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} e^{2\pi ink/N} a_n W_N^{mn}$.

4. *Complex Conjugation:* $\mathcal{F}_N[(\bar{a}_{-n})] = \bar{A}_m$, or $\bar{A}_m = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \bar{a}_{-n} W_N^{mn}$.

5. *Symmetry:* $\mathcal{F}_N[(a_{-n})] = A_{-m}$, or $A_{-m} = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} a_{-n} W_N^{mn}$.

6. *Convolution:* The convolution of the sequences $\{a_n\}_{n=0}^{N-1}$ and $\{b_n\}_{n=0}^{N-1}$ is the sequence $\{c_n\}_{n=0}^{N-1}$ given by

$$c_n = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} a_k b_{n-k}. \quad (6.25.6)$$

The *convolution relation of the DFT* is $\mathcal{F}_N[(c_n)] = \mathcal{F}_N[(a_n)]\mathcal{F}_N[(b_n)]$, or $C_m = A_m B_m$. A consequence of this and Equation (6.25.2), is the relation

$$\sum_{k=0}^{N-1} a_k b_{n-k} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{m=0}^{N-1} A_m B_m W_N^{-mn}. \quad (6.25.7)$$

7. *Parseval's relation:*

$$\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} a_n \bar{a}_n = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{m=0}^{N-1} A_m \bar{A}_m. \quad (6.25.8)$$

In particular,

$$\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} |a_n|^2 = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{m=0}^{N-1} |A_m|^2. \quad (6.25.9)$$

In (4) and (5), the fact that $\overline{W_N} = W_N^{-1}$ has been used. A sequence $\{a_n\}$ is said to be even if $\{a_{-n}\} = \{a_n\}$ and is said to be odd if $\{a_{-n}\} = \{-a_n\}$. The following are consequences of (4) and (5):

1. If $\{a_n\}$ is a sequence of real numbers (i.e., $\overline{a_n} = a_n$), then $\overline{A_m} = A_{-m}$.
2. $\{a_n\}$ is real and even if and only if $\{A_m\}$ is real and even.
3. $\{a_n\}$ is real and odd if and only if $\{A_m\}$ is pure imaginary and odd.

6.26 FAST FOURIER TRANSFORM (FFT)

To determine A_m for each $m = 0, 1, \dots, M - 1$ (using Equation (6.25.1)), $M - 1$ multiplications are required. Hence the total number of multiplications required to determine all the A_m 's is $(M - 1)^2$. This number can be reduced by using decimation.

Assuming M is even, we define $M = 2N$ and write

$$\mathcal{F}_{2N}[(a_n)] = A_m. \quad (6.26.1)$$

Now split $\{a_n\}$ into two sequences, one consisting of terms with even subscripts ($b_n = a_{2n}$) and one with odd subscripts ($c_n = a_{2n+1}$). Then

$$A_m = B_m + W_{2N}^m C_m. \quad (6.26.2)$$

For the evaluation of B_m and C_m , the total number of multiplications required is $2(N - 1)^2$. To determine A_m from Equation (6.26.2), we must calculate the product $W_{2N}^m C_m$, for each fixed m . Therefore, the total number of multiplications required to determine A_m from Equation (6.26.2) is $2(N - 1)^2 + 2N - 1 = 2N^2 - 2N + 1$.

But if we had determined A_m from (6.26.1), we would have performed $(2N - 1)^2 = 4N^2 - 4N + 1$ multiplications. Thus, splitting the sequence $\{a_n\}$ into two sequences and then applying the discrete Fourier transform reduces the number of multiplications required to evaluate A_m approximately by a factor of 2.

If N is even, this process can be repeated. Split $\{b_n\}$ and $\{c_n\}$ into two sequences, each of length $N/2$. Then B_m and C_m are determined in terms of four discrete Fourier transforms, each of order $N/2$. This process can be repeated $k - 1$ times if $M = 2^k$ for some positive integer k .

If we denote the required number of multiplications for the discrete Fourier transform of order $N = 2^k$ by $F(N)$, then $F(2N) = 2F(N) + N$ and $F(2) = 1$, which leads to $F(N) = \frac{N}{2} \log_2 N$.

6.27 MULTIDIMENSIONAL FOURIER TRANSFORM

If $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$ and $\mathbf{u} = (u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n)$, then (see table on page 604):

1. Fourier transform $F(\mathbf{u}) = (2\pi)^{-n/2} \int \dots \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} f(\mathbf{x}) e^{i(\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{u})} d\mathbf{x}.$
2. Inverse Fourier transform $f(\mathbf{x}) = (2\pi)^{-n/2} \int \dots \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} F(\mathbf{u}) e^{-i(\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{u})} d\mathbf{u}.$
3. Parseval's relation $\int \dots \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} f(\mathbf{x}) \overline{g(\mathbf{x})} d\mathbf{x} = \int \dots \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} F(\mathbf{u}) \overline{G(\mathbf{u})} d\mathbf{u}.$

6.28 LAPLACE TRANSFORM

The Laplace transformation dates back to the work of the French mathematician, Pierre Simon Marquis de Laplace (1749–1827), who used it in his work on probability theory in the 1780's.

The *Laplace transform* of a function $f(t)$ is defined as

$$F(s) = [\mathcal{L}f](s) = \int_0^\infty f(t) e^{-st} dt \quad (6.28.1)$$

(also written as $[\mathcal{L}f(t)]$ and $[\mathcal{L}(f(t))]$), whenever the integral exists for at least one value of s . The transform variable, s , can be taken as a complex number. We say that f is Laplace transformable or the Laplace transformation is applicable to f if $[\mathcal{L}f]$ exists for at least one value of s . The integral on the right-hand side of Equation (6.28.1) is called the *Laplace integral* of f .

6.28.1 EXISTENCE AND DOMAIN OF CONVERGENCE

Sufficient conditions for the existence of the Laplace transform are

1. f is a locally integrable function on $[0, \infty)$, i.e., $\int_0^a |f(t)| dt < \infty$, for any $a > 0$.
2. f is of (real) *exponential type*, i.e., for some constants $M, t_0 > 0$ and real γ, f satisfies

$$|f(t)| \leq M e^{\gamma t}, \quad \text{for all } t \geq t_0. \quad (6.28.2)$$

If f is a locally integrable function on $[0, \infty)$ and of (real) exponential type γ , then the Laplace integral of f , $\int_0^\infty f(t) e^{-st} dt$, converges absolutely for $\text{Re } s > \gamma$ and uniformly for $\text{Re } s \geq \gamma_1$, for any $\gamma_1 > \gamma$. Consequently, $F(s)$ is analytic in the half-plane $\Omega = \{s \in \mathbb{C} : \text{Re } s > \gamma\}$. It can be shown that if $F(s)$ exists for some s_0 , then it also exists for any s for which $\text{Re } s > \text{Re } s_0$. The actual domain of existence of the Laplace transform may be larger than the one given above. For example, the function $f(t) = \cos e^t$ is of real exponential type zero, but $F(s)$ exists for $\text{Re } s > -1$.

If $f(t)$ is a locally integrable function on $[0, \infty)$, not of exponential type, and

$$\int_0^{\infty} f(t)e^{-s_0 t} dt \quad (6.28.3)$$

converges for some complex number s_0 , then the Laplace integral

$$\int_0^{\infty} f(t)e^{-st} dt \quad (6.28.4)$$

converges in the region $\operatorname{Re} s > \operatorname{Re} s_0$ and also converges uniformly in the region $|\arg(s - s_0)| \leq \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$. Moreover, if Equation (6.28.3) diverges, then so does Equation (6.28.4) for $\operatorname{Re} s < \operatorname{Re} s_0$.

6.28.2 PROPERTIES

1. *Linearity:* $\mathcal{L}(\alpha f + \beta g) = \alpha \mathcal{L}(f) + \beta \mathcal{L}(g) = \alpha F + \beta G$,
for any constants α and β .

2. *Dilation:* $[\mathcal{L}(f(at))](s) = \frac{1}{a} F\left(\frac{s}{a}\right)$, for $a > 0$.

3. *Multiplication by exponential functions:*

$$[\mathcal{L}(e^{at}f(t))](s) = F(s - a).$$

4. *Translation:* $[\mathcal{L}(f(t - a)H(t - a))](s) = e^{-as}F(s)$ for $a > 0$. This can be put in the form

$$[\mathcal{L}(f(t)H(t - a))](s) = e^{-as}[\mathcal{L}(f(t + a))](s),$$

where H is the Heaviside function. Examples:

(a) If

$$g(t) = \begin{cases} 0, & 0 \leq t \leq a, \\ (t - a)^\nu, & a \leq t, \end{cases}$$

then $g(t) = f(t - a)H(t - a)$ where $f(t) = t^\nu$ ($\operatorname{Re} \nu > -1$). Since $\mathcal{L}(t^\nu) = \Gamma(\nu + 1)/s^{\nu+1}$, it follows that $(\mathcal{L}g)(s) = e^{-as}\Gamma(\nu + 1)/s^{\nu+1}$, for $\operatorname{Re} s > 0$.

(b) If

$$g(t) = \begin{cases} t, & 0 \leq t \leq a, \\ 0, & a < t, \end{cases}$$

we may write $g(t) = t[H(t) - H(t - a)] = tH(t) - (t - a)H(t - a) - aH(t - a)$. Thus by properties (1) and (4),

$$G(s) = \frac{1}{s^2} - \frac{1}{s^2}e^{-as} - \frac{a}{s}e^{-as}.$$

5. *Differentiation of the transformed function:* If f is a differentiable function of exponential type, $\lim_{t \rightarrow 0+} f(t) = f(0+)$ exists, and f' is locally integrable on $[0, \infty)$, then the Laplace transform of f' exists, and

$$(\mathcal{L}f')(s) = sF(s) - f(0). \quad (6.28.5)$$

Note that although f is assumed to be of exponential type, f' need not be. For example, $f(t) = \sin e^{t^2}$, but $f'(t) = 2te^{t^2} \cos e^{t^2}$.

6. *Differentiation of higher orders:* Let f be an n times differentiable function so that $f^{(k)}$ (for $k = 0, 1, \dots, n-1$) are of exponential type with the additional assumption that $\lim_{t \rightarrow 0+} f^{(k)}(t) = f^{(k)}(0+)$ exists. If $f^{(n)}$ is locally integrable on $[0, \infty)$, then its Laplace transform exists, and

$$\left[\mathcal{L} \left(f^{(n)} \right) \right] (s) = s^n F(s) - s^{n-1} f(0) - s^{n-2} f'(0) - \dots - f^{(n-1)}(0). \quad (6.28.6)$$

7. *Integration:* If $g(t) = \int_0^t f(x) dx$, then (if the transforms exist) $G(s) = F(s)/s$. Repeated applications of this rule result in

$$\left[\mathcal{L} \left(f^{(-n)} \right) \right] (s) = \frac{1}{s^n} F(s), \quad (6.28.7)$$

where $f^{(-n)}$ is the n^{th} anti-derivative of f defined by $f^{(-n)}(t) = \int_0^t dt_n \int_0^{t_n} dt_{n-1} \dots \int_0^{t_2} f(t_1) dt_1$. Section 6.28.1 shows that the Laplace transform is an analytic function in a half-plane. Hence it has derivatives of all orders at any point in that half-plane. The next property shows that we can evaluate these derivatives by direct calculation.

8. *Multiplication by powers of t :* Let f be a locally integrable function whose Laplace integral converges absolutely and uniformly for $\text{Re } s > \sigma$. Then F is analytic in $\text{Re } s > \sigma$, and (for $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$, with $\text{Re } s > \sigma$)

$$\begin{aligned} \left[\mathcal{L} (t^n f(t)) \right] (s) &= \left(-\frac{d}{ds} \right)^n F(s), \\ \left[\mathcal{L} \left(\left(t \frac{d}{dt} \right)^n f(t) \right) \right] (s) &= \left(-\frac{d}{ds} s \right)^n F(s), \end{aligned} \quad (6.28.8)$$

where $\left(t \frac{d}{dt} \right)^n$ is the operator $\left(t \frac{d}{dt} \right)$ applied n times.

9. *Division by powers of t :* If f is a locally integrable function of exponential type such that $f(t)/t$ is a Laplace transformable function, then

$$\left[\mathcal{L} \left(\frac{f(t)}{t} \right) \right] (s) = \int_s^\infty F(u) du, \quad (6.28.9)$$

or, more generally,

$$\left[\mathcal{L} \left(\frac{f(t)}{t^n} \right) \right] (s) = \int_s^\infty \dots \int_{s_3}^\infty \int_{s_2}^\infty F(s_1) ds_1 ds_2 \dots ds_n \quad (6.28.10)$$

is the n^{th} repeated integral. It follows from properties (7) and (9) that

$$\left[\mathcal{L} \left(\int_0^t \frac{f(x)}{x} dx \right) \right] (s) = \frac{1}{s} \int_s^\infty F(u) du. \quad (6.28.11)$$

10. *Periodic functions:* Let f be a locally integrable function that is periodic with period T . Then

$$[\mathcal{L}(f)](s) = \frac{1}{(1 - e^{-Ts})} \int_0^T f(t) e^{-st} dt. \quad (6.28.12)$$

11. *Hardy's theorem:* If $f(t) = \sum_{n=0}^\infty c_n t^n$ for $t \geq 0$ and $\sum_{n=0}^\infty \frac{c_n n!}{s_0^n}$ converges for some $s_0 > 0$, then $[\mathcal{L}(f)](s) = \sum_{n=0}^\infty \frac{c_n n!}{s^n}$ for $\text{Re } s > s_0$.

6.28.3 INVERSION FORMULAE

6.28.3.1 Inversion by integration

If $f(t)$ is a locally integrable function on $[0, \infty)$ such that

1. f is of bounded variation in a neighborhood of a point $t_0 \geq 0$ (a right-hand neighborhood if $t_0 = 0$),
2. The Laplace integral of f converges absolutely on the line $\text{Re } s = c$, then

$$\lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{c-iT}^{c+iT} F(s) e^{st_0} ds = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } t_0 < 0, \\ f(0+)/2 & \text{if } t_0 = 0, \\ [f(t_0+) + f(t_0-)]/2 & \text{if } t_0 > 0. \end{cases}$$

In particular, if f is differentiable on $(0, \infty)$ and satisfies the above conditions, then

$$\lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2\pi i} \int_{c-iT}^{c+iT} F(s) e^{st} ds = f(t), \quad 0 < t < \infty. \quad (6.28.13)$$

The integral here is taken to be a Cauchy principal value since, in general, this integral may be divergent. For example, if $f(t) = 1$, then $F(s) = 1/s$ and, for $c = 1$ and $t = 0$, the integral $\int_{1-i\infty}^{1+i\infty} \frac{1}{s} ds$ diverges.

6.28.3.2 Inversion by partial fractions

Suppose that F is a rational function $F(s) = P(s)/Q(s)$ in which the degree of the denominator Q is greater than that of the numerator P . For instance, let F be represented in its most reduced form where P and Q have no common zeros, and assume that Q has only simple zeros at a_1, \dots, a_n , then

$$f(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}(F(s))(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\left(\frac{P(s)}{Q(s)}\right)(t) = \sum_{k=1}^n \frac{P(a_k)}{Q'(a_k)} e^{a_k t}. \quad (6.28.14)$$

EXAMPLE If $P(s) = s - 5$ and $Q(s) = s^2 + 6s + 13$, then $a_1 = -3 + 2i$, $a_2 = -3 - 2i$, and it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} f(t) &= \mathcal{L}^{-1}\left(\frac{s - 5}{s^2 + 6s + 13}\right) = \frac{(2i - 8)}{4i} e^{(-3+2i)t} + \frac{(2i + 8)}{4i} e^{(-3-2i)t} \\ &= e^{-3t}(\cos 2t - 4 \sin 2t). \end{aligned}$$

6.28.4 CONVOLUTION

Let $f(t)$ and $g(t)$ be locally integrable functions on $[0, \infty)$, and assume that their Laplace integrals converge absolutely in some half-plane $\operatorname{Re} s > \alpha$. Then the convolution operation, \star , associated with the Laplace transform, is defined by

$$h(t) = (f \star g)(t) = \int_0^t f(x)g(t-x) dx. \quad (6.28.15)$$

The convolution of f and g is a locally integrable function on $[0, \infty)$ that is continuous if either f or g is continuous. Additionally, it has a Laplace transform given by

$$H(s) = (\mathcal{L}h)(s) = F(s)G(s), \quad (6.28.16)$$

where $(\mathcal{L}f)(s) = F(s)$ and $(\mathcal{L}g)(s) = G(s)$.

6.29 HANKEL TRANSFORM

The *Hankel transform* of order ν of a real-valued function $f(x)$ is defined as

$$\mathcal{H}_\nu(f)(y) = F_\nu(y) = \int_0^\infty f(x)\sqrt{xy}J_\nu(yx)dx, \quad (6.29.1)$$

for $y > 0$ and $\nu > -1/2$, where $J_\nu(z)$ is the Bessel function of the first kind of order ν .

The Hankel transforms of order $1/2$ and $-1/2$ are equal to the Fourier sine and cosine transforms, respectively, because

$$J_{1/2}(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi x}} \sin x, \quad J_{-1/2}(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi x}} \cos x. \quad (6.29.2)$$

As with the Fourier transform, there are many variations on the definition of the Hankel transform. Some authors define it as

$$G_\nu(y) = \int_0^\infty xg(x)J_\nu(yx)dx; \quad (6.29.3)$$

however, the two definitions are equivalent; we only need to replace $f(x)$ by $\sqrt{x}g(x)$ and $F_\nu(y)$ by $\sqrt{y}G_\nu(y)$.

6.29.1 PROPERTIES

1. *Existence:* Since $\sqrt{x}J_\nu(x)$ is bounded on the positive real axis, the Hankel transform of f exists if $f \in L^1(0, \infty)$.

2. *Multiplication by x^m :*

$$\mathcal{H}_\nu(x^m f(x))(y) = y^{1/2-\nu} \left(\frac{1}{y} \frac{d}{dy} \right)^m \left[y^{\nu+m-1/2} F_{\nu+m}(y) \right].$$

3. *Division by x :*

$$\mathcal{H}_\nu \left(\frac{2\nu}{x} f(x) \right) (y) = y [F_{\nu-1}(y) + F_{\nu+1}(y)],$$

and also

$$\mathcal{H}_\nu \left(\frac{f(x)}{x} \right) (y) = y^{1/2-\nu} \int_0^y t^{\nu-1/2} F_{\nu-1}(t) dt.$$

4. *Differentiation:*

$$\mathcal{H}_\nu(2\nu f'(x))(y) = (\nu - 1/2)yF_{\nu+1}(y) - (\nu + 1/2)yF_{\nu-1}(y).$$

5. *Differentiation and multiplication by powers of x :*

$$\mathcal{H}_\nu \left[x^{1/2-\nu} \left(\frac{1}{x} \frac{d}{dx} \right)^m \left(x^{\nu+m-1/2} f(x) \right) \right] (y) = y^m F_{\nu+m}(y).$$

6. *Parseval's relation:* Let F_ν and G_ν denote the Hankel transforms of order ν of f and g , respectively. Then

$$\int_0^\infty F_\nu(y)G_\nu(y)dy = \int_0^\infty f(x)g(x)dx. \quad (6.29.4)$$

In particular,

$$\int_0^\infty |F_\nu(y)|^2 dy = \int_0^\infty |f(x)|^2 dx. \quad (6.29.5)$$

7. *Inversion formula:* If f is absolutely integrable on $(0, \infty)$ and of bounded variation in a neighborhood of point x , then

$$\int_0^\infty F_\nu(y)\sqrt{xy}J_\nu(yx)dy = \frac{f(x+) + f(x-)}{2}, \quad (6.29.6)$$

whenever the expression on the right-hand side of the equation has a meaning; the integral converges to $f(x)$ whenever f is continuous at x .

6.30 HARTLEY TRANSFORM

Define the function $\text{cas } x = \cos x + \sin x$. The *Hartley transform* of the real function $g(t)$ is

$$(Hg)(\omega) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g(t) \text{cas}(2\pi\omega t) dt. \quad (6.30.1)$$

Let $(Eg)(\omega)$ and $(Og)(\omega)$ be the even and odd parts of $(Hg)(\omega)$,

$$\begin{aligned} (Eg)(\omega) &= \frac{1}{2} ((Hg)(\omega) + (Hg)(-\omega)), \\ (Og)(\omega) &= \frac{1}{2} ((Hg)(\omega) - (Hg)(-\omega)), \end{aligned} \quad (6.30.2)$$

so that $(Hg)(\omega) = (Eg)(\omega) + (Og)(\omega)$. The Fourier transform of g (using the kernel $e^{2\pi i\omega t}$) can then be written in terms of $(Eg)(\omega)$ and $(Og)(\omega)$ as

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g(t)e^{2\pi i\omega t} dt = (Eg)(\omega) + i(Og)(\omega). \quad (6.30.3)$$

Note that the Hartley transform, applied twice in succession, returns the original function.

6.31 HILBERT TRANSFORM

The *Hilbert transform* of f is defined as

$$(\mathcal{H}f)(x) = \tilde{f}(x) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{f(t)}{t-x} dt = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{f(x+t)}{t} dt \quad (6.31.1)$$

where the integral is a Cauchy principal value. A table is on page 612.

Since the definition is given in terms of a singular integral, it is sometimes impractical to use. An alternative definition is given below. First, let f be an integrable function, and define $a(t)$ and $b(t)$ by

$$a(t) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) \cos tx dx, \quad b(t) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) \sin tx dx. \quad (6.31.2)$$

Consider the function $F(z)$, defined by the integral

$$F(z) = \int_0^{\infty} (a(t) - ib(t))e^{izt} dt = U(z) + i\tilde{U}(z), \quad (6.31.3)$$

where $z = x + iy$. The real and imaginary parts of F are

$$\begin{aligned} U(z) &= \int_0^{\infty} (a(t) \cos xt + b(t) \sin xt)e^{-yt} dt, \quad \text{and} \\ \tilde{U}(z) &= \int_0^{\infty} (a(t) \sin xt - b(t) \cos xt)e^{-yt} dt. \end{aligned} \quad (6.31.4)$$

Formally,

$$\lim_{y \rightarrow 0} U(z) = f(x) = \int_0^{\infty} (a(t) \cos xt + b(t) \sin xt) dt, \quad (6.31.5)$$

and

$$\lim_{y \rightarrow 0} \tilde{U}(z) = -\tilde{f}(x) = \int_0^{\infty} (a(t) \sin xt - b(t) \cos xt) dt. \quad (6.31.6)$$

The Hilbert transform of a function f , given by Equation (6.31.5), is defined as the function \hat{f} given by Equation (6.31.6).

6.31.1 EXISTENCE

If $f \in L^1(\mathbb{R})$, then its Hilbert transform $(\mathcal{H}f)(x)$ exists for almost all x . For $f \in L^p(\mathbb{R})$, $p > 1$, there is the following stronger result:

THEOREM 6.31.1

Let $f \in L^p(\mathbb{R})$ for $1 < p < \infty$. Then $(\mathcal{H}f)(x)$ exists for almost all x and defines a function that also belongs to $L^p(\mathbb{R})$ with

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |(\mathcal{H}f)(x)|^p dx \leq C_p \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |f(x)|^p dx. \quad (6.31.7)$$

In the special case of $p = 2$, we have

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |(\mathcal{H}f)(x)|^2 dx = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |f(x)|^2 dx. \quad (6.31.8)$$

The theorem is not valid if $p = 1$ because, although it is true that $(\mathcal{H}f)(x)$ is defined almost everywhere, it is not necessarily in $L^1(\mathbb{R})$. The function $f(t) = (t \log^2 t)^{-1} H(t)$ provides a counterexample.

6.31.2 PROPERTIES

1. *Translation:* The Hilbert transform commutes with the translation operator $(\mathcal{H}f)(x + a) = \mathcal{H}(f(t + a))(x)$.
2. *Dilation:* The Hilbert transformation also commutes with the dilation operator

$$(\mathcal{H}f)(ax) = \mathcal{H}(f(at))(x) \quad a > 0,$$

but

$$(\mathcal{H}f)(ax) = -\mathcal{H}(f(at))(x) \quad \text{for } a < 0.$$

3. *Multiplication by t :* $\mathcal{H}(tf(t))(x) = x(\mathcal{H}f)(x) + \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(t) dt$.

4. *Differentiation*: $\mathcal{H}(f'(t))(x) = (\mathcal{H}f)'(x)$, provided that $f(t) = O(t)$ as $|t| \rightarrow \infty$.

5. *Orthogonality*: The Hilbert transform of $f \in L^2(\mathbb{R})$ is orthogonal to f in the sense $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x)(\mathcal{H}f)(x)dx = 0$.

6. *Parity*: The Hilbert transform of an even function is odd and that of an odd function is even.

7. *Inversion formula*: If $(\mathcal{H}f)(x) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{f(t)}{t-x} dt$, then

$$f(t) = -\frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{(\mathcal{H}f)(x)}{x-t} dx \text{ or, symbolically,}$$

$$\mathcal{H}(\mathcal{H}f)(x) = -f(x), \tag{6.31.9}$$

that is, applying the Hilbert transform twice returns the negative of the original function. Moreover, if $f \in L^1(\mathbb{R})$ has a bounded derivative, then the allied integral (see Equation 6.24.6) equals $(\mathcal{H}f)(x)$.

8. *Meromorphic invariance*:

$$(\mathcal{H}f)(u(x)) = \tilde{f}(u(x)) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{f(t)}{t-u(x)} dt = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{f[u(t)]}{t-x} dt$$

where

$$u(t) = t - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{a_n}{t-b_n},$$

for arbitrary $a_n \geq 0$ and b_n real.

6.31.3 RELATIONSHIP WITH THE FOURIER TRANSFORM

From Equations (6.31.3)–(6.31.6), we obtain

$$\lim_{y \rightarrow 0} F(z) = F(x) = \int_0^{\infty} (a(t) - ib(t))e^{ixt} dt = f(x) - i(\mathcal{H}f)(x),$$

where $a(t)$ and $b(t)$ are given by Equation (6.31.2).

Let g be a real-valued integrable function and consider its Fourier transform $\hat{g}(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g(t)e^{ixt} dt$. If we denote the real and imaginary parts of \hat{g} by f and \tilde{f} , respectively, then

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g(t) \cos xt dt, \quad \text{and}$$

$$\tilde{f}(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g(t) \sin xt dt.$$

Splitting g into its even and odd parts, g_e and g_o , respectively, we obtain

$$g_e(t) = \frac{g(t) + g(-t)}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad g_o(t) = \frac{g(t) - g(-t)}{2};$$

hence

$$f(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_0^\infty g_e(t) \cos xt \, dt, \quad \text{and} \quad \tilde{f}(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_0^\infty g_o(t) \sin xt \, dt, \tag{6.31.10}$$

or

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^\infty g_e(t) e^{ixt} \, dt, \quad \text{and} \quad \tilde{f}(x) = \frac{-i}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^\infty g_o(t) e^{ixt} \, dt. \tag{6.31.11}$$

This shows that, if the Fourier transform of the even part of a real-valued function represents a function $f(x)$, then the Fourier transform of the odd part represents the Hilbert transform of f (up to multiplication by i).

THEOREM 6.31.2

Let $f \in L^1(\mathbb{R})$ and assume that $\mathcal{H}f$ is also in $L^1(\mathbb{R})$. Then

$$\mathcal{F}(\mathcal{H}f)(\omega) = -i \operatorname{sgn}(\omega) \mathcal{F}(f)(\omega), \tag{6.31.12}$$

where \mathcal{F} denotes the Fourier transformation. Similarly, if $f \in L^2(\mathbb{R})$, then $(\mathcal{H}f) \in L^2(\mathbb{R})$, and Equation (6.31.12) remains valid.

6.32 Z-TRANSFORM

The Z -transform of a sequence $\{f(n)\}_{-\infty}^\infty$ is defined by

$$\mathcal{Z}[f(n)] = F(z) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^\infty f(n) z^{-n}, \tag{6.32.1}$$

for all complex numbers z for which the series converges.

The series converges at least in a ring of the form $0 \leq r_1 < |z| < r_2 \leq \infty$, whose radii, r_1 and r_2 , depend on the behavior of $f(n)$ at $\pm\infty$:

$$r_1 = \limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sqrt[n]{|f(n)|}, \quad r_2 = \liminf_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{\sqrt[n]{|f(-n)|}}. \tag{6.32.2}$$

If there is more than one sequence involved, we may denote r_1 and r_2 by $r_1(f)$ and $r_2(f)$ respectively. It may happen that $r_1 > r_2$, so that the function is nowhere defined. The function $F(z)$ is analytic in this ring, but it may be possible to continue

it analytically beyond the boundaries of the ring. If $f(n) = 0$ for $n < 0$, then $r_2 = \infty$, and if $f(n) = 0$ for $n \geq 0$, then $r_1 = 0$.

Let $z = re^{i\theta}$. Then the Z -transform evaluated at $r = 1$ is the Fourier transform of the sequence $\{f(n)\}_{-\infty}^{\infty}$,

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} f(n)e^{-in\theta}. \quad (6.32.3)$$

6.32.1 EXAMPLES

1. Let a be a complex number and define $f(n) = a^n$, for $n \geq 0$, and zero otherwise, then

$$\mathcal{Z}[f(n)] = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a^n z^{-n} = \frac{z}{z-a}, \quad |z| > |a|. \quad (6.32.4)$$

Special case: unit step function. If $a = 1$ then $f(n) = u(n) = \begin{cases} 1, & n \geq 0, \\ 0, & n < 0, \end{cases}$
and $\mathcal{Z}[u(n)] = \frac{z}{z-1}$.

2. If $f(n) = na^n$, for $n \geq 0$, and zero otherwise, then

$$\mathcal{Z}[f(n)] = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} na^n z^{-n} = \frac{az}{(z-a)^2}, \quad |z| > |a|.$$

3. Let $\delta(n) = \begin{cases} 1, & n = 0, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases}$ then $\mathcal{Z}[\delta(n-k)] = z^{-k}$ for $k = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$

6.32.2 PROPERTIES

Let the region of convergence of the Z -transform of the sequence $\{f(n)\}$ be denoted by D_f .

1. *Linearity:*

$$\mathcal{Z}[af(n) + bg(n)] = a\mathcal{Z}[f(n)] + b\mathcal{Z}[g(n)] = aF(z) + bG(z), \quad z \in D_f \cap D_g.$$

The region $D_f \cap D_g$ contains the ring $r_1 < |z| < r_2$, where $r_1 = \text{maximum}\{r_1(f), r_1(g)\}$ and $r_2 = \text{minimum}\{r_2(f), r_2(g)\}$.

2. *Translation:* $\mathcal{Z}[f(n-k)] = z^{-k}F(z)$.

3. *Multiplication by exponentials:* $\mathcal{Z}[(a^n f(n))] = F(z/a)$ when $|a|r_1 < |z| < |a|r_2$.

4. *Multiplication by powers of n*: For $k = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ and $z \in D_f$,

$$\mathcal{Z}[(n^k f(n))] = (-1)^k \left(z \frac{d}{dz} \right)^k F(z). \quad (6.32.5)$$

5. *Complex conjugation*: $\mathcal{Z}[\overline{f(-n)}] = \overline{F\left(\frac{1}{z}\right)}$.

6. *Initial and final values*: If $f(n) = 0$ for $n < 0$, then $\lim_{z \rightarrow \infty} F(z) = f(0)$ and, conversely, if $F(z)$ is defined for $r_1 < |z|$ and for some integer m , $\lim_{z \rightarrow \infty} z^m F(z) = A$ (with $A \neq \pm\infty$), then $f(m) = A$ and $f(n) = 0$, for $n < m$.

7. *Parseval's relation*: Let $F, G \in L^2(-\pi, \pi)$, and let $F(z)$ and $G(z)$ be the Z -transforms of $\{f(n)\}$ and $\{g(n)\}$, respectively. Then

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} f(n)\overline{g(n)} = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} F(e^{i\omega})\overline{G(e^{i\omega})} d\omega. \quad (6.32.6)$$

In particular,

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |f(n)|^2 = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} |F(e^{i\omega})|^2 d\omega. \quad (6.32.7)$$

6.32.3 INVERSION FORMULA

Consider the sequences

$$f(n) = u(n) = \begin{cases} 1, & n \geq 0, \\ 0, & n < 0, \end{cases} \quad \text{and} \quad g(n) = -u(-n-1) = \begin{cases} -1, & n < 0, \\ 0, & n \geq 0. \end{cases}$$

Note that $F(z) = \frac{z}{z-1}$ for $|z| > 1$, and $G(z) = \frac{z}{z-1}$ for $|z| < 1$. Hence, the inverse Z -transform of the function $z/(z-1)$ is not unique. In general, the inverse Z -transform is not unique, unless its region of convergence is specified.

1. *Inversion by using series representation*:

If $F(z)$ is given by its series

$$F(z) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} a_n z^{-n}, \quad r_1 < |z| < r_2,$$

then its inverse Z -transform is unique and is given by $f(n) = a_n$ for all n .

2. *Inversion by using complex integration:*

If $F(z)$ is given in a closed form as an algebraic expression and its domain of analyticity is known, then its inverse Z -transform can be obtained by using the relationship

$$f(n) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_{\gamma} F(z) z^{n-1} dz, \quad (6.32.8)$$

where γ is a closed contour surrounding the origin once in the positive (counterclockwise) direction in the domain of analyticity of $F(z)$.

3. *Inversion by using Fourier series:*

If the domain of analyticity of F contains the unit circle, $|r| = 1$, and if F is single valued therein, then $F(e^{i\theta})$ is a periodic function with period 2π , and, consequently, it can be expanded in a Fourier series. The coefficients of the series form the inverse Z -transform of F and they are given explicitly by

$$f(n) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} F(e^{i\theta}) e^{in\theta} d\theta. \quad (6.32.9)$$

(This is a special case of (2) with $\gamma(\theta) = e^{i\theta}$.)

4. *Inversion by using partial fractions:*

Dividing Equation (6.32.4) by z and differentiating both sides with respect to z results in

$$\mathcal{Z}^{-1} [(z - a)^{-k}] = \binom{n-1}{n-k} a^{n-k} u(n-k), \quad (6.32.10)$$

for $k = 1, 2, \dots$ and $|z| > |a| > 0$. Moreover,

$$\mathcal{Z}^{-1} [z^{-k}] = \delta(n-k). \quad (6.32.11)$$

Let $F(z)$ be a rational function of the form

$$F(z) = \frac{P(z)}{Q(z)} = \frac{a_N z^N + \dots + a_1 z + a_0}{b_M z^M + \dots + b_1 z + b_0}$$

with $a_N \neq 0$ and $b_M \neq 0$.

- (a) Consider the case $N < M$. The denominator $Q(z)$ can be factored over the field of complex numbers as $Q(z) = c(z - z_1)^{k_1} \dots (z - z_m)^{k_m}$, where c is a constant and k_1, \dots, k_m are positive integers satisfying $k_1 + \dots + k_m = M$. Hence, F can be written in the form

$$F(z) = \sum_{i=1}^m \sum_{j=1}^{k_i} \frac{A_{i,j}}{(z - z_i)^j}, \quad (6.32.12)$$

where

$$A_{i,j} = \frac{1}{(k_i - j)!} \lim_{z \rightarrow z_i} \frac{d^{k_i-j}}{dz^{k_i-j}} (z - z_i)^{k_i} F(z). \quad (6.32.13)$$

The inverse Z -transform of the decomposition in Equation (6.32.12) in the region that is exterior to the smallest circle containing all the zeros of $Q(z)$ can be obtained by using Equation (6.32.10).

- (b) Consider the case $N \geq M$. We must divide until F can be reduced to the form

$$F(z) = H(z) + \frac{R(z)}{Q(z)},$$

where the remainder polynomial, $R(z)$, has degree less than or equal to $M - 1$, and the quotient, $H(z)$, is a polynomial of degree, at most, $N - M$. The inverse Z -transform of the quotient polynomial can be obtained by using Equation (6.32.11) and that of $R(z)/Q(z)$ can be obtained as in the case $N < M$.

EXAMPLE To find the inverse Z -transform of the function,

$$F(z) = \frac{z^4 + 5}{(z - 1)^2(z - 2)}, \quad |z| > 2, \quad (6.32.14)$$

the partial fraction expansion,

$$\frac{z^4 + 5}{(z - 1)^2(z - 2)} = z + 4 - \frac{6}{(z - 1)^2} - \frac{10}{(z - 1)} + \frac{21}{(z - 2)}, \quad (6.32.15)$$

is computed. With the aid of Equation (6.32.10) and Equation (6.32.11),

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{Z}^{-1}[F(z)] &= \delta(n + 1) + 4\delta(n) - 6(n - 1)u(n - 2) \\ &\quad - 10u(n - 1) + 21 \cdot 2^{n-1}u(n - 1), \end{aligned} \quad (6.32.16)$$

or $f(n) = -6n - 4 + 21 \cdot 2^{n-1}$, for $n \geq 2$, with the initial values $f(-1) = 1$, $f(0) = 4$, and $f(1) = 11$.

6.32.4 CONVOLUTION AND PRODUCT

The convolution of the two sequences, $\{f(n)\}_{-\infty}^{\infty}$ and $\{g(n)\}_{-\infty}^{\infty}$ is the sequence $\{h(n)\}_{-\infty}^{\infty}$ defined by $h(n) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} f(k)g(n - k)$. The Z -transform of the convolution of two sequences is the product of their Z -transforms,

$$\mathcal{Z}[h(n)] = \mathcal{Z}[f(n)]\mathcal{Z}[g(n)], \quad (6.32.17)$$

for $z \in D_f \cap D_g$, or $H(z) = F(z)G(z)$.

The Z -transform of the product of two sequences is given by

$$\mathcal{Z}[f(n)g(n)] = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_{\gamma} F(\omega)G\left(\frac{z}{\omega}\right) \frac{d\omega}{\omega}, \quad (6.32.18)$$

where γ is a closed contour surrounding the origin in the positive direction in the domain of convergence of $F(\omega)$ and $G(z/\omega)$.

6.33 TABLES OF TRANSFORMS

Finite sine transforms

$$f_s(n) = \int_0^\pi F(x) \sin nx \, dx, \text{ for } n = 1, 2, \dots$$

| No. | $f_s(n)$ | $F(x)$ |
|-----|--|--|
| 1 | $(-1)^{n+1} f_s(n)$ | $F(\pi - x)$ |
| 2 | $1/n$ | $\pi - x/\pi$ |
| 3 | $(-1)^{n+1}/n$ | x/π |
| 4 | $1 - (-1)^n/n$ | 1 |
| 5 | $\frac{2}{n^2} \sin \frac{n\pi}{2}$ | $\begin{cases} x & \text{when } 0 < x < \pi/2 \\ \pi - x & \text{when } \pi/2 < x < \pi \end{cases}$ |
| 6 | $(-1)^{n+1}/n^3$ | $x(\pi^2 - x^2)/6\pi$ |
| 7 | $1 - (-1)^n/n^3$ | $x(\pi - x)/2$ |
| 8 | $\frac{\pi^2(-1)^{n-1}}{n} - \frac{2[1 - (-1)^n]}{n^3}$ | x^2 |
| 9 | $\pi(-1)^n \left(\frac{6}{n^3} - \frac{\pi^2}{n} \right)$ | x^3 |
| 10 | $\frac{n}{n^2 + c^2} [1 - (-1)^n e^{c\pi}]$ | e^{cx} |
| 11 | $\frac{n}{n^2 + c^2}$ | $\frac{\sinh c(\pi - x)}{\sinh c\pi}$ |
| 12 | $\frac{n}{n^2 - k^2}$ with $k \neq 0, 1, 2, \dots$ | $\frac{\sin k(\pi - x)}{\sin k\pi}$ |
| 13 | $\begin{cases} \pi/2 & \text{when } n = m \\ 0 & \text{when } n \neq m, m = 1, 2, \dots \end{cases}$ | $\sin mx$ |
| 14 | $\frac{n}{n^2 - k^2} [1 - (-1)^n \cos k\pi]$ with $k \neq 1, 2, \dots$ (0 if $n = k$) | $\cos kx$ |
| 15 | $\frac{n}{(n^2 - k^2)^2}$ with $k \neq 0, 1, 2, \dots$ | $\frac{\pi \sin kx}{2k \sin^2 k\pi} - \frac{x \cos k(\pi - x)}{2k \sin k\pi}$ |
| 16 | $\frac{b^n}{n}$ with $ b \leq 1$ | $\frac{2}{\pi} \tan^{-1} \frac{b \sin x}{1 - b \cos x}$ |
| 17 | $\frac{1 - (-1)^n}{n} b^n$ with $ b \leq 1$ | $\frac{2}{\pi} \tan^{-1} \frac{2b \sin x}{1 - b^2}$ |

Finite cosine transforms

$$f_c(n) = \int_0^\pi F(x) \cos nx \, dx, \text{ for } n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$$

| No. | $f_c(n)$ | $F(x)$ |
|-----|---|---|
| 1 | $(-1)^n f_c(n)$ | $F(\pi - x)$ |
| 2 | $\begin{cases} \pi & n = 0 \\ 0 & n = 1, 2, \dots \end{cases}$ | 1 |
| 3 | $\begin{cases} 0 & n = 0 \\ \frac{2}{n} \sin \frac{n\pi}{2} & n = 1, 2, \dots \end{cases}$ | $\begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } 0 < x < \pi/2 \\ -1 & \text{for } \pi/2 < x < \pi \end{cases}$ |
| 4 | $\begin{cases} \frac{\pi^2}{2} & n = 0 \\ (-1)^n - 1/n^2 & n = 1, 2, \dots \end{cases}$ | x |
| 5 | $\begin{cases} \frac{\pi^2}{6} & n = 0 \\ (-1)^n/n^2 & n = 1, 2, \dots \end{cases}$ | $\frac{x^2}{2\pi}$ |
| 6 | $\begin{cases} 0 & n = 0 \\ 1/n^2 & n = 1, 2, \dots \end{cases}$ | $\frac{(x - \pi)^2}{2\pi} - \frac{\pi}{6}$ |
| 7 | $\begin{cases} \frac{\pi^4}{4} & n = 0 \\ 3\pi^2 \frac{(-1)^n}{n^2} - 6 \frac{1 - (-1)^n}{n^4} & n = 1, 2, \dots \end{cases}$ | x^3 |
| 8 | $\frac{(-1)^n e^c \pi - 1}{n^2 + c^2}$ | $\frac{1}{c} e^{cx}$ |
| 9 | $\frac{1}{n^2 + c^2}$ | $\frac{\cosh c(\pi - x)}{c \sinh c\pi}$ |
| 10 | $\frac{k}{n^2 - k^2} [(-1)^n \cos \pi k - 1]$ with $k \neq 0, 1, 2, \dots$ | $\sin kx$ |
| 11 | $\begin{cases} 0 & m = 1, 2, \dots \\ \frac{(-1)^{n+m} - 1}{n^2 - m^2} & m \neq 1, 2, \dots \end{cases}$ | $\frac{1}{m} \sin mx$ |
| 12 | $\frac{1}{n^2 - k^2}$ with $k \neq 0, 1, 2, \dots$ | $-\frac{\cos k(\pi - x)}{k \sin k\pi}$ |
| 13 | $\begin{cases} \pi/2 & \text{when } n = m \\ 0 & \text{when } n \neq m \end{cases}$ | $\cos mx \quad (m = 1, 2, \dots)$ |

Fourier sine transforms

$$F(\omega) = F_s(f)(\omega) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_0^{\infty} f(x) \sin(\omega x) dx, \quad \omega > 0.$$

| No. | $f(x)$ | $F(\omega)$ |
|-----|---|---|
| 1 | $\begin{cases} 1 & 0 < x < a \\ 0 & x > a \end{cases}$ | $\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \left(\frac{1 - \cos \omega a}{\omega} \right)$ |
| 2 | $x^{p-1} \quad (0 < p < 1)$ | $\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \frac{\Gamma(p)}{\omega^p} \sin \frac{p\pi}{2}$ |
| 3 | $\begin{cases} \sin x & 0 < x < a \\ 0 & x > a \end{cases}$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \left(\frac{\sin[a(1-\omega)]}{1-\omega} - \frac{\sin[a(1+\omega)]}{1+\omega} \right)$ |
| 4 | e^{-x} | $\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \frac{\omega}{1+\omega^2}$ |
| 5 | $xe^{-x^2/2}$ | $\omega e^{-\omega^2/2}$ |
| 6 | $\cos \frac{x^2}{2}$ | $\sqrt{2} \left[\sin \frac{\omega^2}{2} C \left(\frac{\omega^2}{2} \right) - \cos \frac{\omega^2}{2} S \left(\frac{\omega^2}{2} \right) \right]$ |
| 7 | $\sin \frac{x^2}{2}$ | $\sqrt{2} \left[\cos \frac{\omega^2}{2} C \left(\frac{\omega^2}{2} \right) + \sin \frac{\omega^2}{2} S \left(\frac{\omega^2}{2} \right) \right]$ |

Fourier cosine transforms

$$F(\omega) = F_c(f)(\omega) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \int_0^{\infty} f(x) \cos(\omega x) dx, \quad \omega > 0.$$

| No. | $f(x)$ | $F(\omega)$ |
|-----|---|--|
| 1 | $\begin{cases} 1 & 0 < x < a \\ 0 & x > a \end{cases}$ | $\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \frac{\sin a\omega}{\omega}$ |
| 2 | $x^{p-1} \quad (0 < p < 1)$ | $\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \frac{\Gamma(p)}{\omega^p} \cos \frac{p\pi}{2}$ |
| 3 | $\begin{cases} \cos x & 0 < x < a \\ 0 & x > a \end{cases}$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \left(\frac{\sin[a(1-\omega)]}{1-\omega} + \frac{\sin[a(1+\omega)]}{1+\omega} \right)$ |
| 4 | e^{-x} | $\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \frac{1}{1+\omega^2}$ |
| 5 | $e^{-x^2/2}$ | $e^{-\omega^2/2}$ |
| 6 | $\cos \frac{x^2}{2}$ | $\cos \left(\frac{\omega^2}{2} - \frac{\pi}{4} \right)$ |
| 7 | $\sin \frac{x^2}{2}$ | $\cos \left(\frac{\omega^2}{2} + \frac{\pi}{4} \right)$ |

Fourier transforms: functional relations

$$F(\omega) = \mathcal{F}(f)(\omega) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x)e^{i\omega x} dx$$

| No. | $f(x)$ | $F(\omega)$ |
|-----|--|--|
| 1 | $ag(x) + bh(x)$ | $aG(\omega) + bH(\omega)$ |
| 2 | $f(ax) \quad a \neq 0, \text{Im } a = 0$ | $\frac{1}{ a } F\left(\frac{\omega}{a}\right)$ |
| 3 | $f(-x)$ | $F(-\omega)$ |
| 4 | $\overline{f(x)}$ | $\overline{F(-\omega)}$ |
| 5 | $f(x - \tau) \quad \text{Im } \tau = 0$ | $e^{i\omega\tau} F(\omega)$ |
| 6 | $e^{i\Omega x} f(x) \quad \text{Im } \Omega = 0$ | $F(\omega + \Omega)$ |
| 7 | $F(x)$ | $f(-\omega)$ |
| 8 | $\frac{d^n}{dx^n} f(x)$ | $(-i\omega)^n F(\omega)$ |
| 9 | $(ix)^n f(x)$ | $\frac{d^n}{d\omega^n} F(\omega)$ |
| 10 | $\frac{\partial}{\partial a} f(x, a)$ | $\frac{\partial}{\partial a} F(\omega, a)$ |

Fourier transforms

$$F(\omega) = \mathcal{F}(f)(\omega) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x)e^{i\omega x} dx$$

| No. | $f(x)$ | $F(\omega)$ |
|-----|---|--|
| 1 | $\delta(x)$ | $1/\sqrt{2\pi}$ |
| 2 | $\delta(x - \tau)$ | $e^{i\omega\tau}/\sqrt{2\pi}$ |
| 3 | $\delta^{(n)}(x)$ | $(-i\omega)^n/\sqrt{2\pi}$ |
| 4 | $H(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & x > 0 \\ 0 & x < 0 \end{cases}$ | $-\frac{1}{i\omega\sqrt{2\pi}} + \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}}\delta(\omega)$ |
| 5 | $\text{sgn}(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & x > 0 \\ -1 & x < 0 \end{cases}$ | $-\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \frac{1}{i\omega}$ |
| 6 | $\begin{cases} 1 & x < a \\ -1 & x > a \end{cases}$ | $\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \frac{\sin a\omega}{\omega}$ |
| 7 | $\begin{cases} e^{i\Omega t} & x < a \\ 0 & x > a \end{cases}$ | $\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \frac{\sin a(\Omega + \omega)}{\Omega + \omega}$ |
| 8 | $e^{-a x } \quad a > 0$ | $-\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \frac{a}{a^2 + \omega^2}$ |

Fourier transforms

$$F(\omega) = \mathcal{F}(f)(\omega) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x)e^{i\omega x} dx$$

| No. | $f(x)$ | $F(\omega)$ |
|-----|--|---|
| 9 | $\frac{\sin \Omega x}{x}$ | $\sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}} [H(\Omega - \omega) - H(-\Omega - \omega)]$ |
| 10 | $\sin ax/x$ | $\begin{cases} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}} & \omega < a \\ 0 & \omega > a \end{cases}$ |
| 11 | $\begin{cases} e^{iax} & p < x < q \\ 0 & x < p, x > q \end{cases}$ | $\frac{i}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{ip(\omega+a)} - e^{iq(\omega+a)} / \omega + a$ |
| 12 | $\begin{cases} e^{-cx+iax} & x > 0 \\ 0 & x < 0 \end{cases} \quad (c > 0)$ | $\frac{i}{\sqrt{2\pi}(\omega + a + ic)}$ |
| 13 | $e^{-px^2} \quad \text{Re } p > 0$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2p}} e^{-\omega^2/4p}$ |
| 14 | $\cos px^2$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2p}} \cos\left(\frac{\omega^2}{4p} - \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$ |
| 15 | $\sin px^2$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2p}} \cos\left(\frac{\omega^2}{4p} + \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$ |
| 16 | $ x ^{-p} \quad (0 < p < 1)$ | $\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \frac{\Gamma(1-p) \sin \frac{p\pi}{2}}{ \omega ^{1-p}}$ |
| 17 | $e^{-a x }/\sqrt{ x }$ | $\frac{\sqrt{\sqrt{a^2+\omega^2}+a}}{\sqrt{\omega^2+a^2}}$ |
| 18 | $\frac{\cosh ax}{\cosh \pi x} \quad (-\pi < a < \pi)$ | $\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi}} \frac{\cos \frac{a}{2} \cosh \frac{\omega}{2}}{\cos a + \cosh \omega}$ |
| 19 | $\frac{\sinh ax}{\sinh \pi x} \quad (-\pi < a < \pi)$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \frac{\sin a}{\cos a + \cosh \omega}$ |
| 20 | $\begin{cases} \frac{1}{\sqrt{a^2-x^2}} & x < a \\ 0 & x > a \end{cases}$ | $\sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}} J_0(a\omega)$ |
| 21 | $\frac{\sin[b\sqrt{a^2+x^2}]}{\sqrt{a^2+x^2}}$ | $\begin{cases} 0 & \omega > b \\ \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}} J_0(a\sqrt{b^2-\omega^2}) & \omega < b \end{cases}$ |
| 22 | $\begin{cases} P_n(x) & x < 1 \\ 0 & x > 1 \end{cases}$ | $\frac{i^n}{\sqrt{\omega}} J_{n+1/2}(\omega)$ |
| 23 | $\begin{cases} \frac{\cos[b\sqrt{a^2-x^2}]}{\sqrt{a^2-x^2}} & x < a \\ 0 & x > a \end{cases}$ | $\sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}} J_0(a\sqrt{\omega^2+b^2})$ |
| 24 | $\begin{cases} \frac{\cosh[b\sqrt{a^2-x^2}]}{\sqrt{a^2-x^2}} & x < a \\ 0 & x > a \end{cases}$ | $\sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}} J_0(a\sqrt{\omega^2-b^2})$ |

Multidimensional Fourier transforms

$$F(\mathbf{u}) = (2\pi)^{-n/2} \int \dots \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} f(\mathbf{x}) e^{i(\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{u})} d\mathbf{x}$$

| No. | $f(\mathbf{x})$ | $F(\mathbf{u})$ |
|---|---|---|
| In n -dimensions | | |
| 1 | $f(a\mathbf{x})$ $\text{Im } a = 0$ | $ a ^{-n} F(a^{-1}\mathbf{u})$ |
| 2 | $f(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{a})$ | $e^{-i\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{u}} F(\mathbf{u})$ |
| 3 | $e^{i\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{x}} f(\mathbf{x})$ | $F(\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{a})$ |
| 4 | $F(\mathbf{x})$ | $(2\pi)^n f(-\mathbf{u})$ |
| Two dimensions: let $\mathbf{x} = (x, y)$ and $\mathbf{u} = (u, v)$. | | |
| 5 | $f(ax, by)$ | $\frac{1}{ ab } F\left(\frac{u}{a}, \frac{v}{b}\right)$ |
| 6 | $f(x - a, y - b)$ | $e^{i(au + bv)} F(u, v)$ |
| 7 | $e^{i(ax + by)} f(x, y)$ | $F(u + a, v + b)$ |
| 8 | $F(x, y)$ | $(2\pi)^2 F(-u, -v)$ |
| 9 | $\delta(x - a)\delta(y - b)$ | $\frac{1}{2\pi} e^{-i(au + bv)}$ |
| 10 | $e^{-x^2/4a - y^2/4b}$ $a, b > 0$ | $2\sqrt{ab} e^{-au^2 - bv^2}$ |
| 11 | $\begin{cases} 1 & x < a, y < b \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$ (rectangle) | $\frac{2 \sin au \sin bv}{\pi uv}$ |
| 12 | $\begin{cases} 1 & x < a \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$ (strip) | $\frac{2 \sin au}{\pi uv} \delta(v)$ |
| 13 | $\begin{cases} 1 & x^2 + y^2 < a^2 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$ (circle) | $\frac{a J_1(a\sqrt{u^2 + v^2})}{\sqrt{u^2 + v^2}}$ |
| Three dimensions: let $\mathbf{x} = (x, y, z)$ and $\mathbf{u} = (u, v, w)$. | | |
| 14 | $\delta(x - a)\delta(y - b)\delta(z - c)$ | $\frac{1}{(2\pi)^{3/2}} e^{-i(au + bv + cw)}$ |
| 15 | $e^{-x^2/4a - y^2/4b - z^2/4c}$ $a, b, c > 0$ | $2^{3/2} \sqrt{abc} e^{-au^2 - bv^2 - cw^2}$ |
| 16 | $\begin{cases} 1 & x < a, y < b, z < c \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$ (box) | $\left(\frac{2}{\pi}\right)^{3/2} \frac{\sin au \sin bv \sin cw}{uvw}$ |
| 17 | $\begin{cases} 1 & x^2 + y^2 + z^2 < a^2 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$ (ball) | $\frac{\sin a\rho - a\rho \cos a\rho}{\sqrt{2\pi}\rho^3}$ $\rho^2 = u^2 + v^2 + w^2$ |

Laplace transforms: functional relations

$$F(s) = \mathcal{L}(f)(s) = \int_0^{\infty} f(t)e^{-st} dt.$$

| No. | $f(t)$ | $F(s)$ |
|-----|--|---|
| 1 | $af(t) + bg(t)$ | $aF(s) + bG(s)$ |
| 2 | $f'(t)$ | $sF(s) - F(0+)$ |
| 3 | $f''(t)$ | $s^2F(s) - sF(0+) - F'(0+)$ |
| 4 | $f^{(n)}(t)$ | $s^n F(s) - \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} s^{n-1-k} F^{(k)}(0+)$ |
| 5 | $\int_0^t f(\tau) d\tau$ | $\frac{1}{s}F(s)$ |
| 6 | $\int_0^t \int_0^\tau f(u) du d\tau$ | $\frac{1}{s^2}F(s)$ |
| 7 | $\int_0^t f_1(t-\tau)f_2(\tau) d\tau = f_1 * f_2$ | $F_1(s)F_2(s)$ |
| 8 | $tf(t)$ | $-F'(s)$ |
| 9 | $t^n f(t)$ | $(-1)^n F^{(n)}(s)$ |
| 10 | $\frac{1}{t}f(t)$ | $\int_s^{\infty} F(z) dz$ |
| 11 | $e^{at}f(t)$ | $F(s-a)$ |
| 12 | $f(t-b)$ with $f(t) = 0$ for $t < 0$ | $e^{-bs}F(s)$ |
| 13 | $\frac{1}{c}f\left(\frac{t}{c}\right)$ | $F(cs)$ |
| 14 | $\frac{1}{c}e^{bt/c}f\left(\frac{t}{c}\right)$ | $F(cs-b)$ |
| 15 | $f(t+a) = f(t)$ | $\int_0^a e^{-st}f(t) dt / 1 - e^{-as}$ |
| 16 | $f(t+a) = -f(t)$ | $\int_0^a e^{-st}f(t) dt / 1 + e^{-as}$ |
| 17 | $\sum_{k=1}^n \frac{p^{(a_k)}}{q^{(a_k)}} e^{a_k t}$ with $q(t) = (t-a_1)\cdots(t-a_n)$ | $\frac{p(s)}{q(s)}$ |
| 18 | $e^{at} \sum_{k=1}^n \frac{\phi^{(n-k)}(a)}{(n-k)!} \frac{t^{k-1}}{(k-1)!}$ | $\frac{\phi(s)}{(s-a)^n}$ |

Laplace transforms

$$F(s) = \mathcal{L}(f)(s) = \int_0^{\infty} f(t)e^{-st} dt.$$

| No. | $f(t)$ | $F(s)$ |
|-----|--|--|
| 1 | $\delta(t)$, delta function | 1 |
| 2 | $H(t)$, unit step function or Heaviside function | $1/s$ |
| 3 | t | $1/s^2$ |
| 4 | $\frac{t^{n-1}}{(n-1)!}$ | $1/s^n$ $(n = 1, 2, \dots)$ |
| 5 | $1/\sqrt{\pi t}$ | $1/\sqrt{s}$ |
| 6 | $2\sqrt{t/\pi}$ | $s^{-3/2}$ |
| 7 | $\frac{2^n t^{n-1/2}}{\sqrt{\pi}(2n-1)!!}$ | $s^{-(n+1/2)}$ $(n = 1, 2, \dots)$ |
| 8 | t^{k-1} | $\frac{\Gamma(k)}{s^k}$ $(k > 0)$ |
| 9 | e^{at} | $\frac{1}{s-a}$ |
| 10 | te^{at} | $\frac{1}{(s-a)^2}$ |
| 11 | $\frac{1}{(n-1)!} t^{n-1} e^{at}$ | $\frac{1}{(s-a)^n}$ $(n = 1, 2, \dots)$ |
| 12 | $t^{k-1} e^{at}$ | $\frac{\Gamma(k)}{(s-a)^k}$ $(k > 0)$ |
| 13 | $\frac{1}{a-b} (e^{at} - e^{bt})$ | $\frac{1}{(s-a)(s-b)}$ $(a \neq b)$ |
| 14 | $\frac{1}{a-b} (ae^{at} - be^{bt})$ | $\frac{s}{(s-a)(s-b)}$ $(a \neq b)$ |
| 15 | $-\frac{(b-c)e^{at} + (c-a)e^{bt} + (a-b)e^{ct}}{(a-b)(b-c)(c-a)}$ | $\frac{1}{(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)}$ $(a, b, c \text{ distinct})$ |
| 16 | $\frac{1}{a} \sin at$ | $\frac{1}{s^2 + a^2}$ |
| 17 | $\cos at$ | $\frac{s}{s^2 + a^2}$ |
| 18 | $\frac{1}{a} \sinh at$ | $\frac{1}{s^2 - a^2}$ |
| 19 | $\cosh at$ | $\frac{s}{s^2 - a^2}$ |
| 20 | $\frac{1}{a^2} (1 - \cos at)$ | $\frac{1}{s(s^2 + a^2)}$ |
| 21 | $\frac{1}{a^3} (at - \sin at)$ | $\frac{1}{s^2(s^2 + a^2)}$ |
| 22 | $\frac{1}{2a^3} (\sin at - at \cos at)$ | $\frac{1}{(s^2 + a^2)^2}$ |
| 23 | $\frac{t}{2a} \sin at$ | $\frac{s}{(s^2 + a^2)^2}$ |

Laplace transforms

$$F(s) = \mathcal{L}(f)(s) = \int_0^{\infty} f(t)e^{-st} dt.$$

| No. | $f(t)$ | $F(s)$ |
|-----|---|---|
| 24 | $\frac{1}{2a}(\sin at + at \cos at)$ | $\frac{s^2}{(s^2+a^2)^2}$ |
| 25 | $t \cos at$ | $\frac{s^2-a^2}{(s^2+a^2)^2}$ |
| 26 | $\frac{\cos at - \cos bt}{b^2 - a^2}$ | $\frac{s}{(s^2+a^2)(s^2+b^2)} \quad (a^2 \neq b^2)$ |
| 27 | $\frac{1}{b}e^{at} \sin bt$ | $\frac{1}{(s-a)^2+b^2}$ |
| 28 | $e^{at} \cos bt$ | $\frac{s-a}{(s-a)^2+b^2}$ |
| 29 | $-\frac{e^{-at}}{4^{n-1}b^{2n}} \sum_{k=1}^n \binom{2n-k-1}{n-1} \times (-2t)^{k-1} \frac{d^k}{dt^k} [\cos bt]$ | $\frac{1}{[(s-a)^2+b^2]^n}$ |
| 30 | $\frac{e^{-at}}{4^{n-1}b^{2n}} \left\{ \sum_{k=1}^n \binom{2n-k-1}{n-1} \frac{(-2t)^{k-1}}{(k-1)!} \times \frac{d^k}{dt^k} [a \cos bt + b \sin at] - 2b \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} \binom{2n-k-2}{n-1} \frac{(-2t)^{k-1}}{(k-1)!} \times \frac{d^k}{dt^k} [\sin bt] \right\}$ | $\frac{s}{[(s-a)^2+b^2]^n}$ |
| 31 | $e^{-at} - e^{at/2} \left(\cos \frac{at\sqrt{3}}{2} - \sqrt{3} \sin \frac{at\sqrt{3}}{2} \right)$ | $\frac{3a^2}{s^3+a^3}$ |
| 32 | $\sin at \cosh at - \cos at \sinh at$ | $\frac{4a^3}{s^4+4a^4}$ |
| 33 | $\frac{1}{2a^2} \sin at \sinh at$ | $\frac{s}{s^4+4a^4}$ |
| 34 | $\frac{1}{2a^3} (\sinh at - \sin at)$ | $\frac{1}{s^4-a^4}$ |
| 35 | $\frac{1}{2a^2} (\cosh at - \cos at)$ | $\frac{s}{s^4-a^4}$ |
| 36 | $(1+a^2t^2) \sin at - \cos at$ | $\frac{8a^3s^2}{(s^2+a^2)^3}$ |
| 37 | $\frac{e^t}{n!} \frac{d^n}{dt^n} (t^n e^{-t})$ | $\frac{1}{s} \left(\frac{s-1}{s} \right)^n$ |
| 38 | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi t}} e^{at} (1+2at)$ | $\frac{s}{(s-a)^{3/2}}$ |
| 39 | $\frac{1}{2\sqrt{\pi t^3}} (e^{bt} - e^{at})$ | $\sqrt{s-a} - \sqrt{s-b}$ |
| 40 | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi t}} - ae^{a^2t} \operatorname{erfc}(a\sqrt{t})$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{s+a}}$ |
| 41 | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi t}} + ae^{a^2t} \operatorname{erf}(a\sqrt{t})$ | $\frac{\sqrt{s}}{s-a^2}$ |

Laplace transforms

$$F(s) = \mathcal{L}(f)(s) = \int_0^{\infty} f(t)e^{-st} dt.$$

| No. | $f(t)$ | $F(s)$ |
|-----|---|--|
| 42 | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi t}} - \frac{2a}{\sqrt{\pi}} e^{-a^2 t} \int_0^{a\sqrt{t}} e^{\tau^2} d\tau$ | $\frac{\sqrt{s}}{s+a^2}$ |
| 43 | $\frac{1}{a} e^{a^2 t} \operatorname{erf}(a\sqrt{t})$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{s(s-a^2)}}$ |
| 44 | $\frac{2}{a\sqrt{\pi}} e^{-a^2 t} \int_0^{a\sqrt{t}} e^{\tau^2} d\tau$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{s(s+a^2)}}$ |
| 45 | $e^{a^2 t} [b - a \operatorname{erf}(a\sqrt{t}) - b e^{b^2 t} \operatorname{erfc}(b\sqrt{t})]$ | $\frac{b^2 - a^2}{(s - a^2)(b + \sqrt{s})}$ |
| 46 | $e^{a^2 t} \operatorname{erfc}(a\sqrt{t})$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{s}(\sqrt{s+a})}$ |
| 47 | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{b-a}} e^{-at} \operatorname{erf}(\sqrt{b-a}\sqrt{t})$ | $\frac{1}{(s+a)\sqrt{s+b}}$ |
| 48 | $e^{a^2 t} \left[\frac{b}{a} \operatorname{erf}(a\sqrt{t}) - 1 \right] + e^{b^2 t} \operatorname{erfc}(b\sqrt{t})$ | $\frac{b^2 - a^2}{\sqrt{s(s-a^2)}(\sqrt{s+b})}$ |
| 49 | $\frac{n!}{(2n)!\sqrt{\pi t}} H_{2n}(\sqrt{t})$ | $\frac{(1-s)^n}{s^{n+1/2}}$ |
| 50 | $-\frac{n!}{(2n+1)!\sqrt{\pi}} H_{2n+1}(\sqrt{t})$ | $\frac{(1-s)^n}{s^{n+3/2}}$ |
| 51 | $ae^{-at} [I_1(at) + I_0(at)]$ | $\frac{\sqrt{s+2a}}{\sqrt{s}} - 1$ |
| 52 | $e^{-(a+b)t/2} I_0\left(\frac{a-b}{2}t\right)$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{s+a}\sqrt{s+b}}$ |
| 53 | $\sqrt{\pi} \left(\frac{t}{a-b}\right)^{k-1/2} e^{-(a+b)t/2} \times I_{k-1/2}\left(\frac{a-b}{2}t\right)$ | $\frac{\Gamma(k)}{(s+a)^k(s+b)^k} \quad (k \geq 0)$ |
| 54 | $te^{-(a+b)t/2} \left[I_0\left(\frac{a-b}{2}t\right) + I_1\left(\frac{a-b}{2}t\right) \right]$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{s+a}(s+b)^{3/2}}$ |
| 55 | $\frac{1}{t} e^{-at} I_1(at)$ | $\frac{\sqrt{s+2a}-\sqrt{s}}{\sqrt{s+2a}+\sqrt{s}}$ |
| 56 | $J_0(at)$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{s^2+a^2}}$ |
| 57 | $a^k J_k(at)$ | $\frac{(\sqrt{s^2+a^2}-s)^k}{\sqrt{s^2+a^2}} \quad (k > -1)$ |
| 58 | $\frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{\Gamma(k)} \left(\frac{t}{2a}\right)^{k-1/2} J_{k-1/2}(at)$ | $\frac{1}{(s^2+a^2)^k} \quad (k > 0)$ |
| 59 | $\frac{ka^k}{t} J_k(at)$ | $(\sqrt{s^2+a^2}-s)^k \quad (k > 0)$ |
| 60 | $a^k I_k(at)$ | $\frac{(s-\sqrt{s^2-a^2})^k}{\sqrt{s^2-a^2}} \quad (k > -1)$ |
| 61 | $\frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{\Gamma(k)} \left(\frac{t}{2a}\right)^{k-1/2} I_{k-1/2}(at)$ | $\frac{1}{(s^2-a^2)^k} \quad (k > 0)$ |

Laplace transforms

$$F(s) = \mathcal{L}(f)(s) = \int_0^{\infty} f(t)e^{-st} dt.$$

| No. | $f(t)$ | $F(s)$ |
|-----|--|--|
| 62 | $\begin{cases} 0 & \text{when } 0 < t < k \\ 1 & \text{when } t > k \end{cases}$ | $\frac{e^{-ks}}{s}$ |
| 63 | $\begin{cases} 0 & \text{when } 0 < t < k \\ t - k & \text{when } t > k \end{cases}$ | $\frac{e^{-ks}}{s^2}$ |
| 64 | $\begin{cases} 0 & \text{when } 0 < t < k \\ \frac{(t-k)^{p-1}}{\Gamma(p)} & \text{when } t > k \end{cases}$ | $\frac{e^{-ks}}{s^p}$ ($p > 0$) |
| 65 | $\begin{cases} 1 & \text{when } 0 < t < k \\ 0 & \text{when } t > k \end{cases}$ | $\frac{1 - e^{-ks}}{s}$ |
| 66 | $ \sin at $ | $\frac{a}{s^2 + a^2} \coth \frac{\pi s}{2a}$ |
| 67 | $J_0(2\sqrt{at})$ | $\frac{1}{s} e^{-a/s}$ |
| 68 | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi t}} \cos 2\sqrt{at}$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{s}} e^{-a/s}$ |
| 69 | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi t}} \cosh 2\sqrt{at}$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{s}} e^{a/s}$ |
| 70 | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi a}} \sin 2\sqrt{at}$ | $\frac{1}{s^{3/2}} e^{-a/s}$ |
| 71 | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi a}} \sinh 2\sqrt{at}$ | $\frac{1}{s^{3/2}} e^{a/s}$ |
| 72 | $\left(\frac{t}{a}\right)^{(k-1)/2} J_{k-1}(2\sqrt{at})$ | $\frac{1}{s^k} e^{-a/s}$ ($k > 0$) |
| 73 | $\left(\frac{t}{a}\right)^{(k-1)/2} I_{k-1}(2\sqrt{at})$ | $\frac{1}{s^k} e^{a/s}$ ($k > 0$) |
| 74 | $\frac{a}{2\sqrt{\pi t^3}} e^{-a^2/4t}$ | $e^{-a\sqrt{s}}$ ($a > 0$) |
| 75 | $\operatorname{erfc}\left(\frac{a}{2\sqrt{t}}\right)$ | $\frac{1}{s} e^{-a\sqrt{s}}$ ($a \geq 0$) |
| 76 | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi t}} e^{-a^2/4t}$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{s}} e^{-a\sqrt{s}}$ ($a \geq 0$) |
| 77 | $2\sqrt{\frac{t}{\pi}} e^{-a^2/4t} - a \operatorname{erfc}\left(\frac{a}{2\sqrt{t}}\right)$ | $s^{-3/2} e^{-a\sqrt{s}}$ ($a \geq 0$) |
| 78 | $e^{ak+a^2t} \operatorname{erfc}\left(a\sqrt{t} + \frac{k}{2\sqrt{t}}\right)$ | $\frac{e^{-k\sqrt{s}}}{\sqrt{s}(a+\sqrt{s})}$ ($k \geq 0$) |
| 79 | $J_0(a\sqrt{t^2 + 2kt})$ | $\frac{e^{-k(\sqrt{s^2+a^2}-s)}}{\sqrt{s^2+a^2}}$ ($k \geq 0$) |
| 80 | $\Gamma'(1) - \log t$ | $\frac{1}{s} \log s$ |
| 81 | $t^{k-1} \left[\frac{\Gamma'(k)}{[\Gamma(k)]^2} - \frac{\log t}{\Gamma(k)} \right]$ | $\frac{1}{s^k} \log s$ ($k > 0$) |
| 82 | $e^{at} [\log a - \operatorname{Ei}(-at)]$ | $\frac{\log s}{s-a}$ ($a > 0$) |

Laplace transforms

$$F(s) = \mathcal{L}(f)(s) = \int_0^{\infty} f(t)e^{-st} dt.$$

| No. | $f(t)$ | $F(s)$ |
|-----|---|--|
| 83 | $\cos t \operatorname{Si}(t) - \sin t \operatorname{Ci}(t)$ | $\frac{\log s}{s^2+1}$ |
| 84 | $-\sin t \operatorname{Si}(t) - \cos t \operatorname{Ci}(t)$ | $\frac{t \log s}{s^2+1}$ |
| 85 | $-\operatorname{Ei}\left(-\frac{t}{a}\right)$ | $\frac{1}{s} \log(1+as) \quad (a > 0)$ |
| 86 | $\frac{1}{t}(e^{bt} - e^{at})$ | $\log \frac{s-a}{s-b}$ |
| 87 | $-2 \operatorname{Ci}\left(-\frac{t}{a}\right)$ | $\frac{1}{s} \log(1+a^2s^2)$ |
| 88 | $2 \log a - 2 \operatorname{Ci}(at)$ | $\frac{1}{s} \log(s^2+a^2) \quad (a > 0)$ |
| 89 | $\frac{2}{a}[at \log a + \sin at - at \operatorname{Ci}(at)]$ | $\frac{1}{s^2} \log(s^2+a^2) \quad (a > 0)$ |
| 90 | $\frac{2}{t}(1 - \cos at)$ | $\log \frac{s^2+a^2}{s^2}$ |
| 91 | $\frac{2}{t}(1 - \cosh at)$ | $\log \frac{s^2-a^2}{s^2}$ |
| 92 | $\frac{1}{t} \sin at$ | $\tan^{-1} \frac{a}{s}$ |
| 93 | $\frac{1}{a\sqrt{\pi}} e^{-t^2/4a^2}$ | $e^{a^2s^2} \operatorname{erfc}(as) \quad (a > 0)$ |
| 94 | $\operatorname{erf}\left(\frac{t}{2a}\right)$ | $\frac{1}{s} e^{a^2s^2} \operatorname{erfc}(as) \quad (a > 0)$ |
| 95 | $\frac{\sqrt{a}}{\pi \sqrt{t(t+a)}}$ | $e^{as} \operatorname{erfc}(\sqrt{as}) \quad (a > 0)$ |
| 96 | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi(t+a)}}$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{s}} e^{as} \operatorname{erfc}(\sqrt{as}) \quad (a > 0)$ |
| 97 | $\frac{1}{\pi t} \sin(2a\sqrt{t})$ | $\operatorname{erf}\left(\frac{a}{\sqrt{s}}\right)$ |
| 98 | $\frac{1}{t+a}$ | $-e^{as} \operatorname{Ei}(-as) \quad (a > 0)$ |
| 99 | $\frac{1}{(t+a)^2}$ | $\frac{1}{a} + se^{as} \operatorname{Ei}(-as) \quad (a > 0)$ |
| 100 | $\frac{1}{t^2+1}$ | $\left[\frac{\pi}{2} - \operatorname{Si}(s)\right] \cos s + \operatorname{Ci}(s) \sin s$ |
| 101 | $\begin{cases} 0 & \text{when } 0 < t < a \\ (t^2 - a^2)^{-1/2} & \text{when } t > a \end{cases}$ | $K_0(as)$ |

Hankel transforms

$$\mathcal{H}_\nu(f)(y) = F_\nu(y) = \int_0^\infty f(x)\sqrt{xy}J_\nu(yx) dx, \quad y > 0.$$

| No. | $f(x)$ | $F_\nu(y)$ |
|-----|--|---|
| 1 | $\begin{cases} x^{\nu+1/2}, & 0 < x < 1 \\ 0, & 1 < x \end{cases}$ <p style="text-align: center;">$\operatorname{Re} \nu > -1$</p> | $y^{-1/2}J_{\nu+1}(y)$ |
| 2 | $\begin{cases} x^{\nu+1/2}(a^2 - x^2)^\mu, & 0 < x < a \\ 0, & a < x \end{cases}$ <p style="text-align: center;">$\operatorname{Re} \nu, \operatorname{Re} \mu > -1$</p> | $2^\mu \Gamma(\mu + 1) a^{\nu+\mu+1} y^{-\mu-1/2} \times J_{\nu+\mu+1}(ay)$ |
| 3 | $x^{\nu+1/2}(x^2 + a^2)^{-\nu-1/2},$ <p style="text-align: center;">$\operatorname{Re} a > 0, \operatorname{Re} \nu > -1/2$</p> | $\sqrt{\pi} y^{\nu-1/2} 2^{-\nu} e^{-ay} \times [\Gamma(\nu + 1/2)]^{-1}$ |
| 4 | $x^{\nu+1/2} e^{-ax},$ <p style="text-align: center;">$\operatorname{Re} a > 0, \operatorname{Re} \nu > -1$</p> | $a(\pi)^{-1/2} 2^{\nu+1} y^{\nu+1/2} \Gamma(\nu + 3/2) \times (a^2 + y^2)^{-\nu-3/2}$ |
| 5 | $x^{\nu+1/2} e^{-ax^2},$ <p style="text-align: center;">$\operatorname{Re} a > 0, \operatorname{Re} \nu > -1$</p> | $y^{\nu+1/2} (2a)^{-\nu-1} \exp(-y^2/4a)$ |
| 6 | $e^{-ax}/\sqrt{x},$ <p style="text-align: center;">$\operatorname{Re} a > 0, \operatorname{Re} \nu > -1$</p> | $y^{-\nu+1/2} \left[\sqrt{(a^2 + y^2)} - a \right]^\nu \times (a^2 + y^2)^{-1/2}$ |
| 7 | $x^{-\nu-1/2} \cos(ax),$ <p style="text-align: center;">$a > 0, \operatorname{Re} \nu > -1/2$</p> | $\sqrt{\pi} 2^{-\nu} y^{-\nu+1/2} [\Gamma(\nu + 1/2)]^{-1} \times (y^2 - a^2)^{\nu-1/2} H(y - a)$ |
| 8 | $x^{1/2-\nu} \sin(ax),$ <p style="text-align: center;">$a > 0, \operatorname{Re} \nu > 1/2$</p> | $a 2^{1-\nu} \sqrt{\pi} y^{\nu+1/2} [\Gamma(\nu - 1/2)]^{-1} \times (y^2 - a^2)^{\nu-3/2} H(y - a)$ |
| 9 | $x^{-1/2} J_{\nu-1}(ax),$ <p style="text-align: center;">$a > 0, \operatorname{Re} \nu > -1$</p> | $a^{\nu-1} y^{-\nu+1/2} H(y - a)$ |
| 10 | $x^{-1/2} J_{\nu+1}(ax),$ <p style="text-align: center;">$a > 0, \operatorname{Re} \nu > -3/2$</p> | $\begin{cases} a^{-\nu-1} y^{\nu+1/2}, & 0 < y < a \\ 0, & a < y \end{cases}$ |

Hilbert transforms

$$\mathcal{H}(f)(y) = F(y) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{f(x)}{x-y} dx.$$

| No. | $f(x)$ | $F(y)$ |
|-----|---|--|
| 1 | 1 | 0 |
| 2 | $\begin{cases} 0, & -\infty < x < a \\ 1, & a < x < b \\ 0, & b < x < \infty \end{cases}$ | $\frac{1}{\pi} \log (b-y)(a-y)^{-1} $ |
| 3 | $\begin{cases} 0, & -\infty < x < a \\ x^{-1}, & a < x < \infty \end{cases}$ | $(\pi y)^{-1} \log a(a-y)^{-1} ,$ $0 \neq y \neq a, \quad a > 0$ |
| 4 | $(x+a)^{-1} \quad \text{Im } a > 0$ | $i(y+a)^{-1}$ |
| 5 | $\frac{1}{1+x^2}$ | $-\frac{y}{1+y^2}$ |
| 6 | $\frac{1}{1+x^4}$ | $-\frac{y(1+y^2)}{\sqrt{2}(1+y^4)}$ |
| 7 | $\sin(ax), \quad a > 0$ | $\cos(ay)$ |
| 8 | $\frac{\sin(ax)}{x}, \quad a > 0$ | $\frac{\cos(ay) - 1}{y}$ |
| 9 | $\frac{\sin x}{1+x^2}$ | $\frac{\cos y - e^{-1}}{1+y^2}$ |
| 10 | $\cos(ax), \quad a > 0$ | $-\sin(ay)$ |
| 11 | $\frac{1 - \cos(ax)}{x}, \quad a > 0$ | $\frac{\sin(ay)}{y}$ |
| 12 | $\text{sgn}(x) \sin(a x ^{1/2}) \quad a > 0$ | $\cos(a y ^{1/2}) + \exp(-a y ^{1/2})$ |
| 13 | $e^{iax} \quad a > 0$ | $ie^{ia y}$ |

Mellin transforms

$$f^*(s) = \mathcal{M}[f(x); s] = \int_0^\infty f(x)x^{s-1} dx.$$

| No. | $f(x)$ | $f^*(s)$ |
|-----|---|---|
| 1 | $ag(x) + bh(x)$ | $ag^*(s) + bh^*(s)$ |
| 2 | $f^{(n)}(x)^\dagger$ | $(-1)^n \frac{\Gamma(s)}{\Gamma(s-n)} f^*(s-n)$ |
| 3 | $x^n f^{(n)}(x)^\dagger$ | $(-1)^n \frac{\Gamma(s+n)}{\Gamma(s)} f^*(s)$ |
| 4 | $I_n f(x)^\ddagger$ | $(-1)^n \frac{\Gamma(s)}{\Gamma(s+n)} f^*(s+n)$ |
| 5 | e^{-x} | $\Gamma(s) \quad \text{Re } s > 0$ |
| 6 | e^{-x^2} | $\frac{1}{2}\Gamma(\frac{1}{2}s) \quad \text{Re } s > 0$ |
| 7 | $\cos x$ | $\Gamma(s) \cos(\frac{1}{2}\pi s) \quad 0 < \text{Re } s < 1$ |
| 8 | $\sin x$ | $\Gamma(s) \sin(\frac{1}{2}\pi s) \quad 0 < \text{Re } s < 1$ |
| 9 | $(1-x)^{-1}$ | $\pi \cot(\pi s) \quad 0 < \text{Re } s < 1$ |
| 10 | $(1+x)^{-1}$ | $\pi \operatorname{cosec}(\pi s) \quad 0 < \text{Re } s < 1$ |
| 11 | $(1+x^a)^{-b}$ | $\frac{\Gamma(s/a)\Gamma(b-s/a)}{a\Gamma(b)} \quad 0 < \text{Re } s < ab$ |
| 12 | $\log(1+ax) \quad \arg a < \pi$ | $\pi s^{-1} a^{-s} \operatorname{cosec}(\pi s) \quad -1 < \text{Re } s < 0$ |
| 13 | $\tan^{-1} x$ | $-\frac{1}{2}\pi s^{-1} \sec(\frac{1}{2}\pi s) \quad -1 < \text{Re } s < 0$ |
| 14 | $\cot^{-1} x$ | $\frac{1}{2}\pi s^{-1} \sec(\frac{1}{2}\pi s) \quad 0 < \text{Re } s < 1$ |
| 15 | $\operatorname{csch} ax \quad \text{Re } a > 0$ | $2(1-2^{-s})a^{-s}\Gamma(s)\zeta(s) \quad \text{Re } s > 1$ |
| 16 | $\operatorname{sech}^2 ax \quad \text{Re } a > 0$ | $4(2a)^{-s}\Gamma(s)\zeta(s-1) \quad \text{Re } s > 2$ |
| 17 | $\operatorname{csch}^2 ax \quad \text{Re } a > 0$ | $4(2a)^{-s}\Gamma(s)\zeta(s-1) \quad \text{Re } s > 2$ |
| 18 | $K_\nu(ax)$ | $a^{-s}2^{s-2}\Gamma((s-\nu)/2) \times \Gamma((s+\nu)/2) \quad \text{Re } s > \operatorname{Re } \nu $ |

† Assuming that $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} x^{s-r-1} f^{(r)}(x) = 0$ for $r = 0, 1, \dots, n-1$.

‡ Where I_n denotes the n^{th} repeated integral of $f(x)$: $I_0 f(x) = f(x)$, $I_n f(x) = \int_0^x I_{n-1}(t) dt$.

Chapter 5

Continuous Mathematics

5.1 DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS

- 5.1.1 *Limits*
- 5.1.2 *Derivatives*
- 5.1.3 *Derivatives of common functions*
- 5.1.4 *Derivative formulae*
- 5.1.5 *Derivative theorems*
- 5.1.6 *The two-dimensional chain rule*
- 5.1.7 *l'Hôpital's rule*
- 5.1.8 *Maxima and minima of functions*
- 5.1.9 *Vector calculus*
- 5.1.10 *Matrix and vector derivatives*

5.2 DIFFERENTIAL FORMS

- 5.2.1 *Products of 1-forms*
- 5.2.2 *Differential 2-forms*
- 5.2.3 *The 2-forms in \mathbb{R}^n*
- 5.2.4 *Higher dimensional forms*
- 5.2.5 *The exterior derivative*
- 5.2.6 *Properties of the exterior derivative*

5.3 INTEGRATION

- 5.3.1 *Definitions*
- 5.3.2 *Properties of integrals*
- 5.3.3 *Methods of evaluating integrals*
- 5.3.4 *Types of integrals*
- 5.3.5 *Integral inequalities*
- 5.3.6 *Convergence tests*
- 5.3.7 *Variational principles*
- 5.3.8 *Continuity of integral antiderivatives*
- 5.3.9 *Asymptotic integral evaluation*
- 5.3.10 *Special functions defined by integrals*
- 5.3.11 *Applications of integration*
- 5.3.12 *Moments of inertia for various bodies*
- 5.3.13 *Tables of integrals*

5.4 TABLE OF INDEFINITE INTEGRALS

- 5.4.1 *Elementary forms*

-
- 5.4.2 *Forms containing $a + bx$*
 - 5.4.3 *Forms containing $c^2 \pm x^2$ and $x^2 - c^2$*
 - 5.4.4 *Forms containing $a + bx$ and $c + dx$*
 - 5.4.5 *Forms containing $a + bx^n$*
 - 5.4.6 *Forms containing $c^3 \pm x^3$*
 - 5.4.7 *Forms containing $c^4 \pm x^4$*
 - 5.4.8 *Forms containing $a + bx + cx^2$*
 - 5.4.9 *Forms containing $\sqrt{a + bx}$*
 - 5.4.10 *Forms containing $\sqrt{a + bx}$ and $\sqrt{c + dx}$*
 - 5.4.11 *Forms containing $\sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}$*
 - 5.4.12 *Forms containing $\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}$*
 - 5.4.13 *Forms containing $\sqrt{a + bx + cx^2}$*
 - 5.4.14 *Forms containing $\sqrt{2ax - x^2}$*
 - 5.4.15 *Miscellaneous algebraic forms*
 - 5.4.16 *Forms involving trigonometric functions*
 - 5.4.17 *Forms involving inverse trigonometric functions*
 - 5.4.18 *Logarithmic forms*
 - 5.4.19 *Exponential forms*
 - 5.4.20 *Hyperbolic forms*
 - 5.4.21 *Bessel functions*

5.5 TABLE OF DEFINITE INTEGRALS

- 5.5.1 *Table of semi-integrals*

5.6 ORDINARY DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS

- 5.6.1 *Linear differential equations*
- 5.6.2 *Solution techniques overview*
- 5.6.3 *Integrating factors*
- 5.6.4 *Variation of parameters*
- 5.6.5 *Green's functions*
- 5.6.6 *Table of Green's functions*
- 5.6.7 *Transform techniques*
- 5.6.8 *Named ordinary differential equations*
- 5.6.9 *Liapunov's direct method*
- 5.6.10 *Lie groups*
- 5.6.11 *Stochastic differential equations*
- 5.6.12 *Types of critical points*

5.7 PARTIAL DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS

- 5.7.1 *Classifications of PDEs*
- 5.7.2 *Named partial differential equations*
- 5.7.3 *Transforming partial differential equations*
- 5.7.4 *Well-posedness of PDEs*
- 5.7.5 *Green's functions*
- 5.7.6 *Quasi-linear equations*
- 5.7.7 *Separation of variables*
- 5.7.8 *Solutions of Laplace's equation*
- 5.7.9 *Solutions to the wave equation*
- 5.7.10 *Particular solutions to some PDEs*

5.8 EIGENVALUES

5.9 INTEGRAL EQUATIONS

- 5.9.1 *Definitions*

-
- 5.9.2 Connection to differential equations
 - 5.9.3 Fredholm alternative
 - 5.9.4 Special equations with solutions

5.10 TENSOR ANALYSIS

- 5.10.1 Definitions
- 5.10.2 Algebraic tensor operations
- 5.10.3 Differentiation of tensors
- 5.10.4 Metric tensor
- 5.10.5 Results
- 5.10.6 Examples of tensors

5.11 ORTHOGONAL COORDINATE SYSTEMS

- 5.11.1 Table of orthogonal coordinate systems

5.12 CONTROL THEORY

5.1 DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS

5.1.1 LIMITS

If $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) = A < \infty$ and $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} g(x) = B < \infty$ then

1. $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} (f(x) \pm g(x)) = A \pm B$
2. $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x)g(x) = AB$
3. $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{f(x)}{g(x)} = \frac{A}{B}$ (if $B \neq 0$)
4. $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} [f(x)]^{g(x)} = A^B$ (if $A > 0$)
5. $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} h(f(x)) = h(A)$ (if h continuous)
6. If $f(x) \leq g(x)$, then $A \leq B$
7. If $A = B$ and $f(x) \leq h(x) \leq g(x)$, then $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} h(x) = A$

EXAMPLES

1. $\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \left(1 + \frac{t}{x}\right)^x = e^t$
2. $\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} x^{1/x} = 1$
3. $\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \frac{(\log x)^p}{x^q} = 0$ (if $q > 0$)
4. $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0^+} x^p |\log x|^q = 0$ (if $p > 0$)
5. $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin ax}{x} = a$
6. $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{a^x - 1}{x} = \log a$
7. $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\log(1+x)}{x} = 1$

5.1.2 DERIVATIVES

The *derivative* of the function $f(x)$, written $f'(x)$, is de ned as

$$f'(x) = \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x + \Delta x) - f(x)}{\Delta x} \tag{5.1.1}$$

if the limit exists. If $y = f(x)$, then $\frac{dy}{dx} = f'(x)$. The n^{th} derivative is

$$y^{(n)} = \frac{dy^{(n-1)}}{dx} = \frac{d}{dx} \left(\frac{d^{n-1}y}{dx^{n-1}} \right) = \frac{d^n y}{dx^n} = f^{(n)}(x).$$

The second and third derivatives are usually written as y'' and y''' . Sometimes the fourth and n^{th} derivatives are written as $y^{(iv)}$ and $y^{(v)}$.

The partial derivative of $f(x, y)$ with respect to x , written $f_x(x, y)$ or $\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}$, is de ned as

$$f_x(x, y) = \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x + \Delta x, y) - f(x, y)}{\Delta x}. \tag{5.1.2}$$

5.1.3 DERIVATIVES OF COMMON FUNCTIONS

Let a be a constant.

| $f(x)$ | $f'(x)$ | $f(x)$ | $f'(x)$ | $f(x)$ | $f'(x)$ |
|---------------|----------------------------|----------------------|------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| $\sin x$ | $\cos x$ | $\sinh x$ | $\cosh x$ | x^a | ax^{a-1} |
| $\cos x$ | $-\sin x$ | $\cosh x$ | $\sinh x$ | $\frac{1}{x^a}$ | $-\frac{a}{x^{a+1}}$ |
| $\tan x$ | $\sec^2 x$ | $\tanh x$ | $\text{sech}^2 x$ | \sqrt{x} | $\frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}}$ |
| $\csc x$ | $-\csc x \cot x$ | $\text{csch } x$ | $-\text{csch } x \coth x$ | $\ln x $ | $1/x$ |
| $\sec x$ | $\sec x \tan x$ | $\text{sech } x$ | $-\text{sech } x \tanh x$ | e^x | e^x |
| $\cot x$ | $-\csc^2 x$ | $\coth x$ | $-\text{csch}^2 x$ | a^x ($a > 0$) | $a^x \ln a$ |
| $\sin^{-1} x$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$ | $\sinh^{-1} x$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2+1}}$ | | |
| $\cos^{-1} x$ | $-\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$ | $\cosh^{-1} x$ | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2-1}}$ | | |
| $\tan^{-1} x$ | $\frac{1}{1+x^2}$ | $\tanh^{-1} x$ | $\frac{1}{1-x^2}$ | | |
| $\csc^{-1} x$ | $-\frac{1}{x\sqrt{x^2-1}}$ | $\text{csch}^{-1} x$ | $\frac{-1}{ x \sqrt{1+x^2}}$ | | |
| $\sec^{-1} x$ | $\frac{1}{x\sqrt{x^2-1}}$ | $\text{sech}^{-1} x$ | $\frac{-1}{ x \sqrt{1-x^2}}$ | | |
| $\cot^{-1} x$ | $-\frac{1}{1+x^2}$ | $\coth^{-1} x$ | $\frac{1}{1-x^2}$ | | |

5.1.4 DERIVATIVE FORMULAE

Let u, v, w be functions of x , and let a, c , and n be constants. Appropriate non-zero values, differentiability, and invertability are assumed.

$$(a) \frac{d}{dx}(a) = 0$$

$$(b) \frac{d}{dx}(x) = 1$$

$$(c) \frac{d}{dx}(au) = a \frac{du}{dx}$$

$$(d) \frac{d}{dx}(u+v) = \frac{du}{dx} + \frac{dv}{dx}$$

$$(e) \frac{d}{dx}(uv) = v \frac{du}{dx} + u \frac{dv}{dx}$$

$$(f) \frac{d}{dx}(uvw) = uv \frac{dw}{dx} + uw \frac{dv}{dx} + vw \frac{du}{dx}$$

$$(g) \frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{u}{v}\right) = \frac{1}{v} \frac{du}{dx} - \frac{u}{v^2} \frac{dv}{dx} = \frac{v(du/dx) - u(dv/dx)}{v^2}$$

$$(h) \frac{d}{dx}(u^n) = nu^{n-1} \frac{du}{dx}$$

$$(i) \frac{d}{dx}(u^v) = vu^{v-1} \frac{du}{dx} + (\log_e u)u^v \frac{dv}{dx}$$

$$(j) \frac{d}{dx}(\sqrt{u}) = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{u}} \frac{du}{dx}$$

$$(k) \frac{d}{dx}(\log_e u) = \frac{1}{u} \frac{du}{dx}$$

$$(l) \frac{d}{dx}(\log_a u) = (\log_a e) \frac{1}{u} \frac{du}{dx}$$

$$(m) \frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{1}{u}\right) = -\frac{1}{u^2} \frac{du}{dx}$$

$$(n) \frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{1}{u^n}\right) = -\frac{n}{u^{n+1}} \frac{du}{dx}$$

$$(o) \frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{u^n}{v^m}\right) = \frac{u^{n-1}}{v^{m+1}} \left(nv \frac{du}{dx} - mu \frac{dv}{dx}\right)$$

$$(p) \frac{d}{dx}(u^n v^m) = u^{n-1} v^{m-1} \left(nv \frac{du}{dx} + mu \frac{dv}{dx}\right)$$

$$(q) \frac{d}{dx}(f(u)) = \frac{df}{du}(u) \cdot \frac{du}{dx}$$

$$(r) \frac{d^2}{dx^2}(f(u)) = \frac{df}{du}(u) \cdot \frac{d^2 u}{dx^2} + \frac{d^2 f}{du^2}(u) \cdot \left(\frac{du}{dx}\right)^2$$

$$(s) \frac{d^n}{dx^n}(uv) = \binom{n}{0} v \frac{d^n u}{dx^n} + \binom{n}{1} \frac{dv}{dx} \frac{d^{n-1} u}{dx^{n-1}} + \cdots + \binom{n}{n} \frac{d^n v}{dx^n} u$$

$$(t) \frac{d}{dx} \int_c^x f(t) dt = f(x)$$

$$(u) \frac{d}{dx} \int_x^c f(t) dt = -f(x)$$

$$(v) \frac{dx}{dy} = \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^{-1} \text{ and } \frac{d^2 x}{dy^2} = -\frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} / \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^3$$

(w) If $F(x, y) = 0$, then $\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{F_x}{F_y}$ and

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = -\frac{(F_{xx}F_y^2 - 2F_{xy}F_xF_y + F_{yy}F_x^2)}{F_y^3}$$

(x) Leibniz's rule gives the derivative of an integral:

$$\frac{d}{dx} \left(\int_{f(x)}^{g(x)} h(x, t) dt \right) = g'(x)h(x, g(x)) - f'(x)h(x, f(x)) + \int_{f(x)}^{g(x)} \frac{\partial h}{\partial x}(x, t) dt.$$

(y) If $x = x(t)$ and $y = y(t)$ then (the dots denote differentiation with respect to t):

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{\dot{y}(t)}{\dot{x}(t)}, \quad \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \frac{\dot{x}\ddot{y} - \ddot{x}\dot{y}}{(\dot{x})^3}.$$

5.1.5 DERIVATIVE THEOREMS

1. *Fundamental theorem of calculus:* Suppose f is continuous on $[a, b]$.

(a) If G is defined as $G(x) = \int_a^x f(t) dt$ for all x in $[a, b]$, then G is an antiderivative of f on $[a, b]$.

(b) If F is any antiderivative of f , then $\int_a^b f(t) dt = F(b) - F(a)$. (Recall that $\int_a^b f(x) dx$ is defined as a limit of Riemann sums.)

2. *Intermediate value theorem:* If $f(x)$ is continuous on $[a, b]$ and if $f(a) \neq f(b)$, then f takes on every value between $f(a)$ and $f(b)$ in the interval (a, b) .

3. *Rolle's theorem:* If $f(x)$ is continuous on $[a, b]$ and differentiable on (a, b) , and if $f(a) = f(b)$, then $f'(c) = 0$ for at least one number c in (a, b) .

4. *Mean value theorem:* If $f(x)$ is continuous on $[a, b]$ and differentiable on (a, b) , then a number c exists in (a, b) such that $f(b) - f(a) = (b - a)f'(c)$.

5.1.6 THE TWO-DIMENSIONAL CHAIN RULE

If $x = x(t)$, $y = y(t)$, and $z = z(x, y)$, then

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dz}{dt} &= \frac{\partial z}{\partial x} \frac{dx}{dt} + \frac{\partial z}{\partial y} \frac{dy}{dt}, \text{ and} \\ \frac{d^2z}{dt^2} &= \frac{\partial z}{\partial x} \frac{d^2x}{dt^2} + \frac{dx}{dt} \left(\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x^2} \frac{dx}{dt} + \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x \partial y} \frac{dy}{dt} \right) \\ &\quad + \frac{\partial z}{\partial y} \frac{d^2y}{dt^2} + \frac{dy}{dt} \left(\frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial y^2} \frac{dy}{dt} + \frac{\partial^2 z}{\partial x \partial y} \frac{dx}{dt} \right). \end{aligned} \tag{5.1.3}$$

If $x = x(u, v)$, $y = y(u, v)$, and $z = z(x, y)$, then

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial u} = \frac{\partial z}{\partial x} \frac{\partial x}{\partial u} + \frac{\partial z}{\partial y} \frac{\partial y}{\partial u} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial z}{\partial v} = \frac{\partial z}{\partial x} \frac{\partial x}{\partial v} + \frac{\partial z}{\partial y} \frac{\partial y}{\partial v}. \quad (5.1.4)$$

If $u = u(x, y)$, $v = v(x, y)$, and $f = f(x, y)$, then the partial derivative of f with respect to u , holding v constant, written $\left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial u}\right)_v$, can be expressed as

$$\left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial u}\right)_v = \left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}\right)_y \left(\frac{\partial x}{\partial u}\right)_v + \left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}\right)_x \left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial u}\right)_v. \quad (5.1.5)$$

5.1.7 L'HÔSPITAL'S RULE

If $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ are differentiable in the neighborhood of point a , and if $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ both tend to 0 or ∞ as $x \rightarrow a$, then

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{f(x)}{g(x)} = \lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{f'(x)}{g'(x)} \quad (5.1.6)$$

if the right hand side exists.

EXAMPLES

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{x - \sin x}{x^3} &= \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{1 - \cos x}{3x^2} = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin x}{6x} = \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\cos x}{6} = \frac{1}{6}, \\ \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \frac{x^n}{e^x} &= \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \frac{nx^{n-1}}{e^x} = \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \frac{n(n-1)x^{n-2}}{e^x} = \dots = \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \frac{n!}{e^x} = 0. \end{aligned}$$

5.1.8 MAXIMA AND MINIMA OF FUNCTIONS

1. If a function $f(x)$ has a local extremum at a number c , then either $f'(c) = 0$ or $f'(c)$ does not exist.
2. If $f'(c) = 0$, $f(x)$ is differentiable on an open interval containing c , and
 - (a) if $f''(c) < 0$, then f has a local maximum at c ;
 - (b) if $f''(c) > 0$, then f has a local minimum at c .

5.1.8.1 Lagrange multipliers

To find the extreme values of the function $f(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) = f(\mathbf{x})$ subject to the m side constraints $\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x}) = 0$, introduce an m -dimensional vector of Lagrange multipliers λ and define $F(\mathbf{x}, \lambda) = f(\mathbf{x}) + \lambda^T \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{x})$. Then the extreme values of F with respect to all of its arguments are found by solving:

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial x_i} = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_i} + \lambda^T \frac{\partial \mathbf{g}}{\partial x_i} = 0, \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\partial F}{\partial \lambda_j} = g_j = 0. \quad (5.1.7)$$

For the extreme values of $f(x, y)$ subject to $g(x, y) = 0$ (i.e., $n = 2$ and $m = 1$):

$$f_x + \lambda g_x = 0, \quad f_y + \lambda g_y = 0, \quad \text{and} \quad g = 0. \quad (5.1.8)$$

EXAMPLE To find the points on the unit circle (given by $g(x, y) = (x - 1)^2 + (y - 2)^2 - 1 = 0$) that are closest and furthest from the origin (the distance squared from the origin is $f(x, y) = x^2 + y^2$) can be determined by solving the three (non-linear) algebraic equations:

$$2x + 2\lambda(x - 1) = 0, \quad 2y + 2\lambda(y - 2) = 0, \quad (x - 1)^2 + (y - 2)^2 = 1.$$

The solutions are $x = 1 + 1/\sqrt{5}, y = 2 + 2/\sqrt{5}, \lambda = -1 - \sqrt{5}$ (furthest), and $x = 1 - 1/\sqrt{5}, y = 2 - 2/\sqrt{5}, \lambda = \sqrt{5} - 1$ (closest).

5.1.9 VECTOR CALCULUS

1. Definitions of “div”, “grad”, and “curl” are on page 493.
2. A vector field \mathbf{F} is *irrotational* if $\nabla \times \mathbf{F} = 0$. A vector field \mathbf{F} is *solenoidal* if $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{F} = 0$.
3. In Cartesian coordinates, $\nabla = \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial}{\partial y}, \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \right) = \mathbf{i} \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + \mathbf{j} \frac{\partial}{\partial y} + \mathbf{k} \frac{\partial}{\partial z}$. If u and v are scalars and \mathbf{F} and \mathbf{G} are vectors in \mathbb{R}^3 , then

$$\nabla(u + v) = \nabla u + \nabla v,$$

$$\nabla(uv) = u\nabla v + v\nabla u,$$

$$\nabla(\mathbf{F} + \mathbf{G}) = \nabla\mathbf{F} + \nabla\mathbf{G},$$

$$\nabla(\mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{G}) = (\mathbf{F} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{G} + (\mathbf{G} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{F} + \mathbf{F} \times (\nabla \times \mathbf{G}) + \mathbf{G} \times (\nabla \times \mathbf{F}),$$

$$\nabla \cdot (u\mathbf{F}) = u(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{F}) + \mathbf{F} \cdot \nabla u,$$

$$\nabla \cdot (\mathbf{F} \times \mathbf{G}) = \mathbf{G} \cdot (\nabla \times \mathbf{F}) - \mathbf{F} \cdot (\nabla \times \mathbf{G}),$$

$$\nabla \times (u\mathbf{F}) = u(\nabla \times \mathbf{F}) + (\nabla u) \times \mathbf{F},$$

$$\nabla \times (\mathbf{F} + \mathbf{G}) = \nabla \times \mathbf{F} + \nabla \times \mathbf{G}$$

$$\nabla \times (\mathbf{F} \times \mathbf{G}) = \mathbf{F}(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{G}) - \mathbf{G}(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{F}) + (\mathbf{G} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{F} - (\mathbf{F} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{G},$$

$$\mathbf{F} \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{F}}{dt} = |\mathbf{F}| \frac{d|\mathbf{F}|}{dt},$$

$$\nabla \times (\nabla \times \mathbf{F}) = \nabla(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{F}) - \nabla^2 \mathbf{F},$$

$$\nabla \times (\nabla u) = \mathbf{0},$$

$$\nabla \cdot (\nabla \times \mathbf{F}) = 0, \quad \text{and}$$

$$\nabla^2(uv) = u\nabla^2 v + 2(\nabla u) \cdot (\nabla v) + v\nabla^2 u.$$

Note that $\nabla \cdot u = \sum_{i=1}^3 \frac{\partial u}{\partial x_i}$ is a scalar while $\mathbf{F} \cdot \nabla = \sum_{i=1}^3 F_i \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i}$ is an operator.

4. If $r = |\mathbf{r}|$, \mathbf{a} is a constant vector, and n is an integer, then

| Φ | $\nabla \Phi$ | $\nabla^2 \Phi$ |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|-----------------|
| $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{r}$ | \mathbf{a} | 0 |
| r^n | $nr^{n-2}\mathbf{r}$ | $n(n+1)r^{n-2}$ |
| $\log r$ | \mathbf{r}/r^2 | $1/r^2$ |

| F | $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{F}$ | $\nabla \times \mathbf{F}$ | $(\mathbf{G} \cdot \nabla)\mathbf{F}$ |
|-------------------------|---|--|---|
| r | 3 | 0 | G |
| a × r | 0 | 2 a | a × G |
| a r ⁿ | $nr^{n-2}(\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{a})$ | $nr^{n-2}(\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{a})$ | $nr^{n-2}(\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{G})\mathbf{a}$ |
| r r ⁿ | $(n+3)r^n$ | 0 | $r^n\mathbf{G} + nr^{n-2}(\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{G})\mathbf{r}$ |
| a log r | $\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{a}/r^2$ | $\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{a}/r^2$ | $(\mathbf{G} \cdot \mathbf{r})\mathbf{a}/r^2$ |

| F | $\nabla^2 \mathbf{F}$ | $\nabla \nabla \cdot \mathbf{F}$ |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|---|
| r | 0 | 0 |
| a × r | 0 | 0 |
| a r ⁿ | $n(n+1)r^{n-2}\mathbf{a}$ | $nr^{n-2}\mathbf{a} + n(n-2)r^{n-4}(\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{a})\mathbf{r}$ |
| r r ⁿ | $n(n+3)r^{n-2}\mathbf{r}$ | $n(n+3)r^{n-2}\mathbf{r}$ |
| a log r | \mathbf{a}/r^2 | $[r^2\mathbf{a} - 2(\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{a})\mathbf{r}]/r^4$ |

$$\frac{d}{dt}(\mathbf{F} + \mathbf{G}) = \frac{d\mathbf{F}}{dt} + \frac{d\mathbf{G}}{dt},$$

$$\frac{d}{dt}(\mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{G}) = \mathbf{F} \cdot \frac{d\mathbf{G}}{dt} + \frac{d\mathbf{F}}{dt} \cdot \mathbf{G},$$

$$\frac{d}{dt}(\mathbf{F} \times \mathbf{G}) = \mathbf{F} \times \frac{d\mathbf{G}}{dt} + \frac{d\mathbf{F}}{dt} \times \mathbf{G},$$

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dt}(\mathbf{V}_1 \times \mathbf{V}_2 \times \mathbf{V}_3) &= \left(\frac{d\mathbf{V}_1}{dt}\right) \times (\mathbf{V}_2 \times \mathbf{V}_3) + \mathbf{V}_1 \times \left(\left(\frac{d\mathbf{V}_2}{dt}\right) \times \mathbf{V}_3\right), \\ &\quad + \mathbf{V}_1 \times \left(\mathbf{V}_2 \times \left(\frac{d\mathbf{V}_3}{dt}\right)\right), \end{aligned}$$

$$\frac{d}{dt}[\mathbf{V}_1 \mathbf{V}_2 \mathbf{V}_3] = \left[\left(\frac{d\mathbf{V}_1}{dt}\right) \mathbf{V}_2 \mathbf{V}_3\right] + \left[\mathbf{V}_1 \left(\frac{d\mathbf{V}_2}{dt}\right) \mathbf{V}_3\right] + \left[\mathbf{V}_1 \mathbf{V}_2 \left(\frac{d\mathbf{V}_3}{dt}\right)\right],$$

where $[\mathbf{V}_1 \mathbf{V}_2 \mathbf{V}_3] = \mathbf{V}_1 \cdot (\mathbf{V}_2 \times \mathbf{V}_3)$ is the scalar triple product (see page 136).

5.1.10 MATRIX AND VECTOR DERIVATIVES

5.1.10.1 Definitions

1. The derivative of the row vector $\mathbf{y} = [y_1 \ y_2 \ \dots \ y_m]$ with respect to the scalar x is

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{y}}{\partial x} = \left[\frac{\partial y_1}{\partial x} \quad \frac{\partial y_2}{\partial x} \quad \dots \quad \frac{\partial y_m}{\partial x} \right]. \quad (5.1.9)$$

2. The derivative of a scalar y with respect to the vector \mathbf{x} is

$$\frac{\partial y}{\partial \mathbf{x}} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial y}{\partial x_1} \\ \frac{\partial y}{\partial x_2} \\ \vdots \\ \frac{\partial y}{\partial x_n} \end{bmatrix}. \quad (5.1.10)$$

3. Let \mathbf{x} be a $n \times 1$ vector and let \mathbf{y} be a $m \times 1$ vector. The derivative of \mathbf{y} with respect to \mathbf{x} is the matrix

$$\frac{\partial \mathbf{y}}{\partial \mathbf{x}} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial y_1}{\partial x_1} & \frac{\partial y_2}{\partial x_1} & \cdots & \frac{\partial y_m}{\partial x_1} \\ \frac{\partial y_1}{\partial x_2} & \frac{\partial y_2}{\partial x_2} & \cdots & \frac{\partial y_m}{\partial x_2} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \frac{\partial y_1}{\partial x_n} & \frac{\partial y_2}{\partial x_n} & \cdots & \frac{\partial y_m}{\partial x_n} \end{bmatrix}. \quad (5.1.11)$$

In multivariate analysis, if \mathbf{x} and \mathbf{y} have the same dimension, then the absolute value of the determinant of $\frac{\partial \mathbf{y}}{\partial \mathbf{x}}$ is called the *Jacobian* of the transformation determined by $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{y}(\mathbf{x})$, written $\frac{\partial(y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n)}{\partial(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)}$.

4. The Jacobian of the derivatives $\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial x_1}, \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial x_2}, \dots, \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial x_n}$ of the function $\phi(x_1, \dots, x_n)$ with respect to x_1, \dots, x_n is called the *Hessian* H of ϕ :

$$H = \begin{vmatrix} \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x_1^2} & \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x_1 \partial x_2} & \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x_1 \partial x_3} & \cdots & \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x_1 \partial x_n} \\ \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x_2 \partial x_1} & \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x_2^2} & \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x_2 \partial x_3} & \cdots & \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x_2 \partial x_n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x_n \partial x_1} & \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x_n \partial x_2} & \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x_n \partial x_3} & \cdots & \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x_n^2} \end{vmatrix}$$

5. The derivative of the matrix $A(t) = (a_{ij}(t))$, with respect to the scalar t , is the matrix $\frac{dA(t)}{dt} = \left(\frac{da_{ij}(t)}{dt} \right)$.
6. If $X = (x_{ij})$ is a $m \times n$ matrix and if y is a scalar function of X , then the derivative of y with respect to X is (here, $E_{ij} = \mathbf{e}_i \mathbf{e}_j^T$):

$$\frac{\partial y}{\partial X} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial y}{\partial x_{11}} & \frac{\partial y}{\partial x_{12}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial y}{\partial x_{1n}} \\ \frac{\partial y}{\partial x_{21}} & \frac{\partial y}{\partial x_{22}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial y}{\partial x_{2n}} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \frac{\partial y}{\partial x_{m1}} & \frac{\partial y}{\partial x_{m2}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial y}{\partial x_{mn}} \end{bmatrix} = \sum_{\substack{1 \leq i \leq m \\ 1 \leq j \leq n}} E_{ij} \frac{\partial y}{\partial x_{ij}}. \quad (5.1.12)$$

7. If $Y = (y_{ij})$ is a $p \times q$ matrix and X is a $m \times n$ matrix, then the derivative of Y with respect to X is

$$\frac{\partial Y}{\partial X} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial Y}{\partial x_{11}} & \frac{\partial Y}{\partial x_{12}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial Y}{\partial x_{1n}} \\ \frac{\partial Y}{\partial x_{21}} & \frac{\partial Y}{\partial x_{22}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial Y}{\partial x_{2n}} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \frac{\partial Y}{\partial x_{m1}} & \frac{\partial Y}{\partial x_{m2}} & \cdots & \frac{\partial Y}{\partial x_{mn}} \end{bmatrix} = \sum_{\substack{1 \leq i \leq m \\ 1 \leq j \leq n}} E_{ij} \otimes \frac{\partial Y}{\partial x_{ij}}. \quad (5.1.13)$$

5.1.10.2 Properties

| y (a scalar or a vector) | | $\frac{\partial y}{\partial \mathbf{x}}$ (recall, \mathbf{x} is a vector) |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|---|
| | \mathbf{x}^T | I |
| 1. | $A\mathbf{x}$ | A^T |
| | $\mathbf{x}^T A$ | A |
| | $\mathbf{x}^T \mathbf{x}$ | $2\mathbf{x}$ |
| | $\mathbf{x}^T A\mathbf{x}$ | $A\mathbf{x} + A^T \mathbf{x}$ |

(with A constant)

2. $\frac{\partial A\mathbf{x}}{\partial \mathbf{x}^T} = A$

| y (a scalar, vector, or matrix) | | $\frac{\partial y}{\partial X}$ (recall, X is a matrix) |
|-----------------------------------|---|---|
| | YZ | $Y \frac{dZ}{dX} + \frac{dY}{dX} Z$ |
| | AXB | $A^T B^T$ |
| | $\mathbf{a}^T X^T X \mathbf{b}$ | $X(\mathbf{a}\mathbf{b}^T + \mathbf{b}\mathbf{a}^T)$ |
| | $\mathbf{a}^T X^T X \mathbf{a}$ | $2X\mathbf{a}\mathbf{a}^T$ |
| | $\mathbf{a}^T X^T C X \mathbf{b}$ | $C^T X \mathbf{a}\mathbf{b}^T + C X \mathbf{b}\mathbf{a}^T$ |
| | $\mathbf{a}^T X^T C X \mathbf{a}$ | $(C + C^T)X\mathbf{a}\mathbf{a}^T$ |
| 3. | $(X\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b})^T C (X\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b})$ | $(C + C^T)(X\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b})\mathbf{a}^T$ |
| | $\text{tr}(X)$ | I |
| | $\text{tr}(A^T X), \text{tr}(X A^T), \text{tr}(A X^T),$ or $\text{tr}(X^T A)$ | A |
| | $\text{tr}(X A X^T)$ | $X^T(A + A^T)$ |
| | $\text{tr}(X^T A X)$ | $(A + A^T)X$ |
| | $\text{tr}(X^T A X B)$ | $A X B + A^T X B^T$ |
| | $\det(X)$ or $\det(X^T)$ | $\det(X)(X^{-1})^T$ |
| | $\log X $ | $(X^{-1})^T$ |

(with $\{\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}, A, B\}$ constants, $Y = Y(X)$, and $Z = Z(X)$)

| y (a scalar, vector, or matrix) | | $\frac{dy}{dt}$ (here t is a scalar) |
|-----------------------------------|---------------|---|
| 4. | AB | $\frac{dA}{dt} B + A \frac{dB}{dt}$ |
| | $A \otimes B$ | $\frac{dA}{dt} \otimes B + A \otimes \frac{dB}{dt}$ |
| | A^{-1} | $-A \frac{dA}{dt} A^{-1}$ |

(with $A = A(t)$ and $B = B(t)$)

5. If $Y = AX^{-1}B$, then

(a) $\frac{\partial Y}{\partial x_{rs}} = -AX^{-1}E_{rs}X^{-1}B.$

(b) $\frac{\partial y_{ij}}{\partial X} = -(X^{-1})^T A^T E_{ij} B^T (X^{-1})^T.$

6. If $Y = AXB$ then $\frac{\partial Y}{\partial x_{ij}} = AE_{ij}B$ where $E_{ij} = \mathbf{e}_i \mathbf{e}_j^T$ has the same size as X .

7. If $Y = AX^T B$, then $\frac{\partial y_{ij}}{\partial X} = BE_{ij}^T A$.

8. If $Y = X^T A X$, then

$$(a) \frac{\partial Y}{\partial x_{rs}} = E_{rs}^T A X + X^T A E_{rs}.$$

$$(b) \frac{\partial y_{ij}}{\partial X} = A X E_{ij}^T + A^T X E_{ij}.$$

9. If $\mathbf{y} = \text{Vec } Y$ and $\mathbf{x} = \text{Vec } X$ (see page 158), then

$$(a) \text{ If } Y = AX, \text{ then } \frac{\partial \mathbf{y}}{\partial \mathbf{x}} = I \otimes A^T.$$

$$(b) \text{ If } Y = XA, \text{ then } \frac{\partial \mathbf{y}}{\partial \mathbf{x}} = A \otimes I.$$

$$(c) \text{ If } Y = AX^{-1}B, \text{ then } \frac{\partial \mathbf{y}}{\partial \mathbf{x}} = -(X^{-1}B) \otimes (X^{-1})^T A^T.$$

10. The derivative of the determinant of a matrix can be written:

$$(a) \text{ If } Y_{ij} \text{ is the cofactor of element } y_{ij} \text{ in } |Y|, \text{ then } \frac{\partial |Y|}{\partial x_{rs}} = \sum_i \sum_j Y_{ij} \frac{\partial y_{ij}}{\partial x_{rs}}.$$

$$(b) \text{ If all the components } (x_{ij}) \text{ of } X \text{ are independent, then } \frac{\partial |X|}{\partial X} = |X| (X^{-1})^T.$$

11. Derivatives of powers of matrices are obtained as follows:

$$(a) \text{ If } Y = X^r, \text{ then } \frac{\partial Y}{\partial x_{rs}} = \sum_{k=0}^{r-1} X^k E_{rs} X^{n-k-1}.$$

$$(b) \text{ If } Y = X^{-r}, \text{ then } \frac{\partial Y}{\partial x_{rs}} = -X^{-r} \left(\sum_{k=0}^{r-1} X^k E_{rs} X^{n-k-1} \right) X^{-r}.$$

(c) The n^{th} derivative of the r^{th} power of the matrix A^{-1} , in terms of derivatives of the matrix A , is

$$\frac{d^n A^{-r}}{dx^n} = n! \left(\sum_{k=1}^n (-1)^k \frac{\mathcal{P}_{i_1}}{i_1!} \frac{\mathcal{P}_{i_2}}{i_2!} \dots \frac{\mathcal{P}_{i_k}}{i_k!} \right) A^{-r} \quad (5.1.14)$$

where $\mathcal{P}_i = A^{-r} \frac{d^i A^r}{dx^i}$ and the summation is taken over all positive integers (i_1, i_2, \dots, i_k) , distinct or otherwise, such that $\sum_{m=1}^k i_m = n$. Setting $n = r = 1$ results in

$$\frac{dA^{-1}}{dx} = -A^{-1} \frac{dA}{dx} A^{-1}. \quad (5.1.15)$$

12. Derivative formulae:

$$(a) \text{ If } \mathbf{z} = \mathbf{z}(\mathbf{y}(\mathbf{x})), \text{ then } \frac{\partial \mathbf{z}}{\partial \mathbf{y}} = \frac{\partial \mathbf{z}}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \frac{\partial \mathbf{x}}{\partial \mathbf{y}}.$$

$$(b) \text{ If } X \text{ and } Y \text{ are matrices, then } \left(\frac{\partial Y}{\partial X} \right)^T = \frac{\partial Y^T}{\partial X^T}.$$

$$(c) \text{ If } X, Y, \text{ and } Z \text{ are matrices of size } m \times n, n \times v, \text{ and } p \times q, \text{ then } \frac{\partial (XY)}{\partial Z} = \frac{\partial X}{\partial Z} (I_q \otimes Y) + (I_p \otimes X) \frac{\partial Y}{\partial Z}.$$

5.2 DIFFERENTIAL FORMS

Define $dx_k(\cdot)$ to be the function that assigns a vector its k^{th} coordinate; that is, for the vector $\mathbf{a} = (a_1, \dots, a_k, \dots, a_n)$, we have $dx_k(\mathbf{a}) = a_k$. Geometrically, $dx_k(\mathbf{a})$ is the length, with appropriate sign, of the projection of \mathbf{a} on the k^{th} coordinate axis. When the $\{F_i\}$ are functions, the following linear combination of the functions $\{dx_k\}$

$$\omega_{\mathbf{x}} = F_1(\mathbf{x}) dx_1 + F_2(\mathbf{x}) dx_2 + \dots + F_n(\mathbf{x}) dx_n \quad (5.2.1)$$

produces a new function $\omega_{\mathbf{x}}$. This function acts on vectors \mathbf{a} as

$$\omega_{\mathbf{x}}(\mathbf{a}) = F_1(\mathbf{x}) dx_1(\mathbf{a}) + F_2(\mathbf{x}) dx_2(\mathbf{a}) + \dots + F_n(\mathbf{x}) dx_n(\mathbf{a}). \quad (5.2.2)$$

Such a function is a *differential 1-form* or a *1-form*. For example:

1. If $\mathbf{a} = (-2, 0, 4)$ then $dx_1(\mathbf{a}) = -2$, $dx_2(\mathbf{a}) = 0$, and $dx_3(\mathbf{a}) = 4$.
2. If in \mathbb{R}^2 , $\omega_{\mathbf{x}} = \omega_{(x,y)} = x^2 dx + y^2 dy$, then $\omega_{(x,y)}(a, b) = ax^2 + by^2$ and $\omega_{(1,-3)}(a, b) = a + 9b$.
3. If $f(\mathbf{x})$ is a differentiable function, then $\nabla_{\mathbf{x}}f$, the differential of f at \mathbf{x} , is a 1-form. Note that $\nabla_{\mathbf{x}}f$ acting on $\mathbf{a} = (a_1, a_2, a_3)$ is

$$\begin{aligned} \nabla_{\mathbf{x}}f(\mathbf{a}) &= \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_1}(\mathbf{x}) dx_1(\mathbf{a}) + \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_2}(\mathbf{x}) dx_2(\mathbf{a}) + \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_3}(\mathbf{x}) dx_3(\mathbf{a}) \\ &= \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_1}(\mathbf{x})a_1 + \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_2}(\mathbf{x})a_2 + \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_3}(\mathbf{x})a_3. \end{aligned}$$

5.2.1 PRODUCTS OF 1-FORMS

The basic 1-forms in \mathbb{R}^3 are dx_1 , dx_2 , and dx_3 . The *wedge product* (or *exterior product*) $dx_1 \wedge dx_2$ is defined so that it is a function of ordered pairs of vectors in \mathbb{R}^2 . Geometrically, $dx_1 \wedge dx_2(\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b})$ will be the area of the parallelogram spanned by the projections of \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} into the (x_1, x_2) -plane. The sign of the area is determined so that if the projections of \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} have the same orientation as the positive x_1 and x_2 axes, then the area is positive; it is negative when these orientations are opposite. Thus, if $\mathbf{a} = (a_1, a_2, a_3)$ and $\mathbf{b} = (b_1, b_2, b_3)$, then

$$dx_1 \wedge dx_2(\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}) = \det \begin{bmatrix} a_1 & b_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 \end{bmatrix} = a_1 b_2 - a_2 b_1, \quad (5.2.3)$$

and the determinant automatically gives the correct sign. This generalizes to

$$dx_i \wedge dx_j(\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}) = \det \begin{bmatrix} dx_i(\mathbf{a}) & dx_i(\mathbf{b}) \\ dx_j(\mathbf{a}) & dx_j(\mathbf{b}) \end{bmatrix} = \det \begin{bmatrix} a_i & b_i \\ a_j & b_j \end{bmatrix}. \quad (5.2.4)$$

1. If ω and μ are 1-forms, and f and g are real-valued functions, then $f\omega + g\mu$ is a 1-form.

2. If ω , ν , and μ are 1-forms, then $(f\omega + g\nu) \wedge \mu = f\omega \wedge \mu + g\nu \wedge \mu$.
3. $dx_i \wedge dx_j = -dx_j \wedge dx_i$
4. $dx_i \wedge dx_i = 0$
5. $dx_i \wedge dx_j(\mathbf{b}, \mathbf{a}) = -dx_i \wedge dx_j(\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b})$

5.2.2 DIFFERENTIAL 2-FORMS

In \mathbb{R}^3 , the most general linear combination of the functions $dx_i \wedge dx_j$ has the form $c_1 dx_2 \wedge dx_3 + c_2 dx_3 \wedge dx_1 + c_3 dx_1 \wedge dx_2$. If $\mathbf{F} = (F_1, F_2, F_3)$ is a vector field, then the function of ordered pairs,

$$\tau_{\mathbf{x}}(\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}) = F_1(\mathbf{x}) dx_2 \wedge dx_3 + F_2(\mathbf{x}) dx_3 \wedge dx_1 + F_3(\mathbf{x}) dx_1 \wedge dx_2, \quad (5.2.5)$$

is a *differential 2-form* or *2-form*.

EXAMPLES

1. For the specific 2-form $\tau_{\mathbf{x}} = 2 dx_2 \wedge dx_3 + dx_3 \wedge dx_1 + 5 dx_1 \wedge dx_2$, if $\mathbf{a} = (1, 2, 3)$ and $\mathbf{b} = (0, 1, 1)$, then

$$\begin{aligned} \tau_{\mathbf{x}}(\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}) &= 2 \det \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 3 & 1 \end{bmatrix} + \det \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} + 5 \det \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \\ &= 2 \cdot (-1) + 1 \cdot (-1) + 5 \cdot (1) = 2 \end{aligned}$$

independent of \mathbf{x} . Note that $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = \det \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = (-1, -1, 1)$, and so $\tau_{\mathbf{x}}(\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}) = (2, 1, 5) \cdot (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b})$.

2. When changing from Cartesian coordinates to polar coordinates, the element of area dA can be written

$$\begin{aligned} dA &= dx \wedge dy \\ &= (-r \sin \theta d\theta + \cos \theta dr) \wedge (r \cos \theta d\theta + \sin \theta dr) \\ &= -r^2 \sin \theta \cos \theta (d\theta \wedge d\theta) + \sin \theta \cos \theta (dr \wedge dr) \\ &\quad - r \sin^2 \theta (d\theta \wedge dr) + r \cos^2 \theta (dr \wedge d\theta) \\ &= r dr \wedge d\theta. \end{aligned} \quad (5.2.6)$$

5.2.3 THE 2-FORMS IN \mathbb{R}^n

Every 2-form can be written as a linear combination of “basic 2-forms”. For example, in \mathbb{R}^2 there is only one basic 2-form (which may be taken to be $dx_1 \wedge dx_2$) and in \mathbb{R}^3 there are 3 basic 2-forms (possibly the set $\{dx_1 \wedge dx_2, dx_2 \wedge dx_3, dx_3 \wedge dx_1\}$). The exterior product of any two 1-forms (in, say, \mathbb{R}^n) is found by multiplying the 1-forms as if there were ordinary polynomials in the variables dx_1, \dots, dx_n , and then simplifying using the rules for $dx_i \wedge dx_j$.

EXAMPLE Denoting the basic 1-forms in \mathbb{R}^3 as dx , dy , and dz then

$$\begin{aligned}
 (x \, dx + y^2 \, dy) \wedge (dx + x \, dy) &= x(dx \wedge dx) + y^2(dy \wedge dx), \\
 &\quad + x^2(dx \wedge dy) + xy^2(dy \wedge dy), \\
 &= 0 - y^2(dx \wedge dy) + x^2(dx \wedge dy) + 0, \\
 &= (x^2 - y^2) dx \wedge dy.
 \end{aligned}
 \tag{5.2.7}$$

5.2.4 HIGHER DIMENSIONAL FORMS

The meaning of the basic 3-form $dx_1 \wedge dx_2 \wedge dx_3$ is that of a signed volume function. Thus, if $\mathbf{a} = (a_1, a_2, a_3)$, $\mathbf{b} = (b_1, b_2, b_3)$, and $\mathbf{c} = (c_1, c_2, c_3)$ then

$$dx_1 \wedge dx_2 \wedge dx_3(\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}, \mathbf{c}) = \det \begin{bmatrix} a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 \end{bmatrix}
 \tag{5.2.8}$$

which is a 3-dimensional oriented volume of the parallelepiped defined by the vectors \mathbf{a} , \mathbf{b} , and \mathbf{c} .

For an ordered p -tuple of vectors in \mathbb{R}^n , $(\mathbf{a}_1, \mathbf{a}_2, \dots, \mathbf{a}_p)$, where $p \geq 1$

$$dx_{k_1} \wedge dx_{k_2} \wedge \dots \wedge dx_{k_p}(\mathbf{a}_1, \dots, \mathbf{a}_p) = \det(dx_{k_i}(\mathbf{a}_j))_{\substack{i=1, \dots, p \\ j=1, \dots, p}}.
 \tag{5.2.9}$$

This equation defines the basic p -forms in \mathbb{R}^n , of which the general p -forms are linear combinations. Properties include:

1. The interchange of adjacent factors in a basic p -form changes the sign of the form. If ω^p is a p -form in \mathbb{R}^n and ω^q is a q -form in \mathbb{R}^n , then $\omega^p \wedge \omega^q = (-1)^{pq} \omega^q \wedge \omega^p$.
2. A basic p -form with a repeated factor is zero.
3. If $p > n$, then any p -form is identically zero.
4. The general p -form can be written $\omega^p = \sum_{i_1 < \dots < i_p} f_{i_1, \dots, i_p} dx_{i_1} \wedge \dots \wedge dx_{i_p}$, where $1 \leq i_k \leq n$ for $k = 1, \dots, p$. This sum has $\binom{n}{p}$ distinct non-zero terms.

5.2.5 THE EXTERIOR DERIVATIVE

The exterior differentiation operator is denoted by d . When d is applied to a scalar function $f(\mathbf{x})$, the result is the 1-form that is equivalent to the usual “total differential” $df = \nabla_{\mathbf{x}} f = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_1} dx_1 + \dots + \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_n} dx_n$. For the 1-form $\omega^1 = f_1 dx + \dots + f_n dx_n$ the exterior derivative is $d\omega^1 = (df_1) \wedge dx_1 + \dots + (df_n) \wedge dx_n$. This generalizes to higher dimensional forms.

EXAMPLES

1. If $f(x_1, x_2) = x_1^2 + x_2^3$, then $df = d(x_1^2 + x_2^3) = 2x_1 dx_1 + 3x_2^2 dx_2$.

2. If $\omega_{(x_1, x_2)}^1 = x_1 x_2 dx_1 + (x_1^2 + x_2^2) dx_2$, then $d\omega^1$ is given by

$$\begin{aligned}d\omega^1 &= d(x_1 x_2 dx_1 + (x_1^2 + x_2^2) dx_2) \\ &= (x_2 dx_1 + x_1 dx_2) \wedge dx_1 + (2x_1 dx_1 + 2x_2 dx_2) \wedge dx_2 \\ &= x_1 dx_1 \wedge dx_2.\end{aligned}$$

5.2.6 PROPERTIES OF THE EXTERIOR DERIVATIVE

1. If $f_1(x_1, x_2)$ and $f_2(x_1, x_2)$ are differentiable functions, then

$$df_1 \wedge df_2 = \det \left(\frac{\partial(f_1, f_2)}{\partial(x_1, x_2)} \right) dx_1 \wedge dx_2.$$

2. If ω^p and ω^q represent a p -form and a q -form, then

$$d(\omega^p \wedge \omega^q) = (d\omega^p) \wedge \omega^q + (-1)^{pq} \omega^p \wedge (d\omega^q).$$

3. If ω^p is a p -form with at least two derivatives, then $d(d\omega^p) = 0$.

(a) The relation $d(d\omega^0) = 0$ is equivalent to

$$\text{curl}(\text{grad } f) = \nabla \times (\nabla f) = 0. \quad (5.2.10)$$

(b) The relation $d(d\omega^1) = 0$ is equivalent to

$$\text{div}(\text{curl } \mathbf{F}) = \nabla \cdot (\nabla \mathbf{F}) = 0. \quad (5.2.11)$$

5.3 INTEGRATION

5.3.1 DEFINITIONS

The following definitions apply to the expression $I = \int_a^b f(x) dx$:

1. The *integrand* is $f(x)$.
2. The *upper limit* is b .
3. The *lower limit* is a .
4. I is the *integral of $f(x)$ from a to b* .

It is conventional to indicate the indefinite integral of a function represented by a lowercase letter by the corresponding uppercase letter. For example, $F(x) = \int_a^x f(t) dt$ and $G(x) = \int_a^x g(t) dt$. Note that all functions that differ from $F(x)$ by a constant are also indefinite integrals of $f(x)$. We will use the following notation:

-
1. $\int f(x) dx$ indefinite integral of $f(x)$ (also written $\int^x f(t) dt$)
 2. $\int_a^b f(x) dx$ definite integral of $f(x)$, defined as (for a continuous function)

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(\frac{b-a}{n} \sum_{k=1}^n f \left[a + \frac{k}{n}(b-a) \right] \right)$$
 3. $\oint_{\mathcal{C}} f(x) dx$ definite integral of $f(x)$, taken along the contour \mathcal{C}
 4. $\int_a^\infty f(x) dx$ defined as $\lim_{R \rightarrow \infty} \int_a^R f(x) dx$
 5. $\int_{-\infty}^\infty f(x) dx$ defined as the limit of $\int_{-S}^R f(x) dx$ as R and S independently go to ∞
 6. *Improper integral* integral for which the region of integration is not bounded, or the integrand is not bounded
 7. *Cauchy principal value*
 - (a) The Cauchy principal value of $\int_a^b f(x) dx$, denoted $\text{f.p.v.} \int_a^b f(x) dx$, is defined as $\lim_{\epsilon \rightarrow 0^+} \left(\int_a^{c-\epsilon} f(x) dx + \int_{c+\epsilon}^b f(x) dx \right)$, assuming that f is singular only at c .
 - (b) The Cauchy principal value of the integral $\int_{-\infty}^\infty f(x) dx$ is defined as the limit of $\int_{-R}^R f(x) dx$ as $R \rightarrow \infty$.
 8. If, at the complex point $z = a$, $f(z)$ is either analytic or has an isolated singularity, then the residue of $f(z)$ at $z = a$ is given by the contour integral $\text{Res}_f(a) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_{\mathcal{C}} f(\xi) d\xi$, where \mathcal{C} is a closed contour around a in a positive direction.

5.3.2 PROPERTIES OF INTEGRALS

Indefinite integrals have the properties (here F is the antiderivative of f):

1. $\int [af(x) + bg(x)] dx = a \int f(x) dx + b \int g(x) dx$ (linearity).
2. $\int f(x)g(x) dx = F(x)g(x) - \int F(x)g'(x) dx$ (integration by parts).
3. $\int f(g(x))g'(x) dx = F(g(x))$ (substitution).
4. $\int f(ax + b) dx = \frac{1}{a}F(ax + b)$.
5. If $f(x)$ is an odd function and $F(0) = 0$, then $F(x)$ is an even function.

-
6. If $f(x)$ is an even function and $F(0) = 0$, then $F(x)$ is an odd function.
 7. If $f(x)$ has a finite number of discontinuities, then the integral $\int f(x) dx$ is the sum of the integrals over those subintervals where $f(x)$ is continuous (provided they exist).
 8. *Fundamental theorem of calculus* If $f(x)$ is bounded, and integrable on $[a, b]$, and there exists a function $F(x)$ such that $F'(x) = f(x)$ for $a \leq x \leq b$ then

$$\int_a^x f(x) dx = F(x) \Big|_a^x = F(x) - F(a) \quad (5.3.1)$$

for $a \leq x \leq b$.

Definite integrals have the properties:

1. $\int_a^a f(x) dx = 0$.
2. $\int_a^b f(x) dx = -\int_b^a f(x) dx$.
3. $\int_a^b f(x) dx + \int_b^c f(x) dx = \int_a^c f(x) dx$ (additivity).
4. $\int_a^b [cf(x) + dg(x)] dx = c \int_a^b f(x) dx + d \int_a^b g(x) dx$ (linearity).

5.3.3 METHODS OF EVALUATING INTEGRALS

5.3.3.1 Substitution

Substitution can be used to change integrals to simpler forms. When the transform $t = g(x)$ is chosen, the integral $I = \int f(t) dt$ becomes $I = \int f(g(x)) dt = \int f(g(x))g'(x) dx$. Several precautions must be taken when using substitutions:

1. Be sure to make the substitution in the dx term, as well as everywhere else in the integral.
2. Be sure that the function substituted is one-to-one and differentiable. If this is not the case, then the integral must be restricted in such a way as to make it true.
3. With definite integrals, the limits should also be expressed in terms of the new dependent variables. With indefinite integrals, it is necessary to perform the reverse substitution to obtain the answer in terms of the original independent variable. This may also be done for definite integrals, but it is usually easier to change the limits.

EXAMPLE Consider the integral

$$I = \int \frac{x^4}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} dx \quad (5.3.2)$$

for $a \neq 0$. Here we choose to make the substitution $x = |a| \sin \theta$. From this we find $dx = |a| \cos \theta d\theta$ and

$$\sqrt{a^2 - x^2} = \sqrt{a^2 - a^2 \sin^2 \theta} = |a| \sqrt{1 - \sin^2 \theta} = |a| |\cos \theta|. \quad (5.3.3)$$

Note the absolute value signs. It is very important to interpret the square root radical consistently as the positive square root. Thus $\sqrt{x^2} = |x|$. Failure to observe this is a common cause of errors.

Note that the substitution used above is not a one-to-one function, that is, it does not have a unique inverse. Thus the range of θ must be restricted in such a way as to make the function one-to-one. In this case we can solve for θ to obtain

$$\theta = \sin^{-1} \frac{x}{|a|}. \quad (5.3.4)$$

This will be unique if we restrict the inverse sine to the principal values $-\frac{\pi}{2} \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$. Thus, the integral becomes (with $dx = |a| \cos \theta d\theta$)

$$I = \int \frac{a^4 \sin^4 \theta}{|a| |\cos \theta|} |a| \cos \theta d\theta. \quad (5.3.5)$$

Now, however, in the range of values chosen for θ , we find that $\cos \theta$ is always non-negative. Thus, we may remove the absolute value signs from $\cos \theta$ in the denominator. Then the $\cos \theta$ terms cancel and the integral becomes

$$I = a^4 \int \sin^4 \theta d\theta. \quad (5.3.6)$$

By application of integration formula #283 on page 430, and simplifications, this is integrated to obtain

$$I = -\frac{a^4}{4} \sin^3 \theta \cos \theta - \frac{3a^4}{8} \sin \theta \cos \theta + \frac{3a^4}{8} \theta + C. \quad (5.3.7)$$

To obtain an evaluation of I as a function of x , we must transform variables from θ to x . We have

$$\cos \theta = \pm \sqrt{1 - \sin^2 \theta} = \pm \sqrt{1 - \frac{x^2}{a^2}} = \pm \frac{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}{|a|}. \quad (5.3.8)$$

Because of the previously recorded fact that $\cos \theta$ is non-negative for our range of θ , we may omit the \pm sign. Using $\sin \theta = x/|a|$ and $\cos \theta = \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}/|a|$ we can evaluate Equation (5.3.7) to obtain the final result,

$$I = \int \frac{x^4}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} = -\frac{x^3}{4} \sqrt{a^2 - x^2} - \frac{3a^2 x}{8} \sqrt{a^2 - x^2} + \frac{3a^4}{8} \sin^{-1} \frac{x}{|a|} + C. \quad (5.3.9)$$

5.3.3.2 Partial fraction decomposition

Every integral of the form $\int R(x) dx$, where R is a rational function, can be evaluated (in principle) in terms of elementary functions. The technique is to factor the denominator of R and create a partial fraction decomposition. Then each resulting sub-integral is elementary.

EXAMPLE Consider $I = \int \frac{2x^3 - 10x^2 + 13x - 4}{x^2 - 5x + 6} dx$. This can be written as

$$I = \int \left(2x + \frac{x - 4}{x^2 - 5x + 6} \right) dx = \int \left(2x + \frac{2}{x - 2} - \frac{1}{x - 3} \right) dx$$

which can be readily integrated $I = x^2 + 2 \ln(x - 2) - \ln(x - 3)$.

5.3.3.3 Useful transformations

The following transformations may make evaluation of an integral easier:

1. $\int f(x, \sqrt{x^2 + a^2}) dx = a \int f(a \tan u, a \sec u) \sec^2 u du$
when $u = \tan^{-1} \frac{x}{a}$ and $a > 0$.
2. $\int f(x, \sqrt{x^2 - a^2}) dx = a \int f(a \sec u, a \tan u) \sec u \tan u du$
when $u = \sec^{-1} \frac{x}{a}$ and $a > 0$.
3. $\int f(x, \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}) dx = a \int f(a \sin u, a \cos u) \cos u du$
when $u = \sin^{-1} \frac{x}{a}$ and $a > 0$.
4. $\int f(\sin x) dx = 2 \int f\left(\frac{2z}{1+z^2}\right) \frac{dz}{1+z^2}$ when $z = \tan \frac{x}{2}$.
5. $\int f(\cos x) dx = 2 \int f\left(\frac{1-z^2}{1+z^2}\right) \frac{dz}{1+z^2}$ when $z = \tan \frac{x}{2}$.
6. $\int f(\cos x) dx = - \int f(v) \frac{dv}{\sqrt{1-v^2}}$ when $v = \cos x$.
7. $\int f(\sin x) dx = \int f(u) \frac{du}{\sqrt{1-u^2}}$ when $u = \sin x$.
8. $\int f(\sin x, \cos x) dx = \int f(u, \sqrt{1-u^2}) \frac{du}{\sqrt{1-u^2}}$ when $u = \sin x$.
9. $\int f(\sin x, \cos x) dx = 2 \int f\left(\frac{2z}{1+z^2}, \frac{1-z^2}{1+z^2}\right) \frac{dz}{1+z^2}$ when $z = \tan \frac{x}{2}$.
10. $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(u) dx = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) dx$ when $u = x - \sum_{j=1}^n \frac{a_j}{x - c_j}$ where $\{a_i\}$ is any sequence of positive constants and the $\{c_j\}$ are any real constants whatsoever.

Several transformations of the integral $\int_0^{\infty} f(x) dx$, with an infinite integration range, to an integral with a finite integration range, are shown:

| $t(x)$ | $x(t)$ | $\frac{dx}{dt}$ | Finite interval integral |
|-----------------|------------------------------------|---------------------|--|
| e^{-x} | $-\log t$ | $-\frac{1}{t}$ | $\int_0^1 \frac{f(-\log t)}{t} dt$ |
| $\frac{x}{1+x}$ | $\frac{t}{1-t}$ | $\frac{1}{(1-t)^2}$ | $\int_0^1 f\left(\frac{t}{1-t}\right) \frac{dt}{(1-t)^2}$ |
| $\tanh x$ | $\frac{1}{2} \log \frac{1+t}{1-t}$ | $\frac{1}{1-t^2}$ | $\int_0^1 f\left(\frac{1}{2} \log \frac{1+t}{1-t}\right) \frac{dt}{1-t^2}$ |

5.3.3.4 Integration by parts

In one dimension, the integration by parts formula is

$$\int u dv = uv - \int v du \quad \text{for indefinite integrals,} \quad (5.3.10)$$

$$\int_a^b u dv = uv \Big|_a^b - \int_a^b v du \quad \text{for definite integrals.} \quad (5.3.11)$$

When evaluating a given integral by this method, u and v must be chosen so that the form $\int u dv$ becomes identical to the given integral. This is usually accomplished by specifying u and dv and deriving du and v . Then the integration by parts formula will produce a boundary term and another integral to be evaluated. If u and v were well-chosen, then this second integral may be easier to evaluate.

EXAMPLE Consider the integral

$$I = \int x \sin x \, dx.$$

Two obvious choices for the integration by parts formula are $\{u = x, dv = \sin x \, dx\}$ and $\{u = \sin x, dv = x \, dx\}$. We try each of them in turn.

1. Using $\{u = x, dv = \sin x \, dx\}$, we compute $du = dx$ and $v = \int dv = \int \sin x \, dx = -\cos x$. Hence, we can represent I in the alternative form as

$$I = \int x \sin x \, dx = \int u \, dv = uv - \int v \, du = -x \cos x + \int \cos x \, dx.$$

In this representation of I , we must evaluate the last integral. Because we know $\int \cos x \, dx = \sin x$ the final result is $I = \sin x - x \cos x$.

2. Using $\{u = \sin x, dv = x \, dx\}$ we compute $du = \cos x \, dx$ and $v = \int dv = \int x \, dx = x^2/2$. Hence, we can represent I in the alternative form as

$$I = \int x \sin x \, dx = \int u \, dv = uv - \int v \, du = \frac{x^2}{2} \sin x - \int \frac{x^2}{2} \cos x \, dx.$$

In this case, we have actually made the problem “worse” since the remaining integral appearing in I is “harder” than the one we started with.

EXAMPLE Consider the integral

$$I = \int e^x \sin x \, dx.$$

We choose to use the integration by parts formula with $u = e^x$ and $dv = \sin x \, dx$. From these we compute $du = e^x \, dx$ and $v = \int dv = \int \sin x \, dx = -\cos x$. Hence, we can represent I in the alternative form as

$$I = \int e^x \sin x \, dx = \int u \, dv = uv - \int v \, du = -e^x \cos x + \int e^x \cos x \, dx.$$

If we write this as

$$I = -e^x \cos x + J \quad \text{with} \quad J = \int e^x \cos x \, dx, \quad (5.3.12)$$

then we can apply integration by parts to J using $\{u = e^x, dv = \cos x \, dx\}$. From these we compute $du = e^x \, dx$ and $v = \int dv = \int \cos x \, dx = \sin x$. Hence, we can represent J in the alternative form as

$$J = \int e^x \cos x \, dx = \int u \, dv = uv - \int v \, du = e^x \sin x - \int e^x \sin x \, dx.$$

If we write this as

$$J = e^x \sin x - I, \quad (5.3.13)$$

then we can solve the linear equations (5.3.12) and (5.3.13) simultaneously to determine both I and J . We find

$$\begin{aligned} I &= \int e^x \sin x \, dx = \frac{1}{2} (e^x \sin x - e^x \cos x), \quad \text{and} \\ J &= \int e^x \cos x \, dx = \frac{1}{2} (e^x \sin x + e^x \cos x). \end{aligned} \quad (5.3.14)$$

5.3.3.5 Extended integration by parts rule

The following rule is obtained by $n + 1$ successive applications of integration by parts. Let

$$\begin{aligned}g_1(x) &= \int g(x) dx, & g_2(x) &= \int g_1(x) dx, \\g_3(x) &= \int g_2(x) dx, & \dots, & g_m(x) = \int g_{m-1}(x) dx.\end{aligned}\tag{5.3.15}$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned}\int f(x)g(x) dx &= f(x)g_1(x) - f'(x)g_2(x) + f''(x)g_3(x) - \dots \\&+ (-1)^n f^{(n)}(x)g_{n+1}(x) + (-1)^{n+1} \int f^{(n+1)}(x)g_{n+1}(x) dx.\end{aligned}\tag{5.3.16}$$

5.3.4 TYPES OF INTEGRALS

5.3.4.1 Line and surface integrals

A *line integral* is a definite integral whose path of integration is along a specified curve; it can be evaluated by reducing it to ordinary integrals. If $f(x, y)$ is continuous on \mathcal{C} , and the integration contour \mathcal{C} is parameterized by $(\phi(t), \psi(t))$ as t varies from a to b , then

$$\begin{aligned}\int_{\mathcal{C}} f(x, y) dx &= \int_a^b f(\phi(t), \psi(t)) \phi'(t) dt, \\ \int_{\mathcal{C}} f(x, y) dy &= \int_a^b f(\phi(t), \psi(t)) \psi'(t) dt.\end{aligned}\tag{5.3.17}$$

In a simply-connected domain, the line integral $I = \int_{\mathcal{C}} X dx + Y dy + Z dz$ is independent of the closed curve \mathcal{C} if, and only if, $\mathbf{u} = (X, Y, Z)$ is a gradient vector, $\mathbf{u} = \text{grad } F$ (that is, $F_x = X$, $F_y = Y$, and $F_z = Z$).

Green's theorem: Let D be a domain of the xy plane, and let \mathcal{C} be a piecewise-smooth, simple closed curve in D whose interior R is also in D . Let $P(x, y)$ and $Q(x, y)$ be functions defined in D with continuous first partial derivatives in D . Then

$$\oint_{\mathcal{C}} (P dx + Q dy) = \iint_R \left(\frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial P}{\partial y} \right) dx dy.\tag{5.3.18}$$

The above theorem may be written in the two alternative forms (using $\mathbf{u} = P(x, y)\mathbf{i} + Q(x, y)\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{v} = Q(x, y)\mathbf{i} - P(x, y)\mathbf{j}$),

$$\oint_{\mathcal{C}} \mathbf{u}_T ds = \iint_R \text{curl } \mathbf{u} dx dy \quad \text{and} \quad \oint_{\mathcal{C}} \mathbf{v}_n ds = \iint_R \text{div } \mathbf{v} dx dy.\tag{5.3.19}$$

The first equation above is a simplification of Stokes's theorem; the second equation is the divergence theorem.

Stokes's theorem: Let S be a piecewise-smooth oriented surface in space, whose boundary C is a piecewise-smooth simple closed curve, directed in accordance with the given orientation of S . Let $\mathbf{u} = L\mathbf{i} + M\mathbf{j} + N\mathbf{k}$ be a vector field with continuous and differentiable components in a domain D of space including S . Then, $\int_C \mathbf{u}_T ds = \iint_S (\text{curl } \mathbf{u}) \cdot \mathbf{n} d\sigma$, where \mathbf{n} is the chosen unit normal vector on S , that is

$$\int_C L dx + M dy + N dz = \iint_S \left(\frac{\partial N}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial M}{\partial z} \right) dy dz + \left(\frac{\partial L}{\partial z} - \frac{\partial N}{\partial x} \right) dz dx + \left(\frac{\partial M}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial L}{\partial y} \right) dx dy. \quad (5.3.20)$$

Divergence theorem: Let $\mathbf{v} = L\mathbf{i} + M\mathbf{j} + N\mathbf{k}$ be a vector field in a domain D of space. Let L , M , and N be continuous with continuous derivatives in D . Let S be a piecewise-smooth surface in D that forms the complete boundary of a bounded closed region R in D . Let \mathbf{n} be the outer normal of S with respect to R . Then

$$\iint_S v_n d\sigma = \iiint_R \text{div } \mathbf{v} dx dy dz, \text{ that is}$$

$$\iint_S L dy dz + M dz dx + N dx dy = \iiint_R \left(\frac{\partial L}{\partial x} + \frac{\partial M}{\partial y} + \frac{\partial N}{\partial z} \right) dx dy dz. \quad (5.3.21)$$

If D is a three-dimensional domain with boundary B , let dV represent the volume element of D , let dS represent the surface element of B , and let $d\mathbf{S} = \mathbf{n} dS$, where \mathbf{n} is the outer normal vector of the surface B . Then Gauss's formulae are

$$\iiint_D \nabla \cdot \mathbf{A} dV = \iint_B d\mathbf{S} \cdot \mathbf{A} = \iint_B (\mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{A}) dS,$$

$$\iiint_D \nabla \times \mathbf{A} dV = \iint_B d\mathbf{S} \times \mathbf{A} = \iint_B (\mathbf{n} \times \mathbf{A}) dS, \quad \text{and} \quad (5.3.22)$$

$$\iiint_D \nabla \phi dV = \iint_B \phi d\mathbf{S},$$

where ϕ is an arbitrary scalar and \mathbf{A} is an arbitrary vector.

Green's theorems also relate a volume integral to a surface integral: Let V be a volume with surface S , which we assume is simple and closed. Define \mathbf{n} as the outward normal to S . Let ϕ and ψ be scalar functions which, together with $\nabla^2 \phi$ and $\nabla^2 \psi$, are defined in V and on S . Then

1. Green's first theorem states that

$$\int_S \phi \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial n} dS = \int_V (\phi \nabla^2 \psi + \nabla \phi \cdot \nabla \psi) dV. \quad (5.3.23)$$

2. Green's second theorem states that

$$\int_S \left(\phi \frac{\partial \psi}{\partial n} - \psi \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial n} \right) dS = \int_V (\phi \nabla^2 \psi - \psi \nabla^2 \phi) dV. \quad (5.3.24)$$

5.3.4.2 Contour integrals

If $f(z)$ is analytic in the region inside of the simple closed curve C (with proper orientation), then

1. The Cauchy–Goursat integral theorem is $\oint_C f(\xi) d\xi = 0$.

2. Cauchy's integral formula is

$$f(z) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_C \frac{f(\xi)}{\xi - z} d\xi \quad \text{and} \quad f'(z) = \frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_C \frac{f(\xi)}{(\xi - z)^2} d\xi. \quad (5.3.25)$$

$$\text{In general, } f^{(n)}(z) = \frac{n!}{2\pi i} \oint_C \frac{f(\xi)}{(\xi - z)^{n+1}} d\xi.$$

The *residue theorem*: For every simple closed contour C enclosing at most a finite number of (necessarily isolated) singularities $\{z_1, z_2, \dots, z_n\}$ of a (single-valued) analytic function $f(z)$ continuous on C ,

$$\frac{1}{2\pi i} \oint_C f(\xi) d\xi = \sum_{k=1}^n \text{Res}_f(z_k). \quad (5.3.26)$$

5.3.5 INTEGRAL INEQUALITIES

1. *Schwartz inequality*: $\int_a^b |fg| \leq \sqrt{\left(\int_a^b |f|^2 \right) \left(\int_a^b |g|^2 \right)}$.

2. *Minkowski's inequality*:

$$\left(\int_a^b |f + g|^p \right)^{1/p} \leq \left(\int_a^b |f|^p \right)^{1/p} + \left(\int_a^b |g|^p \right)^{1/p} \text{ when } p \geq 1.$$

3. *Hölder's inequality*:

$$\int_a^b |fg| \leq \left[\int_a^b |f|^p \right]^{1/p} \left[\int_a^b |g|^q \right]^{1/q} \text{ when } \frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{q} = 1, p > 1, \text{ and } q > 1.$$

4. $\left| \int_a^b f(x) dx \right| \leq \int_a^b |f(x)| dx \leq \left(\max_{x \in [a,b]} |f(x)| \right) (b - a)$ assuming $a \leq b$.

5. If $f(x) \leq g(x)$ on the interval $[a, b]$, then $\int_a^b f(x) dx \leq \int_a^b g(x) dx$.

5.3.6 CONVERGENCE TESTS

1. If $\int_a^b |f(x)| dx$ is convergent, and f is integrable, then $\int_a^b f(x) dx$ is convergent.
2. If $0 \leq f(x) \leq g(x)$, $\int_a^b g(x) dx$ is convergent, and f is integrable, then $\int_a^b f(x) dx$ is convergent.
3. If $0 \leq g(x) \leq f(x)$ and $\int_a^b g(x) dx$ is divergent, then $\int_a^b f(x) dx$ is divergent.

The following integrals may be used, for example, with the above tests:

- (a) $\int_2^\infty \frac{dx}{x(\log x)^p}$ and $\int_1^\infty \frac{dx}{x^p}$ are convergent when $p > 1$, and divergent when $p \leq 1$.
- (b) $\int_0^1 \frac{dx}{x^p}$ is convergent when $p < 1$, and divergent when $p \geq 1$.

5.3.7 VARIATIONAL PRINCIPLES

If J depends on a function $g(\mathbf{x})$ and its derivatives through an integral of the form $J(g) = \int F(g, \nabla g, \dots) dx$, then J will be stationary to small perturbations of g if F satisfies the corresponding Euler–Lagrange equation.

| Function | Euler–Lagrange equation |
|---|--|
| $\int_R F(x, y, y') dx$ | $\frac{\partial F}{\partial y} - \frac{d}{dx} \left(\frac{\partial F}{\partial y'} \right) = 0$ |
| $\int_R F(x, y, y', \dots, y^{(n)}) dx$ | $\frac{\partial F}{\partial y} - \frac{d}{dx} \left(\frac{\partial F}{\partial y'} \right) + \frac{d^2}{dx^2} \left(\frac{\partial F}{\partial y''} \right) - \dots + (-1)^n \frac{d^n}{dx^n} \left(\frac{\partial F}{\partial y^{(n)}} \right) = 0$ |
| $\iint_R \left[a \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \right)^2 + b \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial y} \right)^2 + cu^2 + 2fu \right] dx dy$ | $\frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left(a \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left(b \frac{\partial u}{\partial y} \right) - cu = f$ |
| $\iint_R F(x, y, u, u_x, u_y, u_{xx}, u_{xy}, u_{yy}) dx dy$ | $\frac{\partial F}{\partial u} - \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left(\frac{\partial F}{\partial u_x} \right) - \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left(\frac{\partial F}{\partial u_y} \right) + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} \left(\frac{\partial F}{\partial u_{xx}} \right) + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x \partial y} \left(\frac{\partial F}{\partial u_{xy}} \right) + \frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2} \left(\frac{\partial F}{\partial u_{yy}} \right) = 0$ |

5.3.8 CONTINUITY OF INTEGRAL ANTIDERIVATIVES

Consider the following different antiderivatives of an integral

$$F(x) = \int f(x) dx = \int \frac{3}{5 - 4 \cos x} dx = \begin{cases} 2 \tan^{-1} \left(3 \tan \frac{x}{2} \right) \\ 2 \tan^{-1} \left(3 \sin x / (\cos x + 1) \right) \\ - \tan^{-1} \left(-3 \sin x / (5 \cos x - 4) \right) \\ 2 \tan^{-1} \left(3 \tan \frac{x}{2} \right) + 2\pi \left[\frac{x}{2\pi} + \frac{1}{2} \right] \end{cases}$$

where $[\cdot]$ denotes the floor function. These antiderivatives are all “correct” because differentiating any of them results in the original integrand (except at isolated points). However, if we desire $\int_0^{4\pi} f(x) dx = F(4\pi) - F(0)$ to hold, then only the last antiderivative is correct. This is true because the other antiderivatives of $F(x)$ are discontinuous when x is a multiple of π .

In general, if $\hat{F}(x) = \int^x f(t) dt$ is a discontinuous evaluation (with $\hat{F}(x)$ discontinuous at the single point $x = b$), then a continuous evaluation on a finite interval is given by $\int_a^c f(x) dx = F(c) - F(a)$, where

$$F(x) = \hat{F}(x) - \hat{F}(a) + H(x - b) \left[\lim_{x \rightarrow b^-} \hat{F}(x) - \lim_{x \rightarrow b^+} \hat{F}(x) \right] \quad (5.3.27)$$

and where $H(\cdot)$ is the Heaviside function. For functions with an infinite number of discontinuities, note that $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} H(x - pn - q) = \left\lfloor \frac{x - q}{p} \right\rfloor$.

5.3.9 ASYMPTOTIC INTEGRAL EVALUATION

1. *Laplace’s method*: If $f'(x_0) = 0$, $f''(x_0) < 0$, and $\lambda \rightarrow \infty$, then

$$I_{x_0}(\lambda) \equiv \int_{x_0 - \epsilon}^{x_0 + \epsilon} g(x) e^{\lambda f(x)} dx \sim g(x_0) e^{\lambda f(x_0)} \sqrt{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda |f''(x_0)|}} + \dots \quad (5.3.28)$$

Hence, if points of local maximum $\{x_i\}$ satisfy $f'(x_i) = 0$ and $f''(x_i) < 0$, then $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g(x) e^{\lambda f(x)} dx \sim \sum_i I_{x_i}(\lambda)$.

2. *Method of stationary phase*: If $f(x_0) \neq 0$, $f'(x_0) = 0$, $f''(x_0) \neq 0$, $g(x_0) \neq 0$, and $\lambda \rightarrow \infty$, then

$$\begin{aligned} J_{x_0, \epsilon}(\lambda) &= \int_{x_0 - \epsilon}^{x_0 + \epsilon} g(x) e^{i\lambda f(x)} dx \\ &\sim g(x_0) \sqrt{\frac{2\pi}{\lambda |f''(x_0)|}} \exp \left[i\lambda f(x_0) + \frac{i\pi}{4} \operatorname{sgn} f''(x_0) \right] + \dots \end{aligned} \quad (5.3.29)$$

5.3.10 SPECIAL FUNCTIONS DEFINED BY INTEGRALS

Not all integrals of elementary functions (sines, cosines, rational functions, and others) can be evaluated in terms of elementary functions. For example, the integral $\int e^{-x^2} dx$ is represented by the special function “erf(x)” (see page 545). Other useful functions include dilogarithms (see page 551) and elliptic integrals (see page 568).

The dilogarithm function is defined by $\operatorname{Li}_2(x) = -\int_0^x \ln(1 - t)/t dt$. All integrals of the form $\int^x P(x, \sqrt{R}) \log Q(x, \sqrt{R}) dx$, where P and Q are rational functions and $R = A + Bx + Cx^2$, can be evaluated in terms of elementary functions and dilogarithms.

All integrals of the form $\int_x R(x, \sqrt{T(x)}) dx$, where R is a rational function of its arguments and $T(x)$ is a third- or fourth-order polynomial, can be integrated in terms of elementary functions and elliptic functions.

5.3.11 APPLICATIONS OF INTEGRATION

- Using Green's theorems, the area bounded by the simple, closed, positively-oriented contour C is

$$\text{area} = \oint_C x dy = - \oint_C y dx. \quad (5.3.30)$$

- Arc length:

- $s = \int_{x_1}^{x_2} \sqrt{1 + y'^2} dx$ for $y = f(x)$.

- $s = \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \sqrt{\dot{\phi}^2 + \dot{\psi}^2} dt$ for $x = \phi(t)$, $y = \psi(t)$.

- $s = \int_{\theta_1}^{\theta_2} \sqrt{r^2 + \left(\frac{dr}{d\phi}\right)^2} d\theta = \int_{r_1}^{r_2} \sqrt{1 + r^2 \left(\frac{dr}{d\phi}\right)^2} dr$ for $r = f(\theta)$.

- Surface area for surfaces of revolution:

- $A = 2\pi \int_{x_1}^{x_2} f(x) \sqrt{1 + (f'(x))^2} dx$ when $y = f(x)$ is rotated about the x -axis.

- $A = 2\pi \int_{y_1}^{y_2} x \sqrt{1 + (f'(x))^2} dy$ when $y = f(x)$ is rotated about the y -axis and f is one-to-one.

- $A = 2\pi \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \psi \sqrt{\dot{\phi}^2 + \dot{\psi}^2} dt$ for $x = \phi(t)$, $y = \psi(t)$ rotated about the x -axis.

- $A = 2\pi \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \phi \sqrt{\dot{\phi}^2 + \dot{\psi}^2} dt$ for $x = \phi(t)$, $y = \psi(t)$ rotated about the y -axis.

- $A = 2\pi \int_{\phi_1}^{\phi_2} r \sin \phi \sqrt{r^2 + \left(\frac{dr}{d\phi}\right)^2} d\phi$ for $r = r(\phi)$ rotated about the x -axis.

- $A = 2\pi \int_{\phi_1}^{\phi_2} r \cos \phi \sqrt{r^2 + \left(\frac{dr}{d\phi}\right)^2} d\phi$ for $r = r(\phi)$ rotated about the y -axis.

- Volumes of revolution:

- $V = \pi \int_{x_1}^{x_2} f^2(x) dx$ for $y = f(x)$ rotated about the x -axis.

- (b) $V = \pi \int_{x_1}^{x_2} x^2 f'(x) dx$ for $y = f(x)$ rotated about the y -axis.
- (c) $V = \pi \int_{y_1}^{y_2} g^2(y) dy$ for $x = g(y)$ rotated about the y -axis.
- (d) $V = \pi \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \psi^2 \dot{\phi} dt$ for $x = \phi(t)$, $y = \psi(t)$ rotated about the x -axis.
- (e) $V = \pi \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \phi^2 \dot{\psi} dt$ for $x = \phi(t)$, $y = \psi(t)$ rotated about the y -axis.
- (f) $V = \pi \int_{\phi_1}^{\phi_2} \sin^2 \phi \left(\frac{dr}{d\phi} \cos \phi - r \sin \phi \right) d\phi$ for $r = f(\phi)$ rotated about the x -axis.
- (g) $V = \pi \int_{\phi_1}^{\phi_2} \cos^2 \phi \left(\frac{dr}{d\phi} \sin \phi - r \cos \phi \right) d\phi$ for $r = f(\phi)$ rotated about the y -axis.

5. The area enclosed by the curve $x^{b/c} + y^{b/c} = a^{b/c}$, where $a > 0$, c is an odd integer, and b is an even integer, is $A = \frac{2ca^2}{b} \frac{[\Gamma(\frac{c}{b})]^2}{\Gamma(\frac{2c}{b})}$.

6. The integral $I = \iiint_R x^{h-1} y^{m-1} z^{n-1} dV$, where R is the region of space bounded by the coordinate planes and that portion of the surface $\left(\frac{x}{a}\right)^p + \left(\frac{y}{b}\right)^q + \left(\frac{z}{c}\right)^k = 1$, in the first octant, and where $\{h, m, n, p, q, k, a, b, c\}$ are all positive real numbers, is given by

$$\int_0^a x^{h-1} dx \int_0^{b[1-(\frac{x}{a})^p]^{\frac{1}{q}}} y^{m-1} dy \int_0^{c[1-(\frac{x}{a})^p - (\frac{y}{b})^q]^{\frac{1}{k}}} z^{n-1} dz$$

$$= \frac{a^h b^m c^n}{p q k} \frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{h}{p}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{m}{q}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{n}{k}\right)}{\Gamma\left(\frac{h}{p} + \frac{m}{q} + \frac{n}{k} + 1\right)}.$$

5.3.12 MOMENTS OF INERTIA FOR VARIOUS BODIES

| | Body | Axis | Moment of inertia |
|-----|---|---|--------------------------|
| (1) | Uniform thin rod | Normal to the length, at one end | $m \frac{l^2}{3}$ |
| (2) | Uniform thin rod | Normal to the length, at the center | $m \frac{l^2}{12}$ |
| (3) | Thin rectangular sheet, sides a and b | Through the center parallel to b | $m \frac{a^2}{12}$ |
| (4) | Thin rectangular sheet, sides a and b | Through the center perpendicular to the sheet | $m \frac{a^2 + b^2}{12}$ |

continued on next page

| | Body | Axis | Moment of inertia |
|------|---|---|--|
| (5) | Thin circular sheet of radius r | Normal to the plate through the center | $m\frac{r^2}{2}$ |
| (6) | Thin circular sheet of radius r | Along any diameter | $m\frac{r^2}{4}$ |
| (7) | Thin circular ring, radii r_1 and r_2 | Through center normal to plane of ring | $m\frac{r_1^2+r_2^2}{2}$ |
| (8) | Thin circular ring, radii r_1 and r_2 | Along any diameter | $m\frac{r_1^2+r_2^2}{4}$ |
| (9) | Rectangular parallelepiped, edges a , b , and c | Through center perpendicular to face ab (parallel to edge c) | $m\frac{a^2+b^2}{12}$ |
| (10) | Sphere, radius r | Any diameter | $m\frac{2}{5}r^2$ |
| (11) | Spherical shell, external radius r_1 , internal radius r_2 | Any diameter | $m\frac{2}{5}\frac{r_1^5-r_2^5}{r_1^3-r_2^3}$ |
| (12) | Spherical shell, very thin, mean radius r | Any diameter | $m\frac{2}{3}r^2$ |
| (13) | Right circular cylinder of radius r , length l | Longitudinal axis of the slide | $m\frac{r^2}{2}$ |
| (14) | Right circular cylinder of radius r , length l | Transverse diameter | $m\left(\frac{r^2}{4} + \frac{l^2}{12}\right)$ |
| (15) | Hollow circular cylinder, radii r_1 and r_2 , length l | Longitudinal axis of the gure | $m\frac{r_1^2+r_2^2}{2}$ |
| (16) | Thin cylindrical shell, length l , mean radius r | Longitudinal axis of the gure | mr^2 |
| (17) | Hollow circular cylinder, radii r_1 and r_2 , length l | Transverse diameter | $m\left(\frac{r_1^2+r_2^2}{4} + \frac{l^2}{12}\right)$ |
| (18) | Hollow circular cylinder, very thin, length l , mean radius r | Transverse diameter | $m\left(\frac{r^2}{2} + \frac{l^2}{12}\right)$ |
| (19) | Elliptic cylinder, length l , transverse semiaxes a and b | Longitudinal axis | $m\left(\frac{a^2+b^2}{4}\right)$ |
| (20) | Right cone, altitude h , radius of base r | Axis of the gure | $m\frac{3}{10}r^2$ |
| (21) | Spheroid of revolution, equatorial radius r | Polar axis | $m\frac{2}{5}r^2$ |
| (22) | Ellipsoid, axes $2a$, $2b$, $2c$ | Axis $2a$ | $m\frac{b^2+c^2}{5}$ |

5.3.13 TABLES OF INTEGRALS

Many extensive compilations of integrals tables exist. No matter how extensive the integral table, it is fairly uncommon to find the exact integral desired. Usually some form of transformation will have to be made. The simplest type of transformation is substitution. Simple forms of substitutions, such as $y = ax$, are employed, almost unconsciously, by experienced users of integral tables. Finding the right substitution is largely a matter of intuition and experience.

We adopt the following conventions in the integral tables:

1. A constant of integration must be included with all indefinite integrals.
2. All angles are measured in radians; inverse trigonometric and hyperbolic functions represent principal values.
3. Logarithmic expressions are to base $e = 2.71828\dots$, unless otherwise specified, and are to be evaluated for the absolute value of the arguments involved therein.
4. The natural logarithm function is denoted as $\log x$.
5. The variables n and m usually denote integers. The denominator of the expressions shown is not allowed to be zero; this may require that $a \neq 0$ or $m \neq n$ or some other similar statement.
6. When inverse trigonometric functions occur in the integrals, be sure that any replacements made for them are strictly in accordance with the rules for such functions. This causes little difficulty when the argument of the inverse trigonometric function is positive, because all angles involved are in the first quadrant. However, if the argument is negative, special care must be used. Thus, if $u > 0$ then

$$\sin^{-1} u = \cos^{-1} \sqrt{1 - u^2} = \csc^{-1} \frac{1}{u} = \dots$$

However, if $u < 0$, then

$$\sin^{-1} u = -\cos^{-1} \sqrt{1 - u^2} = -\pi - \csc^{-1} \frac{1}{u} = \dots$$

5.4 TABLE OF INDEFINITE INTEGRALS

5.4.1 ELEMENTARY FORMS

1. $\int a \, dx = ax.$
2. $\int a f(x) \, dx = a \int f(x) \, dx.$
3. $\int \phi(y(x)) \, dx = \int \frac{\phi(y)}{y'} \, dy,$ where $y' = \frac{dy}{dx}.$
4. $\int (u + v) \, dx = \int u \, dx + \int v \, dx,$ where u and v are any functions of $x.$
5. $\int u \, dv = u \int dv - \int v \, du = uv - \int v \, du.$
6. $\int u \frac{dv}{dx} \, dx = uv - \int v \frac{du}{dx} \, dx.$

-
7. $\int x^n dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1}$, except when $n = -1$.
8. $\int \frac{dx}{x} = \log x$.
9. $\int \frac{f'(x)}{f(x)} dx = \log f(x)$, ($df(x) = f'(x) dx$).
10. $\int \frac{f'(x)}{2\sqrt{f(x)}} dx = \sqrt{f(x)}$, ($df(x) = f'(x) dx$).
11. $\int e^x dx = e^x$.
12. $\int e^{ax} dx = \frac{e^{ax}}{a}$.
13. $\int b^{ax} dx = \frac{b^{ax}}{a \log b}$, $b > 0$.
14. $\int \log x dx = x \log x - x$.
15. $\int a^x dx = \frac{a^x}{\log a}$, $a > 0$.
16. $\int \frac{dx}{a^2 + x^2} = \frac{1}{a} \tan^{-1} \frac{x}{a}$.
17. $\int \frac{dx}{a^2 - x^2} = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{a} \tanh^{-1} \frac{x}{a}, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{1}{2a} \log \frac{a+x}{a-x}, \end{cases} \quad a^2 > x^2$.
18. $\int \frac{dx}{x^2 - a^2} = \begin{cases} -\frac{1}{a} \coth^{-1} \frac{x}{a}, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{1}{2a} \log \frac{x-a}{x+a}, \end{cases} \quad x^2 > a^2$.
19. $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} = \begin{cases} \sin^{-1} \frac{x}{|a|}, \\ \text{or} \\ -\cos^{-1} \frac{x}{|a|}, \end{cases} \quad a^2 > x^2$.
20. $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}} = \log \left(x + \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2} \right)$.
21. $\int \frac{dx}{x\sqrt{x^2 - a^2}} = \frac{1}{|a|} \sec^{-1} \frac{x}{a}$.
22. $\int \frac{dx}{x\sqrt{a^2 \pm x^2}} = -\frac{1}{a} \log \left(\frac{a + \sqrt{a^2 \pm x^2}}{x} \right)$.
-

5.4.2 FORMS CONTAINING $a + bx$

23. $\int (a + bx)^n dx = \frac{(a + bx)^{n+1}}{(n+1)b}$, $n \neq -1$.
24. $\int x(a + bx)^n dx = \frac{1}{b^2(n+2)} (a + bx)^{n+2} - \frac{a}{b^2(n+1)} (a + bx)^{n+1}$,
 $n \neq -1, n \neq -2$.

$$25. \int x^2(a+bx)^n dx = \frac{1}{b^3} \left[\frac{(a+bx)^{n+3}}{n+3} - 2a \frac{(a+bx)^{n+2}}{n+2} + a^2 \frac{(a+bx)^{n+1}}{n+1} \right],$$

$n \neq -1, \quad n \neq -2, n \neq -3.$

$$26. \int x^m(a+bx)^n dx = \begin{cases} \frac{x^{m+1}(a+bx)^n}{m+n+1} + \frac{an}{m+n+1} \int x^m(a+bx)^{n-1} dx, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{1}{a(n+1)} \left[-x^{m+1}(a+bx)^{n+1} + (m+n+2) \int x^m(a+bx)^{n+1} dx \right], \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{1}{b(m+n+1)} \left[x^m(a+bx)^{n+1} - ma \int x^{m-1}(a+bx)^n dx \right]. \end{cases}$$

$$27. \int \frac{dx}{a+bx} = \frac{1}{b} \log |a+bx|.$$

$$28. \int \frac{dx}{(a+bx)^2} = -\frac{1}{b(a+bx)}.$$

$$29. \int \frac{dx}{(a+bx)^3} = -\frac{1}{2b(a+bx)^2}.$$

$$30. \int \frac{x}{a+bx} dx = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{b^2} [a+bx - a \log(a+bx)], \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{x}{b} - \frac{a}{b^2} \log(a+bx). \end{cases}$$

$$31. \int \frac{x}{(a+bx)^2} dx = \frac{1}{b^2} \left[\log(a+bx) + \frac{a}{a+bx} \right].$$

$$32. \int \frac{x}{(a+bx)^n} dx = \frac{1}{b^2} \left[\frac{-1}{(n-2)(a+bx)^{n-2}} + \frac{a}{(n-1)(a+bx)^{n-1}} \right],$$

$n \neq 1, n \neq 2.$

$$33. \int \frac{x^2}{a+bx} dx = \frac{1}{b^3} \left(\frac{1}{2}(a+bx)^2 - 2a(a+bx) + a^2 \log(a+bx) \right).$$

$$34. \int \frac{x^2}{(a+bx)^2} dx = \frac{1}{b^3} \left(a+bx - 2a \log(a+bx) - \frac{a^2}{a+bx} \right).$$

$$35. \int \frac{x^2}{(a+bx)^3} dx = \frac{1}{b^3} \left(\log(a+bx) + \frac{2a}{a+bx} - \frac{a^2}{2(a+bx)^2} \right).$$

$$36. \int \frac{x^2}{(a+bx)^n} dx = \frac{1}{b^3} \left[\frac{-1}{(n-3)(a+bx)^{n-3}} + \frac{2a}{(n-2)(a+bx)^{n-2}} - \frac{a^2}{(n-1)(a+bx)^{n-1}} \right], \quad n \neq 1, n \neq 2, n \neq 3.$$

$$37. \int \frac{dx}{x(a+bx)} = -\frac{1}{a} \log \frac{a+bx}{x}.$$

$$38. \int \frac{dx}{x(a+bx)^2} = \frac{1}{a(a+bx)} - \frac{1}{a^2} \log \frac{a+bx}{x}.$$

$$39. \int \frac{dx}{x(a+bx)^3} = \frac{1}{a^3} \left[\frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{2a+bx}{a+bx} \right)^2 - \log \frac{a+bx}{x} \right].$$

$$40. \int \frac{dx}{x^2(a+bx)} = -\frac{1}{ax} + \frac{b}{a^2} \log \frac{a+bx}{x}.$$

$$41. \int \frac{dx}{x^3(a+bx)} = \frac{2bx-a}{2a^2x^2} + \frac{b^2}{a^3} \log \frac{x}{a+bx}.$$

$$42. \int \frac{dx}{x^2(a+bx)^2} = -\frac{a+2bx}{a^2x(a+bx)} + \frac{2b}{a^3} \log \frac{a+bx}{x}.$$

5.4.3 FORMS CONTAINING $c^2 \pm x^2$ AND $x^2 - c^2$

$$43. \int \frac{dx}{c^2+x^2} = \frac{1}{c} \tan^{-1} \frac{x}{c}.$$

$$44. \int \frac{dx}{c^2-x^2} = \frac{1}{2c} \log \frac{c+x}{c-x}, \quad c^2 > x^2.$$

$$45. \int \frac{dx}{x^2-c^2} = \frac{1}{2c} \log \frac{x-c}{x+c}, \quad x^2 > c^2.$$

$$46. \int \frac{x}{c^2 \pm x^2} dx = \pm \frac{1}{2} \log(c^2 \pm x^2).$$

$$47. \int \frac{x}{(c^2 \pm x^2)^{n+1}} dx = \mp \frac{1}{2n(c^2 \pm x^2)^n}, \quad n \neq 0.$$

$$48. \int \frac{dx}{(c^2 \pm x^2)^n} = \frac{1}{2c^2(n-1)} \left[\frac{x}{(c^2 \pm x^2)^{n-1}} + (2n-3) \int \frac{dx}{(c^2 \pm x^2)^{n-1}} \right].$$

$$49. \int \frac{dx}{(x^2-c^2)^n} = \frac{1}{2c^2(n-1)} \left[-\frac{x}{(x^2-c^2)^{n-1}} - (2n-3) \int \frac{dx}{(x^2-c^2)^{n-1}} \right].$$

$$50. \int \frac{x}{x^2-c^2} dx = \frac{1}{2} \log(x^2-c^2).$$

$$51. \int \frac{x}{(x^2-c^2)^{n+1}} dx = -\frac{1}{2n(x^2-c^2)^n}.$$

5.4.4 FORMS CONTAINING $a+bx$ AND $c+dx$

$u = a+bx, \quad v = c+dx, \quad \text{and} \quad k = ad-bc. \quad (\text{If } k=0, \text{ then } v = (c/a)u.)$

$$52. \int \frac{dx}{uv} = \frac{1}{k} \log \left(\frac{v}{u} \right).$$

$$53. \int \frac{x}{uv} dx = \frac{1}{k} \left(\frac{a}{b} \log u - \frac{c}{d} \log v \right).$$

$$54. \int \frac{dx}{u^2v} = \frac{1}{k} \left(\frac{1}{u} + \frac{d}{k} \log \frac{v}{u} \right).$$

$$55. \int \frac{x}{u^2v} dx = -\frac{a}{bku} - \frac{c}{k^2} \log \frac{v}{u}.$$

$$56. \int \frac{x^2}{u^2v} dx = \frac{a^2}{b^2ku} + \frac{1}{k^2} \left(\frac{c^2}{d} \log v + \frac{a(k-bc)}{b^2} \log u \right).$$

$$57. \int \frac{dx}{u^n v^m} = \frac{1}{k(m-1)} \left[\frac{-1}{u^{n-1}v^{m-1}} - b(m+n-2) \int \frac{dx}{u^n v^{m-1}} \right].$$

$$58. \int \frac{u}{v} dx = \frac{bx}{d} + \frac{k}{d^2} \log v.$$

$$59. \int \frac{u^m}{v^n} dx = \begin{cases} -\frac{1}{k(n-1)} \left[\frac{u^{m+1}}{v^{n-1}} + b(n-m-2) \int \frac{u^m}{v^{n-1}} dx \right], \\ \text{or} \\ -\frac{1}{d(n-m-1)} \left[\frac{u^m}{v^{n-1}} + mk \int \frac{u^{m-1}}{v^n} dx \right], \\ \text{or} \\ -\frac{1}{d(n-1)} \left[\frac{u^m}{v^{n-1}} - mb \int \frac{u^{m-1}}{v^{n-1}} dx \right]. \end{cases}$$

5.4.5 FORMS CONTAINING $a + bx^n$

$$60. \int \frac{dx}{a + bx^2} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{ab}} \tan^{-1} \frac{x\sqrt{ab}}{a}, \quad ab > 0.$$

$$61. \int \frac{dx}{a + bx^2} = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2\sqrt{-ab}} \log \frac{a + x\sqrt{-ab}}{a - x\sqrt{-ab}}, & ab < 0, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{-ab}} \tanh^{-1} \frac{x\sqrt{-ab}}{a}, & ab < 0. \end{cases}$$

$$62. \int \frac{dx}{a^2 + b^2x^2} dx = \frac{1}{ab} \tan^{-1} \frac{bx}{a}.$$

$$63. \int \frac{x}{a + bx^2} dx = \frac{1}{2b} \log(a + bx^2).$$

$$64. \int \frac{x^2}{a + bx^2} dx = \frac{x}{b} - \frac{a}{b} \int \frac{dx}{a + bx^2}.$$

$$65. \int \frac{dx}{(a + bx^2)^2} = \frac{x}{2a(a + bx^2)} + \frac{1}{2a} \int \frac{dx}{a + bx^2}.$$

$$66. \int \frac{dx}{a^2 - b^2x^2} = \frac{1}{2ab} \log \frac{a + bx}{a - bx}.$$

$$67. \int \frac{dx}{(a + bx^2)^{m+1}} = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2ma} \frac{x}{(a + bx^2)^m} + \frac{2m-1}{2ma} \int \frac{dx}{(a + bx^2)^m}, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{(2m)!}{(m!)^2} \left[\frac{x}{2a} \sum_{r=1}^m \frac{r!(r-1)!}{(4a)^{m-r}(2r)!(a + bx^2)^r} + \frac{1}{(4a)^m} \int \frac{dx}{a + bx^2} \right]. \end{cases}$$

$$68. \int \frac{x dx}{(a + bx^2)^{m+1}} = -\frac{1}{2bm(a + bx^2)^m}, \quad m \neq 0.$$

$$69. \int \frac{x^2 dx}{(a + bx^2)^{m+1}} = -\frac{x}{2mb(a + bx^2)^m} + \frac{1}{2mb} \int \frac{dx}{(a + bx^2)^m}, \quad m \neq 0.$$

$$70. \int \frac{dx}{x(a + bx^2)} = \frac{1}{2a} \log \frac{x^2}{a + bx^2}.$$

$$71. \int \frac{dx}{x^2(a + bx^2)} = -\frac{1}{ax} - \frac{b}{a} \int \frac{dx}{a + bx^2}.$$

$$72. \int \frac{dx}{x(a + bx^2)^{m+1}} = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2am(a + bx^2)^m} + \frac{1}{a} \int \frac{dx}{x(a + bx^2)^m}, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{1}{2a^{m+1}} \left[\sum_{r=1}^m \frac{a^r}{r(a + bx^2)^r} + \log \frac{x^2}{a + bx^2} \right]. \end{cases}$$

73. $\int \frac{dx}{x^2(a+bx^2)^{m+1}} = \frac{1}{a} \int \frac{dx}{x^2(a+bx^2)^m} - \frac{b}{a} \int \frac{dx}{(a+bx^2)^{m+1}}.$
74. $\int \frac{dx}{a+bx^3} = \frac{k}{3a} \left[\frac{1}{2} \log \frac{(k+x)^3}{a+bx^3} + \sqrt{3} \tan^{-1} \frac{2x-k}{k\sqrt{3}} \right], \quad k = \sqrt[3]{\frac{a}{b}}.$
75. $\int \frac{x dx}{a+bx^3} = \frac{1}{3bk} \left[\frac{1}{2} \log \frac{a+bx^3}{(k+x)^3} + \sqrt{3} \tan^{-1} \frac{2x-k}{k\sqrt{3}} \right], \quad k = \sqrt[3]{\frac{a}{b}}.$
76. $\int \frac{x^2 dx}{a+bx^3} = \frac{1}{3b} \log a+bx^3.$
77. $\int \frac{dx}{a+bx^4} = \begin{cases} \frac{k}{2a} \left[\frac{1}{2} \log \frac{x^2+2kx+2k^2}{x^2-2kx+2k^2} + \tan^{-1} \frac{2kx}{2k^2-x^2} \right], & ab > 0, k = \left(\frac{a}{4b}\right)^{1/4}, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{k}{2a} \left[\frac{1}{2} \log \frac{x+k}{x-k} + \tan^{-1} \frac{x}{k} \right], & ab < 0, k = \left(-\frac{a}{b}\right)^{1/4}. \end{cases}$
78. $\int \frac{x}{a+bx^4} dx = \frac{1}{2bk} \tan^{-1} \frac{x^2}{k}, \quad ab > 0, k = \sqrt{\frac{a}{b}}.$
79. $\int \frac{x}{a+bx^4} dx = \frac{1}{4bk} \log \frac{x^2-k}{x^2+k}, \quad ab < 0, k = \sqrt{-\frac{a}{b}}.$
80. $\int \frac{x^2}{a+bx^4} dx = \frac{1}{4bk} \left[\frac{1}{2} \log \frac{x^2-2kx+2k^2}{x^2+2kx+2k^2} + \tan^{-1} \frac{2kx}{2k^2-x^2} \right],$
 $ab > 0, k = \left(\frac{a}{4b}\right)^{1/4}.$
81. $\int \frac{x^2 dx}{a+bx^4} = \frac{1}{4bk} \left[\log \frac{x-k}{x+k} + 2 \tan^{-1} \frac{x}{k} \right], \quad ab < 0, k = \sqrt[4]{-\frac{a}{b}}.$
82. $\int \frac{x^3 dx}{a+bx^4} = \frac{1}{4b} \log(a+bx^4).$
83. $\int \frac{dx}{x(a+bx^n)} = \frac{1}{an} \log \frac{x^n}{a+bx^n}, \quad n \neq 0.$
84. $\int \frac{dx}{(a+bx^n)^{m+1}} = \frac{1}{a} \int \frac{dx}{(a+bx^n)^m} - \frac{b}{a} \int \frac{x^n dx}{(a+bx^n)^{m+1}}.$
85. $\int \frac{x^m dx}{(a+bx^n)^{p+1}} = \frac{1}{b} \int \frac{x^{m-n} dx}{(a+bx^n)^p} - \frac{a}{b} \int \frac{x^{m-n} dx}{(a+bx^n)^{p+1}}.$
86. $\int \frac{dx}{x^m(a+bx^n)^{p+1}} = \frac{1}{a} \int \frac{dx}{x^m(a+bx^n)^p} - \frac{b}{a} \int \frac{dx}{x^{m-n}(a+bx^n)^{p+1}}.$
87. $\int x^m(a+bx^n)^p dx = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{b(np+m+1)} \left[x^{m-n+1}(a+bx^n)^{p+1} - a(m-n+1) \int x^{m-n}(a+bx^n)^p dx \right], \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{1}{np+m+1} \left[x^{m+1}(a+bx^n)^p + anp \int x^m(a+bx^n)^{p-1} dx \right], \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{1}{a(m+1)} \left[x^{m+1}(a+bx^n)^{p+1} - b(m+1+np+n) \int x^{m+n}(a+bx^n)^p dx \right], \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{1}{an(p+1)} \left[-x^{m+1}(a+bx^n)^{p+1} + (m+1+np+n) \int x^m(a+bx^n)^{p+1} dx \right]. \end{cases}$

5.4.6 FORMS CONTAINING $c^3 \pm x^3$

88. $\int \frac{dx}{c^3 \pm x^3} = \pm \frac{1}{6c^2} \log \left(\frac{(c \pm x)^3}{c^3 \pm x^3} \right) + \frac{1}{c^2 \sqrt{3}} \tan^{-1} \frac{2x \mp c}{c\sqrt{3}}.$
89. $\int \frac{dx}{(c^3 \pm x^3)^2} = \frac{x}{3c^3(c^3 \pm x^3)} + \frac{2}{3c^3} \int \frac{dx}{c^3 \pm x^3}.$
90. $\int \frac{dx}{(c^3 \pm x^3)^{n+1}} = \frac{1}{3nc^3} \left[\frac{x}{(c^3 \pm x^3)^n} + (3n-1) \int \frac{dx}{(c^3 \pm x^3)^n} \right], \quad n \neq 0.$
91. $\int \frac{x dx}{c^3 \pm x^3} = \frac{1}{6c} \log \frac{c^3 \pm x^3}{(c \pm x)^3} \pm \frac{1}{c\sqrt{3}} \tan^{-1} \frac{2x \mp c}{c\sqrt{3}}.$
92. $\int \frac{x dx}{(c^3 \pm x^3)^2} = \frac{x^2}{3c^3(c^3 \pm x^3)} + \frac{1}{3c^3} \int \frac{x dx}{c^3 \pm x^3}.$
93. $\int \frac{x dx}{(c^3 \pm x^3)^{n+1}} = \frac{1}{3nc^3} \left[\frac{x^2}{(c^3 \pm x^3)^n} + (3n-2) \int \frac{x dx}{(c^3 \pm x^3)^n} \right], \quad n \neq 0.$
94. $\int \frac{x^2 dx}{c^3 \pm x^3} = \pm \frac{1}{3} \log (c^3 \pm x^3).$
95. $\int \frac{x^2 dx}{(c^3 \pm x^3)^{n+1}} = \mp \frac{1}{3n(c^3 \pm x^3)^n}, \quad n \neq 0.$
96. $\int \frac{dx}{x(c^3 \pm x^3)} = \frac{1}{3c^3} \log \frac{x^3}{c^3 \pm x^3}.$
97. $\int \frac{dx}{x(c^3 \pm x^3)^2} = \frac{1}{3c^3(c^3 \pm x^3)} + \frac{1}{3c^6} \log \frac{x^3}{c^3 \pm x^3}.$
98. $\int \frac{dx}{x(c^3 \pm x^3)^{n+1}} = \frac{1}{3nc^3(c^3 \pm x^3)^n} + \frac{1}{c^3} \int \frac{dx}{x(c^3 \pm x^3)^n}, \quad n \neq 0.$
99. $\int \frac{dx}{x^2(c^3 \pm x^3)} = -\frac{1}{c^3 x} \mp \frac{1}{c^3} \int \frac{x dx}{(c^3 \pm x^3)}.$
100. $\int \frac{dx}{x^2(c^3 \pm x^3)^{n+1}} = \frac{1}{c^3} \int \frac{dx}{x^2(c^3 \pm x^3)^n} \mp \frac{1}{c^3} \int \frac{x dx}{(c^3 \pm x^3)^{n+1}}.$

5.4.7 FORMS CONTAINING $c^4 \pm x^4$

101. $\int \frac{dx}{c^4 + x^4} = \frac{1}{2c^3 \sqrt{2}} \left[\frac{1}{2} \log \left(\frac{x^2 + cx\sqrt{2} + c^2}{x^2 - cx\sqrt{2} + c^2} \right) + \tan^{-1} \frac{cx\sqrt{2}}{c^2 - x^2} \right].$
102. $\int \frac{dx}{c^4 - x^4} = \frac{1}{2c^3} \left[\frac{1}{2} \log \frac{c+x}{c-x} + \tan^{-1} \frac{x}{c} \right].$
103. $\int \frac{x dx}{c^4 + x^4} = \frac{1}{2c^2} \tan^{-1} \frac{x^2}{c^2}.$
104. $\int \frac{x dx}{c^4 - x^4} = \frac{1}{4c^2} \log \frac{c^2 + x^2}{c^2 - x^2}.$
105. $\int \frac{x^2 dx}{c^4 + x^4} = \frac{1}{2c\sqrt{2}} \left[\frac{1}{2} \log \left(\frac{x^2 - cx\sqrt{2} + c^2}{x^2 + cx\sqrt{2} + c^2} \right) + \tan^{-1} \frac{cx\sqrt{2}}{c^2 - x^2} \right].$
106. $\int \frac{x^2 dx}{c^4 - x^4} = \frac{1}{2c} \left[\frac{1}{2} \log \frac{c+x}{c-x} - \tan^{-1} \frac{x}{c} \right].$

$$107. \int \frac{x^3 dx}{c^4 \pm x^4} = \pm \frac{1}{4} \log(c^4 \pm x^4).$$

5.4.8 FORMS CONTAINING $a + bx + cx^2$

$$X = a + bx + cx^2 \quad \text{and} \quad q = 4ac - b^2.$$

If $q = 0$, then $X = c(x + \frac{b}{2c})^2$ and other formulae should be used.

$$108. \int \frac{dx}{X} = \begin{cases} \frac{2}{\sqrt{q}} \tan^{-1} \frac{2cx + b}{\sqrt{q}}, & q > 0, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{-2}{\sqrt{-q}} \tanh^{-1} \frac{2cx + b}{\sqrt{-q}}, & q < 0, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{-q}} \log \frac{2cx + b - \sqrt{-q}}{2cx + b + \sqrt{-q}}, & q < 0. \end{cases}$$

$$109. \int \frac{dx}{X^2} = \frac{2cx + b}{qX} + \frac{2c}{q} \int \frac{dx}{X}.$$

$$110. \int \frac{dx}{X^3} = \frac{2cx + b}{q} \left(\frac{1}{2X^2} + \frac{3c}{qX} \right) + \frac{6c^2}{q^2} \int \frac{dx}{X}.$$

$$111. \int \frac{dx}{X^{n+1}} = \begin{cases} \frac{2cx + b}{nqX^n} + \frac{2(2n-1)c}{qn} \int \frac{dx}{X^n}, \\ \text{or} \\ \left[\frac{(2n)!}{(n!)^2} \left(\frac{c}{q} \right)^n \left[\frac{2cx + b}{q} \sum_{r=1}^n \left(\frac{q}{cX} \right)^r \left(\frac{(r-1)!r!}{(2r)!} \right) + \int \frac{dx}{X} \right] \right]. \end{cases}$$

$$112. \int \frac{x dx}{X} = \frac{1}{2c} \log X - \frac{b}{2c} \int \frac{dx}{X}.$$

$$113. \int \frac{x dx}{X^2} = -\frac{bx + 2a}{qX} - \frac{b}{q} \int \frac{dx}{X}.$$

$$114. \int \frac{x dx}{X^{n+1}} = -\frac{2a + bx}{nqX^n} - \frac{b(2n-1)}{nq} \int \frac{dx}{X^n}, \quad n \neq 0.$$

$$115. \int \frac{x^2 dx}{X} = \frac{x}{c} - \frac{b}{2c^2} \log X + \frac{b^2 - 2ac}{2c^2} \int \frac{dx}{X}.$$

$$116. \int \frac{x^2 dx}{X^2} = \frac{(b^2 - 2ac)x + ab}{cqX} + \frac{2a}{q} \int \frac{dx}{X}.$$

$$117. \int \frac{x^m dx}{X^{n+1}} = -\frac{x^{m-1}}{(2n-m+1)cX^n} - \frac{n-m+1}{2n-m+1} \frac{b}{c} \int \frac{x^{m-1}}{X^{n+1}} dx \\ + \frac{m-1}{2n-m+1} \frac{a}{c} \int \frac{x^{m-2}}{X^{n+1}} dx.$$

$$118. \int \frac{dx}{xX} = \frac{1}{2a} \log \frac{x^2}{X} - \frac{b}{2a} \int \frac{dx}{X}.$$

$$119. \int \frac{dx}{x^2 X} = \frac{b}{2a^2} \log \frac{X}{x^2} - \frac{1}{ax} + \left(\frac{b^2}{2a^2} - \frac{c}{a} \right) \int \frac{dx}{X}.$$

$$120. \int \frac{dx}{xX^n} = \frac{1}{2a(n-1)X^{n-1}} - \frac{b}{2a} \int \frac{dx}{X^n} + \frac{1}{a} \int \frac{dx}{xX^{n-1}}, \quad n \neq 1.$$

$$121. \int \frac{dx}{x^m X^{n+1}} = -\frac{1}{(m-1)ax^{m-1}X^n} - \frac{n+m-1}{m-1} \frac{b}{a} \int \frac{dx}{x^{m-1}X^{n+1}} - \frac{2n+m-1}{m-1} \frac{c}{a} \int \frac{dx}{x^{m-2}X^{n+1}}.$$

5.4.9 FORMS CONTAINING $\sqrt{a+bx}$

$$122. \int \sqrt{a+bx} dx = \frac{2}{3b} \sqrt{(a+bx)^3}.$$

$$123. \int x \sqrt{a+bx} dx = -\frac{2(2a-3bx)}{15b^2} \sqrt{(a+bx)^3}.$$

$$124. \int x^2 \sqrt{a+bx} dx = \frac{2(8a^2-12abx+15b^2x^2)}{105b^3} \sqrt{(a+bx)^3}.$$

$$125. \int x^m \sqrt{a+bx} dx = \begin{cases} \frac{2}{b(2m+3)} \left[x^m \sqrt{(a+bx)^3} - ma \int x^{m-1} \sqrt{a+bx} dx \right], \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{2}{b^{m+1}} \sqrt{a+bx} \sum_{r=0}^m \frac{m!(-a)^{m-r}}{r!(m-r)!(2r+3)} (a+bx)^{r+1}. \end{cases}$$

$$126. \int \frac{\sqrt{a+bx}}{x} dx = 2\sqrt{a+bx} + a \int \frac{dx}{x\sqrt{a+bx}}.$$

$$127. \int \frac{\sqrt{a+bx}}{x^m} dx = -\frac{1}{(m-1)a} \left[\frac{\sqrt{(a+bx)^3}}{x^{m-1}} + \frac{(2m-5)b}{2} \int \frac{\sqrt{a+bx}}{x^{m-1}} dx \right].$$

$$128. \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{a+bx}} = \frac{2\sqrt{a+bx}}{b}.$$

$$129. \int \frac{x dx}{\sqrt{a+bx}} = -\frac{2(2a-bx)}{3b^2} \sqrt{a+bx}.$$

$$130. \int \frac{x^2 dx}{\sqrt{a+bx}} = \frac{2(8a^2-4abx+3b^2x^2)}{15b^3} \sqrt{a+bx}.$$

$$131. \int \frac{x^m dx}{\sqrt{a+bx}} = \begin{cases} \frac{2}{(2m+1)b} \left[x^m \sqrt{a+bx} - ma \int \frac{x^{m-1}}{\sqrt{a+bx}} dx \right], \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{2(-a)^m \sqrt{a+bx}}{b^{m+1}} \sum_{r=0}^m \frac{(-1)^r m!(a+bx)^r}{(2r+1)r!(m-r)!a^r}. \end{cases}$$

$$132. \int \frac{dx}{x\sqrt{a+bx}} = \begin{cases} \frac{2}{\sqrt{-a}} \tan^{-1} \sqrt{\frac{a+bx}{-a}}, & a < 0, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{a}} \log \left(\frac{\sqrt{a+bx} - \sqrt{a}}{\sqrt{a+bx} + \sqrt{a}} \right), & a > 0. \end{cases}$$

$$133. \int \frac{dx}{x^2 \sqrt{a+bx}} = -\frac{\sqrt{a+bx}}{ax} - \frac{b}{2a} \int \frac{dx}{x\sqrt{a+bx}}.$$

$$\begin{aligned}
134. \int \frac{dx}{x^n \sqrt{a+bx}} &= \begin{cases} -\frac{\sqrt{a+bx}}{(n-1)ax^{n-1}} - \frac{(2n-3)b}{(2n-2)a} \int \frac{dx}{x^{n-1} \sqrt{a+bx}}, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{(2n-2)!}{[(n-1)!]^2} \left[-\frac{\sqrt{a+bx}}{a} \sum_{r=1}^{n-1} \frac{r!(r-1)!}{x^r (2r)!} \left(-\frac{b}{4a}\right)^{n-r-1} + \left(-\frac{b}{4a}\right)^{n-1} \int \frac{dx}{x \sqrt{a+bx}} \right]. \end{cases} \\
135. \int (a+bx)^{\pm n/2} dx &= \frac{2(a+bx)^{(2\pm n)/2}}{b(2\pm n)}. \\
136. \int x(a+bx)^{\pm n/2} dx &= \frac{2}{b^2} \left[\frac{(a+bx)^{(4\pm n)/2}}{4\pm n} - \frac{a(a+bx)^{(2\pm n)/2}}{2\pm n} \right]. \\
137. \int \frac{dx}{x(a+bx)^{n/2}} &= \frac{1}{a} \int \frac{dx}{x(a+bx)^{(n-2)/2}} - \frac{b}{a} \int \frac{dx}{(a+bx)^{n/2}}. \\
138. \int \frac{(a+bx)^{n/2}}{x} dx &= b \int (a+bx)^{(n-2)/2} dx + a \int \frac{(a+bx)^{(n-2)/2}}{x} dx.
\end{aligned}$$

5.4.10 FORMS CONTAINING $\sqrt{a+bx}$ AND $\sqrt{c+dx}$

and $\sqrt{c+dx}$

$$u = a + bx, \quad v = c + dx, \quad k = ad - bc.$$

If $k = 0$, then $v = \frac{c}{a}u$, and other formulae should be used.

$$139. \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{uv}} = \begin{cases} \frac{2}{\sqrt{bd}} \tanh^{-1} \frac{\sqrt{bd}uv}{bv}, & bd > 0, k < 0, \\ \frac{2}{\sqrt{bd}} \tanh^{-1} \frac{\sqrt{bd}uv}{du}, & bd > 0, k > 0, \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{bd}} \log \frac{(bv + \sqrt{bd}uv)^2}{v}, & bd > 0, \\ \frac{2}{\sqrt{-bd}} \tan^{-1} \frac{\sqrt{-bd}uv}{bv}, & bd < 0, \\ -\frac{1}{\sqrt{-bd}} \sin^{-1} \left(\frac{2bdx + ad + bc}{|k|} \right), & bd < 0. \end{cases}$$

$$140. \int \sqrt{uv} dx = \frac{k + 2bv}{4bd} \sqrt{uv} - \frac{k^2}{8bd} \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{uv}}.$$

$$141. \int \frac{dx}{v\sqrt{u}} = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\sqrt{kd}} \log \frac{d\sqrt{u} - \sqrt{kd}}{d\sqrt{u} + \sqrt{kd}}, & kd > 0, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{kd}} \log \frac{(d\sqrt{u} - \sqrt{kd})^2}{v}, & kd > 0, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{2}{\sqrt{-kd}} \tan^{-1} \frac{d\sqrt{u}}{\sqrt{-kd}}, & kd < 0. \end{cases}$$

$$142. \int \frac{x dx}{\sqrt{uv}} = \frac{\sqrt{uv}}{bd} - \frac{ad + bc}{2bd} \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{uv}}.$$

-
143. $\int \frac{dx}{v\sqrt{uv}} = -\frac{2\sqrt{uv}}{kv}$.
144. $\int \frac{v dx}{\sqrt{uv}} = \frac{\sqrt{uv}}{b} - \frac{k}{2b} \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{uv}}$.
145. $\int \sqrt{\frac{v}{u}} dx = \frac{v}{|v|} \int \frac{v dx}{\sqrt{uv}}$.
146. $\int v^m \sqrt{u} dx = \frac{1}{(2m+3)d} \left(2v^{m+1} \sqrt{u} + k \int \frac{v^m dx}{\sqrt{u}} \right)$.
147. $\int \frac{dx}{v^m \sqrt{u}} = -\frac{1}{(m-1)k} \left(\frac{\sqrt{u}}{v^{m-1}} + \left(m - \frac{3}{2} \right) b \int \frac{dx}{v^{m-1} \sqrt{u}} \right), \quad m \neq 1$.
148. $\int \frac{v^m}{\sqrt{u}} dx = \begin{cases} \frac{2}{b(2m+1)} \left(v^m \sqrt{u} - mk \int \frac{v^{m-1}}{\sqrt{u}} dx \right), \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{2(m!)^2 \sqrt{u}}{b(2m+1)!} \sum_{r=0}^m \left(-\frac{4k}{b} \right)^{m-r} \frac{(2r)!}{(r!)^2} v^r. \end{cases}$
-

5.4.11 FORMS CONTAINING $\sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}$

149. $\int \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2} dx = \frac{1}{2} \left[x \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2} \pm a^2 \log \left(x + \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2} \right) \right]$.
150. $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}} = \log \left(x + \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2} \right)$.
151. $\int \frac{dx}{x\sqrt{x^2 - a^2}} = \frac{1}{|a|} \sec^{-1} \frac{x}{a}$.
152. $\int \frac{dx}{x\sqrt{x^2 + a^2}} = -\frac{1}{a} \log \left(\frac{a + \sqrt{x^2 + a^2}}{x} \right)$.
153. $\int \frac{\sqrt{x^2 + a^2}}{x} dx = \sqrt{x^2 + a^2} - a \log \left(\frac{a + \sqrt{x^2 + a^2}}{x} \right)$.
154. $\int \frac{\sqrt{x^2 - a^2}}{x} dx = \sqrt{x^2 - a^2} - |a| \sec^{-1} \frac{x}{a}$.
155. $\int \frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}} dx = \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}$.
156. $\int x \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2} dx = \frac{1}{3} \sqrt{(x^2 \pm a^2)^3}$.
157. $\int \sqrt{(x^2 \pm a^2)^3} dx = \frac{1}{4} \left[x \sqrt{(x^2 \pm a^2)^3} \pm \frac{3a^2 x}{2} \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2} + \frac{3a^4}{2} \log \left(x + \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2} \right) \right]$.
158. $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{(x^2 \pm a^2)^3}} = \frac{\pm x}{a^2 \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}}$.
159. $\int \frac{x}{\sqrt{(x^2 \pm a^2)^3}} dx = \frac{-1}{\sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}}$.
160. $\int x \sqrt{(x^2 \pm a^2)^3} dx = \frac{1}{5} \sqrt{(x^2 \pm a^2)^5}$.
161. $\int x^2 \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2} dx = \frac{x}{4} \sqrt{(x^2 \pm a^2)^3} \mp \frac{a^2}{8} x \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2} - \frac{a^4}{8} \log \left(x + \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2} \right)$.

-
162. $\int x^3 \sqrt{x^2 + a^2} dx = \frac{1}{15} (3x^2 - 2a^2) \sqrt{(x^2 + a^2)^3}.$
163. $\int x^3 \sqrt{x^2 - a^2} dx = \frac{1}{5} \sqrt{(x^2 - a^2)^5} + \frac{a^2}{3} \sqrt{(x^2 - a^2)^3}.$
164. $\int \frac{x^2}{\sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}} dx = \frac{x}{2} \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2} \mp \frac{a^2}{2} \log \left(x + \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2} \right).$
165. $\int \frac{x^3}{\sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}} dx = \frac{1}{3} \sqrt{(x^2 \pm a^2)^3} \mp a^2 \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}.$
166. $\int \frac{dx}{x^2 \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}} dx = \mp \frac{\sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}}{a^2 x}.$
167. $\int \frac{dx}{x^3 \sqrt{x^2 + a^2}} dx = -\frac{\sqrt{x^2 + a^2}}{2a^2 x^2} + \frac{1}{2a^3} \log \left(\frac{a + \sqrt{x^2 + a^2}}{x} \right).$
168. $\int \frac{dx}{x^3 \sqrt{x^2 - a^2}} dx = \frac{\sqrt{x^2 - a^2}}{2a^2 x^2} + \frac{1}{2|a|^3} \sec^{-1} \frac{x}{a}.$
169. $\int x^2 \sqrt{(x^2 \pm a^2)^3} dx = \frac{x}{6} \sqrt{(x^2 \pm a^2)^5} \mp \frac{a^2 x}{24} \sqrt{(x^2 \pm a^2)^3} - \frac{a^4 x}{16} \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}$
 $\mp \frac{a^6}{16} \log \left(x + \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2} \right).$
170. $\int x^3 \sqrt{(x^2 \pm a^2)^3} dx = \frac{1}{7} \sqrt{(x^2 \pm a^2)^7} \mp \frac{a^2}{5} \sqrt{(x^2 \pm a^2)^5}.$
171. $\int \frac{\sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}}{x^2} dx = -\frac{\sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}}{x} + \log \left(x + \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2} \right).$
172. $\int \frac{\sqrt{x^2 + a^2}}{x^3} dx = -\frac{\sqrt{x^2 + a^2}}{2x^2} - \frac{1}{2a} \log \left(\frac{a + \sqrt{x^2 + a^2}}{x} \right).$
173. $\int \frac{\sqrt{x^2 - a^2}}{x^3} dx = -\frac{\sqrt{x^2 - a^2}}{2x^2} + \frac{1}{2|a|} \sec^{-1} \frac{x}{a}.$
174. $\int \frac{\sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}}{x^4} dx = \mp \frac{\sqrt{(x^2 \pm a^2)^3}}{3a^2 x^3}.$
175. $\int \frac{x^2 dx}{\sqrt{(x^2 \pm a^2)^3}} = -\frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}} + \log \left(x + \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2} \right).$
176. $\int \frac{x^3 dx}{\sqrt{(x^2 \pm a^2)^3}} = \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2} \pm \frac{a^2}{\sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}}.$
177. $\int \frac{dx}{x \sqrt{(x^2 + a^2)^3}} = \frac{1}{a^2 \sqrt{x^2 + a^2}} - \frac{1}{a^3} \log \left(\frac{a + \sqrt{x^2 + a^2}}{x} \right).$
178. $\int \frac{dx}{x \sqrt{(x^2 - a^2)^3}} = -\frac{1}{a^2 \sqrt{x^2 - a^2}} - \frac{1}{|a|^3} \sec^{-1} \frac{x}{a}.$
179. $\int \frac{dx}{x^2 \sqrt{(x^2 \pm a^2)^3}} = -\frac{1}{a^4} \left[\frac{\sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}}{x} + \frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}} \right].$
180. $\int \frac{dx}{x^3 \sqrt{(x^2 + a^2)^3}} = -\frac{3 + a^2}{2a^4 \sqrt{x^2 + a^2}} + \frac{3}{2a^5} \log \left(\frac{a + \sqrt{x^2 + a^2}}{x} \right).$
181. $\int \frac{dx}{x^3 \sqrt{(x^2 - a^2)^3}} = \frac{1}{2a^2 x^2 \sqrt{x^2 - a^2}} - \frac{3}{2a^4 \sqrt{x^2 - a^2}} - \frac{3}{2|a|^5} \sec^{-1} \frac{x}{a}.$
182. $\int \frac{x^m dx}{\sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}} = \frac{1}{m} x^{m-1} \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2} \mp \frac{m-1}{m} a^2 \int \frac{x^{m-2}}{\sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}} dx.$

$$183. \int \frac{x^{2m} dx}{\sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}} = \frac{(2m)!}{2^{2m}(m!)^2} \left[\sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2} \sum_{r=1}^m \frac{r!(r-1)!}{(2r)!} (\mp a^2)^{m-r} (2x)^{2r-1} + (\mp a^2)^m \log \left(x + \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2} \right) \right].$$

$$184. \int \frac{x^{2m+1} dx}{\sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}} = \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2} \sum_{r=0}^m \frac{(2r)!(m!)^2}{(2m+1)!(r!)^2} (\mp 4a^2)^{m-r} x^{2r}.$$

$$185. \int \frac{dx}{x^m \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}} = \mp \frac{\sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}}{(m-1)a^2 x^{m-1}} \mp \frac{(m-2)}{(m-1)a^2} \int \frac{dx}{x^{m-2} \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}}.$$

$$186. \int \frac{dx}{x^{2m} \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}} = \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2} \sum_{r=0}^{m-1} \frac{(m-1)!m!(2r)!2^{2m-2r-1}}{(r!)^2(2m)!(\mp a^2)^{m-r} x^{2r+1}}.$$

$$187. \int \frac{dx}{x^{2m+1} \sqrt{x^2 + a^2}} = \frac{(2m)!}{(m!)^2} \left[\frac{\sqrt{x^2 + a^2}}{a^2} \sum_{r=1}^m (-1)^{m-r+1} \frac{r!(r-1)!}{2(2r)!(4a^2)^{m-r} x^{2r}} + \frac{(-1)^{m+1}}{2^{2m} a^{2m+1}} \log \left(\frac{\sqrt{x^2 + a^2} + a}{x} \right) \right].$$

$$188. \int \frac{dx}{x^{2m+1} \sqrt{x^2 - a^2}} = \frac{(2m)!}{(m!)^2} \left[\frac{\sqrt{x^2 - a^2}}{a^2} \sum_{r=1}^m \frac{r!(r-1)!}{2(2r)!(4a^2)^{m-r} x^{2r}} + \frac{1}{2^{2m} |a|^{2m+1}} \sec^{-1} \frac{x}{a} \right].$$

$$189. \int \frac{dx}{(x-a)\sqrt{x^2 - a^2}} = -\frac{\sqrt{x^2 - a^2}}{a(x-a)}.$$

$$190. \int \frac{dx}{(x+a)\sqrt{x^2 - a^2}} = \frac{\sqrt{x^2 - a^2}}{a(x+a)}.$$

5.4.12 FORMS CONTAINING $\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}$

$$191. \int \sqrt{a^2 - x^2} dx = \frac{1}{2} \left(x \sqrt{a^2 - x^2} + a^2 \sin^{-1} \frac{x}{|a|} \right).$$

$$192. \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} = \sin^{-1} \frac{x}{|a|} = -\cos^{-1} \frac{x}{|a|}.$$

$$193. \int \frac{dx}{x \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} = -\frac{1}{a} \log \left(\frac{a + \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}{x} \right).$$

$$194. \int \frac{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}{x} dx = \sqrt{a^2 - x^2} - a \log \left(\frac{a + \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}{x} \right).$$

$$195. \int \frac{x}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} dx = -\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}.$$

$$196. \int x \sqrt{a^2 - x^2} dx = -\frac{1}{3} \sqrt{(a^2 - x^2)^3}.$$

$$197. \int \sqrt{(a^2 - x^2)^3} dx = \frac{1}{4} \left(x \sqrt{(a^2 - x^2)^3} + \frac{3a^2 x}{2} \sqrt{a^2 - x^2} + \frac{3a^4}{2} \sin^{-1} \frac{x}{|a|} \right).$$

$$198. \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{(a^2 - x^2)^3}} = \frac{x}{a^2 \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}.$$

$$199. \int \frac{x}{\sqrt{(a^2 - x^2)^3}} dx = \frac{1}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}.$$

$$\begin{aligned}
200. \int x \sqrt{(a^2 - x^2)^3} dx &= -\frac{1}{5} \sqrt{(a^2 - x^2)^5}. \\
201. \int x^2 \sqrt{a^2 - x^2} dx &= -\frac{x}{4} \sqrt{(a^2 - x^2)^3} + \frac{a^2}{8} \left(x \sqrt{a^2 - x^2} + a^2 \sin^{-1} \frac{x}{|a|} \right). \\
202. \int x^3 \sqrt{a^2 - x^2} dx &= \left(-\frac{1}{5} x^2 - \frac{2}{15} a^2 \right) \sqrt{(a^2 - x^2)^3}. \\
203. \int x^2 \sqrt{(a^2 - x^2)^3} dx &= -\frac{1}{6} x \sqrt{(a^2 - x^2)^5} + \frac{a^2 x}{24} \sqrt{(a^2 - x^2)^3} \\
&\quad + \frac{a^4 x}{16} \sqrt{a^2 - x^2} + \frac{a^6}{16} \sin^{-1} \frac{x}{|a|}. \\
204. \int x^3 \sqrt{(a^2 - x^2)^3} dx &= \frac{1}{7} \sqrt{(a^2 - x^2)^7} - \frac{a^2}{5} \sqrt{(a^2 - x^2)^5}. \\
205. \int \frac{x^2}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} dx &= -\frac{x}{2} \sqrt{a^2 - x^2} + \frac{a^2}{2} \sin^{-1} \frac{x}{|a|}. \\
206. \int \frac{dx}{x^2 \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} &= -\frac{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}{a^2 x}. \\
207. \int \frac{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}{x^2} dx &= -\frac{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}{x} - \sin^{-1} \frac{x}{|a|}. \\
208. \int \frac{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}{x^3} dx &= -\frac{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}{2x^2} + \frac{1}{2a} \log \left(\frac{a + \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}{x} \right). \\
209. \int \frac{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}{x^4} dx &= -\frac{\sqrt{(a^2 - x^2)^3}}{3a^2 x^3}. \\
210. \int \frac{x^2 dx}{\sqrt{(a^2 - x^2)^3}} &= \frac{x}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} - \sin^{-1} \frac{x}{|a|}. \\
211. \int \frac{x^3 dx}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} &= -\frac{2}{3} \sqrt{(a^2 - x^2)^3} - x^2 \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}. \\
212. \int \frac{x^3 dx}{\sqrt{(a^2 - x^2)^3}} &= 2\sqrt{a^2 - x^2} + \frac{x^2}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} = \frac{a^2}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} + \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}. \\
213. \int \frac{dx}{x^3 \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} &= -\frac{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}{2a^2 x^2} - \frac{1}{2a^3} \log \left(\frac{a + \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}{x} \right). \\
214. \int \frac{dx}{x \sqrt{(a^2 - x^2)^3}} &= \frac{1}{a^2 \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} - \frac{1}{a^3} \log \left(\frac{a + \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}{x} \right). \\
215. \int \frac{dx}{x^2 \sqrt{(a^2 - x^2)^3}} &= \frac{1}{a^4} \left(-\frac{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}{x} + \frac{x}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} \right). \\
216. \int \frac{dx}{x^3 \sqrt{(a^2 - x^2)^3}} &= \frac{3 - a^2}{2a^4 \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} - \frac{3}{2a^5} \log \left(\frac{a + \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}{x} \right). \\
217. \int \frac{x^m}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} dx &= -\frac{x^{m-1} \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}{m} + \frac{(m-1)a^2}{m} \int \frac{x^{m-2}}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} dx. \\
218. \int \frac{x^{2m}}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} dx &= \frac{(2m)!}{(m!)^2} \left[-\sqrt{a^2 - x^2} \sum_{r=1}^m \frac{r!(r-1)!}{2^{2m-2r+1}(2r)!} a^{2m-2r} x^{2r-1} \right. \\
&\quad \left. + \frac{a^{2m}}{2^{2m}} \sin^{-1} \frac{x}{|a|} \right].
\end{aligned}$$

219. $\int \frac{x^{2m+1}}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} dx = -\sqrt{a^2 - x^2} \sum_{r=0}^m \frac{(2r)!(m!)^2}{(2m+1)!(r!)^2} (4a^2)^{m-r} x^{2r}.$
220. $\int \frac{dx}{x^m \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} = -\frac{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}{(m-1)a^2 x^{m-1}} + \frac{(m-2)}{(m-1)a^2} \int \frac{dx}{x^{m-2} \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}.$
221. $\int \frac{dx}{x^{2m} \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} = -\sqrt{a^2 - x^2} \sum_{r=0}^{m-1} \frac{(m-1)!m!(2r)!2^{2m-2r-1}}{(r!)^2(2m)!a^{2m-2r} x^{2r+1}}.$
222. $\int \frac{dx}{x^{2m+1} \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} = \frac{(2m)!}{(m!)^2} \left[-\frac{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}{a^2} \sum_{r=1}^m \frac{r!(r-1)!}{2(2r)!(4a^2)^{m-r} x^{2r}} + \frac{1}{2^{2m} a^{2m+1}} \log \left(\frac{a - \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}{x} \right) \right].$
223. $\int \frac{dx}{(b^2 - x^2)\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2b\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}} \log \left(\frac{(b\sqrt{a^2 - x^2} + x\sqrt{a^2 - b^2})^2}{b^2 - x^2} \right), & a^2 > b^2, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{1}{b\sqrt{b^2 - a^2}} \tan^{-1} \frac{x\sqrt{b^2 - a^2}}{b\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}, & b^2 > a^2. \end{cases}$
224. $\int \frac{dx}{(b^2 + x^2)\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} = \frac{1}{b\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}} \tan^{-1} \frac{x\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}{b\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}.$
225. $\int \frac{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}{b^2 + x^2} dx = \frac{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}{|b|} \sin^{-1} \frac{x\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}{|a|\sqrt{x^2 + b^2}} - \sin^{-1} \frac{x}{|a|}, \quad b^2 > a^2.$

5.4.13 FORMS CONTAINING $\sqrt{a + bx + cx^2}$

$$X = a + bx + cx^2, \quad q = 4ac - b^2, \quad \text{and} \quad k = 4c/q.$$

$$\text{If } q = 0, \text{ then } \sqrt{X} = \sqrt{c} \left| x + \frac{b}{2c} \right|.$$

226. $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{X}} = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\sqrt{c}} \log \left(\frac{2\sqrt{cX} + 2cx + b}{\sqrt{q}} \right), & c > 0, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{c}} \sinh^{-1} \frac{2cx + b}{\sqrt{q}}, & c > 0, \\ \text{or} \\ -\frac{1}{\sqrt{-c}} \sin^{-1} \frac{2cx + b}{\sqrt{-q}}, & c < 0. \end{cases}$
227. $\int \frac{dx}{X\sqrt{X}} = \frac{2(2cx + b)}{q\sqrt{X}}.$
228. $\int \frac{dx}{X^2\sqrt{X}} = \frac{2(2cx + b)}{3q\sqrt{X}} \left(\frac{1}{X} + 2k \right).$
229. $\int \frac{dx}{X^n\sqrt{X}} = \begin{cases} \frac{2(2cx + b)\sqrt{X}}{(2n-1)qX^n} + \frac{2k(n-1)}{2n-1} \int \frac{dx}{X^{n-1}\sqrt{X}}, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{(2cx + b)(n!)(n-1)!4^n k^{n-1}}{q(2n)!\sqrt{X}} \sum_{r=0}^{n-1} \frac{(2r)!}{(4kX)^r (r!)^2}. \end{cases}$

$$\begin{aligned}
230. \int \sqrt{X} dx &= \frac{(2cx + b)\sqrt{X}}{4c} + \frac{1}{2k} \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{X}}. \\
231. \int X\sqrt{X} dx &= \frac{(2cx + b)\sqrt{X}}{8c} \left(X + \frac{3}{2k} \right) + \frac{3}{8k^2} \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{X}}. \\
232. \int X^2\sqrt{X} dx &= \frac{(2cx + b)\sqrt{X}}{12c} \left(X^2 + \frac{5X}{4k} + \frac{15}{8k^2} \right) + \frac{5}{16k^3} \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{X}}. \\
233. \int X^n \sqrt{X} dx &= \begin{cases} \frac{(2cx + b)X^n\sqrt{X}}{4(n+1)c} + \frac{2n+1}{2(n+1)k} \int X^{n-1}\sqrt{X} dx, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{(2n+2)!}{[(n+1)!]^2 (4k)^{n+1}} \left[\frac{k(2cx + b)\sqrt{X}}{c} \sum_{r=0}^n \frac{r!(r+1)!(4kX)^r}{(2r+2)!} + \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{X}} \right]. \end{cases} \\
234. \int \frac{x dx}{\sqrt{X}} &= \frac{\sqrt{X}}{c} - \frac{b}{2c} \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{X}}. \\
235. \int \frac{x dx}{X\sqrt{X}} &= -\frac{2(bx + 2a)}{q\sqrt{X}}. \\
236. \int \frac{x dx}{X^n\sqrt{X}} &= -\frac{\sqrt{X}}{(2n-1)cX^n} - \frac{b}{2c} \int \frac{dx}{X^n\sqrt{X}}. \\
237. \int \frac{x^2 dx}{\sqrt{X}} &= \left(\frac{x}{2c} - \frac{3b}{4c^2} \right) \sqrt{X} + \frac{3b^2 - 4ac}{8c^2} \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{X}}. \\
238. \int \frac{x^2 dx}{X\sqrt{X}} &= \frac{(2b^2 - 4ac)x + 2ab}{cq\sqrt{X}} + \frac{1}{c} \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{X}}. \\
239. \int \frac{x^2 dx}{X^n\sqrt{X}} &= \frac{(2b^2 - 4ac)x + 2ab}{(2n-1)cqX^{n-1}\sqrt{X}} + \frac{4ac + (2n-3)b^2}{(2n-1)cq} \int \frac{dx}{X^{n-1}\sqrt{X}}. \\
240. \int \frac{x^3 dx}{\sqrt{X}} &= \left(\frac{x^2}{3c} - \frac{5bx}{12c^2} + \frac{5b^2}{8c^3} - \frac{2a}{3c^2} \right) \sqrt{X} + \left(\frac{3ab}{4c^2} - \frac{5b^3}{16c^3} \right) \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{X}}. \\
241. \int \frac{x^n dx}{\sqrt{X}} &= \frac{1}{nc} x^{n-1}\sqrt{X} - \frac{(2n-1)b}{2nc} \int \frac{x^{n-1} dx}{\sqrt{X}} - \frac{(n-1)a}{nc} \int \frac{x^{n-2} dx}{\sqrt{X}}. \\
242. \int x\sqrt{X} dx &= \frac{X\sqrt{X}}{3c} - \frac{b(2cx + b)}{8c^2} \sqrt{X} - \frac{b}{4ck} \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{X}}. \\
243. \int xX\sqrt{X} dx &= \frac{X^2\sqrt{X}}{5c} - \frac{b}{2c} \int X\sqrt{X} dx. \\
244. \int xX^n\sqrt{X} dx &= \frac{X^{n+1}\sqrt{X}}{(2n+3)c} - \frac{b}{2c} \int X^n\sqrt{X} dx. \\
245. \int x^2\sqrt{X} dx &= \left(x - \frac{5b}{6c} \right) \frac{X\sqrt{X}}{4c} + \frac{5b^2 - 4ac}{16c^2} \int \sqrt{X} dx. \\
246. \int \frac{dx}{x\sqrt{X}} &= \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\sqrt{-a}} \sin^{-1} \left(\frac{bx + 2a}{|x|\sqrt{-q}} \right), & a < 0, \\ \text{or} \\ -\frac{2\sqrt{X}}{bx}, & a = 0, \\ \text{or} \\ -\frac{1}{\sqrt{a}} \log \left(\frac{2\sqrt{aX} + bx + 2a}{x} \right), & a > 0. \end{cases}
\end{aligned}$$

$$247. \int \frac{dx}{x^2\sqrt{X}} = -\frac{\sqrt{X}}{ax} - \frac{b}{2a} \int \frac{dx}{x\sqrt{X}}.$$

$$248. \int \frac{\sqrt{X}}{x} dx = \sqrt{X} + \frac{b}{2} \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{X}} + a \int \frac{dx}{x\sqrt{X}}.$$

$$249. \int \frac{\sqrt{X}}{x^2} dx = -\frac{\sqrt{X}}{x} + \frac{b}{2} \int \frac{dx}{x\sqrt{X}} + c \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{X}}.$$

5.4.14 FORMS CONTAINING $\sqrt{2ax - x^2}$

$$250. \int \sqrt{2ax - x^2} dx = \frac{1}{2} \left[(x - a)\sqrt{2ax - x^2} + a^2 \sin^{-1} \frac{x - a}{|a|} \right].$$

$$251. \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{2ax - x^2}} = \begin{cases} \cos^{-1} \left(\frac{a - x}{|a|} \right), \\ \text{or} \\ \sin^{-1} \left(\frac{x - a}{|a|} \right). \end{cases}$$

$$252. \int x^n \sqrt{2ax - x^2} dx = \begin{cases} -\frac{x^{n-1}\sqrt{(2ax - x^2)^3}}{n+2} + \frac{(2n+1)a}{n+2} \int x^{n-1}\sqrt{2ax - x^2} dx, \\ \text{or} \\ \sqrt{2ax - x^2} \left[\frac{x^{n+1}}{n+2} - \sum_{r=0}^n \frac{(2n+1)!(r!)^2 a^{n-r+1}}{2^{n-r}(2r)!(n!)^2} x^r \right] + \frac{(2n+1)!a^{n+2}}{2^n n!(n+2)!} \sin^{-1} \left(\frac{x - a}{|a|} \right). \end{cases}$$

$$253. \int \frac{\sqrt{2ax - x^2}}{x^n} dx = \frac{\sqrt{(2ax - x^2)^3}}{(3 - 2n)ax^n} + \frac{n - 3}{(2n - 3)a} \int \frac{\sqrt{2ax - x^2}}{x^{n-1}} dx.$$

$$254. \int \frac{x^n dx}{\sqrt{2ax - x^2}} = \begin{cases} -\frac{x^{n-1}\sqrt{2ax - x^2}}{n} + \frac{a(2n-1)}{n} \int \frac{x^{n-1}}{\sqrt{2ax - x^2}} dx, \\ \text{or} \\ -\sqrt{2ax - x^2} \sum_{r=1}^n \frac{(2n)!r!(r-1)!a^{n-r}}{2^{n-r}(2r)!(n!)^2} x^{r-1} + \frac{(2n)!a^n}{2^n(n!)^2} \sin^{-1} \left(\frac{x - a}{|a|} \right). \end{cases}$$

$$255. \int \frac{dx}{x^n \sqrt{2ax - x^2}} = \begin{cases} \frac{\sqrt{2ax - x^2}}{a(1-2n)x^n} + \frac{n-1}{(2n-1)a} \int \frac{dx}{x^{n-1}\sqrt{2ax - x^2}}, \\ \text{or} \\ -\sqrt{2ax - x^2} \sum_{r=0}^{n-1} \frac{2^{n-r}(n-1)!n!(2r)!}{(2n)!(r!)^2 a^{n-r} x^{r+1}}. \end{cases}$$

$$256. \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{(2ax - x^2)^3}} = \frac{x - a}{a^2 \sqrt{2ax - x^2}}.$$

$$257. \int \frac{x dx}{\sqrt{(2ax - x^2)^3}} = \frac{x}{a \sqrt{2ax - x^2}}.$$

5.4.15 MISCELLANEOUS ALGEBRAIC FORMS

$$258. \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{2ax + x^2}} = \log \left(x + a + \sqrt{2ax + x^2} \right).$$

$$259. \int \sqrt{ax^2 + c} dx = \begin{cases} \frac{x}{2} \sqrt{ax^2 + c} + \frac{c}{2\sqrt{-a}} \sin^{-1} \left(x \sqrt{-\frac{a}{c}} \right), & a < 0, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{x}{2} \sqrt{ax^2 + c} + \frac{c}{2\sqrt{a}} \log \left(x\sqrt{a} + \sqrt{ax^2 + c} \right), & a > 0. \end{cases}$$

$$260. \int \sqrt{\frac{1+x}{1-x}} dx = \sin^{-1} x - \sqrt{1-x^2}.$$

$$261. \int \frac{dx}{x\sqrt{ax^n + c}} = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{n\sqrt{c}} \log \frac{\sqrt{ax^n + c} - \sqrt{c}}{\sqrt{ax^n + c} + \sqrt{c}}, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{2}{n\sqrt{c}} \log \frac{\sqrt{ax^n + c} - \sqrt{c}}{\sqrt{x^n}}, & c > 0, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{2}{n\sqrt{-c}} \sec^{-1} \sqrt{-\frac{ax^n}{c}}, & c < 0. \end{cases}$$

$$262. \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{ax^2 + c}} = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\sqrt{-a}} \sin^{-1} \left(x \sqrt{-\frac{a}{c}} \right), & a < 0, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{a}} \log \left(x\sqrt{a} + \sqrt{ax^2 + c} \right), & a > 0. \end{cases}$$

$$263. \int (ax^2 + c)^{m+1/2} dx = \begin{cases} \frac{x(ax^2 + c)^{m+1/2}}{2(m+1)} + \frac{(2m+1)c}{2(m+1)} \int (ax^2 + c)^{m-1/2} dx, \\ \text{or} \\ x\sqrt{ax^2 + c} \sum_{r=0}^m \frac{(2m+1)!(r!)^2 c^{m-r}}{2^{2m-2r+1} m!(m+1)!(2r+1)!} (ax^2 + c)^r \\ + \frac{(2m+1)!c^{m+1}}{2^{2m+1} m!(m+1)!} \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{ax^2 + c}}. \end{cases}$$

$$264. \int x(ax^2 + c)^{m+1/2} dx = \frac{(ax^2 + c)^{m+3/2}}{(2m+3)a}.$$

$$265. \int \frac{(ax^2 + c)^{m+1/2}}{x} dx = \begin{cases} \frac{(ax^2 + c)^{m+1/2}}{2m+1} + c \int \frac{(ax^2 + c)^{m-1/2}}{x} dx, \\ \text{or} \\ \sqrt{ax^2 + c} \sum_{r=0}^m \frac{c^{m-r} (ax^2 + c)^r}{2r+1} + c^{m+1} \int \frac{dx}{x\sqrt{ax^2 + c}}. \end{cases}$$

$$266. \int \frac{dx}{(ax^2 + c)^{m+1/2}} = \begin{cases} \frac{x}{(2m-1)c(ax^2 + c)^{m-1/2}} + \frac{2m-2}{(2m-1)c} \int \frac{dx}{(ax^2 + c)^{m-1/2}}, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{x}{\sqrt{ax^2 + c}} \sum_{r=0}^{m-1} \frac{2^{2m-2r-1} (m-1)!m!(2r)!}{(2m)!(r!)^2 c^{m-r} (ax^2 + c)^r}. \end{cases}$$

$$267. \int \frac{dx}{x^m \sqrt{ax^2 + c}} = -\frac{\sqrt{ax^2 + c}}{(m-1)cx^{m-1}} - \frac{(m-2)a}{(m-1)c} \int \frac{dx}{x^{m-2} \sqrt{ax^2 + c}}, \quad m \neq 1.$$

$$268. \int \frac{1+x^2}{(1-x^2)\sqrt{1+x^4}} dx = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \log \left(\frac{x\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{1+x^4}}{1-x^2} \right).$$

$$269. \int \frac{1-x^2}{(1+x^2)\sqrt{1+x^4}} dx = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \tan^{-1} \frac{x\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{1+x^4}}.$$

$$270. \int \frac{dx}{x\sqrt{x^n+a^2}} = -\frac{2}{na} \log \left(\frac{a + \sqrt{x^n+a^2}}{\sqrt{x^n}} \right).$$

$$271. \int \frac{dx}{x\sqrt{x^n-a^2}} = -\frac{2}{na} \sin^{-1} \frac{a}{\sqrt{x^n}}.$$

$$272. \int \sqrt{\frac{x}{a^3-x^3}} dx = \frac{2}{3} \sin^{-1} \left(\frac{x}{a} \right)^{3/2}.$$

5.4.16 FORMS INVOLVING TRIGONOMETRIC FUNCTIONS

$$273. \int \sin ax dx = -\frac{1}{a} \cos ax.$$

$$274. \int \cos ax dx = \frac{1}{a} \sin ax.$$

$$275. \int \tan ax dx = -\frac{1}{a} \log \cos ax = \frac{1}{a} \log \sec ax.$$

$$276. \int \cot ax dx = \frac{1}{a} \log \sin ax = -\frac{1}{a} \log \csc ax.$$

$$277. \int \sec ax dx = \frac{1}{a} \log (\sec ax + \tan ax) = \frac{1}{a} \log \tan \left(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{ax}{2} \right).$$

$$278. \int \csc ax dx = \frac{1}{a} \log (\csc ax - \cot ax) = \frac{1}{a} \log \tan \frac{ax}{2}.$$

$$279. \int \sin^2 ax dx = \frac{x}{2} - \frac{1}{2a} \cos ax \sin ax = \frac{x}{2} - \frac{1}{4a} \sin 2ax.$$

$$280. \int \sin^3 ax dx = -\frac{1}{3a} (\cos ax)(\sin^2 ax + 2).$$

$$281. \int \sin^4 ax dx = \frac{3x}{8} - \frac{\sin 2ax}{4a} + \frac{\sin 4ax}{32a}.$$

$$282. \int \sin^n ax dx = -\frac{\sin^{n-1} ax \cos ax}{na} + \frac{n-1}{n} \int \sin^{n-2} ax dx.$$

$$283. \int \sin^{2m} ax dx = -\frac{\cos ax}{a} \sum_{r=0}^{m-1} \frac{(2m)!(r!)^2}{2^{2m-2r}(2r+1)!(m!)^2} \sin^{2r+1} ax + \frac{(2m)!}{2^{2m}(m!)^2} x.$$

$$284. \int \sin^{2m+1} ax dx = -\frac{\cos ax}{a} \sum_{r=0}^{m-1} \frac{2^{2m-2r}(m!)^2(2r)!}{(2m+1)!(r!)^2} \sin^{2r} ax.$$

$$285. \int \cos^2 ax dx = \frac{1}{2}x + \frac{1}{2a} \sin ax \cos ax = \frac{1}{2}x + \frac{1}{4a} \sin 2ax.$$

$$286. \int \cos^3 ax dx = \frac{1}{3a} \sin ax (\cos^2 ax + 2).$$

$$287. \int \cos^4 ax dx = \frac{3}{8}x + \frac{\sin 2ax}{4a} + \frac{\sin 4ax}{32a}.$$

$$288. \int \cos^n ax dx = \frac{1}{na} \cos^{n-1} ax \sin ax + \frac{n-1}{n} \int \cos^{n-2} ax dx.$$

$$289. \int \cos^{2m} ax \, dx = \frac{\sin ax}{a} \sum_{r=0}^{m-1} \frac{(2m)!(r!)^2}{2^{2m-2r}(2r+1)!(m!)^2} \cos^{2r+1} ax + \frac{(2m)!}{2^{2m}(m!)^2} x.$$

$$290. \int \cos^{2m+1} ax \, dx = \frac{\sin ax}{a} \sum_{r=0}^m \frac{2^{2m-2r}(m!)^2(2r)!}{(2m+1)!(r!)^2} \cos^{2r} ax.$$

$$291. \int \frac{dx}{\sin^2 ax} = \int \operatorname{cosec}^2 ax \, dx = -\frac{1}{a} \cot ax.$$

$$292. \int \frac{dx}{\sin^m ax} = \int \operatorname{cosec}^m ax \, dx = -\frac{1}{a(m-1)} \frac{\cos ax}{\sin^{m-1} ax} + \frac{m-2}{m-1} \int \frac{dx}{\sin^{m-2} ax}.$$

$$293. \int \frac{dx}{\sin^{2m} ax} = \int \operatorname{cosec}^{2m} ax \, dx = -\frac{1}{a} \cos ax \sum_{r=0}^{m-1} \frac{2^{2m-2r-1}(m-1)!m!(2r)!}{(2m)!(r!)^2 \sin^{2r+1} ax}.$$

$$294. \int \frac{dx}{\sin^{2m+1} ax} = \int \operatorname{cosec}^{2m+1} ax \, dx = -\frac{1}{a} \cos ax \sum_{r=0}^{m-1} \frac{(2m)!(r!)^2}{2^{2m-2r}(2r+1)!(m!)^2 \sin^{2r+2} ax} + \frac{1}{a} \frac{(2m)!}{2^{2m}(m!)^2} \log \tan \frac{ax}{2}.$$

$$295. \int \frac{dx}{\cos^2 ax} = \int \sec^2 ax \, dx = \frac{1}{a} \tan ax.$$

$$296. \int \frac{dx}{\cos^m ax} = \int \sec^m ax \, dx = \frac{1}{a(m-1)} \frac{\sin ax}{\cos^{m-1} ax} + \frac{m-2}{m-1} \int \frac{dx}{\cos^{m-2} ax}.$$

$$297. \int \frac{dx}{\cos^{2m} ax} = \int \sec^{2m} ax \, dx = \frac{1}{a} \sin ax \sum_{r=0}^{m-1} \frac{2^{2m-2r-1}(m-1)!m!(2r)!}{(2m)!(r!)^2 \cos^{2r+1} ax}.$$

$$298. \int \frac{dx}{\cos^{2m+1} ax} = \int \sec^{2m+1} ax \, dx = \frac{1}{a} \frac{(2m)!}{2^{2m}(m!)^2} \log (\sec ax + \tan ax) + \frac{1}{a} \sin ax \sum_{r=0}^{m-1} \frac{(2m)!(r!)^2}{2^{2m-2r}(m!)^2(2r+1)! \cos^{2r+2} ax}.$$

$$299. \int (\sin mx)(\sin nx) \, dx = \frac{\sin(m-n)x}{2(m-n)} - \frac{\sin(m+n)x}{2(m+n)}, \quad m^2 \neq n^2.$$

$$300. \int (\cos mx)(\cos nx) \, dx = \frac{\sin(m-n)x}{2(m-n)} + \frac{\sin(m+n)x}{2(m+n)}, \quad m^2 \neq n^2.$$

$$301. \int (\sin ax)(\cos ax) \, dx = \frac{1}{2a} \sin^2 ax.$$

$$302. \int (\sin mx)(\cos nx) \, dx = -\frac{\cos(m-n)x}{2(m-n)} - \frac{\cos(m+n)x}{2(m+n)}, \quad m^2 \neq n^2.$$

$$303. \int (\sin^2 ax)(\cos^2 ax) \, dx = -\frac{1}{32a} \sin 4ax + \frac{x}{8}.$$

$$304. \int (\sin ax)(\cos^m ax) \, dx = -\frac{\cos^{m+1} ax}{(m+1)a}.$$

$$305. \int (\sin^m ax)(\cos ax) \, dx = \frac{\sin^{m+1} ax}{(m+1)a}.$$

$$306. \int (\cos^m ax)(\sin^n ax) \, dx = \begin{cases} \frac{\cos^{m-1} ax \sin^{n+1} ax}{(m+n)a} + \frac{m-1}{m+n} \int (\cos^{m-2} ax)(\sin^n ax) \, dx, \\ \text{or} \\ -\frac{\cos^{m+1} ax \sin^{n-1} ax}{(m+n)a} + \frac{n-1}{m+n} \int (\cos^m ax)(\sin^{n-2} ax) \, dx. \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
307. \int \frac{\cos^m ax}{\sin^n ax} dx &= \begin{cases} -\frac{\cos^{m+1} ax}{a(n-1)\sin^{n-1} ax} - \frac{m-n+2}{n-1} \int \frac{\cos^m ax}{\sin^{n-2} ax} dx, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{\cos^{m-1} ax}{a(m-n)\sin^{n-1} ax} + \frac{m-1}{m-n} \int \frac{\cos^{m-2} ax}{\sin^n ax} dx. \end{cases} \\
308. \int \frac{\sin^m ax}{\cos^n ax} dx &= \begin{cases} \frac{\sin^{m+1} ax}{a(n-1)\cos^{n-1} ax} - \frac{m-n+2}{n-1} \int \frac{\sin^m ax}{\cos^{n-2} ax} dx, \\ \text{or} \\ -\frac{\sin^{m-1} ax}{a(m-n)\cos^{n-1} ax} + \frac{m-1}{m-n} \int \frac{\sin^{m-2} ax}{\cos^n ax} dx. \end{cases} \\
309. \int \frac{\sin ax}{\cos^2 ax} dx &= \frac{1}{a \cos ax} = \frac{\sec ax}{a}. \\
310. \int \frac{\sin^2 ax}{\cos ax} dx &= -\frac{1}{a} \sin ax + \frac{1}{a} \log \tan \left(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{ax}{2} \right). \\
311. \int \frac{\cos ax}{\sin^2 ax} dx &= -\frac{\csc ax}{a} = -\frac{1}{a \sin ax}. \\
312. \int \frac{dx}{(\sin ax)(\cos ax)} &= \frac{1}{a} \log \tan ax. \\
313. \int \frac{dx}{(\sin ax)(\cos^2 ax)} &= \frac{1}{a} \left(\sec ax + \log \tan \frac{ax}{2} \right). \\
314. \int \frac{dx}{(\sin ax)(\cos^n ax)} &= \frac{1}{a(n-1)\cos^{n-1} ax} + \int \frac{dx}{(\sin ax)(\cos^{n-2} ax)}. \\
315. \int \frac{dx}{(\sin^2 ax)(\cos ax)} &= -\frac{1}{a} \csc ax + \frac{1}{a} \log \tan \left(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{ax}{2} \right). \\
316. \int \frac{dx}{(\sin^2 ax)(\cos^2 ax)} &= -\frac{2}{a} \cot 2ax. \\
317. \int \frac{dx}{\sin^m ax \cos^n ax} &= \begin{cases} -\frac{1}{a(m-1)\sin^{m-1} ax \cos^{n-1} ax} + \frac{m+n-2}{m-1} \int \frac{dx}{\sin^{m-2} ax \cos^n ax}, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{1}{a(n-1)\sin^{m-1} ax \cos^{n-1} ax} + \frac{m+n-2}{n-1} \int \frac{dx}{\sin^m ax \cos^{n-2} ax}. \end{cases} \\
318. \int \sin(a+bx) dx &= -\frac{1}{b} \cos(a+bx). \\
319. \int \cos(a+bx) dx &= \frac{1}{b} \sin(a+bx). \\
320. \int \frac{dx}{1 \pm \sin ax} &= \mp \frac{1}{a} \tan \left(\frac{\pi}{4} \mp \frac{ax}{2} \right). \\
321. \int \frac{dx}{1 + \cos ax} &= \frac{1}{a} \tan \frac{ax}{2}. \\
322. \int \frac{dx}{1 - \cos ax} &= -\frac{1}{a} \cot \frac{ax}{2}. \\
323. \int \frac{dx}{a + b \sin x} &= \begin{cases} \frac{2}{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}} \tan^{-1} \left(\frac{a \tan \frac{x}{2} + b}{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}} \right), \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{b^2 - a^2}} \log \left(\frac{a \tan \frac{x}{2} + b - \sqrt{b^2 - a^2}}{a \tan \frac{x}{2} + b + \sqrt{b^2 - a^2}} \right). \end{cases}
\end{aligned}$$

-
324.
$$\int \frac{dx}{a + b \cos x} = \begin{cases} \frac{2}{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}} \tan^{-1} \frac{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2} \tan \frac{x}{2}}{a + b}, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{b^2 - a^2}} \log \left(\frac{\sqrt{b^2 - a^2} \tan \frac{x}{2} + a + b}{\sqrt{b^2 - a^2} \tan \frac{x}{2} - a - b} \right). \end{cases}$$
325.
$$\int \frac{dx}{a + b \sin x + c \cos x} = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\sqrt{b^2 + c^2 - a^2}} \log \left(\frac{b - \sqrt{b^2 + c^2 - a^2} + (a - c) \tan \frac{x}{2}}{b + \sqrt{b^2 + c^2 - a^2} + (a - c) \tan \frac{x}{2}} \right), & a \neq c, a^2 < b^2 + c^2, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{2}{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2 - c^2}} \tan^{-1} \frac{b + (a - c) \tan \frac{x}{2}}{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2 - c^2}}, & a^2 > b^2 + c^2, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{1}{a} \left[\frac{a - (b + c) \sin x - (b - c) \sin x}{a - (b + c) \sin x + (b - c) \sin x} \right], & a^2 = b^2 + c^2. \end{cases}$$
326.
$$\int \frac{\sin^2 x}{a + b \cos^2 x} dx = \frac{1}{b} \sqrt{\frac{a+b}{a}} \tan^{-1} \left(\sqrt{\frac{a}{a+b}} \tan x \right) - \frac{x}{b}, \quad ab > 0, |a| > |b|.$$
327.
$$\int \frac{dx}{a^2 \cos^2 x + b^2 \sin^2 x} = \frac{1}{ab} \tan^{-1} \left(\frac{b \tan x}{a} \right).$$
328.
$$\int \frac{\cos^2 cx}{a^2 + b^2 \sin^2 cx} dx = \frac{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}{ab^2 c} \tan^{-1} \frac{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2} \tan cx}{a} - \frac{x}{b^2}.$$
329.
$$\int \frac{\sin cx \cos cx}{a \cos^2 cx + b \sin^2 cx} dx = \frac{1}{2c(b-a)} \log (a \cos^2 cx + b \sin^2 cx), \quad a \neq b.$$
330.
$$\int \frac{\cos cx}{a \cos cx + b \sin cx} dx = \int \frac{dx}{a + b \tan cx} = \frac{1}{c(a^2 + b^2)} [acx + b \log (a \cos cx + b \sin cx)].$$
331.
$$\int \frac{\sin cx}{a \cos cx + b \sin cx} dx = \int \frac{dx}{b + a \cot cx} = \frac{1}{c(a^2 + b^2)} [bcx - a \log (a \cos cx + b \sin cx)].$$
332.
$$\int \frac{dx}{a \cos^2 x + 2b \cos x \sin x + c \sin^2 x} = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2\sqrt{b^2 - ac}} \log \left(\frac{c \tan x + b - \sqrt{b^2 - ac}}{c \tan x + b + \sqrt{b^2 - ac}} \right), & b^2 > ac, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{ac - b^2}} \tan^{-1} \left(\frac{c \tan x + b}{\sqrt{ac - b^2}} \right), & b^2 < ac, \\ \text{or} \\ -\frac{1}{c \tan x + b}, & b^2 = ac. \end{cases}$$
333.
$$\int \frac{\sin ax}{1 \pm \sin ax} dx = \pm x + \frac{1}{a} \tan \left(\frac{\pi}{4} \mp \frac{ax}{2} \right).$$
334.
$$\int \frac{dx}{(\sin ax)(1 \pm \sin ax)} = \frac{1}{a} \tan \left(\frac{\pi}{4} \mp \frac{ax}{2} \right) + \frac{1}{a} \log \tan \frac{ax}{2}.$$
335.
$$\int \frac{dx}{(1 + \sin ax)^2} = -\frac{1}{2a} \tan \left(\frac{\pi}{4} - \frac{ax}{2} \right) - \frac{1}{6a} \tan^3 \left(\frac{\pi}{4} - \frac{ax}{2} \right).$$

-
336. $\int \frac{dx}{(1 - \sin ax)^2} = \frac{1}{2a} \cot\left(\frac{\pi}{4} - \frac{ax}{2}\right) + \frac{1}{6a} \cot^3\left(\frac{\pi}{4} - \frac{ax}{2}\right).$
337. $\int \frac{\sin ax}{(1 + \sin ax)^2} dx = -\frac{1}{2a} \tan\left(\frac{\pi}{4} - \frac{ax}{2}\right) + \frac{1}{6a} \tan^3\left(\frac{\pi}{4} - \frac{ax}{2}\right).$
338. $\int \frac{\sin ax}{(1 - \sin ax)^2} dx = -\frac{1}{2a} \cot\left(\frac{\pi}{4} - \frac{ax}{2}\right) + \frac{1}{6a} \cot^3\left(\frac{\pi}{4} - \frac{ax}{2}\right).$
339. $\int \frac{\sin x}{a + b \sin x} dx = \frac{x}{b} - \frac{a}{b} \int \frac{dx}{a + b \sin x}.$
340. $\int \frac{dx}{(\sin x)(a + b \sin x)} = \frac{1}{a} \log \tan \frac{x}{2} - \frac{b}{a} \int \frac{dx}{a + b \sin x}.$
341. $\int \frac{dx}{(a + b \sin x)^2} = \begin{cases} \frac{b \cos x}{(a^2 - b^2)(a + b \sin x)} + \frac{a}{a^2 - b^2} \int \frac{dx}{a + b \sin x}, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{a \cos x}{(b^2 - a^2)(a + b \sin x)} + \frac{b}{b^2 - a^2} \int \frac{dx}{a + b \sin x}. \end{cases}$
342. $\int \frac{dx}{a^2 + b^2 \sin^2 cx} = \frac{1}{ac\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}} \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2} \tan cx}{a}\right).$
343. $\int \frac{dx}{a^2 - b^2 \sin^2 cx} = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{ac\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}} \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2} \tan cx}{a}\right), & a^2 > b^2, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{1}{2ac\sqrt{b^2 - a^2}} \log\left(\frac{\sqrt{b^2 - a^2} \tan cx + a}{\sqrt{b^2 - a^2} \tan cx - a}\right), & a^2 < b^2. \end{cases}$
344. $\int \frac{\cos ax}{1 + \cos ax} dx = x - \frac{1}{a} \tan \frac{ax}{2}.$
345. $\int \frac{\cos ax}{1 - \cos ax} dx = -x - \frac{1}{a} \cot \frac{ax}{2}.$
346. $\int \frac{dx}{(\cos ax)(1 + \cos ax)} = \frac{1}{a} \log \tan\left(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{ax}{2}\right) - \frac{1}{a} \tan \frac{ax}{2}.$
347. $\int \frac{dx}{(\cos ax)(1 - \cos ax)} = \frac{1}{a} \log \tan\left(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{ax}{2}\right) - \frac{1}{a} \cot \frac{ax}{2}.$
348. $\int \frac{dx}{(1 + \cos ax)^2} = \frac{1}{2a} \tan \frac{ax}{2} + \frac{1}{6a} \tan^3 \frac{ax}{2}.$
349. $\int \frac{dx}{(1 - \cos ax)^2} = -\frac{1}{2a} \cot \frac{ax}{2} - \frac{1}{6a} \cot^3 \frac{ax}{2}.$
350. $\int \frac{\cos ax}{(1 + \cos ax)^2} dx = \frac{1}{2a} \tan \frac{ax}{2} - \frac{1}{6a} \tan^3 \frac{ax}{2}.$
351. $\int \frac{\cos ax}{(1 - \cos ax)^2} dx = \frac{1}{2a} \cot \frac{ax}{2} - \frac{1}{6a} \cot^3 \frac{ax}{2}.$
352. $\int \frac{\cos x}{a + b \cos x} dx = \frac{x}{b} - \frac{a}{b} \int \frac{dx}{a + b \cos x}.$
353. $\int \frac{dx}{(\cos x)(a + b \cos x)} = \frac{1}{a} \log \tan\left(\frac{x}{2} + \frac{\pi}{4}\right) - \frac{b}{a} \int \frac{dx}{a + b \cos x}.$
354. $\int \frac{dx}{(a + b \cos x)^2} = \frac{b \sin x}{(b^2 - a^2)(a + b \cos x)} - \frac{a}{b^2 - a^2} \int \frac{dx}{a + b \cos x}.$
355. $\int \frac{\cos x}{(a + b \cos x)^2} dx = \frac{a \sin x}{(a^2 - b^2)(a + b \cos x)} - \frac{b}{a^2 - b^2} \int \frac{dx}{a + b \cos x}.$

356. $\int \frac{dx}{a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \cos cx} = \frac{2}{c(a^2 - b^2)} \tan^{-1} \left(\frac{a+b}{a-b} \tan \frac{cx}{2} \right).$

357. $\int \frac{dx}{a^2 + b^2 \cos^2 cx} = \frac{1}{ac\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}} \tan^{-1} \frac{a \tan cx}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}.$

358. $\int \frac{dx}{a^2 - b^2 \cos^2 cx} = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{ac\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}} \tan^{-1} \left(\frac{a \tan cx}{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}} \right), & a^2 > b^2, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{1}{2ac\sqrt{b^2 - a^2}} \log \left(\frac{a \tan cx - \sqrt{b^2 - a^2}}{a \tan cx + \sqrt{b^2 - a^2}} \right), & b^2 > a^2. \end{cases}$

359. $\int \frac{\sin ax}{1 \pm \cos ax} dx = \mp \frac{1}{a} \log(1 \pm \cos ax).$

360. $\int \frac{\cos ax}{1 \pm \sin ax} dx = \pm \frac{1}{a} \log(1 \pm \sin ax).$

361. $\int \frac{dx}{(\sin ax)(1 \pm \cos ax)} = \pm \frac{1}{2a(1 \pm \cos ax)} + \frac{1}{2a} \log \tan \frac{ax}{2}.$

362. $\int \frac{dx}{(\cos ax)(1 \pm \sin ax)} = \mp \frac{1}{2a(1 \pm \sin ax)} + \frac{1}{2a} \log \tan \left(\frac{ax}{2} + \frac{\pi}{4} \right).$

363. $\int \frac{\sin ax}{(\cos ax)(1 \pm \cos ax)} dx = \frac{1}{a} \log(\sec ax \pm 1).$

364. $\int \frac{\cos ax}{(\sin ax)(1 \pm \sin ax)} dx = -\frac{1}{a} \log(\csc ax \pm 1).$

365. $\int \frac{\sin ax}{(\cos ax)(1 \pm \sin ax)} dx = \frac{1}{2a(1 \pm \sin ax)} \pm \frac{1}{2a} \log \tan \left(\frac{ax}{2} + \frac{\pi}{4} \right).$

366. $\int \frac{\cos ax}{(\sin ax)(1 \pm \cos ax)} dx = -\frac{1}{2a(1 \pm \cos ax)} \pm \frac{1}{2a} \log \tan \frac{ax}{2}.$

367. $\int \frac{dx}{\sin ax \pm \cos ax} = \frac{1}{a\sqrt{2}} \log \tan \left(\frac{ax}{2} \pm \frac{\pi}{8} \right).$

368. $\int \frac{dx}{(\sin ax \pm \cos ax)^2} = \frac{1}{2a} \tan \left(ax \mp \frac{\pi}{4} \right).$

369. $\int \frac{dx}{1 + \cos ax \pm \sin ax} = \pm \frac{1}{a} \log \left(1 \pm \tan \frac{ax}{2} \right).$

370. $\int \frac{dx}{a^2 \cos^2 cx - b^2 \sin^2 cx} = \frac{1}{2abc} \log \left(\frac{b \tan cx + a}{b \tan cx - a} \right).$

371. $\int x \sin ax dx = \frac{1}{a^2} \sin ax - \frac{x}{a} \cos ax.$

372. $\int x^2 \sin ax dx = \frac{2x}{a^2} \sin ax + \frac{2 - a^2 x^2}{a^3} \cos ax.$

373. $\int x^3 \sin ax dx = \frac{3a^2 x^2 - 6}{a^4} \sin ax + \frac{6x - a^2 x^3}{a^3} \cos ax.$

374. $\int x^m \sin ax dx = \begin{cases} -\frac{1}{a} x^m \cos ax + \frac{m}{a} \int x^{m-1} \cos ax dx, \\ \text{or} \\ \cos ax \sum_{r=0}^{\lfloor \frac{m}{2} \rfloor} \frac{(-1)^{r+1} m!}{(m-2r)!} \frac{x^{m-2r}}{a^{2r+1}} + \sin ax \sum_{r=0}^{\lfloor \frac{m-1}{2} \rfloor} \frac{(-1)^r m!}{(m-2r-1)!} \frac{x^{m-2r-1}}{a^{2r+2}}. \end{cases}$

-
375. $\int x \cos ax \, dx = \frac{1}{a^2} \cos ax + \frac{x}{a} \sin ax.$
376. $\int x^2 \cos ax \, dx = \frac{2x}{a^2} \cos ax + \frac{a^2 x^2 - 2}{a^3} \sin ax.$
377. $\int x^3 \cos ax \, dx = \frac{3a^2 x^2 - 6}{a^4} \cos ax + \frac{a^2 x^3 - 6x}{a^3} \sin ax.$
378. $\int x^m \cos ax \, dx =$

$$\begin{cases} \frac{x^m}{a} \sin ax - \frac{m}{a} \int x^{m-1} \sin ax \, dx, \\ \text{or} \\ \sin ax \sum_{r=0}^{\lfloor \frac{m}{2} \rfloor} \frac{(-1)^r m!}{(m-2r)!} \frac{x^{m-2r}}{a^{2r+1}} + \cos ax \sum_{r=0}^{\lfloor \frac{m-1}{2} \rfloor} \frac{(-1)^r m!}{(m-2r-1)!} \frac{x^{m-2r-1}}{a^{2r+2}}. \end{cases}$$
379. $\int \frac{\sin ax}{x} \, dx = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (-1)^n \frac{(ax)^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)(2n+1)!}.$
380. $\int \frac{\cos ax}{x} \, dx = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (-1)^n \frac{(ax)^{2n}}{(2n)(2n)!}.$
381. $\int x \sin^2 ax \, dx = \frac{x^2}{4} - \frac{x}{4a} \sin 2ax - \frac{1}{8a^2} \cos 2ax.$
382. $\int x^2 \sin^2 ax \, dx = \frac{x^3}{6} - \left(\frac{x^2}{4a} - \frac{1}{8a^3} \right) \sin 2ax - \frac{x}{4a^2} \cos 2ax.$
383. $\int x \sin^3 ax \, dx = \frac{x}{12a} \cos 3ax - \frac{1}{36a^2} \sin 3ax - \frac{3x}{4a} \cos ax + \frac{3}{4a^2} \sin ax.$
384. $\int x \cos^2 ax \, dx = \frac{x^2}{4} + \frac{x}{4a} \sin 2ax + \frac{1}{8a^2} \cos 2ax.$
385. $\int x^2 \cos^2 ax \, dx = \frac{x^3}{6} + \left(\frac{x^2}{4a} - \frac{1}{8a^3} \right) \sin 2ax + \frac{x}{4a^2} \cos 2ax.$
386. $\int x \cos^3 ax \, dx = \frac{x}{12a} \sin 3ax + \frac{1}{36a^2} \cos 3ax + \frac{3x}{4a} \sin ax + \frac{3}{4a^2} \cos ax.$
387. $\int \frac{\sin ax}{x^m} \, dx = \frac{\sin ax}{(1-m)x^{m-1}} + \frac{a}{m-1} \int \frac{\cos ax}{x^{m-1}} \, dx.$
388. $\int \frac{\cos ax}{x^m} \, dx = \frac{\cos ax}{(1-m)x^{m-1}} + \frac{a}{1-m} \int \frac{\sin ax}{x^{m-1}} \, dx.$
389. $\int \frac{x}{1 \pm \sin ax} \, dx = \mp \frac{x \cos ax}{a(1 \pm \sin ax)} + \frac{1}{a^2} \log(1 \pm \sin ax).$
390. $\int \frac{x}{1 + \cos ax} \, dx = \frac{x}{a} \tan \frac{ax}{2} + \frac{2}{a^2} \log \cos \frac{ax}{2}.$
391. $\int \frac{x}{1 - \cos ax} \, dx = -\frac{x}{a} \cot \frac{ax}{2} + \frac{2}{a^2} \log \sin \frac{ax}{2}.$
392. $\int \frac{x + \sin x}{1 + \cos x} \, dx = x \tan \frac{x}{2}.$
393. $\int \frac{x - \sin x}{1 - \cos x} \, dx = -x \cot \frac{x}{2}.$
394. $\int \sqrt{1 - \cos ax} \, dx = -\frac{2 \sin ax}{a\sqrt{1 - \cos ax}} = -\frac{2\sqrt{2}}{a} \cos \frac{ax}{2}.$

$$395. \int \sqrt{1 + \cos ax} dx = \frac{2 \sin ax}{a\sqrt{1 + \cos ax}} = \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{a} \sin \frac{ax}{2}.$$

For the following six integrals, each k represents an integer.

$$396. \int \sqrt{1 + \sin x} dx = \begin{cases} 2 \left(\sin \frac{x}{2} - \cos \frac{x}{2} \right), & (8k - 1)\frac{\pi}{2} < x \leq (8k + 3)\frac{\pi}{2}, \\ \text{or} \\ -2 \left(\sin \frac{x}{2} - \cos \frac{x}{2} \right), & (8k + 3)\frac{\pi}{2} < x \leq (8k + 7)\frac{\pi}{2}. \end{cases}$$

$$397. \int \sqrt{1 - \sin x} dx = \begin{cases} 2 \left(\sin \frac{x}{2} + \cos \frac{x}{2} \right), & (8k - 3)\frac{\pi}{2} < x \leq (8k + 1)\frac{\pi}{2}, \\ \text{or} \\ -2 \left(\sin \frac{x}{2} + \cos \frac{x}{2} \right), & (8k + 1)\frac{\pi}{2} < x \leq (8k + 5)\frac{\pi}{2}. \end{cases}$$

$$398. \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1 - \cos x}} = \begin{cases} \sqrt{2} \log \tan \frac{x}{4}, & 4k\pi < x \leq (4k + 2)\pi, \\ \text{or} \\ -\sqrt{2} \log \tan \frac{x}{4}, & (4k + 2)\pi < x \leq (4k + 4)\pi. \end{cases}$$

$$399. \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1 + \cos x}} = \begin{cases} \sqrt{2} \log \tan \left(\frac{x + \pi}{4} \right), & (4k - 1)\pi < x \leq (4k + 1)\pi, \\ \text{or} \\ -\sqrt{2} \log \tan \left(\frac{x + \pi}{4} \right), & (4k + 1)\pi < x \leq (4k + 3)\pi. \end{cases}$$

$$400. \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1 - \sin x}} = \begin{cases} \sqrt{2} \log \tan \left(\frac{x}{4} - \frac{\pi}{8} \right), & (8k + 1)\frac{\pi}{2} < x \leq (8k + 5)\frac{\pi}{2}, \\ \text{or} \\ -\sqrt{2} \log \tan \left(\frac{x}{4} - \frac{\pi}{8} \right), & (8k + 5)\frac{\pi}{2} < x \leq (8k + 9)\frac{\pi}{2}. \end{cases}$$

$$401. \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1 + \sin x}} = \begin{cases} \sqrt{2} \log \tan \left(\frac{x}{4} + \frac{\pi}{8} \right), & (8k - 1)\frac{\pi}{2} < x \leq (8k + 3)\frac{\pi}{2}, \\ \text{or} \\ -\sqrt{2} \log \tan \left(\frac{x}{4} + \frac{\pi}{8} \right), & (8k + 3)\frac{\pi}{2} < x \leq (8k + 7)\frac{\pi}{2}. \end{cases}$$

$$402. \int \tan^2 ax dx = \frac{1}{a} \tan ax - x.$$

$$403. \int \tan^3 ax dx = \frac{1}{2a} \tan^2 ax + \frac{1}{a} \log \cos ax.$$

$$404. \int \tan^4 ax dx = \frac{1}{3a} \tan^3 ax - \frac{1}{a} \tan ax + x.$$

$$405. \int \tan^n ax dx = \frac{1}{a(n-1)} \tan^{n-1} ax - \int \tan^{n-2} ax dx.$$

$$406. \int \cot^2 ax dx = -\frac{1}{a} \cot ax - x.$$

$$407. \int \cot^3 ax dx = -\frac{1}{2a} \cot^2 ax - \frac{1}{a} \log \sin ax.$$

$$408. \int \cot^4 ax dx = -\frac{1}{3a} \cot^3 ax + \frac{1}{a} \cot ax + x.$$

$$409. \int \cot^n ax dx = -\frac{1}{a(n-1)} \cot^{n-1} ax - \int \cot^{n-2} ax dx.$$

$$410. \int \frac{x}{\sin^2 ax} dx = \int x \csc^2 ax dx = -\frac{x \cot ax}{a} + \frac{1}{a^2} \log \sin ax.$$

$$411. \int \frac{x}{\sin^n ax} dx = \int x \csc^n ax dx = -\frac{x \cos ax}{a(n-1) \sin^{n-1} ax} - \frac{1}{a^2(n-1)(n-2) \sin^{n-2} ax} + \frac{n-2}{n-1} \int \frac{x}{\sin^{n-2} ax} dx.$$

$$412. \int \frac{x}{\cos^2 ax} dx = \int x \sec^2 ax dx = \frac{x}{a} \tan ax + \frac{1}{a^2} \log \cos ax.$$

$$413. \int \frac{x}{\cos^n ax} dx = \int x \sec^n ax dx = \frac{x \sin ax}{a(n-1) \cos^{n-1} ax} - \frac{1}{a^2(n-1)(n-2) \cos^{n-2} ax} + \frac{n-2}{n-1} \int \frac{x}{\cos^{n-2} ax} dx.$$

$$414. \int \frac{\sin ax}{\sqrt{1+b^2 \sin^2 ax}} dx = -\frac{1}{ab} \sin^{-1} \frac{b \cos ax}{\sqrt{1+b^2}}.$$

$$415. \int \frac{\sin ax}{\sqrt{1-b^2 \sin^2 ax}} dx = -\frac{1}{ab} \log (b \cos ax + \sqrt{1-b^2 \sin^2 ax}).$$

$$416. \int (\sin ax) \sqrt{1+b^2 \sin^2 ax} dx = -\frac{\cos ax}{2a} \sqrt{1+b^2 \sin^2 ax} - \frac{1+b^2}{2ab} \sin^{-1} \frac{b \cos ax}{\sqrt{1+b^2}}.$$

$$417. \int (\sin ax) \sqrt{1-b^2 \sin^2 ax} dx = -\frac{\cos ax}{2a} \sqrt{1-b^2 \sin^2 ax} - \frac{1-b^2}{2ab} \log (b \cos ax + \sqrt{1-b^2 \sin^2 ax}).$$

$$418. \int \frac{\cos ax}{\sqrt{1+b^2 \sin^2 ax}} dx = \frac{1}{ab} \log (b \sin ax + \sqrt{1+b^2 \sin^2 ax}).$$

$$419. \int \frac{\cos ax}{\sqrt{1-b^2 \sin^2 ax}} dx = \frac{1}{ab} \sin^{-1} (b \sin ax).$$

$$420. \int (\cos ax) \sqrt{1+b^2 \sin^2 ax} dx = \frac{\sin ax}{2a} \sqrt{1+b^2 \sin^2 ax} + \frac{1}{2ab} \log (b \sin ax + \sqrt{1+b^2 \sin^2 ax}).$$

$$421. \int (\cos ax) \sqrt{1-b^2 \sin^2 ax} dx = \frac{\sin ax}{2a} \sqrt{1-b^2 \sin^2 ax} + \frac{1}{2ab} \sin^{-1} (b \sin ax).$$

For the following integral, k represents an integer and $a > |b|$

$$422. \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{a+b \tan^2 cx}} = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{c\sqrt{a-b}} \sin^{-1} \left(\sqrt{\frac{a-b}{a}} \sin cx \right), & (4k-1)\frac{\pi}{2} < x \leq (4k+1)\frac{\pi}{2}, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{-1}{c\sqrt{a-b}} \sin^{-1} \left(\sqrt{\frac{a-b}{a}} \sin cx \right), & (4k+1)\frac{\pi}{2} < x \leq (4k+3)\frac{\pi}{2}. \end{cases}$$

$$423. \int \cos^n x dx = \frac{1}{2^{n-1}} \sum_{k=0}^{\frac{n}{2}-1} \binom{n}{k} \frac{\sin [(n-2k)x]}{(n-2k)} + \frac{1}{2^n} \binom{n}{\frac{n}{2}} x, \quad n \text{ is an even integer.}$$

$$424. \int \cos^n x dx = \frac{1}{2^{n-1}} \sum_{k=0}^{\frac{n-1}{2}} \binom{n}{k} \frac{\sin [(n-2k)x]}{(n-2k)}, \quad n \text{ is an odd integer.}$$

$$425. \int \sin^n x dx = \frac{1}{2^{n-1}} \sum_{k=0}^{\frac{n}{2}-1} \binom{n}{k} \frac{\sin \left([(n-2k)(\frac{\pi}{2} - x)] \right)}{(2k-n)} + \frac{1}{2^n} \binom{n}{\frac{n}{2}} x, \quad n \text{ is an even integer.}$$

$$426. \int \sin^n x \, dx = \frac{1}{2^{n-1}} \sum_{k=0}^{\frac{n-1}{2}} \binom{n}{k} \frac{\sin \left([(n-2k)(\frac{\pi}{2} - x)] \right)}{(2k-n)}, \quad n \text{ is an odd integer.}$$

5.4.17 FORMS INVOLVING INVERSE TRIGONOMETRIC FUNCTIONS

$$427. \int \sin^{-1} ax \, dx = x \sin^{-1} ax + \frac{\sqrt{1-a^2x^2}}{a}.$$

$$428. \int \cos^{-1} ax \, dx = x \cos^{-1} ax - \frac{\sqrt{1-a^2x^2}}{a}.$$

$$429. \int \tan^{-1} ax \, dx = x \tan^{-1} ax - \frac{1}{2a} \log(1+a^2x^2).$$

$$430. \int \cot^{-1} ax \, dx = x \cot^{-1} ax + \frac{1}{2a} \log(1+a^2x^2).$$

$$431. \int \sec^{-1} ax \, dx = x \sec^{-1} ax - \frac{1}{a} \log(ax + \sqrt{a^2x^2 - 1}).$$

$$432. \int \csc^{-1} ax \, dx = x \csc^{-1} ax + \frac{1}{a} \log(ax + \sqrt{a^2x^2 - 1}).$$

$$433. \int \left(\sin^{-1} \frac{x}{a} \right) dx = x \sin^{-1} \frac{x}{a} + \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}, \quad a > 0.$$

$$434. \int \left(\cos^{-1} \frac{x}{a} \right) dx = x \cos^{-1} \frac{x}{a} - \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}, \quad a > 0.$$

$$435. \int \left(\tan^{-1} \frac{x}{a} \right) dx = x \tan^{-1} \frac{x}{a} - \frac{a}{2} \log(a^2 + x^2).$$

$$436. \int \left(\cot^{-1} \frac{x}{a} \right) dx = x \cot^{-1} \frac{x}{a} + \frac{a}{2} \log(a^2 + x^2).$$

$$437. \int x \sin^{-1}(ax) \, dx = \frac{1}{4a^2} \left((2a^2x^2 - 1) \sin^{-1}(ax) + ax \sqrt{1-a^2x^2} \right).$$

$$438. \int x \cos^{-1}(ax) \, dx = \frac{1}{4a^2} \left((2a^2x^2 - 1) \cos^{-1}(ax) - ax \sqrt{1-a^2x^2} \right).$$

$$439. \int x^n \sin^{-1}(ax) \, dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} \sin^{-1}(ax) - \frac{a}{n+1} \int \frac{x^{n+1}}{\sqrt{1-a^2x^2}} dx, \quad n \neq -1.$$

$$440. \int x^n \cos^{-1} ax \, dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} \cos^{-1}(ax) + \frac{a}{n+1} \int \frac{x^{n+1}}{\sqrt{1-a^2x^2}} dx, \quad n \neq -1.$$

$$441. \int x \tan^{-1}(ax) \, dx = \frac{1+a^2x^2}{2a^2} \tan^{-1}(ax) - \frac{x}{2a}.$$

$$442. \int x^n \tan^{-1}(ax) \, dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} \tan^{-1}(ax) - \frac{a}{n+1} \int \frac{x^{n+1}}{1+a^2x^2} dx.$$

$$443. \int x \cot^{-1}(ax) \, dx = \frac{1+a^2x^2}{2a^2} \cot^{-1}(ax) + \frac{x}{2a}.$$

$$444. \int x^n \cot^{-1}(ax) \, dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} \cot^{-1}(ax) + \frac{a}{n+1} \int \frac{x^{n+1}}{1+a^2x^2} dx.$$

$$445. \int \frac{\sin^{-1}(ax)}{x^2} dx = a \log \left(\frac{1 - \sqrt{1-a^2x^2}}{x} \right) - \frac{\sin^{-1}(ax)}{x}.$$

$$446. \int \frac{\cos^{-1}(ax)}{x^2} dx = -\frac{1}{x} \cos^{-1}(ax) + a \log \left(\frac{1 + \sqrt{1-a^2x^2}}{x} \right).$$

447. $\int \frac{\tan^{-1}(ax)}{x^2} dx = -\frac{1}{x} \tan^{-1}(ax) - \frac{a}{2} \log \left(\frac{1+a^2x^2}{x^2} \right).$
448. $\int \frac{\cot^{-1}(ax)}{x^2} dx = -\frac{1}{x} \cot^{-1}(ax) - \frac{a}{2} \log \left(\frac{x^2}{1+a^2x^2} \right).$
449. $\int (\sin^{-1}(ax))^2 dx = x(\sin^{-1}(ax))^2 - 2x + \frac{2\sqrt{1-a^2x^2}}{a} \sin^{-1}(ax).$
450. $\int (\cos^{-1}(ax))^2 dx = x(\cos^{-1}(ax))^2 - 2x - \frac{2\sqrt{1-a^2x^2}}{a} \cos^{-1}(ax).$
451. $\int (\sin^{-1}(ax))^n dx =$
 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} x(\sin^{-1}(ax))^n + \frac{n\sqrt{1-a^2x^2}}{a} (\sin^{-1}(ax))^{n-1} - n(n-1) \int (\sin^{-1}(ax))^{n-2} dx, \\ \text{or} \\ \sum_{r=0}^{\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \rfloor} \frac{(-1)^r n!}{(n-2r)!} x(\sin^{-1} ax)^{n-2r} + \sum_{r=0}^{\lfloor \frac{n-1}{2} \rfloor} (-1)^r \frac{n! \sqrt{1-a^2x^2}}{(n-2r-1)!} a (\sin^{-1} ax)^{n-2r-1}. \end{array} \right.$
452. $\int (\cos^{-1}(ax))^n dx =$
 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} x(\cos^{-1}(ax))^n - \frac{n\sqrt{1-a^2x^2}}{a} (\cos^{-1}(ax))^{n-1} - n(n-1) \int (\cos^{-1}(ax))^{n-2} dx, \\ \text{or} \\ \sum_{r=0}^{\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \rfloor} \frac{(-1)^r n!}{(n-2r)!} x(\cos^{-1} ax)^{n-2r} - \sum_{r=0}^{\lfloor \frac{n-1}{2} \rfloor} (-1)^r \frac{n! \sqrt{1-a^2x^2}}{(n-2r-1)!} a (\cos^{-1} ax)^{n-2r-1}. \end{array} \right.$
453. $\int \frac{\sin^{-1} ax}{\sqrt{1-a^2x^2}} dx = \frac{1}{2a} (\sin^{-1} ax)^2.$
454. $\int \frac{x^n \sin^{-1} ax}{\sqrt{1-a^2x^2}} dx = -\frac{x^{n-1}}{na^2} \sqrt{1-a^2x^2} \sin^{-1} ax + \frac{x^n}{n^2 a}$
 $+ \frac{n-1}{na^2} \int \frac{x^{n-2} \sin^{-1} ax}{\sqrt{1-a^2x^2}} dx.$
455. $\int \frac{\cos^{-1} ax}{\sqrt{1-a^2x^2}} dx = -\frac{1}{2a} (\cos^{-1} ax)^2.$
456. $\int \frac{x^n \cos^{-1} ax}{\sqrt{1-a^2x^2}} dx = -\frac{x^{n-1}}{na^2} \sqrt{1-a^2x^2} \cos^{-1} ax - \frac{x^n}{n^2 a}$
 $+ \frac{n-1}{na^2} \int \frac{x^{n-2} \cos^{-1} ax}{\sqrt{1-a^2x^2}} dx.$
457. $\int \frac{\tan^{-1} ax}{1+a^2x^2} dx = \frac{1}{2a} (\tan^{-1} ax)^2.$
458. $\int \frac{\cot^{-1} ax}{1+a^2x^2} dx = -\frac{1}{2a} (\cot^{-1} ax)^2.$
459. $\int x \sec^{-1} ax dx = \frac{x^2}{2} \sec^{-1} ax - \frac{1}{2a^2} \sqrt{a^2x^2-1}.$
460. $\int x^n \sec^{-1} ax dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} \sec^{-1} ax - \frac{1}{n+1} \int \frac{x^n}{\sqrt{a^2x^2-1}} dx.$
461. $\int \frac{\sec^{-1} ax}{x^2} dx = -\frac{\sec^{-1} ax}{x} + \frac{\sqrt{a^2x^2-1}}{x}.$

$$462. \int x \csc^{-1} ax \, dx = \frac{x^2}{2} \csc^{-1} ax + \frac{1}{2a^2} \sqrt{a^2 x^2 - 1}.$$

$$463. \int x^n \csc^{-1} ax \, dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} \csc^{-1} ax + \frac{1}{n+1} \int \frac{x^n}{\sqrt{a^2 x^2 - 1}} \, dx.$$

$$464. \int \frac{\csc^{-1} ax}{x^2} \, dx = -\frac{\csc^{-1} ax}{x} - \frac{\sqrt{a^2 x^2 - 1}}{x}.$$

5.4.18 LOGARITHMIC FORMS

$$465. \int \log x \, dx = x \log x - x.$$

$$466. \int x \log x \, dx = \frac{x^2}{2} \log x - \frac{x^2}{4}.$$

$$467. \int x^2 \log x \, dx = \frac{x^3}{3} \log x - \frac{x^3}{9}.$$

$$468. \int x^n \log x \, dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} \log x - \frac{x^{n+1}}{(n+1)^2}.$$

$$469. \int (\log x)^2 \, dx = x(\log x)^2 - 2x \log x + 2x.$$

$$470. \int (\log x)^n \, dx = \begin{cases} x(\log x)^n - n \int (\log x)^{n-1} \, dx, & n \neq -1, \\ \text{or} \\ (-1)^n n! x \sum_{r=0}^n \frac{(-\log x)^r}{r!}, & n \neq -1. \end{cases}$$

$$471. \int \frac{(\log x)^n}{x} \, dx = \frac{1}{n+1} (\log x)^{n+1}, \quad n \neq -1.$$

$$472. \int \frac{dx}{\log x} = \log(\log x) + \log x + \frac{(\log x)^2}{2 \cdot 2!} + \frac{(\log x)^3}{3 \cdot 3!} + \dots$$

$$473. \int \frac{dx}{x \log x} = \log(\log x).$$

$$474. \int \frac{dx}{x(\log x)^n} = \frac{1}{(1-n)(\log x)^{n-1}}, \quad n \neq 1.$$

$$475. \int \frac{x^m dx}{(\log x)^n} = \frac{x^{m+1}}{(1-n)(\log x)^{n-1}} + \frac{m+1}{n-1} \int \frac{x^m dx}{(\log x)^{n-1}}, \quad n \neq 1.$$

$$476. \int x^m (\log x)^n \, dx = \begin{cases} \frac{x^{m+1} (\log x)^n}{m+1} - \frac{n}{m+1} \int x^m (\log x)^{n-1} \, dx, \\ \text{or} \\ (-1)^n \frac{n!}{m+1} x^{m+1} \sum_{r=0}^n \frac{(-\log x)^r}{r!(m+1)^{n-r}}. \end{cases}$$

$$477. \int x^p \cos(b \log x) \, dx = \frac{x^{p+1}}{(p+1)^2 + b^2} [b \sin(b \log x) + (p+1) \cos(b \log x)].$$

$$478. \int x^p \sin(b \log x) \, dx = \frac{x^{p+1}}{(p+1)^2 + b^2} [(p+1) \sin(b \log x) - b \cos(b \log x)].$$

$$479. \int \log(ax+b) \, dx = \frac{ax+b}{a} \log(ax+b) - x.$$

$$480. \int \frac{\log(ax+b)}{x^2} dx = \frac{a}{b} \log x - \frac{ax+b}{bx} \log(ax+b).$$

$$481. \int x^m \log(ax+b) dx = \frac{1}{m+1} \left[x^{m+1} - \left(-\frac{b}{a}\right)^{m+1} \right] \log(ax+b) \\ - \frac{1}{m+1} \left(-\frac{b}{a}\right)^{m+1} \sum_{r=1}^{m+1} \frac{1}{r} \left(-\frac{ax}{b}\right)^r.$$

$$482. \int \frac{\log(ax+b)}{x^m} dx = -\frac{1}{m-1} \frac{\log(ax+b)}{x^{m-1}} + \frac{1}{m-1} \left(-\frac{a}{b}\right)^{m-1} \log \frac{ax+b}{x} \\ + \frac{1}{m-1} \left(-\frac{a}{b}\right)^{m-1} \sum_{r=1}^{m-2} \frac{1}{r} \left(-\frac{b}{ax}\right)^r, \quad m > 2.$$

$$483. \int \log \frac{x+a}{x-a} dx = (x+a) \log(x+a) - (x-a) \log(x-a).$$

$$484. \int x^m \log \frac{x+a}{x-a} dx = \frac{x^{m+1} - (-a)^{m+1}}{m+1} \log(x+a) - \frac{x^{m+1} - a^{m+1}}{m+1} \log(x-a) \\ + \frac{2a^{m+1}}{m+1} \sum_{r=1}^{\lfloor \frac{m+1}{2} \rfloor} \frac{1}{m-2r+2} \left(\frac{x}{a}\right)^{m-2r+2}.$$

$$485. \int \frac{1}{x^2} \log \frac{x+a}{x-a} dx = \frac{1}{x} \log \frac{x-a}{x+a} - \frac{1}{a} \log \frac{x^2 - a^2}{x^2}.$$

For the following two integrals, $X = a + bx + cx^2$.

$$486. \int \log X dx = \begin{cases} \left(x + \frac{b}{2c} \right) \log X - 2x + \frac{\sqrt{4ac - b^2}}{c} \tan^{-1} \frac{2cx + b}{\sqrt{4ac - b^2}}, & b^2 - 4ac < 0, \\ \text{or} \\ \left(x + \frac{b}{2c} \right) \log X - 2x + \frac{\sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{c} \tanh^{-1} \frac{2cx + b}{\sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}, & b^2 - 4ac > 0. \end{cases}$$

$$487. \int x^n \log X dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} \log X - \frac{2c}{n+1} \int \frac{x^{n+2}}{X} dx - \frac{b}{n+1} \int \frac{x^{n+1}}{X} dx, \quad n \neq -1.$$

$$488. \int \log(x^2 + a^2) dx = x \log(x^2 + a^2) - 2x + 2a \tan^{-1} \frac{x}{a}.$$

$$489. \int \log(x^2 - a^2) dx = x \log(x^2 - a^2) - 2x + a \log \frac{x+a}{x-a}.$$

$$490. \int x \log(x^2 + a^2) dx = \frac{1}{2} (x^2 + a^2) \log(x^2 + a^2) - \frac{1}{2} x^2.$$

$$491. \int \log(x + \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}) dx = x \log(x + \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}) - \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}.$$

$$492. \int x \log(x + \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}) dx = \left(\frac{x^2}{2} \pm \frac{a^2}{4}\right) \log(x + \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}) - \frac{x\sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}}{4}.$$

$$493. \int x^m \log(x + \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}) dx = \frac{x^{m+1}}{m+1} \log(x + \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}) \\ - \frac{1}{m+1} \int \frac{x^{m+1}}{\sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}} dx.$$

$$494. \int \frac{\log(x + \sqrt{x^2 + a^2})}{x^2} dx = -\frac{\log(x + \sqrt{x^2 + a^2})}{x} - \frac{1}{a} \log \frac{a + \sqrt{x^2 + a^2}}{x}.$$

$$495. \int \frac{\log(x + \sqrt{x^2 - a^2})}{x^2} dx = -\frac{\log(x + \sqrt{x^2 - a^2})}{x} + \frac{1}{|a|} \sec^{-1} \frac{x}{a}.$$

$$496. \int x^n \log(x^2 - a^2) dx = \frac{1}{n+1} \left[x^{n+1} \log(x^2 - a^2) - a^{n+1} \log(x - a) \right. \\ \left. - (-a)^{n+1} \log(x + a) - 2 \sum_{r=0}^{\lfloor \frac{n}{2} \rfloor} \frac{a^{2r} x^{n-2r+1}}{n-2r+1} \right].$$

5.4.19 EXPONENTIAL FORMS

$$497. \int e^x dx = e^x.$$

$$498. \int e^{-x} dx = -e^{-x}.$$

$$499. \int e^{ax} dx = \frac{e^{ax}}{a}.$$

$$500. \int x e^{ax} dx = \frac{e^{ax}}{a^2} (ax - 1).$$

$$501. \int x^m e^{ax} dx = \begin{cases} \frac{x^m e^{ax}}{a} - \frac{m}{a} \int x^{m-1} e^{ax} dx, \\ \text{or} \\ e^{ax} \sum_{r=0}^m (-1)^r \frac{m! x^{m-r}}{(m-r)! a^{r+1}}. \end{cases}$$

$$502. \int \frac{e^{ax}}{x} dx = \log x + \frac{ax}{1!} + \frac{a^2 x^2}{2 \cdot 2!} + \frac{a^3 x^3}{3 \cdot 3!} + \dots$$

$$503. \int \frac{e^{ax}}{x^m} dx = \frac{1}{1-m} \frac{e^{ax}}{x^{m-1}} + \frac{a}{m-1} \int \frac{e^{ax}}{x^{m-1}} dx, \quad m \neq 1.$$

$$504. \int e^{ax} \log x dx = \frac{e^{ax} \log x}{a} - \frac{1}{a} \int \frac{e^{ax}}{x} dx.$$

$$505. \int \frac{dx}{1+e^x} = x - \log(1+e^x) = \log \frac{e^x}{1+e^x}.$$

$$506. \int \frac{dx}{a+be^{px}} = \frac{x}{a} - \frac{1}{ap} \log(a+be^{px}).$$

$$507. \int \frac{dx}{ae^{mx} + be^{-mx}} = \frac{1}{m\sqrt{ab}} \tan^{-1} \left(e^{mx} \sqrt{\frac{a}{b}} \right), \quad a > 0, b > 0.$$

$$508. \int \frac{dx}{ae^{mx} - be^{-mx}} = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2m\sqrt{ab}} \log \left(\frac{\sqrt{a}e^{mx} - \sqrt{b}}{\sqrt{a}e^{mx} + \sqrt{b}} \right), & a > 0, b > 0, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{-1}{m\sqrt{ab}} \tanh^{-1} \left(\sqrt{\frac{a}{b}} e^{mx} \right), & a > 0, b > 0. \end{cases}$$

$$509. \int (a^x - a^{-x}) dx = \frac{a^x + a^{-x}}{\log a}.$$

$$510. \int \frac{e^{ax}}{b+ce^{ax}} dx = \frac{1}{ac} \log(b+ce^{ax}).$$

$$511. \int \frac{x e^{ax}}{(1+ax)^2} dx = \frac{e^{ax}}{a^2(1+ax)}.$$

512. $\int x e^{-x^2} dx = -\frac{1}{2} e^{-x^2}.$

513. $\int e^{ax} \sin(bx) dx = \frac{e^{ax} [a \sin(bx) - b \cos(bx)]}{a^2 + b^2}.$

514. $\int e^{ax} \sin(bx) \sin(cx) dx = \frac{e^{ax} [(b-c) \sin(b-c)x + a \cos(b-c)x]}{2[a^2 + (b-c)^2]} - \frac{e^{ax} [(b+c) \sin(b+c)x + a \cos(b+c)x]}{2[a^2 + (b+c)^2]}.$

515. $\int e^{ax} \sin(bx) \cos(cx) dx = \frac{e^{ax} [a \sin(b-c)x - (b-c) \cos(b-c)x]}{2[a^2 + (b-c)^2]} + \frac{e^{ax} [a \sin(b+c)x - (b+c) \cos(b+c)x]}{2[a^2 + (b+c)^2]}.$

516. $\int e^{ax} \sin(bx) \sin(bx+c) dx = \frac{e^{ax} \cos c}{2a} - \frac{e^{ax} [a \cos 2bx + c + 2b \sin 2bx + c]}{2[a^2 + 4b^2]}.$

517. $\int e^{ax} \sin(bx) \cos(bx+c) dx = -\frac{e^{ax} \sin c}{2a} + \frac{e^{ax} [a \sin 2bx + c - 2b \cos 2bx + c]}{2[a^2 + 4b^2]}.$

518. $\int e^{ax} \cos(bx) dx = \frac{e^{ax}}{a^2 + b^2} [a \cos(bx) + b \sin(bx)].$

519. $\int e^{ax} \cos(bx) \cos(cx) dx = \frac{e^{ax} [(b-c) \sin(b-c)x + a \cos(b-c)x]}{2[a^2 + (b-c)^2]} + \frac{e^{ax} [(b+c) \sin(b+c)x + a \cos(b+c)x]}{2[a^2 + (b+c)^2]}.$

520. $\int e^{ax} \cos(bx) \cos(bx+c) dx = \frac{e^{ax} \cos c}{2a} + \frac{e^{ax} [a \cos 2bx + c + 2b \sin 2bx + c]}{2[a^2 + 4b^2]}.$

521. $\int e^{ax} \cos(bx) \sin(bx+c) dx = \frac{e^{ax} \sin c}{2a} + \frac{e^{ax} [a \sin 2bx + c - 2b \cos 2bx + c]}{2[a^2 + 4b^2]}.$

522. $\int e^{ax} \sin^n(bx) dx = \frac{1}{a^2 + n^2 b^2} [(a \sin(bx) - nb \cos(bx)) e^{ax} \sin^{n-1}(bx) + n(n-1)b^2 \int e^{ax} \sin^{n-2}(bx) dx].$

523. $\int e^{ax} \cos^n(bx) dx = \frac{1}{a^2 + n^2 b^2} [(a \cos(bx) + nb \sin(bx)) e^{ax} \cos^{n-1}(bx) + n(n-1)b^2 \int e^{ax} \cos^{n-2}(bx) dx].$

524. $\int x^m e^x \sin x dx = \frac{1}{2} x^m e^x (\sin x - \cos x) - \frac{m}{2} \int x^{m-1} e^x \sin x dx + \frac{m}{2} \int x^{m-1} e^x \cos x dx.$

525. $\int x^m e^{ax} \sin bx dx = x^m e^{ax} \frac{a \sin(bx) - b \cos(bx)}{a^2 + b^2} - \frac{m}{a^2 + b^2} \int x^{m-1} e^{ax} (a \sin(bx) - b \cos(bx)) dx.$

526. $\int x^m e^x \cos x dx = \frac{1}{2} x^m e^x (\sin x + \cos x) - \frac{m}{2} \int x^{m-1} e^x \sin x dx - \frac{m}{2} \int x^{m-1} e^x \cos x dx.$

527. $\int x^m e^{ax} \cos bx dx = x^m e^{ax} \frac{a \cos(bx) + b \sin(bx)}{a^2 + b^2} - \frac{m}{a^2 + b^2} \int x^{m-1} e^{ax} (a \cos(bx) + b \sin(bx)) dx.$

$$528. \int e^{ax} \cos^m x \sin^n x \, dx =$$

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \frac{e^{ax} (\cos^{m-1} x) (\sin^n x) [a \cos x + (m+n) \sin x]}{(m+n)^2 + a^2} \\ - \frac{na}{(m+n)^2 + a^2} \int e^{ax} (\cos^{m-1} x) (\sin^{n-1} x) \, dx \\ + \frac{(m-1)(m+n)}{(m+n)^2 + a^2} \int e^{ax} (\cos^{m-2} x) (\sin^n x) \, dx, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{e^{ax} (\cos^m x) (\sin^{n-1} x) [a \sin x - (m+n) \cos x]}{(m+n)^2 + a^2} \\ + \frac{ma}{(m+n)^2 + a^2} \int e^{ax} (\cos^{m-1} x) (\sin^{n-1} x) \, dx \\ + \frac{(n-1)(m+n)}{(m+n)^2 + a^2} \int e^{ax} (\cos^m x) (\sin^{n-2} x) \, dx, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{e^{ax} (\cos^{m-1} x) (\sin^{n-1} x) [a \sin x \cos x + m \sin^2 x - n \cos^2 x]}{(m+n)^2 + a^2} \\ + \frac{m(m-1)}{(m+n)^2 + a^2} \int e^{ax} (\cos^{m-2} x) (\sin^n x) \, dx \\ + \frac{n(n-1)}{(m+n)^2 + a^2} \int e^{ax} (\cos^m x) (\sin^{n-2} x) \, dx, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{e^{ax} (\cos^{m-1} x) (\sin^{n-1} x) [a \sin x \cos x + m \sin^2 x - n \cos^2 x]}{(m+n)^2 + a^2} \\ + \frac{m(m-1)}{(m+n)^2 + a^2} \int e^{ax} (\cos^{m-2} x) (\sin^{n-2} x) \, dx \\ + \frac{(n-m)(n+m-1)}{(m+n)^2 + a^2} \int e^{ax} (\cos^m x) (\sin^{n-2} x) \, dx. \end{array} \right.$$

$$529. \int x e^{ax} \sin (bx) \, dx = \frac{x e^{ax}}{a^2 + b^2} [a \sin (bx) - b \cos (bx)] \\ - \frac{e^{ax}}{(a^2 + b^2)^2} [(a^2 - b^2) \sin bx - 2ab \cos (bx)].$$

$$530. \int x e^{ax} \cos (bx) \, dx = \frac{x e^{ax}}{a^2 + b^2} [a \cos (bx) + b \sin (bx)] \\ - \frac{e^{ax}}{(a^2 + b^2)^2} [(a^2 - b^2) \cos bx + 2ab \sin (bx)].$$

$$531. \int \frac{e^{ax}}{\sin^n x} \, dx = -\frac{e^{ax} [a \sin x + (n-2) \cos x]}{(n-1)(n-2) \sin^{n-1} x} + \frac{a^2 + (n-2)^2}{(n-1)(n-2)} \int \frac{e^{ax}}{\sin^{n-2} x} \, dx.$$

$$532. \int \frac{e^{ax}}{\cos^n x} \, dx = -\frac{e^{ax} [a \cos x - (n-2) \sin x]}{(n-1)(n-2) \cos^{n-1} x} + \frac{a^2 + (n-2)^2}{(n-1)(n-2)} \int \frac{e^{ax}}{\cos^{n-2} x} \, dx.$$

$$533. \int e^{ax} \tan^n x \, dx = e^{ax} \frac{\tan^{n-1} x}{n-1} - \frac{a}{n-1} \int e^{ax} \tan^{n-1} x \, dx - \int e^{ax} \tan^{n-2} x \, dx.$$

5.4.20 HYPERBOLIC FORMS

$$534. \int \sinh x \, dx = \cosh x.$$

$$535. \int \cosh x \, dx = \sinh x.$$

-
536. $\int \tanh x \, dx = \log \cosh x.$
537. $\int \coth x \, dx = \log \sinh x.$
538. $\int \operatorname{sech} x \, dx = \tan^{-1}(\sinh x).$
539. $\int \operatorname{csch} x \, dx = \log \tanh \left(\frac{x}{2} \right).$
540. $\int x \sinh x \, dx = x \cosh x - \sinh x.$
541. $\int x^n \sinh x \, dx = x^n \cosh x - n \int x^{n-1} (\cosh x) \, dx.$
542. $\int x \cosh x \, dx = x \sinh x - \cosh x.$
543. $\int x^n \cosh x \, dx = x^n \sinh x - n \int x^{n-1} (\sinh x) \, dx.$
544. $\int \operatorname{sech} x \tanh x \, dx = -\operatorname{sech} x.$
545. $\int \operatorname{csch} x \coth x \, dx = -\operatorname{csch} x.$
546. $\int \sinh^2 x \, dx = \frac{\sinh 2x}{4} - \frac{x}{2}.$
547. $\int \sinh^m x \cosh^n x \, dx =$

$$\begin{cases} \frac{1}{m+n} \sinh^{m+1} x \cosh^{n-1} x + \frac{n-1}{m+n} \int \sinh^m x \cosh^{n-2} x \, dx, & m+n \neq 0, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{1}{m+n} \sinh^{m-1} x \cosh^{n+1} x - \frac{m-1}{m+n} \int \sinh^{m-2} x \cosh^n x \, dx, & m+n \neq 0. \end{cases}$$
548. $\int \frac{dx}{(\sinh^m x)(\cosh^n x)} =$

$$\begin{cases} -\frac{1}{(m-1)(\sinh^{m-1} x)(\cosh^{n-1} x)} - \frac{m+n-2}{m-1} \int \frac{dx}{(\sinh^{m-2} x)(\cosh^n x)}, & m \neq 1, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{1}{(n-1)(\sinh^{m-1} x)(\cosh^{n-1} x)} + \frac{m+n-2}{n-1} \int \frac{dx}{(\sinh^m x)(\cosh^{n-2} x)}, & n \neq 1. \end{cases}$$
549. $\int \tanh^2 x \, dx = x - \tanh x.$
550. $\int \tanh^n x \, dx = -\frac{\tanh^{n-1} x}{n-1} + \int (\tanh^{n-2} x) \, dx, \quad n \neq 1.$
551. $\int \operatorname{sech}^2 x \, dx = \tanh x.$
552. $\int \cosh^2 x \, dx = \frac{\sinh 2x}{4} + \frac{x}{2}.$
553. $\int \coth^2 x \, dx = x - \coth x.$
554. $\int \coth^n x \, dx = -\frac{\coth^{n-1} x}{n-1} + \int \coth^{n-2} x \, dx, \quad n \neq 1.$

-
555. $\int \operatorname{csch}^2 x \, dx = -\operatorname{coth} x.$
556. $\int (\sinh mx)(\sinh nx) \, dx = \frac{\sinh(m+n)x}{2(m+n)} - \frac{\sinh(m-n)x}{2(m-n)}, \quad m^2 \neq n^2.$
557. $\int (\cosh mx)(\cosh nx) \, dx = \frac{\sinh(m+n)x}{2(m+n)} + \frac{\sinh(m-n)x}{2(m-n)}, \quad m^2 \neq n^2.$
558. $\int (\sinh mx)(\cosh nx) \, dx = \frac{\cosh(m+n)x}{2(m+n)} + \frac{\cosh(m-n)x}{2(m-n)}, \quad m^2 \neq n^2.$
559. $\int \left(\sinh^{-1} \frac{x}{a}\right) \, dx = x \sinh^{-1} \frac{x}{a} - \sqrt{x^2 + a^2}, \quad a > 0.$
560. $\int x \left(\sinh^{-1} \frac{x}{a}\right) \, dx = \left(\frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{a^2}{4}\right) \sinh^{-1} \frac{x}{a} - \frac{x}{4} \sqrt{x^2 + a^2}, \quad a > 0.$
561. $\int x^n \sinh^{-1} x \, dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} \sinh^{-1} x - \frac{1}{n+1} \int \frac{x^{n+1}}{\sqrt{1+x^2}} \, dx, \quad n \neq -1.$
562. $\int^z \cosh^{-1} \frac{x}{a} \, dx = \begin{cases} z \cosh^{-1} \frac{z}{a} - \sqrt{z^2 - a^2}, & \cosh^{-1} \frac{z}{a} > 0, \\ \text{or} \\ z \cosh^{-1} \frac{z}{a} + \sqrt{z^2 - a^2}, & \cosh^{-1} \frac{z}{a} < 0, \quad a > 0. \end{cases}$
563. $\int x \left(\cosh^{-1} \frac{x}{a}\right) \, dx = \left(\frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{a^2}{4}\right) \cosh^{-1} \frac{x}{a} - \frac{x}{4} \sqrt{x^2 - a^2}.$
564. $\int x^n \cosh^{-1} x \, dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} \cosh^{-1} x - \frac{1}{n+1} \int \frac{x^{n+1}}{\sqrt{x^2 - 1}} \, dx, \quad n \neq -1.$
565. $\int \left(\tanh^{-1} \frac{x}{a}\right) \, dx = x \tanh^{-1} \frac{x}{a} + \frac{a}{2} \log(a^2 - x^2), \quad \left|\frac{x}{a}\right| < 1.$
566. $\int \left(\coth^{-1} \frac{x}{a}\right) \, dx = x \coth^{-1} \frac{x}{a} + \frac{a}{2} \log(x^2 - a^2), \quad \left|\frac{x}{a}\right| > 1.$
567. $\int x \left(\tanh^{-1} \frac{x}{a}\right) \, dx = \frac{x^2 - a^2}{2} \tanh^{-1} \frac{x}{a} + \frac{ax}{2}, \quad \left|\frac{x}{a}\right| < 1.$
568. $\int x^n \tanh^{-1} x \, dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} \tanh^{-1} x - \frac{1}{n+1} \int \frac{x^{n+1}}{1-x^2} \, dx, \quad n \neq -1.$
569. $\int x \left(\coth^{-1} \frac{x}{a}\right) \, dx = \frac{x^2 - a^2}{2} \coth^{-1} \frac{x}{a} + \frac{ax}{2}, \quad \left|\frac{x}{a}\right| > 1.$
570. $\int x^n \coth^{-1} x \, dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} \coth^{-1} x + \frac{1}{n+1} \int \frac{x^{n+1}}{x^2 - 1} \, dx, \quad n \neq -1.$
571. $\int \operatorname{sech}^{-1} x \, dx = x \operatorname{sech}^{-1} x + \sin^{-1} x.$
572. $\int x \operatorname{sech}^{-1} x \, dx = \frac{x^2}{2} \operatorname{sech}^{-1} x - \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{1 - x^2}.$
573. $\int x^n \operatorname{sech}^{-1} x \, dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} \operatorname{sech}^{-1} x + \frac{1}{n+1} \int \frac{x^n}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} \, dx, \quad n \neq -1.$
574. $\int \operatorname{csch}^{-1} x \, dx = x \operatorname{csch}^{-1} x + \frac{x}{|x|} \sinh^{-1} x.$
575. $\int x \operatorname{csch}^{-1} x \, dx = \frac{x^2}{2} \operatorname{csch}^{-1} x + \frac{1}{2} \frac{x}{|x|} \sqrt{1+x^2}.$

$$576. \int x^n \operatorname{csch}^{-1} x \, dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} \operatorname{csch}^{-1} x + \frac{1}{n+1} \frac{x}{|x|} \int \frac{x^n}{\sqrt{1+x^2}} \, dx, \quad n \neq -1.$$

5.4.21 BESSEL FUNCTIONS

$Z_p(x)$ represents any of the Bessel functions $\{J_p(x), Y_p(x), K_p(x), I_p(x)\}$.

$$577. \int x^{p+1} Z_p(x) \, dx = x^{p+1} Z_{p+1}(x).$$

$$578. \int x^{-p+1} Z_p(x) \, dx = -x^{-p+1} Z_{p-1}(x).$$

$$579. \int x [Z_p(ax)]^2 \, dx = \frac{x^2}{2} [[Z_p(ax)]^2 - Z_{p-1}(ax)Z_{p+1}(ax)].$$

$$580. \int Z_1(x) \, dx = -Z_0(x).$$

$$581. \int x Z_0(x) \, dx = x Z_1(x).$$

5.5 TABLE OF DEFINITE INTEGRALS

$$582. \int_0^\infty x^{n-1} e^{-x} \, dx = \Gamma(n), \quad \operatorname{Re} n > 0.$$

$$583. \int_0^\infty x^n p^{-x} \, dx = \frac{n!}{(\log p)^{n+1}}, \quad p > 0, \quad n \text{ is a non-negative integer.}$$

$$584. \int_0^\infty x^{n-1} e^{-(a+1)x} \, dx = \frac{\Gamma(n)}{(a+1)^n}, \quad n > 0, \quad a > -1.$$

$$585. \int_0^1 x^m \left(\log \frac{1}{x}\right)^n \, dx = \frac{\Gamma(n+1)}{(m+1)^{n+1}}, \quad m > -1, \quad n > -1.$$

$$586. \int_0^1 x^{m-1} (1-x)^{n-1} \, dx = \int_0^\infty \frac{x^{m-1}}{(1+x)^{m+n}} \, dx = \frac{\Gamma(m)\Gamma(n)}{\Gamma(m+n)}, \quad n > 0, \quad m > 0.$$

$$587. \int_a^b (x-a)^m (b-x)^n \, dx = (b-a)^{m+n+1} \frac{\Gamma(m+1)\Gamma(n+1)}{\Gamma(m+n+2)},$$

$m > -1, \quad n > -1, \quad b > a.$

$$588. \int_1^\infty \frac{dx}{x^m} = \frac{1}{m-1}, \quad m > 1.$$

$$589. \int_0^\infty \frac{dx}{(1+x)x^p} = \pi \csc p\pi, \quad 0 < p < 1.$$

$$590. \int_0^\infty \frac{dx}{(1-x)x^p} = -\pi \cot p\pi, \quad 0 < p < 1.$$

$$591. \int_0^1 \frac{x^p}{(1-x)^p} \, dx = p\pi \csc p\pi, \quad |p| < 1.$$

$$592. \int_0^1 \frac{x^p}{(1-x)^{p+1}} \, dx = \int_0^1 \frac{(1-x)^p}{x^{p+1}} \, dx = -\pi \operatorname{cosec} p\pi, \quad -1 < p < 0.$$

$$593. \int_0^\infty \frac{x^{p-1}}{1+x} \, dx = \frac{\pi}{\sin p\pi}, \quad 0 < p < 1.$$

$$594. \int_0^{\infty} \frac{x^{m-1}}{1+x^n} dx = \frac{\pi}{n \sin \frac{m\pi}{n}}, \quad 0 < m < n.$$

$$595. \int_0^{\infty} \frac{x^a}{(m+x^b)^c} dx = \frac{m^{(a+1-bc)/b} \Gamma\left(\frac{a+1}{b}\right) \Gamma\left(c - \frac{a+1}{b}\right)}{b \Gamma(c)},$$

$a > -1, b > 0, m > 0, c > \frac{a+1}{b}.$

$$596. \int_0^{\infty} \frac{dx}{(1+x)\sqrt{x}} = \pi.$$

$$597. \int_0^{\infty} \frac{a}{a^2+x^2} dx = \begin{cases} \frac{\pi}{2}, & a > 0, \\ \text{or} \\ 0, & a = 0, \\ \text{or} \\ -\frac{\pi}{2}, & a < 0. \end{cases}$$

$$598. \int_0^a (a^2-x^2)^{n/2} dx = \int_{-a}^a \frac{1}{2} (a^2-x^2)^{n/2} dx = \frac{n!!}{(n+1)!!} \frac{\pi}{2} a^{n+1},$$

$a > 0, n \text{ is an odd integer.}$

$$599. \int_0^a x^m (a^2-x^2)^{n/2} dx = \frac{1}{2} a^{m+n+1} \frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{m+1}{2}\right) \Gamma\left(\frac{n+2}{2}\right)}{\Gamma\left(\frac{m+n+3}{2}\right)}, \quad a > 0, m > -1, n > -2.$$

$$600. \int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^n x dx = \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos^n x dx = \begin{cases} \frac{\sqrt{\pi} \Gamma\left(\frac{n+1}{2}\right)}{2 \Gamma\left(\frac{n+2}{2}\right)}, & n > -1, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{(n-1)!!}{n!!} \frac{\pi}{2}, & n \neq 0, n \text{ is an even integer,} \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{(n-1)!!}{n!!}, & n \neq 1, n \text{ is an odd integer.} \end{cases}$$

$$601. \int_0^{\infty} \frac{\sin ax}{x} dx = \begin{cases} \frac{\pi}{2}, & a > 0, \\ \text{or} \\ 0, & a = 0, \\ \text{or} \\ -\frac{\pi}{2}, & a < 0. \end{cases}$$

$$602. \int_0^{\infty} \frac{\cos x}{x} dx = \infty.$$

$$603. \int_0^{\infty} \frac{\tan x}{x} dx = \frac{\pi}{2}.$$

$$604. \int_0^{\infty} \frac{\tan ax}{x} dx = \frac{\pi}{2}, \quad a > 0.$$

$$605. \int_0^{\pi} \sin(nx) \sin(mx) dx = \int_0^{\pi} \cos(nx) \cos(mx) dx = 0,$$

$n \neq m, n \text{ is an integer, } m \text{ is an integer.}$

$$606. \int_0^{\pi/n} \sin(nx) \cos(nx) dx = \int_0^{\pi} \sin(nx) \cos(nx) dx = 0, \quad n \text{ is an integer.}$$

$$607. \int_0^{\pi} \sin ax \cos bx dx = \begin{cases} \frac{2a}{a^2-b^2}, & a-b \text{ is an odd integer.} \\ \text{or} \\ 0, & a-b \text{ is an even integer.} \end{cases}$$

$$608. \int_0^{\infty} \frac{\sin x \cos ax}{x} dx = \begin{cases} 0, & |a| > 1, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{\pi}{4}, & |a| = 1, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{\pi}{2}, & |a| < 1. \end{cases}$$

$$609. \int_0^{\infty} \frac{\sin ax \sin bx}{x^2} dx = \begin{cases} \frac{\pi a}{2}, & 0 < a \leq b, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{\pi b}{2}, & 0 < b \leq a. \end{cases}$$

$$610. \int_0^{\pi} \sin^2 mx dx = \int_0^{\pi} \cos^2 mx dx = \frac{\pi}{2}, \quad m \text{ is an integer.}$$

$$611. \int_0^{\infty} \frac{\sin^2 px}{x^2} dx = \frac{\pi |p|}{2}.$$

$$612. \int_0^{\infty} \frac{\sin x}{x^p} dx = \frac{\pi}{2\Gamma(p) \sin(p\pi/2)}, \quad 0 < p < 1.$$

$$613. \int_0^{\infty} \frac{\cos x}{x^p} dx = \frac{\pi}{2\Gamma(p) \cos(p\pi/2)}, \quad 0 < p < 1.$$

$$614. \int_0^{\infty} \frac{1 - \cos px}{x^2} dx = \frac{\pi |p|}{2}.$$

$$615. \int_0^{\infty} \frac{\sin px \cos qx}{x} dx = \begin{cases} 0, & q > p > 0, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{\pi}{2}, & p > q > 0, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{\pi}{4}, & p = q > 0. \end{cases}$$

$$616. \int_0^{\infty} \frac{\cos mx}{x^2 + a^2} dx = \frac{\pi}{2|a|} e^{-|ma|}.$$

$$617. \int_0^{\infty} \cos x^2 dx = \int_0^{\infty} \sin x^2 dx = \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}}.$$

$$618. \int_0^{\infty} \sin(ax^n) dx = \frac{1}{na^{1/n}} \Gamma\left(\frac{1}{n}\right) \sin \frac{\pi}{2n}, \quad n > 1.$$

$$619. \int_0^{\infty} \cos(ax^n) dx = \frac{1}{na^{1/n}} \Gamma\left(\frac{1}{n}\right) \cos \frac{\pi}{2n}, \quad n > 1.$$

$$620. \int_0^{\infty} \frac{\sin x}{\sqrt{x}} dx = \int_0^{\infty} \frac{\cos x}{\sqrt{x}} dx = \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}}.$$

$$621. \int_0^{\infty} \frac{\sin^3 x}{x} dx = \frac{\pi}{4}.$$

$$622. \int_0^{\infty} \frac{\sin^3 x}{x^2} dx = \frac{3}{4} \log 3.$$

$$623. \int_0^{\infty} \frac{\sin^3 x}{x^3} dx = \frac{3\pi}{8}.$$

$$624. \int_0^{\infty} \frac{\sin^4 x}{x^4} dx = \frac{\pi}{3}.$$

$$625. \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{dx}{1 + a \cos x} = \frac{\cos^{-1} a}{\sqrt{1 - a^2}}, \quad |a| < 1.$$

-
626. $\int_0^\pi \frac{dx}{a + b \cos x} = \frac{\pi}{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}}, \quad a > b \geq 0.$
627. $\int_0^{2\pi} \frac{dx}{1 + a \cos x} = \frac{2\pi}{\sqrt{1 - a^2}}, \quad |a| < 1.$
628. $\int_0^\infty \frac{\cos ax - \cos bx}{x} dx = \log \left| \frac{b}{a} \right|.$
629. $\int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{dx}{a^2 \sin^2 x + b^2 \cos^2 x} = \frac{\pi}{2|ab|}.$
630. $\int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{dx}{(a^2 \sin^2 x + b^2 \cos^2 x)^2} = \frac{\pi(a^2 + b^2)}{4a^3b^3}, \quad a > 0, b > 0.$
631. $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{n-1} x \cos^{m-1} x dx = \frac{1}{2} B\left(\frac{n}{2}, \frac{m}{2}\right),$
 m is a positive integer, n is a positive integer.
632. $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2n+1} x dx = \frac{(2n)!!}{(2n+1)!!}, \quad n$ is a positive integer.
633. $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin^{2n} x dx = \frac{(2n-1)!!}{(2n)!!} \frac{\pi}{2}, \quad n$ is a positive integer.
634. $\int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{x}{\sin x} dx = 2 \left(\frac{1}{1^2} - \frac{1}{3^2} + \frac{1}{5^2} - \frac{1}{7^2} + \dots \right).$
635. $\int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{dx}{1 + \tan^m x} = \frac{\pi}{4}, \quad m$ is a non-negative integer.
636. $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sqrt{\cos x} dx = \frac{(2\pi)^{3/2}}{(\Gamma(1/4))^2}.$
637. $\int_0^{\pi/2} \tan^h x dx = \frac{\pi}{2 \cos(\frac{h\pi}{2})}, \quad 0 < h < 1.$
638. $\int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{\tan^{-1} ax - \tan^{-1} bx}{x} dx = \frac{\pi}{2} \log \frac{a}{b}, \quad a > 0, b > 0.$
639. $\int_0^\infty e^{-ax} dx = \frac{1}{a}, \quad a > 0.$
640. $\int_0^\infty \frac{e^{-ax} - e^{-bx}}{x} dx = \log \frac{b}{a}, \quad a > 0, b > 0.$
641. $\int_0^\infty x^n e^{-ax} dx = \begin{cases} \frac{\Gamma(n+1)}{a^{n+1}}, & a > 0, n > -1, \\ \text{or} \\ \frac{n!}{a^{n+1}}, & a > 0, n \text{ is a positive integer.} \end{cases}$
642. $\int_0^\infty x^n e^{-ax^p} dx = \frac{\Gamma((n+1)/p)}{pa^{(n+1)/p}}, \quad a > 0, p > 0, n > -1.$
643. $\int_0^\infty e^{-a^2x^2} dx = \frac{1}{2a} \sqrt{\pi}, \quad a > 0.$
644. $\int_0^b e^{-ax^2} dx = \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{a}} \operatorname{erf}(b\sqrt{a}), \quad a > 0.$
645. $\int_b^\infty e^{-ax^2} dx = \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{a}} \operatorname{erfc}(b\sqrt{a}), \quad a > 0.$

-
646. $\int_0^{\infty} x e^{-x^2} dx = \frac{1}{2}.$
647. $\int_0^{\infty} x^2 e^{-x^2} dx = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{4}.$
648. $\int_0^{\infty} x^{2n} e^{-ax^2} dx = \frac{(2n-1)!!}{2(2a)^n} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{a}}, \quad a > 0, \quad n > 0.$
649. $\int_0^{\infty} x^{2n+1} e^{-ax^2} dx = \frac{n!}{2a^{n+1}}, \quad a > 0, \quad n > -1.$
650. $\int_0^1 x^m e^{-ax} dx = \frac{m!}{a^{m+1}} \left[1 - e^{-a} \sum_{r=0}^m \frac{a^r}{r!} \right].$
651. $\int_0^{\infty} e^{(-x^2 - a^2/x^2)} dx = \frac{e^{-2|a|} \sqrt{\pi}}{2}.$
652. $\int_0^{\infty} e^{(-ax^2 - b/x^2)} dx = \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{a}} e^{-2\sqrt{ab}}, \quad a > 0, \quad b > 0.$
653. $\int_0^{\infty} \sqrt{x} e^{-ax} dx = \frac{1}{2a} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{a}}, \quad a > 0.$
654. $\int_0^{\infty} \frac{e^{-ax}}{\sqrt{x}} dx = \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{a}}, \quad a > 0.$
655. $\int_0^{\infty} e^{-ax} \cos mx dx = \frac{a}{a^2 + m^2}, \quad a > 0.$
656. $\int_0^{\infty} e^{-ax} \cos(bx + c) dx = \frac{a \cos c - b \sin c}{a^2 + b^2}, \quad a > 0.$
657. $\int_0^{\infty} e^{-ax} \sin mx dx = \frac{m}{a^2 + m^2}, \quad a > 0.$
658. $\int_0^{\infty} e^{-ax} \sin(bx + c) dx = \frac{b \cos c + a \sin c}{a^2 + b^2}, \quad a > 0.$
659. $\int_0^{\infty} x e^{-ax} \sin bx dx = \frac{2ab}{(a^2 + b^2)^2}, \quad a > 0.$
660. $\int_0^{\infty} x e^{-ax} \cos bx dx = \frac{a^2 - b^2}{(a^2 + b^2)^2}, \quad a > 0.$
661. $\int_0^{\infty} x^n e^{-ax} \sin bx dx = \frac{n! [(a + ib)^{n+1} - (a - ib)^{n+1}]}{2i(a^2 + b^2)^{n+1}}, \quad a > 0.$
662. $\int_0^{\infty} x^n e^{-ax} \cos bx dx = \frac{n! [(a - ib)^{n+1} + (a + ib)^{n+1}]}{2(a^2 + b^2)^{n+1}}, \quad a > 0, \quad n > -1.$
663. $\int_0^{\infty} \frac{e^{-ax} \sin x}{x} dx = \cot^{-1} a, \quad a > 0.$
664. $\int_0^{\infty} e^{-a^2 x^2} \cos bx dx = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2|a|} \exp^{-b^2/(4a^2)}, \quad ab > 0.$
665. $\int_0^{\infty} e^{-x \cos \phi} x^{b-1} \sin(x \sin \phi) dx = \Gamma(b) \sin(b\phi), \quad b > 0, \quad -\frac{\pi}{2} < \phi < \frac{\pi}{2}.$
666. $\int_0^{\infty} e^{-x \cos \phi} x^{b-1} \cos(x \sin \phi) dx = \Gamma(b) \cos(b\phi), \quad b > 0, \quad -\frac{\pi}{2} < \phi < \frac{\pi}{2}.$
667. $\int_0^{\infty} x^{b-1} \cos x dx = \Gamma(b) \cos\left(\frac{b\pi}{2}\right), \quad 0 < b < 1.$

-
668. $\int_0^\infty x^{b-1} \sin x \, dx = \Gamma(b) \sin\left(\frac{b\pi}{2}\right), \quad 0 < b < 1.$
669. $\int_0^1 (\log x)^n \, dx = (-1)^n n!, \quad n > -1.$
670. $\int_0^1 \sqrt{\log \frac{1}{x}} \, dx = \frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2}.$
671. $\int_0^1 \left(\log \frac{1}{x}\right)^n \, dx = n!.$
672. $\int_0^1 x \log(1-x) \, dx = -\frac{3}{4}.$
673. $\int_0^1 x \log(1+x) \, dx = \frac{1}{4}.$
674. $\int_0^1 x^m (\log x)^n \, dx = \frac{(-1)^n \Gamma(n+1)}{(m+1)^{m+1}}, \quad m > -1, \quad n \text{ is a non-negative integer.}$
675. $\int_0^1 \frac{\log x}{1+x} \, dx = -\frac{\pi^2}{12}.$
676. $\int_0^1 \frac{\log x}{1-x} \, dx = -\frac{\pi^2}{6}.$
677. $\int_0^1 \frac{\log(1+x)}{x} \, dx = \frac{\pi^2}{12}.$
678. $\int_0^1 \frac{\log(1-x)}{x} \, dx = -\frac{\pi^2}{6}.$
679. $\int_0^1 (\log x) \log(1+x) \, dx = 2 - 2 \log 2 - \frac{\pi^2}{12}.$
680. $\int_0^1 (\log x) \log(1-x) \, dx = 2 - \frac{\pi^2}{6}.$
681. $\int_0^1 \frac{\log x}{1-x^2} \, dx = -\frac{\pi^2}{8}.$
682. $\int_0^1 \log\left(\frac{1+x}{1-x}\right) \frac{dx}{x} = \frac{\pi^2}{4}.$
683. $\int_0^1 \frac{\log x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} \, dx = -\frac{\pi}{2} \log 2.$
684. $\int_0^1 x^m \left[\log\left(\frac{1}{x}\right)\right]^n \, dx = \frac{\Gamma(n+1)}{(m+1)^{n+1}}, \quad m > -1, \quad n > -1.$
685. $\int_0^1 \frac{x^p - x^q}{\log x} \, dx = \log\left(\frac{p+1}{q+1}\right), \quad p > -1, \quad q > -1.$
686. $\int_0^1 \frac{dx}{\sqrt{\log(-\log x)}} = \sqrt{\pi}.$
687. $\int_0^\infty \log\left(\frac{e^x + 1}{e^x - 1}\right) \, dx = \frac{\pi^2}{4}.$
688. $\int_0^{\pi/2} \log \sin x \, dx = \int_0^{\pi/2} \log \cos x \, dx = -\frac{\pi}{2} \log 2.$
689. $\int_0^{\pi/2} \log \sec x \, dx = \int_0^{\pi/2} \log \operatorname{cosec} x \, dx = \frac{\pi}{2} \log 2.$

$$690. \int_0^{\pi} x \log \sin x \, dx = -\frac{\pi^2}{2} \log 2.$$

$$691. \int_0^{\pi/2} (\sin x) \log \sin x \, dx = \log 2 - 1.$$

$$692. \int_0^{\pi/2} \log \tan x \, dx = 0.$$

$$693. \int_0^{\pi} \log(a \pm b \cos x) \, dx = \pi \log \left(\frac{a + \sqrt{a^2 - b^2}}{2} \right), \quad a \geq b.$$

$$694. \int_0^{\pi} \log(a^2 - 2ab \cos x + b^2) \, dx = \begin{cases} 2\pi \log a, & a \geq b > 0, \\ \text{or} \\ 2\pi \log b, & b \geq a > 0. \end{cases}$$

$$695. \int_0^{\infty} \frac{\sin ax}{\sinh bx} \, dx = \frac{\pi}{2b} \tanh \frac{a\pi}{2|b|}.$$

$$696. \int_0^{\infty} \frac{\cos ax}{\cosh bx} \, dx = \frac{\pi}{2b} \operatorname{sech} \frac{a\pi}{2b}.$$

$$697. \int_0^{\infty} \frac{dx}{\cosh ax} = \frac{\pi}{2|a|}.$$

$$698. \int_0^{\infty} \frac{x}{\sinh ax} \, dx = \frac{\pi^2}{4a^2}, \quad a \geq 0.$$

$$699. \int_0^{\infty} e^{-ax} \cosh(bx) \, dx = \frac{a}{a^2 - b^2}, \quad |b| < a.$$

$$700. \int_0^{\infty} e^{-ax} \sinh(bx) \, dx = \frac{b}{a^2 - b^2}, \quad |b| < a.$$

$$701. \int_0^{\infty} \frac{\sinh ax}{e^{bx} + 1} \, dx = \frac{\pi}{2b} \operatorname{csc} \frac{a\pi}{b} - \frac{1}{2a}, \quad b \geq 0.$$

$$702. \int_0^{\infty} \frac{\sinh ax}{e^{bx} - 1} \, dx = \frac{1}{2a} - \frac{\pi}{2b} \cot \frac{a\pi}{b}, \quad b \geq 0.$$

$$703. \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1 - k^2 \sin^2 x}} = \frac{\pi}{2} \left[1 + \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 k^2 + \left(\frac{1 \cdot 3}{2 \cdot 4}\right)^2 k^4 + \left(\frac{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6}\right)^2 k^6 + \dots \right],$$

$$k^2 < 1.$$

$$704. \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{dx}{(1 - k^2 \sin^2 x)^{3/2}} = \frac{\pi}{2} \left[1 + \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 3k^2 + \left(\frac{1 \cdot 3}{2 \cdot 4}\right)^2 5k^4 \right. \\ \left. + \left(\frac{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6}\right)^2 7k^6 + \dots \right], \quad k^2 < 1.$$

$$705. \int_0^{\pi/2} \sqrt{1 - k^2 \sin^2 x} \, dx = \frac{\pi}{2} \left[1 - \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 k^2 - \left(\frac{1 \cdot 3}{2 \cdot 4}\right)^2 \frac{k^4}{3} \right. \\ \left. - \left(\frac{1 \cdot 3 \cdot 5}{2 \cdot 4 \cdot 6}\right)^2 \frac{k^6}{5} - \dots \right], \quad k^2 < 1.$$

$$706. \int_0^{\infty} e^{-x} \log x \, dx = -\gamma.$$

$$707. \int_0^{\infty} e^{-x^2} \log x \, dx = -\frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{4} (\gamma + 2 \log 2).$$

$$708. \int_0^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{1 - e^{-x}} - \frac{1}{x} \right) e^{-x} \, dx = \gamma.$$

709. $\int_0^\infty \frac{1}{x} \left(\frac{1}{1-e^{-x}} - \frac{1}{x} \right) dx = \gamma.$

5.5.1 TABLE OF SEMI-INTEGRALS

| | f | $\frac{d^{-1/2} f}{dx^{-1/2}}$ |
|------|------------------------------------|--|
| (1) | 0 | 0 |
| (2) | 1 | $2\sqrt{\frac{x}{\pi}}$ |
| (3) | $x^{-1/2}$ | $\sqrt{\frac{\pi}{x}}$ |
| (4) | x | $\frac{4x^{2/3}}{3\sqrt{\pi}}$ |
| (5) | $x^n, n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ | $\frac{(n!)^2 (4x)^{n+1/2}}{(2n+1)! \sqrt{\pi}}$ |
| (6) | $x^p, p > -1$ | $\frac{\Gamma(p+1)}{\Gamma(p+\frac{1}{2})} x^{p+1/2}$ |
| (7) | $\sqrt{1+x}$ | $\sqrt{\frac{x}{\pi}} + \frac{(1+x)\tan^{-1}(\sqrt{x})}{\sqrt{\pi}}$ |
| (8) | $\frac{1}{\sqrt{1+x}}$ | $\frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} \tan^{-1}(\sqrt{x})$ |
| (9) | $\frac{1}{1+x}$ | $\frac{2 \sinh^{-1}(\sqrt{x})}{\sqrt{\pi}(1+x)}$ |
| (10) | e^x | $e^x \operatorname{erf}(\sqrt{x})$ |
| (11) | $e^x \operatorname{erf}(\sqrt{x})$ | $e^x - 1$ |
| (12) | $\sin(\sqrt{x})$ | $\sqrt{\pi x} J_1(\sqrt{x})$ |
| (13) | $\cos(\sqrt{x})$ | $\sqrt{\pi x} H_{-1}(\sqrt{x})$ |
| (14) | $\sinh(\sqrt{x})$ | $\sqrt{\pi x} I_1(\sqrt{x})$ |
| (15) | $\cosh(\sqrt{x})$ | $\sqrt{\pi x} L_{-1}(\sqrt{x})$ |
| (16) | $\frac{\sin(\sqrt{x})}{\sqrt{x}}$ | $\sqrt{\pi} H_0(\sqrt{x})$ |
| (17) | $\frac{\cos(\sqrt{x})}{\sqrt{x}}$ | $\sqrt{\pi} J_0(\sqrt{x})$ |
| (18) | $\log x$ | $2\sqrt{\frac{x}{\pi}} [\log(4x) - 2]$ |
| (19) | $\frac{\log x}{\sqrt{x}}$ | $\sqrt{\pi} \log\left(\frac{x}{4}\right)$ |

5.6 ORDINARY DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS

5.6.1 LINEAR DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS

A linear differential equation is one that can be written in the form

$$b_n(x)y^{(n)} + b_{n-1}(x)y^{(n-1)} + \dots + b_1(x)y' + b_0(x)y = R(x) \quad (5.6.1)$$

or $p(D)y = R(x)$, where D is the differentiation operator ($Dy = dy/dx$), $p(D)$ is a polynomial in D with coefficients $\{b_i\}$ depending on x , and $R(x)$ is an arbitrary function. In this notation, a power of D denotes repeated differentiation, that is, $D^n y = d^n y/dx^n$. For such an equation, the general solution has the form

$$y(x) = y_h(x) + y_p(x) \quad (5.6.2)$$

where $y_h(x)$ is a homogeneous solution and $y_p(x)$ is the particular solution. These functions satisfy $p(D)y_h = 0$ and $p(D)y_p = R(x)$.

5.6.1.1 Vector representation

Equation (5.6.1) can be written in the form $\frac{dy}{dx} = A(x)\mathbf{y} + \mathbf{r}(x)$ where

$$\mathbf{y} = \begin{bmatrix} y \\ y' \\ y'' \\ \vdots \\ y^{(n-1)} \end{bmatrix}, \quad A(x) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \ddots & \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & & 1 \\ -\frac{b_0}{b_n} & -\frac{b_1}{b_n} & -\frac{b_2}{b_n} & \dots & -\frac{b_{n-1}}{b_n} \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{r}(x) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \\ \frac{R}{b_n} \end{bmatrix}.$$

5.6.1.2 Homogeneous solution

For the special case of a linear differential equation with constant coefficients (i.e., the $\{b_i\}$ in Equation (5.6.1) are constants), the procedure for finding the homogeneous solution is as follows:

1. Factor the polynomial $p(D)$ into real and complex linear factors, just as if D were a variable instead of an operator.
2. For each non-repeated linear factor of the form $(D - a)$, where a is real, write a term of the form ce^{ax} , where c is an arbitrary constant.
3. For each repeated real linear factor of the form $(D - a)^m$, write the following sum of m terms

$$c_1 e^{ax} + c_2 x e^{ax} + c_3 x^2 e^{ax} + \dots + c_m x^{m-1} e^{ax} \quad (5.6.3)$$

where the c_i 's are arbitrary constants.

4. For each non-repeated complex conjugate pair of factors of the form $(D - a + ib)(D - a - ib)$, write the following two terms

$$c_1 e^{ax} \cos bx + c_2 e^{ax} \sin bx. \quad (5.6.4)$$

5. For each repeated complex conjugate pair of factors of the form $(D - a + ib)^m(D - a - ib)^m$, write the following $2m$ terms

$$c_1 e^{ax} \cos bx + c_2 e^{ax} \sin bx + c_3 x e^{ax} \cos bx + c_4 x e^{ax} \sin bx + \dots \\ + c_{2m-1} x^{m-1} e^{ax} \cos bx + c_{2m} x^{m-1} e^{ax} \sin bx. \quad (5.6.5)$$

6. The sum of all the terms thus written is the homogeneous solution.

EXAMPLE For the linear equation

$$y^{(7)} - 14y^{(6)} + 81y^{(5)} - 252y^{(4)} + 455y^{(3)} - 474y'' + 263y' - 60y = 0,$$

$p(D)$ factors as $p(D) = (D - 1)^3(D - (2 + i))(D - (2 - i))(D - 3)(D - 4)$. The roots are thus $\{1, 1, 1, 2 + i, 2 - i, 3, 4\}$. Hence, the homogeneous solution has the form

$$y_h(x) = (c_0 + c_1 x + c_2 x^2) e^x + (c_3 \sin x + c_4 \cos x) e^{2x} + c_5 e^{3x} + c_6 e^{4x}$$

where $\{c_0, \dots, c_6\}$ are arbitrary constants.

5.6.1.3 Particular solutions

The following are solutions for some specific ordinary differential equations. In these tables we assume that $P(x)$ is a polynomial of degree n and $\{a, b, p, q, r, s\}$ are constants. In all of these tables, when using “cos” instead of “sin” in $R(x)$, use the given result, but replace “sin” by “cos”, and replace “cos” by “ $-\sin$ ”.

The numbers on the left hand side are for reference.

| | If $R(x)$ is | A particular solution to $y' - ay = R(x)$ is |
|-----|----------------------|---|
| (1) | e^{rx} | $e^{rx}/(r - a)$. |
| (2) | $\sin sx$ | $-\frac{a \sin sx + s \cos sx}{a^2 + s^2} = -(a^2 + s^2)^{-1/2} \sin(sx + \tan^{-1} \frac{s}{a})$. |
| (3) | $P(x)$ | $-\frac{1}{a} \left[P(x) + \frac{P'(x)}{a} + \frac{P''(x)}{a^2} + \dots + \frac{P^{(n)}(x)}{a^n} \right]$. |
| (4) | $e^{rx} \sin sx$ | Replace a by $a - r$ in formula (2) and multiply by e^{rx} . |
| (5) | $P(x)e^{rx}$ | Replace a by $a - r$ in formula (3) and multiply by e^{rx} . |
| (6) | $P(x) \sin sx$ | $-\sin sx \left[\frac{a}{a^2 + s^2} P(x) + \frac{a^2 - s^2}{(a^2 + s^2)^2} P'(x) \right. \\ \left. + \dots + \frac{a^k - \binom{k}{2} a^{k-2} s^2 + \binom{k}{4} a^{k-4} s^4 - \dots}{(a^2 + s^2)^k} P^{(k-1)}(x) + \dots \right] \\ - \cos sx \left[\frac{s}{a^2 + s^2} P(x) + \frac{2as}{(a^2 + s^2)^2} P'(x) \right. \\ \left. + \dots + \frac{\binom{k}{1} a^{k-1} s - \binom{k}{3} a^{k-3} s^3 + \dots}{(a^2 + s^2)^k} P^{(k-1)}(x) + \dots \right]$. |
| (7) | $P(x)e^{rx} \sin sx$ | Replace a by $a - r$ in formula (6) and multiply by e^{rx} . |

continued on next page

continued from last page

| If $R(x)$ is | A particular solution to $y' - ay = R(x)$ is |
|---------------------------|---|
| (8) e^{ax} | xe^{ax} . |
| (9) $e^{ax} \sin sx$ | $-\frac{e^{ax} \cos sx}{s}$. |
| (10) $P(x)e^{ax}$ | $e^{ax} \int^x P(z) dz$. |
| (11) $P(x)e^{ax} \sin sx$ | $\frac{e^{ax} \sin sx}{s} \left[\frac{P'(x)}{s} - \frac{P'''(x)}{s^3} + \frac{P^{(5)}(x)}{s^5} + \dots \right]$ $-\frac{e^{ax} \cos sx}{s} \left[P(x) - \frac{P''(x)}{s^2} + \frac{P^{(4)}(x)}{s^4} + \dots \right]$. |

| If $R(x)$ is | A particular solution to $y'' - 2ay' + a^2y = R(x)$ is |
|---------------------------|---|
| (12) e^{rx} | $\frac{e^{rx}}{(r-a)^2}$. |
| (13) $\sin sx$ | $\frac{(a^2 - s^2) \sin sx + 2as \cos sx}{(a^2 + s^2)^2}$ $= \frac{1}{a^2 + s^2} \sin \left(sx + \tan^{-1} \frac{2as}{a^2 - s^2} \right)$. |
| (14) $P(x)$ | $\frac{1}{a^2} \left[P(x) + \frac{2P'(x)}{a} + \frac{3P''(x)}{a^2} + \dots + \frac{(n+1)P^{(n)}(x)}{a^n} \right]$. |
| (15) $e^{rx} \sin sx$ | Multiply formula (13) by e^{rx} and replace a by $a - r$. |
| (16) $P(x)e^{rx}$ | Multiply formula (14) by e^{rx} and replace a by $a - r$. |
| (17) $P(x) \sin sx$ | $\sin sx \left[\frac{a^2 - s^2}{(a^2 + s^2)^2} P(x) + 2 \frac{a^2 - 3as^2}{(a^2 + s^2)^3} P'(x) \right.$ $\left. + \dots + (k-1) \frac{a^k - \binom{k}{2} a^{k-2} s^2 + \binom{k}{4} a^{k-4} s^4 - \dots}{(a^2 + s^2)^k} P^{(k-2)}(x) + \dots \right]$ $+ \cos sx \left[\frac{2as}{(a^2 + s^2)^2} P(x) + 2 \frac{3a^2 s - s^3}{(a^2 + s^2)^3} P'(x) \right.$ $\left. + \dots + (k-1) \frac{\binom{k}{1} a^{k-1} s - \binom{k}{3} a^{k-3} s^3 + \dots}{(a^2 + s^2)^k} P^{(k-2)}(x) + \dots \right]$. |
| (18) $P(x)e^{rx} \sin sx$ | Multiply formula (17) by e^{rx} and replace a by $a - r$. |
| (19) e^{ax} | $\frac{x^2 e^{ax}}{2}$. |
| (20) $e^{ax} \sin sx$ | $-\frac{e^{ax} \sin sx}{s^2}$. |
| (21) $P(x)e^{ax}$ | $e^{ax} \int^x \int^y P(z) dz dy$. |
| (22) $P(x)e^{ax} \sin sx$ | $-\frac{e^{ax} \sin sx}{s^2} \left[P(x) - \frac{3P''(x)}{s^2} + \frac{5P^{(4)}(x)}{s^4} + \dots \right]$ $-\frac{e^{ax} \cos sx}{s^2} \left[\frac{2P(x)}{s} - \frac{4P'''(x)}{s^3} + \frac{6P^{(5)}(x)}{s^5} + \dots \right]$. |

| If $R(x)$ is | A particular solution to $y'' + qy = R(x)$ is |
|-----------------------|--|
| (23) e^{rx} | $\frac{e^{rx}}{r^2 + q}$. |
| (24) $\sin sx$ | $\frac{\sin sx}{q - s^2}$. |
| (25) $P(x)$ | $\frac{1}{q} \left[P(x) - \frac{P'(x)}{q} + \frac{P^{(4)}(x)}{q^2} + \dots + (-1)^k \frac{P^{(2k)}(x)}{q^k} + \dots \right]$. |
| (26) $e^{rx} \sin sx$ | $\frac{(r^2 - s^2 + q)e^{rx} \sin sx - 2rse^{rx} \cos sx}{(r^2 - s^2 + q)^2 + (2rs)^2}$ $= \frac{e^{rx}}{\sqrt{(r^2 - s^2 + q)^2 + (2rs)^2}} \sin \left[sx - \tan^{-1} \frac{2rs}{r^2 - s^2 + q} \right]$. |
| (27) $P(x)e^{rx}$ | $\frac{e^{rx}}{q+r^2} \left[P(x) - \frac{2r}{q+r^2} P'(x) + \frac{3r^2-q}{(q+r^2)^2} P''(x) \right.$ $\left. + \dots + (-1)^{k-1} \frac{\binom{k}{1} r^{k-1} - \binom{k}{3} r^{k-3} q + \dots}{(q+r^2)^{k-1}} P^{(k-1)}(x) + \dots \right]$. |
| (28) $P(x) \sin sx$ | $\frac{\sin sx}{q-s^2} \left[P(x) - \frac{3s^2+q}{(q-s^2)^2} P''(x) \right.$ $\left. + \dots + (-1)^k \frac{\binom{2k+1}{1} s^{2k} + \binom{2k+1}{3} s^{2k-2} q + \dots}{(q-s^2)^{2k}} P^{(2k)}(x) + \dots \right]$ $- \frac{s \cos sx}{q-s^2} \left[\frac{2P'(x)}{(q-s^2)} - \frac{4s^2+4q}{(q-s^2)^3} P'''(x) \right.$ $\left. + \dots + (-1)^{k+1} \frac{\binom{2k}{1} s^{2k-2} + \binom{2k}{3} s^{2k-4} q + \dots}{(q-s^2)^{2k-1}} P^{(2k-1)}(x) + \dots \right]$. |

| If $R(x)$ is | A particular solution to $y'' + b^2y = R(x)$ is |
|---------------------|--|
| (29) $\sin bx$ | $-\frac{x \cos bx}{2b}$. |
| (30) $P(x) \sin bx$ | $\frac{\sin bx}{(2b)^2} \left[P(x) - \frac{P'(x)}{(2b)^2} + \frac{P^{(4)}(x)}{(2b)^4} + \dots \right]$ $- \frac{\cos bx}{2b} \int \left[P(x) - \frac{P''(x)}{(2b)^2} + \dots \right] dx.$ |

| If $R(x)$ is | A particular solution to $y'' + py' + qy = R(x)$ is |
|-----------------------|--|
| (31) e^{rx} | $\frac{e^{rx}}{r^2 + pr + q}$. |
| (32) $\sin sx$ | $\frac{(q-s^2) \sin sx - ps \cos sx}{(q-s^2)^2 + (ps)^2} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{(q-s^2)^2 + (ps)^2}} \sin \left(sx - \tan^{-1} \frac{ps}{q-s^2} \right)$. |
| (33) $P(x)$ | $\frac{1}{q} \left[P(x) - \frac{p}{q} P'(x) + \frac{p^2-q}{q^2} P''(x) - \frac{p^2-2pq}{q^2} P'''(x) \right.$ $\left. + \dots + (-1)^n \frac{p^n - \binom{n-1}{1} p^{n-2} q + \binom{n-2}{3} p^{n-4} q^2 - \dots}{q^n} P^{(n)}(x) \right]$. |
| (34) $e^{rx} \sin sx$ | Multiply formula (32) by e^{rx} , replace p by $p + 2r$, and replace q by $q + pr + r^2$. |
| (35) $P(x)e^{rx}$ | Multiply formula (33) by e^{rx} , replace p by $p + 2r$, and replace q by $q + pr + r^2$. |

| | If $R(x)$ is | A particular solution to $(D - a)^n y = R(x)$ is |
|------|------------------|---|
| (36) | e^{rx} | $e^{rx}/(r - a)^n$. |
| (37) | $\sin sx$ | $\frac{(-1)^n}{(a^2 + s^2)^n} \left[\left(a^n - \binom{n}{2} a^{n-2} s^2 + \binom{n}{4} a^{n-4} s^4 - \dots \right) \sin sx + \left(\binom{n}{1} a^{n-1} s + \binom{n}{3} a^{n-3} s^3 + \dots \right) \cos sx \right]$. |
| (38) | $P(x)$ | $\frac{(-1)^n}{a^n} \left[P(x) + \binom{n}{1} \frac{P'(x)}{a} + \binom{n+1}{2} \frac{P''(x)}{a^2} + \binom{n+2}{3} \frac{P'''(x)}{a^3} + \dots \right]$. |
| (39) | $e^{rx} \sin sx$ | Multiply formula (37) by e^{rx} and replace a by $a - r$. |
| (40) | $P(x)e^{rx}$ | Multiply formula (38) by e^{rx} and replace a by $a - r$. |

5.6.1.4 Second-order linear constant coefficient equation

Consider $ay'' + by' + cy = 0$, where a , b , and c are real constants. Let m_1 and m_2 be the roots of $am^2 + bm + c = 0$. There are three forms of the solution:

1. If m_1 and m_2 are real and distinct, then $y(x) = c_1 e^{m_1 x} + c_2 e^{m_2 x}$
2. If m_1 and m_2 are real and equal, then $y(x) = c_1 e^{m_1 x} + c_2 x e^{m_1 x}$
3. If $m_1 = p + iq$ and $m_2 = p - iq$ (with $p = -b/2a$ and $q = \sqrt{4ac - b^2}/2a$), then $y(x) = e^{px} (c_1 \cos qx + c_2 \sin qx)$

Consider $ay'' + by' + cy = R(x)$, where a , b , and c are real constants. Let m_1 and m_2 be as above.

1. If m_1 and m_2 are real and distinct, then $y(x) = C_1 e^{m_1 x} + C_2 e^{m_2 x} + e^{m_1 x}/(m_1 - m_2) \int^x e^{-m_1 z} R(z) dz + e^{m_2 x}/(m_2 - m_1) \int^x e^{-m_2 z} R(z) dz$.
2. If m_1 and m_2 are real and equal, then $y(x) = C_1 e^{m_1 x} + C_2 x e^{m_1 x} + x e^{m_1 x} \int^x e^{-m_1 z} R(z) dz - e^{m_1 x} \int^x z e^{-m_1 z} R(z) dz$.
3. If $m_1 = p + iq$ and $m_2 = p - iq$, then $y(x) = e^{px} (c_1 \cos qx + c_2 \sin qx) + e^{px} \sin qx/q \int^x e^{-pz} R(z) \cos qz dz - e^{px} \cos qx/q \int^x e^{-pz} R(z) \sin qz dz$.

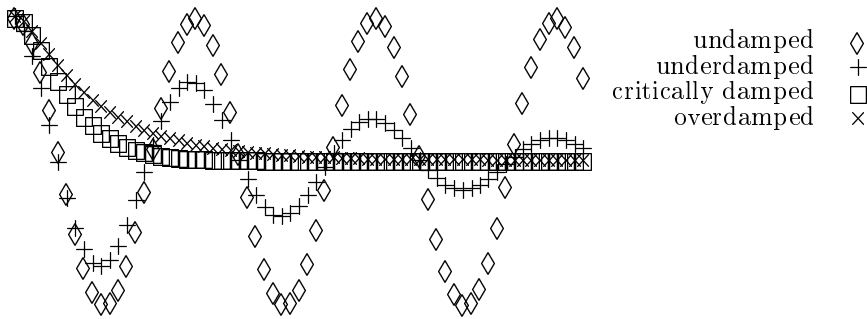
5.6.1.5 Damping: none, under, over, and critical

Consider the linear ordinary differential equation $x'' + \mu x' + x = 0$. If the damping coefficient μ is positive, then all solutions decay to $x = 0$. If $\mu = 0$, the system is undamped and the solution oscillates without decaying. The value of μ such that the roots of the characteristic equation $\lambda^2 + \mu\lambda + 1 = 0$ are real and equal is the critical damping coefficient. If μ is less than (greater than) the critical damping coefficient, then the system is under (over) damped.

Consider four cases with the same initial values: $y(0) = 1$ and $y'(0) = 0$.

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. $y'' + 3y' + y = 0$ | Overdamped |
| 2. $y'' + 2y' + y = 0$ | Critically damped |
| 3. $y'' + 0.2y' + y = 0$ | Underdamped |
| 4. $y'' + y = 0$ | Undamped |

Illustration of different types of damping.



5.6.2 SOLUTION TECHNIQUES OVERVIEW

| Differential equation | Solution or solution technique |
|--|--|
| Autonomous equation $f(y^{(n)}, y^{(n-1)}, \dots, y'', y', y) = 0$ | Change dependent variable to $u(y) = y'(x)$ |
| Bernoulli's equation $y' + f(x)y = g(x)y^n$ | Change dependent variable to $v(x) = (y(x))^{1-n}$ |
| Clairaut's equation $f(xy' - y) = g(y')$ | One solution is $f(xC - y) = g(C)$ |
| Constant coefficient equation $a_0y^{(n)} + a_1y^{(n-1)} + \dots$ $+ a_{n-1}y' + a_ny = 0$ | There are solutions of the form $y = x^k e^{\lambda x}$. See Section 5.6.1.2 . |
| Dependent variable missing $f(y^{(n)}, y^{(n-1)}, \dots, y'', y', x) = 0$ | Change dependent variable to $u(x) = y'(x)$ |
| Euler's equation $a_0x^n y^{(n)} + a_1x^{n-1}y^{(n-1)} + \dots$ $+ a_{n-1}xy' + a_ny = 0$ | Change independent variable to $x = e^t$ |
| Exact equation $M(x, y) dx + N(x, y) dy = 0$ with $\frac{\partial M}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial N}{\partial x}$ | Integrate $M(x, y)$ with respect to x holding y constant, call this $m(x, y)$. Then $m(x, y) + \int \left(N - \frac{\partial m}{\partial y} \right) dy = C$ |
| Homogeneous equation $y' = f\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)$ | $\ln x = \int \frac{dv}{f(v) - v} + C$ unless $f(v) = v$, in which case $y = Cx$. |
| Linear first-order equation $y' + f(x)y = g(x)$ | $y(x) = e^{-\int^x f(t) dt} \left[\int^x e^{\int^z f(t) dt} g(z) dz + C \right]$ |

| Differential equation | Solution or solution technique |
|---|--|
| Reducible to homogeneous $(a_1x + b_1y + c_1) dx$ $+ (a_2x + b_2y + c_2) dy = 0$ with $a_1/a_2 \neq b_1/b_2$ | Change variables to $u = a_1x + b_1y + c$ and $v = a_2x + b_2y + c$ |
| Reducible to separable $(a_1x + b_1y + c_1) dx$ $+ (a_2x + b_2y + c_2) dy = 0$ with $a_1/a_2 = b_1/b_2$ | Change dependent variable to $u(x) = a_1x + b_1y$ |
| Separation of variables $y' = f(x)g(y)$ | $\int \frac{dy}{g(y)} = \int f(x) dx + C$ |

5.6.3 INTEGRATING FACTORS

An integrating factor is a multiplicative term that makes a differential equation have the form of an exact equation. If the equation $M(x, y) dx + N(x, y) dy = 0$ is not in the form of an exact differential equation (i.e., $M_y \neq N_x$) then it may be put into this form by multiplying by an integrating factor.

1. If $\frac{1}{N} \left(\frac{\partial M}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial N}{\partial x} \right) = f(x)$, a function of x alone, then $u(x) = \exp\left(\int^x f(z) dz\right)$ is an integrating factor.
2. If $\frac{1}{M} \left(\frac{\partial M}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial N}{\partial x} \right) = g(y)$, a function of y alone, then $u(y) = \exp\left(\int^y g(z) dz\right)$ is an integrating factor.

EXAMPLE The equation $\frac{y}{x} dx + dy = 0$ has $\{M = y/x, N = 1\}$ and $f(x) = 1/x$. Hence $u(x) = \exp\left(\int^x \frac{1}{z} dz\right) = \exp(\log x) = x$ is an integrating factor. Multiplying the original equation by $u(x)$ results in $y dx + x dy = 0$ or $d(xy) = 0$.

5.6.4 VARIATION OF PARAMETERS

If the linear second-order equation $L[y] = y'' + P(x)y' + Q(x)y = R(x)$ has the independent homogeneous solutions $u(x)$ and $v(x)$ (i.e., $L[u] = 0 = L[v]$), then the solution to the original equation is given by

$$y(x) = -u(x) \int \frac{v(x)R(x)}{W(u, v)} dx + v(x) \int \frac{u(x)R(x)}{W(u, v)} dx, \quad (5.6.6)$$

where $W(u, v) = uv' - u'v = \begin{vmatrix} u & v \\ u' & v' \end{vmatrix}$ is the Wronskian.

EXAMPLE The homogeneous solutions to $y'' + y = \csc x$ are $u(x) = \sin x$ and $v(x) = \cos x$. Here, $W(u, v) = -1$. Hence, $y(x) = \sin x \log(\sin x) - x \cos x$.

If the linear third order equation $L[y] = y''' + P_2(x)y'' + P(x)y' + Q(x)y = R(x)$ has the homogeneous solutions $y_1(x)$, $y_2(x)$, and $y_3(x)$ (i.e., $L[y_i] = 0$), then

the solution to the original equation is given by

$$\begin{aligned}
 y(x) = & y_1(x) \int \frac{\begin{vmatrix} 0 & y_2 & y_3 \\ 0 & y_2' & y_3' \\ R & y_2'' & y_3'' \end{vmatrix}}{W(y_1, y_2, y_3)} dx + y_2(x) \int \frac{\begin{vmatrix} y_1 & 0 & y_3 \\ y_1' & 0 & y_3' \\ y_1'' & R & y_3'' \end{vmatrix}}{W(y_1, y_2, y_3)} dx \\
 & + y_3(x) \int \frac{\begin{vmatrix} y_1 & y_2 & 0 \\ y_1' & y_2' & 0 \\ y_1'' & y_2'' & R \end{vmatrix}}{W(y_1, y_2, y_3)} dx
 \end{aligned} \tag{5.6.7}$$

where $W(y_1, y_2, y_3) = \begin{vmatrix} y_1 & y_2 & y_3 \\ y_1' & y_2' & y_3' \\ y_1'' & y_2'' & y_3'' \end{vmatrix}$ is the Wronskian.

5.6.5 GREEN'S FUNCTIONS

Let $L[y] = f(x)$ be a linear differential equation of order n , on (x_0, x_1) , for $y(x)$ with the linear homogeneous boundary conditions $\{B_i[y] = \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} (a_{ij}y^{(j)}(x_0) + b_{ij}y^{(j)}(x_1)) = 0\}$, for $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$. If there is a Green's function $G(x; z)$ that satisfies

$$\begin{aligned}
 L[G(x; z)] &= \delta(x - z), \\
 B_i[G(x; z)] &= 0,
 \end{aligned} \tag{5.6.8}$$

where δ is Dirac's delta function, then the solution of the original system can be written as $y(x) = \int G(x; z)f(z) dz$, integrated over an appropriate region.

EXAMPLE To solve $y'' = f(x)$ with $y(0) = 0$ and $y(L) = 0$, the appropriate Green's function is

$$G(x; z) = \begin{cases} \frac{x(z-L)}{L} & \text{for } 0 \leq x \leq z, \\ \frac{z(x-L)}{L} & \text{for } z \leq x \leq L. \end{cases} \tag{5.6.9}$$

Hence, the solution is

$$y(x) = \int_0^L G(x; z) f(z) dz = \int_0^x \frac{z(x-L)}{L} f(z) dz + \int_x^L \frac{x(z-L)}{L} f(z) dz. \tag{5.6.10}$$

5.6.6 TABLE OF GREEN'S FUNCTIONS

For the following, the Green's function is $G(x, \xi)$ when $x \leq \xi$ and $G(\xi, x)$ when $x \geq \xi$.

1. For the equation $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = f(x)$ with

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| (a) $y(0) = y(1) = 0,$ | $G(x, \xi) = -(1 - \xi)x,$ |
| (b) $y(0) = 0, y'(1) = 0,$ | $G(x, \xi) = -x,$ |
| (c) $y(0) = -y(1), y'(0) = -y'(1),$ | $G(x, \xi) = -\frac{1}{2}(x - \xi) - \frac{1}{4},$ and |
| (d) $y(-1) = y(1) = 0,$ | $G(x, \xi) = -\frac{1}{2}(x - \xi - x\xi + 1).$ |

2. For the equation $\frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} - y = f(x)$ with y nite in $(-\infty, \infty)$,

$$G(x, \xi) = -\frac{1}{2}e^{x-\xi}.$$

3. For the equation $\frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} + k^2 y = f(x)$ with

$$(a) \ y(0) = y(1) = 0, \quad G(x, \xi) = -\frac{\sin kx \sin k(1-\xi)}{k \sin k},$$

$$(b) \ y(-1) = y(1), \ y'(-1) = y'(1), \text{ and} \quad G(x, \xi) = \frac{\cos k(x-\xi+1)}{2k \sin k}.$$

4. For the equation $\frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} - k^2 y = f(x)$ with

$$(a) \ y(0) = y(1) = 0, \quad G(x, \xi) = -\frac{\sinh kx \sinh k(1-\xi)}{k \sinh k},$$

$$(b) \ y(-1) = y(1), \ y'(-1) = y'(1), \text{ and} \quad G(x, \xi) = -\frac{\cosh k(x-\xi+1)}{2k \sinh k}.$$

5. For the equation $\frac{d}{dx} \left(x \frac{dy}{dx} \right) = f(x)$, with $y(0)$ nite and $y(1) = 0$,

$$G(x, \xi) = \ln \xi.$$

6. For the equation $\frac{d}{dx} \left(x \frac{dy}{dx} \right) - \frac{m^2}{x} y = f(x)$, with $y(0)$ nite and $y(1) = 0$,

$$G(x, \xi) = -\frac{1}{2m} \left[\left(\frac{x}{\xi} \right)^m - (x\xi)^m \right], \quad (m = 1, 2, \dots).$$

7. For the equation $\frac{d}{dx} \left((1-x^2) \frac{dy}{dx} \right) - \frac{m^2}{1-x^2} y = f(x)$, with $y(-1)$ and $y(1)$

$$\text{nite, } G(x, \xi) = -\frac{1}{2m} \left(\frac{1+x}{1-x} \frac{1-\xi}{1+\xi} \right)^{m/2}, \quad (m = 1, 2, \dots).$$

8. For the equation $\frac{d^4 y}{dx^4} = f(x)$, with $y(0) = y'(0) = y(1) = y'(1) = 0$,

$$G(x, \xi) = -\frac{x^2(\xi-1)^2}{6} (2x\xi + x - 3\xi).$$

5.6.7 TRANSFORM TECHNIQUES

Transforms can sometimes be used to solve linear differential equations. Laplace transforms (page 585) are appropriate for initial-value problems, while Fourier transforms (page 576) are appropriate for boundary-value problems.

EXAMPLE Consider the linear second-order equation $y'' + y = p(x)$, with the initial conditions $y(0) = 0$ and $y'(0) = 0$. Multiplying this equation by e^{-sx} , and integrating with respect to x from 0 to ∞ , results in

$$\int_0^\infty e^{-sx} y''(x) dx + \int_0^\infty e^{-sx} y(x) dx = \int_0^\infty e^{-sx} p(x) dx.$$

Integrating by parts, and recognizing that $Y(s) = \mathcal{L}[y(x)] = \int_0^\infty e^{-sx} y(x) dx$ is the Laplace transform of y , this simplifies to

$$(s^2 + 1)Y(s) = \int_0^\infty e^{-sx} p(x) dx = \mathcal{L}[p(x)].$$

If $p(x) \equiv 1$, then $\mathcal{L}[p(x)] = s^{-1}$. The table of Laplace transforms (entry 20 in the table on page 606) shows that the $y(x)$ corresponding to $Y(s) = 1/[s(1 + s^2)]$ is $y(x) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}[Y(s)] = 1 - \cos x$.

5.6.8 NAMED ORDINARY DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS

1. Airy equation: $y'' = xy$
Solution: $y = c_1 \text{Ai}(x) + c_2 \text{Bi}(x)$
2. Bernoulli equation: $y' = a(x)y^n + b(x)y$
3. Bessel equation: $x^2 y'' + xy' + (\lambda^2 x^2 - n^2)y = 0$
Solution: $y = c_1 J_n(\lambda x) + c_2 Y_n(\lambda x)$
4. Bessel equation (transformed): $x^2 y'' + (2p + 1)xy' + (\lambda^2 x^{2r} + \beta^2)y = 0$
Solution: $y = x^{-p} \left[c_1 J_{q/r} \left(\frac{\lambda}{r} x^r \right) + c_2 Y_{q/r} \left(\frac{\lambda}{r} x^r \right) \right]$ $q \equiv \sqrt{p^2 - \beta^2}$
5. Bôcher equation: $y'' + \frac{1}{2} \left[\frac{m_1}{x-a_1} + \dots + \frac{m_{n-1}}{x-a_{n-1}} \right] y' + \frac{1}{4} \left[\frac{A_0 + A_1 x + \dots + A_{n-1} x^{n-1}}{(x-a_1)^{m_1} (x-a_2)^{m_2} \dots (x-a_{n-1})^{m_{n-1}}} \right] y = 0$
6. Duffin's equation: $y'' + y + \epsilon y^3 = 0$
7. Emden–Fowler equation: $(x^p y')' \pm x^\sigma y^n = 0$
8. Hypergeometric equation: $y'' + \left(\frac{1-\alpha-\alpha'}{x-a} + \frac{1-\beta-\beta'}{x-b} + \frac{1-\gamma-\gamma'}{x-c} \right) y' - \left(\frac{\alpha\alpha'}{(x-a)(b-c)} + \frac{\beta\beta'}{(x-b)(c-a)} + \frac{\gamma\gamma'}{(x-c)(a-b)} \right) \frac{(a-b)(b-c)(c-a)}{(x-a)(x-b)(x-c)} u = 0$
Solution: $y = P \left\{ \begin{matrix} a & b & c \\ \alpha & \beta & \gamma \\ \alpha' & \beta' & \gamma' \end{matrix} \middle| x \right\}$ (Riemann's P function)
9. Legendre equation: $(1 - x^2)y'' - 2xy' + n(n + 1)y = 0$
Solution: $y = c_1 P_n(x) + c_2 Q_n(x)$
10. Mathieu equation: $y'' + (a - 2q \cos 2x)y = 0$
11. Painlevé transcendent (first equation): $y'' = 6y^2 + x$

12. Parabolic cylinder equation: $y'' + (ax^2 + bx + c)y = 0$

13. Riccati equation: $y' = a(x)y^2 + b(x)y + c(x)$

5.6.9 LIAPUNOV'S DIRECT METHOD

If, as $\mathbf{x}(t)$ evolves, a function $V = V(\mathbf{x})$ can be found so that $V(\mathbf{x}(t)) > 0$ and $\frac{dV(\mathbf{x}(t))}{dt} < 0$ for $\mathbf{x} \neq \mathbf{0}$, then the system is asymptotically stable: $V[\mathbf{x}(t)] \rightarrow 0$ as $t \rightarrow \infty$.

EXAMPLE For the non-linear system of differential equations with $a > 0$

$$\dot{x}_1 = -ax_1 - x_1x_2^2, \quad \dot{x}_2 = -ax_2 + x_1^2x_2,$$

define $V = x_1^2 + x_2^2$. Since $\dot{V} = -2a(x_1^2 + x_2^2) = -2aV$ we find $V = V(\mathbf{x}(t)) = V_0 e^{-2at}$. Hence $x_1(t)$ and $x_2(t)$ both decay to 0.

5.6.10 LIE GROUPS

The invertible transformation $\{\bar{x} = \phi(x, y, a), \bar{y} = \psi(x, y, a)\}$ forms a one-parameter group if $\phi(\bar{x}, \bar{y}, b) = \phi(x, y, a + b)$ and $\psi(\bar{x}, \bar{y}, b) = \psi(x, y, a + b)$. For small a , these transformations become

$$\bar{x} = x + a\xi(x, y) + O(a^2) \quad \text{and} \quad \bar{y} = y + a\eta(x, y) + O(a^2) \quad (5.6.11)$$

where the infinitesimal generator is $X = \xi(x, y) \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + \eta(x, y) \frac{\partial}{\partial y}$. If $D = \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + y' \frac{\partial}{\partial y} + y'' \frac{\partial}{\partial y'} + \dots$, then the derivatives of the new variables are

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{y}' &= \frac{d\bar{y}}{d\bar{x}} = \frac{D\psi}{D\phi} = \frac{\psi_x + y'\psi_y}{\phi_x + y'\phi_y} = P(x, y, y', a) = y' + a\zeta_1 + O(a^2), \quad \text{and} \\ \bar{y}'' &= \frac{d\bar{y}'}{d\bar{x}} = \frac{DP}{D\phi} = \frac{P_x + y'P_y + y''P_{y'}}{\phi_x + y'\phi_y} = y'' + a\zeta_2 + O(a^2), \end{aligned} \quad (5.6.12)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} \zeta_1 &= D(\eta) - y'D(\xi) = \eta_x + (\eta_y - \xi_x)y' - y'^2\xi_y, \quad \text{and} \\ \zeta_2 &= D(\zeta_1) - y''D(\xi) = \eta_{xx} + (2\eta_{xy} - \xi_{xx})y' + (\eta_{yy} - 2\xi_{xy})y'^2 \\ &\quad - y'^3\xi_{yy} + (\eta_y - 2\xi_x - 3y'\xi_y)y''. \end{aligned} \quad (5.6.13)$$

The prolongations of X are $X^{(1)} = X + \zeta_1 \frac{\partial}{\partial y'}$ and $X^{(2)} = X^{(1)} + \zeta_2 \frac{\partial}{\partial y''}$. For a given differential equation, the different infinitesimal generators will generate an r -dimensional Lie group (L_r).

For the equation $F(x, y, y', y'') = 0$ to be invariant under the action of the above group, $X^{(2)}F|_{F=0} = 0$. When $F = y'' - f(x, y, y')$, this determining equation

becomes

$$\begin{aligned} &\eta_{xx} + (2\eta_{xy} - \xi_{xx})y' + (\eta_{yy} - 2\xi_{xy})y'^2 - y'^3\xi_{yy} \\ &\quad + (\eta_y - 2\xi_x - 3y'\xi_y)f - \left[\eta_x + (\eta_y - \xi_x)y' - y'^2\right]f_{y'} \\ &\quad - \xi f_x - \eta f_y = 0. \end{aligned} \quad (5.6.14)$$

Given the two generators $X_1 = \xi_1 \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + \eta_1 \frac{\partial}{\partial y}$ and $X_2 = \xi_2 \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + \eta_2 \frac{\partial}{\partial y}$, the pseudoscalar product is $X_1 \vee X_2 = \xi_1 \eta_2 - \xi_2 \eta_1$, and the commutator is $[X_1, X_2] = X_1 X_2 - X_2 X_1$. By a suitable choice of basis, any two-dimensional Lie algebra can be reduced to one of four types:

| No. | Commutator | Pseudoscalar | Typified by |
|-----|--------------------|-----------------------|--|
| I | $[X_1, X_2] = 0$ | $X_1 \vee X_2 \neq 0$ | $\{X_1 = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}, X_2 = \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\}$ |
| II | $[X_1, X_2] = 0$ | $X_1 \vee X_2 = 0$ | $\{X_1 = \frac{\partial}{\partial y}, X_2 = x \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\}$ |
| III | $[X_1, X_2] = X_1$ | $X_1 \vee X_2 \neq 0$ | $\{X_1 = \frac{\partial}{\partial y}, X_2 = x \frac{\partial}{\partial x} + y \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\}$ |
| IV | $[X_1, X_2] = X_1$ | $X_1 \vee X_2 = 0$ | $\{X_1 = \frac{\partial}{\partial y}, X_2 = y \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\}$ |

5.6.10.1 Integrating second-order ordinary differential equations

An algorithm for integrating second-order ordinary differential equations is given by:

1. Determine the admitted Lie algebra L_r , where r is the dimension.
2. If $r < 2$, then Lie groups are not useful for the given equation. If $r > 2$, determine a subalgebra $L_2 \subset L_r$.
3. From the commutator and pseudoscalar product, change the basis to obtain one of the four cases in the above table.
4. Introduce canonical variables specified by the change of basis into the original differential equation. Integrate this new equation.
5. Rewrite the solution in terms of the original variables.

5.6.11 STOCHASTIC DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS

A stochastic differential equation for the unknown $X(t)$ has the form (here, a and b are given):

$$dX(t) = a(X(t)) dt + b(X(t)) dB(t) \quad (5.6.15)$$

where $B(t)$ is a Brownian motion. Brownian motion has a Gaussian probability distribution and independent increments. The probability density function $f_{X(t)}$ for $X(t)$ satisfies the forward Kolmogorov equation

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} f_{X(t)}(x) = \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} [b^2(x) f_{X(t)}(x)] - \frac{\partial}{\partial x} [a(x) f_{X(t)}(x)]. \quad (5.6.16)$$

The conditional expectation of the function $\phi(X(t))$, $u(t, x) = E[\phi(X(t)) | X(0) = x]$, satisfies

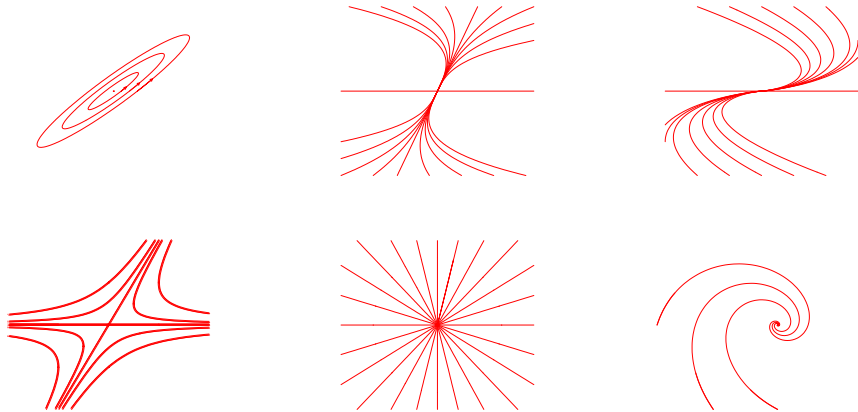
$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} u(t, x) = \frac{1}{2} b^2(x) \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} u(t, x) + a(x) \frac{\partial}{\partial x} u(t, x) \quad \text{with} \quad u(0, x) = \phi(x). \quad (5.6.17)$$

5.6.12 TYPES OF CRITICAL POINTS

An ODE may have several types of critical points; these include improper node, deficient improper node, proper node, saddle, center, and focus. See Figure 5.1.

FIGURE 5.1

Types of critical points. Clockwise from upper left: center, improper node, deficient improper node, spiral, star, saddle.



5.7 PARTIAL DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS

5.7.1 CLASSIFICATIONS OF PDES

Consider second-order partial differential equations, with two independent variables, of the form

$$A(x, y) \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} + B(x, y) \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x \partial y} + C(x, y) \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} = \Psi\left(u, \frac{\partial u}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial u}{\partial y}, x, y\right). \quad (5.7.1)$$

If $\begin{cases} B^2 - 4AC > 0 \\ B^2 - 4AC = 0 \\ B^2 - 4AC < 0 \end{cases}$ at some point (x, y) , then Equation (5.7.1) is $\begin{cases} \text{hyperbolic} \\ \text{parabolic} \\ \text{elliptic} \end{cases}$ at that point. If an equation is of the same type at all points, then the equation is simply of that type.

5.7.2 NAMED PARTIAL DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS

1. Biharmonic equation: $\nabla^4 u = 0$
2. Burgers' equation: $u_t + uu_x = \nu u_{xx}$
3. Diffusion (or heat) equation: $\nabla \cdot (c(\mathbf{x}, t) \nabla u) = u_t$
4. Hamilton–Jacobi equation: $V_t + H(t, \mathbf{x}, V_{x_1}, \dots, V_{x_n}) = 0$
5. Helmholtz equation: $\nabla^2 u + k^2 u = 0$
6. Korteweg de Vries equation: $u_t + u_{xxx} - 6uu_x = 0$
7. Laplace's equation: $\nabla^2 u = 0$
8. Navier–Stokes equations: $\mathbf{u}_t + (\mathbf{u} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{u} = -\frac{\nabla P}{\rho} + \nu \nabla^2 \mathbf{u}$
9. Poisson equation: $\nabla^2 u = -4\pi\rho(\mathbf{x})$
10. Schrödinger equation: $-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m} \nabla^2 u + V(\mathbf{x})u = i\hbar u_t$
11. Sine–Gordon equation: $u_{xx} - u_{yy} \pm \sin u = 0$
12. Tricomi equation: $u_{yy} = y u_{xx}$
13. Wave equation: $c^2 \nabla^2 u = u_{tt}$
14. Telegraph equation: $u_{xx} = au_{tt} + bu_t + cu$

5.7.3 TRANSFORMING PARTIAL DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS

To transform a partial differential equation, construct a new function which depends upon new variables, and then differentiate with respect to the old variables to see how the derivatives transform.

EXAMPLE Consider transforming

$$f_{xx} + f_{yy} + x f_y = 0, \quad (5.7.2)$$

from the $\{x, y\}$ variables to the $\{u, v\}$ variables, where $\{u = x, v = x/y\}$. Note that the inverse transformation is given by $\{x = u, y = u/v\}$.

First, define $g(u, v)$ as the function $f(x, y)$ when written in the new variables, that is

$$f(x, y) = g(u, v) = g\left(x, \frac{x}{y}\right). \quad (5.7.3)$$

Now create the needed derivative terms, carefully applying the chain rule. For example, differentiating Equation (5.7.3) with respect to x results in

$$\begin{aligned} f_x(x, y) &= g_u \frac{\partial}{\partial x}(u) + g_v \frac{\partial}{\partial x}(v) = g_1 \frac{\partial}{\partial x}(x) + g_2 \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(\frac{x}{y}\right) \\ &= g_1 + g_2 \frac{1}{y} = g_1 + \frac{v}{u} g_2, \end{aligned}$$

where a subscript of “1” (“2”) indicates a derivative with respect to the first (second) argument of the function $g(u, v)$, that is, $g_1(u, v) = g_u(u, v)$. Use of this “slot notation” tends to minimize errors. In like manner

$$\begin{aligned} f_y(x, y) &= g_u \frac{\partial}{\partial y}(u) + g_v \frac{\partial}{\partial y}(v) = g_1 \frac{\partial}{\partial y}(x) + g_2 \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(\frac{x}{y}\right) \\ &= -\frac{x}{y^2}g_2 = -\frac{v^2}{u}g_2. \end{aligned}$$

The second-order derivatives can be calculated similarly:

$$\begin{aligned} f_{xx}(x, y) &= \frac{\partial}{\partial x}(f_x(x, y)) = \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(g_1 + \frac{1}{y}g_2\right) \\ &= g_{11} + \frac{2v}{u}g_{12} + \frac{v^2}{u^2}g_{22}, \\ f_{xy}(x, y) &= \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left(-\frac{x}{y^2}g_2\right) = -\frac{u^2}{v^2}g_2 - \frac{u^3}{v^3}g_{12} - \frac{u^2}{v^2}g_{22}, \\ f_{yy}(x, y) &= \frac{\partial}{\partial y}\left(-\frac{x}{y^2}g_2\right) = \frac{2v^3}{u^2}g_2 + \frac{v^4}{u^2}g_{22}. \end{aligned}$$

Finally, Equation (5.7.2) in the new variables has the form,

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= f_{xx} + f_{yy} + x f_y \\ &= \left(g_{11} + \frac{2v}{u}g_{12} + \frac{v^2}{u^2}g_{22}\right) + \left(\frac{2v^3}{u^2}g_2 + \frac{v^4}{u^2}g_{22}\right) + (u) \left(-\frac{v^2}{u}g_2\right) \\ &= \frac{v^2(2v - u^2)}{u^2}g_v + g_{uu} + \frac{2v}{u}g_{uv} + \frac{v^2(1 + v^2)}{u^2}g_{vv}. \end{aligned}$$

5.7.4 WELL-POSEDNESS OF PDES

Partial differential equations involving $u(\mathbf{x})$ usually have the following types of boundary conditions:

1. Dirichlet conditions: $u = 0$ on the boundary
2. Neumann conditions: $\frac{\partial u}{\partial n} = 0$ on the boundary
3. Cauchy conditions: u and $\frac{\partial u}{\partial n}$ specified on the boundary

A well-posed differential equation meets these conditions:

1. The solution exists.
2. The solution is unique.
3. The solution is stable (i.e., the solution depends continuously on the boundary conditions and initial conditions).

| Type of boundary conditions | Type of equation | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|--|
| | Elliptic | Hyperbolic | Parabolic |
| Dirichlet | Undetermined | Undetermined | Unique, stable solution in one direction |
| Open surface | | | |
| Closed surface | Unique, stable solution | Undetermined | Undetermined |
| Neumann | Undetermined | Undetermined | Unique, stable solution in one direction |
| Open surface | | | |
| Closed surface | Overdetermined | Overdetermined | Overdetermined |
| Cauchy | Not physical results | Unique, stable solution | Overdetermined |
| Open surface | | | |
| Closed surface | Overdetermined | Overdetermined | Overdetermined |

5.7.5 GREEN'S FUNCTIONS

In the following, $\mathbf{r} = (x, y, z)$, $\mathbf{r}_0 = (x_0, y_0, z_0)$, $R^2 = (x - x_0)^2 + (y - y_0)^2 + (z - z_0)^2$, $P^2 = (x - x_0)^2 + (y - y_0)^2$.

1. For the potential equation $\nabla^2 G + k^2 G = -4\pi\delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0)$, with the radiation condition (outgoing waves only), the solution is

$$G = \begin{cases} \frac{2\pi i}{k} e^{ik|x-x_0|} & \text{in one dimension,} \\ i\pi H_0^{(1)}(kP) & \text{in two dimensions, and} \\ \frac{e^{ikR}}{R} & \text{in three dimensions,} \end{cases} \quad (5.7.4)$$

where $H_0^{(1)}(\cdot)$ is a Hankel function (see page 559).

2. For the n -dimensional diffusion equation

$$\nabla^2 G - a^2 \frac{\partial G}{\partial t} = -4\pi\delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0)\delta(t - t_0), \quad (5.7.5)$$

with the initial condition $G = 0$ for $t < t_0$, and the boundary condition $G = 0$ at $r = \infty$, the solution is

$$G = \frac{4\pi}{a^2} \left(\frac{a}{2\sqrt{\pi(t-t_0)}} \right)^n \exp\left(-\frac{a^2|\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0|^2}{4(t-t_0)}\right). \quad (5.7.6)$$

3. For the wave equation

$$\nabla^2 G - \frac{1}{c^2} \frac{\partial^2 G}{\partial t^2} = -4\pi\delta(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{r}_0)\delta(t - t_0), \quad (5.7.7)$$

with the initial conditions $G = G_t = 0$ for $t < t_0$, and the boundary condition $G = 0$ at $r = \infty$, the solution is

$$G = \begin{cases} 2c\pi H \left[(t - t_0) - \frac{|x - x_0|}{c} \right] & \text{in one space dimension,} \\ \frac{2c}{\sqrt{c^2(t - t_0)^2 - P^2}} H \left[(t - t_0) - \frac{P}{c} \right] & \text{in two space dimensions, and} \\ \frac{1}{R} \delta \left[\frac{R}{c} - (t - t_0) \right] & \text{in three space dimensions.} \end{cases} \quad (5.7.8)$$

where $H(\cdot)$ is the Heaviside function.

5.7.6 QUASI-LINEAR EQUATIONS

Consider the first-order quasi-linear differential equation for $u(\mathbf{x}) = u(x_1, \dots, x_N)$,

$$a_1(\mathbf{x}, u)u_{x_1} + a_2(\mathbf{x}, u)u_{x_2} + \dots + a_N(\mathbf{x}, u)u_{x_N} = b(\mathbf{x}, u). \quad (5.7.9)$$

Defining $\frac{\partial x_k}{\partial s} = a_k(\mathbf{x}, u)$, for $k = 1, 2, \dots, N$, the original equation becomes $\frac{du}{ds} = b(\mathbf{x}, u)$. To solve the original system, the ordinary differential equations for $u(s, \mathbf{t})$ and the $\{x_k(s, \mathbf{t})\}$ must be solved. Their initial conditions can often be parameterized as (with $\mathbf{t} = (t_1, \dots, t_{N-1})$)

$$\begin{aligned} u(s = 0, \mathbf{t}) &= v(\mathbf{t}), \\ x_1(s = 0, \mathbf{t}) &= h_1(\mathbf{t}), \\ x_2(s = 0, \mathbf{t}) &= h_2(\mathbf{t}), \\ &\vdots \\ x_N(s = 0, \mathbf{t}) &= h_N(\mathbf{t}), \end{aligned} \quad (5.7.10)$$

from which the solution follows. This results in an implicit solution.

EXAMPLE For the equation $u_x + x^2u_y = -yu$ with $u = f(y)$ when $x = 0$, the corresponding equations are

$$\frac{\partial x}{\partial s} = 1, \quad \frac{\partial y}{\partial s} = x^2, \quad \frac{du}{ds} = -yu.$$

The original initial data can be written parametrically as $x(s = 0, t) = 0$, $y(s = 0, t_1) = t_1$, and $u(s = 0, t_1) = f(t_1)$. Solving for x results in $x(s, t_1) = s$. The equation for y can then be integrated to yield $y(s, t_1) = \frac{s^3}{3} + t_1$. Finally, the equation for u is integrated to obtain $u(s, t_1) = f(t_1) \exp\left(-\frac{s^4}{12} - st_1\right)$. These solutions constitute an implicit solution of the original system.

In this case, it is possible to eliminate the s and t_1 variables analytically to obtain the explicit solution: $u(x, y) = f\left(y - \frac{x^3}{3}\right) \exp\left(\frac{x^4}{4} - xy\right)$.

5.7.7 SEPARATION OF VARIABLES

A solution of a linear PDE is attempted in the form $u(\mathbf{x}) = u(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) = X_1(x_1)X_2(x_2) \dots X_n(x_n)$. Logical reasoning may determine the $\{X_i\}$.

1. For example, the diffusion or heat equation in a circle is

$$\frac{\partial u}{\partial t} = \nabla^2 u = \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial}{\partial r} \left(r \frac{\partial u}{\partial r} \right) + \frac{1}{r^2} \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial \theta^2} \quad (5.7.11)$$

for the unknown $u(t, r, \theta)$, where t is time and (r, θ) are polar coordinates. If $u(t, r, \theta) = T(t)R(r)\Theta(\theta)$, then

$$\frac{1}{rR} \frac{d}{dr} \left(r \frac{dR}{dr} \right) + \frac{1}{r^2\Theta} \frac{d^2\Theta}{d\theta^2} - \frac{1}{T} \frac{dT}{dt} = 0. \quad (5.7.12)$$

Logical reasoning leads to

$$\frac{1}{T} \frac{dT}{dt} = -\lambda, \quad \frac{1}{\Theta} \frac{d^2\Theta}{d\theta^2} = -\rho, \quad r \frac{d}{dr} \left(r \frac{dR}{dr} \right) + (-\rho + r^2\lambda)R = 0,$$

where λ and ρ are unknown constants. Solving these ordinary differential equations yields the general solution,

$$\begin{aligned} u(t, r, \theta) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d\lambda \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} d\rho e^{-\lambda t} & \left[B(\lambda, \rho) \sin(\sqrt{\rho}\theta) + C(\lambda, \rho) \cos(\sqrt{\rho}\theta) \right] \\ & \times \left[D(\lambda, \rho) J_{\sqrt{\rho}}(\sqrt{\lambda}r) + E(\lambda, \rho) Y_{\sqrt{\rho}}(\sqrt{\lambda}r) \right]. \end{aligned} \quad (5.7.13)$$

Boundary conditions are required to determine the $\{B, C, D, E\}$.

2. A necessary and sufficient condition for a system with Hamiltonian $H = \frac{1}{2}(p_x^2 + p_y^2) + V(x, y)$, to be separable in elliptic, polar, parabolic, or Cartesian coordinates, is that the expression,

$$\begin{aligned} (V_{yy} - V_{xx})(-2axy - b'y - bx + d) + 2V_{xy}(ay^2 - ax^2 + by - b'x + c - c') \\ + V_x(6ay + 3b) + V_y(-6ax - 3b'), \end{aligned} \quad (5.7.14)$$

vanishes for some constants $(a, b, b', c, c', d) \neq (0, 0, 0, c, c, 0)$.

3. Consider the orthogonal coordinate system $\{u^1, u^2, u^3\}$, with the metric $\{g_{ij}\}$, and $g = g_{11}g_{22}g_{33}$. The Stäckel matrix is defined as

$$S = \begin{bmatrix} \Phi_{11}(u^1) & \Phi_{12}(u^1) & \Phi_{13}(u^1) \\ \Phi_{21}(u^2) & \Phi_{22}(u^2) & \Phi_{23}(u^2) \\ \Phi_{31}(u^3) & \Phi_{32}(u^3) & \Phi_{33}(u^3) \end{bmatrix}, \quad (5.7.15)$$

where the $\{\Phi_{ij}\}$ are tabulated in different cases. The determinant of S can be written as $s = \Phi_{11}M_{11} + \Phi_{21}M_{21} + \Phi_{31}M_{33}$, where

$$M_{11} = \begin{vmatrix} \Phi_{22} & \Phi_{23} \\ \Phi_{32} & \Phi_{33} \end{vmatrix}, \quad M_{21} = - \begin{vmatrix} \Phi_{12} & \Phi_{13} \\ \Phi_{32} & \Phi_{33} \end{vmatrix}, \quad M_{31} = \begin{vmatrix} \Phi_{12} & \Phi_{13} \\ \Phi_{22} & \Phi_{23} \end{vmatrix}. \quad (5.7.16)$$

If the separability conditions, $g_{ii} = s/M_{i1}$ and $\sqrt{g}/s = f_1(u^1)f_2(u^2)f_3(u^3)$, are met then the Helmholtz equation $\nabla^2 W + \lambda^2 W = 0$ separates with $W = X_1(u^1)X_2(u^2)X_3(u^3)$. Here the $\{X_i\}$ are defined by

$$\frac{1}{f_i} \frac{d}{du^i} \left(f_i \frac{dX_i}{du^i} \right) + X_i \sum_{j=1}^3 \alpha_j \Phi_{ij} = 0, \quad (5.7.17)$$

with $\alpha_1 = \lambda^2$, and α_2 and α_3 arbitrary.

- (a) Necessary and sufficient conditions for the separation of the Laplace equation ($\nabla^2 W = 0$) are

$$\frac{g_{ii}}{g_{jj}} = \frac{M_{j1}}{M_{i1}} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\sqrt{g}}{g_{ii}} = f_1(u^1)f_2(u^2)f_3(u^3)M_{i1}. \quad (5.7.18)$$

- (b) Necessary and sufficient conditions for the separation of the scalar Helmholtz equation are

$$g_{ii} = \frac{S}{M_{i1}} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\sqrt{g}}{S} = f_1(u^1)f_2(u^2)f_3(u^3). \quad (5.7.19)$$

EXAMPLE In parabolic coordinates $\{\mu, \nu, \psi\}$ the metric coefficients are $g_{11} = g_{22} = \mu^2 + \nu^2$ and $g_{33} = \mu^2\nu^2$. Hence, $\sqrt{g} = \mu\nu(\mu^2 + \nu^2)$. For the Stäckel matrix

$$S = \begin{bmatrix} \mu^2 & -1 & -1/\mu^2 \\ \nu^2 & 1 & -1/\nu^2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad (5.7.20)$$

(for which $s = \mu^2 + \nu^2$, $M_{11} = M_{21} = 1$, and $M_{31} = \mu^{-2} + \nu^{-2}$), the separability condition holds with $f_1 = \mu$, $f_2 = \nu$, and $f_3 = 1$. Hence, the Helmholtz equation separates in parabolic coordinates. The separated equations are

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{\mu} \frac{d}{d\mu} \left(\mu \frac{dX_1}{d\mu} \right) + X_1 \left(\alpha_1 \mu^2 - \alpha_2 - \frac{\alpha_3}{\mu^2} \right) &= 0, \\ \frac{1}{\nu} \frac{d}{d\nu} \left(\nu \frac{dX_2}{d\nu} \right) + X_2 \left(\alpha_1 \nu^2 + \alpha_2 - \frac{\alpha_3}{\nu^2} \right) &= 0, \text{ and} \\ \frac{d^2 X_3}{d\psi^2} + \alpha_3 X_3 &= 0, \end{aligned} \quad (5.7.21)$$

where $W = X_1(\mu)X_2(\nu)X_3(\psi)$.

5.7.8 SOLUTIONS OF LAPLACE'S EQUATION

1. If $\nabla^2 u = 0$ in a circle of radius R and $u(R, \theta) = f(\theta)$, for $0 \leq \theta < 2\pi$, then $u(r, \theta)$ is

$$u(r, \theta) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} \frac{R^2 - r^2}{R^2 - 2Rr \cos(\theta - \phi) + r^2} f(\phi) d\phi.$$

2. If $\nabla^2 u = 0$ in a sphere of radius one and $u(1, \theta, \phi) = f(\theta, \phi)$, then

$$u(r, \theta, \phi) = \frac{1}{4\pi} \int_0^\pi \int_0^{2\pi} f(\Theta, \Phi) \frac{1 - r^2}{(1 - 2r \cos \gamma + r^2)^{3/2}} \sin \Theta \, d\Theta \, d\Phi,$$

where $\cos \gamma = \cos \theta \cos \Theta + \sin \theta \sin \Theta \cos(\phi - \Phi)$.

3. If $\nabla^2 u = 0$ in the half plane $y \geq 0$, and $u(x, 0) = f(x)$, then

$$u(x, y) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{f(t)y}{(x-t)^2 + y^2} dt.$$

4. If $\nabla^2 u = 0$ in the half space $z \geq 0$, and $u(x, y, 0) = f(x, y)$, then

$$u(x, y, z) = \frac{z}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{f(\zeta, \eta)}{[(x-\zeta)^2 + (y-\eta)^2 + z^2]^{3/2}} d\zeta \, d\eta.$$

5.7.9 SOLUTIONS TO THE WAVE EQUATION

1. Consider the wave equation $\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} = \nabla^2 u = \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x_1^2} + \dots + \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x_n^2}$, with $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_n)$ and the initial data $u(0, \mathbf{x}) = f(\mathbf{x})$ and $u_t(0, \mathbf{x}) = g(\mathbf{x})$. When n is odd (and $n \geq 3$), the solution is

$$u(t, \mathbf{x}) = \frac{1}{1 \cdot 3 \cdots (n-2)} \left\{ \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \right)^{(n-3)/2} t^{n-2} \omega[f; \mathbf{x}, t] + \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \right)^{(n-3)/2} t^{n-2} \omega[g; \mathbf{x}, t] \right\}, \quad (5.7.22)$$

where $\omega[h; \mathbf{x}, t]$ is the average of $h(\mathbf{x})$ over the surface of an n -dimensional sphere of radius t centered at \mathbf{x} ; that is, $\omega[h; \mathbf{x}, t] = \frac{1}{\sigma_{n-1}(t)} \int h(\zeta) \, d\Omega$, where $|\zeta - \mathbf{x}|^2 = t^2$, $\sigma_{n-1}(t)$ is the surface area of the n -dimensional sphere of radius t , and $d\Omega$ is an element of area.

When n is even, the solution is given by

$$u(t, \mathbf{x}) = \frac{1}{2 \cdot 4 \cdots (n-2)} \left\{ \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \right)^{(n-2)/2} \int_0^t \omega[f; \mathbf{x}, \rho] \frac{\rho^{n-1} d\rho}{\sqrt{t^2 - \rho^2}} + \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \right)^{(n-2)/2} \int_0^t \omega[g; \mathbf{x}, \rho] \frac{\rho^{n-1} d\rho}{\sqrt{t^2 - \rho^2}} \right\}, \quad (5.7.23)$$

where $\omega[h; \mathbf{x}, t]$ is defined as above. Since this expression is integrated over ρ , the values of f and g must be known everywhere in the interior of the n -dimensional sphere.

Using u_n for the solution in n dimensions, the above simplify to

$$u_1(x, t) = \frac{1}{2} [f(x - t) + f(x + t)] + \frac{1}{2} \int_{x-t}^{x+t} g(\zeta) d\zeta, \quad (5.7.24)$$

$$u_2(\mathbf{x}, t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \iiint_{R(t)} \frac{f(x_1 + \zeta_1, x_2 + \zeta_2)}{\sqrt{t^2 - \zeta_1^2 - \zeta_2^2}} d\zeta_1 d\zeta_2 \\ + \frac{1}{2\pi} \iiint_{R(t)} \frac{g(x_1 + \zeta_1, x_2 + \zeta_2)}{\sqrt{t^2 - \zeta_1^2 - \zeta_2^2}} d\zeta_1 d\zeta_2, \quad \text{and} \quad (5.7.25)$$

$$u_3(\mathbf{x}, t) = \frac{\partial}{\partial t} (t\omega[f; \mathbf{x}, t]) + t\omega[g; \mathbf{x}, t], \quad (5.7.26)$$

where $R(t)$ is the region $\{(\zeta_1, \zeta_2) \mid \zeta_1^2 + \zeta_2^2 \leq t^2\}$ and

$$\omega[h; \mathbf{x}, t] = \frac{1}{4\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^\pi h(x_1 + t \sin \theta \cos \phi, x_2 + t \sin \theta \sin \phi, \\ x_3 + t \cos \theta) \times \sin \theta d\theta d\phi. \quad (5.7.27)$$

2. The solution of the one-dimensional wave equation

$$v_{tt} = c^2 v_{xx} \\ v(0, t) = 0, \quad \text{for } 0 < t < \infty, \quad (5.7.28) \\ v(x, 0) = f(x), \quad \text{for } 0 \leq x < \infty, \\ v_t(x, 0) = g(x), \quad \text{for } 0 \leq x < \infty,$$

is

$$v(x, t) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2} [f(x + ct) + f(x - ct)] + \frac{1}{2c} \int_{x-ct}^{x+ct} g(\zeta) d\zeta, & \text{for } x \geq ct, \\ \frac{1}{2} [f(x + ct) - f(ct - x)] + \frac{1}{2c} \int_{ct-x}^{x+ct} g(\zeta) d\zeta, & \text{for } x < ct. \end{cases} \quad (5.7.29)$$

3. The solution of the inhomogeneous wave equation

$$\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial t^2} - \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} - \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial y^2} - \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial z^2} = F(t, x, y, z), \quad (5.7.30)$$

with the initial conditions $u(0, x, y, z) = 0$ and $u_t(0, x, y, z) = 0$, is

$$u(t, x, y, z) = \frac{1}{4\pi} \iiint_{\rho \leq t} \frac{F(t - \rho, \zeta, \eta, \xi)}{\rho} d\zeta d\eta d\xi, \quad (5.7.31)$$

with $\rho = \sqrt{(x - \zeta)^2 + (y - \eta)^2 + (z - \xi)^2}$.

5.7.10 PARTICULAR SOLUTIONS TO SOME PDES

In these tables, we assume that $P(x)$ is a polynomial of degree n .

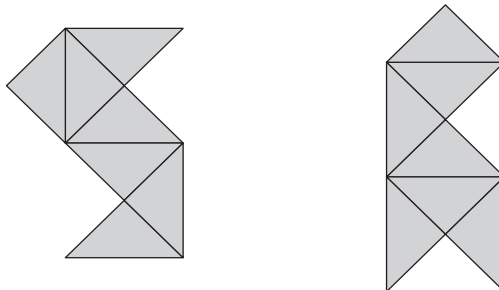
| If $R(x)$ is | A particular solution to $z_x + mz_y = R(x, y)$ is |
|---------------------------|---|
| (1) e^{ax+by} | $e^{ax+by}/(a + mb)$. |
| (2) $f(ax + by)$ | $\int f(y) du/(a + mb), \quad u = ax + by$. |
| (3) $f(y - mx)$ | $xf(y - mx)$. |
| (4) $\phi(x, y)f(y - mx)$ | evaluate $f(y - mx) \int \phi(x, a + mx) dx$; then substitute $a = y - mx$. |

| If $R(x)$ is | A particular solution to $z_x + mz_y - kz = R(x, y)$ is |
|--|--|
| (5) e^{ax+by} | $e^{ax+by}/(a + mb - k)$. |
| (6) $\sin(ax + by)$ | $-\frac{(a+bm) \cos(ax+by) + k \sin(ax+by)}{(a+bm)^2 + k^2}$. |
| (7) $e^{\alpha x + \beta y} \sin(ax + by)$ | Replace k by $k - \alpha - m\beta$ in formula (6) and multiply by $e^{\alpha x + \beta y}$. |
| (8) $e^{kx} f(ax + by)$ | $e^{kx} \int f(y) du/(a + mb), \quad u = ax + by$. |
| (9) $f(y - mx)$ | $-f(y - mx)/k$. |
| (10) $P(x)f(y - mx)$ | $-\frac{1}{k} f(y - mx) \left[P(x) + \frac{P'(x)}{k} + \frac{P''(x)}{k^2} + \dots + \frac{P^{(n)}(x)}{k^n} \right]$. |
| (11) $e^{kx} f(y - mx)$ | $xe^{kx} f(y - mx)$. |

5.8 EIGENVALUES

The *eigenvalues* $\{\lambda_i\}$ of the differential operator L are the solutions of $L[u_i] = \lambda_i u_i$. Given a geometric shape, the eigenvalues of the Dirichlet problem are called *eigenfrequencies* (that is, $\nabla^2 u = \lambda u$ with $u = 0$ on the boundary).

(a) You cannot hear the shape of a drum. The following gures have the same eigenfrequencies.



(b) You cannot hear the shape of a two-piece band. The following pairs of figures have the same eigenfrequencies.



5.9 INTEGRAL EQUATIONS

5.9.1 DEFINITIONS

$$h(x)u(x) = f(x) + \lambda \int_a^{b(x)} k(x, t)G[u(t); t] dt. \quad (5.9.1)$$

- $k(x, t)$ kernel
- $u(x)$ function to be determined
- $h(x), f(x), b(x), G[z, t]$ given functions
- λ eigenvalue

5.9.1.1 Classification of integral equations

1. Linear $G[u(x); x] = u(x)$
2. Volterra $b(x) = x$
3. Fredholm $b(x) = b$
4. First kind $h(x) = 0$
5. Second kind $h(x) = 1$
6. Third kind $h(x) \neq \text{constant}$
7. Homogeneous $f(x) = 0$
8. Singular $a = -\infty, b = \infty$

5.9.1.2 Classification of kernels

1. Symmetric $k(x, t) = \overline{k(t, x)}$
2. Hermitian $k(x, t) = \overline{k(t, x)}$
3. Separable/degenerate $k(x, t) = \sum_{i=1}^n a_i(x)b_i(t), n < \infty$
4. Difference $k(x, t) = k(x - t)$
5. Cauchy $k(x, t) = \frac{1}{x-t}$
6. Singular $k(x, t) \rightarrow \infty$ as $t \rightarrow x$
7. Hilbert–Schmidt $\int_a^b \int_a^b |k(x, t)|^2 dx dt < \infty$

5.9.2 CONNECTION TO DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS

The initial-value problem

$$\begin{aligned}u''(x) + A(x)u'(x) + B(x)u(x) &= g(x), & x > a, \\u(a) = c_1, \quad u'(a) &= c_2,\end{aligned}\tag{5.9.2}$$

is equivalent to the Volterra integral equation,

$$\begin{aligned}u(x) &= f(x) + \int_a^x k(x, t)u(t) dt, & x \geq a, \\f(x) &= \int_a^x (x-t)g(t) dt + (x-a)[A(a)c_1 + c_2] + c_1, \\k(x, t) &= (t-x)[B(t) - A'(t)] - A(t).\end{aligned}\tag{5.9.3}$$

The boundary-value problem

$$\begin{aligned}u''(x) + A(x)u'(x) + B(x)u(x) &= g(x), & a < x < b, \\u(a) = c_1, \quad u(b) &= c_2,\end{aligned}\tag{5.9.4}$$

is equivalent to the Fredholm integral equation

$$\begin{aligned}u(x) &= f(x) + \int_a^b k(x, t)u(t) dt, & a \leq x \leq b, \\f(x) &= c_1 + \int_a^x (x-t)g(t) dt + \frac{x-a}{b-a} \left[c_2 - c_1 - \int_a^b (b-t)g(t) dt \right], \\k(x, t) &= \begin{cases} \frac{x-b}{b-a} \{A(t) - (a-t)[A'(t) - B(t)]\}, & x > t, \\ \frac{x-a}{b-a} \{A(t) - (b-t)[A'(t) - B(t)]\}, & x < t. \end{cases}\end{aligned}\tag{5.9.5}$$

5.9.3 FREDHOLM ALTERNATIVE

For $u(x) = f(x) + \lambda \int_a^b k(x, t)u(t) dt$ with $\lambda \neq 0$, consider the solutions to $u_H(x) = \lambda \int_a^b k(x, t)u_H(t) dt$.

1. If the only solution is $u_H(x) = 0$, then there is a unique solution $u(x)$.
2. If $u_H(x) \neq 0$, then there is no solution unless $\int_a^b u_H^*(t)f(t) dt = 0$ for all $u_H^*(x)$ such that $u_H^*(x) = \lambda \int_a^b k(t, x)u_H^*(t) dt$. In this case, there are infinitely many solutions.

5.9.4 SPECIAL EQUATIONS WITH SOLUTIONS

1. Generalized Abel equation:
$$\int_0^x \frac{u(t) dt}{[h(x) - h(t)]^\alpha} = f(x)$$

Solution is

$$u(x) = \frac{\sin(\alpha\pi)}{\pi} \frac{d}{dx} \int_0^x \frac{h'(t)f(t) dt}{[h(x) - h(t)]^{1-\alpha}} \quad (5.9.6)$$

where $0 \leq x \leq 1$, $0 \leq \alpha < 1$, $0 \leq h(x) \leq 1$, $h'(x) > 0$, and $h'(x)$ is continuous.

2. Cauchy equation:
$$\mu u(x) = f(x) + \int_0^1 \frac{u(t)}{t-x} dt$$

Solution is

$$u(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{x^\gamma \sin^2(\pi\gamma)}{\pi^2} \frac{d}{dx} \int_x^1 \frac{ds}{(s-x)^\gamma} \int_0^s \frac{t^{-\gamma} f(t)}{(s-t)^{1-\gamma}} dt, & \mu < 0, \\ \frac{(1-x)^\gamma \sin^2(\pi\gamma)}{\pi^2} \frac{d}{dx} \int_0^x \frac{ds}{(x-s)^\gamma} \int_s^1 \frac{(1-t)^{-\gamma} f(t)}{(t-s)^{1-\gamma}} dt, & \mu > 0, \end{cases} \quad (5.9.7)$$

where $0 < x < 1$, μ is real, $\mu \neq 0$, $|\mu| = \pi \cot(\pi\gamma)$, $0 < \gamma < 1/2$, and the integral is a Cauchy principal value integral.

3. Volterra equation with difference kernel:
$$u(x) = f(x) + \lambda \int_0^x k(x-t)u(t) dt$$

Solution is

$$u(x) = \mathcal{L}^{-1} \left[\frac{F(s)}{1 - \lambda K(s)} \right], \quad (5.9.8)$$

for $x \geq 0$, $\mathcal{L}[f(x)] = F(s)$ and $\mathcal{L}[k(x)] = K(s)$.

4. Singular equation with difference kernel:
$$u(x) = f(x) + \lambda \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} k(x-t)u(t) dt$$

Solution is

$$u(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-i\alpha x} \frac{F(\alpha)}{1 - \lambda K(\alpha)} d\alpha \quad (5.9.9)$$

where $-\infty < x < \infty$, $F(\alpha) = \mathcal{F}[f(x)]$, and $K(\alpha) = \mathcal{F}[k(x)]$.

5. Fredholm equation with separable kernel:

$$u(x) = f(x) + \lambda \int_a^b \sum_{k=1}^n a_k(x)b_k(t)u(t) dt$$

Solution is

$$u(x) = f(x) + \lambda \sum_{k=1}^n c_k a_k(x), \quad (5.9.10)$$

with $c_m = \int_a^b b_m(t)f(t) dt + \lambda \sum_{k=1}^n c_k \int_a^b b_m(t)a_k(t) dt$ where $a \leq x \leq b$, $n < \infty$, and $m = 1, 2, \dots, n$.

6. Fredholm equation with symmetric kernel: $u(x) = f(x) + \lambda \int_a^b k(x, t)u(t) dt$

Solve $u_n(x) = \lambda_n \int_a^b k(x, t)u_n(t) dt$ for $\{u_n, \lambda_n\}_{n=1,2,\dots}$. Then

(a) For $\lambda \neq \lambda_n$, solution is $u(x) = f(x) + \lambda \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{u_n(x) \int_a^b f(t)u_n(t) dt}{(\lambda_n - \lambda) \int_a^b u_n^2(t) dt}$.

(b) For $\lambda = \lambda_n$ and $\int_a^b f(t)u_m(t) dt = 0$ for all m , solutions are

$$u(x) = f(x) + cu_m(x) + \lambda_m \sum_{\substack{n=1 \\ n \neq m}}^{\infty} \frac{u_n(x) \int_a^b f(t)u_n(t) dt}{(\lambda_n - \lambda_m) \int_a^b u_n^2(t) dt},$$

for $m = 1, 2, \dots$

where $a \leq x \leq b$, and $k(x, t) = k(t, x)$ (see Section 5.9.3).

7. Volterra equation of second kind: $u(x) = f(x) + \lambda \int_a^x k(x, t)u(t) dt$

Solution is

$$u(x) = f(x) + \lambda \int_a^x \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \lambda^n k_{n+1}(x, t) f(t) dt, \tag{5.9.11}$$

where $k_1(x, t) = k(x, t)$, $k_{n+1}(x, t) = \int_t^x k(x, s)k_n(s, t) ds$, when $k(x, t)$ and $f(x)$ are continuous, $\lambda \neq 0$, and $x \geq a$.

8. Fredholm equation of second kind: resolvent kernel

$$u(x) = f(x) + \lambda \int_a^b k(x, t)u(t) dt \tag{5.9.12}$$

Solution is

$$u(x) = f(x) + \lambda \int_a^b \frac{D(x, t; \lambda)}{D(\lambda)} f(t) dt, \tag{5.9.13}$$

where

$$D(\lambda) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-\lambda)^n c_n}{n!},$$

$$c_0 = 1, \quad c_n = \int_a^b A_{n-1}(t, t) dt, \quad n = 1, 2, \dots, \tag{5.9.14}$$

$$D(x, t; \lambda) = k(x, t) + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-\lambda)^n}{n!} A_n(x, t),$$

$$A_0(x, t) = k(x, t)$$

$$A_n(x, t) = c_n k(x, t) - n \int_a^b k(x, s) A_{n-1}(s, t) ds$$

where $k(x, t)$ and $f(x)$ are continuous, $\lambda \neq 0$, $a \leq x \leq b$, and $D(\lambda) \neq 0$.

9. Fredholm equation of second kind: Neumann series

$$u(x) = f(x) + \lambda \int_a^b k(x, t)u(t) dt \quad (5.9.15)$$

Solution is

$$u(x) = f(x) + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \lambda^n \phi_n(x), \quad (5.9.16)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_n(x) &= \int_a^b k_n(x, s) f(s) ds, \\ k_1(x, s) &= k(x, s), \\ \text{and } k_n(x, s) &= \int_a^b k(x, t)k_{n-1}(t, s) dt, \quad n = 2, 3, \dots, \end{aligned} \quad (5.9.17)$$

where $|\lambda| < \left(\int_a^b \int_a^b k^2(x, t) dx dt \right)^{-1/2}$, $\lambda \neq 0$, and $a \leq x \leq b$.

5.10 TENSOR ANALYSIS

5.10.1 DEFINITIONS

1. An n -dimensional coordinate manifold of class C^k , $k \geq 1$, is a point set M together with the totality of allowable coordinate systems on M . An allowable coordinate system (ϕ, U) on M is a one-to-one mapping $\phi : U \rightarrow M$, where U is an open subset of \mathbb{R}^n . The n -tuple $(x^1, \dots, x^n) \in U$ give the coordinates of the corresponding point $\phi(x^1, \dots, x^n) \in M$. If $(\tilde{\phi}, \tilde{U})$ is a second coordinate system on M , then the one-to-one correspondence $\tilde{\phi}^{-1} \circ \phi : U \rightarrow \tilde{U}$, called a coordinate transformation on M , is assumed to be of class C^k . It may be written as

$$\tilde{x}^i = \tilde{f}^i(x^1, \dots, x^n), \quad i = 1, \dots, n, \quad (5.10.1)$$

where the \tilde{f} are defined by $(\tilde{\phi}^{-1} \circ \phi)(x^1, \dots, x^n) = (\tilde{f}^1(x^1, \dots, x^n), \dots, \tilde{f}^n(x^1, \dots, x^n))$. The coordinate transformation $\tilde{\phi}^{-1} \circ \phi$ has inverse $\phi^{-1} \circ \tilde{\phi}$, expressible in terms of the coordinates as

$$x^i = f^i(\tilde{x}^1, \dots, \tilde{x}^n), \quad i = 1, \dots, n. \quad (5.10.2)$$

2. In the *Einstein summation convention* a repeated upper and lower index signifies summation over the range $k = 1, \dots, n$.

3. The Jacobian matrix of the transformation, $\frac{\partial \tilde{x}^i}{\partial x^j}$, satisfies $\frac{\partial \tilde{x}^i}{\partial x^k} \frac{\partial x^k}{\partial \tilde{x}^j} = \delta_j^i$ and $\frac{\partial x^i}{\partial \tilde{x}^k} \frac{\partial \tilde{x}^k}{\partial x^j} = \delta_j^i$, where $\delta_j^i = \begin{cases} 1, & i = j \\ 0, & i \neq j \end{cases}$ denotes the Kronecker delta. Note also that $\det \left(\frac{\partial \tilde{x}^i}{\partial x^j} \right) \neq 0$.
4. A function $F : M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is called a *scalar invariant* on M . The *coordinate representation* of F in any coordinate system (ϕ, U) is defined by $f := F \circ \phi$. The coordinate representations \tilde{f} of F with respect to a second coordinate system $(\tilde{\phi}, \tilde{U})$ is related to f by $\tilde{f}(\tilde{x}^1, \dots, \tilde{x}^n) = f(f^1(\tilde{x}^1, \dots, \tilde{x}^n), \dots, f^n(\tilde{x}^1, \dots, \tilde{x}^n))$.
5. A *parameterized curve* on M is a mapping $\gamma : I \rightarrow M$, where $I \subset \mathbb{R}$ is some interval. The *coordinate representation* of γ in any coordinate system (ϕ, U) is a mapping $g : I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ defined by $g = \phi^{-1} \circ \gamma$. The mapping g defines a parameterized curve in \mathbb{R}^n . The component functions of g denoted by g^i (for $i = 1, \dots, n$) are defined by $g(t) = (g^1(t), \dots, g^n(t))$. The curve γ is C^k if, and only if, the functions g^i are C^k for every coordinate system on M . The coordinate representation \tilde{g} of γ with respect to a second coordinate system $(\tilde{\phi}, \tilde{U})$ is related to g by $\tilde{g}^i(t) = \tilde{f}^i(g^1(t), \dots, g^n(t))$.
6. A *mixed tensor* T of *contravariant valence* r , *covariant valence* s , and *weight* w at $p \in M$, called a tensor of type (r, s, w) , is an object which, with respect to each coordinate system on M , is represented by n^{r+s} real numbers whose values in any two coordinate systems, ϕ and $\tilde{\phi}$, are related by

$$\tilde{T}^{i_1 \dots i_r}_{j_1 \dots j_s} = \left[\det \left(\frac{\partial x^i}{\partial \tilde{x}^j} \right) \right]^w T^{k_1 \dots k_r}_{\ell_1 \dots \ell_s} \underbrace{\frac{\partial \tilde{x}^{i_1}}{\partial x^{k_1}} \dots \frac{\partial \tilde{x}^{i_r}}{\partial x^{k_r}}}_{r \text{ factors}} \underbrace{\frac{\partial x^{\ell_1}}{\partial \tilde{x}^{j_1}} \dots \frac{\partial x^{\ell_s}}{\partial \tilde{x}^{j_s}}}_{s \text{ factors}}. \quad (5.10.3)$$

The superscripts are called *contravariant indices* and the subscripts *covariant indices*. If $w \neq 0$, then T is said to be a *relative tensor*. If $w = 0$, then T is said to be an *absolute tensor* or a tensor of type (r, s) . In the sequel only absolute tensors, which will be called tensors, will be considered unless otherwise indicated. A *tensor field* T of type (r, s) is an assignment of a tensor of type (r, s) to each point of M . A tensor field T is C^k if its component functions are C^k for every coordinate system on M .

5.10.2 ALGEBRAIC TENSOR OPERATIONS

1. *Addition*: The components of the *sum* of the tensors T_1 and T_2 of type (r, s) are given by

$$T_3^{i_1 \dots i_r}_{j_1 \dots j_s} = T_1^{i_1 \dots i_r}_{j_1 \dots j_s} + T_2^{i_1 \dots i_r}_{j_1 \dots j_s}. \quad (5.10.4)$$

2. *Multiplication*: The components of the *tensor* or *outer product* of a tensor T_1 of type (r, s) and a tensor T_2 of type (t, u) are given by

$$T_3^{i_1 \dots i_r k_1 \dots k_t}_{j_1 \dots j_s \ell_1 \dots \ell_u} = T_1^{i_1 \dots i_r}_{j_1 \dots j_s} T_2^{k_1 \dots k_t}_{\ell_1 \dots \ell_u}. \quad (5.10.5)$$

3. *Contraction*: The components of the *contraction* of the t^{th} contravariant index with the u^{th} covariant index of a tensor T of type (r, s) , with $rs \neq 0$, are given by $T^{i_1 \dots i_{t-1} k i_{t+1} \dots i_r}_{j_1 \dots j_{u-1} k j_{u+1} \dots j_s}$.
4. *Permutation of indices*: Let T be any tensor of type $(0, r)$ and S_r the group of permutations of the set $\{1, \dots, r\}$. The components of the tensor obtained by permuting the indices of T with any $\sigma \in S_r$, are given by $(\sigma T)_{i_1 \dots i_r} = T_{i_{\sigma(1)} \dots i_{\sigma(r)}}$. The *symmetric part* of T , denoted by $\mathcal{S}(T)$, is the tensor whose components are given by

$$\mathcal{S}(T)_{i_1 \dots i_r} = T_{(i_1 \dots i_r)} = \frac{1}{r!} \sum_{\sigma \in S_r} T_{i_{\sigma(1)} \dots i_{\sigma(r)}}. \quad (5.10.6)$$

The tensor T is said to be *symmetric* if, and only if, $T_{i_1 \dots i_r} = T_{(i_1 \dots i_r)}$. The *skew symmetric part* of T , denoted by $\mathcal{A}(T)$, is the tensor whose components are given by

$$\mathcal{A}(T)_{i_1 \dots i_r} = T_{[i_1 \dots i_r]} = \frac{1}{r!} \sum_{\sigma \in S_r} \text{sgn}(\sigma) T_{i_{\sigma(1)} \dots i_{\sigma(r)}}, \quad (5.10.7)$$

where $\text{sgn}(\sigma) = \pm 1$ according to whether σ is an even or odd permutation. The tensor T is said to be *skew symmetric* if, and only if, $T_{i_1 \dots i_r} = T_{[i_1 \dots i_r]}$. If $r = 2$, $\mathcal{S}(T)_{i_1 i_2} = \frac{1}{2}(T_{i_1 i_2} + T_{i_2 i_1})$ and $\mathcal{A}(T)_{i_1 i_2} = \frac{1}{2}(T_{i_1 i_2} - T_{i_2 i_1})$.

5.10.3 DIFFERENTIATION OF TENSORS

- In tensor analysis a comma is used to denote partial differentiation and a semicolon to denote covariant differentiation. For example, $A_{ij\dots l,n}$ denotes $\partial A_{ij\dots l} / \partial x^n$.
- A *linear connection* ∇ at $p \in M$ is an object which, with respect to each coordinate system on M , is represented by n^3 real numbers Γ^i_{jk} , called the *connection coefficients*, whose values in any two coordinate systems ϕ and $\tilde{\phi}$ are related by

$$\tilde{\Gamma}^i_{jk} = \Gamma^{\ell mn} \frac{\partial \tilde{x}^i}{\partial x^\ell} \frac{\partial x^m}{\partial \tilde{x}^j} \frac{\partial x^n}{\partial \tilde{x}^k} + \frac{\partial^2 x^\ell}{\partial \tilde{x}^j \partial \tilde{x}^k} \frac{\partial \tilde{x}^i}{\partial x^\ell}. \quad (5.10.8)$$

The quantities Γ^i_{jk} are *not* the components of a tensor of type $(1, 2)$. A linear connection ∇ on M is an assignment of a linear connection to each point of M . A connection ∇ is C^k if its connection coefficients Γ^i_{jk} are C^k in every coordinate system on M .

- The components of the *covariant derivative* of a tensor field T of type (r, s) , with respect to a connection ∇ , are given by

$$\begin{aligned} \nabla_k T^{i_1 \dots i_r}_{j_1 \dots j_s} &= \partial_k T^{i_1 \dots i_r}_{j_1 \dots j_s} + \Gamma^{i_1}_{\ell k} T^{\ell i_2 \dots i_r}_{j_1 \dots j_s} + \dots \\ &\dots + \Gamma^{i_r}_{\ell k} T^{i_1 \dots i_{r-1} \ell}_{j_1 \dots j_s} - \Gamma^\ell_{j_1 k} T^{i_1 \dots i_r}_{\ell j_2 \dots j_s} - \dots - \Gamma^\ell_{j_s k} T^{i_1 \dots i_r}_{j_1 \dots j_{s-1} \ell}, \end{aligned} \quad (5.10.9)$$

where

$$\partial_k T^{i_1 \dots i_r}_{j_1 \dots j_s} = T^{i_1 \dots i_r}_{j_1 \dots j_s, k} = \frac{\partial T^{i_1 \dots i_r}_{j_1 \dots j_s}}{\partial x^k}. \quad (5.10.10)$$

This formula has this structure:

- (a) Apart from the partial derivative term, there is a negative affine term for each covariant index and a positive affine term for each contravariant index.
 - (b) The second subscript in the Γ -symbols is always the differentiated index (k in this case).
4. Let $Y^i(t)$ be a contravariant vector field and $Z_i(t)$ a covariant vector field defined along a parameterized curve γ . The *absolute covariant derivatives* of Y^i and Z_i are defined as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\delta Y^i}{\delta t} &= \frac{dY^i}{dt} + \Gamma^i_{jk} Y^j \frac{dx^k}{dt} \\ \frac{\delta Z_i}{\delta t} &= \frac{dZ_i}{dt} - \Gamma^j_{ik} Z_j \frac{dx^k}{dt} \end{aligned} \quad (5.10.11)$$

where x^i denotes the components of γ in the coordinate system ϕ . This derivative may also be defined for tensor fields of type (r, s) defined along γ . The derivative has the same structure as Equation (5.10.9).

5. A vector field $Y^i(t)$ is said to be *parallel along* a parameterized curve γ if $\frac{\delta Y^i}{\delta t} = 0$.
6. A parameterized curve γ in M is said to be an *affinely parameterized geodesic* if the component functions of γ satisfy

$$\frac{\delta}{\delta t} \left(\frac{dx^i}{dt} \right) = \frac{d^2 x^i}{dt^2} + \Gamma^i_{jk} \frac{dx^j}{dt} \frac{dx^k}{dt} = 0$$

which is equivalent to the statement that the tangent vector $\frac{dx^i}{dt}$ to γ is parallel along γ .

7. The components of the *torsion tensor* S of ∇ on M are defined by

$$S^i_{jk} = \Gamma^i_{jk} - \Gamma^i_{kj}. \quad (5.10.12)$$

8. The components of the *curvature tensor* R of ∇ on M are defined by

$$R^i_{jkl} = \partial_k \Gamma^i_{jl} - \partial_l \Gamma^i_{jk} + \Gamma^m_{j\ell} \Gamma^i_{mk} - \Gamma^m_{jk} \Gamma^i_{m\ell}. \quad (5.10.13)$$

In some references R is defined with the opposite sign.

9. The *Ricci tensor* of ∇ is defined by $R_{jk} = R^{\ell}_{j k \ell}$.

5.10.4 METRIC TENSOR

1. A *covariant metric tensor field* on M is a tensor field g_{ij} which satisfies $g_{ij} = g_{ji}$ and $g = \det(g_{ij}) \neq 0$ on M . The *contravariant metric* g^{ij} satisfies $g^{ik}g_{kj} = \delta_j^i$. The *line element* is expressible in terms of the metric tensor as $ds^2 = g_{ij}dx^i dx^j$.
2. *Signature of the metric:* For each $p \in M$, a coordinate system exists such that $g_{ij}(p) = \text{diag}(\underbrace{1, \dots, 1}_r, \underbrace{-1, \dots, -1}_{n-r})$. The *signature* of g_{ij} is defined to be

$s = 2r - n$. It is independent of the coordinate system in which $g_{ij}(p)$ has the above diagonal form and is the same at every $p \in M$. A metric is said to be *positive definite* if $s = n$.

A manifold admitting a positive definite metric is called a *Riemannian manifold*. A metric is said to be *indefinite* if $s \neq \pm n$. A manifold, admitting an indefinite metric is called a *pseudo-Riemannian manifold*. If $s = \pm(n - 2)$ the metric is said to be *Lorentzian* and the corresponding manifold is called a *Lorentzian manifold*.

3. The *inner product* of a pair of vectors X^i and Y^j is given by $g_{ij}X^iY^j$. If $X^i = Y^i$, then $g_{ij}X^iX^j$ defines the “square” of the length of X^i . If g_{ij} is positive definite, then $g_{ij}X^iX^j \geq 0$ for all X^i , and $g_{ij}X^iX^j = 0$ if, and only if, $X^i = 0$. In the positive definite case, the *angle* θ between two tangent vectors X^i and Y^j is defined by $\cos \theta = g_{ij}X^iY^j / (g_{kl}X^kX^l g_{mn}Y^mY^n)^{\frac{1}{2}}$. If g is indefinite, $g_{ij}X^iX^j$ may have a positive, negative, or zero value. A non-zero vector X^i , satisfying $g_{ij}X^iX^j = 0$, is called a *null vector*. If g_{ij} is indefinite, it is not possible in general to define the angle between two tangent vectors.
4. *Operation of lowering indices:* The components of the tensor resulting from lowering the t^{th} contravariant index of a tensor T of type (r, s) , with $r \geq 1$, are given by

$$T^{i_1 \dots i_{t-1} i_{t+1} \dots i_r}_{j_1 \dots j_s} = g_{i_t k} T^{i_1 \dots i_{t-1} k i_{t+1} \dots i_r}_{j_1 \dots j_s} \quad (5.10.14)$$

5. *Operation of raising indices:* The components of the tensor resulting from raising the t^{th} covariant index of a tensor T of type (r, s) , with $s \geq 1$, are given by

$$T^{i_1 \dots i_r}_{j_1 \dots j_{t-1} j_{t+1} \dots j_s} = g^{j_t k} T^{i_1 \dots i_r}_{j_1 \dots j_{t-1} k j_{t+1} \dots j_s} \quad (5.10.15)$$

6. The *arc length* of a parameterized curve $\gamma : I \rightarrow M$, where $I = [a, b]$, and ϕ is any coordinate system, is defined by

$$L = \int_a^b \sqrt{\epsilon g_{ij}(x^1(t), \dots, x^n(t)) \dot{x}^i \dot{x}^j} dt, \quad (5.10.16)$$

where $\epsilon = \text{sgn}(g_{ij}\dot{x}^i\dot{x}^j) = \pm 1$ and $\dot{x}^i = \frac{dx^i}{dt}$.

5.10.5 RESULTS

The following results hold on any manifold M admitting any connection ∇ :

1. The covariant derivative operator ∇_k is linear with respect to tensor addition, satisfies the product rule with respect to tensor multiplication, and commutes with contractions of tensors.
2. If T is any tensor of type $(0, r)$, then

$$\nabla_{[k} T_{i_1 \dots i_r]} = T_{[i_1 \dots i_r, k]} - \frac{1}{2} \left(S_{[i_1 k}^\ell T_{|\ell| i_2 \dots i_r]} + \dots + S_{[i_r k}^\ell T_{i_1 \dots i_{r-1} \ell]} \right), \quad (5.10.17)$$

where $||$ indicates that the enclosed indices are excluded from the symmetrization. Thus $T_{[i_1 \dots i_r, k]}$ denotes a tensor of type $(0, r + 1)$, and $\nabla_{[k} T_{i_1 \dots i_r]} = T_{[i_1 \dots i_r, k]}$ in the torsion free case. If $T_j = \nabla_j f = f_{,j}$, where f is any scalar invariant, then $\nabla_{[i} \nabla_{j]} f = \frac{1}{2} f_{,k} S^k_{ij}$. In the torsion free case, $\nabla_i \nabla_j f = \nabla_j \nabla_i f$.

3. If X^i is any contravariant vector field on M , then the identity $2\nabla_{[j} \nabla_{k]} X^i + \nabla_\ell X^i S^\ell_{jk} = X^\ell R^\ell_{ijk}$, called the *Ricci identity*, reduces to $2\nabla_{[j} \nabla_{k]} X^i = R^\ell_{ijk} X^\ell$, in the torsion free case. If Y_i is any covariant vector field, the Ricci identity has the form $2\nabla_{[i} \nabla_{j]} Y_k - \nabla_\ell Y_k S^\ell_{ij} = -Y_\ell R^\ell_{kij}$. The Ricci identity may be extended to tensor fields of type (r, s) . For the tensor field T^i_{jk} , it has the form

$$2\nabla_{[i} \nabla_{j]} T^k_{\ell m} - \nabla_n T^k_{\ell m} S^n_{ij} = T^n_{\ell m} R^k_{nij} - T^k_{nm} R^n_{\ell ij} - T^k_{\ell n} R^n_{mij}. \quad (5.10.18)$$

If g is any metric tensor field, the above identity implies that

$$R_{(ij)k\ell} = \nabla_{[k} \nabla_{\ell]} g_{ij} - \frac{1}{2} \nabla_m g_{ij} S^m_{k\ell}.$$

4. The torsion tensor S and curvature tensor R satisfy the following identities:

$$S^i_{(jk)} = 0, \quad 0 = R^i_{j[k\ell; m]} - R^i_{jn[k} S^m_{\ell m]}, \quad (5.10.19)$$

$$R^i_{j(k\ell)} = 0, \quad R^i_{[jk\ell]} = -S^i_{[jk; \ell]} + S^i_{m[j} S^m_{k\ell]}. \quad (5.10.20)$$

In the torsion free case, these identities reduce to the *cyclical identity* $R^i_{[jk\ell]} = 0$ and *Bianchi's identity* $R^i_{j[k\ell; m]} = 0$.

The following results hold for any pseudo-Riemannian manifold M with a metric tensor field g_{ij} :

1. A unique connection ∇ called the *Levi-Civita* or *pseudo-Riemannian connection* with vanishing torsion ($S^i_{jk} = 0$) exists that satisfies $\nabla_i g_{jk} = 0$. It follows that $\nabla_i g^{jk} = 0$. *Christoffel symbols of the first kind*. The connection coefficients of ∇ , called the *Christoffel symbols of the second kind*, are given by $\Gamma^i_{jk} = g^{i\ell} [jk, \ell]$, where $[jk, \ell] = \frac{1}{2} (g_{j\ell, k} + g_{k\ell, j} - g_{jk, \ell})$ are the $\Gamma^k_{jk} = \frac{1}{2} \partial_j (\log g) = |g|^{-\frac{1}{2}} \partial_j |g|^{\frac{1}{2}}$ and $g_{i,j,k} = [ki, j] + [kj, i]$.

-
2. The operations of raising and lowering indices commute with the covariant derivative. For example if $X_i = g_{ij}X^j$, then $\nabla_k X_i = g_{ij}\nabla_k X^j$.
 3. The *divergence* of a vector X^i is given by $\nabla_i X^i = |g|^{-\frac{1}{2}}\partial_i(|g|^{\frac{1}{2}}X^i)$.
 4. The *Laplacian* of a scalar invariant f is given by $\Delta f = g^{ij}\nabla_i\nabla_j f = \nabla_i(g^{ij}\nabla_j f) = |g|^{-\frac{1}{2}}\partial_i(|g|^{\frac{1}{2}}g^{ij}\partial_j f)$.
 5. The equations of an affinely parameterized geodesic may be written as $\frac{d}{dt}(g_{ij}\dot{x}^j) - \frac{1}{2}g_{jk,i}\dot{x}^j\dot{x}^k = 0$.
 6. Let X^i and Y^i be the components of any vector fields which are propagated in parallel along any parameterized curve γ . Then $\frac{d}{dt}(g_{ij}X^iY^j) = 0$, which implies that the inner product $g_{ij}X^iY^j$ is constant along γ . In particular, if \dot{x}^i are the components of the tangent vector to γ , then $g_{ij}\dot{x}^i\dot{x}^j$ is constant along γ .
 7. The *Riemann tensor*, defined by $R_{ijkl} = g_{im}R^m_{jkl}$, is given by

$$\begin{aligned} R_{ijkl} &= [j\ell, i]_{,k} - [jk, i]_{,\ell} + [i\ell, m]\Gamma^m_{jk} - [ik, m]\Gamma^m_{j\ell} \\ &= \frac{1}{2}(g_{i\ell,jk} + g_{jk,i\ell} - g_{j\ell,ik} - g_{ik,j\ell}) \\ &\quad + g^{mn}([i\ell, m][jk, n] - [ik, m][j\ell, n]). \end{aligned} \tag{5.10.21}$$

It has the following symmetries:

$$R_{ij(k\ell)} = R_{(ij)k\ell} = 0, \quad R_{ijkl} = R_{klij}, \quad \text{and} \quad R_{i[jk\ell]} = 0. \tag{5.10.22}$$

Consequently it has a maximum of $n^2(n^2 - 1)/12$ independent components.

8. The equations $R_{ijkl} = 0$ are necessary and sufficient conditions for M to be a *flat* pseudo-Riemannian manifold, that is, a manifold for which a coordinate system exists so that the components g_{ij} are *constant* on M .
9. The *Ricci tensor* is given by

$$\begin{aligned} R_{ij} &= \partial_j\Gamma^k_{ik} - \partial_k\Gamma^k_{ij} + \Gamma^k_{i\ell}\Gamma^{\ell}_{kj} - \Gamma^k_{ij}\Gamma^{\ell}_{k\ell} \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\partial_i\partial_j(\log|g|) - \frac{1}{2}\Gamma^k_{ij}\partial_k(\log|g|) - \partial_k\Gamma^k_{ij} + \Gamma^k_{im}\Gamma^m_{kj}. \end{aligned}$$

It possesses the symmetry $R_{ij} = R_{ji}$, and thus has a maximum of $n(n + 1)/2$ independent components.

10. The *scalar curvature* or *curvature invariant* is defined by $R = g^{ij}R_{ij}$.
11. The *Einstein tensor* is defined by $G_{ij} = R_{ij} - \frac{1}{2}Rg_{ij}$. In view of the Bianchi identity, it satisfies: $g^{jk}\nabla_j G_{ki} = 0$.
12. A *normal coordinate system* with origin $x_0 \in M$ is defined by $\overset{0}{g}_{ij}x^j = g_{ij}x^j$, where a “0” affixed over a quantity indicates that the quantity is evaluated at x_0 . The connection coefficients satisfy $\overset{0}{\Gamma}^i_{(j_1j_2j_3\dots j_r)} = 0$ (for $r = 2, 3, \dots$) in any normal coordinate system. The equations of the geodesics through x_0 are given by $\dot{x}^i = s\dot{k}^i$, where s is an affine parameter and k^i is any constant vector.

5.10.6 EXAMPLES OF TENSORS

1. The components of the *gradient* of a scalar invariant $\frac{\partial f}{\partial x^i}$ de ne a tensor of type (0,1), since they transform as $\frac{\partial \tilde{f}}{\partial \tilde{x}^i} = \frac{\partial f}{\partial x^j} \frac{\partial x^j}{\partial \tilde{x}^i}$.
2. The components of the *tangent vector* to a parameterized curve $\frac{dx^i}{dt}$ de ne a tensor of type (1,0), because they transform as $\frac{d\tilde{x}^i}{dt} = \frac{dx^j}{dt} \frac{\partial \tilde{x}^i}{\partial x^j}$.
3. The determinant of the metric tensor g de nes a relative scalar invariant of weight of $w = 2$, because it transforms as $\tilde{g} = \left| \frac{\partial x^i}{\partial \tilde{x}^j} \right|^2 g$.
4. The Kronecker deltas δ_i^j are the components of a constant absolute tensor of type (1, 1), because $\delta_j^i = \delta_\ell^k \frac{\partial \tilde{x}^i}{\partial x^k} \frac{\partial x^\ell}{\partial \tilde{x}^j}$.
5. The permutation symbol de ned by

$$e_{i_1 \dots i_n} = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } i_1 \dots i_n \text{ is an even permutation of } 1 \dots n, \\ -1, & \text{if } i_1 \dots i_n \text{ is an odd permutation of } 1 \dots n, \text{ and} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases} \quad (5.10.23)$$

satis es $\left| \frac{\partial x^i}{\partial \tilde{x}^i} \right| e_{j_1 \dots j_n} = e_{i_1 \dots i_n} \frac{\partial x^{i_1}}{\partial \tilde{x}^{j_1}} \dots \frac{\partial x^{i_n}}{\partial \tilde{x}^{j_n}}$. Hence it de nes a tensor of type (0, n , -1), that is, it is a relative tensor of weight $w = -1$. The contravariant permutation symbol $e^{i_1 \dots i_n}$, de ned in a similar way, is a relative tensor of weight $w = 1$.

6. The Levi–Civita symbol, $\epsilon_{i_1 \dots i_n} = |g|^{\frac{1}{2}} e_{i_1 \dots i_n}$, de nes a covariant absolute tensor of valence n . The contravariant Levi–Civita tensor satis es

$$\epsilon^{i_1 \dots i_n} = g^{i_1 j_1} \dots g^{i_n j_n} \epsilon_{j_1 \dots j_n} = (-1)^{\frac{n-s}{2}} |g|^{-\frac{1}{2}} e^{i_1 \dots i_n}. \quad (5.10.24)$$

Using this symbol, the *dual* of a covariant skew-symmetric tensor of valence r is de ned by $*T_{i_1 \dots i_{n-r}} = \frac{1}{r!} \epsilon^{j_1 \dots j_r} T_{j_1 \dots j_r}$.

7. *Cartesian tensors*: Let $M = E^3$ (i.e., Euclidean three-space) with metric tensor $g_{ij} = \delta_{ij}$ with respect to Cartesian coordinates. The components of a *Cartesian tensor* of valence r transform as

$$\tilde{T}_{i_1 \dots i_r} = T_{j_1 \dots j_r} O_{i_1 j_1} \dots O_{i_r j_r}, \quad (5.10.25)$$

where O_{ij} are the components of a constant orthogonal matrix which satis es $(O^{-1})_{ij} = (O^T)_{ij} = O_{ji}$. For Cartesian tensors, all indices are written as covariant, because *no* distinction is required between covariant and contravariant indices.

An *oriented Cartesian tensor* is a Cartesian tensor where the orthogonal matrix in the transformation law is restricted by $\det(O_{ij}) = 1$. The Levi–Civita symbol ϵ_{ijk} is an example of an oriented Cartesian tensor as is the cross product, $(X \times Y)_i = \epsilon_{ijk} X_j Y_k$, of two vectors. The connection coef cients satisfy

$\Gamma_{jk}^i = 0$ in every Cartesian coordinate system on E^3 . Thus the partial derivatives of Cartesian tensors are themselves Cartesian tensors, that is, if $T_{i_1 \dots i_r}$ is a Cartesian tensor, then so is $\partial_k T_{i_1 \dots i_r}$. A particular example is the curl of a vector field X_i given by $(\text{curl } X)_i = \epsilon_{ijk} \partial_j X_k$ which defines an oriented Cartesian tensor.

8. Note the useful relations: $\epsilon_{ijk} \epsilon_{klm} = \delta_{il} \delta_{jm} - \delta_{im} \delta_{jl}$, $\epsilon_{ikl} \epsilon_{klm} = 2\delta_{im}$, and $\epsilon_{ijk} \epsilon_{lmn} = \delta_{il} \delta_{jm} \delta_{kn} + \delta_{im} \delta_{jn} \delta_{kl} + \delta_{in} \delta_{jl} \delta_{km} - \delta_{in} \delta_{jm} \delta_{kl} - \delta_{im} \delta_{jl} \delta_{kn} - \delta_{il} \delta_{jn} \delta_{km}$.
9. The stress tensor E_{ij} and the strain tensor e_{ij} are examples of Cartesian tensors.
10. *Orthogonal curvilinear coordinates:* Let M be a 3-dimensional Riemannian manifold admitting a coordinate system $[x^1, x^2, x^3]$ such that the metric tensor has the form $g_{ii} = h_i^2(x^1, x^2, x^3)$ for $i = 1, \dots, 3$ with $g_{ij} = g^{ij} = 0$ for $i \neq j$. The metric tensor on E^3 has this form with respect to orthogonal curvilinear coordinates. The non-zero components of various corresponding quantities corresponding to this metric are as follows:

(a) Covariant metric tensor

$$g_{11} = h_1^2, \quad g_{22} = h_2^2, \quad g_{33} = h_3^2 \quad (5.10.26)$$

(b) Contravariant metric tensor

$$g^{11} = h_1^{-2}, \quad g^{22} = h_2^{-2}, \quad g^{33} = h_3^{-2} \quad (5.10.27)$$

(c) Christoffel symbols of the first kind (note that $[ij, k] = 0$ if i, j , and k are all different),

$$\begin{array}{lll} [11, 1] = h_1 h_{1,1} & [11, 2] = -h_1 h_{1,2} & [11, 3] = -h_1 h_{1,3} \\ [12, 1] = h_1 h_{1,2} & [12, 2] = h_2 h_{2,1} & [13, 1] = h_1 h_{1,3} \\ [13, 3] = h_3 h_{3,1} & [22, 1] = -h_2 h_{2,1} & [22, 2] = h_2 h_{2,2} \\ [22, 3] = -h_2 h_{2,3} & [23, 2] = h_2 h_{2,3} & [23, 3] = h_3 h_{3,2} \\ [33, 1] = -h_3 h_{3,1} & [33, 2] = -h_3 h_{3,2} & [33, 3] = h_3 h_{3,3}. \end{array}$$

(d) Christoffel symbols of the second kind (note that $\Gamma_{ij}^k = 0$ if i, j , and k are all different),

$$\begin{array}{lll} \Gamma_{11}^1 = h_1^{-1} h_{1,1} & \Gamma_{12}^1 = h_1^{-1} h_{1,2} & \Gamma_{13}^1 = h_1^{-1} h_{1,3} \\ \Gamma_{22}^1 = -h_1^{-2} h_2 h_{2,1} & \Gamma_{33}^1 = -h_1^{-2} h_3 h_{3,1} & \Gamma_{11}^2 = -h_1 h_2^{-2} h_{1,2} \\ \Gamma_{12}^2 = h_2^{-1} h_{2,1} & \Gamma_{22}^2 = h_2^{-1} h_{2,2} & \Gamma_{23}^2 = h_2^{-1} h_{2,3} \\ \Gamma_{33}^2 = -h_2^{-2} h_3 h_{3,2} & \Gamma_{11}^3 = -h_1 h_3^{-2} h_{1,3} & \Gamma_{13}^3 = h_3^{-1} h_{3,1} \\ \Gamma_{22}^3 = -h_2 h_3^{-2} h_{2,3} & \Gamma_{23}^3 = h_3^{-1} h_{3,2} & \Gamma_{33}^3 = h_3^{-1} h_{3,3}. \end{array}$$

(e) Vanishing Riemann tensor conditions (Lamé equations),

$$\begin{aligned}
 h_{1,2,3} - h_2^{-1}h_{1,2}h_{2,3} - h_3^{-1}h_{1,3}h_{3,2} &= 0, \\
 h_{2,1,3} - h_1^{-1}h_{1,3}h_{2,1} - h_3^{-1}h_{3,1}h_{2,3} &= 0, \\
 h_{3,1,2} - h_1^{-1}h_{1,2}h_{3,1} - h_2^{-1}h_{2,1}h_{3,2} &= 0, \\
 h_2h_{2,3,3} + h_3h_{3,2,2} + h_1^{-2}h_2h_3h_{2,1}h_{3,1} - h_2^{-1}h_3h_{2,2}h_{3,2} \\
 &\quad - h_2h_3^{-1}h_{2,3}h_{3,3} = 0, \\
 h_1h_{1,3,3} + h_3h_{3,1,1} + h_1h_2^{-2}h_3h_{1,2}h_{3,2} - h_1^{-1}h_3h_{1,1}h_{3,1} \\
 &\quad - h_1h_3^{-1}h_{1,3}h_{3,3} = 0, \\
 h_1h_{1,2,2} + h_2h_{2,1,1} + h_1h_2h_3^{-2}h_{1,3}h_{2,3} - h_1^{-1}h_2h_{1,1}h_{2,1} \\
 &\quad - h_1h_2^{-1}h_{1,2}h_{2,2} = 0.
 \end{aligned}$$

11. *The 2-sphere:* A coordinate system $[\theta, \phi]$ for the 2-sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = r^2$ is given by $x = r \sin \theta \cos \phi$, $y = r \sin \theta \sin \phi$, $z = r \cos \theta$, where $[\theta, \phi] \in U = (0, \pi) \times (0, 2\pi)$. This is a non-Euclidean space. The non-zero independent components of various quantities defined on the sphere are given below:

- (a) Covariant metric tensor components are $g_{11} = r^2$, $g_{22} = r^2 \sin^2 \theta$.
- (b) Contravariant metric tensor components are $g^{11} = r^{-2}$, $g^{22} = r^{-2} \csc^2 \theta$.
- (c) Christoffel symbols of the first kind are $[12, 2] = r^2 \sin \theta \cos \theta$,
 $[22, 1] = -r^2 \sin \theta \cos \theta$.
- (d) Christoffel symbols of the second kind are $\Gamma^1_{22} = -\sin \theta \cos \theta$,
 $\Gamma^2_{12} = -\cos \theta \csc \theta$.
- (e) Covariant Riemann tensor components are $R_{1212} = r^2 \sin^2 \theta$.
- (f) Covariant Ricci tensor components are $R_{11} = -1$, $R_{22} = -\sin^2 \theta$.
- (g) Ricci scalar is $R = -2r^{-2}$.

12. *The 3-sphere:* A coordinate system $[\psi, \theta, \phi]$ for the 3-sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 + w^2 = r^2$ is given by $x = r \sin \psi \sin \theta \cos \phi$, $y = r \sin \psi \sin \theta \sin \phi$, $z = r \sin \psi \cos \theta$, and $w = r \cos \psi$, where $[\psi, \theta, \phi] \in U = (0, \pi) \times (0, \pi) \times (0, 2\pi)$. The non-zero components of various quantities defined on the sphere are given below:

(a) Covariant metric tensor components

$$g_{11} = r^2, \quad g_{22} = r^2 \sin^2 \psi, \quad g_{33} = r^2 \sin^2 \psi \sin^2 \theta \quad (5.10.28)$$

(b) Contravariant metric tensor components

$$g^{11} = r^{-2}, \quad g^{22} = r^{-2} \csc^2 \psi, \quad g^{33} = r^{-2} \csc^2 \psi \csc^2 \theta \quad (5.10.29)$$

(c) Christoffel symbols of the first kind,

$$\begin{aligned} [22, 1] &= -r^2 \sin \psi \cos \psi & [33, 1] &= -r^2 \sin \psi \cos \psi \sin^2 \theta \\ [12, 2] &= r^2 \sin \psi \cos \psi & [33, 2] &= -r^2 \sin^2 \psi \sin \theta \cos \theta \\ [13, 3] &= r^2 \sin \psi \cos \psi \sin^2 \theta & [23, 3] &= r^2 \sin^2 \psi \sin \theta \cos \theta. \end{aligned}$$

(d) Christoffel symbols of the second kind,

$$\begin{aligned} \Gamma_{22}^1 &= -\sin \psi \cos \psi & \Gamma_{33}^1 &= -\sin \psi \cos \psi \sin^2 \theta \\ \Gamma_{12}^2 &= \cot \psi & \Gamma_{33}^2 &= -\sin \theta \cos \theta \\ \Gamma_{13}^3 &= \cot \psi & \Gamma_{23}^3 &= \cot \theta. \end{aligned}$$

(e) Covariant Riemann tensor components,

$$R_{1212} = r^2 \sin^2 \psi, \quad R_{1313} = r^2 \sin^2 \psi \sin^2 \theta, \quad R_{2323} = r^2 \sin^4 \psi \sin^2 \theta.$$

(f) Covariant Ricci tensor components,

$$R_{11} = -2, \quad R_{22} = -2 \sin^2 \psi, \quad R_{33} = -2 \sin^2 \psi \sin^2 \theta.$$

(g) The Ricci scalar is $R = -6r^{-2}$.

(h) Covariant Einstein tensor components

$$G_{11} = 1, \quad G_{22} = \sin^2 \psi, \quad G_{33} = \sin^2 \psi \sin^2 \theta \quad (5.10.30)$$

13. *Polar coordinates:* The line element is given by $ds^2 = dr^2 + r^2 d\theta^2$. Thus the metric tensor is $g_{ij} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & r^2 \end{pmatrix}$, and the non-zero Christoffel symbols are $[21, 2] = [12, 2] = -[22, 1] = r$.

5.11 ORTHOGONAL COORDINATE SYSTEMS

In an orthogonal coordinate system, let $\{\mathbf{a}_i\}$ denote the unit vectors in each of the three coordinate directions, and let $\{u_i\}$ denote distance along each of these axes. The coordinate system may be designated by the *metric coefficients* $\{g_{11}, g_{22}, g_{33}\}$, defined by

$$g_{ii} = \left(\frac{\partial x_1}{\partial u_i} \right)^2 + \left(\frac{\partial x_2}{\partial u_i} \right)^2 + \left(\frac{\partial x_3}{\partial u_i} \right)^2, \quad (5.11.1)$$

where $\{x_1, x_2, x_3\}$ represent rectangular coordinates. Then define $g = g_{11}g_{22}g_{33}$.

Operations for orthogonal coordinate systems are sometimes written in terms of the $\{h_i\}$ functions, instead of the $\{g_{ii}\}$ functions. Here, $h_i = \sqrt{g_{ii}}$, so that $\sqrt{g} = h_1 h_2 h_3$. For example, in cylindrical coordinates, $\{x_1 = r \cos \theta, x_2 = r \sin \theta, x_3 = z\}$ with $\{u_1 = r, u_2 = \theta, u_3 = z\}$, we find $\{g_{11} = 1, g_{22} = r^2, g_{33} = 1\}$ so that $\{h_1 = 1, h_2 = r, h_3 = 1\}$.

In the following, ϕ represents a scalar, and $\mathbf{E} = E_1\mathbf{a}_1 + E_2\mathbf{a}_2 + E_3\mathbf{a}_3$ and $\mathbf{F} = F_1\mathbf{a}_1 + F_2\mathbf{a}_2 + F_3\mathbf{a}_3$ represent vectors.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{grad } \phi &= \nabla \phi = \text{the gradient of } \phi \\ &= \frac{\mathbf{a}_1}{\sqrt{g_{11}}} \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial u_1} + \frac{\mathbf{a}_2}{\sqrt{g_{22}}} \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial u_2} + \frac{\mathbf{a}_3}{\sqrt{g_{33}}} \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial u_3},\end{aligned}\quad (5.11.2)$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{div } \mathbf{E} &= \nabla \cdot \mathbf{E} = \text{the divergence of } \mathbf{E} \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{g}} \left\{ \frac{\partial}{\partial u_1} \left(\frac{gE_1}{g_{11}} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial u_2} \left(\frac{gE_2}{g_{22}} \right) + \frac{\partial}{\partial u_3} \left(\frac{gE_3}{g_{33}} \right) \right\},\end{aligned}\quad (5.11.3)$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{curl } \mathbf{E} &= \nabla \times \mathbf{E} = \text{the curl of } \mathbf{E} \\ &= \mathbf{a}_1 \frac{\Gamma_1}{\sqrt{g_{11}}} + \mathbf{a}_2 \frac{\Gamma_2}{\sqrt{g_{22}}} + \mathbf{a}_3 \frac{\Gamma_3}{\sqrt{g_{33}}}\end{aligned}\quad (5.11.4)$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\mathbf{a}_1}{h_2 h_3} & \frac{\mathbf{a}_2}{h_1 h_3} & \frac{\mathbf{a}_3}{h_1 h_2} \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial u_1} & \frac{\partial}{\partial u_2} & \frac{\partial}{\partial u_3} \\ h_1 E_1 & h_2 E_2 & h_3 E_3 \end{bmatrix},\quad (5.11.5)$$

$$[(\mathbf{F} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{E}]_j = \sum_{i=1}^3 \left[\frac{F_i}{h_i} \frac{\partial E_j}{\partial u_i} + \frac{E_i}{h_i h_j} \left(F_j \frac{\partial h_j}{\partial u_i} - F_i \frac{\partial h_i}{\partial u_j} \right) \right],\quad (5.11.6)$$

$$\begin{aligned}\nabla^2 \phi &= \text{the Laplacian of } \phi \text{ (sometimes written as } \Delta \phi) \\ &= \frac{1}{h_1 h_2 h_3} \left\{ \frac{\partial}{\partial u_1} \left[\frac{h_2 h_3}{h_1} \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial u_1} \right] + \frac{\partial}{\partial u_2} \left[\frac{h_3 h_1}{h_2} \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial u_2} \right] + \frac{\partial}{\partial u_3} \left[\frac{h_1 h_2}{h_3} \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial u_3} \right] \right\} \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{g}} \left\{ \frac{\partial}{\partial u_1} \left[\frac{\sqrt{g}}{g_{11}} \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial u_1} \right] + \frac{\partial}{\partial u_2} \left[\frac{\sqrt{g}}{g_{22}} \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial u_2} \right] + \frac{\partial}{\partial u_3} \left[\frac{\sqrt{g}}{g_{33}} \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial u_3} \right] \right\},\end{aligned}\quad (5.11.7)$$

$$\text{grad div } \mathbf{E} = \nabla(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{E}) = \frac{\mathbf{a}_1}{\sqrt{g_{11}}} \frac{\partial \Upsilon}{\partial x_1} + \frac{\mathbf{a}_2}{\sqrt{g_{22}}} \frac{\partial \Upsilon}{\partial x_2} + \frac{\mathbf{a}_3}{\sqrt{g_{33}}} \frac{\partial \Upsilon}{\partial x_3},\quad (5.11.8)$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{curl curl } \mathbf{E} &= \nabla \times (\nabla \times \mathbf{E}) \\ &= \mathbf{a}_1 \sqrt{\frac{g_{11}}{g}} \left[\frac{\partial \Gamma_3}{\partial x_2} - \frac{\partial \Gamma_2}{\partial x_3} \right] + \mathbf{a}_2 \sqrt{\frac{g_{22}}{g}} \left[\frac{\partial \Gamma_1}{\partial x_3} - \frac{\partial \Gamma_3}{\partial x_1} \right] \\ &\quad + \mathbf{a}_3 \sqrt{\frac{g_{33}}{g}} \left[\frac{\partial \Gamma_2}{\partial x_1} - \frac{\partial \Gamma_1}{\partial x_2} \right],\end{aligned}\quad (5.11.9)$$

$$\begin{aligned}\star \star \mathbf{E} &= \text{grad div } \mathbf{E} - \text{curl curl } \mathbf{E} = \text{the vector Laplacian of } \mathbf{E} \\ &= \nabla(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{E}) - \nabla \times (\nabla \times \mathbf{E}) \\ &= \mathbf{a}_1 \left\{ \frac{1}{\sqrt{g_{11}}} \frac{\partial \Upsilon}{\partial x_1} + \sqrt{\frac{g_{11}}{g}} \left[\frac{\partial \Gamma_2}{\partial x_3} - \frac{\partial \Gamma_3}{\partial x_2} \right] \right\} \\ &\quad + \mathbf{a}_2 \left\{ \frac{1}{\sqrt{g_{22}}} \frac{\partial \Upsilon}{\partial x_2} + \sqrt{\frac{g_{22}}{g}} \left[\frac{\partial \Gamma_3}{\partial x_1} - \frac{\partial \Gamma_1}{\partial x_3} \right] \right\} \\ &\quad + \mathbf{a}_3 \left\{ \frac{1}{\sqrt{g_{33}}} \frac{\partial \Upsilon}{\partial x_3} + \sqrt{\frac{g_{33}}{g}} \left[\frac{\partial \Gamma_1}{\partial x_2} - \frac{\partial \Gamma_2}{\partial x_1} \right] \right\},\end{aligned}\quad (5.11.10)$$

where Υ and $\Gamma = (\Gamma_1, \Gamma_2, \Gamma_3)$ are defined by

$$\begin{aligned}\Upsilon &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{g}} \left\{ \frac{\partial}{\partial x_1} \left[E_1 \sqrt{\frac{g}{g_{11}}} \right] + \frac{\partial}{\partial x_2} \left[E_2 \sqrt{\frac{g}{g_{22}}} \right] + \frac{\partial}{\partial x_3} \left[E_3 \sqrt{\frac{g}{g_{33}}} \right] \right\}, \\ \Gamma_1 &= \frac{g_{11}}{\sqrt{g}} \left\{ \frac{\partial}{\partial x_2} (\sqrt{g_{33}} E_3) - \frac{\partial}{\partial x_3} (\sqrt{g_{22}} E_2) \right\}, \\ \Gamma_2 &= \frac{g_{22}}{\sqrt{g}} \left\{ \frac{\partial}{\partial x_3} (\sqrt{g_{11}} E_1) - \frac{\partial}{\partial x_1} (\sqrt{g_{33}} E_3) \right\}, \\ \Gamma_3 &= \frac{g_{33}}{\sqrt{g}} \left\{ \frac{\partial}{\partial x_1} (\sqrt{g_{22}} E_2) - \frac{\partial}{\partial x_2} (\sqrt{g_{11}} E_1) \right\}.\end{aligned}\tag{5.11.11}$$

5.11.1 TABLE OF ORTHOGONAL COORDINATE SYSTEMS

The $\{f_i\}$ listed below are the separated components of the Laplace or Helmholtz equations (see (5.7.18) and (5.7.19)). See Moon and Spencer for details.

The corresponding equations for the four separable coordinate systems which exist in two dimensions may be obtained from the coordinate systems 1–4 listed below by suppressing the z coordinate and assuming that all functions depend only on the x and y coordinates.

1. Rectangular coordinates $\{x, y, z\}$

Ranges: $-\infty < x < \infty, -\infty < y < \infty, -\infty < z < \infty$.

$$g_{11} = g_{22} = g_{33} = \sqrt{g} = 1,$$

$$f_1 = f_2 = f_3 = 1.$$

In this coordinate system the following notation is sometimes used:

$$\mathbf{i} = \mathbf{a}_x, \mathbf{j} = \mathbf{a}_y, \mathbf{k} = \mathbf{a}_z.$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{grad } f &= \mathbf{a}_x \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} + \mathbf{a}_y \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} + \mathbf{a}_z \frac{\partial f}{\partial z} \\ \text{div } \mathbf{E} &= \frac{\partial}{\partial x} (E_x) + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} (E_y) + \frac{\partial}{\partial z} (E_z) \\ \text{curl } \mathbf{E} &= \left(\frac{\partial E_z}{\partial y} - \frac{\partial E_y}{\partial z} \right) \mathbf{a}_x + \left(\frac{\partial E_x}{\partial z} - \frac{\partial E_z}{\partial x} \right) \mathbf{a}_y + \left(\frac{\partial E_y}{\partial x} - \frac{\partial E_x}{\partial y} \right) \mathbf{a}_z \\ \nabla^2 f &= \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial z^2}\end{aligned}\tag{5.11.12}$$

$$[(\mathbf{F} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{E}]_x = F_x \frac{\partial E_x}{\partial x} + F_y \frac{\partial E_x}{\partial y} + F_z \frac{\partial E_x}{\partial z}$$

2. Circular cylindrical coordinates $\{r, \theta, z\}$

Relations: $x = r \cos \theta, y = r \sin \theta, z = z$.

Ranges: $0 \leq r < \infty, 0 \leq \theta < 2\pi, -\infty < z < \infty$.

$$g_{11} = 1, g_{22} = r^2, g_{33} = 1, \sqrt{g} = r,$$

$$f_1 = r, f_2 = f_3 = 1.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{grad } f &= \mathbf{a}_r \frac{\partial f}{\partial r} + \frac{\mathbf{a}_\theta}{r} \frac{\partial f}{\partial \theta} + \mathbf{a}_z \frac{\partial f}{\partial z} \\ \text{div } \mathbf{E} &= \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial}{\partial r} (r E_r) + \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial E_\theta}{\partial \theta} + \frac{\partial E_z}{\partial z} \\ (\text{curl } \mathbf{E})_r &= \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial E_z}{\partial \theta} - \frac{\partial E_\theta}{\partial z} \\ (\text{curl } \mathbf{E})_\theta &= \frac{\partial E_r}{\partial z} - \frac{\partial E_z}{\partial r} \\ (\text{curl } \mathbf{E})_z &= \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial (r E_\theta)}{\partial r} - \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial E_r}{\partial \theta} \\ \nabla^2 f &= \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial}{\partial r} \left(r \frac{\partial f}{\partial r} \right) + \frac{1}{r^2} \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial \theta^2} + \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial z^2} \end{aligned} \tag{5.11.13}$$

3. Elliptic cylindrical coordinates $\{\eta, \psi, z\}$

Relations: $x = a \cosh \eta \cos \psi$, $y = a \sinh \eta \sin \psi$, $z = z$.

Ranges: $0 \leq \eta < \infty$, $0 \leq \psi < 2\pi$, $-\infty < z < \infty$.

$$g_{11} = g_{22} = a^2 (\cosh^2 \eta - \cos^2 \psi), g_{33} = 1, \sqrt{g} = a^2 (\cosh^2 \eta - \cos^2 \psi),$$

$$f_1 = f_2 = f_3 = 1.$$

4. Parabolic cylindrical coordinates $\{\mu, \nu, z\}$

Relations: $x = \frac{1}{2}(\mu^2 - \nu^2)$, $y = \mu\nu$, $z = z$.

Ranges: $0 \leq \mu < \infty$, $-\infty < \nu < 2\pi$, $-\infty < z < \infty$.

$$g_{11} = g_{22} = \mu^2 + \nu^2, g_{33} = 1, \sqrt{g} = \mu^2 + \nu^2,$$

$$f_1 = f_2 = f_3 = 1.$$

5. Spherical coordinates $\{r, \theta, \psi\}$

Relations: $x = r \sin \theta \cos \phi$, $y = r \sin \theta \sin \phi$, $z = r \cos \theta$.

Ranges: $0 \leq r < \infty$, $0 \leq \theta \leq \pi$, $0 \leq \psi < 2\pi$.

$$g_{11} = 1, g_{22} = r^2, g_{33} = r^2 \sin^2 \theta, \sqrt{g} = r^2 \sin \theta,$$

$$f_1 = r^2, f_2 = \sin \theta, f_3 = 1.$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{grad } f &= \mathbf{e}_r \frac{\partial f}{\partial r} + \frac{\mathbf{e}_\theta}{r} \frac{\partial f}{\partial \theta} + \frac{\mathbf{e}_\phi}{r \sin \theta} \frac{\partial f}{\partial \phi} \\
\text{div } \mathbf{E} &= \frac{1}{r^2} \frac{\partial}{\partial r} (r^2 E_r) + \frac{1}{r \sin \theta} \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} (E_\theta \sin \theta) + \frac{1}{r \sin \theta} \frac{\partial E_\phi}{\partial \phi} \\
(\text{curl } \mathbf{E})_r &= \frac{1}{r \sin \theta} \left[\frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} (E_\phi \sin \theta) - \frac{\partial A_\theta}{\partial \phi} \right] \\
(\text{curl } \mathbf{E})_\theta &= \frac{1}{r \sin \theta} \frac{\partial E_r}{\partial \phi} - \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial (r E_\phi)}{\partial r} \\
(\text{curl } \mathbf{E})_\phi &= \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial (r E_\theta)}{\partial r} - \frac{1}{r} \frac{\partial E_r}{\partial \theta} \\
\nabla^2 f &= \frac{1}{r^2} \frac{\partial}{\partial r} \left(r^2 \frac{\partial f}{\partial r} \right) + \frac{1}{r^2 \sin \theta} \frac{\partial}{\partial \theta} \left(\sin \theta \frac{\partial f}{\partial \theta} \right) + \frac{1}{r^2 \sin^2 \theta} \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial \phi^2}
\end{aligned} \tag{5.11.14}$$

6. Prolate spheroidal coordinates $\{\eta, \theta, \psi\}$

Relations: $x = a \sinh \eta \sin \theta \cos \psi$, $y = a \sinh \eta \sin \theta \sin \psi$, $z = a \cosh \eta \cos \theta$.

Ranges: $0 \leq \eta < \infty$, $0 \leq \theta \leq \pi$, $0 \leq \psi < 2\pi$.

$$\begin{aligned}
g_{11} = g_{22} &= a^2 (\sinh^2 \eta + \sin^2 \theta) \quad g_{33} = a^2 \sinh^2 \eta \sin^2 \theta, \\
\sqrt{g} &= a^3 (\sinh^2 \eta + \sin^2 \theta) \sinh \eta \sin \theta.
\end{aligned}$$

$$f_1 = \sinh \eta, f_2 = \sin \theta, f_3 = a.$$

7. Oblate spheroidal coordinates $\{\eta, \theta, \psi\}$

Relations: $x = a \cosh \eta \sin \theta \cos \psi$, $y = a \cosh \eta \sin \theta \sin \psi$, $z = a \sinh \eta \cos \theta$.

Ranges: $0 \leq \eta < \infty$, $0 \leq \theta \leq \pi$, $0 \leq \psi < 2\pi$.

$$\begin{aligned}
g_{11} = g_{22} &= a^2 (\cosh^2 \eta - \sin^2 \theta) \quad g_{33} = a^2 \cosh^2 \eta \sin^2 \theta, \\
\sqrt{g} &= a^3 (\cosh^2 \eta - \sin^2 \theta) \cosh \eta \sin \theta.
\end{aligned}$$

$$f_1 = \cosh \eta, f_2 = \sin \theta, f_3 = a.$$

8. Parabolic coordinates $\{\mu, \nu, \psi\}$

Relations: $x = \mu\nu \cos \psi$, $y = \mu\nu \sin \psi$, $z = \frac{1}{2}(\mu^2 - \nu^2)$.

Ranges: $0 \leq \mu < \infty$, $0 \leq \nu \leq \infty$, $0 \leq \psi < 2\pi$.

$$g_{11} = g_{22} = \mu^2 + \nu^2 \quad g_{33} = \mu^2 \nu^2, \quad \sqrt{g} = \mu\nu(\mu^2 + \nu^2).$$

$$f_1 = \mu, f_2 = \nu, f_3 = 1.$$

9. Conical coordinates $\{r, \theta, \lambda\}$

Relations: $x^2 = (r\theta\lambda/bc)^2$, $y^2 = r^2(\theta^2 - b^2)(b^2 - \lambda^2)/[b^2(c^2 - b^2)]$, $z^2 = r^2(c^2 - \theta^2)(c^2 - \lambda^2)/[c^2(c^2 - b^2)]$.

Ranges: $0 \leq r < \infty$, $b^2 < \theta^2 < c^2$, $0 < \lambda^2 < b^2$.

$$\begin{aligned}
g_{11} &= 1, g_{22} = r^2(\theta^2 - \lambda^2)/((\theta^2 - b^2)(c^2 - \theta^2)), \\
g_{33} &= r^2(\theta^2 - \lambda^2)/((b^2 - \lambda^2)(c^2 - \lambda^2)), \\
\sqrt{g} &= r^2(\theta^2 - \lambda^2)/\sqrt{(\theta^2 - b^2)(c^2 - \theta^2)(b^2 - \lambda^2)(c^2 - \lambda^2)}. \\
f_1 &= r^2, f_2 = \sqrt{(\theta^2 - b^2)(c^2 - \theta^2)}, f_3 = \sqrt{(b^2 - \lambda^2)(c^2 - \lambda^2)}.
\end{aligned}$$

10. Ellipsoidal coordinates $\{\eta, \theta, \lambda\}$

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Relations: } x^2 &= (\eta\theta\lambda/bc)^2, y^2 = (\eta^2 - b^2)(\theta^2 - b^2)(b^2 - \lambda^2)/[b^2(c^2 - b^2)], \\
z^2 &= (\eta^2 - c^2)(c^2 - \theta^2)(c^2 - \lambda^2)/[c^2(c^2 - b^2)].
\end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Ranges: } c^2 \leq \eta^2 < \infty, b^2 < \theta^2 < c^2, 0 < \lambda^2 < b^2.$$

$$\begin{aligned}
g_{11} &= (\eta^2 - \theta^2)(\eta^2 - \lambda^2)/((\eta^2 - b^2)(\eta^2 - c^2)), \\
g_{22} &= (\theta^2 - \lambda^2)(\eta^2 - \theta^2)/((\theta^2 - b^2)(c^2 - \theta^2)), \\
g_{33} &= (\eta^2 - \lambda^2)(\theta^2 - \lambda^2)/((b^2 - \lambda^2)(c^2 - \lambda^2)), \\
\sqrt{g} &= \frac{(\eta^2 - \theta^2)(\eta^2 - \lambda^2)(\theta^2 - \lambda^2)}{\sqrt{(\eta^2 - b^2)(\eta^2 - c^2)(\theta^2 - b^2)(c^2 - \theta^2)(b^2 - \lambda^2)(c^2 - \lambda^2)}}. \\
f_1 &= \sqrt{(\eta^2 - b^2)(\eta^2 - c^2)}, f_2 = \sqrt{(\theta^2 - b^2)(c^2 - \theta^2)}, \\
f_3 &= \sqrt{(b^2 - \lambda^2)(c^2 - \lambda^2)}.
\end{aligned}$$

11. Paraboloidal coordinates $\{\mu, \nu, \lambda\}$

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Relations: } x^2 &= 4(\mu - b)(b - \nu)(b - \lambda)/(b - c), \\
y^2 &= 4(\mu - c)(c - \nu)(\lambda - c)/(b - c), z^2 = \mu + \nu + \lambda - b - c.
\end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Ranges: } b < \mu < \infty, 0 < \nu < c, c < \lambda < b.$$

$$\begin{aligned}
g_{11} &= (\mu - \nu)(\mu - \lambda)/((\mu - b)(\mu - c)), g_{22} = (\mu - \nu)(\lambda - \nu)/((b - \nu)(c - \nu)), \\
g_{33} &= (\lambda - \nu)(\mu - \lambda)/((b - \lambda)(\lambda - c)), \sqrt{g} = \frac{(\mu - \nu)(\mu - \lambda)(\lambda - \nu)}{\sqrt{(\mu - b)(\mu - c)(b - \nu)(c - \nu)(b - \lambda)(\lambda - c)}}. \\
f_1 &= \sqrt{(\mu - b)(\mu - c)}, f_2 = \sqrt{(b - \nu)(c - \nu)}, f_3 = \sqrt{(b - \lambda)(\lambda - c)}.
\end{aligned}$$

5.12 CONTROL THEORY

Let \mathbf{x} be a state vector, let \mathbf{y} be an observation vector, and let \mathbf{u} be the control. The vectors \mathbf{x} , \mathbf{y} , and \mathbf{u} have n , m , and p components, respectively. If a system evolves as:

$$\begin{aligned}
\dot{\mathbf{x}} &= \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{B}\mathbf{u} \\
\mathbf{y} &= \mathbf{C}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{D}\mathbf{u}
\end{aligned} \tag{5.12.1}$$

then, taking Laplace transforms, $\tilde{\mathbf{y}} = G(s)\tilde{\mathbf{u}}$ where $G(s)$ is the transfer function given by $G(s) = \mathbf{C}(s\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A})^{-1}\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{D}$.

A system is said to be *controllable* if and only if for any times $\{t_0, t_1\}$ and any states $\{\mathbf{x}_0, \mathbf{x}_1\}$ there exists a control $\mathbf{u}(t)$ such that $\mathbf{x}(t_0) = \mathbf{x}_0$ and $\mathbf{x}(t_1) = \mathbf{x}_1$. The system is controllable if and only if

$$\text{rank} \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{B} & \mathbf{A}\mathbf{B} & \mathbf{A}^2\mathbf{B} & \dots & \mathbf{A}^{n-1}\mathbf{B} \end{bmatrix} = n. \tag{5.12.2}$$

If, given $\mathbf{u}(t)$ and $\mathbf{y}(t)$ on some interval $t_0 < t < t_1$, the value of $\mathbf{x}(t)$ can be deduced on that interval, then the system is said to be *observable*. Observability is equivalent to the condition

$$\text{rank} \begin{bmatrix} C^T & A^T C^T & \dots & (A^{(n-1)})^T C^T \end{bmatrix} = n. \quad (5.12.3)$$

If the control is bounded above and below (say $u_i^- < u_i < u_i^+$), then a *bang–bang* control is one for which $u_i = u_i^-$ or $u_i = u_i^+$. (That is, for every t , either $u_i(t) = u_i^-(t)$ or $u_i(t) = u_i^+(t)$; switches are possible.) A *bang–off–bang* control is one for which $u_i = 0$, $u_i = u_i^-$, or $u_i = u_i^+$.

A second frequently studied control problem is $\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{f}(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{u}, t)$, where $\mathbf{x}(t_0)$ and $\mathbf{x}(t_f)$ are specified, and there is a cost function, $J = \int_{t_0}^{t_f} \phi(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{u}, t)$. The goal is to minimize the cost function. Defining the Hamiltonian $H(\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{z}, \mathbf{u}, t) = \phi + \mathbf{z} \cdot \mathbf{f}$, the optimal control (the one that minimizes the cost function) satisfies

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \frac{\partial H}{\partial \mathbf{z}}, \quad \dot{\mathbf{z}} = -\frac{\partial H}{\partial \mathbf{x}}, \quad \mathbf{0} = \frac{\partial H}{\partial \mathbf{u}}. \quad (5.12.4)$$

EXAMPLE In the one-dimensional case, with $\dot{x} = -ax + u$, $x(0) = x_0$, $x(\infty) = 0$, and $J = \int_0^\infty (x^2 + u^2) dt$; the optimal control is given by $u = (a - \sqrt{1+a^2})x^*(t)$ where $x^*(t) = x_0 e^{-\sqrt{1+a^2}t}$.

Chapter 4

Geometry

4.1 COORDINATE SYSTEMS IN THE PLANE

- 4.1.1 *Convention*
- 4.1.2 *Substitutions and transformations*
- 4.1.3 *Cartesian coordinates in the plane*
- 4.1.4 *Polar coordinates in the plane*
- 4.1.5 *Homogeneous coordinates in the plane*
- 4.1.6 *Oblique coordinates in the plane*

4.2 PLANE SYMMETRIES OR ISOMETRIES

- 4.2.1 *Formulae for symmetries: Cartesian coordinates*
- 4.2.2 *Formulae for symmetries: homogeneous coordinates*
- 4.2.3 *Formulae for symmetries: polar coordinates*
- 4.2.4 *Crystallographic groups*
- 4.2.5 *Classifying the crystallographic groups*

4.3 OTHER TRANSFORMATIONS OF THE PLANE

- 4.3.1 *Similarities*
- 4.3.2 *Affine transformations*
- 4.3.3 *Projective transformations*

4.4 LINES

- 4.4.1 *Lines with prescribed properties*
- 4.4.2 *Distances*
- 4.4.3 *Angles*
- 4.4.4 *Concurrence and collinearity*

4.5 POLYGONS

- 4.5.1 *Triangles*
- 4.5.2 *Quadrilaterals*
- 4.5.3 *Regular polygons*

4.6 CONICS

- 4.6.1 *Alternative characterization*
- 4.6.2 *The general quadratic equation*
- 4.6.3 *Additional properties of ellipses*
- 4.6.4 *Additional properties of hyperbolas*
- 4.6.5 *Additional properties of parabolas*
- 4.6.6 *Circles*

4.7 SPECIAL PLANE CURVES

- 4.7.1 *Algebraic curves*
- 4.7.2 *Roulettes (spirograph curves)*
- 4.7.3 *Curves in polar coordinates*
- 4.7.4 *Spirals*
- 4.7.5 *The Peano curve and fractal curves*
- 4.7.6 *Fractal objects*
- 4.7.7 *Classical constructions*

4.8 COORDINATE SYSTEMS IN SPACE

- 4.8.1 *Cartesian coordinates in space*
- 4.8.2 *Cylindrical coordinates in space*
- 4.8.3 *Spherical coordinates in space*
- 4.8.4 *Relations between Cartesian, cylindrical, and spherical coordinates*
- 4.8.5 *Homogeneous coordinates in space*

4.9 SPACE SYMMETRIES OR ISOMETRIES

- 4.9.1 *Formulae for symmetries: Cartesian coordinates*
- 4.9.2 *Formulae for symmetries: homogeneous coordinates*

4.10 OTHER TRANSFORMATIONS OF SPACE

- 4.10.1 *Similarities*
- 4.10.2 *Affine transformations*
- 4.10.3 *Projective transformations*

4.11 DIRECTION ANGLES AND DIRECTION COSINES

4.12 PLANES

- 4.12.1 *Planes with prescribed properties*
- 4.12.2 *Concurrence and coplanarity*

4.13 LINES IN SPACE

- 4.13.1 *Distances*
- 4.13.2 *Angles*
- 4.13.3 *Concurrence, coplanarity, parallelism*

4.14 POLYHEDRA

- 4.14.1 *Convex regular polyhedra*
- 4.14.2 *Polyhedra nets*

4.15 CYLINDERS

4.16 CONES

4.17 SURFACES OF REVOLUTION: THE TORUS

4.18 QUADRICS

- 4.18.1 *Spheres*

4.19 SPHERICAL GEOMETRY & TRIGONOMETRY

- 4.19.1 *Right spherical triangles*

4.20 DIFFERENTIAL GEOMETRY

4.20.1 *Curves*

4.20.2 *Surfaces*

4.21 ANGLE CONVERSION

4.22 KNOTS UP TO EIGHT CROSSINGS

4.1 COORDINATE SYSTEMS IN THE PLANE

4.1.1 CONVENTION

When we talk about “the point with coordinates (x, y) ” or “the curve with equation $y = f(x)$ ”, we always mean Cartesian coordinates. If a formula involves other coordinates, this fact will be stated explicitly.

4.1.2 SUBSTITUTIONS AND TRANSFORMATIONS

Formulae for changes in coordinate systems can lead to confusion because (for example) moving the coordinate axes *up* has the same effect on equations as moving objects *down* while the axes stay *x* ed. (To read the next paragraph, you can move your eyes down or slide the page up.)

To avoid confusion, we will carefully distinguish between transformations of the plane and substitutions, as explained below. Similar considerations will apply to transformations and substitutions in three dimensions ([Section 4.8](#)).

4.1.2.1 Substitutions

A *substitution*, or *change of coordinates*, relates the coordinates of a point in one coordinate system to those of *the same point in a different coordinate system*. Usually one coordinate system has the superscript $'$ and the other does not, and we write

$$\begin{cases} x = F_x(x', y'), \\ y = F_y(x', y'), \end{cases} \quad \text{or} \quad (x, y) = F(x', y') \quad (4.1.1)$$

(where subscripts and primes are not derivatives, they are coordinates). This means: given the equation of an object in the unprimed coordinate system, one obtains the equation of the *same* object in the primed coordinate system by substituting $F_x(x', y')$ for x and $F_y(x', y')$ for y in the equation. For instance, suppose the primed

coordinate system is obtained from the unprimed system by moving the x axis up a distance d . Then $x = x'$ and $y = y' + d$. The circle with equations $x^2 + y^2 = 1$ in the unprimed system has equations $x'^2 + (y' + d)^2 = 1$ in the primed system. Thus, transforming an implicit equation in (x, y) into one in (x', y') is immediate.

The point $P = (a, b)$ in the unprimed system, with equation $x = a, y = b$, has equation $F_x(x', y') = a, F_y(x', y') = b$ in the new system. To get the primed coordinates explicitly, one must solve for x' and y' (in the example just given we have $x' = a, y' + d = b$, which yields $x' = a, y' = b - d$). Therefore, if possible, we give the *inverse equations*

$$\begin{cases} x' = G_{x'}(x, y), \\ y' = G_{y'}(x, y) \end{cases} \quad \text{or} \quad (x', y') = G(x, y),$$

which are equivalent to Equation (4.1.1) if $G(F(x', y')) = (x', y')$ and $F(G(x, y)) = (x, y)$. Then to go from the unprimed to the primed system, one merely inserts the known values of x and y into these equations. This is also the best strategy when dealing with a curve expressed parametrically, that is, $x = x(t), y = y(t)$.

4.1.2.2 Transformations

A *transformation* associates with each point (x, y) a different point in the same coordinate system; we denote this by

$$(x, y) \mapsto F(x, y), \tag{4.1.2}$$

where F is a map from the plane to itself (a two-component function of two variables). For example, translating down by a distance d is accomplished by $(x, y) \mapsto (x, y - d)$ (see Section 4.2). Thus, the action of the transformation on a point whose coordinates are known (or on a curve expressed parametrically) can be immediately computed.

If, on the other hand, we have an object (say a curve) defined *implicitly* by the equation $C(x, y) = 0$, finding the equation of the transformed object requires using the *inverse transformation*

$$(x, y) \mapsto G(x, y) \tag{4.1.3}$$

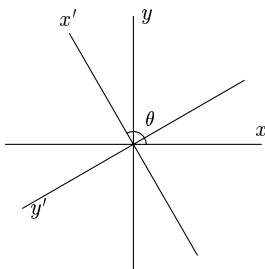
defined by $G(F(x, y)) = (x, y)$ and $F(G(x, y)) = (x, y)$. The equation of the transformed object is $C(G(x, y)) = 0$. For instance, if C is the circle with equation $x^2 + y^2 = 1$ and we are translating down by a distance d , the inverse transformation is $(x, y) \mapsto (x, y + d)$ (translating up), and the equation of the translated circle is $x^2 + (y + d)^2 = 1$. Compare to the example following Equation (4.1.1).

4.1.2.3 Using transformations to change coordinates

Usually, we will not give formulae of the form (4.1.1) for changes between two coordinate systems of the same type, because they can be immediately derived from the corresponding formulae (4.1.2) for transformations, which are given in Section 4.2. We give two examples for clarity.

FIGURE 4.1

Change of coordinates by a rotation.



Let the two Cartesian coordinate systems (x, y) and (x', y') be related as follows: They have the same origin, and the positive x' -axis is obtained from the positive x -axis by a (counterclockwise) rotation through an angle θ (Figure 4.1). If a point has coordinates (x, y) in the unprimed system, its coordinates (x', y') in the primed system are the same as the coordinates in the unprimed system of a point that undergoes the *inverse rotation*, that is, a rotation by an angle $\alpha = -\theta$. According to Equation (4.2.2) (page 305), this transformation acts as follows:

$$(x, y) \mapsto \begin{bmatrix} \cos \theta & \sin \theta \\ -\sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{bmatrix} (x, y) = (x \cos \theta + y \sin \theta, -x \sin \theta + y \cos \theta). \quad (4.1.4)$$

Therefore the right-hand side of Equation (4.1.4) is (x', y') , and the desired substitution is

$$\begin{aligned} x' &= x \cos \theta + y \sin \theta, \\ y' &= -x \sin \theta + y \cos \theta. \end{aligned} \quad (4.1.5)$$

Switching the roles of the primed and unprimed systems we get the equivalent substitution

$$\begin{aligned} x &= x' \cos \theta - y' \sin \theta, \\ y &= x' \sin \theta + y' \cos \theta \end{aligned} \quad (4.1.6)$$

(because the x -axis is obtained from the x' -axis by a rotation through an angle $-\theta$).

Similarly, let the two Cartesian coordinate systems (x, y) and (x', y') differ by a translation: x is parallel to x' and y to y' , and the origin of the second system coincides with the point (x_0, y_0) of the first system. The coordinates (x, y) and (x', y') of a point are related by

$$\begin{aligned} x &= x' + x_0, & x' &= x - x_0, \\ y &= y' + y_0, & y' &= y - y_0. \end{aligned} \quad (4.1.7)$$

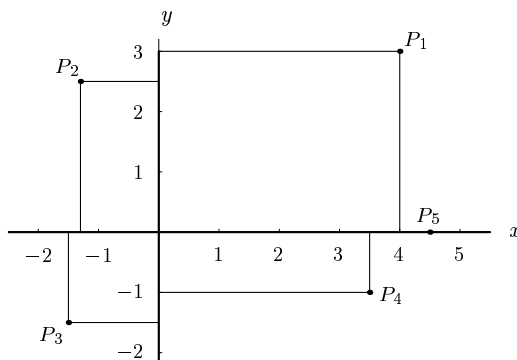
4.1.3 CARTESIAN COORDINATES IN THE PLANE

In *Cartesian coordinates* (or *rectangular coordinates*), the “address” of a point P is given by two real numbers indicating the positions of the perpendicular projections from the point to two fixed, perpendicular, graduated lines, called the *axes*. If one

coordinate is denoted x and the other y , the axes are called the x -axis and the y -axis, and we write $P = (x, y)$. Usually the x -axis is horizontal, with x increasing to the right, and the y -axis is vertical, with y increasing vertically up. The point $x = 0$, $y = 0$, where the axes intersect, is the *origin*. See Figure 4.2.

FIGURE 4.2

In Cartesian coordinates, $P_1 = (4, 3)$, $P_2 = (-1.3, 2.5)$, $P_3 = (-1.5, -1.5)$, $P_4 = (3.5, -1)$, and $P_5 = (4.5, 0)$. The axes divide the plane into four quadrants. P_1 is in the first quadrant, P_2 in the second, P_3 in the third, and P_4 in the fourth. P_5 is on the positive x -axis.

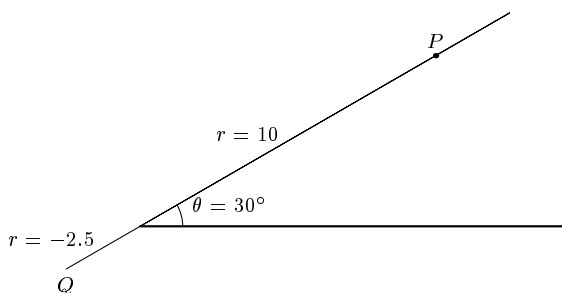


4.1.4 POLAR COORDINATES IN THE PLANE

In *polar coordinates* a point P is also characterized by two numbers: the distance $r \geq 0$ to a fixed *pole* or *origin* O , and the angle θ that the ray OP makes with a fixed ray originating at O , which is generally drawn pointing to the right (this is called the *initial ray*). The angle θ is defined only up to a multiple of 360° or 2π radians. In addition, it is sometimes convenient to relax the condition $r > 0$ and allow r to be a signed distance; so (r, θ) and $(-r, \theta + 180^\circ)$ represent the same point (Figure 4.3).

FIGURE 4.3

Among the possible sets of polar coordinates for P are $(10, 30^\circ)$, $(10, 390^\circ)$ and $(10, -330^\circ)$. Among the sets of polar coordinates for Q are $(2.5, 210^\circ)$ and $(-2.5, 30^\circ)$.



4.1.4.1 Relations between Cartesian and polar coordinates

Consider a system of polar coordinates and a system of Cartesian coordinates with the same origin. Assume that the initial ray of the polar coordinate system coincides with the positive x -axis, and that the ray $\theta = 90^\circ$ coincides with the positive y -axis. Then the polar coordinates (r, θ) with $r > 0$ and the Cartesian coordinates (x, y) of the same point are related as follows (x and y are assumed positive when using the \tan^{-1} formula):

$$\begin{cases} x = r \cos \theta, \\ y = r \sin \theta, \end{cases} \quad \begin{cases} r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}, \\ \theta = \tan^{-1} \frac{y}{x}, \end{cases} \quad \begin{cases} \sin \theta = \frac{y}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}}, \\ \cos \theta = \frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}}. \end{cases}$$

4.1.5 HOMOGENEOUS COORDINATES IN THE PLANE

A triple of real numbers $(x : y : t)$, with $t \neq 0$, is a set of *homogeneous coordinates* for the point P with Cartesian coordinates $(x/t, y/t)$. Thus the same point has many sets of homogeneous coordinates: $(x : y : t)$ and $(x' : y' : t')$ represent the same point if and only if there is some real number α such that $x' = \alpha x, y' = \alpha y, z' = \alpha z$.

When we think of the same triple of numbers as the Cartesian coordinates of a point in three-dimensional space (page 345), we write it as (x, y, t) instead of $(x : y : t)$. The connection between the point in space with Cartesian coordinates (x, y, t) and the point in the plane with homogeneous coordinates $(x : y : t)$ becomes apparent when we consider the plane $t = 1$ in space, with Cartesian coordinates given by the first two coordinates x, y (Figure 4.4). The point (x, y, t) in space can be connected to the origin by a line L that intersects the plane $t = 1$ in the point with Cartesian coordinates $(x/t, y/t)$ or homogeneous coordinates $(x : y : t)$.

Homogeneous coordinates are useful for several reasons. One of the most important is that they allow one to unify all symmetries of the plane (as well as other transformations) under a single umbrella. All of these transformations can be regarded as linear maps in the space of triples $(x : y : t)$, and so can be expressed in terms of matrix multiplications (see page 306).

If we consider triples $(x : y : t)$ such that at least one of x, y, t is non-zero, we can name not only the points in the plane but also points “at infinity”. Thus, $(x : y : 0)$ represents the point at infinity in the direction of the ray emanating from the origin going through the point (x, y) .

4.1.6 OBLIQUE COORDINATES IN THE PLANE

The following generalization of Cartesian coordinates is sometimes useful. Consider two *axes* (graduated lines), intersecting at the *origin* but not necessarily perpendicularly. Let the angle between them be ω . In this system of *oblique coordinates*, a point P is given by two real numbers indicating the positions of the projections from the point to each axis, in the direction of the other axis (see Figure 4.5). The first axis (x -axis) is generally drawn horizontally. The case $\omega = 90^\circ$ yields a Cartesian coordinate system.

FIGURE 4.4

The point P with spatial coordinates (x, y, t) projects to the point Q with spatial coordinates $(x/t, y/t, 1)$. The plane Cartesian coordinates of Q are $(x/t, y/t)$, and $(x : y : t)$ is one set of homogeneous coordinates for Q . Any point on the line L (except for the origin O) would also project to Q .

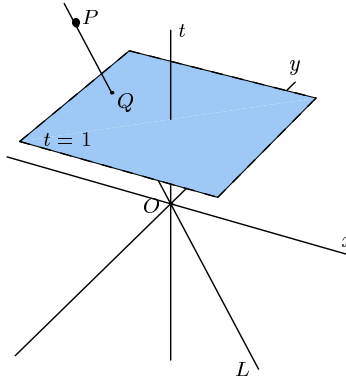
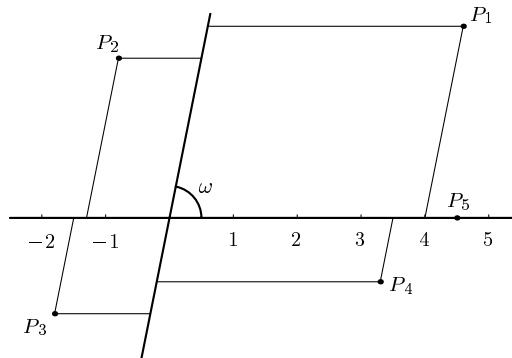


FIGURE 4.5

In oblique coordinates, $P_1 = (4, 3)$, $P_2 = (-1.3, 2.5)$, $P_3 = (-1.5, -1.5)$, $P_4 = (3.5, -1)$, and $P_5 = (4.5, 0)$. Compare to [Figure 4.2](#).



4.1.6.1 Relations between two oblique coordinate systems

Let the two oblique coordinate systems (x, y) and (x', y') , with angles ω and ω' , share the same origin, and suppose the positive x' -axis makes an angle θ with the positive x -axis. The coordinates (x, y) and (x', y') of a point in the two systems are related by

$$\begin{aligned} x &= \frac{x' \sin(\omega - \theta) + y' \sin(\omega - \omega' - \theta)}{\sin \omega}, \\ y &= \frac{x' \sin \theta + y' \sin(\omega' + \theta)}{\sin \omega}. \end{aligned} \tag{4.1.8}$$

This formula also covers passing from a Cartesian system to an oblique system and vice versa, by taking $\omega = 90^\circ$ or $\omega' = 90^\circ$.

The relation between two oblique coordinate systems that differ by a translation is the same as for Cartesian systems. See Equation (4.1.7).

4.2 PLANE SYMMETRIES OR ISOMETRIES

A transformation of the plane (invertible map of the plane to itself) that preserves distances is called an *isometry* of the plane. Every isometry of the plane is of one of the following types:

1. The *identity* (which leaves every point fixed)
2. A *translation* by a vector \mathbf{v}
3. A *rotation* through an angle α around a point P
4. A *reflection* in a line L
5. A *glide-reflection* in a line L with displacement d

Although the identity is a particular case of a translation and a rotation, and reflections are particular cases of glide-reflections, it is more intuitive to consider each case separately.

4.2.1 FORMULAE FOR SYMMETRIES: CARTESIAN COORDINATES

In the formulae below, a multiplication between a matrix and a pair of coordinates should be carried out regarding the pair as a column vector (or a matrix with two rows and one column). Thus $\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix} (x, y) = (ax + by, cx + dy)$.

1. *Translation* by (x_0, y_0) :

$$(x, y) \mapsto (x + x_0, y + y_0). \quad (4.2.1)$$

2. *Rotation* through α (counterclockwise) around the origin:

$$(x, y) \mapsto \begin{bmatrix} \cos \alpha & -\sin \alpha \\ \sin \alpha & \cos \alpha \end{bmatrix} (x, y). \quad (4.2.2)$$

3. *Rotation* through α (counterclockwise) around an arbitrary point (x_0, y_0) :

$$(x, y) \mapsto (x_0, y_0) + \begin{bmatrix} \cos \alpha & -\sin \alpha \\ \sin \alpha & \cos \alpha \end{bmatrix} (x - x_0, y - y_0). \quad (4.2.3)$$

4. *Reflection*:

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{in the } x\text{-axis:} & (x, y) \mapsto (x, -y), \\ \text{in the } y\text{-axis:} & (x, y) \mapsto (-x, y), \\ \text{in the diagonal } x = y: & (x, y) \mapsto (y, x). \end{array} \quad (4.2.4)$$

5. *Reflection* in a line with equation $ax + by + c = 0$:

$$(x, y) \mapsto \frac{1}{a^2 + b^2} \left(\begin{bmatrix} b^2 - a^2 & -2ab \\ -2ab & a^2 - b^2 \end{bmatrix} (x, y) - (2ac, 2bc) \right). \quad (4.2.5)$$

6. *Reflection* in a line going through (x_0, y_0) and making an angle α with the x -axis:

$$(x, y) \mapsto (x_0, y_0) + \begin{bmatrix} \cos 2\alpha & \sin 2\alpha \\ \sin 2\alpha & -\cos 2\alpha \end{bmatrix} (x - x_0, y - y_0). \quad (4.2.6)$$

7. *Glide-reflection* in a line L with displacement d : Apply first a reflection in L , then a translation by a vector of length d in the direction of L , that is, by the vector

$$\frac{1}{a^2 + b^2} (\pm ad, \mp bd) \quad (4.2.7)$$

if L has equation $ax + by + c = 0$.

4.2.2 FORMULAE FOR SYMMETRIES: HOMOGENEOUS COORDINATES

All isometries of the plane can be expressed in homogeneous coordinates in terms of multiplication by a matrix. This fact is useful in implementing these transformations on a computer. It also means that the successive application of transformations reduces to matrix multiplication. The corresponding matrices are as follows:

1. *Translation* by (x_0, y_0) :

$$T_{(x_0, y_0)} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & x_0 \\ 0 & 1 & y_0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (4.2.8)$$

2. *Rotation* through α around the origin:

$$R_\alpha = \begin{bmatrix} \cos \alpha & -\sin \alpha & 0 \\ \sin \alpha & \cos \alpha & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (4.2.9)$$

3. *Reflection* in a line going through the origin and making an angle α with the x -axis:

$$M_\alpha = \begin{bmatrix} \cos 2\alpha & \sin 2\alpha & 0 \\ \sin 2\alpha & -\cos 2\alpha & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (4.2.10)$$

From this one can deduce all other transformations.

EXAMPLE To find the matrix for a rotation through α around an arbitrary point $P = (x_0, y_0)$, we apply a translation by $-(x_0, y_0)$ to move P to the origin, a rotation through α around the origin, and then a translation by (x_0, y_0) :

$$T_{(x_0, y_0)} R_\alpha T_{-(x_0, y_0)} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos \alpha & -\sin \alpha & x_0 - x_0 \cos \alpha + y_0 \sin \alpha \\ \sin \alpha & \cos \alpha & y_0 - y_0 \cos \alpha - x_0 \sin \alpha \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad (4.2.11)$$

(notice the order of the multiplication).

4.2.3 FORMULAE FOR SYMMETRIES: POLAR COORDINATES

1. *Rotation around the origin* through an angle α :

$$(r, \theta) \mapsto (r, \theta + \alpha). \quad (4.2.12)$$

2. *Reflection in a line through the origin* and making an angle α with the positive x -axis:

$$(r, \theta) \mapsto (r, 2\alpha - \theta). \quad (4.2.13)$$

4.2.4 CRYSTALLOGRAPHIC GROUPS

A group of symmetries of the plane that is doubly infinite is a *wallpaper group*, or *crystallographic group*. There are 17 types of such groups, corresponding to 17 essentially distinct ways to tile the plane in a doubly periodic pattern. (There are also 230 three-dimensional crystallographic groups.)

The simplest crystallographic group involves translations only (page 309, top left). The others involve, in addition to translations, one or more of the other types of symmetries (rotations, reflections, glide-reflections). The *Conway notation* for crystallographic groups is based on the types of non-translational symmetries occurring in the “simplest description” of the group:

1. \circ indicates a translations only,
2. $*$ indicates a reflection (mirror symmetry),
3. \times a glide-reflection,
4. a number n indicates a rotational symmetry of order n (rotation by $360^\circ/n$).

In addition, if a number n comes after the $*$, the center of the corresponding rotation lies on mirror lines, so that the symmetry there is actually dihedral of order $2n$.

Thus the group $**$ in the table below (page 309, middle left) has two inequivalent lines of mirror symmetry; the group 333 (page 311, top right) has three inequivalent centers of order-3 rotation; the group 22^* (page 309, bottom right) has two inequivalent centers of order-2 rotation as well as mirror lines; and $*632$ (page 311, bottom right) has points of dihedral symmetry of order $12 (= 2 \times 6)$, 6, and 4.

The following table gives the groups in the Conway notation and in the notation traditional in crystallography. It also gives the quotient space of the plane by the

action of the group. The entry “4,4,2 turnover” means the surface of a triangular puff pastry with corner angles $45^\circ (= 180^\circ/4)$, 45° and 90° . The entry “4,4,2 turnover slit along 2,4” means the same surface, slit along the edge joining a 45° vertex to the 90° vertex. Open edges are silvered (mirror lines); such edges occur exactly for those groups whose Conway notation includes a $*$.

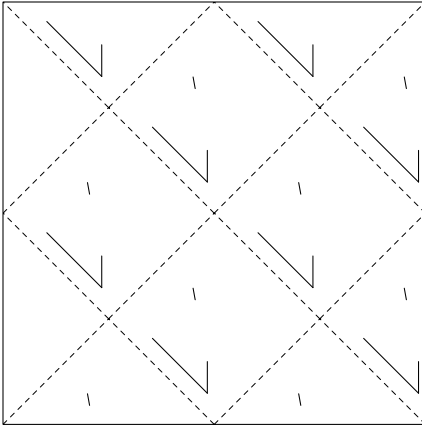
The last column of the table gives the dimension of the space of inequivalent groups of the given type (equivalent groups are those that can be obtained from one another by proportional scaling or rigid motion). For instance, there is a group of type \circ for every shape parallelogram, and there are two degrees of freedom for the choice of such a shape (say the ratio and angle between sides). Thus, the \circ group of page 309 (top left) is based on a square fundamental domain, while for the \circ group of page 311 (top left) a fundamental parallelogram would have the shape of two juxtaposed equilateral triangles. These two groups are inequivalent, although they are of the same type.

| Look on page | Conway | Cryst | Quotient space | Dim |
|-----------------------------------|----------------|-------|--------------------------------|-----|
| 309 top left; } 311 top left } | \circ | p1 | Torus | 2 |
| 309 top right | $\times\times$ | pg | Klein bottle | 1 |
| 309 middle left | ** | pm | Cylinder | 1 |
| 309 middle right | $\times*$ | cm | Möbius strip | 1 |
| 309 bottom left | 22^\times | pgg | Nonorientable football | 1 |
| 309 bottom right | 22^* | pmg | Open pillowcase | 1 |
| 310 top left | 2222 | p2 | Closed pillowcase | 2 |
| 310 top right | 2^*22 | cmm | 4,4,2 turnover, slit along 4,4 | 1 |
| 310 middle left | $*2222$ | pmm | Square | 1 |
| 310 middle right | 442 | p4 | 4,4,2 turnover | 0 |
| 310 bottom left | 4^*2 | p4g | 4,4,2 turnover, slit along 4,2 | 0 |
| 310 bottom right | $*442$ | p4m | 4,4,2 triangle | 0 |
| 311 top right | 333 | p3 | 3,3,3 turnover | 0 |
| 311 middle left | $*333$ | p3m1 | 3,3,3 triangle | 0 |
| 311 middle right | 3^*3 | p31m | 6,3,2 turnover, slit along 3,2 | 0 |
| 311 bottom left | 632 | p6 | 6,3,2 turnover | 0 |
| 311 bottom right | $*632$ | p6m | 6,3,2 triangle | 0 |

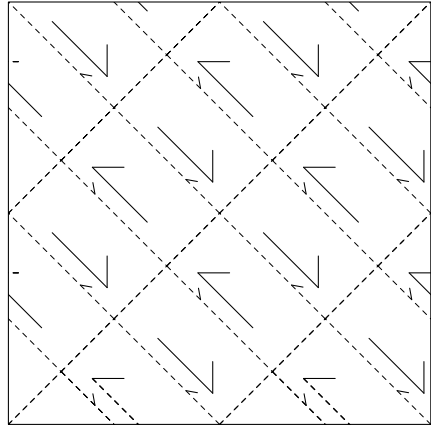
The figures on pages 309–311 show wallpaper patterns based on each of the 17 types of crystallographic groups (two patterns are shown for the \circ , or translations-only, type). Thin lines bound *unit cells*, or *fundamental domains*. When solid, they represent lines of mirror symmetry, and are fully determined. When dashed, they represent arbitrary boundaries, which can be shifted so as to give different fundamental domains. One can even make these lines into curves, provided the symmetry is respected. Dots at the intersections of thin lines represent centers of rotational symmetry.

Some of the relationships between the types are made obvious by the patterns. For instance, on the first row of page 309, we see that the group on the right, of type $\times\times$, contains the one on the left, of type \circ , with index two. However, there are more relationships than can be indicated in a single set of pictures. For instance, there is a group of type $\times\times$ hiding in any group of type 3^*3 .

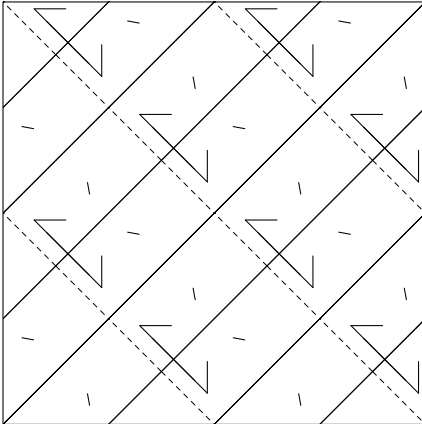
o
p1



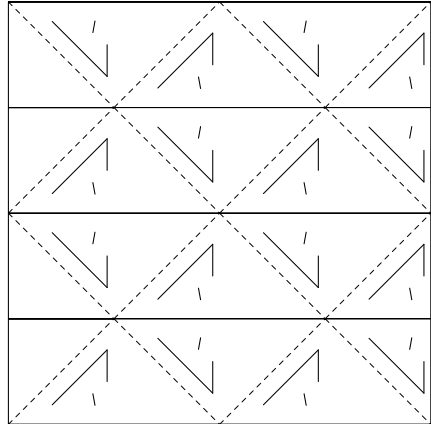
xx
pg



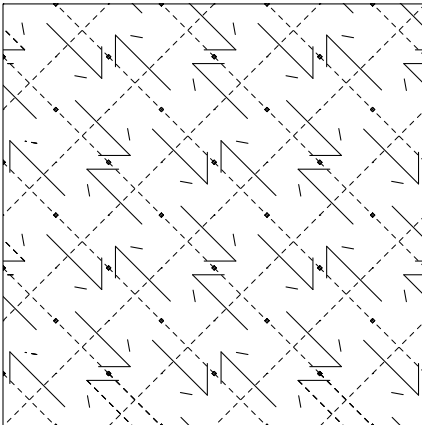
**
pm



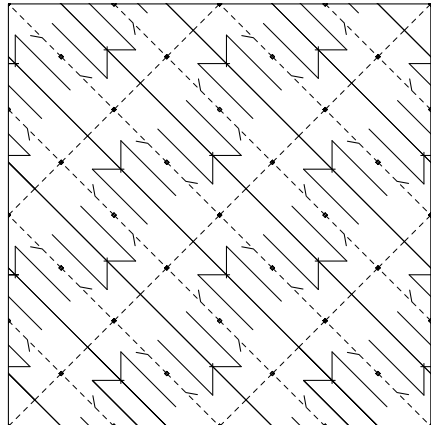
x*
cm



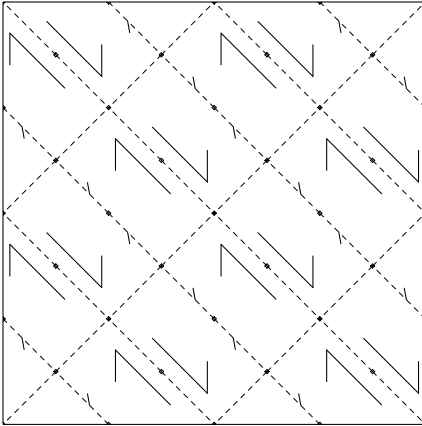
22^x
pgg



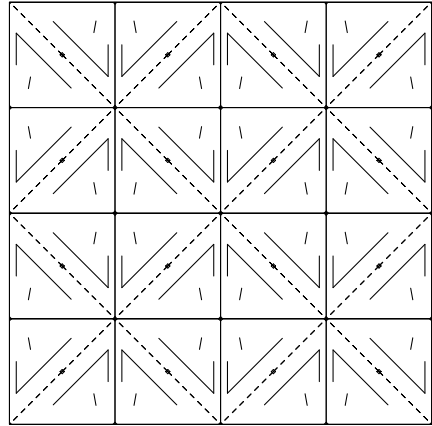
22*
pmg



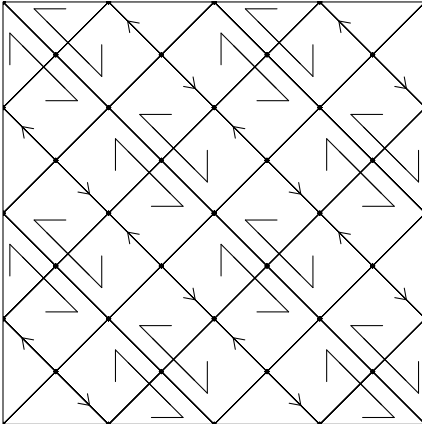
2222
p2



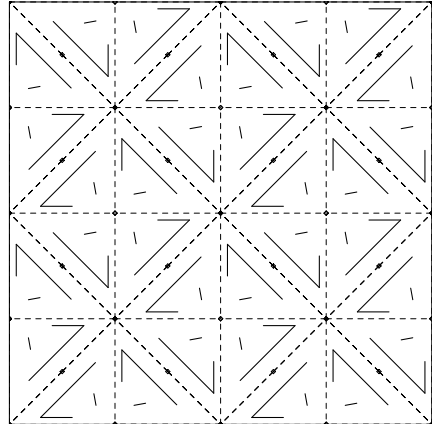
2*22
cmm



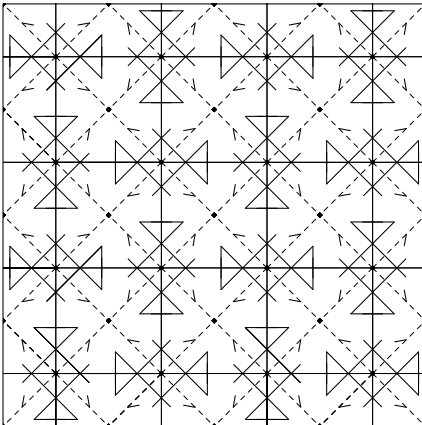
*2222
pmm



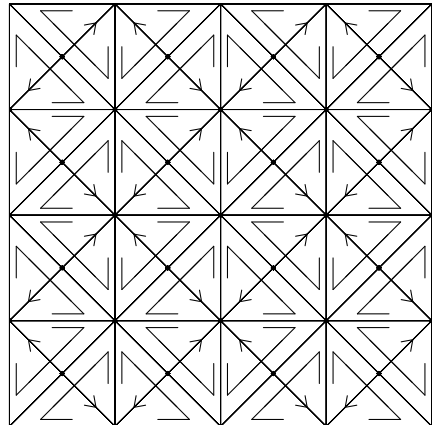
442
p4



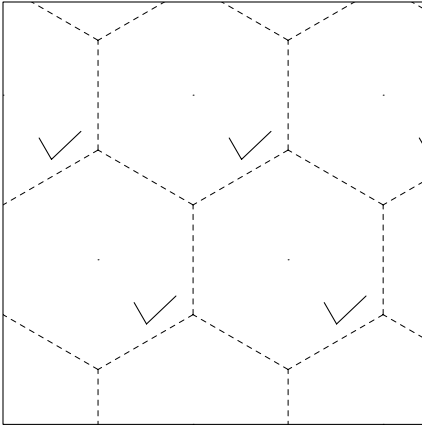
4*2
p4g



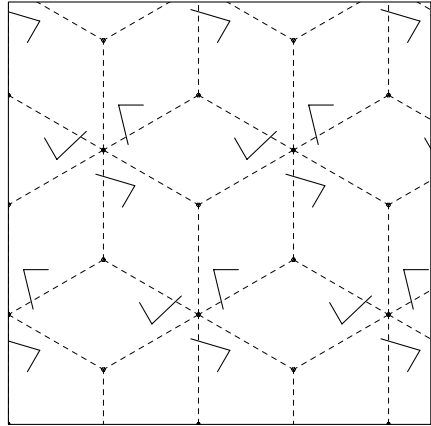
*442
p4m



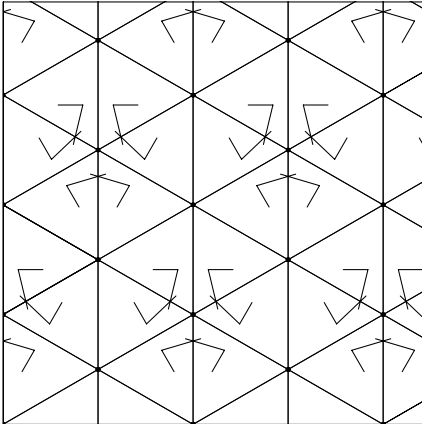
◦
p1



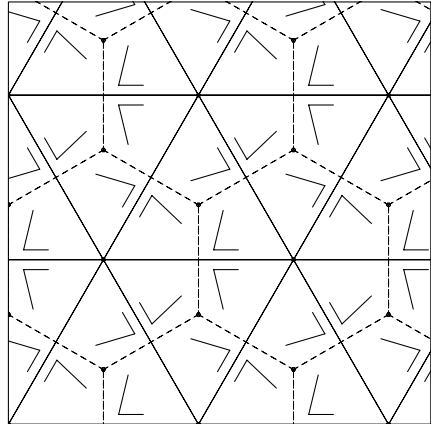
333
p3



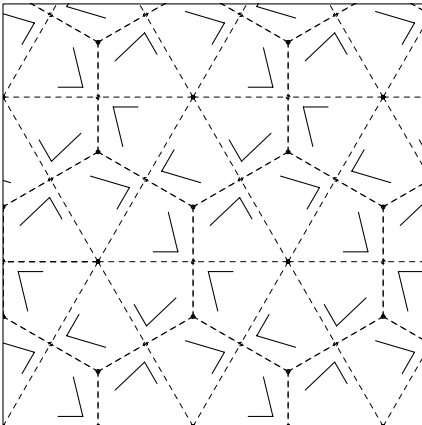
*333
p3m1



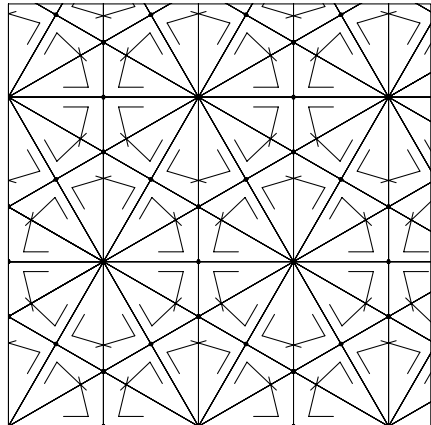
3*3
p31m



632
p6



*632
p6m



4.2.5 CLASSIFYING THE CRYSTALLOGRAPHIC GROUPS

To classify an image representing a crystallographic group, answer the following sequence of questions starting with: “What is the minimal rotational invariance?”.

- None
Is there a reflection?
 - No.
Is there a glide-reflection?
 - * No: p1 (page 309)
 - * Yes: pg (page 309)
 - Yes.
Is there a glide-reflection in an axis that is not a reflection axis?
 - * No: pm (page 309)
 - * Yes: cm (page 309)
- 2-fold (180° rotation)
Is there a reflection?
 - No.
Is there a glide-reflection?
 - * No: p2 (page 310)
 - * Yes: pgg (page 309)
 - Yes.
Are there reflections in two directions?
 - * No: pmg (page 309)
 - * Yes: Are all rotation centers on reflection axes?
 - No: cmm (page 310)
 - Yes: pmm (page 310)
- 3-fold (120° rotation)
Is there a reflection?
 - No: p3 (page 311)
 - Yes.
Are all centers of threefold rotations on reflection axes?
 - * No: p31m (page 311)
 - * Yes: p3m1 (page 311)
- 4-fold (90° rotation)
Is there a reflection?
 - No: p4 (page 310)
 - Yes.
Are there four reflection axes?
 - * No: p4g (page 310)
 - * Yes: p4m (page 310)
- 6-fold (60° rotation)
Is there a reflection?
 - No: p6 (page 311)
 - Yes: p6m (page 311)

4.3 OTHER TRANSFORMATIONS OF THE PLANE

4.3.1 SIMILARITIES

A transformation of the plane that preserves shapes is called a *similarity*. Every similarity of the plane is obtained by composing a *proportional scaling transformation*

(also known as a *homothety*) with an isometry. A proportional scaling transformation centered at the origin has the form

$$(x, y) \mapsto (ax, ay), \tag{4.3.1}$$

where $a \neq 0$ is the *scaling factor* (a real number). The corresponding matrix in *homogeneous coordinates* is

$$H_a = \begin{bmatrix} a & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & a & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}. \tag{4.3.2}$$

In *polar coordinates*, the transformation is $(r, \theta) \mapsto (ar, \theta)$.

4.3.2 AFFINE TRANSFORMATIONS

A transformation that preserves lines and parallelism (maps parallel lines to parallel lines) is an *af ne transformation*. There are two important particular cases of such transformations:

A *non-proportional scaling transformation* centered at the origin has the form $(x, y) \mapsto (ax, by)$, where $a, b \neq 0$ are the *scaling factors* (real numbers). The corresponding matrix in *homogeneous coordinates* is

$$H_{a,b} = \begin{bmatrix} a & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & b & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}. \tag{4.3.3}$$

A *shear* preserving horizontal lines has the form $(x, y) \mapsto (x + ry, y)$, where r is the *shearing factor* (see Figure 4.6). The corresponding matrix in *homogeneous coordinates* is

$$S_r = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & r & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}. \tag{4.3.4}$$

Every *af ne* transformation is obtained by composing a scaling transformation with an isometry, or a shear with a homothety and an isometry.

FIGURE 4.6

A shear with factor $r = \frac{1}{2}$.

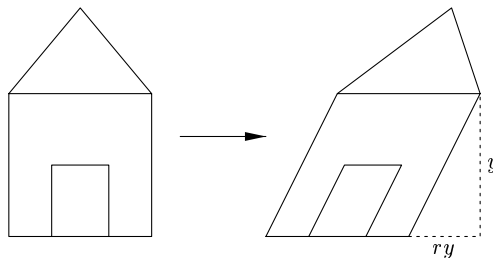
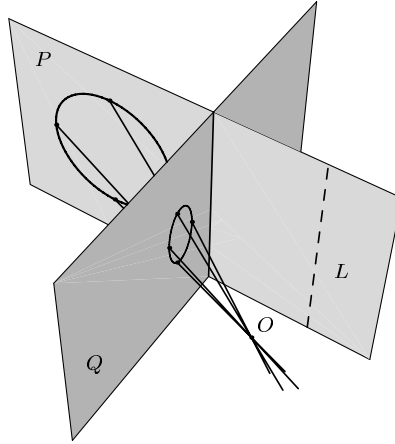


FIGURE 4.7

A perspective transformation with center O , mapping the plane P to the plane Q . The transformation is not defined on the line L , where P intersects the plane parallel to Q and going through O .



4.3.3 PROJECTIVE TRANSFORMATIONS

A transformation that maps lines to lines (but does not necessarily preserve parallelism) is a *projective transformation*. Any plane projective transformation can be expressed by an invertible 3×3 matrix in homogeneous coordinates; conversely, any invertible 3×3 matrix defines a projective transformation of the plane. Projective transformations (if not affine) are not defined on all of the plane but only on the complement of a line (the missing line is “mapped to infinity”).

A common example of a projective transformation is given by a *perspective transformation* (Figure 4.7). Strictly speaking this gives a transformation from one plane to another, but, if we identify the two planes by (for example) fixing a Cartesian system in each, we get a projective transformation from the plane to itself.

4.4 LINES

The (Cartesian) equation of a *straight line* is linear in the coordinates x and y :

$$ax + by + c = 0. \quad (4.4.1)$$

The *slope* of this line is $-a/b$, the *intersection with the x -axis* (or *x -intercept*) is $x = -c/a$, and the *intersection with the y -axis* (or *y -intercept*) is $y = -c/b$. If $a = 0$, the line is parallel to the x -axis, and if $b = 0$, then the line is parallel to the y -axis.

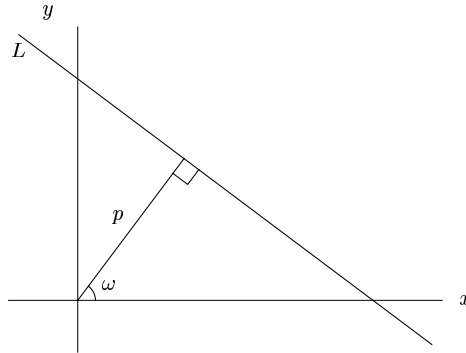
(In an *oblique coordinate system*, everything in the preceding paragraph remains true, except for the value of the slope.)

When $a^2 + b^2 = 1$ and $c \leq 0$ in the equation $ax + by + c = 0$, the equation is said to be in *normal form*. In this case $-c$ is the *distance of the line to the origin*, and ω (with $\cos \omega = a$ and $\sin \omega = b$) is the angle that the perpendicular dropped to the line from the origin makes with the positive x -axis (Figure 4.8, with $p = -c$).

To reduce an arbitrary equation $ax + by + c = 0$ to normal form, divide by $\pm\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$, where the sign of the radical is chosen opposite the sign of c when $c \neq 0$ and the same as the sign of b when $c = 0$.

FIGURE 4.8

The normal form of the line L is $x \cos \omega + y \sin \omega = p$.



4.4.1 LINES WITH PRESCRIBED PROPERTIES

1. Line of slope m intersecting the x -axis at $x = x_0$: $y = m(x - x_0)$.
2. Line of slope m intersecting the y -axis at $y = y_0$: $y = mx + y_0$.
3. Line intersecting the x -axis at $x = x_0$ and the y -axis at $y = y_0$:

$$\frac{x}{x_0} + \frac{y}{y_0} = 1. \quad (4.4.2)$$

(This formula remains true in *oblique coordinates*.)

4. Line of slope m passing through (x_0, y_0) : $y - y_0 = m(x - x_0)$.
5. Line passing through points (x_0, y_0) and (x_1, y_1) :

$$\frac{y - y_1}{x - x_1} = \frac{y_0 - y_1}{x_0 - x_1} \quad \text{or} \quad \begin{vmatrix} x & y & 1 \\ x_0 & y_0 & 1 \\ x_1 & y_1 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 0. \quad (4.4.3)$$

(These formulae remain true in *oblique coordinates*.)

6. Slope of line going through points (x_0, y_0) and (x_1, y_1) : $\frac{y_1 - y_0}{x_1 - x_0}$.

7. Line passing through points with *polar coordinates* (r_0, θ_0) and (r_1, θ_1) :

$$r(r_0 \sin(\theta - \theta_0) - r_1 \sin(\theta - \theta_1)) = r_0 r_1 \sin(\theta_1 - \theta_0). \quad (4.4.4)$$

4.4.2 DISTANCES

The *distance* between two points in the plane is the *length of the line segment* joining the two points. If the points have *Cartesian coordinates* (x_0, y_0) and (x_1, y_1) , this distance is

$$\sqrt{(x_1 - x_0)^2 + (y_1 - y_0)^2}. \quad (4.4.5)$$

If the points have *polar coordinates* (r_0, θ_0) and (r_1, θ_1) , this distance is

$$\sqrt{r_0^2 + r_1^2 - 2r_0 r_1 \cos(\theta_0 - \theta_1)}. \quad (4.4.6)$$

If the points have *oblique coordinates* (x_0, y_0) and (x_1, y_1) , this distance is

$$\sqrt{(x_1 - x_0)^2 + (y_1 - y_0)^2 + 2(x_1 - x_0)(y_1 - y_0) \cos \omega}, \quad (4.4.7)$$

where ω is the angle between the axes (Figure 4.5).

The point $k\%$ of the way from $P_0 = (x_0, y_0)$ to $P_1 = (x_1, y_1)$ is

$$\left(\frac{kx_1 + (100 - k)x_0}{100}, \frac{ky_1 + (100 - k)y_0}{100} \right). \quad (4.4.8)$$

(The same formula also works in oblique coordinates.) This point divides the segment P_0P_1 in the ratio $k : (100 - k)$. As a particular case, the *midpoint* of P_0P_1 is given by $(\frac{1}{2}(x_0 + x_1), \frac{1}{2}(y_0 + y_1))$.

The *distance* from the point (x_0, y_0) to the line $ax + by + c = 0$ is

$$\left| \frac{ax_0 + by_0 + c}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}} \right|. \quad (4.4.9)$$

4.4.3 ANGLES

The *angle* between two lines $a_0x + b_0y + c_0 = 0$ and $a_1x + b_1y + c_1 = 0$ is

$$\tan^{-1} \frac{b_1}{a_1} - \tan^{-1} \frac{b_0}{a_0} = \tan^{-1} \frac{a_0 b_1 - a_1 b_0}{a_0 a_1 + b_0 b_1}. \quad (4.4.10)$$

In particular, the two lines are *parallel* when $a_0 b_1 = a_1 b_0$, and *perpendicular* when $a_0 a_1 = -b_0 b_1$.

The *angle* between two lines of slopes m_0 and m_1 is $\tan^{-1}(m_1) - \tan^{-1}(m_0)$ (or $\tan^{-1}((m_1 - m_0)/(1 + m_0 m_1))$). In particular, the two lines are *parallel* when $m_0 = m_1$ and *perpendicular* when $m_0 m_1 = -1$.

4.4.4 CONCURRENCE AND COLLINEARITY

Three lines $a_0x + b_0y + c_0 = 0$, $a_1x + b_1y + c_1 = 0$, and $a_2x + b_2y + c_2 = 0$ are *concurrent* (i.e., intersect at a single point) if and only if

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_0 & b_0 & c_0 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \end{vmatrix} = 0. \quad (4.4.11)$$

(This remains true in *oblique coordinates*.)

Three points (x_0, y_0) , (x_1, y_1) , and (x_2, y_2) are *collinear* (i.e., all three points are on a straight line) if and only if

$$\begin{vmatrix} x_0 & y_0 & 1 \\ x_1 & y_1 & 1 \\ x_2 & y_2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 0. \quad (4.4.12)$$

(This remains true in *oblique coordinates*.)

Three points with polar coordinates (r_0, θ_0) , (r_1, θ_1) , and (r_2, θ_2) are collinear if and only if

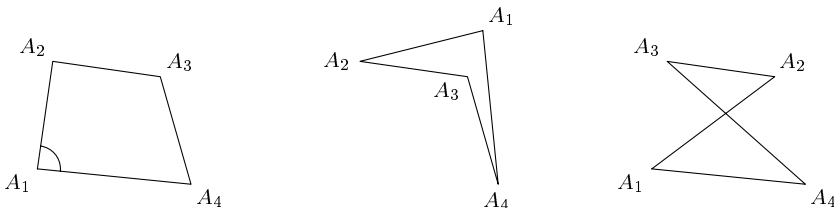
$$r_1 r_2 \sin(\theta_2 - \theta_1) + r_0 r_1 \sin(\theta_1 - \theta_0) + r_2 r_0 \sin(\theta_0 - \theta_2) = 0. \quad (4.4.13)$$

4.5 POLYGONS

Given $k \geq 3$ points A_1, \dots, A_k in the plane, in a certain order, we obtain a k -sided *polygon* or k -gon by connecting each point to the next, and the last to the first, with a line segment. The points A_i are the *vertices* and the segments $A_i A_{i+1}$ are the *sides* or *edges* of the polygon. When $k = 3$ we have a *triangle*, when $k = 4$ we have a *quadrangle* or *quadrilateral*, and so on (see page 324 for names of regular polygons). Here we will assume that all polygons are *simple*: this means that no consecutive edges are on the same line and no two edges intersect (except that consecutive edges intersect at the common vertex) (see Figure 4.9).

FIGURE 4.9

Two simple quadrilaterals (left and middle) and one that is not simple (right). We will treat only simple polygons.



When we refer to the *angle* at a vertex A_k we have in mind the interior angle (as marked in the leftmost polygon in [Figure 4.9](#)). We denote this angle by the same symbol as the vertex. The complement of A_k is the *exterior angle* at that vertex; geometrically, it is the angle between one side and the extension of the adjacent side. In any k -gon, the sum of the angles equals $2(k-2)$ right angles, or $2(k-2) \times 90^\circ$; for example, the sum of the angles of a triangle is 180° .

The *area* of a polygon whose vertices A_i have coordinates (x_i, y_i) , for $1 \leq i \leq k$, is the absolute value of

$$\begin{aligned} \text{area} &= \frac{1}{2}(x_1y_2 - x_2y_1) + \cdots + \frac{1}{2}(x_{k-1}y_k - x_ky_{k-1}) + \frac{1}{2}(x_ky_1 - x_1y_k), \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^k (x_iy_{i+1} - x_{i+1}y_i), \end{aligned} \tag{4.5.1}$$

where in the summation we take $x_{k+1} = x_1$ and $y_{k+1} = y_1$. In particular, for a triangle we have

$$\text{area} = \frac{1}{2}(x_1y_2 - x_2y_1 + x_2y_3 - x_3y_2 + x_3y_1 - x_1y_3) = \frac{1}{2} \begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & 1 \\ x_2 & y_2 & 1 \\ x_3 & y_3 & 1 \end{vmatrix}. \tag{4.5.2}$$

In *oblique coordinates* with angle ω between the axes, the area is as given above, multiplied by $\sin \omega$.

If the vertices have *polar coordinates* (r_i, θ_i) , for $1 \leq i \leq k$, the area is the absolute value of

$$\text{area} = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^k r_i r_{i+1} \sin(\theta_{i+1} - \theta_i), \tag{4.5.3}$$

where we take $r_{k+1} = r_1$ and $\theta_{k+1} = \theta_1$.

Formulae for specific polygons in terms of side lengths, angles, etc., are given on the following pages.

4.5.1 TRIANGLES

Because the angles of a triangle add up to 180° , at least two of them must be acute (less than 90°). In an *acute triangle* all angles are acute. A *right triangle* has one right angle, and an *obtuse triangle* has one obtuse angle.

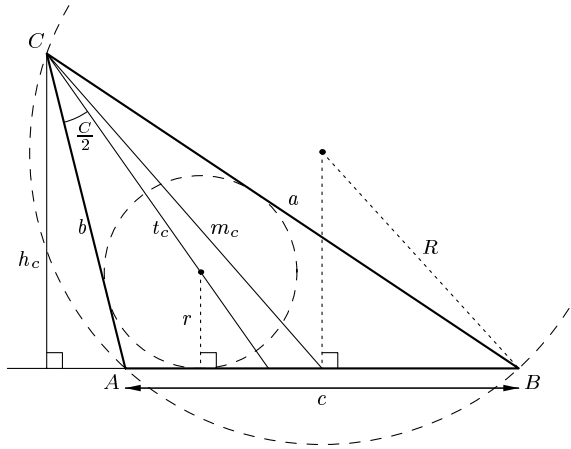
The *altitude* corresponding to a side is the perpendicular dropped to the line containing that side from the opposite vertex. The *bisector* of a vertex is the line that divides the angle at that vertex into two equal parts. The *median* is the segment joining a vertex to the midpoint of the opposite side. See [Figure 4.10](#).

Every triangle also has an *inscribed circle* tangent to its sides and interior to the triangle (in other words, any three non-concurrent lines determine a circle). The center of this circle is the point of intersection of the bisectors. We denote the radius of the inscribed circle by r .

Every triangle has a *circumscribed circle* going through its vertices; in other words, any three non-collinear points determine a circle. The point of intersection of

FIGURE 4.10

Notations for an arbitrary triangle of sides a, b, c and vertices A, B, C . The altitude corresponding to C is h_c , the median is m_c , the bisector is t_c . The radius of the circumscribed circle is R , that of the inscribed circle is r .



the medians is the center of mass of the triangle (considered as an area in the plane). We denote the radius of the circumscribed circle by R .

Introduce the following notations for an *arbitrary triangle* of vertices A, B, C and sides a, b, c (see Figure 4.10). Let h_c , t_c , and m_c be the lengths of the altitude, bisector, and median originating in vertex C , let r and R be as usual the radii of the inscribed and circumscribed circles, and let s be the semi-perimeter: $s = \frac{1}{2}(a+b+c)$. Then

$$A + B + C = 180^\circ$$

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \cos C \quad (\text{law of cosines}),$$

$$a = b \cos C + c \cos B,$$

$$\frac{a}{\sin A} = \frac{b}{\sin B} = \frac{c}{\sin C} \quad (\text{law of sines}),$$

$$\text{area} = \frac{1}{2} h_c c = \frac{1}{2} ab \sin C = \frac{c^2 \sin A \sin B}{2 \sin C} = rs = \frac{abc}{4R},$$

$$= \sqrt{s(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)} \quad (\text{Heron}),$$

$$r = c \sin\left(\frac{1}{2}A\right) \sin\left(\frac{1}{2}B\right) \sec\left(\frac{1}{2}C\right) = \frac{ab \sin C}{2s} = (s-c) \tan\left(\frac{1}{2}C\right),$$

$$= \left(\frac{1}{h_a} + \frac{1}{h_b} + \frac{1}{h_c}\right)^{-1},$$

$$R = \frac{c}{2 \sin C} = \frac{abc}{4 \text{ area}},$$

$$h_c = a \sin B = b \sin A = \frac{2 \text{ area}}{c},$$

$$t_c = \frac{2ab}{a+b} \cos \frac{1}{2}C = \sqrt{ab \left(1 - \frac{c^2}{(a+b)^2}\right)}, \quad \text{and}$$

$$m_c = \sqrt{\frac{1}{2}a^2 + \frac{1}{2}b^2 - \frac{1}{4}c^2}.$$

A triangle is *equilateral* if all of its sides have the same length, or, equivalently, if all of its angles are the same (and equal to 60°). It is *isosceles* if two sides are the same, or, equivalently, if two angles are the same. Otherwise it is *scalene*.

For an *equilateral triangle* of side a we have

$$\text{area} = \frac{1}{4}a^2\sqrt{3}, \quad r = \frac{1}{6}a\sqrt{3}, \quad R = \frac{1}{3}a\sqrt{3}, \quad h = \frac{1}{2}a\sqrt{3}, \quad (4.5.4)$$

where h is any altitude. The altitude, the bisector, and the median for each vertex coincide.

For an *isosceles triangle*, the altitude for the unequal side is also the corresponding bisector and median, but this is not true for the other two altitudes. Many formulae for an isosceles triangle of sides a, a, c can be immediately derived from those for a right triangle of legs $a, \frac{1}{2}c$ (see Figure 4.11, left).

For a *right triangle*, the *hypotenuse* is the longest side and is opposite the right angle; the *legs* are the two shorter sides adjacent to the right angle. The altitude for each leg equals the other leg. In Figure 4.11 (right), h denotes the altitude for the hypotenuse, while m and n denote the segments into which this altitude divides the hypotenuse.

The following formulae apply for a right triangle:

$$\begin{array}{ll} A + B = 90^\circ, & c^2 = a^2 + b^2 \quad (\text{Pythagoras}), \\ r = \frac{ab}{a+b+c}, & R = \frac{1}{2}c, \\ a = c \sin A = c \cos B, & b = c \sin B = c \cos A, \\ mc = b^2, & nc = a^2, \\ \text{area} = \frac{1}{2}ab, & hc = ab. \end{array}$$

FIGURE 4.11

Left: an isosceles triangle can be divided into two congruent right triangles. Right: notations for a right triangle.

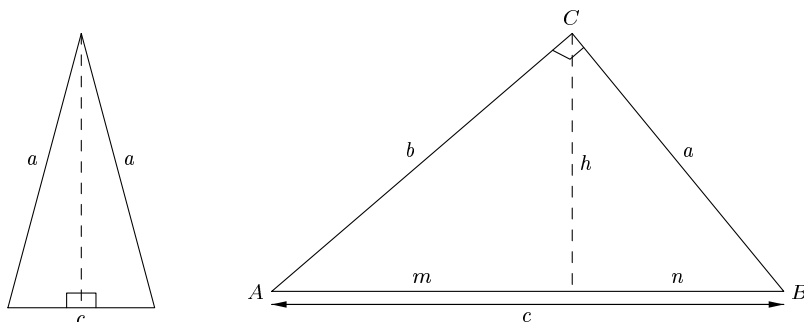
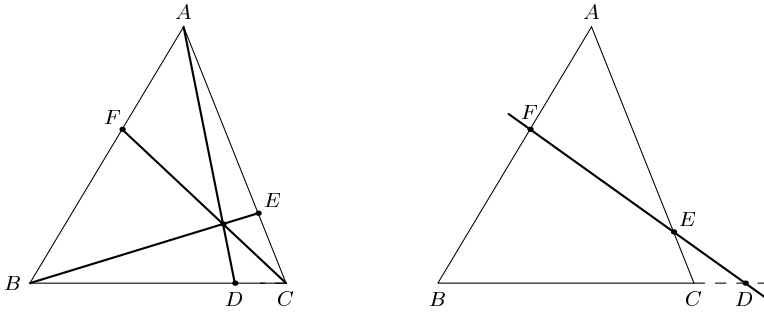


FIGURE 4.12

Left: Ceva's theorem. Right: Menelaus's theorem.



The hypotenuse is a diameter of the circumscribed circle. The median joining the midpoint of the hypotenuse (the center of the circumscribed circle) to the right angle makes angles $2A$ and $2B$ with the hypotenuse.

Additional facts about triangles:

1. In any triangle, the longest side is opposite the largest angle, and the shortest side is opposite the smallest angle. This follows from the law of sines.
2. *Ceva's theorem* (see Figure 4.12, left): In a triangle ABC , let D , E , and F be points on the lines BC , CA , and AB , respectively. Then the lines AD , BE , and CF are concurrent if, and only if, the signed distances BD , CE , ... satisfy

$$BD \cdot CE \cdot AF = DC \cdot EA \cdot FB. \quad (4.5.5)$$

This is so in three important particular cases: when the three lines are the medians, when they are the bisectors, and when they are the altitudes.

3. *Menelaus's theorem* (see Figure 4.12, right): In a triangle ABC , let D , E , and F be points on the lines BC , CA , and AB , respectively. Then D , E , and F are collinear if, and only if, the signed distances BD , CE , ... satisfy

$$BD \cdot CE \cdot AF = -DC \cdot EA \cdot FB. \quad (4.5.6)$$

4. Each side of a triangle is less than the sum of the other two. For any three lengths such that each is less than the sum of the other two, there is a triangle with these side lengths.
5. Determining if a point is inside a triangle

Given a triangle's vertices $\{P_0, P_1, P_2\}$ and the test point P_3 , place P_0 at the origin by subtracting its coordinates from each of the others. Then compute (here $P_i = (x_i, y_i)$)

$$\begin{aligned} a &= x_1 y_2 - x_2 y_1, \\ b &= x_1 y_3 - x_3 y_1, \\ c &= x_2 y_3 - x_3 y_2 \end{aligned} \quad (4.5.7)$$

The point P_3 is inside the triangle $\{P_0, P_1, P_2\}$ if and only if

$$ab > 0 \quad \text{and} \quad ac < 0 \quad \text{and} \quad a(a - b + c) > 0 \quad (4.5.8)$$

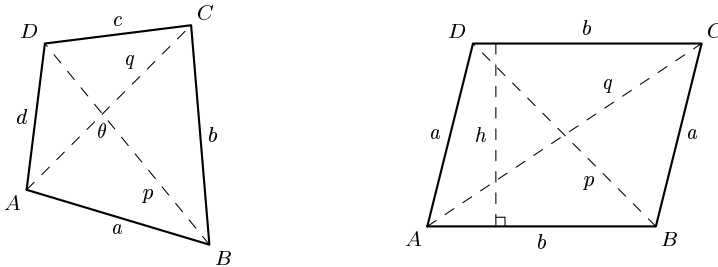
4.5.2 QUADRILATERALS

The following formulae give the area of a *general quadrilateral* (see Figure 4.13, left, for the notation).

$$\begin{aligned} \text{area} &= \frac{1}{2}pq \sin \theta = \frac{1}{4}(b^2 + d^2 - a^2 - c^2) \tan \theta \\ &= \frac{1}{4} \sqrt{4p^2q^2 - (b^2 + d^2 - a^2 - c^2)^2} \\ &= \sqrt{(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)(s-d) - abcd \cos \frac{1}{2}(A+C)}. \end{aligned} \quad (4.5.9)$$

FIGURE 4.13

Left: notation for a general quadrilateral; in addition $s = \frac{1}{2}(a + b + c + d)$. Right: a parallelogram.



Often, however, it is easiest to compute the area by dividing the quadrilateral into triangles. One can also divide the quadrilateral into triangles to compute one side given the other sides and angles, etc.

More formulae can be given for *special cases* of quadrilaterals. In a *parallelogram*, opposite sides are parallel and the diagonals intersect in the middle (Figure 4.13, right). It follows that opposite sides have the same length and that two consecutive angles add up to 180° . In the notation of the figure, we have

$$\begin{aligned} A = C, \quad B = D, \quad A + B = 180^\circ, \\ h = a \sin A = a \sin B, \quad \text{area} = bh, \\ p = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \cos A}, \quad q = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \cos B}. \end{aligned}$$

(All this follows from the triangle formulae applied to the triangles ABD and ABC .)

Two particular cases of parallelograms are

1. The *rectangle* \square , where all angles equal 90° . The diagonals of a rectangle have the same length. The general formulae for parallelograms reduce to

$$h = a, \quad \text{area} = ab, \quad \text{and} \quad p = q = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}, \quad (4.5.10)$$

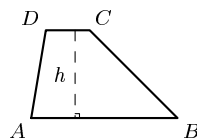
2. The *rhombus* or *diamond* \diamond , where adjacent sides have the same length ($a = b$). The diagonals of a rhombus are perpendicular. In addition to the general formulae for parallelograms, we have $\text{area} = \frac{1}{2}pq$ and $p^2 + q^2 = 4a^2$.

The *square* or regular quadrilateral is both a rectangle and a rhombus.

A quadrilateral is a *trapezoid* if two sides are parallel.

In the notation of the figure on the right we have

$$A + D = B + C = 180^\circ, \quad \text{area} = \frac{1}{2}(AB + CD)h.$$



The diagonals of a quadrilateral with consecutive sides a, b, c, d are perpendicular if and only if $a^2 + c^2 = b^2 + d^2$.

A quadrilateral is *cyclic* if it can be inscribed in a circle, that is, if its four vertices belong to a single, circumscribed, circle. This is possible if and only if the sum of opposite angles is 180° . If R is the radius of the circumscribed circle, we have (in the notation of Figure 4.13, left)

$$\begin{aligned} \text{area} &= \sqrt{(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)(s-d)} = \frac{1}{2}(ac + bd) \sin \theta, \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{(ac + bd)(ad + bc)(ab + cd)}}{4R} \quad (\text{Brahmagupta}), \end{aligned}$$

$$p = \sqrt{\frac{(ac + bd)(ab + cd)}{(ad + bc)}},$$

$$R = \frac{1}{4} \sqrt{\frac{(ac + bd)(ad + bc)(ab + cd)}{(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)(s-d)}},$$

$$\sin \theta = \frac{2 \text{ area}}{ac + bd},$$

$$pq = ac + bd \quad (\text{Ptolemy}).$$

A quadrilateral is *circumscribable* if it has an inscribed circle (that is, a circle tangent to all four sides). Its area is rs , where r is the radius of the inscribed circle and s is as above.

For a quadrilateral that is both cyclic and circumscribable, we have the following additional equalities, where m is the distance between the centers of the inscribed and circumscribed circles:

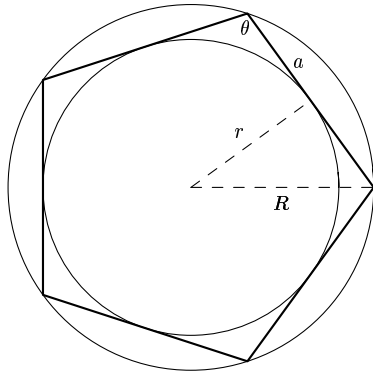
$$\begin{aligned} a + c &= b + d, & \text{area} &= \sqrt{abcd} = rs, \\ R &= \frac{1}{4} \sqrt{\frac{(ac + bd)(ad + bc)(ab + cd)}{abcd}}, & \frac{1}{r^2} &= \frac{1}{(R - m)^2} + \frac{1}{(R + m)^2}. \end{aligned}$$

4.5.3 REGULAR POLYGONS

A polygon is *regular* if all its sides are equal and all its angles are equal. Either condition implies the other in the case of a triangle, but not in general. (A rhombus has equal sides but not necessarily equal angles, and a rectangle has equal angles but not necessarily equal sides.)

For a k -sided regular polygon of side a , let θ be the angle at any vertex, and r and R the radii of the inscribed and circumscribed circles (r is called the *apothem*). As usual, let $s = \frac{1}{2}ka$ be the half-perimeter. Then

$$\begin{aligned}\theta &= \left(\frac{k-2}{k}\right) 180^\circ, \\ a &= 2r \tan \frac{180^\circ}{k} = 2R \sin \frac{180^\circ}{k}, \\ \text{area} &= \frac{1}{4}ka^2 \cot \frac{180^\circ}{k} = kr^2 \tan \frac{180^\circ}{k} \\ &= \frac{1}{2}kR^2 \sin \frac{360^\circ}{k}, \\ r &= \frac{1}{2}a \cot \frac{180^\circ}{k}, \\ R &= \frac{1}{2}a \csc \frac{180^\circ}{k}.\end{aligned}$$



| Name | k | area | r | R |
|----------------------|-----|----------------|-------------|-------------|
| Equilateral triangle | 3 | $0.43301 a^2$ | $0.28868 a$ | $0.57735 a$ |
| Square | 4 | a^2 | $0.50000 a$ | $0.70711 a$ |
| Regular pentagon | 5 | $1.72048 a^2$ | $0.68819 a$ | $0.85065 a$ |
| Regular hexagon | 6 | $2.59808 a^2$ | $0.86603 a$ | a |
| Regular heptagon | 7 | $3.63391 a^2$ | $1.03826 a$ | $1.15238 a$ |
| Regular octagon | 8 | $4.82843 a^2$ | $1.20711 a$ | $1.30656 a$ |
| Regular nonagon | 9 | $6.18182 a^2$ | $1.37374 a$ | $1.46190 a$ |
| Regular decagon | 10 | $7.69421 a^2$ | $1.53884 a$ | $1.61803 a$ |
| Regular undecagon | 11 | $9.36564 a^2$ | $1.70284 a$ | $1.77473 a$ |
| Regular dodecagon | 12 | $11.19625 a^2$ | $1.86603 a$ | $1.93185 a$ |

If a_k denotes the side of a k -sided regular polygon inscribed in a circle of radius R , we have

$$a_k = \sqrt{2R^2 - R\sqrt{4R^2 - a_k^2}}. \quad (4.5.11)$$

If A_k denotes the side of a k -sided regular polygon circumscribed about the same circle,

$$A_{2k} = \frac{2RA_k}{2R + \sqrt{4R^2 + A_k^2}}. \quad (4.5.12)$$

In particular,

$$A_{2k} = \frac{a_k A_k}{a_k + A_k}, \quad a_{2k} = \sqrt{\frac{a_k A_{2k}}{2}}. \quad (4.5.13)$$

The areas s_k , s_{2k} , S_k , and S_{2k} of the same polygons satisfy

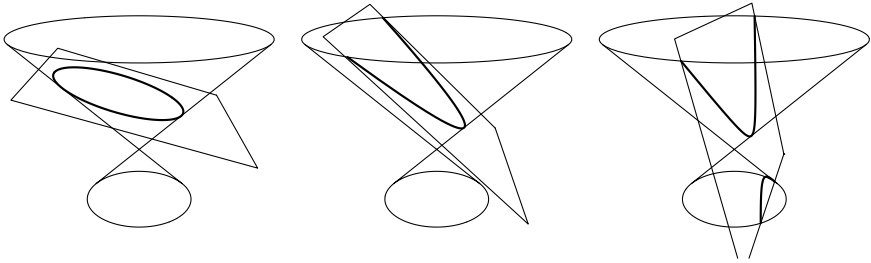
$$s_{2k} = \sqrt{s_k S_k}, \quad S_{2k} = \frac{2s_{2k} S_k}{s_{2k} + S_k}. \quad (4.5.14)$$

4.6 CONICS

A *conic* (or *conic section*) is a plane curve that can be obtained by intersecting a right circular cone (page 361) with a plane that does not go through the vertex of the cone. There are three possibilities, depending on the relative positions of the cone and the plane (Figure 4.14). If no line of the cone is parallel to the plane, then the intersection is a closed curve, called an *ellipse*. If one line of the cone is parallel to the plane, the intersection is an open curve whose two ends are asymptotically parallel; this is called a *parabola*. Finally, there may be two lines in the cone parallel to the plane; the curve in this case has two open segments, and is called a *hyperbola*.

FIGURE 4.14

A section of a cone by a plane can yield an ellipse (left), a parabola (middle) or a hyperbola (right).



4.6.1 ALTERNATIVE CHARACTERIZATION

Assume given a point F in the plane, a line d not going through F , and a positive real number e . The set of points P such that the distance PF is e times the distance from P to d (measured along a perpendicular) is a conic. We call F the *focus*, d the *directrix*, and e the *eccentricity* of the conic. If $e < 1$ we have an ellipse, if $e = 1$ a parabola, and if $e > 1$ a hyperbola (Figure 4.15). This construction gives all conics except the circle, which is a particular case of the ellipse according to the earlier definition (we can recover it by taking the limit $e \rightarrow 0$).

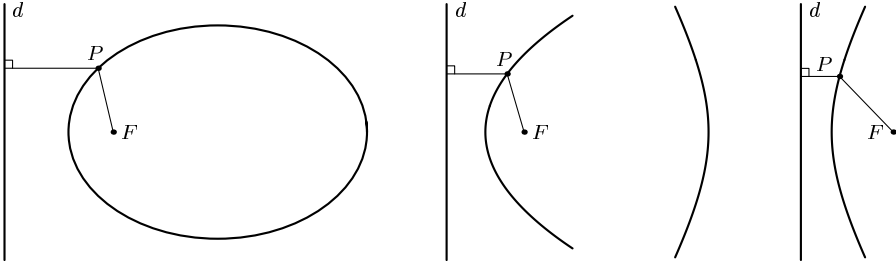
For any conic, a line perpendicular to d and passing through F is an axis of symmetry. The ellipse and the hyperbola have an additional axis of symmetry, perpendicular to the first, so that there is an alternate focus and directrix, F' and d' , obtained as the reflection of F and d with respect to this axis. (By contrast, the focus and directrix are uniquely defined for a parabola.)

The simplest analytic form for the ellipse and hyperbola is obtained when the two symmetry axes coincide with the coordinate axes. The ellipse in Figure 4.16 has equation

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1, \quad (4.6.1)$$

FIGURE 4.15

Definition of conics by means of the ratio (eccentricity) between the distance to a point and the distance to a line. On the left, $e = .7$ (ellipse); in the middle, $e = 1$ (parabola); on the right, $e = 2$ (hyperbola).



with $b < a$. The x -axis is the *major axis*, and the y -axis is the *minor axis*. These names are also applied to the segments, determined on the axes by the ellipse, and to the lengths of these segments: $2a$ for the major axis and $2b$ for the minor. The *vertices* are the intersections of the major axis with the ellipse and have coordinates $(a, 0)$ and $(-a, 0)$. The distance from the center to either *focus* is $\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}$, and the sum of the distances from a point in the ellipse to the foci is $2a$. The *latera recta* (in the singular, *latus rectum*) are the chords perpendicular to the major axis and going through the foci; their length is $2b^2/a$. The *eccentricity* is $\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}/a$. All ellipses of the same eccentricity are similar; in other words, the shape of an ellipse depends only on the ratio b/a . The distance from the center to either *directrix* is $a^2/\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}$.

The hyperbola in [Figure 4.17](#) has equation

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1. \tag{4.6.2}$$

FIGURE 4.16

Ellipse with major semiaxis a and minor semiaxis b . Here $b/a = 0.6$.

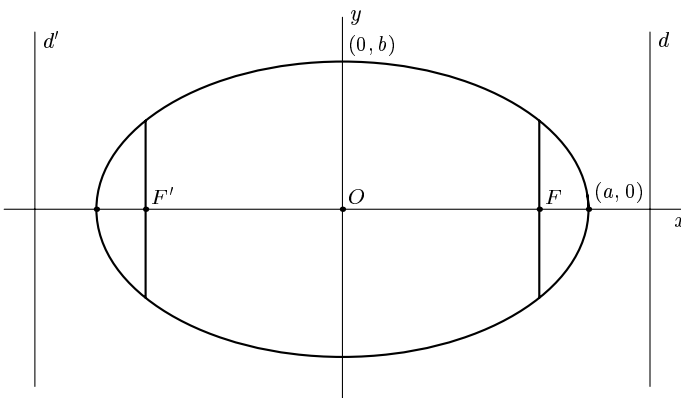
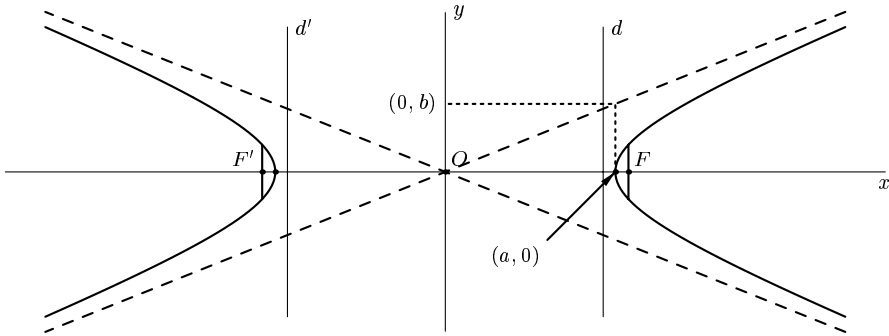


FIGURE 4.17

Hyperbola with transverse semiaxis a and conjugate semiaxis b . Here $b/a = 0.4$.



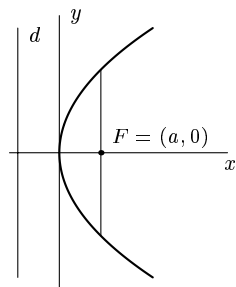
The x -axis is the *transverse axis*, and the y -axis is the *conjugate axis*. The *vertices* are the intersections of the transverse axis with the hyperbola and have coordinates $(a, 0)$ and $(-a, 0)$. The segment thus determined, or its length $2a$, is also called the *transverse axis*, while the length $2b$ is also called the *conjugate axis*. The distance from the center to either *focus* is $\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$, and the difference between the distances from a point in the hyperbola to the foci is $2a$. The *latera recta* are the chords perpendicular to the transverse axis and going through the foci; their length is $2b^2/a$. The *eccentricity* is $\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}/a$. The distance from the center to either *directrix* is $a^2/\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$. The legs of the hyperbola approach the *asymptotes*, lines of slope $\pm b/a$ that cross at the center.

All hyperbolas of the same eccentricity are similar; in other words, the shape of a hyperbola depends only on the ratio b/a . Unlike the case of the ellipse (where the major axis, containing the foci, is always longer than the minor axis), the two axes of a hyperbola can have arbitrary lengths. When they have the same length, so that $a = b$, the asymptotes are perpendicular, and $e = \sqrt{2}$, the hyperbola is called *rectangular*.

The simplest analytic form for the parabola is obtained when the axis of symmetry coincides with one coordinate axis, and the *vertex* (the intersection of the axis with the curve) is at the origin. The equation of the parabola on the right is

$$y^2 = 4ax, \quad (4.6.3)$$

where a is the distance from the vertex to the focus, or, which is the same, from the vertex to the directrix. The *latus rectum* is the chord perpendicular to the axis and going through the focus; its length is $4a$. All parabolas are similar: they can be made identical by scaling, translation, and rotation.



4.6.2 THE GENERAL QUADRATIC EQUATION

The analytic equation for a conic in arbitrary position is the following:

$$Ax^2 + By^2 + Cxy + Dx + Ey + F = 0, \quad (4.6.4)$$

where at least one of A , B , C is nonzero. To reduce this to one of the forms given previously, perform the following steps (note that the decisions are based on the most recent values of the coefficients, taken after all the transformations so far):

1. If $C \neq 0$, simultaneously perform the substitutions $x \mapsto qx + y$ and $y \mapsto qy - x$, where

$$q = \sqrt{\left(\frac{B-A}{C}\right)^2 + 1} + \frac{B-A}{C}. \quad (4.6.5)$$

Now $C = 0$. (This step corresponds to rotating and scaling about the origin.)

2. If $B = 0$, interchange x and y . Now $B \neq 0$.
3. If $E \neq 0$, perform the substitution $y \mapsto y - \frac{1}{2}(E/B)$. (This corresponds to translating in the y direction.) Now $E = 0$.
4. If $A = 0$:
 - (a) If $D \neq 0$, perform the substitution $x \mapsto x - (F/D)$ (translation in the x direction), and divide the equation by B to get Equation (4.6.3). The conic is a *parabola*.
 - (b) If $D = 0$, the equation gives a *degenerate conic*. If $F = 0$, we have the line $y = 0$ with multiplicity two. If $F < 0$, we have two parallel lines $y = \pm\sqrt{F/B}$. If $F > 0$ we have two imaginary lines; the equation has no solution within the real numbers.

5. If $A \neq 0$:

- (a) If $D \neq 0$, perform the substitution $x \mapsto x - \frac{1}{2}(D/A)$. Now $D = 0$. (This corresponds to translating in the x direction.)
- (b) If $F \neq 0$, divide the equation by F to get a form with $F = 1$.
 - i. If A and B have opposite signs, the conic is a *hyperbola*; to get to Equation (4.6.2), interchange x and y , if necessary, so that A is positive; then make $a = 1/\sqrt{A}$ and $b = 1/\sqrt{B}$.
 - ii. If A and B are both positive, the conic is an *ellipse*; to get to Equation (4.6.1), interchange x and y , if necessary, so that $A \leq B$, then make $a = 1/\sqrt{A}$ and $b = 1/\sqrt{B}$. The *circle* is the particular case $a = b$.
 - iii. If A and B are both negative, we have an *imaginary ellipse*; the equation has no solution in real numbers.

(c) If $F = 0$, the equation again represents a *degenerate conic*: when A and B have different signs, we have a pair of lines $y = \pm\sqrt{-B/A}x$, and, when they have the same sign, we get a point (the origin).

EXAMPLE We work out an example for clarity. Suppose the original equation is

$$4x^2 + y^2 - 4xy + 3x - 4y + 1 = 0. \tag{4.6.6}$$

In step 1 we apply the substitutions $x \mapsto 2x + y$ and $y \mapsto 2y - x$. This gives $25x^2 + 10x - 5y + 1 = 0$. Next we interchange x and y (step 2) and get $25y^2 + 10y - 5x + 1 = 0$. Replacing y by $y - \frac{1}{5}$ in step 3, we get $25y^2 - 5x = 0$. Finally, in step 4a we divide the equation by 25, thus giving it the form of Equation (4.6.3) with $a = \frac{1}{20}$. We have reduced the conic to a parabola with vertex at the origin and focus at $(\frac{1}{20}, 0)$. To locate the features of the original curve, we work our way back along the chain of substitutions (recall the convention about substitutions and transformations from Section 4.1.2):

| | | | |
|--------------|-----------------------------|--|--|
| Substitution | $y \mapsto y - \frac{1}{5}$ | $\begin{matrix} x \mapsto y \\ y \mapsto x \end{matrix}$ | $\begin{matrix} x \mapsto 2x + y \\ y \mapsto 2y - x \end{matrix}$ |
| Vertex | $(0, 0)$ | $(0, -\frac{1}{5})$ | $(-\frac{1}{5}, 0)$ |
| Focus | $(\frac{1}{20}, 0)$ | $(\frac{1}{20}, -\frac{1}{5})$ | $(-\frac{1}{5}, \frac{6}{20})$ |

We conclude that the original curve, Equation (4.6.6), is a parabola with vertex $(-\frac{2}{5}, -\frac{1}{5})$ and focus $(-\frac{7}{20}, \frac{6}{20})$.

An alternative analysis of Equation (4.6.4) consists in forming the quantities

$$\Delta = \begin{vmatrix} A & \frac{1}{2}C & \frac{1}{2}D \\ \frac{1}{2}C & B & \frac{1}{2}E \\ \frac{1}{2}D & \frac{1}{2}E & F \end{vmatrix}, \quad J = \begin{vmatrix} A & \frac{1}{2}C \\ \frac{1}{2}C & B \end{vmatrix}, \quad I = A + B, \tag{4.6.7}$$

$$K = \begin{vmatrix} A & \frac{1}{2}D \\ \frac{1}{2}D & F \end{vmatrix} + \begin{vmatrix} B & \frac{1}{2}E \\ \frac{1}{2}E & F \end{vmatrix},$$

and finding the appropriate case in the following table, where an entry in parentheses indicates that the equation has no solution in real numbers:

| Δ | J | Δ/I | K | Type of conic |
|----------|-------|------------|-------|----------------------------|
| $\neq 0$ | < 0 | | | Hyperbola |
| $\neq 0$ | 0 | | | Parabola |
| $\neq 0$ | > 0 | < 0 | | Ellipse |
| $\neq 0$ | > 0 | > 0 | | (Imaginary ellipse) |
| 0 | < 0 | | | Intersecting lines |
| 0 | > 0 | | | Point |
| 0 | 0 | | < 0 | Distinct parallel lines |
| 0 | 0 | | > 0 | (Imaginary parallel lines) |
| 0 | 0 | | 0 | Coincident lines |

For the central conics (the ellipse, the hyperbola, intersecting lines, and the point), the center (x_0, y_0) is the solution of the system of equations

$$\begin{aligned} 2Ax + Cy + D &= 0, \\ Cx + 2By + E &= 0, \end{aligned}$$

namely

$$(x_0, y_0) = \left(\frac{2BD - CE}{C^2 - 4AB}, \frac{2AE - CD}{C^2 - 4AB} \right), \quad (4.6.8)$$

and the axes have slopes q and $-1/q$, where q is given by Equation (4.6.5). (The value $-1/q$ can be obtained from Equation (4.6.5) by simply placing a minus sign before the radical.) The length of the semiaxis with slope q is

$$\sqrt{\frac{|\Delta|}{|Jr|}}, \quad \text{where } r = \frac{1}{2}(A + B + \sqrt{(B - A)^2 + C^2}); \quad (4.6.9)$$

note that r is one of the eigenvalues of the matrix of which J is the determinant. To obtain the other semiaxis, take the other eigenvalue (change the sign of the radical in the expression of r just given).

EXAMPLE Consider the equation $3x^2 + 4xy - 2y^2 + 3x - 2y + 7 = 0$. We have

$$\Delta = \begin{vmatrix} 6 & 4 & 3 \\ 4 & -4 & -2 \\ 3 & -2 & 14 \end{vmatrix} = -596 \neq 0$$

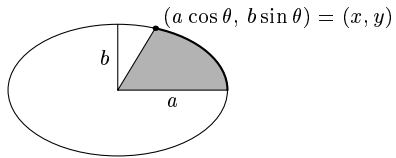
$$J = \begin{vmatrix} 6 & 4 \\ 4 & -4 \end{vmatrix} = -40 < 0$$

We conclude that this is a hyperbola.

4.6.3 ADDITIONAL PROPERTIES OF ELLIPSES

Let C be the ellipse with equation $x^2/a^2 + y^2/b^2 = 1$, with $a > b$, and let $F, F' = (\pm\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}, 0)$ be its foci (see Figure 4.16).

1. A *parametric representation* for C is given by $(a \cos \theta, b \sin \theta)$. The *area* of the shaded sector on the right is $\frac{1}{2}ab\theta = \frac{1}{2}ab \cos^{-1}(x/a)$. The *length* of the arc from $(a, 0)$ to the point $(a \cos \theta, b \sin \theta)$ is given by the elliptic integral



$$a \int_0^\theta \sqrt{1 - e^2 \cos^2 \phi} d\phi = a \left(E\left(\frac{\pi}{2}, e\right) - E\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta, e\right) \right), \quad (4.6.10)$$

where e is the eccentricity. (See page 569 for elliptic integrals.) Setting $\theta = 2\pi$ results in

$$\text{area of } C = \pi ab, \quad \text{perimeter of } C = 4a E(\pi/2, e). \quad (4.6.11)$$

Note the approximation: perimeter of $C \approx 2a \left[2 + (\pi - 2) \left(\frac{b}{a}\right)^{1.456} \right]$.

2. Given an ellipse in the form $Ax^2 + By^2 + Cxy = 1$, form the matrix $D = \begin{bmatrix} A & C/2 \\ C/2 & B \end{bmatrix}$. Let the eigenvalues of D be $\{\lambda_1, \lambda_2\}$ and let $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2\}$ be the corresponding unit eigenvectors (choose them orthogonal if $\lambda_1 = \lambda_2$). Then the major and minor semi-axes are given by $\mathbf{v}_i = \frac{\mathbf{u}_i}{\sqrt{|\lambda_i|}}$ and

-
- (a) The area of the ellipse is $\frac{\pi}{\sqrt{\lambda_1 \lambda_2}} = \frac{2\pi}{\sqrt{4AB - C^2}}$.
- (b) The ellipse has the parametric representation $\mathbf{x}(t) = \cos(t)\mathbf{v}_1 + \sin(t)\mathbf{v}_2$.
- (c) The rectangle with vertices $(\pm\mathbf{v}_1, \pm\mathbf{v}_2)$ is tangent to the ellipse.
3. A rational parametric representation for C is given by $\left(a \frac{1-t^2}{1+t^2}, \frac{2bt}{1+t^2}\right)$.
4. The polar equation for C in the usual polar coordinate system is

$$r = \frac{ab}{\sqrt{a^2 \sin^2 \theta + b^2 \cos^2 \theta}}. \quad (4.6.12)$$

With respect to a coordinate system with origin at a focus, the equation is

$$r = \frac{l}{1 \pm e \cos \theta}, \quad (4.6.13)$$

where $l = b^2/a$ is half the latus rectum. (Use the $+$ sign for the focus with positive x -coordinate and the $-$ sign for the focus with negative x -coordinate.)

5. Let P be any point of C . The sum of the distances PF and PF' is constant and equal to $2a$.
6. Let P be any point of C . Then the rays PF and PF' make the same angle with the tangent to C at P . Thus any light ray originating at F and reflected in the ellipse will go through F' .
7. Let T be any line tangent to C . The product of the distances from F and F' to T is constant and equals b^2 .
8. *Lahire's theorem*: Let D and D' be fixed lines in the plane, and consider a third moving line on which three points P , P' , and P'' are marked. If we constrain P to lie in D and P' to lie in D' , then P'' describes an ellipse.

4.6.4 ADDITIONAL PROPERTIES OF HYPERBOLAS

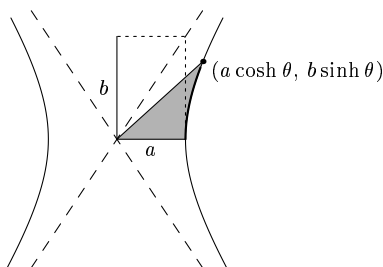
Let C be the hyperbola with equation $x^2/a^2 - y^2/b^2 = 1$, and let

$$F, F' = (\pm\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}, 0) \quad (4.6.14)$$

be its foci (see [Figure 4.17](#)). The conjugate hyperbola of C is the hyperbola C' with equation $-x^2/a^2 + y^2/b^2 = 1$. It has the same asymptotes as C , the same axes (transverse and conjugate axes being interchanged), and its eccentricity e' is related to that of C by $e'^{-2} + e^{-2} = 1$.

1. A parametric representation for C is given by $(a \sec \theta, b \tan \theta)$. A different parametric representation, which gives one branch only, is $(a \cosh \theta, b \sinh \theta)$. The area of the shaded sector on the right is

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{2}ab\theta &= \frac{1}{2}ab \cosh^{-1}(x/a) \\ &= \frac{1}{2}ab \log \frac{x + \sqrt{x^2 - a^2}}{a} \end{aligned}$$



where $x = a \cosh \theta$. The length of the arc from the point $(a, 0)$ to the point $(a \cosh \theta, b \sinh \theta)$ is given by the elliptic integral

$$a \int_0^\theta \sqrt{e^2 \cosh^2 \phi - 1} d\phi = -bi E\left(\theta i, \frac{ea}{b}\right) = a \int_1^x \sqrt{\frac{e^2 \xi^2 - a^2}{\xi^2 - a^2}} d\xi, \quad (4.6.15)$$

where e is the eccentricity and $i = \sqrt{-1}$.

2. A rational parametric representation for C is given by

$$\left(a \frac{1+t^2}{1-t^2}, \frac{2bt}{1-t^2}\right). \quad (4.6.16)$$

3. The polar equation for C in the usual polar coordinate system is

$$r = \frac{ab}{\sqrt{a^2 \sin^2 \theta - b^2 \cos^2 \theta}}. \quad (4.6.17)$$

With respect to a system with origin at a focus, the equation is

$$r = \frac{l}{1 \pm e \cos \theta}, \quad (4.6.18)$$

where $l = b^2/a$ is half the latus rectum. (Use the $-$ sign for the focus with positive x -coordinate and the $+$ sign for the focus with negative x -coordinate.)

4. Let P be any point of C . The unsigned difference between the distances PF and PF' is constant and equal to $2a$.
5. Let P be any point of C . Then the rays PF and PF' make the same angle with the tangent to C at P . Thus any light ray originating at F and relected in the hyperbola will appear to emanate from F' .
6. Let T be any line tangent to C . The product of the distances from F and F' to T is constant and equals b^2 .
7. Let P be any point of C . The area of the parallelogram formed by the asymptotes and the parallels to the asymptotes going through P is constant and equals $\frac{1}{2}ab$.

-
8. Let L be any line in the plane. If L intersects C at P and P' and intersects the asymptotes at Q and Q' , the distances PQ and $P'Q'$ are the same. If L is tangent to C we have $P = P'$, so that the point of tangency bisects the segment QQ' .

4.6.5 ADDITIONAL PROPERTIES OF PARABOLAS

Let C be the parabola with equation $y^2 = 4ax$, and let $F = (a, 0)$ be its focus.

1. Let $P = (x, y)$ and $P' = (x', y')$ be points on C . The area bounded by the chord PP' and the corresponding arc of the parabola is

$$\frac{|y' - y|^3}{24a}. \quad (4.6.19)$$

It equals four-thirds of the area of the triangle PQP' , where Q is the point on C whose tangent is parallel to the chord PP' (formula due to *Archimedes*).

2. The *length* of the arc from $(0, 0)$ to the point (x, y) is

$$\frac{y}{4} \sqrt{4 + \frac{y^2}{a^2}} + a \sinh^{-1} \left(\frac{y}{2a} \right) = \frac{y}{4} \sqrt{4 + \frac{y^2}{a^2}} + a \log \frac{y + \sqrt{y^2 + 4a^2}}{2a}. \quad (4.6.20)$$

3. The *polar equation* for C in the usual polar coordinate system is

$$r = \frac{4a \cos \theta}{\sin^2 \theta}. \quad (4.6.21)$$

With respect to a coordinate system with origin at F , the equation is

$$r = \frac{l}{1 - \cos \theta}, \quad (4.6.22)$$

where $l = 2a$ is half the latus rectum.

4. Let P be any point of C . Then the ray PF and the horizontal line through P make the same angle with the tangent to C at P . Thus light rays parallel to the axis and reflected in the parabola converge onto F (principle of the *parabolic reflector*).

4.6.6 CIRCLES

The set of points in a plane whose distance to a fixed point (the *center*) is a fixed positive number (the *radius*) is a *circle*. A circle of radius r and center (x_0, y_0) is described by the equation

$$(x - x_0)^2 + (y - y_0)^2 = r^2, \quad (4.6.23)$$

or

$$x^2 + y^2 - 2xx_0 - 2yy_0 + x_0^2 + y_0^2 - r^2 = 0. \quad (4.6.24)$$

Conversely, an equation of the form

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2dx + 2ey + f = 0 \quad (4.6.25)$$

describes a circle if $d^2 + e^2 > f$; the center is $(-d, -e)$ and the radius is $\sqrt{d^2 + e^2 - f}$.

Three points not on the same line determine a unique circle. If the points have coordinates (x_1, y_1) , (x_2, y_2) , and (x_3, y_3) , then the equation of the circle is

$$\begin{vmatrix} x^2 + y^2 & x & y & 1 \\ x_1^2 + y_1^2 & x_1 & y_1 & 1 \\ x_2^2 + y_2^2 & x_2 & y_2 & 1 \\ x_3^2 + y_3^2 & x_3 & y_3 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 0. \quad (4.6.26)$$

A *chord* of a circle is a line segment between two of its points (Figure 4.18). A *diameter* is a chord that goes through the center, or the length of such a chord (therefore the diameter is twice the radius). Given two points $P_1 = (x_1, y_1)$ and $P_2 = (x_2, y_2)$, there is a unique circle whose diameter is P_1P_2 ; its equation is

$$(x - x_1)(x - x_2) + (y - y_1)(y - y_2) = 0. \quad (4.6.27)$$

The *length* or *circumference* of a circle of radius r is $2\pi r$, and the *area* is πr^2 . The length of the *arc of circle* subtended by an angle θ , shown as s in Figure 4.18, is $r\theta$. (All angles are measured in radians.) Other relations between the radius, the arc length, the chord, and the areas of the corresponding *sector* and *segment* are, in the notation of Figure 4.18,

$$\begin{aligned} d &= R \cos \frac{1}{2}\theta = \frac{1}{2}c \cot \frac{1}{2}\theta = \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{4R^2 - c^2}, \\ c &= 2R \sin \frac{1}{2}\theta = 2d \tan \frac{1}{2}\theta = 2\sqrt{R^2 - d^2} = \sqrt{4h(2R - h)}, \\ \theta &= \frac{s}{R} = 2 \cos^{-1} \frac{d}{R} = 2 \tan^{-1} \frac{c}{2d} = 2 \sin^{-1} \frac{c}{2R}, \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{area of sector} = \frac{1}{2}Rs = \frac{1}{2}R^2\theta,$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{area of segment} &= \frac{1}{2}R^2(\theta - \sin \theta) = \frac{1}{2}(Rs - cd) = R^2 \cos^{-1} \frac{d}{R} - d\sqrt{R^2 - d^2} \\ &= R^2 \cos^{-1} \frac{R - h}{R} - (R - h)\sqrt{2Rh - h^2}. \end{aligned}$$

Other properties of circles:

1. If the central angle AOB equals θ , the angle ACB , where C is any point on the circle, equals $\frac{1}{2}\theta$ or $180^\circ - \frac{1}{2}\theta$ (Figure 4.19, left). Conversely, given a segment AB , the set of points that “see” AB under a fixed angle is an arc of a circle (Figure 4.19, right). In particular, the set of points that see AB under a right angle is a circle with diameter AB .
2. Let P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4 be points in the plane, and let d_{ij} , for $1 \leq i, j \leq 4$, be the distance between P_i and P_j . A necessary and sufficient condition for all of the

FIGURE 4.18

The arc of a circle subtended by the angle θ is s ; the chord is c ; the sector is the whole slice of the pie; the segment is the cap bounded by the arc and the chord (that is, the slice minus the triangle).

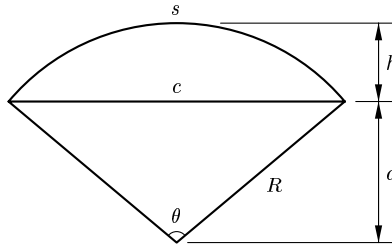
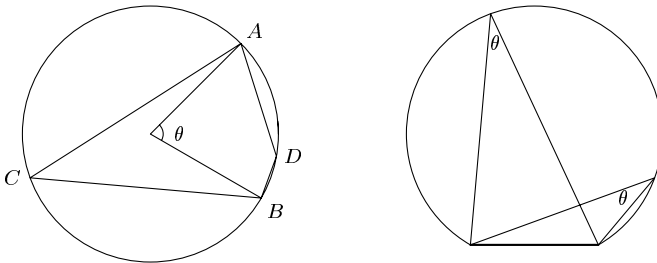


FIGURE 4.19

Left: the angle ACB equals $\frac{1}{2}\theta$ for any C in the long arc AB ; ADB equals $180^\circ - \frac{1}{2}\theta$ for any D in the short arc AB . Right: the locus of points, from which the segment AB subtends a fixed angle θ , is an arc of the circle.



points to lie on the same circle (or line) is that one of the following equalities be satisfied:

$$\pm d_{12}d_{34} \pm d_{13}d_{24} \pm d_{14}d_{23} = 0. \quad (4.6.28)$$

This is equivalent to Ptolemy's formula for cyclic quadrilaterals (page 323).

3. In *oblique coordinates* with angle ω , a circle of center (x_0, y_0) and radius r is described by the equation

$$(x - x_0)^2 + (y - y_0)^2 + 2(x - x_0)(y - y_0) \cos \omega = r^2. \quad (4.6.29)$$

4. In *polar coordinates*, the equation for a circle centered at the pole and having radius a is $r = a$. The equation for a circle of radius a passing through the pole and with center at the point $(r, \theta) = (a, \theta_0)$ is $r = 2a \cos(\theta - \theta_0)$. The equation for a circle of radius a and with center at the point $(r, \theta) = (r_0, \theta_0)$ is

$$r^2 - 2r_0r \cos(\theta - \theta_0) + r_0^2 - a^2 = 0. \quad (4.6.30)$$

5. If a line intersects a circle of center O at points A and B , the segments OA and OB make equal angles with the line. In particular, a tangent line is perpendicular to the radius that goes through the point of tangency.
6. Fix a circle and a point P in the plane, and consider a line through P that intersects the circle at A and B (with $A = B$ for a tangent). Then the product of the distances $PA \cdot PB$ is the same for all such lines. It is called the *power* of P with respect to the circle.

4.7 SPECIAL PLANE CURVES

4.7.1 ALGEBRAIC CURVES

Curves that can be given in implicit form as $f(x, y) = 0$, where f is a polynomial, are called *algebraic*. The degree of f is called the degree or *order* of the curve. Thus, conics (page 325) are algebraic curves of degree two. Curves of degree three already have a great variety of shapes, and only a few common ones will be given here.

The simplest case is the curve which is a graph of a polynomial of degree three: $y = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d$, with $a \neq 0$. This curve is a (general) *cubic parabola* (Figure 4.20), symmetric with respect to the point B where $x = -b/3a$.

The equation of a *semi-cubic parabola* (Figure 4.21, left) is $y^2 = kx^3$; by proportional scaling one can take $k = 1$. This curve should not be confused with the *cissoïd of Diocles* (Figure 4.21, middle), whose equation is $(a - x)y^2 = x^3$ with $a \neq 0$.

The latter is asymptotic to the line $x = a$, whereas the semi-cubic parabola has no asymptotes. The cissoïd's points are characterized by the equality $OP = AB$ in Figure 4.21, middle. One can take $a = 1$ by proportional scaling.

FIGURE 4.20

The general cubic parabola for $a > 0$. For $a < 0$, reflect in a horizontal line.

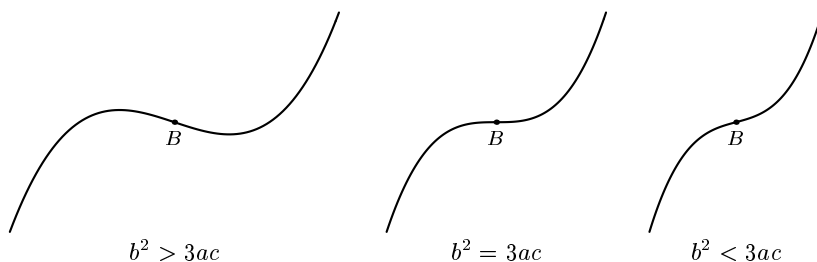
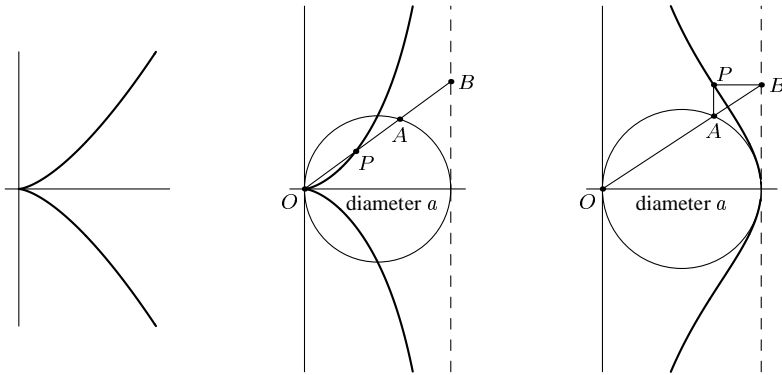


FIGURE 4.21

The semi-cubic parabola, the cissoid of Diocles, and the witch of Agnesi.



More generally, any curve of degree three with equation $(x - x_0)y^2 = f(x)$, where f is a polynomial, is symmetric with respect to the x -axis and asymptotic to the line $x = x_0$. In addition to the cissoid, the following particular cases are important:

1. The *witch of Agnesi* has equation $xy^2 = a^2(a - x)$, with $a \neq 0$, and is characterized by the geometric property shown in Figure 4.21, right. The same property provides the parametric representation $x = a \cos^2 \theta$, $y = a \tan \theta$. Once more, proportional scaling reduces to the case $a = 1$.
2. The *folium of Descartes* (Figure 4.22, left) is described by equation $(x - a)y^2 = -x^2(\frac{1}{3}x + a)$, with $a \neq 0$ (reducible to $a = 1$ by proportional scaling). By rotating 135° (right) we get the alternative and more familiar equation $x^3 + y^3 = cxy$, where $c = \frac{1}{3}\sqrt{2}a$. The folium of Descartes is a *rational curve*, that is, it is parametrically represented by rational functions. In the tilted position, the equation is $x = ct/(1 + t^3)$, $y = ct^2/(1 + t^3)$ (so that $t = y/x$).
3. The *strophoid's* equation is $(x - a)y^2 = -x^2(x + a)$, with $a \neq 0$ (reducible to $a = 1$ by proportional scaling). It satisfies the property $AP = AP' = OA$ in Figure 4.22, right; this means that POP' is a right angle. The strophoid's polar representation is $r = -a \cos 2\theta \sec \theta$, and the rational parametric representation is $x = a(t^2 - 1)/(t^2 + 1)$, $y = at(t^2 - 1)/(t^2 + 1)$ (so that $t = y/x$).

Among the important curves of degree four are the following:

1. A *Cassini's oval* is characterized by the following condition: Given two foci F and F' , a distance $2a$ apart, a point P belongs to the curve if the product of the distances PF and PF' is a constant k^2 . If the foci are on the x -axis and equidistant from the origin, the curve's equation is $(x^2 + y^2 + a^2)^2 - 4a^2x^2 = k^4$. Changes in a correspond to rescaling, while the value of k/a controls

FIGURE 4.22

The folium of Descartes in two positions, and the strophoid.

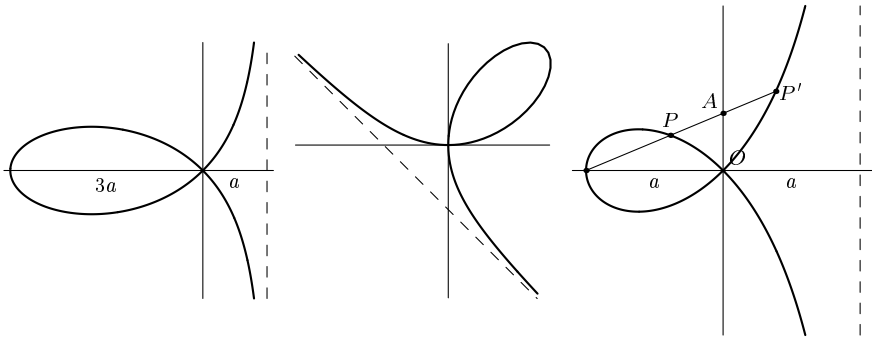
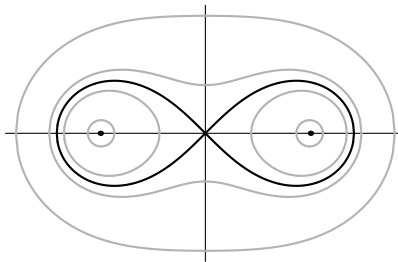


FIGURE 4.23

Cassini's ovals for $k = 0.5a, 0.9a, a, 1.1a$ and $1.5a$ (from the inside to the outside). The foci (dots) are at $x = a$ and $x = -a$. The black curve, $k = a$, is also called Bernoulli's lemniscate.



the shape: the curve has one smooth segment and one with a self-intersection, or two segments depending on whether k is greater than, equal to, or smaller than a (Figure 4.23). The case $k = a$ is also known as the *lemniscate* (of Jakob Bernoulli); the equation reduces to $(x^2 + y^2)^2 = a^2(x^2 - y^2)$, and upon a 45° rotation to $(x^2 + y^2)^2 = 2a^2xy$. Each Cassini oval is the section of a torus of revolution by a plane parallel to the axis of revolution.

2. A *conchoid of Nicomedes* is the set of points such that the signed distance AP in [Figure 4.24](#), left, equals a fixed real number k (the line L and the origin O being fixed). If L is the line $x = a$, the conchoid's polar equation is $r = a \sec \theta + k$. Once more, a is a scaling parameter, and the value of k/a controls the shape: when $k > -a$ the curve is smooth, when $k = -a$ there is a cusp, and when $k < -a$ there is a self-intersection. The curves for k and $-k$ can also be considered two leaves of the same conchoid, with Cartesian equation $(x - a)^2(x^2 + y^2) = k^2x^2$.
3. A *limaçon of Pascal* is the set of points such that the distance AP in [Figure 4.25](#), left, equals a fixed positive number k measured on either side (the

FIGURE 4.24

De ning property of the conchoid of Nichomedes (left), and curves for $k = \pm 0.5a$, $k = \pm a$, and $k = \pm 1.5a$ (right).

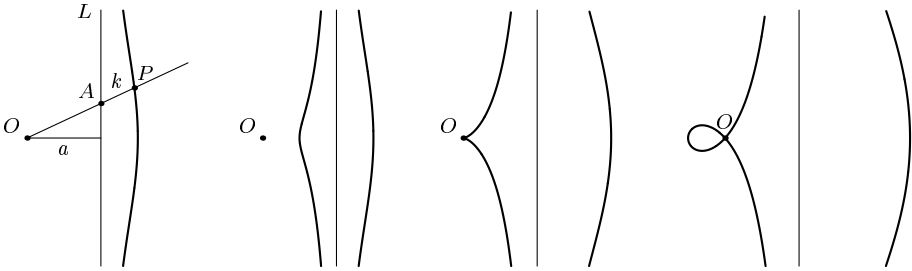
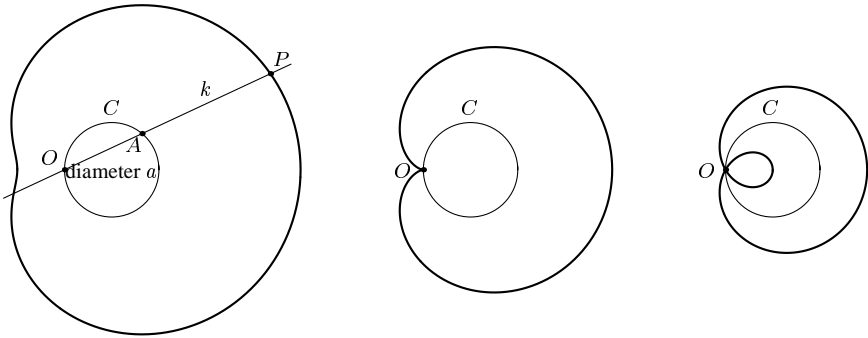


FIGURE 4.25

De ning property of the limaçon of Pascal (left), and curves for $k = 1.5a$, $k = a$, and $k = 0.5a$ (right). The middle curve is the cardioid; the one on the right a trisectrix.



circle C and the origin O being fixed). If C has diameter a and center at $(0, \frac{1}{2}a)$, the limaçon's polar equation is $r = a \cos \theta + k$, and its Cartesian equation is

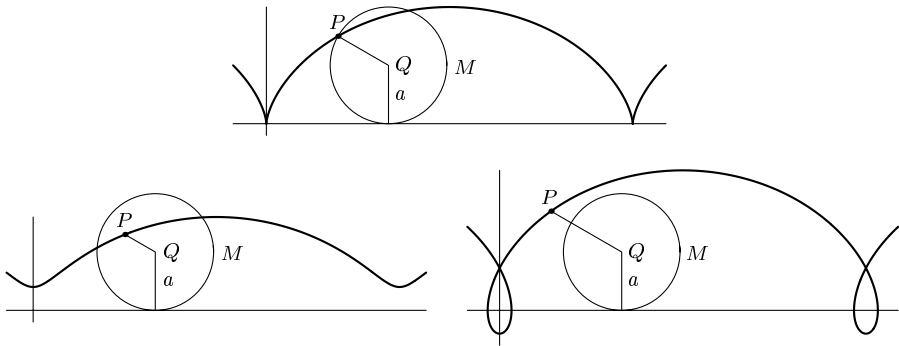
$$(x^2 + y^2 - ax)^2 = k^2(x^2 + y^2). \quad (4.7.1)$$

The value of k/a controls the shape, and there are two particularly interesting cases. For $k = a$, we get a *cardioid* (see also page 341). For $k = \frac{1}{2}a$, we get a curve that can be used to *trisection* an arbitrary angle α . If we draw a line L through the center of the circle C making an angle α with the positive x -axis, and if we call P the intersection of L with the limaçon $k = \frac{1}{2}a$, the line from O to P makes an angle with L equal to $\frac{1}{3}\alpha$.

Hypocycloids and epicycloids with rational ratios (see next section) are also algebraic curves, generally of higher degree.

FIGURE 4.26

Cycloid (top) and trochoids with $k = 0.5a$ and $k = 1.5a$, where k is the distance PQ from the center of the rolling circle to the pole.



4.7.2 ROULETTES (SPIROGRAPH CURVES)

Suppose given a fixed curve C and a moving curve M , which rolls on C without slipping. The curve drawn by a point P kept fixed with respect to M is called a *roulette*, of which P is the *pole*.

The most important examples of roulettes arise when M is a circle and C is a straight line or a circle, but an interesting additional example is provided by the *catenary* $y = a \cosh(x/a)$, which arises by rolling the parabola $y = x^2/(4a)$ on the x -axis with pole the focus of the parabola (that is, $P = (0, a)$ in the initial position). The catenary is the shape taken under the action of gravity by a chain or string of uniform density whose ends are held in the air.

A circle rolling on a straight line gives a *trochoid*, with the *cycloid* as a special case when the pole P lies on the circle (Figure 4.26). If the moving circle M has radius a and the distance from the pole P to the center of M is k , the trochoid's parametric equation is

$$x = a\phi - k \sin \phi, \quad y = a - k \cos \phi. \quad (4.7.2)$$

The cycloid, therefore, has the parametric equation

$$x = a(\phi - \sin \phi), \quad y = a(1 - \cos \phi). \quad (4.7.3)$$

One can eliminate ϕ to get x as a (multivalued) function of y , which takes the following form for the cycloid:

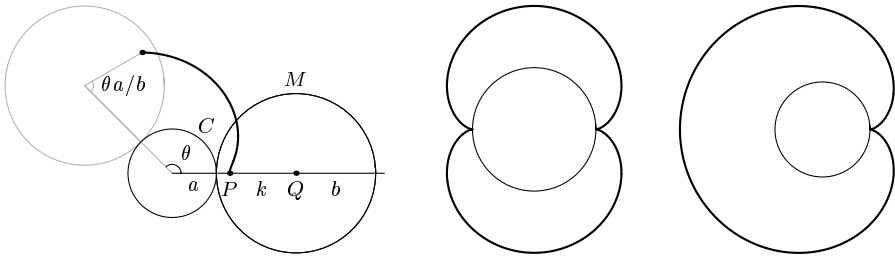
$$x = \pm \left(a \cos^{-1} \left(\frac{a - y}{a} \right) - \sqrt{2ay - y^2} \right) \quad (4.7.4)$$

The length of one arch of the cycloid is $8a$, and the area under the arch is $3\pi a^2$.

A trochoid is also called a *curtate cycloid* when $k < a$ (that is, when P is inside the circle) and a *prolate cycloid* when $k > a$.

FIGURE 4.27

Left: initial con guration for epitrochoid (black) and con guration at parameter value θ (gray). Middle: epicycloid with $b = \frac{1}{2}a$ (nephroid). Right: epicycloid with $b = a$ (cardioid).



A circle rolling on another circle and exterior to it gives an *epitrochoid*. If a is the radius of the fixed circle, b that of the rolling circle, and k is the distance from P to the center of the rolling circle, the parametric equation of the epitrochoid is

$$x = (a + b) \cos \theta - k \cos((1 + b/a)\theta), \quad y = (a + b) \sin \theta - k \sin((1 + b/a)\theta). \quad (4.7.5)$$

These equations assume that, at the start, everything is aligned along the positive x -axis, as in Figure 4.27, left. Usually one considers the case when a/b is a rational number, say $a/b = p/q$ where p and q are relatively prime. Then the rolling circle returns to its original position after rotating q times around the fixed circle, and the epitrochoid is a closed curve—in fact, an algebraic curve. One also usually takes $k = b$, so that P lies on the rolling circle; the curve in this case is called an *epicycloid*. The middle diagram in Figure 4.27 shows the case $b = k = \frac{1}{2}a$, called the *nephroid*; this curve is the cross section of the caustic of a spherical mirror. The diagram on the right shows the case $b = k = a$, which gives the cardioid (compare to Figure 4.25, middle).

Hypotrochoids and *hypocycloids* are defined in the same way as epitrochoids and epicycloids, but the rolling circle is inside the fixed one. The parametric equation of the hypotrochoid is

$$x = (a - b) \cos \theta + k \cos((a/b - 1)\theta), \quad y = (a - b) \sin \theta - k \sin((a/b - 1)\theta), \quad (4.7.6)$$

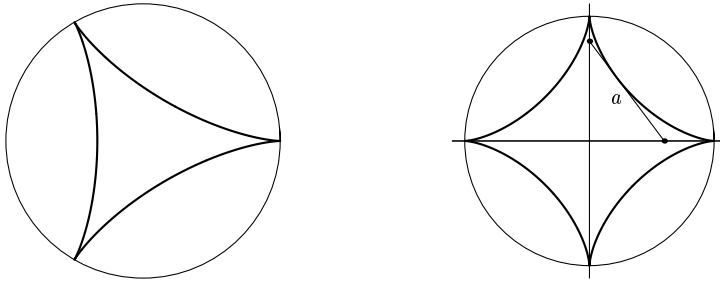
where the letters have the same meaning as for the epitrochoid. Usually one takes a/b rational and $k = b$. There are several interesting particular cases:

- $b = k = a$ gives a point.
- $b = k = \frac{1}{2}a$ gives a diameter of the circle C .
- $b = k = \frac{1}{3}a$ gives the *deltoid* (Figure 4.28, left), whose algebraic equation is

$$(x^2 + y^2)^2 - 8ax^3 + 24axy^2 + 18a^2(x^2 + y^2) - 27a^4 = 0. \quad (4.7.7)$$

FIGURE 4.28

The hypocycloids with $a = 3b$ (deltoid) and $a = 4b$ (astroid).



- $b = k = \frac{1}{4}a$ gives the *astroid* (Figure 4.28, right), an algebraic curve of degree six whose equation can be reduced to $x^{2/3} + y^{2/3} = a^{2/3}$. The figure illustrates another property of the astroid: its tangent intersects the coordinate axes at points that are always the same distance a apart. Otherwise said, the astroid is the envelope of a moving segment of fixed length whose endpoints are constrained to lie on the two coordinate axes.

4.7.3 CURVES IN POLAR COORDINATES

| polar equation | type of curve |
|--|---|
| $r = a$ | circle |
| $r = a \cos \theta$ | circle |
| $r = a \sin \theta$ | circle |
| $r^2 - 2br \cos(\theta - \beta) + (b^2 - a^2) = 0$ | circle at (b, β) of radius a |
| $r = \frac{k}{1 - e \cos \theta}$ | $\begin{cases} e = 1 & \text{parabola} \\ 0 < e < 1 & \text{ellipse} \\ e > 1 & \text{hyperbola} \end{cases}$ |

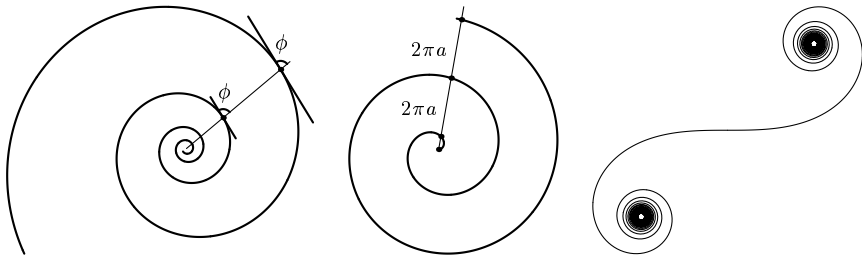
4.7.4 SPIRALS

A number of interesting curves have polar equation $r = f(\theta)$, where f is a monotonic function (always increasing or decreasing). This property leads to a spiral shape. The *logarithmic spiral* or *Bernoulli spiral* (Figure 4.29, left) is self-similar: by rotation the curve can be made to match any scaled copy of itself. Its equation is $r = ke^{a\theta}$; the angle between the radius from the origin and the tangent to the curve is constant and equal to $\phi = \cot^{-1} a$. A curve parameterized by arc length and such that the radius of curvature is proportional to the parameter at each point is a Bernoulli spiral.

In the *Archimedean spiral* or *linear spiral* (Figure 4.29, middle), the spacing between intersections along a ray from the origin is constant. The equation of this spiral is $r = a\theta$; by scaling one can take $a = 1$. It has an inner endpoint, in contrast

FIGURE 4.29

The Bernoulli or logarithmic spiral (left), the Archimedes or linear spiral (middle), and the Cornu spiral (right).




with the logarithmic spiral, which spirals down to the origin without reaching it. The *Cornu spiral* or *clothoid* (Figure 4.29, right), important in optics and engineering, has the following parametric representation in Cartesian coordinates:

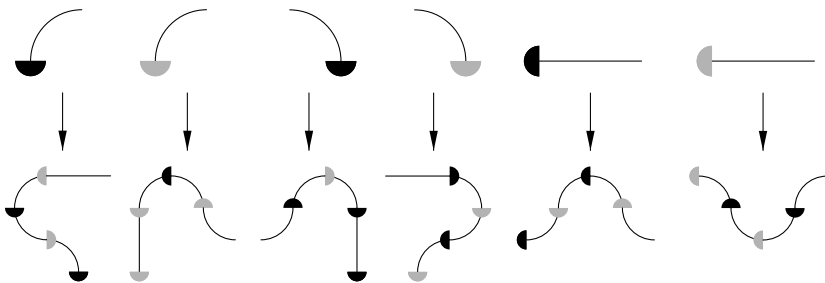
$$X = aC(t) = a \int_0^t \cos\left(\frac{1}{2}\pi s^2\right) ds, \quad y = aS(t) = a \int_0^t \sin\left(\frac{1}{2}\pi s^2\right) ds. \quad (4.7.8)$$

(C and S are the so-called Fresnel integrals; see page 547.) A curve parameterized by arc length and such that the radius of curvature is inversely proportional to the parameter at each point is a Cornu spiral (compare to the Bernoulli spiral).

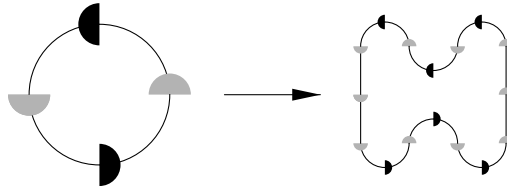
4.7.5 THE PEANO CURVE AND FRACTAL CURVES

There are curves (in the sense of continuous maps from the real line to the plane) that completely cover a two-dimensional region of the plane. We give a construction of such a *Peano curve*, adapted from David Hilbert's example. The construction is inductive and is based on replacement rules. We consider building blocks of six

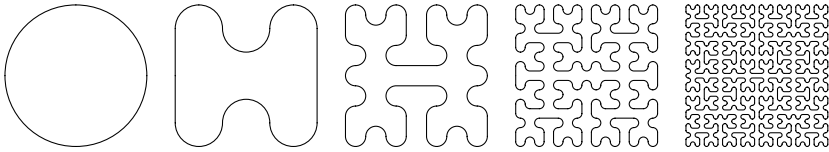
shapes:  , the length of the straight segments being twice the radius of the curved ones. A sequence of these patterns, end-to-end, represents a curve, if we disregard the gray and black half-disks. The replacement rules are the following:



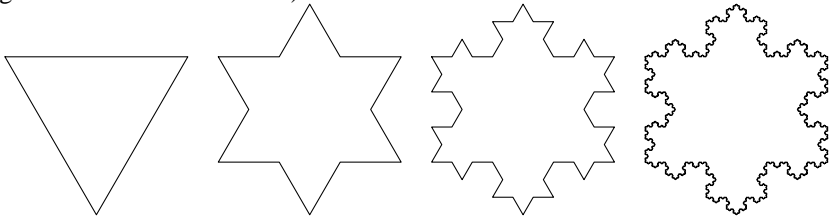
The rules are applied taking into account the way each piece is turned. Here we apply the replacement rules to a particular initial pattern:



(We scale the result so it has the same size as the original.) Applying the process repeatedly gives, in the limit, the Peano curve. Note that the sequence converges uniformly and thus the limit function is continuous. Here are the first five steps:



The same idea of replacement rules leads to many interesting fractal, and often self-similar, curves. For example, the substitution $\text{---} \rightarrow \text{---} \wedge \text{---}$ leads to the *Koch snowflake* when applied to an initial equilateral triangle, like this (the first three stages and the sixth are shown):



4.7.6 FRACTAL OBJECTS

Given an object X , if $n(\epsilon)$ open sets of diameter of ϵ are required to cover X , then the capacity dimension of X is

$$d_{\text{capacity}} = \lim_{\epsilon \rightarrow 0} \frac{\ln n(\epsilon)}{\ln \epsilon} \quad (4.7.9)$$

indicating that $n(\epsilon)$ scales as $\epsilon^{d_{\text{capacity}}}$. Note that

$$d_{\text{correlation}} \leq d_{\text{information}} \leq d_{\text{capacity}}. \quad (4.7.10)$$

The capacity dimension of various objects:

| Object | Dimension | Object | Dimension |
|-------------------|--|-------------------|--|
| Logistic equation | 0.538 | Sierpiński sieve | $\frac{\ln 3}{\ln 2} \approx 1.5850$ |
| Cantor set | $\frac{\ln 2}{\ln 3} \approx 0.6309$ | Penta ak e | $\frac{\ln 2 + \ln 3}{\ln(1 + \phi)^3} \approx 1.8617$ |
| Koch snowflake | $\frac{2 \ln 2}{\ln 3} \approx 1.2619$ | Sierpiński carpet | $\frac{3 \ln 2}{\ln 3} \approx 1.8928$ |
| Cantor dust | $\frac{\ln 5}{\ln 3} \approx 1.4650$ | Tetrix | 2 |
| Minkowski sausage | $\frac{3}{2} = 1.5$ | Menger sponge | $\frac{2 \ln 2 + \ln 5}{\ln 3} \approx 2.7268$ |

4.7.7 CLASSICAL CONSTRUCTIONS

The ancient Greeks used straightedges and compasses to find the solutions to numerical problems. For example, they found square roots by constructing the geometric mean of two segments. Three famous problems that have been proved intractable by this method are:

1. The trisection of an arbitrary angle.
2. The squaring of the circle (the construction of a square whose area is equal to that of a given circle).
3. The doubling of the cube (the construction of a cube with double the volume of a given cube).

A regular polygon inscribed in the unit circle can be constructed by straightedge and compass alone if, and only if, n has the form $n = 2^\ell p_1 p_2 \dots p_k$, where ℓ is a nonnegative integer and the $\{p_i\}$ are zero or more distinct Fermat primes (primes of the form $2^{2^m} + 1$). The only known Fermat primes are for $m = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4$. Thus, regular polygons can be constructed for $n = 3, 4, 5, 6, 8, 10, 12, 15, 16, 17, 20, 24, \dots, 257, \dots$

4.8 COORDINATE SYSTEMS IN SPACE

4.8.0.1 Conventions

When we talk about “the point with coordinates (x, y, z) ” or “the surface with equation $f(x, y, z)$ ”, we always mean Cartesian coordinates. If a formula involves another type of coordinates, this fact will be stated explicitly. Note that [Section 4.1.2](#) has information on substitutions and transformations relevant to the three-dimensional case.

4.8.1 CARTESIAN COORDINATES IN SPACE

In *Cartesian coordinates* (or *rectangular coordinates*), a point P is referred to by three real numbers, indicating the positions of the perpendicular projections from the point to three fixed, perpendicular, graduated lines, called the *axes*. If the coordinates are denoted x, y, z , in that order, the axes are called the *x-axis*, etc., and we write $P = (x, y, z)$. Often the *x-axis* is imagined to be horizontal and pointing roughly toward the viewer (out of the page), the *y-axis* also horizontal and pointing more or less to the right, and the *z-axis* vertical, pointing up. The system is called *right-handed* if it can be rotated so the three axes are in this position. [Figure 4.30](#) shows a right-handed system. The point $x = 0, y = 0, z = 0$ is the *origin*, where the three axes intersect.

FIGURE 4.30

In Cartesian coordinates, $P = (4.2, 3.4, 2.2)$.

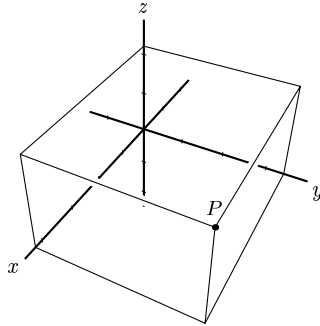
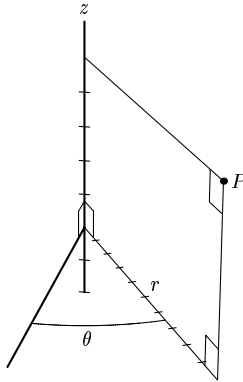


FIGURE 4.31

Among the possible sets (r, θ, z) of cylindrical coordinates for P are $(10, 30^\circ, 5)$ and $(10, 390^\circ, 5)$.



4.8.2 CYLINDRICAL COORDINATES IN SPACE

To define *cylindrical coordinates*, we take an axis (usually called the *z-axis*) and a perpendicular plane, on which we choose a ray (the *initial ray*) originating at the intersection of the plane and the axis (the *origin*). The coordinates of a point P are the polar coordinates (r, θ) of the projection of P on the plane, and the coordinate z of the projection of P on the axis (Figure 4.31). See [Section 4.1.4](#) for remarks on the values of r and θ .

4.8.3 SPHERICAL COORDINATES IN SPACE

To define *spherical coordinates*, we take an axis (the *polar axis*) and a perpendicular plane (the *equatorial plane*), on which we choose a ray (the *initial ray*) originating at the intersection of the plane and the axis (the *origin* O). The coordinates of a point P are the distance ρ from P to the origin, the angle ϕ (*zenith*) between the line OP

and the positive polar axis, and the angle θ (*azimuth*) between the initial ray and the projection of OP to the equatorial plane. See Figure 4.32. As in the case of polar and cylindrical coordinates, θ is only defined up to multiples of 360° , and likewise ϕ . Usually ϕ is assigned a value between 0 and 180° , but values of ϕ between 180° and 360° can also be used; the triples (ρ, ϕ, θ) and $(\rho, 360^\circ - \phi, 180^\circ + \theta)$ represent the same point. Similarly, one can extend ρ to negative values; the triples (ρ, ϕ, θ) and $(-\rho, 180^\circ - \phi, 180^\circ + \theta)$ represent the same point.

FIGURE 4.32

A set of spherical coordinates for P is $(\rho, \theta, \phi) = (10, 60^\circ, 30^\circ)$.

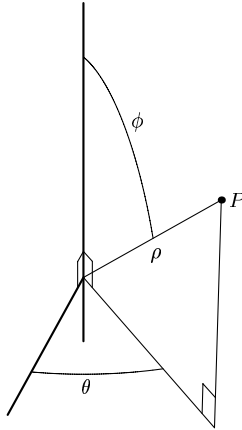
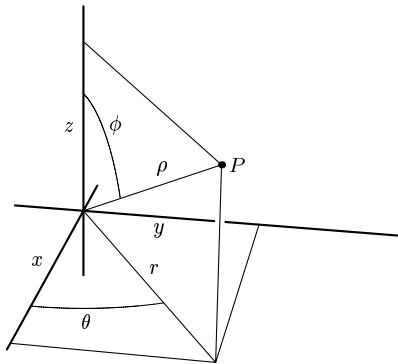


FIGURE 4.33

Standard relations between Cartesian, cylindrical, and spherical coordinate systems. The origin is the same for all three. The positive z -axes of the Cartesian and cylindrical systems coincide with the positive polar axis of the spherical system. The initial rays of the cylindrical and spherical systems coincide with the positive x -axis of the Cartesian system, and the rays $\theta = 90^\circ$ coincide with the positive y -axis.



4.8.4 RELATIONS BETWEEN CARTESIAN, CYLINDRICAL, AND SPHERICAL COORDINATES

Consider a Cartesian, a cylindrical, and a spherical coordinate system, related as shown in [Figure 4.33](#). The Cartesian coordinates (x, y, z) , the cylindrical coordinates (r, θ, z) , and the spherical coordinates (ρ, ϕ, θ) of a point are related as follows (where the \tan^{-1} function must be interpreted correctly in all quadrants):

$$\begin{aligned} \text{cart} \leftrightarrow \text{cyl} & \quad \begin{cases} x = r \cos \theta, \\ y = r \sin \theta, \\ z = z, \end{cases} & \quad \begin{cases} r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}, \\ \theta = \tan^{-1} \frac{y}{x}, \\ z = z, \end{cases} & \quad \begin{cases} \sin \theta = \frac{y}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}}, \\ \cos \theta = \frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}}, \\ z = z. \end{cases} \\ \\ \text{cyl} \leftrightarrow \text{sph} & \quad \begin{cases} r = \rho \sin \phi, \\ z = \rho \cos \phi, \\ \theta = \theta, \end{cases} & \quad \begin{cases} \rho = \sqrt{r^2 + z^2}, \\ \phi = \tan^{-1} \frac{r}{z}, \\ \theta = \theta, \end{cases} & \quad \begin{cases} \sin \phi = \frac{r}{\sqrt{r^2 + z^2}}, \\ \cos \phi = \frac{z}{\sqrt{r^2 + z^2}}, \\ \theta = \theta. \end{cases} \\ \\ \text{cart} \leftrightarrow \text{sph} & \quad \begin{cases} x = \rho \cos \theta \sin \phi, \\ y = \rho \sin \theta \sin \phi, \\ z = \rho \cos \phi, \end{cases} & \quad \begin{cases} \rho = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}, \\ \theta = \tan^{-1} \frac{y}{x}, \\ \phi = \tan^{-1} \frac{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}}{z} \\ = \cos^{-1} \frac{z}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}}. \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

4.8.5 HOMOGENEOUS COORDINATES IN SPACE

A quadruple of real numbers $(x : y : z : t)$, with $t \neq 0$, is a set of *homogeneous coordinates* for the point P with Cartesian coordinates $(x/t, y/t, z/t)$. Thus the same point has many sets of homogeneous coordinates: $(x : y : z : t)$ and $(x' : y' : z' : t')$ represent the same point if, and only if, there is some real number α such that $x' = \alpha x$, $y' = \alpha y$, $z' = \alpha z$, $t' = \alpha t$. If P has Cartesian coordinates (x_0, y_0, z_0) , one set of homogeneous coordinates for P is $(x_0, y_0, z_0, 1)$.

[Section 4.1.5](#) has more information on the relationship between Cartesian and homogeneous coordinates. [Section 4.9.2](#) has formulae for space transformations in homogeneous coordinates.

4.9 SPACE SYMMETRIES OR ISOMETRIES

A transformation of space (invertible map of space to itself) that preserves distances is called an *isometry* of space. Every isometry of space is a composition of transfor-

mations of the following types:

1. The *identity* (which leaves every point fixed)
2. A *translation* by a vector \mathbf{v}
3. A *rotation* through an angle α around a line L
4. A *screw motion* through an angle α around a line L , with displacement d
5. A *reflection* in a plane P
6. A *glide-reflection* in a plane P with displacement vector \mathbf{v}
7. A *rotation-reflection* (rotation through an angle α around a line L composed with reflection in a plane perpendicular to L).

The identity is a particular case of a translation and of a rotation; rotations are particular cases of screw motions; reflections are particular cases of glide-reflections. However, as in the plane case, it is more intuitive to consider each case separately.

4.9.1 FORMULAE FOR SYMMETRIES: CARTESIAN COORDINATES

In the formulae below, multiplication between a matrix and a triple of coordinates should be carried out regarding the triple as a column vector (or a matrix with three rows and one column).

1. *Translation* by (x_0, y_0, z_0) :

$$(x, y, z) \mapsto (x + x_0, y + y_0, z + z_0). \tag{4.9.1}$$

2. *Rotation* through α (counterclockwise) around the line through the origin with direction cosines a, b, c (see page 353): $(x, y, z) \mapsto M(x, y, z)$, where M is the matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} a^2(1 - \cos \alpha) + \cos \alpha & ab(1 - \cos \alpha) - c \sin \alpha & ac(1 - \cos \alpha) + b \sin \alpha \\ ab(1 - \cos \alpha) + c \sin \alpha & b^2(1 - \cos \alpha) + \cos \alpha & bc(1 - \cos \alpha) - a \sin \alpha \\ ac(1 - \cos \alpha) - b \sin \alpha & bc(1 - \cos \alpha) + a \sin \alpha & c^2(1 - \cos \alpha) + \cos \alpha \end{bmatrix}. \tag{4.9.2}$$

3. *Rotation* through α (counterclockwise) around the line with direction cosines a, b, c through an arbitrary point (x_0, y_0, z_0) :

$$(x, y, z) \mapsto (x_0, y_0, z_0) + M(x - x_0, y - y_0, z - z_0), \tag{4.9.3}$$

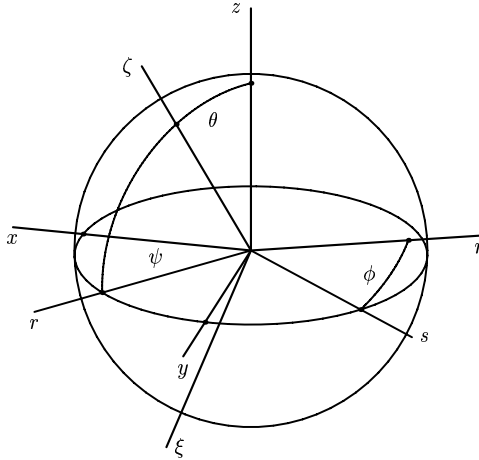
where M is given by Equation (4.9.2).

4. *Arbitrary rotations and Euler angles*: Any rotation of space fixing the origin can be decomposed as a rotation by ϕ about the z -axis, followed by a rotation by θ about the y -axis, followed by a rotation by ψ about the z -axis. The numbers $\phi, \theta,$ and ψ are called the *Euler angles* of the composite rotation, which acts as: $(x, y, z) \mapsto M(x, y, z)$, where M is the matrix given by

$$\begin{bmatrix} \cos \phi \cos \theta \cos \psi - \sin \phi \sin \psi & -\sin \phi \cos \theta \cos \psi - \cos \phi \sin \psi & \sin \theta \cos \psi \\ \cos \phi \cos \theta \sin \psi + \sin \phi \cos \psi & -\sin \phi \cos \theta \sin \psi + \cos \phi \cos \psi & \sin \theta \sin \psi \\ -\cos \phi \sin \theta & \sin \phi \sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{bmatrix}. \tag{4.9.4}$$

FIGURE 4.34

The coordinate rays Ox, Oy, Oz , together with their images $O\xi, O\eta, O\zeta$ under a rotation, x the Euler angles associated with that rotation, as follows: $\theta = zO\zeta$, $\psi = xOr = yOs$, and $\phi = sO\eta$. (Here the ray Or is the projection of $O\zeta$ to the xy -plane. The ray Os is determined by the intersection of the xy - and $\xi\eta$ -planes.)



(An alternative decomposition, more natural if we think of the coordinate system as a rigid trihedron that rotates in space, is the following: a rotation by ψ about the z -axis, followed by a rotation by θ about the *rotated* y -axis, followed by a rotation by ϕ about the *rotated* z -axis. Note that the order is reversed.)

Provided that θ is not a multiple of 180° , the decomposition of a rotation in this form is unique (apart from the ambiguity arising from the possibility of adding a multiple of 360° to any angle). Figure 4.34 shows how the Euler angles can be read off geometrically.

Warning: Some references define Euler angles differently; the most common variation is that the second rotation is taken about the x -axis instead of about the y -axis.

5. *Screw motion* with angle α and displacement d around the line with direction cosines a, b, c through an arbitrary point (x_0, y_0, z_0) :

$$(x, y, z) \mapsto (x_0 + ad, y_0 + bd, z_0 + cd) + M(x - x_0, y - y_0, z - z_0), \quad (4.9.5)$$

where M is given by (4.9.2).

6. *Reflection*

$$\begin{aligned} \text{in the } xy\text{-plane:} & \quad (x, y, z) \mapsto (x, y, -z). \\ \text{in the } xz\text{-plane:} & \quad (x, y, z) \mapsto (x, -y, z). \\ \text{in the } yz\text{-plane:} & \quad (x, y, z) \mapsto (-x, y, z). \end{aligned} \quad (4.9.6)$$

7. *Reflection* in a plane with equation $ax + by + cz + d = 0$:

$$(x, y, z) \mapsto \frac{1}{a^2 + b^2 + c^2} (M(x_0, y_0, z_0) - (2ad, 2bd, 2cd)), \quad (4.9.7)$$

where M is the matrix

$$M = \begin{bmatrix} -a^2 + b^2 + c^2 & -2ab & -2ac \\ -2ab & a^2 - b^2 + c^2 & -2bc \\ -2ac & -2bc & a^2 + b^2 - c^2 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (4.9.8)$$

8. *Reflection* in a plane going through (x_0, y_0, z_0) and whose normal has direction cosines a, b, c :

$$(x, y, z) \mapsto (x_0 + y_0 + z_0) + M(x - x_0, y - y_0, z - z_0), \quad (4.9.9)$$

where M is as in (4.9.8).

9. *Glide-reflection* in a plane P with displacement vector \mathbf{v} : Apply first a reflection in P , then a translation by the vector \mathbf{v} .

4.9.2 FORMULAE FOR SYMMETRIES: HOMOGENEOUS COORDINATES

All isometries of space can be expressed in homogeneous coordinates in terms of multiplication by a matrix. As in the case of plane isometries (Section 4.2.2), this means that the successive application of transformations reduces to matrix multiplication. (In the formulae below, $\begin{bmatrix} M & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ is the 4×4 projective matrix obtained from the 3×3 matrix M by adding a row and a column as stated.)

1. *Translation* by (x_0, y_0, z_0) :

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & x_0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & y_0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & z_0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

2. *Rotation* through the origin: $\begin{bmatrix} M & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$,

where M is given in (4.9.2) or (4.9.4), as the case may be.

3. *Reflection* in a plane through the origin: $\begin{bmatrix} M & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$,

where M is given in (4.9.8).

From this one can deduce all other transformations, as in the case of plane transformations (see page 305).

4.10 OTHER TRANSFORMATIONS OF SPACE

4.10.1 SIMILARITIES

A transformation of space that preserves shapes is called a *similarity*. Every similarity of space is obtained by composing a *proportional scaling transformation* (also known as a *homothety*) with an isometry. A proportional scaling transformation centered at the origin has the form

$$(x, y, z) \mapsto (ax, ay, az), \quad (4.10.1)$$

where $a \neq 0$ is the scaling factor (a real number). The corresponding matrix in *homogeneous coordinates* is

$$H_a = \begin{bmatrix} a & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & a & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & a & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (4.10.2)$$

In *cylindrical coordinates*, the transformation is $(r, \theta, z) \mapsto (ar, \theta, az)$. In *spherical coordinates*, it is $(r, \phi, \theta) \mapsto (ar, \phi, \theta)$.

4.10.2 AFFINE TRANSFORMATIONS

A transformation that preserves lines and parallelism (maps parallel lines to parallel lines) is an *af ne transformation*. There are two important particular cases of such transformations:

1. A *non-proportional scaling transformation* centered at the origin has the form $(x, y, z) \mapsto (ax, by, cz)$, where $a, b, c \neq 0$ are the scaling factors (real numbers). The corresponding matrix in *homogeneous coordinates* is

$$H_{a,b,c} = \begin{bmatrix} a & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & b & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & c & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (4.10.3)$$

2. A *shear* in the x -direction and preserving horizontal planes has the form $(x, y, z) \mapsto (x + rz, y, z)$, where r is the shearing factor. The corresponding matrix in *homogeneous coordinates* is

$$S_r = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & r & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (4.10.4)$$

Every affine transformation is obtained by composing a scaling transformation with an isometry, or one or two shears with a homothety and an isometry.

4.10.3 PROJECTIVE TRANSFORMATIONS

A transformation that maps lines to lines (but does not necessarily preserve parallelism) is a *projective transformation*. Any spatial projective transformation can be expressed by an invertible 4×4 matrix in homogeneous coordinates; conversely, any invertible 4×4 matrix defines a projective transformation of space. Projective transformations (if not affine) are not defined on all of space, but only on the complement of a plane (the missing plane is “mapped to infinity”).

The following particular case is often useful, especially in computer graphics, in *projecting a scene* from space to the plane. Suppose an observer is at the point $E = (x_0, y_0, z_0)$ of space, looking toward the origin $O = (0, 0, 0)$. Let P , the *screen*, be the plane through O and perpendicular to the ray EO . Place a rectangular coordinate system $\xi\eta$ on P with origin at O so that the positive η -axis lies in the half-plane determined by E and the positive z -axis of space (that is, the z -axis is pointing “up” as seen from E). Then consider the transformation that associates with a point $X = (x, y, z)$ the triple (ξ, η, ζ) , where (ξ, η) are the coordinates of the point, where the line EX intersects P (the *screen coordinates* of X as seen from E), and ζ is the inverse of the signed distance from X to E along the line EO (this distance is the *depth* of X as seen from E). This is a projective transformation, given by the matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} -r^2 y_0 & r^2 x_0 & 0 & 0 \\ -r x_0 z_0 & -r y_0 z_0 & r \rho^2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & r \rho \\ -\rho x_0 & -\rho y_0 & -\rho z_0 & r^2 \rho \end{bmatrix} \quad (4.10.5)$$

with $\rho = \sqrt{x_0^2 + y_0^2}$ and $r = \sqrt{x_0^2 + y_0^2 + z_0^2}$.

4.11 DIRECTION ANGLES AND DIRECTION COSINES

Given a vector (a, b, c) in three-dimensional space, the *direction cosines* of this vector are

$$\begin{aligned} \cos \alpha &= \frac{a}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2 + c^2}}, \\ \cos \beta &= \frac{b}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2 + c^2}}, \\ \cos \gamma &= \frac{c}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2 + c^2}}. \end{aligned} \quad (4.11.1)$$

Here the *direction angles* α, β, γ are the angles that the vector makes with the positive x -, y - and z -axes, respectively. In formulae, usually the direction cosines appear, rather than the direction angles. We have

$$\cos^2 \alpha + \cos^2 \beta + \cos^2 \gamma = 1. \quad (4.11.2)$$

4.12 PLANES

The (Cartesian) equation of a *plane* is linear in the coordinates x , y , and z :

$$ax + by + cz + d = 0. \quad (4.12.1)$$

The *normal direction* to this plane is (a, b, c) . The *intersection* of this plane with the x -axis, or x -*intercept*, is $x = -d/a$, the y -*intercept* is $y = -d/b$, and the z -*intercept* is $z = -d/c$. The plane is vertical (perpendicular to the xy -plane) if $c = 0$. It is perpendicular to the x -axis if $b = c = 0$, and likewise for the other coordinates.

When $a^2 + b^2 + c^2 = 1$ and $d \leq 0$ in the equation $ax + by + cz + d = 0$, the equation is said to be in *normal form*. In this case $-d$ is the *distance of the plane to the origin*, and (a, b, c) are the *direction cosines* of the normal.

To reduce an arbitrary equation $ax + by + cz + d = 0$ to normal form, divide by $\pm\sqrt{a^2 + b^2 + c^2}$, where the sign of the radical is chosen opposite the sign of d when $d \neq 0$, the same as the sign of c when $d = 0$ and $c \neq 0$, and the same as the sign of b otherwise.

4.12.1 PLANES WITH PRESCRIBED PROPERTIES

1. Plane through (x_0, y_0, z_0) and perpendicular to the direction (a, b, c) :

$$a(x - x_0) + b(y - y_0) + c(z - z_0) = 0. \quad (4.12.2)$$

2. Plane through (x_0, y_0, z_0) and parallel to the two directions (a_1, b_1, c_1) and (a_2, b_2, c_2) :

$$\begin{vmatrix} x - x_0 & y - y_0 & z - z_0 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \end{vmatrix} = 0. \quad (4.12.3)$$

3. Plane through (x_0, y_0, z_0) and (x_1, y_1, z_1) and parallel to the direction (a, b, c) :

$$\begin{vmatrix} x - x_0 & y - y_0 & z - z_0 \\ x_1 - x_0 & y_1 - y_0 & z_1 - z_0 \\ a & b & c \end{vmatrix} = 0. \quad (4.12.4)$$

4. Plane going through (x_0, y_0, z_0) , (x_1, y_1, z_1) , and (x_2, y_2, z_2) :

$$\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ x_0 & y_0 & z_0 & 1 \\ x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ x_2 & y_2 & z_2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad \begin{vmatrix} x - x_0 & y - y_0 & z - z_0 \\ x_1 - x_0 & y_1 - y_0 & z_1 - z_0 \\ x_2 - x_0 & y_2 - y_0 & z_2 - z_0 \end{vmatrix} = 0. \quad (4.12.5)$$

(The last three formulae remain true in *oblique coordinates*.)

5. The *distance* from the point (x_0, y_0, z_0) to the plane $ax + by + cz + d = 0$ is

$$\left| \frac{ax_0 + by_0 + cz_0 + d}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2 + c^2}} \right|. \quad (4.12.6)$$

6. The *angle* between two planes $a_0x + b_0y + c_0z + d_0 = 0$ and $a_1x + b_1y + c_1z + d_1 = 0$ is

$$\cos^{-1} \frac{a_0a_1 + b_0b_1 + c_0c_1}{\sqrt{a_0^2 + b_0^2 + c_0^2} \sqrt{a_1^2 + b_1^2 + c_1^2}}. \quad (4.12.7)$$

In particular, the two planes are *parallel* when $a_0 : b_0 : c_0 = a_1 : b_1 : c_1$, and *perpendicular* when $a_0a_1 + b_0b_1 + c_0c_1 = 0$.

4.12.2 CONCURRENCE AND COPLANARITY

Four planes $a_0x + b_0y + c_0z + d_0 = 0$, $a_1x + b_1y + c_1z + d_1 = 0$, $a_2x + b_2y + c_2z + d_2 = 0$, and $a_3x + b_3y + c_3z + d_3 = 0$ are *concurrent* (share a point) if and only if

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_0 & b_0 & c_0 & d_0 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 & d_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 & d_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 & d_3 \end{vmatrix} = 0. \quad (4.12.8)$$

Four points (x_0, y_0, z_0) , (x_1, y_1, z_1) , (x_2, y_2, z_2) , and (x_3, y_3, z_3) are *coplanar* (lie on the same plane) if and only if

$$\begin{vmatrix} x_0 & y_0 & z_0 & 1 \\ x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ x_2 & y_2 & z_2 & 1 \\ x_3 & y_3 & z_3 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 0. \quad (4.12.9)$$

(Both of these assertions remain true in *oblique coordinates*.)

4.13 LINES IN SPACE

Two planes that are not parallel or coincident intersect in a *straight line*, such that one can express a line by a pair of linear equations

$$\begin{cases} ax + by + cz + d = 0 \\ a'x + b'y + c'z + d' = 0 \end{cases} \quad (4.13.1)$$

such that $bc' - cb'$, $ca' - ac'$, and $ab' - ba'$ are not all zero. The line thus defined is parallel to the vector $(bc' - cb', ca' - ac', ab' - ba')$. The *direction cosines* of the line are those of this vector. See Equation (4.11.1). (The direction cosines of a line are only defined up to a simultaneous change in sign, because the opposite vector still gives the same line.)

The following particular cases are important:

1. Line through (x_0, y_0, z_0) parallel to the vector (a, b, c) :

$$\frac{x - x_0}{a} = \frac{y - y_0}{b} = \frac{z - z_0}{c}. \quad (4.13.2)$$

2. Line through (x_0, y_0, z_0) and (x_1, y_1, z_1) :

$$\frac{x - x_0}{x_1 - x_0} = \frac{y - y_0}{y_1 - y_0} = \frac{z - z_0}{z_1 - z_0}. \quad (4.13.3)$$

This line is parallel to the vector $(x_1 - x_0, y_1 - y_0, z_1 - z_0)$.

4.13.1 DISTANCES

1. The *distance* between two points in space is the *length of the line segment* joining them. The distance between the points (x_0, y_0, z_0) and (x_1, y_1, z_1) is

$$\sqrt{(x_1 - x_0)^2 + (y_1 - y_0)^2 + (z_1 - z_0)^2}. \quad (4.13.4)$$

2. The point $k\%$ of the way from $P_0 = (x_0, y_0, z_0)$ to $P_1 = (x_1, y_1, z_1)$ is

$$\left(\frac{kx_1 + (100 - k)x_0}{100}, \frac{ky_1 + (100 - k)y_0}{100}, \frac{kz_1 + (100 - k)z_0}{100} \right). \quad (4.13.5)$$

(The same formula also applies in oblique coordinates.) This point divides the segment P_0P_1 in the ratio $k : (100 - k)$. As a particular case, the *midpoint* of P_0P_1 is given by

$$\left(\frac{x_1 + x_0}{2}, \frac{y_1 + y_0}{2}, \frac{z_1 + z_0}{2} \right). \quad (4.13.6)$$

3. The *distance* between the point (x_0, y_0, z_0) and the line through (x_1, y_1, z_1) in direction (a, b, c) :

$$\sqrt{\frac{\begin{vmatrix} y_0 - y_1 & z_0 - z_1 \\ b & c \end{vmatrix}^2 + \begin{vmatrix} z_0 - z_1 & x_0 - x_1 \\ c & a \end{vmatrix}^2 + \begin{vmatrix} x_0 - x_1 & y_0 - y_1 \\ a & b \end{vmatrix}^2}{a^2 + b^2 + c^2}} \quad (4.13.7)$$

4. The *distance* between the line through (x_0, y_0, z_0) in direction (a_0, b_0, c_0) and the line through (x_1, y_1, z_1) in direction (a_1, b_1, c_1) :

$$\frac{\begin{vmatrix} x_1 - x_0 & y_1 - y_0 & z_1 - z_0 \\ a_0 & b_0 & c_0 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \end{vmatrix}}{\sqrt{\begin{vmatrix} b_0 & c_0 \\ b_1 & c_1 \end{vmatrix}^2 + \begin{vmatrix} c_0 & a_0 \\ c_1 & a_1 \end{vmatrix}^2 + \begin{vmatrix} a_0 & b_0 \\ a_1 & b_1 \end{vmatrix}^2}}. \quad (4.13.8)$$

4.13.2 ANGLES

Angle between lines with directions (x_0, y_0, z_0) and (x_1, y_1, z_1) :

$$\cos^{-1} \frac{a_0 a_1 + b_0 b_1 + c_0 c_1}{\sqrt{a_0^2 + b_0^2 + c_0^2} \sqrt{a_1^2 + b_1^2 + c_1^2}}. \quad (4.13.9)$$

In particular, the two lines are *parallel* when $a_0 : b_0 : c_0 = a_1 : b_1 : c_1$, and *perpendicular* when $a_0 a_1 + b_0 b_1 + c_0 c_1 = 0$.

Angle between lines with direction angles $\alpha_0, \beta_0, \gamma_0$ and $\alpha_1, \beta_1, \gamma_1$:

$$\cos^{-1}(\cos \alpha_0 \cos \alpha_1 + \cos \beta_0 \cos \beta_1 + \cos \gamma_0 \cos \gamma_1). \quad (4.13.10)$$

4.13.3 CONCURRENCE, COPLANARITY, PARALLELISM

Two lines, each specified by point and direction, are *coplanar* if, and only if, the determinant in the numerator of Equation (4.13.8) is zero. In this case they are *concurrent* (if the denominator is non-zero) or *parallel* (if the denominator is zero).

Three lines with directions (a_0, b_0, c_0) , (a_1, b_1, c_1) , and (a_2, b_2, c_2) are *parallel to a common plane* if and only if

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_0 & b_0 & c_0 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \end{vmatrix} = 0. \quad (4.13.11)$$

4.14 POLYHEDRA

For any polyhedron topologically equivalent to a sphere—in particular, for any *convex polyhedron*—the *Euler formula* holds:

$$v - e + f = 2, \quad (4.14.1)$$

where v is the number of vertices, e is the number of edges, and f is the number of faces.

Many common polyhedra are particular cases of cylinders (Section 4.15) or cones (Section 4.16). A cylinder with a polygonal base (the base is also called a *directrix*) is called a *prism*. A cone with a polygonal base is called a *pyramid*. A frustum of a cone with a polygonal base is called a *truncated pyramid*. Formulae (4.15.1), (4.16.1), and (4.16.2) give the volumes of a general prism, pyramid, and truncated pyramid.

A prism whose base is a parallelogram is a *parallelepiped*. The *volume* of a parallelepiped with one vertex at the origin and adjacent vertices at (x_1, y_1, z_1) , (x_2, y_2, z_2) , and (x_3, y_3, z_3) is given by

$$\text{volume} = \begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 \\ x_2 & y_2 & z_2 \\ x_3 & y_3 & z_3 \end{vmatrix}. \quad (4.14.2)$$

The *rectangular parallelepiped* is a particular case: all of its faces are rectangles. If the side lengths are a, b, c , the *volume* is abc , the *total surface area* is $2(ab + ac + bc)$, and each *diagonal* has length $\sqrt{a^2 + b^2 + c^2}$. When $a = b = c$ we get the *cube*. See Section 4.14.1. A pyramid whose base is a triangle is a *tetrahedron*. The *volume* of a tetrahedron with one vertex at the origin and the other vertices at (x_1, y_1, z_1) ,

(x_2, y_2, z_2) , and (x_3, y_3, z_3) is given by

$$\text{volume} = \frac{1}{6} \begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 \\ x_2 & y_2 & z_2 \\ x_3 & y_3 & z_3 \end{vmatrix}. \quad (4.14.3)$$

In a tetrahedron with vertices P_0, P_1, P_2, P_3 , let d_{ij} be the distance (edge length) from P_i to P_j . Form the determinants

$$\Delta = \begin{vmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & d_{01}^2 & d_{02}^2 & d_{03}^2 \\ 1 & d_{01}^2 & 0 & d_{12}^2 & d_{13}^2 \\ 1 & d_{02}^2 & d_{12}^2 & 0 & d_{23}^2 \\ 1 & d_{03}^2 & d_{13}^2 & d_{23}^2 & 0 \end{vmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \Gamma = \begin{vmatrix} 0 & d_{01}^2 & d_{02}^2 & d_{03}^2 \\ d_{01}^2 & 0 & d_{12}^2 & d_{13}^2 \\ d_{02}^2 & d_{12}^2 & 0 & d_{23}^2 \\ d_{03}^2 & d_{13}^2 & d_{23}^2 & 0 \end{vmatrix}. \quad (4.14.4)$$

Then the *volume* of the tetrahedron is $\sqrt{|\Delta|/288}$, and the radius of the *circumscribed sphere* is $\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{|\Gamma/2\Delta|}$.

Expanding the determinant we find that the volume V satisfies the formula:

$$\begin{aligned} 144V^2 = & -d_{01}^2 d_{12}^2 d_{02}^2 - d_{01}^2 d_{13}^2 d_{03}^2 - d_{12}^2 d_{13}^2 d_{23}^2 - d_{02}^2 d_{03}^2 d_{23}^2 \\ & + d_{01}^2 d_{02}^2 d_{13}^2 + d_{12}^2 d_{02}^2 d_{13}^2 + d_{01}^2 d_{12}^2 d_{03}^2 + d_{12}^2 d_{02}^2 d_{03}^2 \\ & + d_{12}^2 d_{13}^2 d_{03}^2 + d_{02}^2 d_{13}^2 d_{03}^2 + d_{01}^2 d_{12}^2 d_{23}^2 + d_{01}^2 d_{02}^2 d_{23}^2 \\ & + d_{01}^2 d_{13}^2 d_{23}^2 + d_{02}^2 d_{13}^2 d_{23}^2 + d_{01}^2 d_{03}^2 d_{23}^2 + d_{12}^2 d_{03}^2 d_{23}^2 \\ & - d_{02}^2 d_{02}^2 d_{13}^2 - d_{02}^2 d_{13}^2 d_{13}^2 \\ & - d_{12}^2 d_{12}^2 d_{03}^2 - d_{12}^2 d_{03}^2 d_{03}^2 \\ & - d_{01}^2 d_{01}^2 d_{23}^2 - d_{01}^2 d_{23}^2 d_{23}^2. \end{aligned} \quad (4.14.5)$$

(Mnemonic: Each of the first four negative terms corresponds to a closed path around a face; each positive term to an open path along three consecutive edges; each remaining negative term to a pair of opposite edges with weights 2 and 1. All such edge combinations are represented.)

For an arbitrary tetrahedron, let P be a vertex and let a, b, c be the lengths of the edges converging on P . If A, B, C are the angles between the same three edges, the volume of the tetrahedron is

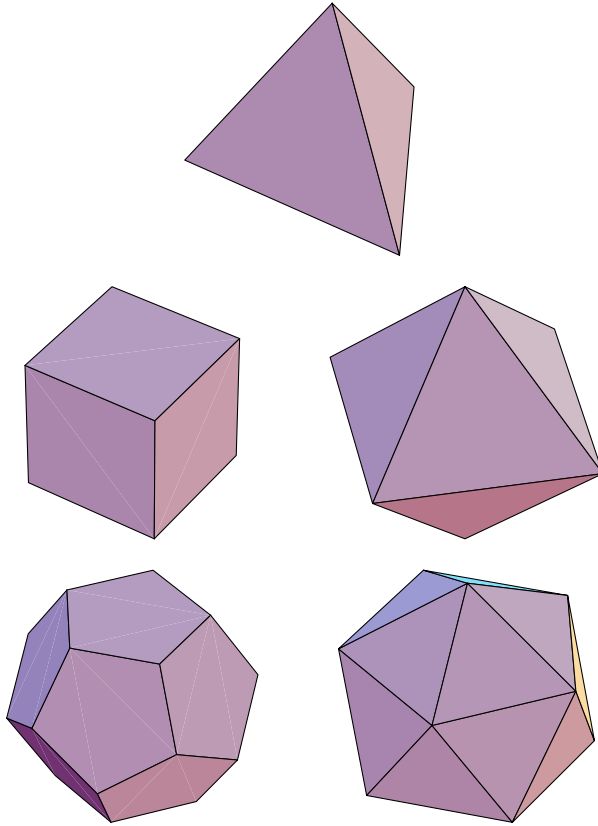
$$V = \frac{1}{6} abc \sqrt{1 - \cos^2 A - \cos^2 B - \cos^2 C + 2 \cos A \cos B \cos C}. \quad (4.14.6)$$

4.14.1 CONVEX REGULAR POLYHEDRA

Figure 4.35 shows the five regular polyhedra, or *Platonic solids*. In the following tables and formulae, a is the length of an edge, θ the dihedral angle at each edge, R the radius of the circumscribed sphere, r the radius of the inscribed sphere, V the volume, S the total surface area, v the total number of vertices, e the total number of edges, f the total number of faces, p the number of edges in a face (3 for equilateral triangles, 4 for squares, 5 for regular pentagons), and q the number of edges meeting at a vertex.

FIGURE 4.35

The Platonic solids. Top: the tetrahedron (self-dual). Middle: the cube and the octahedron (dual to one another). Bottom: the dodecahedron and the icosahedron (dual to one another).



$$\begin{aligned}
 \theta &= 2 \sin^{-1} \frac{\cos(180^\circ/q)}{\sin(180^\circ/p)}, & \frac{R}{r} &= \tan \frac{180^\circ}{p} \tan \frac{180^\circ}{q}, \\
 \frac{R}{a} &= \frac{\frac{1}{2} \sin(180^\circ/q)}{\sin(180^\circ/p) \cos \frac{1}{2}\theta}, & \frac{S}{a^2} &= \frac{fp}{4} \cot \frac{180^\circ}{p}, \text{ and} \\
 \frac{r}{a} &= \frac{1}{2} \cot \frac{180^\circ}{p} \tan \frac{\theta}{2}, & V &= \frac{1}{3}rS.
 \end{aligned}
 \tag{4.14.7}$$

| Name | v | e | f | p | q | $\sin \theta$ | θ |
|----------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|---------------|----------------------|
| Regular tetrahedron | 4 | 6 | 4 | 3 | 3 | $2\sqrt{2}/3$ | $70^\circ 31' 44''$ |
| Cube | 8 | 12 | 6 | 4 | 3 | 1 | 90° |
| Regular octahedron | 6 | 12 | 8 | 3 | 4 | $2\sqrt{2}/3$ | $109^\circ 28' 16''$ |
| Regular dodecahedron | 20 | 30 | 12 | 5 | 3 | $2/\sqrt{5}$ | $116^\circ 33' 54''$ |
| Regular icosahedron | 12 | 30 | 20 | 3 | 5 | $2/3$ | $138^\circ 11' 23''$ |

| Name | R/a | | r/a | |
|--------------|-------------------------------------|----------|--|----------|
| Tetrahedron | $\sqrt{6}/4$ | 0.612372 | $\sqrt{6}/12$ | 0.204124 |
| Cube | $\sqrt{3}/2$ | 0.866025 | $\frac{1}{2}$ | 0.5 |
| Octahedron | $\sqrt{2}/2$ | 0.707107 | $\sqrt{6}/6$ | 0.408248 |
| Dodecahedron | $\frac{1}{4}(\sqrt{15} + \sqrt{3})$ | 1.401259 | $\frac{1}{20}\sqrt{250 + 110\sqrt{5}}$ | 1.113516 |
| Icosahedron | $\frac{1}{4}\sqrt{10 + 2\sqrt{5}}$ | 0.951057 | $\frac{1}{12}\sqrt{42 + 18\sqrt{5}}$ | 0.755761 |

| Name | S/a^2 | | V/a^3 | |
|--------------|---------------------------|----------|-------------------------------|----------|
| Tetrahedron | $\sqrt{3}$ | 1.73205 | $\sqrt{2}/12$ | 0.117851 |
| Cube | 6 | 6. | 1 | 1. |
| Octahedron | $2\sqrt{3}$ | 3.46410 | $\sqrt{2}/3$ | 0.471405 |
| Dodecahedron | $3\sqrt{25 + 10\sqrt{5}}$ | 20.64573 | $\frac{1}{4}(15 + 7\sqrt{5})$ | 7.663119 |
| Icosahedron | $5\sqrt{3}$ | 8.66025 | $\frac{5}{12}(3 + \sqrt{5})$ | 2.181695 |

4.14.2 POLYHEDRA NETS

Nets for the five Platonic solids are shown: a) tetrahedron, b) octahedron, c) icosahedron, d) cube, and e) dodecahedron. Paper models can be made by making an enlarged photocopy of each, cutting them out along the exterior lines, folding on the interior lines, and using tape to join the edges.

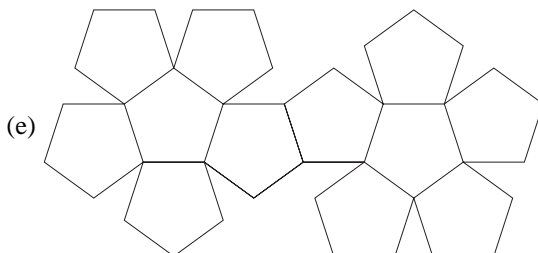
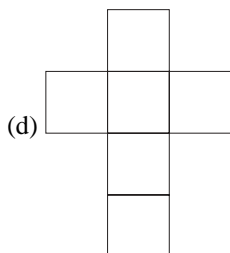
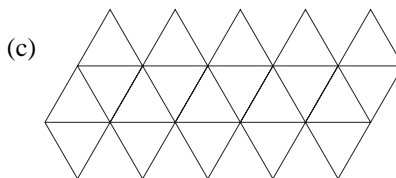
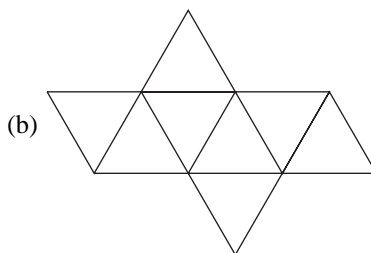
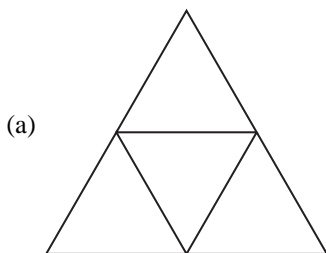
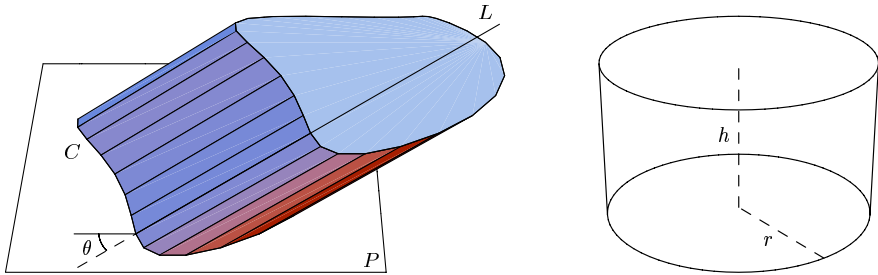


FIGURE 4.36

Left: an oblique cylinder with generator L and directrix C . Right: a right circular cylinder.



4.15 CYLINDERS

Given a line L and a curve C in a plane P , the *cylinder* with generator L and directrix C is the surface obtained by moving L parallel to itself, so that a point of L is always on C . If L is parallel to the z -axis, the surface's implicit equation does not involve the variable z . Conversely, any implicit equation that does not involve one of the variables (or that can be brought to that form by a change of coordinates) represents a cylinder.

If C is a simple closed curve, we also apply the word *cylinder* to the solid enclosed by the surface generated in this way (Figure 4.36, left). The *volume* contained between P and a plane P' parallel to P is

$$V = Ah = Al \sin \theta, \quad (4.15.1)$$

where A is the area in the plane P enclosed by C , h is the distance between P and P' (measured perpendicularly), l is the length of the segment of L contained between P and P' , and θ is the angle that L makes with P . When $\theta = 90^\circ$ we have a *right cylinder*, and $h = l$. For a right cylinder, the *lateral area* between P and P' is hs , where s is the length (circumference) of C .

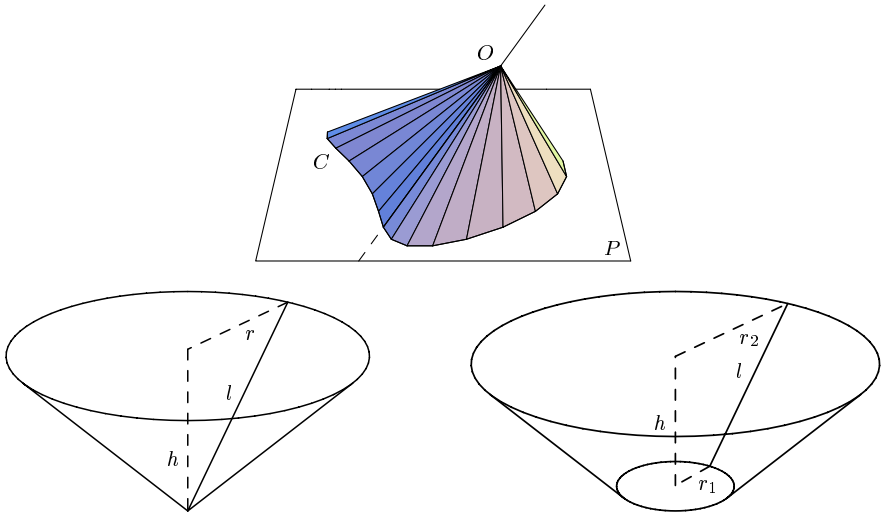
The most important particular case is the *right circular cylinder* (often simply called a *cylinder*). If r is the radius of the base and h is the altitude (Figure 4.36, right), the *lateral area* is $2\pi rh$, the *total area* is $2\pi r(r + h)$, and the *volume* is $\pi r^2 h$. The *implicit equation* of this surface can be written $x^2 + y^2 = r^2$; see also page 364.

4.16 CONES

Given a curve C in a plane P and a point O not in P , the *cone* with vertex O and directrix C is the surface obtained as the union of all rays that join O with points of C . If O is the origin and the surface is given implicitly by an algebraic equation, that equation is homogeneous (all terms have the same total degree in the variables). Conversely, any homogeneous implicit equation (or one that can be made homogeneous by a change of coordinates) represents a cone.

FIGURE 4.37

Top: a cone with vertex O and directrix C . Bottom left: a right circular cone. Bottom right: A frustum of the latter.



If C is a simple closed curve, we also apply the word *cone* to the solid enclosed by the surface generated in this way (Figure 4.37, top). The *volume* contained between P and the vertex O is

$$V = \frac{1}{3}Ah, \quad (4.16.1)$$

where A is the area in the plane P enclosed by C and h is the distance from O and P (measured perpendicularly).

The solid contained between P and a plane P' parallel to P (on the same side of the vertex) is called a *frustum*. Its volume is

$$V = \frac{1}{3}h(A + A' + \sqrt{AA'}), \quad (4.16.2)$$

where A and A' are the areas enclosed by the sections of the cone by P and P' (often called the *bases* of the frustum), and h is the distance between P and P' .

The most important particular case of a cone is the *right circular cone* (often simply called a *cone*). If r is the radius of the base, h is the altitude, and l is the length between the vertex and a point on the base circle (Figure 4.37, bottom left), the following relationships apply:

$$l = \sqrt{r^2 + h^2},$$

$$\text{Lateral area} = \pi rl = \pi r \sqrt{r^2 + h^2},$$

$$\text{Total area} = \pi r(l + r) = \pi r(r + \sqrt{r^2 + h^2}), \text{ and}$$

$$\text{Volume} = \frac{1}{3}\pi r^2 h.$$

The *implicit equation* of this surface can be written $x^2 + y^2 = z^2$; see also [Section 4.18](#).

For a *frustum* of a right circular cone (Figure 4.37, bottom right),

$$l = \sqrt{(r_1 - r_2)^2 + h^2},$$

$$\text{Lateral area} = \pi(r_1 + r_2)l,$$

$$\text{Total area} = \pi(r_1^2 + r_2^2 + (r_1 + r_2)l), \quad \text{and}$$

$$\text{Volume} = \frac{1}{3}\pi h(r_1^2 + r_2^2 + r_1 r_2).$$

4.17 SURFACES OF REVOLUTION: THE TORUS

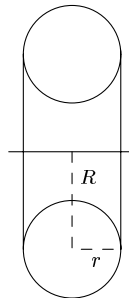
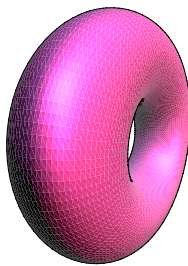
A *surface of revolution* is formed by the rotation of a planar curve C about an axis in the plane of the curve and not cutting the curve. The *Pappus–Guldinus theorem* says that:

1. The *area of the surface of revolution* on a curve C is equal to the product of the length of C and the length of the path traced by the centroid of C (which is 2π times the distance from this centroid to the axis of revolution).
2. The *volume bounded by the surface of revolution* on a simple closed curve C is equal to the product of the area bounded by C and the length of the path traced by the centroid of the area bounded by C .

When C is a circle, the surface obtained is a *circular torus* or *torus of revolution* (Figure 4.38). Let r be the radius of the revolving circle and let R be the distance from its center to the axis of rotation. The *area* of the torus is $4\pi^2 Rr$, and its *volume* is $2\pi^2 Rr^2$.

FIGURE 4.38

A torus of revolution.



4.18 QUADRICS

A surface defined by an algebraic equation of degree two is called a *quadric*. Spheres, circular cylinders, and circular cones are quadrics. By means of a rigid motion, any quadric can be transformed into a quadric having one of the following equations (where $a, b, c \neq 0$):

- | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. Real ellipsoid: | $x^2/a^2 + y^2/b^2 + z^2/c^2 = 1$ |
| 2. Imaginary ellipsoid: | $x^2/a^2 + y^2/b^2 + z^2/c^2 = -1$ |
| 3. Hyperboloid of one sheet: | $x^2/a^2 + y^2/b^2 - z^2/c^2 = 1$ |
| 4. Hyperboloid of two sheets: | $x^2/a^2 + y^2/b^2 - z^2/c^2 = -1$ |
| 5. Real quadric cone: | $x^2/a^2 + y^2/b^2 - z^2/c^2 = 0$ |
| 6. Imaginary quadric cone: | $x^2/a^2 + y^2/b^2 + z^2/c^2 = 0$ |
| 7. Elliptic paraboloid: | $x^2/a^2 + y^2/b^2 + 2z = 0$ |
| 8. Hyperbolic paraboloid: | $x^2/a^2 - y^2/b^2 + 2z = 0$ |
| 9. Real elliptic cylinder: | $x^2/a^2 + y^2/b^2 = 1$ |
| 10. Imaginary elliptic cylinder: | $x^2/a^2 + y^2/b^2 = -1$ |
| 11. Hyperbolic cylinder: | $x^2/a^2 - y^2/b^2 = 1$ |
| 12. Real intersecting planes: | $x^2/a^2 - y^2/b^2 = 0$ |
| 13. Imaginary intersecting planes: | $x^2/a^2 + y^2/b^2 = 0$ |
| 14. Parabolic cylinder: | $x^2 + 2y = 0$ |
| 15. Real parallel planes: | $x^2 = 1$ |
| 16. Imaginary parallel planes: | $x^2 = -1$ |
| 17. Coincident planes: | $x^2 = 0$ |

Surfaces with Equations 9–17 are cylinders over the plane curves of the same equation (Section 4.15). Equations 2, 6, 10, and 16 have no real solutions, so that they do not describe surfaces in real three-dimensional space. A surface with Equation 5 can be regarded as a cone (Section 4.16) over a conic C (any ellipse, parabola, or hyperbola can be taken as the directrix; there is a two-parameter family of essentially distinct cones over it, determined by the position of the vertex with respect to C). The surfaces with Equations 1, 3, 4, 7, and 8 are shown in Figure 4.39.

The surfaces with Equations 1–6 are *central quadrics*; in the form given, the center is at the origin. The quantities a, b, c are the *semi-axes*.

The *volume of the ellipsoid* with semi-axes a, b, c is $\frac{4}{3}\pi abc$. When two of the semi-axes are the same, we can also write the *area of the ellipsoid* in closed-form. Suppose $b = c$, so the ellipsoid $x^2/a^2 + (y^2 + z^2)/b^2 = 1$ is the surface of revolution obtained by rotating the ellipse $x^2/a^2 + y^2/b^2 = 1$ around the x -axis. Its area is

$$2\pi b^2 + \frac{2\pi a^2 b}{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}} \sin^{-1} \frac{\sqrt{a^2 - b^2}}{a} = 2\pi b^2 + \frac{\pi a^2 b}{\sqrt{b^2 - a^2}} \log \frac{b + \sqrt{b^2 - a^2}}{b - \sqrt{b^2 - a^2}}. \quad (4.18.1)$$

The two quantities are equal, but only one avoids complex numbers, depending on whether $a > b$ or $a < b$. When $a > b$, we have a *prolate spheroid*, that is, an ellipse rotated around its major axis; when $a < b$ we have an *oblate spheroid*, which is an ellipse rotated around its minor axis.

Given a general quadratic equation in three variables,

$$ax^2 + by^2 + cz^2 + 2fyz + 2gzx + 2hxy + 2px + 2qy + 2rz + d = 0, \quad (4.18.2)$$

one can determine the type of conic by consulting the table:

| ρ_3 | ρ_4 | Δ | k signs | K signs | Type of quadric |
|----------|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|-------------------------------|
| 3 | 4 | < 0 | | | Real ellipsoid |
| 3 | 4 | > 0 | Same | | Imaginary ellipsoid |
| 3 | 4 | > 0 | Opp | | Hyperboloid of one sheet |
| 3 | 4 | < 0 | Opp | | Hyperboloid of two sheets |
| 3 | 3 | | Opp | | Real quadric cone |
| 3 | 3 | | Same | | Imaginary quadric cone |
| 2 | 4 | < 0 | Same | | Elliptic paraboloid |
| 2 | 4 | > 0 | Opp | | Hyperbolic paraboloid |
| 2 | 3 | | Same | Opp | Real elliptic cylinder |
| 2 | 3 | | Same | Same | Imaginary elliptic cylinder |
| 2 | 3 | | Opp | | Hyperbolic cylinder |
| 2 | 2 | | Opp | | Real intersecting planes |
| 2 | 2 | | Same | | Imaginary intersecting planes |
| 1 | 3 | | | | Parabolic cylinder |
| 1 | 2 | | | Opp | Real parallel planes |
| 1 | 2 | | | Same | Imaginary parallel planes |
| 1 | 1 | | | | Coincident planes |

The columns have the following meaning. Let

$$e = \begin{bmatrix} a & h & g \\ h & b & f \\ g & f & c \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad E = \begin{bmatrix} a & h & g & p \\ h & b & f & q \\ g & f & c & r \\ p & q & r & d \end{bmatrix}. \quad (4.18.3)$$

Let ρ_3 and ρ_4 be the ranks of e and E , and let Δ be the determinant of E . The column “ k signs” refers to the non-zero eigenvalues of e , that is, the roots of

$$\begin{vmatrix} a-x & h & g \\ h & b-x & f \\ g & f & c-x \end{vmatrix} = 0; \quad (4.18.4)$$

if all non-zero eigenvalues have the same sign, choose “same”, otherwise “opposite”. Similarly, “ K signs” refers to the sign of the non-zero eigenvalues of E .

4.18.1 SPHERES

The set of points in space whose distance to a fixed point (the *center*) is a fixed number (the *radius*) is a *sphere*. A circle of radius r and center (x_0, y_0, z_0) is defined by the equation

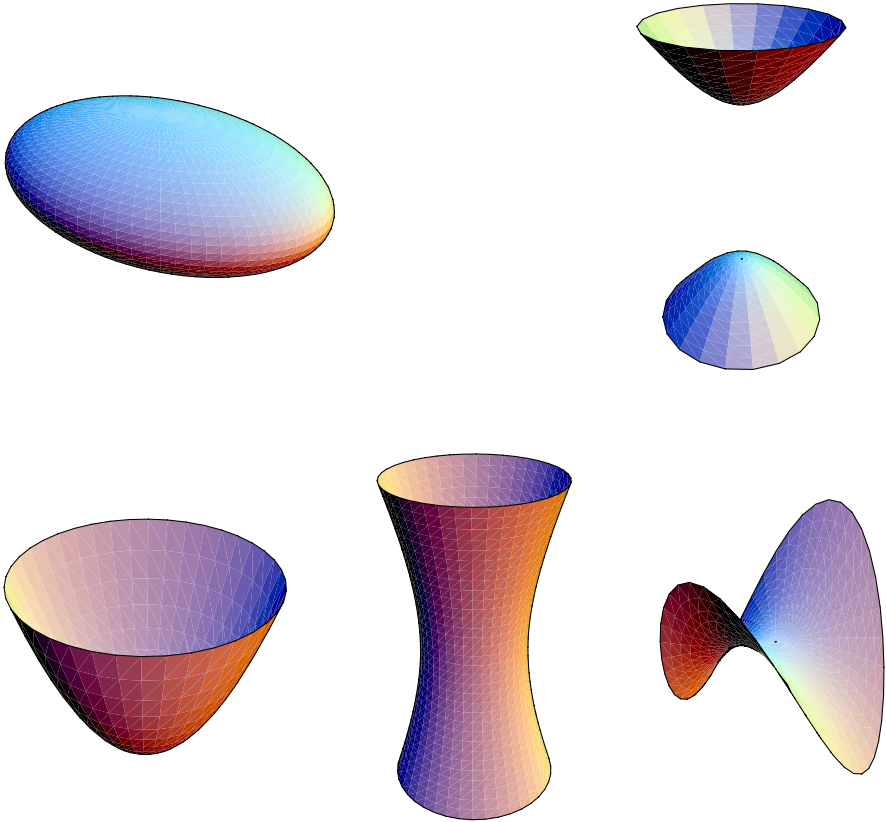
$$(x - x_0)^2 + (y - y_0)^2 + (z - z_0)^2 = r^2, \quad (4.18.5)$$

or

$$x^2 + y^2 + z^2 - 2xx_0 - 2yy_0 - 2zz_0 + x_0^2 + y_0^2 + z_0^2 - r^2 = 0. \quad (4.18.6)$$

FIGURE 4.39

The ve non-degenerate real quadrics. Top left: ellipsoid. Top right: hyperboloid of two sheets (one facing up and one facing down). Bottom left: elliptic paraboloid. Bottom middle: hyperboloid of one sheet. Bottom right: hyperbolic paraboloid.



Conversely, an equation of the form

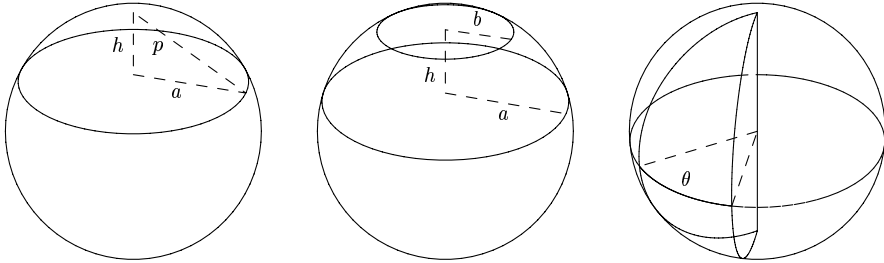
$$x^2 + y^2 + z^2 + 2dx + 2ey + 2fz + g = 0 \quad (4.18.7)$$

defines a sphere if $d^2 + e^2 + f^2 > g$; the center is $(-d, -e, -f)$ and the radius is $\sqrt{d^2 + e^2 + f^2 - g}$.

1. Four points not in the same plane determine a unique sphere. If the points have coordinates (x_1, y_1, z_1) , (x_2, y_2, z_2) , (x_3, y_3, z_3) , and (x_4, y_4, z_4) , the

FIGURE 4.40

Left: a spherical cap. Middle: a spherical zone (of two bases). Right: a spherical segment.



equation of the sphere is

$$\begin{vmatrix} x^2 + y^2 + z^2 & x & y & z & 1 \\ x_1^2 + y_1^2 + z_1^2 & x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ x_2^2 + y_2^2 + z_2^2 & x_2 & y_2 & z_2 & 1 \\ x_3^2 + y_3^2 + z_3^2 & x_3 & y_3 & z_3 & 1 \\ x_4^2 + y_4^2 + z_4^2 & x_4 & y_4 & z_4 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 0. \quad (4.18.8)$$

- Given two points $P_1 = (x_1, y_1, z_1)$ and $P_2 = (x_2, y_2, z_2)$, there is a unique sphere whose diameter is P_1P_2 ; its equation is

$$(x - x_1)(x - x_2) + (y - y_1)(y - y_2) + (z - z_1)(z - z_2) = 0. \quad (4.18.9)$$

- The *area* of a sphere of radius r is $4\pi r^2$, and the *volume* is $\frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$.
- The *area of a spherical polygon* (that is, of a polygon on the sphere whose sides are arcs of great circles) is

$$S = \left(\sum_{i=1}^n \theta_i - (n - 2)\pi \right) r^2, \quad (4.18.10)$$

where r is the radius of the sphere, n is the number of vertices, and θ_i are the internal angles of the polygons in radians. In particular, the sum of the angles of a spherical triangle is always greater than $\pi = 180^\circ$, and the excess is proportional to the area.

4.18.1.1 Spherical cap

Let the radius be r (Figure 4.40, left). The *area* of the curved region is $2\pi rh = \pi p^2$. The *volume* of the cap is $\frac{1}{3}\pi h^2(3r - h) = \frac{1}{6}\pi h(3a^2 + h^2)$.

4.18.1.2 Spherical zone (of two bases)

Let the radius be r (Figure 4.40, middle). The *area* of the curved region (called a *spherical zone*) is $2\pi rh$. The *volume* of the zone is $\frac{1}{6}\pi h(3a^2 + 3b^2 + h^2)$.

4.18.1.3 Spherical segment and lune

Let the radius be r (Figure 4.40, right). The *area* of the curved region (called a *spherical segment* or *lune*) is $2r^2\theta$, the angle being measured in radians. The *volume* of the segment is $\frac{2}{3}r^3\theta$.

4.18.1.4 Volume and area of spheres

If the volume of an n -dimensional sphere of radius r is $V_n(r)$ and its surface area is $S_n(r)$, then

$$V_n(r) = \frac{2\pi r^2}{n} V_{n-2}(r) = \frac{2\pi^{n/2} r^n}{n\Gamma(\frac{n}{2})} = \frac{\pi^{n/2} r^n}{(\frac{n}{2})!}, \quad (4.18.11)$$
$$S_n(r) = \frac{n}{r} V_n(r) = \frac{d}{dr} [V_n(r)].$$

Hence, the area of a circle is $V_2 = \pi r^2 \approx 3.1416r^2$, the volume of a 3-dimensional sphere is $V_3 = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3 \approx 4.1888r^3$, the volume of a 4-dimensional sphere is $V_4 = \frac{1}{2}\pi^2 r^4 \approx 4.9348r^4$, the circumference of a circle is $S_2 = 2\pi r$, and the surface area of a sphere is $S_3 = 4\pi r^2$.

For large values of n ,

$$V_n(r) \approx \frac{n^{-(n+1)/2}}{\sqrt{\pi}} (2\pi e)^{n/2} r^n. \quad (4.18.12)$$

4.19 SPHERICAL GEOMETRY & TRIGONOMETRY

The angles in a spherical triangle do not have to add up to 180 degrees. It is possible for a spherical triangle to have 3 right angles.

4.19.1 RIGHT SPHERICAL TRIANGLES

Let a , b , and c be the sides of a right spherical triangle with opposite angles A , B , and C , respectively, where each side is measured by the angle subtended at the center of the sphere. Assume that $C = \pi/2 = 90^\circ$ (see Figure 4.41, left). Then,

$$\begin{aligned} \sin a &= \tan b \cot B = \sin A \sin c, & \cos A &= \tan b \cot c = \cos a \sin B, \\ \sin b &= \tan a \cot A = \sin B \sin c, & \cos B &= \tan a \cot c = \cos b \sin A, \\ \cos c &= \cos A \cot B = \cos a \cos b. \end{aligned}$$

4.19.1.1 Napier's rules of circular parts

Arrange the five quantities a , b , $\text{co-}A$ (this is the complement of A), $\text{co-}c$, $\text{co-}B$ of a right spherical triangle with right angle at C , in cyclic order as pictured in

FIGURE 4.41

Right spherical triangle (left) and diagram for Napier's rule (right).

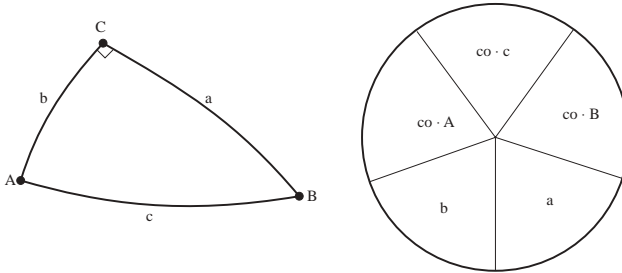


Figure 4.41, right. If any one of these quantities is designated a *middle part*, then two of the other parts are *adjacent* to it, and the remaining two parts are *opposite* to it. The formulae above for a right spherical triangle may be recalled by the following two rules:

1. The sine of any middle part is equal to the product of the *tangents* of the two *adjacent* parts.
2. The sine of any middle part is equal to the product of the *cosines* of the two *opposite* parts.

4.19.1.2 Rules for determining quadrant

1. A leg and the angle opposite to it are always of the same quadrant.
2. If the hypotenuse is less than 90° , the legs are of the same quadrant.
3. If the hypotenuse is greater than 90° , the legs are of unlike quadrants.

4.19.2 OBLIQUE SPHERICAL TRIANGLES

In the following:

- a, b, c represent the sides of any spherical triangle.
- A, B, C represent the corresponding opposite angles.
- a', b', c', A', B', C' are the corresponding parts of the polar triangle.
- $s = (a + b + c)/2$.
- $S = (A + B + C)/2$.
- Δ is the area of spherical triangle.
- E is the spherical excess of the triangle.
- R is the radius of the sphere upon which the triangle lies.

$$0^\circ < a + b + c < 360^\circ, \quad 180^\circ < A + B + C < 540^\circ,$$

$$E = A + B + C - 180^\circ, \quad \Delta = \pi R^2 E / 180.$$

$$\tan \frac{1}{4}E = \sqrt{\tan \frac{s}{2} \tan \frac{1}{2}(s-a) \tan \frac{1}{2}(s-b) \tan \frac{1}{2}(s-c)}.$$

$$A = 180^\circ - a', \quad B = 180^\circ - b', \quad C = 180^\circ - c',$$

$$a = 180^\circ - A', \quad b = 180^\circ - B', \quad c = 180^\circ - C'.$$

4.19.2.1 Spherical law of sines

$$\frac{\sin a}{\sin A} = \frac{\sin b}{\sin B} = \frac{\sin c}{\sin C}.$$

4.19.2.2 Spherical law of cosines for sides

$$\cos a = \cos b \cos c + \sin b \sin c \cos A,$$

$$\cos b = \cos c \cos a + \sin c \sin a \cos B,$$

$$\cos c = \cos a \cos b + \sin a \sin b \cos C.$$

4.19.2.3 Spherical law of cosines for angles

$$\cos A = -\cos B \cos C + \sin B \sin C \cos a,$$

$$\cos B = -\cos C \cos A + \sin C \sin A \cos b,$$

$$\cos C = -\cos A \cos B + \sin A \sin B \cos c.$$

4.19.2.4 Spherical law of tangents

$$\frac{\tan \frac{1}{2}(B-C)}{\tan \frac{1}{2}(B+C)} = \frac{\tan \frac{1}{2}(b-c)}{\tan \frac{1}{2}(b+c)},$$

$$\frac{\tan \frac{1}{2}(C-A)}{\tan \frac{1}{2}(C+A)} = \frac{\tan \frac{1}{2}(c-a)}{\tan \frac{1}{2}(c+a)},$$

$$\frac{\tan \frac{1}{2}(A-B)}{\tan \frac{1}{2}(A+B)} = \frac{\tan \frac{1}{2}(a-b)}{\tan \frac{1}{2}(a+b)}.$$

4.19.2.5 Spherical half angle formulae

Define $k^2 = (\tan r)^2 = \frac{\sin(s-a) \sin(s-b) \sin(s-c)}{\sin s}$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}\tan\left(\frac{A}{2}\right) &= \frac{k}{\sin(s-a)}, \\ \tan\left(\frac{B}{2}\right) &= \frac{k}{\sin(s-b)}, \\ \tan\left(\frac{C}{2}\right) &= \frac{k}{\sin(s-c)}.\end{aligned}\tag{4.19.1}$$

4.19.2.6 Spherical half side formulae

Define $K^2 = (\tan R)^2 = \frac{-\cos S}{\cos(S-A)\cos(S-B)\cos(S-C)}$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}\tan(a/2) &= K \cos(S-A), \\ \tan(b/2) &= K \cos(S-B), \\ \tan(c/2) &= K \cos(S-C).\end{aligned}\tag{4.19.2}$$

4.19.2.7 Gauss's formulae

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\sin\frac{1}{2}(a-b)}{\sin\frac{1}{2}c} &= \frac{\sin\frac{1}{2}(A-B)}{\cos\frac{1}{2}C}, & \frac{\cos\frac{1}{2}(a-b)}{\cos\frac{1}{2}c} &= \frac{\sin\frac{1}{2}(A+B)}{\cos\frac{1}{2}C}, \\ \frac{\sin\frac{1}{2}(a+b)}{\sin\frac{1}{2}c} &= \frac{\cos\frac{1}{2}(A-B)}{\sin\frac{1}{2}C}, & \frac{\cos\frac{1}{2}(a+b)}{\cos\frac{1}{2}c} &= \frac{\cos\frac{1}{2}(A+B)}{\sin\frac{1}{2}C}.\end{aligned}$$

4.19.2.8 Napier's analogs

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\sin\frac{1}{2}(A-B)}{\sin\frac{1}{2}(A+B)} &= \frac{\tan\frac{1}{2}(a-b)}{\tan\frac{1}{2}c}, & \frac{\sin\frac{1}{2}(a-b)}{\sin\frac{1}{2}(a+b)} &= \frac{\tan\frac{1}{2}(A-B)}{\cot\frac{1}{2}C}, \\ \frac{\cos\frac{1}{2}(A-B)}{\cos\frac{1}{2}(A+B)} &= \frac{\tan\frac{1}{2}(a+b)}{\tan\frac{1}{2}c}, & \frac{\cos\frac{1}{2}(a-b)}{\cos\frac{1}{2}(a+b)} &= \frac{\tan\frac{1}{2}(A+B)}{\cot\frac{1}{2}C}.\end{aligned}$$

4.19.2.9 Rules for determining quadrant

1. If $A > B > C$, then $a > b > c$.
2. A side (angle) which differs by more than 90° from another side (angle) is in the same quadrant as its opposite angle (side).
3. Half the sum of any two sides and half the sum of the opposite angles are in the same quadrant.

4.19.2.10 Summary of solution of oblique spherical triangles

| Given | Solution | Check |
|---------------------------------|--|------------------|
| Three sides | Half-angle formulae | Law of sines |
| Three angles | Half-side formulae | Law of sines |
| Two sides and included angle | Napier's analogies (to find sum and difference of unknown angles); then law of sines (to find remaining side). | Gauss's formulae |
| Two angles and included side | Napier's analogies (to find sum and difference of unknown sides); then law of sines (to find remaining angle). | Gauss's formulae |
| Two sides and an opposite angle | Law of sines (to find an angle); then Napier's analogies (to find remaining angle and side). Note the number of solutions. | Gauss's formulae |
| Two angles and an opposite side | Law of sines (to find a side); then Napier's analogies (to find remaining side and angle). Note the number of solutions. | Gauss's formulae |

4.19.2.11 Haversine formulae

$$\begin{aligned} \text{hav } a &= \frac{1 - \cos a}{2} = \sin^2 \frac{a}{2} \\ &= \text{hav}(b - c) + \sin b \sin c \text{hav } A. \\ \text{hav } A &= \frac{\sin(s - b) \sin(s - c)}{\sin b \sin c}, \\ &= \frac{\text{hav } a - \text{hav}(b - c)}{\sin b \sin c}, \\ &= \text{hav}[180^\circ - (B + C)] + \sin B \sin C \text{hav } a. \end{aligned}$$

4.19.2.12 Finding the distance between two points on the earth

To find the distance between two points on the surface of a spherical earth, let point P_1 have a (latitude, longitude) of (ϕ_1, θ_1) and point P_2 have a (latitude, longitude) of (ϕ_2, θ_2) . Two different computational methods are as follows:

1. Let A be the North pole and let B and C be the points P_1 and P_2 . Then the spherical law of cosines for sides gives the central angle, a , subtended by the desired distance:

$$\cos(a) = \cos(b) \cos(c) + \sin(b) \sin(c) \cos(A)$$

where the angle A is the difference in longitudes, and b and c are the angles of the points from the pole (i.e., $90^\circ - \text{latitude}$). Scale by R_\oplus (the radius of the earth) to get the desired distance.

2. In (x, y, z) space (with $+z$ being the North pole) points P_1 and P_2 are represented as vectors from the center of the earth in spherical coordinates:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{v}_1 &= [R_\oplus \cos(\phi_1) \cos(\theta_1) \quad R_\oplus \cos(\phi_1) \sin(\theta_1) \quad R_\oplus \sin(\phi_1)] , \\ \mathbf{v}_2 &= [R_\oplus \cos(\phi_2) \cos(\theta_2) \quad R_\oplus \cos(\phi_2) \sin(\theta_2) \quad R_\oplus \sin(\phi_2)] . \end{aligned} \quad (4.19.3)$$

The angle between these vectors, α , is given by

$$\begin{aligned}\cos \alpha &= \frac{\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{v}_2}{\|\mathbf{v}_1\| \|\mathbf{v}_2\|} = \frac{\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{v}_2}{R_{\oplus}^2} = \cos(\phi_1) \cos(\phi_2) \cos(\theta_1 - \theta_2) + \sin(\phi_1) \sin(\phi_2) \\ &= 2 \tan^{-1} \sqrt{\frac{b}{1-b}}\end{aligned}$$

where $b = \sin^2\left(\frac{\phi_1 - \phi_2}{2}\right) + \cos(\phi_1) \cos(\phi_2) \sin^2\left(\frac{\theta_1 - \theta_2}{2}\right)$. (The formula using b is more accurate numerically when P_1 and P_2 are close.) The great circle distance between P_1 and P_2 is then $R_{\oplus} \alpha$.

EXAMPLE The angle between $P_{\text{New York}}$ with $(\phi_1 = 40.78^\circ, \theta_1 = 73.97^\circ)$ and P_{Beijing} with $(\phi_2 = 39.93^\circ, \theta_2 = 243.58^\circ)$ is $\alpha = 98.8^\circ$. Using $R_{\oplus} = 6367$ the great circle distance between New York and Beijing is about 11,000 km.

4.20 DIFFERENTIAL GEOMETRY

4.20.1 CURVES

4.20.1.1 Definitions

1. A *regular parametric representation of class C^k* , $k \geq 1$, is a vector valued function $\mathbf{f} : I \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^3$, where $I \subset \mathbb{R}$ is an interval that satisfies (i) \mathbf{f} is of class C^k (i.e., has continuous k^{th} order derivatives), and (ii) $\mathbf{f}'(t) \neq 0$, for all $t \in I$. In terms of a standard basis of \mathbb{R}^3 , we write $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{f}(t) = (f_1(t), f_2(t), f_3(t))$, where the real valued functions $f_i, i = 1, 2, 3$ are the *component functions* of \mathbf{f} .
2. An *allowable change of parameter of class C^k* is any C^k function $\phi : J \rightarrow I$, where J is an interval and $\phi(J) \subset I$, that satisfies $\phi'(\tau) \neq 0$, for all $\tau \in J$.
3. A C^k regular parametric representation \mathbf{f} is *equivalent* to a C^k regular parametric representation \mathbf{g} if and only if an allowable change of parameter ϕ exists so that $\phi(I_g) = I_f$, and $\mathbf{g}(\tau) = \mathbf{f}(\phi(\tau))$, for all $\tau \in I_g$.
4. A *regular curve C of class C^k* is an equivalence class of C^k regular parametric representation under the equivalence relation on the set of regular parametric representations defined above.
5. The *arc length* of any regular curve C defined by the regular parametric representation \mathbf{f} , with $I_f = [a, b]$, is defined by

$$L = \int_a^b \|\mathbf{f}'(u)\| \, du. \quad (4.20.1)$$

An *arc length parameter* along C is defined by

$$s = \alpha(t) = \pm \int_c^t \|\mathbf{f}'(u)\| \, du. \quad (4.20.2)$$

The choice of sign is arbitrary and c is any number in I_f .

6. A *natural representation of class C^k* of the regular curve defined by the regular parametric representation \mathbf{f} is defined by $\mathbf{g}(s) = \mathbf{f}(\alpha^{-1}(s))$, for all $s \in [0, L]$.
7. A *property* of a regular curve C is any property of a regular parametric representation representing C which is invariant under any allowable change of parameter.
8. Let \mathbf{g} be a natural representation of a regular curve C . The following quantities may be defined at each point $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{g}(s)$ of C :

| | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| <i>Binormal line</i> | $\mathbf{y} = \lambda \mathbf{b}(s) + \mathbf{x}$ |
| <i>Curvature</i> | $\kappa(s) = \mathbf{n}(s) \cdot \dot{\mathbf{k}}(s)$ |
| <i>Curvature vector</i> | $\mathbf{k}(s) = \dot{\mathbf{t}}(s)$ |
| <i>Moving trihedron</i> | $\{\mathbf{t}(s), \mathbf{n}(s), \mathbf{b}(s)\}$ |
| <i>Normal plane</i> | $(\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathbf{t}(s) = 0$ |
| <i>Osculating plane</i> | $(\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathbf{b}(s) = 0$ |
| <i>Osculating sphere</i> | $(\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{c}) \cdot (\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{c}) = r^2$ where $\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{x} + \rho(s)\mathbf{n}(s) - (\dot{\kappa}(s)/(\kappa^2(s)\tau(s)))\mathbf{b}(s)$ and $r^2 = \rho^2(s) + \kappa^2(s)/(\kappa^4(s)\tau^2(s))$ |
| <i>Principal normal line</i> | $\mathbf{y} = \lambda \mathbf{n}(s) + \mathbf{x}$ |
| <i>Principal normal unit vector</i> | $\mathbf{n}(s) = \pm \mathbf{k}(s)/ \mathbf{k}(s) $, for $\mathbf{k}(s) \neq 0$ defined to be continuous along C |
| <i>Radius of curvature</i> | $\rho(s) = 1/ \kappa(s) $, when $\kappa(s) \neq 0$ |
| <i>Rectifying plane</i> | $(\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathbf{n}(s) = 0$ |
| <i>Tangent line</i> | $\mathbf{y} = \lambda \mathbf{t}(s) + \mathbf{x}$ |
| <i>Torsion</i> | $\tau(s) = -\mathbf{n}(s) \cdot \dot{\mathbf{b}}(s)$ |
| <i>Unit binormal vector</i> | $\mathbf{b}(s) = \mathbf{t}(s) \times \mathbf{n}(s)$ |
| <i>Unit tangent vector</i> | $\mathbf{t}(s) = \dot{\mathbf{g}}(s)$ with $\left(\dot{\mathbf{g}}(s) = \frac{d\mathbf{g}}{ds}\right)$ |

4.20.1.2 Results

The arc length L and the arc length parameter s of any regular parametric representation \mathbf{f} are *invariant* under any allowable change of parameter. Thus, L is a property of the regular curve C defined by \mathbf{f} .

The arc length parameter satisfies $\frac{ds}{dt} = \alpha'(t) = \pm |\mathbf{f}'(t)|$, which implies that $|\mathbf{f}'(s)| = 1$, if and only if t is an arc length parameter. Thus, arc length parameters are uniquely determined up to the transformation $s \mapsto \tilde{s} = \pm s + s_0$, where s_0 is any constant.

The curvature, torsion, tangent line, normal plane, principal normal line, rectifying plane, binormal line, and osculating plane are properties of the regular curve C defined by any regular parametric representation \mathbf{f} .

If $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{f}(t)$ is any regular representation of a regular curve C , the following

results hold at point $\mathbf{f}(t)$ of C :

$$|\kappa| = \frac{|\mathbf{x}'' \times \mathbf{x}'|}{|\mathbf{x}'|^3}, \quad \tau = \frac{\mathbf{x}' \cdot (\mathbf{x}'' \times \mathbf{x}''')}{|\mathbf{x}' \times \mathbf{x}''|^2}. \quad (4.20.3)$$

The vectors of the moving trihedron satisfy the *Serret–Frenet equations*

$$\dot{\mathbf{t}} = \kappa \mathbf{n}, \quad \dot{\mathbf{n}} = -\kappa \mathbf{t} + \tau \mathbf{b}, \quad \dot{\mathbf{b}} = -\tau \mathbf{n}. \quad (4.20.4)$$

For any plane curve represented parametrically by $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{f}(t) = (t, f(t), 0)$,

$$|\kappa| = \frac{\left| \frac{d^2x}{dt^2} \right|}{\left(1 + \left(\frac{dx}{dt} \right)^2 \right)^{3/2}}. \quad (4.20.5)$$

Expressions for the curvature vector and curvature of a *plane curve* corresponding to different representations are given in the following table:

| Representation | Curvature vector \mathbf{k} | Curvature, $ \kappa = \rho^{-1}$ |
|---------------------------|--|---|
| $x = f(t),$ $y = g(t)$ | $\frac{(\dot{x}\ddot{y} - \dot{y}\ddot{x})}{(\dot{x}^2 + \dot{y}^2)^2}(-\dot{y}, \dot{x})$ | $\frac{ \dot{x}\ddot{y} - \dot{y}\ddot{x} }{(\dot{x}^2 + \dot{y}^2)^{3/2}}$ |
| $y = f(x)$ | $\frac{y''}{(1 + y'^2)^2}(-y', 1)$ | $\frac{ y'' }{(1 + y'^2)^{3/2}}$ |
| $r = f(\theta)$ | $\frac{(r^2 + 2r'^2 - rr'')}{(r^2 + r'^2)^2} \begin{pmatrix} -\dot{r} \sin \theta - r \cos \theta, \\ \dot{r} \cos \theta - r \sin \theta \end{pmatrix}$ | $\frac{r^2 + 2r'^2 - rr''}{(r^2 + r'^2)^{3/2}}$ |

The equation of the *osculating circle* of a plane curve is given by

$$(\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{c}) \cdot (\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{c}) = \rho^2, \quad (4.20.6)$$

where $\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{x} + \rho^2 \mathbf{k}$ is the *center of curvature*.

THEOREM 4.20.1 (Fundamental existence and uniqueness theorem)

Let $\kappa(s)$ and $\tau(s)$ be any continuous functions defined for all $s \in [a, b]$. Then there exists, up to a congruence, a unique space curve C for which κ is the curvature function, τ is the torsion function, and s an arc length parameter along C .

4.20.1.3 Example

A regular parametric representation of the *circular helix* is given by $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{f}(t) = (a \cos t, a \sin t, bt)$, for all $t \in \mathbb{R}$, where $a > 0$ and $b \neq 0$ are constant. By successive differentiation,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{x}' &= (-a \sin t, a \cos t, b), \\ \mathbf{x}'' &= (-a \cos t, -a \sin t, 0), \\ \mathbf{x}''' &= (a \sin t, -a \cos t, 0), \end{aligned} \quad (4.20.7)$$

so that $\frac{ds}{dt} = |\mathbf{x}'| = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$. Hence,

1. *Arc length parameter*: $s = \alpha(t) = t(a^2 + b^2)^{\frac{1}{2}}$
2. *Curvature vector*: $\mathbf{k} = \frac{d\mathbf{t}}{ds} = \frac{d\mathbf{t}}{ds} \frac{dt}{dt} = (a^2 + b^2)^{-1}(-a \cos t, -a \sin t, 0)$

-
3. *Curvature*: $\kappa = |\mathbf{k}| = a(a^2 + b^2)^{-1}$
 4. *Principal normal unit vector*: $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{k}/|\mathbf{k}| = (-\cos t, -\sin t, 0)$
 5. *Unit tangent vector*: $\mathbf{t} = \frac{\mathbf{x}'}{|\mathbf{x}'|} = (a^2 + b^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}}(-a \sin t, a \cos t, b)$
 6. *Unit binormal vector*:

$$\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{t} \times \mathbf{n} = (a^2 + b^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}}(b \sin t, b \cos t, a)$$

$$\dot{\mathbf{b}} = \frac{dt}{ds} \frac{d\mathbf{b}}{dt} = b(a^2 + b^2)^{-1}(\cos t, \sin t, 0)$$

7. *Torsion*: $\tau = -\mathbf{n} \cdot \dot{\mathbf{b}} = b(a^2 + b^2)^{-1}$

The values of $|\kappa|$ and τ can be verified using the formulae in (4.20.3). The sign of (the invariant) τ determines whether the helix is right handed, $\tau > 0$, or left handed, $\tau < 0$.

4.20.2 SURFACES

4.20.2.1 Definitions

1. A *coordinate patch of class C^k* , $k \geq 1$ on a surface $S \subset \mathbb{R}^3$ is a vector valued function $\mathbf{f} : U \rightarrow S$, where $U \subset \mathbb{R}^2$ is an open set, that satisfies (i) \mathbf{f} is class C^k on U , (ii) $\frac{\partial \mathbf{f}}{\partial u}(u, v) \times \frac{\partial \mathbf{f}}{\partial v}(u, v) \neq 0$, for all $(u, v) \in U$, and (iii) \mathbf{f} is one-to-one and bi-continuous on U .
2. In terms of a standard basis of \mathbb{R}^3 we write $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{f}(u, v) = (f_1(u, v), f_2(u, v), f_3(u, v))$, where the real valued functions $\{f_1, f_2, f_3\}$ are the *component functions* of \mathbf{f} . The notation $\mathbf{x}_1 = \mathbf{x}_u = \frac{\partial \mathbf{f}}{\partial u}$, $\mathbf{x}_2 = \mathbf{x}_v = \frac{\partial \mathbf{f}}{\partial v}$, $u^1 = u$, $u^2 = v$, is frequently used.
3. A *Monge patch* is a coordinate patch where \mathbf{f} has the form $\mathbf{f}(u, v) = (u, v, f(u, v))$, where f is a real valued function of class C^k .
4. The *u -parameter curves* $v = v_0$ on S are the images of the lines $v = v_0$ in U . They are parametrically represented by $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{f}(u, v_0)$. The *v -parameter curves* $u = u_0$ are defined similarly.
5. An *allowable parameter transformation* of class C^k is a one-to-one function $\phi : U \rightarrow V$, where $U, V \subset \mathbb{R}^2$ are open, that satisfies

$$\det \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial \phi^1}{\partial u}(u, v) & \frac{\partial \phi^1}{\partial v}(u, v) \\ \frac{\partial \phi^2}{\partial u}(u, v) & \frac{\partial \phi^2}{\partial v}(u, v) \end{bmatrix} \neq 0, \quad (4.20.8)$$

for all $(u, v) \in U$, where the real valued functions, ϕ^1 and ϕ^2 , defined by $\phi(u, v) = (\phi^1(u, v), \phi^2(u, v))$ are the component functions of ϕ . One may also write the parameter transformation as $\tilde{u}^1 = \phi^1(u^1, u^2)$, $\tilde{u}^2 = \phi^2(u^1, u^2)$.

6. A *local property* of surface S is any property of a coordinate patch that is invariant under any allowable parameter transformation.
7. Let \mathbf{f} define a coordinate patch on a surface S . The following quantities may be defined at each point $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{f}(u, v)$ on the patch:

| | |
|---|---|
| <i>Asymptotic direction</i> | A direction $du : dv$ for which $\kappa_n = 0$ |
| <i>Asymptotic line</i> | A curve on S whose tangent line at each point coincides with an asymptotic direction |
| <i>Dupin's indicatrix</i> | $ex_1^2 + 2fx_1x_2 + gx_2^2 = \pm 1$ |
| <i>Elliptic point</i> | $eg - f^2 > 0$ |
| <i>First fundamental form</i> | $I = d\mathbf{x} \cdot d\mathbf{x} = g_{\alpha\beta}(u, v) du^\alpha du^\beta$ $= E(u, v) du^2 + 2F(u, v) du dv + G(u, v) dv^2$ |
| <i>First fundamental metric coefficients</i> | $\begin{cases} E(u, v) = g_{11}(u, v) = \mathbf{x}_1 \cdot \mathbf{x}_1 \\ F(u, v) = g_{12}(u, v) = \mathbf{x}_1 \cdot \mathbf{x}_2 \\ G(u, v) = g_{22}(u, v) = \mathbf{x}_2 \cdot \mathbf{x}_2 \end{cases}$ |
| <i>Fundamental differential</i> | $d\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}_\alpha du^\alpha = \mathbf{x}_u du + \mathbf{x}_v dv$ (a repeated upper and lower index signifies a summation over the range $\alpha = 1, 2$) |
| <i>Gaussian curvature</i> | $K = \kappa_1\kappa_2 = \frac{eg - f^2}{EG - F^2}$ |
| <i>Geodesic curvature vector of curve C on S through x</i> | $\mathbf{k}_g = \mathbf{k} - (\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{n})\mathbf{n} = [\ddot{u}^\alpha + \Gamma_{\beta\gamma}^\alpha \dot{u}^\beta \dot{u}^\gamma] \mathbf{x}_\alpha$ where $\Gamma_{\beta\gamma}^\alpha$ denote the Christoffel symbols of the second kind for the metric $g_{\alpha\beta}$, defined in Section 5.10 |
| <i>Geodesic on S</i> | A curve on S which satisfies $\mathbf{k}_g = 0$ at each point |
| <i>Hyperbolic point</i> | $eg - f^2 < 0$ |
| <i>Line of curvature</i> | A curve on S whose tangent line at each point coincides with a principal direction |
| <i>Mean curvature</i> | $H = \frac{\kappa_1 + \kappa_2}{2} = \frac{gE + eG - 2fF}{2(EG - F^2)}$ |
| <i>Normal curvature in the $du : dv$ direction</i> | $\kappa_n = \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{n} = \frac{II}{I}$ |
| <i>Normal curvature vector of curve C on S through x</i> | $\mathbf{k}_n = (\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{n})\mathbf{n}$ |
| <i>Normal line</i> | $\mathbf{y} = \lambda \mathcal{N} + \mathbf{x}$ |
| <i>Normal vector</i> | $\mathcal{N} = \mathbf{x}_u \times \mathbf{x}_v$ |
| <i>Parabolic point</i> | $eg - f^2 = 0$ not all of $e, f, g = 0$ |
| <i>Planar point</i> | $e = f = g = 0$ |
| <i>Principal curvatures</i> | The extreme values κ_1 and κ_2 of κ_n |
| <i>Principal directions</i> | The perpendicular directions $du : dv$ in which κ_n attains its extreme values |
| <i>Second fundamental form</i> | $II = -d\mathbf{x} \cdot d\mathbf{n} = b_{\alpha\beta}(u, v) du^\alpha du^\beta$ $= e(u, v) du^2 + 2f(u, v) du dv + g(u, v) dv^2$ |
| <i>Second fundamental metric coefficients</i> | $\begin{cases} e(u, v) = b_{11}(u, v) = \mathbf{x}_{11} \cdot \mathbf{n} \\ f(u, v) = b_{12}(u, v) = \mathbf{x}_{12} \cdot \mathbf{n} \\ g(u, v) = b_{22}(u, v) = \mathbf{x}_{22} \cdot \mathbf{n} \end{cases}$ |

| | |
|---------------------------|--|
| <i>Tangent plane</i> | $(\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{x}) \cdot \mathcal{N} = 0$, or $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{x} + \lambda \mathbf{x}_u + \mu \mathbf{x}_v$ |
| <i>Unit normal vector</i> | $\mathbf{N} = \frac{\mathbf{x}_u \times \mathbf{x}_v}{ \mathbf{x}_u \times \mathbf{x}_v }$ |
| <i>Umbilical point</i> | $\kappa_n = \text{constant for all directions } du : dv$ |

4.20.2.2 Results

1. The tangent plane, normal line, first fundamental form, second fundamental form, and all derived quantities thereof are local properties of any surface S .
2. The transformation laws for the first and second fundamental metric coefficients under any allowable parameter transformation are given respectively by

$$\tilde{g}_{\alpha\beta} = g_{\gamma\delta} \frac{\partial u^\gamma}{\partial \tilde{u}^\alpha} \frac{\partial u^\delta}{\partial \tilde{u}^\beta}, \quad \text{and} \quad \tilde{b}_{\alpha\beta} = b_{\gamma\delta} \frac{\partial u^\gamma}{\partial \tilde{u}^\alpha} \frac{\partial u^\delta}{\partial \tilde{u}^\beta}. \quad (4.20.9)$$

Thus $g_{\alpha\beta}$ and $b_{\alpha\beta}$ are the components of type $(0, 2)$ tensors.

3. $I \geq 0$ for all directions $du : dv$; $I = 0$ if and only if $du = dv = 0$.
4. The angle θ between two tangent lines to S at $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{f}(u, v)$ defined by the directions $du : dv$ and $\delta u : \delta v$ is given by

$$\cos \theta = \frac{g_{\alpha\beta} du^\alpha \delta u^\beta}{(g_{\alpha\beta} du^\alpha du^\beta)^{\frac{1}{2}} (g_{\alpha\beta} \delta u^\alpha \delta u^\beta)^{\frac{1}{2}}}. \quad (4.20.10)$$

The angle between the u -parameter curves and the v -parameter curves is given by $\cos \theta = F(u, v) / (E(u, v)G(u, v))^{\frac{1}{2}}$. The u -parameter and v -parameter curves are orthogonal if and only if $F(u, v) = 0$.

5. The arc length of a curve C on S , defined by $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{f}(u^1(t), u^2(t))$, with $a \leq t \leq b$, is given by

$$\begin{aligned} L &= \int_a^b \sqrt{g_{\alpha\beta}(u^1(t), u^2(t)) \dot{u}^\alpha \dot{u}^\beta} dt \\ &= \int_a^b \sqrt{E(u(t), v(t)) \dot{u}^2 + 2F(u(t), v(t)) \dot{u} \dot{v} + G(u(t), v(t)) \dot{v}^2} dt. \end{aligned} \quad (4.20.11)$$

6. The area of $S = \mathbf{f}(U)$ is given by

$$\begin{aligned} A &= \iint_U \sqrt{\det(g_{\alpha\beta}(u^1, u^2))} du^1 du^2 \\ &= \iint_U \sqrt{E(u, v)G(u, v) - F^2(u, v)} du dv. \end{aligned} \quad (4.20.12)$$

7. The principal curvatures are the roots of the *characteristic equation*, $\det(b_{\alpha\beta} - \lambda g_{\alpha\beta}) = 0$, which may be written as $\lambda^2 - b_{\alpha\beta} g^{\alpha\beta} \lambda + b/g = 0$, where $g^{\alpha\beta}$ is the inverse of $g_{\alpha\beta}$, $b = \det(b_{\alpha\beta})$, and $g = \det(g_{\alpha\beta})$. The expanded form of the characteristic equation is

$$(EG - F^2)\lambda^2 - (eG - 2fF + gE)\lambda + eg - f^2 = 0. \quad (4.20.13)$$

8. The principal directions $du : dv$ are obtained by solving the homogeneous equation,

$$b_{1\alpha}g_{2\beta} du^\alpha du^\beta - b_{2\alpha}g_{1\beta} du^\alpha du^\beta = 0, \quad (4.20.14)$$

or

$$(eF - fE) du^2 + (eG - gE) du dv + (fG - gF) dv^2 = 0. \quad (4.20.15)$$

9. *Rodrigues formula*: $du : dv$ is a principal direction with principal curvature κ if, and only if, $d\mathbf{N} + \kappa d\mathbf{x} = 0$.
10. A point $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{f}(u, v)$ on S is an umbilical point if and only if there exists a constant k such that $b_{\alpha\beta}(u, v) = kg_{\alpha\beta}(u, v)$.
11. The principal directions at \mathbf{x} are orthogonal if \mathbf{x} is not an umbilical point.
12. The u - and v -parameter curves at any non-umbilical point \mathbf{x} are tangent to the principal directions if and only if $f(u, v) = F(u, v) = 0$. If \mathbf{f} defines a coordinate patch without umbilical points, the u - and v -parameter curves are lines of curvature if and only if $f = F = 0$.
13. If $f = F = 0$ on a coordinate patch, the principal curvatures are given by $\kappa_1 = e/E, \kappa_2 = g/G$. It follows that the Gaussian and mean curvatures have the forms
- $$K = \frac{eg}{EG}, \quad \text{and} \quad H = \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{e}{E} + \frac{g}{G} \right). \quad (4.20.16)$$
14. The *Gauss equation*: $\mathbf{x}_{\alpha\beta} = \Gamma_{\alpha\beta}^\gamma \mathbf{x}_\gamma + b_{\alpha\beta} \mathbf{n}$.
15. The *Weingarten equation*: $\mathbf{n}_\alpha = -b_{\alpha\beta} g^{\beta\gamma} \mathbf{x}_\gamma$.
16. The *Gauss–Mainardi–Codazzi equations*: $b_{\alpha\beta} b_{\gamma\delta} - b_{\alpha\gamma} b_{\beta\delta} = R_{\delta\alpha\beta\gamma}, b_{\alpha\beta, \gamma} - b_{\alpha\gamma, \beta} + \Gamma_{\alpha\beta}^\delta b_{\delta\gamma} - \Gamma_{\alpha\gamma}^\delta b_{\delta\beta} = 0$, where $R_{\delta\alpha\beta\gamma}$ denotes the Riemann curvature tensor defined in [Section 5.10.3](#).

THEOREM 4.20.2 (*Gauss’s theorem egregium*)

The Gaussian curvature K depends only on the components of the r st fundamental metric $g_{\alpha\beta}$ and their derivatives.

THEOREM 4.20.3 (*Fundamental theorem of surface theory*)

If $g_{\alpha\beta}$ and $b_{\alpha\beta}$ are sufficiently differentiable functions of u and v which satisfy the Gauss–Mainardi–Codazzi equations, $\det(g_{\alpha\beta}) > 0, g_{11} > 0$, and $g_{22} > 0$, then a surface exists with $I = g_{\alpha\beta} du^\alpha du^\beta$ and $II = b_{\alpha\beta} du^\alpha du^\beta$ as its r st and second fundamental forms. This surface is unique up to a congruence.

4.20.2.3 Example: paraboloid of revolution

A Monge patch for a paraboloid of revolution is given by $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{f}(u, v) = (u, v, u^2 + v^2)$, for all $(u, v) \in U = \mathbb{R}^2$. By successive differentiation one obtains $\mathbf{x}_u = (1, 0, 2u)$, $\mathbf{x}_v = (0, 1, 2v)$, $\mathbf{x}_{uu} = (0, 0, 2)$, $\mathbf{x}_{uv} = (0, 0, 0)$, and $\mathbf{x}_{vv} = (0, 0, 2)$.

1. *Unit normal vector:* $\mathbf{n} = (1 + 4u^2 + 4v^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}}(-2u, -2v, 1)$.
2. *First fundamental coefficients:* $E(u, v) = g_{11}(u, v) = 1 + 4u^2$, $F(u, v) = g_{12}(u, v) = 4uv$, $G(u, v) = g_{22}(u, v) = 1 + 4v^2$.
3. *First fundamental form:* $I = (1 + 4u^2) du^2 + 8uv du dv + (1 + 4v^2) dv^2$. Since $F(u, v) = 0 \Rightarrow u = 0$ or $v = 0$, it follows that the u -parameter curve $v = 0$ is orthogonal to any v -parameter curve, and the v -parameter curve $u = 0$ is orthogonal to any u -parameter curve. Otherwise the u - and v -parameter curves are *not* orthogonal.
4. *Second fundamental coefficients:* $e(u, v) = b_{11}(u, v) = 2(1 + 4u^2 + 4v^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}}$, $f(u, v) = b_{12}(u, v) = 0$, $g(u, v) = b_{22}(u, v) = 2(1 + 4u^2 + 4v^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}}$.
5. *Second fundamental form:* $II = 2(1 + 4u^2 + 4v^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}}(du^2 + dv^2)$.
6. *Classification of points:* $e(u, v)g(u, v) = 4(1 + 4u^2 + 4v^2) > 0$ implies that all points on S are elliptic points. The point $(0, 0, 0)$ is the only umbilical point.
7. *Equation for the principal directions:* $uv du^2 + (v^2 - u^2) du dv + uv dv^2 = 0$ factors to read $(u du + v dv)(v du - u dv) = 0$.
8. *Lines of curvature:* Integrate the differential equations, $u dv + v dv = 0$, and $v du - v du = 0$, to obtain, respectively, the equations of the lines of curvature, $u^2 + v^2 = r^2$, and $u/v = \cot \theta$, where r and θ are constant.
9. *Characteristic equation:* $(1 + 4u^2 + 4v^2)\lambda^2 - 4(1 + 2u^2 + 2v^2)(1 + 4u^2 + 4v^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}}\lambda + 4(1 + 4u^2 + 4v^2)^{-1} = 0$.
10. *Principal curvatures:* $\kappa_1 = 2(1 + 4u^2 + 4v^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}}$, $\kappa_2 = 2(1 + 4u^2 + 4v^2)^{-\frac{3}{2}}$.
The paraboloid of revolution may also be represented by $\mathbf{x} = \widehat{\mathbf{f}}(r, \theta) = (r \cos \theta, r \sin \theta, r^2)$. In this representation the r - and θ -parameter curves are lines of curvature.
11. *Gaussian curvature:* $K = 4(1 + 4u^2 + 4v^2)^{-2}$.
12. *Mean curvature:* $H = 2(1 + 2u^2 + 2v^2)(1 + 4u^2 + 4v^2)^{-\frac{3}{2}}$.

4.21 ANGLE CONVERSION

| Degrees | Radians | Minutes | Radians | Seconds | Radians |
|---------|------------|---------|-------------|---------|---------------|
| 1° | 0.01745 33 | 1' | 0.00029 089 | 1'' | 0.00000 48481 |
| 2° | 0.03490 66 | 2' | 0.00058 178 | 2'' | 0.00000 96963 |
| 3° | 0.05235 99 | 3' | 0.00087 266 | 3'' | 0.00001 45444 |
| 4° | 0.06981 32 | 4' | 0.00116 355 | 4'' | 0.00001 93925 |
| 5° | 0.08726 65 | 5' | 0.00145 444 | 5'' | 0.00002 42407 |
| 6° | 0.10471 98 | 6' | 0.00174 533 | 6'' | 0.00002 90888 |
| 7° | 0.12217 30 | 7' | 0.00203 622 | 7'' | 0.00003 39370 |
| 8° | 0.13962 63 | 8' | 0.00232 711 | 8'' | 0.00003 87851 |
| 9° | 0.15707 96 | 9' | 0.00261 799 | 9'' | 0.00004 36332 |
| 10° | 0.17453 29 | 10' | 0.00290 888 | 10'' | 0.00004 84814 |

| Rad. | Deg. | Min. | Sec. | Deg. | Rad. | Deg. | Min. | Sec. | Deg. |
|------|------|------|--------|----------|------|------|------|--------|---------|
| 1 | 57° | 17' | 44.8'' | 57.2958 | 0.1 | 5° | 43' | 46.5'' | 5.7296 |
| 2 | 114° | 35' | 29.6'' | 114.5916 | 0.2 | 11° | 27' | 33.0'' | 11.4592 |
| 3 | 171° | 53' | 14.4'' | 171.8873 | 0.3 | 17° | 11' | 19.4'' | 17.1887 |
| 4 | 229° | 10' | 59.2'' | 229.1831 | 0.4 | 22° | 55' | 5.9'' | 22.9183 |
| 5 | 286° | 28' | 44.0'' | 286.4789 | 0.5 | 28° | 38' | 52.4'' | 28.6479 |
| 6 | 343° | 46' | 28.8'' | 343.7747 | 0.6 | 34° | 22' | 38.9'' | 34.3775 |
| 7 | 401° | 4' | 13.6'' | 401.0705 | 0.7 | 40° | 6' | 25.4'' | 40.1070 |
| 8 | 458° | 21' | 58.4'' | 458.3662 | 0.8 | 45° | 50' | 11.8'' | 45.8366 |
| 9 | 515° | 39' | 43.3'' | 515.6620 | 0.9 | 51° | 33' | 58.3'' | 51.5662 |

| Rad. | Deg. | Min. | Sec. | Deg. | Rad. | Deg. | Min. | Sec. | Deg. |
|------|------|------|--------|--------|-------|------|------|--------|--------|
| 0.01 | 0° | 34' | 22.6'' | 0.5730 | 0.001 | 0° | 3' | 26.3'' | 0.0573 |
| 0.02 | 1° | 8' | 45.3'' | 1.1459 | 0.002 | 0° | 6' | 52.5'' | 0.1146 |
| 0.03 | 1° | 43' | 7.9'' | 1.7189 | 0.003 | 0° | 10' | 18.8'' | 0.1719 |
| 0.04 | 2° | 17' | 30.6'' | 2.2918 | 0.004 | 0° | 13' | 45.1'' | 0.2292 |
| 0.05 | 2° | 51' | 53.2'' | 2.8648 | 0.005 | 0° | 17' | 11.3'' | 0.2865 |
| 0.06 | 3° | 26' | 15.9'' | 3.4377 | 0.006 | 0° | 20' | 37.6'' | 0.3438 |
| 0.07 | 4° | 0' | 38.5'' | 4.0107 | 0.007 | 0° | 24' | 3.9'' | 0.4011 |
| 0.08 | 4° | 35' | 1.2'' | 4.5837 | 0.008 | 0° | 27' | 30.1'' | 0.4584 |
| 0.09 | 5° | 9' | 23.8'' | 5.1566 | 0.009 | 0° | 30' | 56.4'' | 0.5157 |

4.22 KNOTS UP TO EIGHT CROSSINGS

| n | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 |
|------------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|-----|-----|
| Number of knots with n crossings | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 7 | 21 | 49 | 165 | 552 |

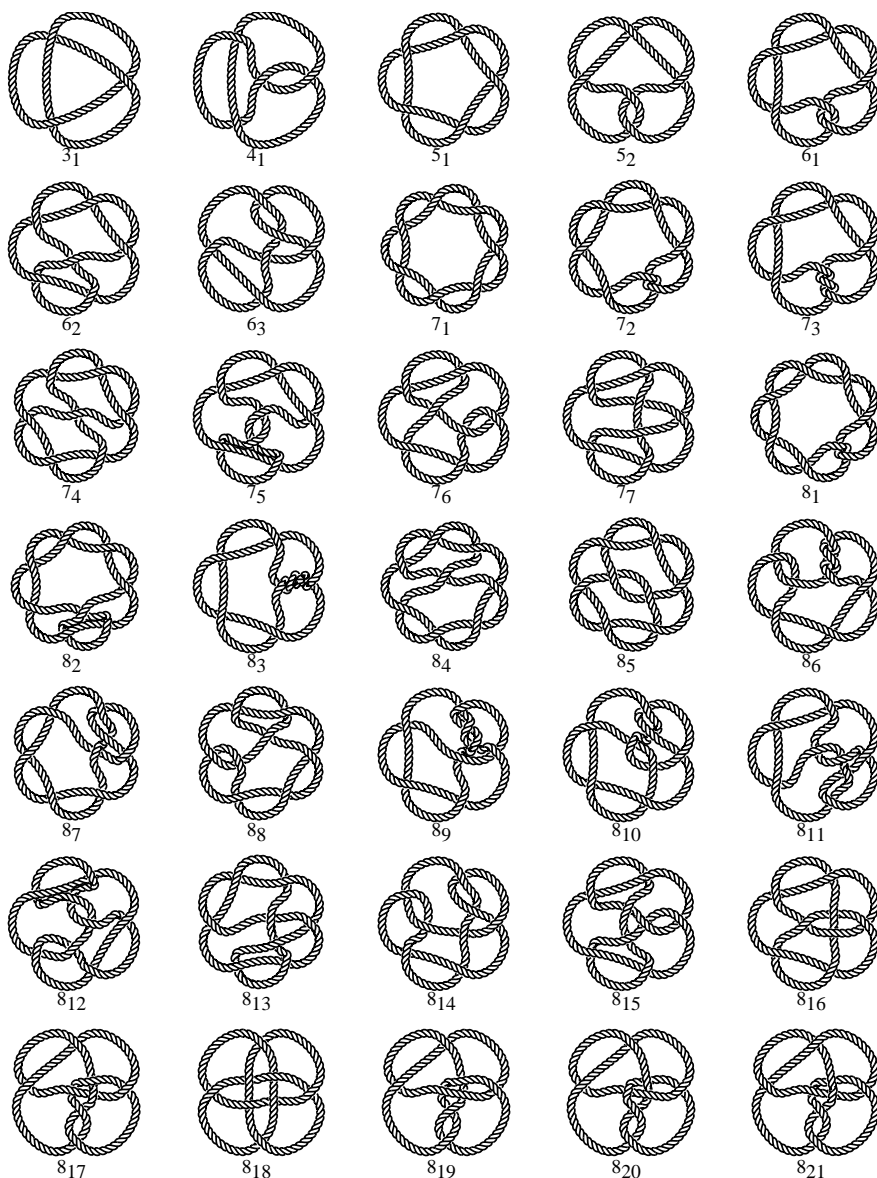


Image by Charlie Gunn and David Broman. Copyright The Geometry Center, University of Minnesota. With permission.

Chapter 3

Discrete Mathematics

3.1 SYMBOLIC LOGIC

- 3.1.1 *Propositional calculus*
- 3.1.2 *Tautologies*
- 3.1.3 *Truth tables as functions*
- 3.1.4 *Rules of inference*
- 3.1.5 *Deductions*
- 3.1.6 *Predicate calculus*

3.2 SET THEORY

- 3.2.1 *Sets*
- 3.2.2 *Set operations and relations*
- 3.2.3 *Connection between sets and probability*
- 3.2.4 *Venn diagrams*
- 3.2.5 *Paradoxes and theorems of set theory*
- 3.2.6 *Inclusion/Exclusion*
- 3.2.7 *Partially ordered sets*

3.3 COMBINATORICS

- 3.3.1 *Sample selection*
- 3.3.2 *Balls into cells*
- 3.3.3 *Binomial coefficients*
- 3.3.4 *Multinomial coefficients*
- 3.3.5 *Arrangements and derangements*
- 3.3.6 *Partitions*
- 3.3.7 *Bell numbers*
- 3.3.8 *Catalan numbers*
- 3.3.9 *Stirling cycle numbers*
- 3.3.10 *Stirling subset numbers*
- 3.3.11 *Tables*

3.4 GRAPHS

- 3.4.1 *Notation*
- 3.4.2 *Basic definitions*
- 3.4.3 *Constructions*
- 3.4.4 *Fundamental results*
- 3.4.5 *Tree diagrams*

3.5 COMBINATORIAL DESIGN THEORY

- 3.5.1 *t -Designs*
- 3.5.2 *Balanced incomplete block designs (BIBDs)*

-
- 3.5.3 *Difference sets*
 - 3.5.4 *Finite geometry*
 - 3.5.5 *Steiner triple systems*
 - 3.5.6 *Hadamard matrices*
 - 3.5.7 *Latin squares*
 - 3.5.8 *Room squares*
 - 3.5.9 *Costas arrays*

3.6 COMMUNICATION THEORY

- 3.6.1 *Information theory*
- 3.6.2 *Block coding*
- 3.6.3 *Source coding for English text*
- 3.6.4 *Morse code*
- 3.6.5 *Gray code*
- 3.6.6 *Finite fields*
- 3.6.7 *Binary sequences*

3.7 DIFFERENCE EQUATIONS

- 3.7.1 *The calculus of finite differences*
- 3.7.2 *Existence and uniqueness*
- 3.7.3 *Linear independence: general solution*
- 3.7.4 *Homogeneous equations with constant coefficients*
- 3.7.5 *Non-homogeneous equations*
- 3.7.6 *Generating functions and Z transforms*
- 3.7.7 *Closed-form solutions for special equations*

3.8 DISCRETE DYNAMICAL SYSTEMS AND CHAOS

- 3.8.1 *Chaotic one-dimensional maps*
- 3.8.2 *Logistic map*
- 3.8.3 *Julia sets and the Mandelbrot set*

3.9 GAME THEORY

- 3.9.1 *Two person non-cooperative matrix games*
- 3.9.2 *Voting power*

3.10 OPERATIONS RESEARCH

- 3.10.1 *Linear programming*
- 3.10.2 *Duality and complementary slackness*
- 3.10.3 *Linear integer programming*
- 3.10.4 *Branch and bound*
- 3.10.5 *Network flow methods*
- 3.10.6 *Assignment problem*
- 3.10.7 *Dynamic programming*
- 3.10.8 *Shortest path problem*
- 3.10.9 *Heuristic search techniques*

3.1 SYMBOLIC LOGIC

3.1.1 PROPOSITIONAL CALCULUS

Propositional calculus is the study of statements: how they are combined and how to determine their truth. Statements (or propositions) are combined by means of *connectives* such as *and* (\wedge), *or* (\vee), *not* (\neg , or sometimes \sim), *implies* (\rightarrow), and *if and only if* (\leftrightarrow). Propositions are denoted by letters $\{p, q, r, \dots\}$. For example, if p is the statement “ $x = 3$ ”, and q the statement “ $y = 4$ ”, then $p \vee \neg q$ would be interpreted as “ $x = 3$ or $y \neq 4$ ”. To determine the truth of a statement, *truth tables* are used. Using T (for true) and F (for false), the truth tables for these connectives are as follows:

| | | | | | | | |
|-----|-----|--------------|------------|-------------------|-----------------------|-----|----------|
| p | q | $p \wedge q$ | $p \vee q$ | $p \rightarrow q$ | $p \leftrightarrow q$ | p | $\neg p$ |
| T | T | T | T | T | T | T | F |
| T | F | F | T | F | F | F | T |
| F | T | F | T | T | F | | |
| F | F | F | F | T | T | | |

The proposition $p \rightarrow q$ can be read “*If p then q* ” or, less often, “ *q if p* ”. The table shows that “ $p \vee q$ ” is an *inclusive or* because it is true even when p and q are both true. Thus, the statement “I’m watching TV or I’m doing homework” is a true statement if the narrator happens to be both watching TV and doing homework. Note that $p \rightarrow q$ is false only when p is true and q is false. Thus, *a false statement implies any statement and a true statement is implied by any statement*.

3.1.2 TAUTOLOGIES

A statement such as $(p \rightarrow (q \wedge r)) \vee \neg p$ is a *compound statement* composed of the *atomic propositions* p, q , and r . The letters P, Q , and R are used to designate compound statements. A *tautology* is a compound statement which always is true, regardless of the truth values of the atomic statements used to define it. For example, a simple tautology is $(\neg\neg p) \leftrightarrow p$. Tautologies are logical truths. Some examples are as follows:

| | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Law of the excluded middle | $p \vee \neg p$ |
| De Morgan’s laws | $\neg(p \vee q) \leftrightarrow (\neg p \wedge \neg q)$ $\neg(p \wedge q) \leftrightarrow (\neg p \vee \neg q)$ |
| Modus ponens | $(p \wedge (p \rightarrow q)) \rightarrow q$ |
| Contrapositive law | $(p \rightarrow q) \leftrightarrow (\neg q \rightarrow \neg p)$ |
| Reductio ad absurdum | $(\neg p \rightarrow p) \rightarrow p$ |
| Elimination of cases | $((p \vee q) \wedge \neg p) \rightarrow q$ |
| Transitivity of implication | $((p \rightarrow q) \wedge (q \rightarrow r)) \rightarrow (p \rightarrow r)$ |
| Proof by cases | $((p \rightarrow q) \wedge (\neg p \rightarrow q)) \rightarrow q$ |

| | |
|------------------|--|
| Idempotent laws | $p \wedge p \longleftrightarrow p; p \vee p \longleftrightarrow p$ |
| Commutative laws | $(p \wedge q) \longleftrightarrow (q \wedge p); (p \vee q) \longleftrightarrow (q \vee p)$ |
| Associative laws | $(p \wedge (q \wedge r)) \longleftrightarrow ((p \wedge q) \wedge r)$ $(p \vee (q \vee r)) \longleftrightarrow ((p \vee q) \vee r)$ |

3.1.3 TRUTH TABLES AS FUNCTIONS

If we assign the value 1 to T, and 0 to F, then the truth table for $p \wedge q$ is simply the value pq . This can be done with all the connectives as follows:

| Connective | Arithmetic function |
|---------------------------|---------------------|
| $p \wedge q$ | pq |
| $p \vee q$ | $p + q - pq$ |
| $p \rightarrow q$ | $1 - p + pq$ |
| $p \longleftrightarrow q$ | $1 - p - q + 2pq$ |
| $\neg p$ | $1 - p$ |

These formulae may be used to verify tautologies, because, from this point of view, a tautology is a function whose value is identically 1. In using them, it is useful to remember that $pp = p^2 = p$, since $p = 0$ or $p = 1$.

3.1.4 RULES OF INFERENCE

A *rule of inference* in propositional calculus is a method of arriving at a valid (true) *conclusion*, given certain statements, assumed to be true, which are called the *hypotheses*. For example, suppose that P and Q are compound statements. Then if P and $P \rightarrow Q$ are true, then Q must necessarily be true. This follows from the *modus ponens* tautology in the above list of tautologies. We write this rule of inference $P, P \rightarrow Q \Rightarrow Q$. It is also classically written

$$\frac{P \quad P \rightarrow Q}{Q}$$

Some examples of rules of inferences follow, all derived from the above list of tautologies:

| | |
|----------------------|--|
| Modus ponens | $P, P \rightarrow Q \Rightarrow Q$ |
| Contrapositive | $P \rightarrow Q \Rightarrow \neg Q \rightarrow \neg P$ |
| Modus tollens | $P \rightarrow Q, \neg Q \Rightarrow \neg P$ |
| Transitivity | $P \rightarrow Q, Q \rightarrow R \Rightarrow P \rightarrow R$ |
| Elimination of cases | $P \vee Q, \neg P \Rightarrow Q$ |
| “And” usage | $P \wedge Q \Rightarrow P, Q$ |

3.1.5 DEDUCTIONS

A *deduction* from hypotheses is a list of statements, each one of which is either one of the hypotheses, a tautology, or follows from previous statements in the list by a valid rule of inference. It follows that if the hypotheses are true, then the conclusion must be true. Suppose, for example, that we are given *hypotheses* $\neg q \rightarrow p$, $q \rightarrow \neg r$, r ; it is required to deduce the *conclusion* p . A deduction showing this, with reasons for each step is as follows:

| Statement | Reason |
|---------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. $q \rightarrow \neg r$ | Hypothesis |
| 2. r | Hypothesis |
| 3. $\neg q$ | Modus tollens (1,2) |
| 4. $\neg q \rightarrow p$ | Hypothesis |
| 5. p | Modus ponens (3,4) |

3.1.6 PREDICATE CALCULUS

Unlike propositional calculus, which may be considered the skeleton of logical discourse, *predicate calculus* is the language in which most mathematical reasoning takes place. It uses the symbols of propositional calculus, with the exception of the propositional variables p, q, \dots . Predicate calculus uses the *universal quantifier* \forall , the *existential quantifier* \exists , *predicates* $P(x), Q(x, y), \dots$, *variables* x, y, \dots , and assumes a *universe* U from which the variables are taken. The quantifiers are illustrated in the following table.

| Symbol | Read as | Usage | Interpretation |
|-----------|-----------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| \exists | There exists an | $\exists x(x > 10)$ | There is an x such that $x > 10$ |
| \forall | For all | $\forall x(x^2 + 1 \neq 0)$ | For all x , $x^2 + 1 \neq 0$ |

Predicates are variable statements which may be true or false, depending on the values of its variable. In the above table, “ $x > 10$ ” is a predicate in the one variable x as is “ $x^2 + 1 \neq 0$ ”. Without a given universe, we have no way of deciding whether a statement is true or false. Thus $\forall x(x^2 + 1 \neq 0)$ is true if the universe U is the real numbers, but false if U is the complex numbers. A useful rule for manipulating quantifiers is

$$\neg \forall x P(x) \longleftrightarrow \exists x \neg P(x).$$

For example, it is not true that all people are mortal if, and only if, there is a person who is immortal. Here the universe U is the set of people, and $P(x)$ is the predicate “ x is mortal”. This works with more than one quantifier. Thus,

$$\neg \forall x \exists y P(x, y) \longleftrightarrow \exists x \forall y \neg P(x, y).$$

For example, if it is not true that every person loves someone, then it follows that there is a person who loves no one (and vice versa).

Fermat’s last theorem, stated in terms of the predicate calculus ($U =$ the positive integers), is

$$\forall n \forall a \forall b \forall c [(n > 2) \rightarrow (a^n + b^n \neq c^n)].$$

It was proven in 1995; its proof is extremely complicated. One does not expect a simple deduction, as in the propositional calculus.

In 1931, Gödel proved the *Gödel Incompleteness Theorem*. This states that, in any logical system complex enough to contain arithmetic, it will always be possible to find a true result which is not formally provable using predicate logic. This result was especially startling because the notion of truth and provability had been often identified with each other.

3.2 SET THEORY

3.2.1 SETS

A *set* is a collection of objects. Some examples of sets are

1. The population of Cleveland on January 1, 1995
2. The real numbers between 0 and 1 inclusive
3. The prime numbers 2, 3, 5, 7, 11, . . .
4. The numbers 1, 2, 3, and 4
5. All of the formulae in this book

3.2.2 SET OPERATIONS AND RELATIONS

If x is an element in a set A , then we write $x \in A$ (read “ x is in A ”). If x is not in A , we write $x \notin A$. When considering sets, a set U , called the *universe*, is chosen, from which all elements are taken. The *null set* or *empty set* \emptyset is the set containing no elements. Thus, $x \notin \emptyset$ for all $x \in U$. Some relations on sets are as follows:

| Relation | Read as | Definition |
|-----------------|-------------------------|--|
| $A \subseteq B$ | A is contained in B | Any element of A is also an element of B |
| $A = B$ | A equals B | $(A \subseteq B) \wedge (B \subseteq A)$ |

Some basic operations on sets are as follows:

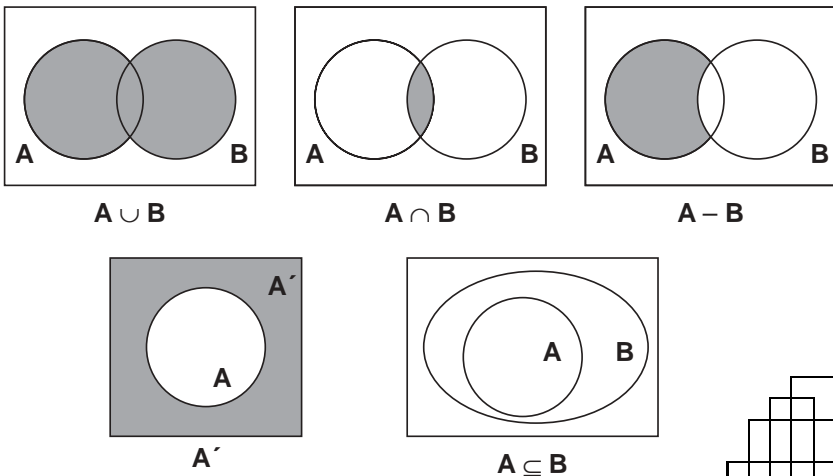
| Operation | Read as | Definition |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| $A \cup B$ | A union B | The elements in A or in B |
| $A \cap B$ | A intersection B | The elements in both A and B |
| $A - B$ | A minus B | The elements in A which are not in B |
| A' or \overline{A} or A^C | Complement of A | The elements in U which are not in A |
| $\mathbf{P}(A)$ or 2^A | Power set of A | The collection of all subsets of A |
| $A \oplus B$ | Symmetric difference of A and B | The elements of A and B that are not in both A and B (i.e., the union minus the intersection) |

3.2.3 CONNECTION BETWEEN SETS AND PROBABILITY

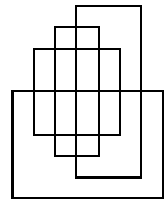
| Set concept | Probability concept |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Set | Event |
| Set containing a single element | Indecomposable, elementary, or atomic event |
| Set containing more than one element | Compound event |
| Universal set or space | Sample space |
| Complement of a set | Non-occurrence of an event |
| Function on the universal set | Random variable |
| Measure of a set | Probability of an event |
| Integral with respect to the measure | Expectation or expected value |

3.2.4 VENN DIAGRAMS

The operations and relations on sets can be illustrated by *Venn diagrams*. The diagrams below show a few possibilities.



Venn diagrams can be constructed to show combinations of many events. Each of the 2^4 regions created by the rectangles in the diagram to the right represents a different combination.



3.2.5 PARADOXES AND THEOREMS OF SET THEORY

3.2.5.1 Russell's paradox

In about 1900, Bertrand Russell presented a paradox, paraphrased as follows: since the elements of sets can be arbitrary, sets can contain sets as elements. Therefore, a set can possibly be a member of itself. (For example, the set of all sets would be a

member of itself. Another example is the collection of all sets that can be described in fewer than 50 words.) Now let A be the set of all sets which are *not* members of themselves. Then if A is a member of itself, it is not a member of itself. And if A is not a member of itself, then, by definition, A is a member of itself. This paradox leads to a much more careful evaluation of how sets should be defined.

3.2.5.2 Infinite sets and the continuum hypothesis

Georg Cantor showed how the number of elements of infinite sets can be counted, much as finite sets. He used the symbol \aleph_0 (read “aleph null”) for the number of integers and introduced larger infinite numbers such as \aleph_1, \aleph_2 , and so on. Cantor introduced a consistent arithmetic on infinite cardinals and a way of comparing infinite cardinals. A few of his results were as follows:

$$\aleph_0 + \aleph_0 = \aleph_0, \quad (\aleph_0)^2 = \aleph_0, \quad 2^{\aleph_0} = \aleph_0^{\aleph_0} > \aleph_0.$$

Cantor showed that $c = 2^{\aleph_0} > \aleph_0$, where c is the cardinality of real numbers. The *continuum hypothesis* asks whether or not $c = \aleph_1$, the first infinite cardinal greater than \aleph_0 . In 1963, Paul J. Cohen showed that this result is independent of the other axioms of set theory. In his words, “. . . the truth or falsity of the continuum hypothesis . . . cannot be determined by set theory as we know it today”.

3.2.6 INCLUSION/EXCLUSION

Let $\{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_r\}$ be properties that the elements of a set may or may not have. If the set has N objects, then the number of objects having exactly m properties (with $m \leq r$), e_m , is given by

$$e_m = s_m - \binom{m+1}{1} s_{m+1} + \binom{m+2}{2} s_{m+2} - \binom{m+3}{3} s_{m+3} + \dots \quad (3.2.1)$$

$$\dots + (-1)^p \binom{m+p}{p} s_{m+p} \dots + (-1)^{r-m} \binom{m+(r-m)}{(r-m)} s_r.$$

Here $s_t = \sum N(a_{i_1} a_{i_2} \dots a_{i_t})$ is the number of elements that have a_{i_1}, \dots . When $m = 0$, this is the usual inclusion/exclusion rule:

$$e_0 = s_0 - s_1 + s_2 - \dots + (-1)^r s_r,$$

$$= N - \sum_i N(a_i) + \sum_{i, j \text{ distinct}} N(a_i a_j) - \sum_{i, j, k \text{ distinct}} N(a_i a_j a_k) + \dots \quad (3.2.2)$$

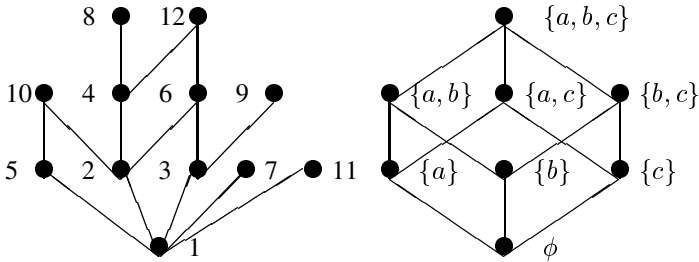
3.2.7 PARTIALLY ORDERED SETS

Consider a set S and a relation on it. Given any two elements x and y in S , we can determine whether or not x is “related” to y ; if it is, “ $x \preceq y$ ”. The relation “ \preceq ” will be a *partial order* on S if it satisfies the following three conditions:

- reflexive $s \preceq s$ for every $s \in S$,
- antisymmetric $s \preceq t$ and $t \preceq s$ imply $s = t$, and
- transitive $s \preceq t$ and $t \preceq u$ imply $s \preceq u$.

FIGURE 3.1

Left: Hasse diagram for integers up to 12 with $x \preceq y$ meaning “the number x divides the number y ”. Right: Hasse diagram for the power set of $\{a, b, c\}$ with $x \preceq y$ meaning “the set x is a subset of the set y ”.



If \preceq is a partial order on S , then the pair (S, \preceq) is called a *partially ordered set* or a *poset*. Given the partial order \preceq on the set S , define the relation \prec by

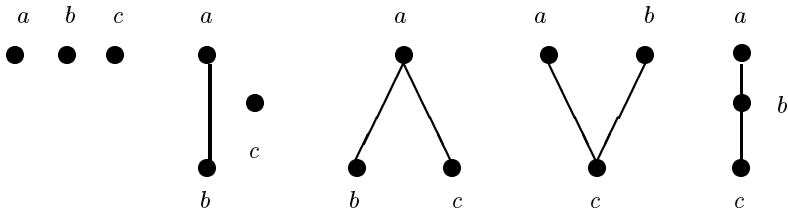
$$x \prec y \quad \text{if and only if} \quad x \preceq y \text{ and } x \neq y.$$

We say that the element t *covers* the element s if $s \prec t$ and there is no element u with $s \prec u \prec t$. A *Hasse diagram* of the poset (S, \preceq) is a figure consisting of the elements of S with a line segment directed generally upward from s to t whenever t covers s . (See Figure 3.1.)

Two elements x and y in a poset (S, \preceq) are said to be *comparable* if either $x \preceq y$ or $y \preceq x$. If every pair of elements in a poset is comparable, then (S, \preceq) is a *chain*. An *antichain* is a poset in which no two elements are comparable (i.e., $x \preceq y$ if and only if $x = y$ for all x and y in the antichain). A *maximal chain* is a chain that is not properly contained in another chain (and similarly for a *maximal antichain*).

EXAMPLES

- Let S be the set of natural numbers up to 12 and let “ $x \preceq y$ ” mean “the number x divides the number y ”. Then (S, \preceq) is a poset with the Hasse diagram shown in Figure 3.1 (left). Observe that the elements 2 and 4 are comparable, but elements 2 and 5 are not comparable.
- Let S be the set of all subsets of the set $\{a, b, c\}$ and let “ $x \preceq y$ ” mean “the set x is contained in the set y ”. Then (S, \preceq) is a poset with the Hasse diagram shown in Figure 3.1 (right).
- There are 16 different isomorphism types of posets of size 4. There are 5 different isomorphism types of posets of size 3, shown below:



3.3 COMBINATORICS

3.3.1 SAMPLE SELECTION

There are four different ways in which a sample of r elements can be obtained from a set of n distinguishable objects.

| Order counts? | Repetitions allowed? | The sample is called an | Number of ways to choose the sample |
|---------------|----------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| No | No | r -combination | $C(n, r)$ |
| Yes | No | r -permutation | $P(n, r)$ |
| No | Yes | r -combination with replacement | $C^R(n, r)$ |
| Yes | Yes | r -permutation with replacement | $P^R(n, r)$ |

where

$$\begin{aligned}
 C(n, r) &= \binom{n}{r} = \frac{n!}{r!(n-r)!}, \\
 P(n, r) &= (n)_r = n^{\underline{r}} = \frac{n!}{(n-r)!}, \\
 C^R(n, r) &= C(n+r-1, r) = \frac{(n+r-1)!}{r!(n-1)!}, \text{ and} \\
 P^R(n, r) &= n^r.
 \end{aligned}
 \tag{3.3.1}$$

EXAMPLE There are four ways to choose a 2-element sample from the set $\{a, b\}$:

| | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------|------------------------|
| r -combination | $C(2, 2) = 1$ | ab |
| r -permutation | $P(2, 2) = 2$ | ab and ba |
| r -combination with replacement | $C^R(2, 2) = 3$ | $aa, ab,$ and bb |
| r -permutation with replacement | $P^R(2, 2) = 4$ | $aa, ab, ba,$ and bb |

3.3.2 BALLS INTO CELLS

There are eight different ways in which n balls can be placed into k cells:

| Distinguish the balls? | Distinguish the cells? | Can cells be empty? | Number of ways to place n balls into k cells |
|------------------------|------------------------|---------------------|--|
| Yes | Yes | Yes | k^n |
| Yes | Yes | No | $k! \{k^n\}$ |
| Yes | No | Yes | $\{k^n\}_1 + \{k^n\}_2 + \dots + \{k^n\}_k$ |
| Yes | No | No | $\{k^n\}_k$ |
| No | Yes | Yes | $C(k+n-1, n) = \binom{k+n-1}{n}$ |
| No | Yes | No | $C(n-1, k-1) = \binom{n-1}{k-1}$ |
| No | No | Yes | $p_1(n) + p_2(n) + \dots + p_k(n)$ |
| No | No | No | $p_k(n)$ |

where $\{n_k\}$ is the Stirling subset number (see page 213) and $p_k(n)$ is the number of partitions of the number n into exactly k integer pieces (see page 210).

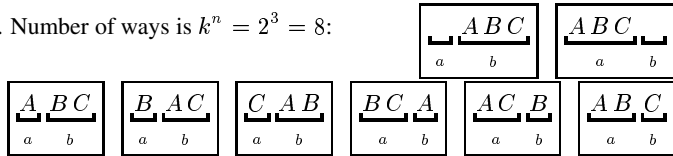
Given n distinguishable balls and k distinguishable cells, the number of ways in which we can place n_1 balls into cell 1, n_2 balls into cell 2, ..., n_k balls into cell k , is given by the multinomial coefficient $\binom{n}{n_1, n_2, \dots, n_k}$ (see page 209).

EXAMPLE Consider placing $n = 3$ balls into $k = 2$ cells. Let $\{A, B, C\}$ denote the names of the balls (when needed) and $\{a, b, c\}$ denote the names of the cells (when needed). A cell will be denoted like this. Begin with: Are the balls distinguishable?

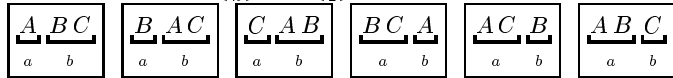
1. Yes, the balls are distinguishable. Are the cells distinguishable?

(a) Yes, the cells are distinguishable. Can the cells be empty?

i. Yes. Number of ways is $k^n = 2^3 = 8$:

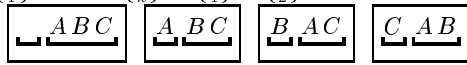


ii. No. Number of ways is $k! \{n_k\} = 2! \{3_2\} = 6$:



(b) No, the cells are not distinguishable. Can the cells be empty?

i. Yes. Number of ways is $\{n_1\} + \dots + \{n_k\} = \{3_1\} + \{3_2\} = 1 + 3 = 4$:



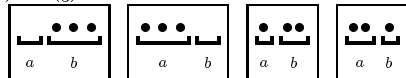
ii. No. Number of ways is $\{n_k\} = \{3_2\} = 3$:



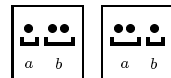
2. No, the balls are not distinguishable. Are the cells distinguishable?

(a) Yes, the cells are distinguishable. Can the cells be empty?

i. Yes. Number of ways is $\binom{k+n-1}{n} = \binom{4}{3} = 4$:



ii. No. Number of ways is $\binom{n-1}{k-1} = \binom{2}{1} = 2$:



(b) No, the cells are not distinguishable. Can the cells be empty?

i. Yes. Number of ways is $p_1(n) + \dots + p_k(n) = p_1(3) + p_2(3) = 1 + 1 = 2$:



ii. No. Number of ways is $p_k(n) = p_2(3) = 1$:



3.3.3 BINOMIAL COEFFICIENTS

The binomial coefficient $C(n, m) = \binom{n}{m}$ is the number of ways of choosing m objects from a collection of n distinct objects without regard to order:

EXAMPLE For the 5 element set $\{a, b, c, d, e\}$ there are $\binom{5}{3} = \frac{5!}{3!2!} = 10$ subsets containing exactly three elements. They are:

$$\{a, b, c\}, \{a, b, d\}, \{a, b, e\}, \{a, c, d\}, \{a, c, e\}, \\ \{a, d, e\}, \{b, c, d\}, \{b, c, e\}, \{b, d, e\}, \{c, d, e\}.$$

Properties of binomial coefficients include:

1. $\binom{n}{m} = \frac{n!}{m!(n-m)!} = \frac{n(n-1)\cdots(n-m+1)}{m!} = \binom{n}{n-m}$.
2. $\binom{n}{0} = \binom{n}{n} = 1$ and $\binom{n}{1} = n$.
3. $\binom{2n}{n} = \frac{2^n(2n-1)!!}{n!} = \frac{2^n(2n-1)(2n-3)\cdots 3 \cdot 1}{n!}$.
4. If n and m are integers, and $m > n$, then $\binom{n}{m} = 0$.
5. The recurrence relation: $\binom{n+1}{m} = \binom{n}{m} + \binom{n}{m-1}$.
6. Two generating functions for binomial coefficients are $\sum_{m=0}^n \binom{n}{m} x^m = (1+x)^n$ for $n = 1, 2, \dots$, and $\sum_{n=m}^{\infty} \binom{n}{m} x^{n-m} = (1-x)^{-m-1}$.
7. The *Vandermonde convolution* is $\binom{x+y}{n} = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{x}{k} \binom{y}{n-k}$.

3.3.3.1 Pascal's triangle

The binomial coefficients $\binom{n}{k}$ can be arranged in a triangle in which each number is the sum of the two numbers above it. For example $\binom{3}{2} = \binom{2}{1} + \binom{2}{2}$.

| | |
|------------------------|--|
| 1 | $\binom{0}{0}$ |
| 1 1 | $\binom{1}{0} \binom{1}{1}$ |
| 1 2 1 | $\binom{2}{0} \binom{2}{1} \binom{2}{2}$ |
| 1 3 3 1 | $\binom{3}{0} \binom{3}{1} \binom{3}{2} \binom{3}{3}$ |
| 1 4 6 4 1 | $\binom{4}{0} \binom{4}{1} \binom{4}{2} \binom{4}{3} \binom{4}{4}$ |
| 1 5 10 10 5 1 | |
| 1 6 15 20 15 6 1 | |
| 1 7 21 35 35 21 7 1 | |
| 1 8 28 56 70 56 28 8 1 | |

3.3.3.2 Binomial coefficient relationships

The binomial coefficients satisfy

$$\begin{aligned} \binom{n+1}{m+1} &= \binom{n}{m} + \binom{n}{m+1}, \\ \binom{n}{m} &= \binom{n}{n-m}, \\ \binom{n+m+1}{n+1} &= \binom{n}{n} + \binom{n+1}{n} + \binom{n+2}{n} + \dots + \binom{n+m}{n}, \\ \binom{2n}{n} &= \binom{n}{0}^2 + \binom{n}{1}^2 + \dots + \binom{n}{n}^2, \\ \binom{m+n}{p} &= \binom{m}{0} \binom{n}{p} + \binom{m}{1} \binom{n}{p-1} + \dots + \binom{m}{p} \binom{n}{0}, \\ 2^n &= \binom{n}{0} + \binom{n}{1} + \dots + \binom{n}{n}, \\ 0 &= \binom{n}{0} - \binom{n}{1} + \dots + (-1)^n \binom{n}{n} && \text{for } n \geq 1, \\ 2^{n-1} &= \binom{n}{0} + \binom{n}{2} + \binom{n}{4} + \dots && \text{for } n \geq 1, \\ 2^{n-1} &= \binom{n}{1} + \binom{n}{3} + \binom{n}{5} + \dots && \text{for } n \geq 1, \\ 0 &= 1 \binom{n}{1} - 2 \binom{n}{2} + \dots + (-1)^{n+1} n \binom{n}{n} && \text{for } n \geq 1. \end{aligned}$$

3.3.4 MULTINOMIAL COEFFICIENTS

The multinomial coefficient $\binom{n}{n_1, n_2, \dots, n_k}$ (also written $C(n; n_1, n_2, \dots, n_k)$) is the number of ways of choosing n_1 objects, then n_2 objects, ..., then n_k objects from a collection of n distinct objects without regard to order. This requires that $\sum_{j=1}^k n_j = n$. The multinomial symbol is numerically evaluated as

$$\binom{n}{n_1, n_2, \dots, n_k} = \frac{n!}{n_1! n_2! \dots n_k!}. \tag{3.3.2}$$

EXAMPLE The number of ways to choose 2 objects, then 1 object, then 1 object from the set $\{a, b, c, d\}$ is $\binom{4}{2,1,1} = 12$; they are as follows (vertical bars show the ordered selections):

$$\begin{array}{cccc} |ab|c|d|, & |ab|d|c|, & |ac|b|d|, & |ac|d|b|, \\ |ad|b|c|, & |ad|c|b|, & |bc|a|d|, & |bc|d|a|, \\ |bd|a|c|, & |bd|c|a|, & |cd|a|b|, & |cd|b|a|. \end{array}$$

3.3.5 ARRANGEMENTS AND DERANGEMENTS

The number of ways to arrange n distinct objects in a row is $n!$; this is the number of permutations of n objects. For example, for the three objects $\{a, b, c\}$, the number of arrangements is $3! = 6$. These permutations are: $abc, bac, cab, acb, bca,$ and cba .

The number of ways to arrange n objects (assuming that there are k types of objects and n_i copies of each object of type i) is the multinomial coefficient $\binom{n}{n_1, n_2, \dots, n_k}$. For example, for the set $\{a, a, b, c\}$ the parameters are $n = 4, k = 3, n_1 = 2, n_2 = 1,$ and $n_3 = 1$. Hence, there are $\binom{4}{2, 1, 1} = \frac{4!}{2!1!1!} = 12$ arrangements; they are

$$\begin{aligned}
 & aabc, \quad aacb, \quad abac, \quad abca, \quad acab, \quad acba, \\
 & baac, \quad baca, \quad bcaa, \quad caab, \quad caba, \quad cbaa.
 \end{aligned}$$

A *derangement* is a permutation of objects, in which object i is not in the i^{th} location. For example, all of the derangements of $\{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ are

$$\begin{aligned}
 & 2143, \quad 2341, \quad 2413, \\
 & 3142, \quad 3412, \quad 3421, \\
 & 4123, \quad 4312, \quad 4321.
 \end{aligned}$$

The number of derangements of n elements, D_n , satisfies the recursion relation, $D_n = (n - 1)(D_{n-1} + D_{n-2})$, with the initial values $D_1 = 0$ and $D_2 = 1$. Hence,

$$D_n = n! \left(1 - \frac{1}{1!} + \frac{1}{2!} - \frac{1}{3!} + \dots + (-1)^n \frac{1}{n!} \right).$$

The numbers D_n are also called *sub-factorials* or *rencontres numbers*. For large values of $n, D_n/n! \sim e^{-1} \approx 0.37$. Hence more than one of every three permutations is a derangement.

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|---|---|---|---|----|-----|------|-------|--------|---------|
| n | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |
| D_n | 0 | 1 | 2 | 9 | 44 | 265 | 1854 | 14833 | 133496 | 1334961 |

3.3.6 PARTITIONS

A partition of a number n is a representation of n as the sum of any number of positive integral parts. The number of partitions of n is denoted $p(n)$. For example: $5 = 4 + 1 = 3 + 2 = 3 + 1 + 1 = 2 + 2 + 1 = 2 + 1 + 1 + 1 = 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1$ so that $p(5) = 7$.

1. The number of partitions of n into exactly m parts is equal to the number of partitions of n into parts the largest of which is exactly m ; this is denoted $p_m(n)$. For example, $p_2(5) = 2$ and $p_3(5) = 2$. Note that $\sum_m p_m(n) = p(n)$.
2. The number of partitions of n into at most m parts is equal to the number of partitions of n into parts which do not exceed m .

The generating functions for $p(n)$ is

$$1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} p(n)x^n = \frac{1}{(1-x)(1-x^2)(1-x^3)\dots} \quad (3.3.3)$$

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|--------|------|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|------|------|
| n | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |
| $p(n)$ | 1 | 2 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 11 | 15 | 22 | 30 | 42 |
| n | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 |
| $p(n)$ | 56 | 77 | 101 | 135 | 176 | 231 | 297 | 385 | 490 | 627 |
| n | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 |
| $p(n)$ | 792 | 1002 | 1255 | 1575 | 1958 | 2436 | 3010 | 3718 | 4565 | 5604 |
| n | 31 | 32 | 33 | 34 | 35 | 40 | 45 | 50 | | |
| $p(n)$ | 6842 | 8349 | 10143 | 12310 | 14883 | 37338 | 89134 | 204226 | | |

A table of $p_m(n)$ values.
The columns sum to $p(n)$.

| | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----|---------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| m | $n = 1$ | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 |
| 1 | 1 | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | 1 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 3 | 3 | 4 | 4 | 5 | 5 |
| 3 | | | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 7 | 8 | 10 |
| 4 | | | | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 5 | 6 | 9 | 11 |
| 5 | | | | | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 10 |
| 6 | | | | | | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 5 | 7 |
| 7 | | | | | | | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 5 |
| 8 | | | | | | | | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 |
| 9 | | | | | | | | | 1 | 1 | 2 |
| 10 | | | | | | | | | | 1 | 1 |

3.3.7 BELL NUMBERS

The n^{th} Bell number, B_n , denotes the number of partitions of a set with n elements. Computationally, the Bell numbers may be written in terms of the Stirling subset numbers (page 213), $B_n = \sum_{m=1}^n \binom{n}{m}$.

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|---|---|---|----|----|-----|-----|------|-------|--------|
| n | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |
| B_n | 1 | 2 | 5 | 15 | 52 | 203 | 877 | 4140 | 21147 | 115975 |

1. A generating function for Bell numbers is $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} B_n x^n = \exp(e^x - 1) - 1$. This gives *Dobinski's formula*: $B_n = e^{-1} \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} m^n / m!$.
2. For large values of n , $B_n \sim n^{-1/2} [\lambda(n)]^{n+1/2} e^{\lambda(n)-n-1}$ where $\lambda(n)$ is defined by the relation: $\lambda(n) \log \lambda(n) = n$.

EXAMPLE There are $B_4 = 15$ different ways to partition the 4 element set $\{a, b, c, d\}$:

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| $\{a\}, \{c\}, \{b, d\},$ | $\{a\}, \{d\}, \{b, c\},$ | $\{b\}, \{c\}, \{a, d\},$ | $\{b\}, \{d\}, \{a, c\},$ |
| $\{c\}, \{d\}, \{a, b\},$ | $\{a, b, c, d\},$ | $\{a, b\}, \{c, d\},$ | $\{a, c\}, \{b, d\},$ |
| $\{a, d\}, \{b, c\},$ | $\{a\}, \{b\}, \{c\}, \{d\},$ | $\{a\}, \{b, c, d\},$ | $\{b\}, \{a, c, d\},$ |
| $\{c\}, \{a, b, d\},$ | $\{d\}, \{a, b, c\},$ | $\{a\}, \{b\}, \{c, d\},$ | |

3.3.8 CATALAN NUMBERS

The Catalan numbers are $C_n = \frac{1}{n-1} \binom{2n-2}{n-2}$. There is the recurrence relation:

$$C_n = C_0 C_{n-1} + C_1 C_{n-2} + \dots + C_{n-1} C_0. \quad (3.3.4)$$

| | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-------|---|---|---|---|----|----|-----|-----|------|------|
| n | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |
| C_n | $1/2$ | 1 | 1 | 2 | 5 | 14 | 42 | 132 | 429 | 1430 | 4862 |

EXAMPLE Given the product $A_1 A_2 \dots A_n$, the number of ways to pair terms keeping the original order is C_n . For example, with $n = 4$, there are $C_4 = 5$ ways to group the terms; they are $(A_1 A_2)(A_3 A_4)$, $((A_1 A_2) A_3) A_4$, $(A_1 (A_2 A_3)) A_4$, $A_1 ((A_2 A_3) A_4)$, and $A_1 (A_2 (A_3 A_4))$.

3.3.9 STIRLING CYCLE NUMBERS

The number $\left[\begin{smallmatrix} n \\ k \end{smallmatrix} \right]$, called a *Stirling cycle number*, is the number of permutations of n symbols which have exactly k non-empty cycles.

EXAMPLE For the 4 element set $\{a, b, c, d\}$, there are $\left[\begin{smallmatrix} 4 \\ 2 \end{smallmatrix} \right] = 11$ permutations containing exactly 2 cycles. They are

$$\begin{aligned} \left(\begin{smallmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 & 4 \end{smallmatrix} \right) &= (123)(4), & \left(\begin{smallmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 & 4 \end{smallmatrix} \right) &= (132)(4), & \left(\begin{smallmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 3 & 2 & 4 & 1 \end{smallmatrix} \right) &= (134)(2), \\ \left(\begin{smallmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 4 & 2 & 1 & 3 \end{smallmatrix} \right) &= (143)(2), & \left(\begin{smallmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 4 & 3 & 1 \end{smallmatrix} \right) &= (124)(3), & \left(\begin{smallmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 4 & 1 & 3 & 2 \end{smallmatrix} \right) &= (142)(3), \\ \left(\begin{smallmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 1 & 3 & 4 & 2 \end{smallmatrix} \right) &= (234)(1), & \left(\begin{smallmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 1 & 4 & 2 & 3 \end{smallmatrix} \right) &= (243)(1), & \left(\begin{smallmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 1 & 4 & 3 \end{smallmatrix} \right) &= (12)(34), \\ \left(\begin{smallmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 3 & 4 & 1 & 2 \end{smallmatrix} \right) &= (13)(24), & \left(\begin{smallmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 4 & 3 & 2 & 1 \end{smallmatrix} \right) &= (14)(23). \end{aligned}$$

3.3.9.1 Properties of Stirling cycle numbers $\left[\begin{smallmatrix} n \\ k \end{smallmatrix} \right]$

- $\left[\begin{smallmatrix} n \\ k \end{smallmatrix} \right] = (n-1) \left[\begin{smallmatrix} n-1 \\ k \end{smallmatrix} \right] + n \left[\begin{smallmatrix} n-1 \\ k-1 \end{smallmatrix} \right]$ for $k > 0$.
- $\left[\begin{smallmatrix} n \\ 0 \end{smallmatrix} \right] = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } n = 0 \\ 0 & \text{if } n \neq 0 \end{cases}$
- $\sum_{k=0}^n \left[\begin{smallmatrix} n \\ k \end{smallmatrix} \right] = n!$
- $\left[\begin{smallmatrix} n \\ k \end{smallmatrix} \right] = \sum_{m=0}^{n-k} (-1)^m \binom{n-1+m}{n-k+m} \binom{2n-k}{n-m-k} \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} n-m-k \\ m \end{smallmatrix} \right\}$
 where $\left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} n-m-k \\ k \end{smallmatrix} \right\}$ is a Stirling subset number.

5. $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} s(n, k) \frac{x^n}{n!} = \frac{(\log(1+x))^k}{k!}$ for $|x| < 1$. Here $s(n, k)$ is a *Stirling number of the first kind* and can be written as $s(n, k) = (-1)^{n-k} \begin{bmatrix} n \\ k \end{bmatrix}$.

6. The factorial polynomial, defined as $x^{(n)} = x(x-1)\cdots(x-n+1)$ with $x^{(0)} = 1$, can be written as

$$x^{(n)} = \sum_{k=0}^n s(n, k) x^k = s(n, 1)x + s(n, 2)x^2 + \dots + s(n, n)x^n \quad (3.3.5)$$

For example: $x^{(3)} = x(x-1)(x-2) = 2x - 3x^2 + x^3 = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} x - \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix} x^2 + \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix} x^3$.

3.3.9.2 Table of Stirling cycle numbers $\begin{bmatrix} n \\ k \end{bmatrix}$

| | | k | | | | | | |
|-----|---|--------|---------|---------|--------|--------|-------|------|
| n | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |
| 0 | 1 | | | | | | | |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | | | | | | |
| 2 | 0 | 1 | 1 | | | | | |
| 3 | 0 | 2 | 3 | 1 | | | | |
| 4 | 0 | 6 | 11 | 6 | 1 | | | |
| 5 | 0 | 24 | 50 | 35 | 10 | 1 | | |
| 6 | 0 | 120 | 274 | 225 | 85 | 15 | 1 | |
| 7 | 0 | 720 | 1764 | 1624 | 735 | 175 | 21 | 1 |
| 8 | 0 | 5040 | 13068 | 13132 | 6769 | 1960 | 322 | 28 |
| 9 | 0 | 40320 | 109584 | 118124 | 67284 | 22449 | 4536 | 546 |
| 10 | 0 | 362880 | 1026576 | 1172700 | 723680 | 269325 | 63273 | 9450 |

3.3.10 STIRLING SUBSET NUMBERS

The *Stirling subset number*, $\begin{Bmatrix} n \\ k \end{Bmatrix}$, is the number of ways to partition n into k blocks. Equivalently, it is the number of ways that n distinguishable balls can be placed into k indistinguishable cells, with no cell empty.

EXAMPLE Placing the 4 distinguishable balls $\{a, b, c, d\}$ into 2 indistinguishable cells, so that no cell is empty, can be done in $\begin{Bmatrix} 4 \\ 2 \end{Bmatrix} = 7$ ways. These are (vertical bars delineate the cells)

$$\begin{array}{cccc} | ab | cd |, & | ad | bc |, & | ac | bd |, & | a | bcd |, \\ | b | acd |, & | c | abd |, & | d | abc |. & \end{array}$$

3.3.10.1 Properties of Stirling subset numbers $\begin{Bmatrix} n \\ k \end{Bmatrix}$

1. Stirling subset numbers are also called *Stirling numbers of the second kind*, and are denoted by $S(n, k)$.

$$2. \begin{Bmatrix} n \\ 0 \end{Bmatrix} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } n = 0 \\ 0 & \text{if } n \neq 0. \end{cases}$$

$$4. \begin{Bmatrix} n \\ 2 \end{Bmatrix} = 2^{n-1} - 1.$$

$$3. \begin{Bmatrix} n \\ 1 \end{Bmatrix} = \begin{Bmatrix} n \\ n \end{Bmatrix} = 1.$$

$$5. \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \begin{Bmatrix} n \\ k \end{Bmatrix} \frac{x^n}{n!} = \frac{(e^x - 1)^k}{k!}.$$

$$6. \begin{Bmatrix} n \\ k \end{Bmatrix} = k \begin{Bmatrix} n-1 \\ k \end{Bmatrix} + \begin{Bmatrix} n-1 \\ k-1 \end{Bmatrix} \text{ for } k > 0.$$

$$7. \begin{Bmatrix} n \\ k \end{Bmatrix} = \frac{1}{k!} \sum_{m=0}^k (-1)^{k-m} \binom{k}{m} m^n.$$

8. Ordinary powers can be expanded in terms of factorial polynomials. If $n > 0$, then

$$x^n = \sum_{k=0}^n \begin{Bmatrix} n \\ k \end{Bmatrix} x^{(k)} = \begin{Bmatrix} n \\ 0 \end{Bmatrix} x^{(0)} + \begin{Bmatrix} n \\ 1 \end{Bmatrix} x^{(1)} + \dots + \begin{Bmatrix} n \\ n \end{Bmatrix} x^{(n)}. \quad (3.3.6)$$

For example,

$$\begin{aligned} x^3 &= \begin{Bmatrix} 3 \\ 0 \end{Bmatrix} x^{(0)} + \begin{Bmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{Bmatrix} x^{(1)} + \begin{Bmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{Bmatrix} x^{(2)} + \begin{Bmatrix} 3 \\ 3 \end{Bmatrix} x^{(3)} \\ &= \begin{Bmatrix} 3 \\ 0 \end{Bmatrix} + \begin{Bmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{Bmatrix} x + \begin{Bmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{Bmatrix} x(x-1) + \begin{Bmatrix} 3 \\ 3 \end{Bmatrix} x(x-1)(x-2) \\ &= 0 + x + 3(x^2 - x) + (x^3 - 3x^2 + 2x). \end{aligned} \quad (3.3.7)$$

3.3.10.2 Table of Stirling subset numbers $\begin{Bmatrix} n \\ k \end{Bmatrix}$

| n | k | | | | | | | |
|-----|-----|---|-------|---------|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |
| 0 | 1 | | | | | | | |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | | | | | | |
| 2 | 0 | 1 | 1 | | | | | |
| 3 | 0 | 1 | 3 | 1 | | | | |
| 4 | 0 | 1 | 7 | 6 | 1 | | | |
| 5 | 0 | 1 | 15 | 25 | 10 | 1 | | |
| 6 | 0 | 1 | 31 | 90 | 65 | 15 | 1 | |
| 7 | 0 | 1 | 63 | 301 | 350 | 140 | 21 | 1 |
| 8 | 0 | 1 | 127 | 966 | 1701 | 1050 | 266 | 28 |
| 9 | 0 | 1 | 255 | 3025 | 7770 | 6951 | 2646 | 462 |
| 10 | 0 | 1 | 511 | 9330 | 34105 | 42525 | 22827 | 5880 |
| 11 | 0 | 1 | 1023 | 28501 | 145750 | 246730 | 179487 | 63987 |
| 12 | 0 | 1 | 2047 | 86526 | 611501 | 1379400 | 1323652 | 627396 |
| 13 | 0 | 1 | 4095 | 261625 | 2532530 | 7508501 | 9321312 | 5715424 |
| 14 | 0 | 1 | 8191 | 788970 | 10391745 | 40075035 | 63436373 | 49329280 |
| 15 | 0 | 1 | 16383 | 2375101 | 42355950 | 210766920 | 420693273 | 408741333 |

3.3.11 TABLES

3.3.11.1 Permutations $P(n, m)$

These tables contain the number of permutations of n distinct things taken m at a time, given by $P(n, m) = \frac{n!}{(n - m)!} = n(n - 1) \cdots (n - m + 1)$.

| n | m | | | | | | | | |
|-----|-----|----|-----|------|-------|--------|---------|----------|-----------|
| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 |
| 0 | 1 | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | | | | | | | |
| 2 | 1 | 2 | 2 | | | | | | |
| 3 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 6 | | | | | |
| 4 | 1 | 4 | 12 | 24 | 24 | | | | |
| 5 | 1 | 5 | 20 | 60 | 120 | 120 | | | |
| 6 | 1 | 6 | 30 | 120 | 360 | 720 | 720 | | |
| 7 | 1 | 7 | 42 | 210 | 840 | 2520 | 5040 | 5040 | |
| 8 | 1 | 8 | 56 | 336 | 1680 | 6720 | 20160 | 40320 | 40320 |
| 9 | 1 | 9 | 72 | 504 | 3024 | 15120 | 60480 | 181440 | 362880 |
| 10 | 1 | 10 | 90 | 720 | 5040 | 30240 | 151200 | 604800 | 1814400 |
| 11 | 1 | 11 | 110 | 990 | 7920 | 55440 | 332640 | 1663200 | 6652800 |
| 12 | 1 | 12 | 132 | 1320 | 11880 | 95040 | 665280 | 3991680 | 19958400 |
| 13 | 1 | 13 | 156 | 1716 | 17160 | 154440 | 1235520 | 8648640 | 51891840 |
| 14 | 1 | 14 | 182 | 2184 | 24024 | 240240 | 2162160 | 17297280 | 121080960 |
| 15 | 1 | 15 | 210 | 2730 | 32760 | 360360 | 3603600 | 32432400 | 259459200 |

| n | m | | | | |
|-----|------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|
| | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 |
| 9 | 362880 | | | | |
| 10 | 3628800 | 3628800 | | | |
| 11 | 19958400 | 39916800 | 39916800 | | |
| 12 | 79833600 | 239500800 | 479001600 | 479001600 | |
| 13 | 259459200 | 1037836800 | 3113510400 | 6227020800 | 6227020800 |
| 14 | 726485760 | 3632428800 | 14529715200 | 43589145600 | 87178291200 |
| 15 | 1816214400 | 10897286400 | 54486432000 | 217945728000 | 653837184000 |

3.3.11.2 Combinations $C(n, m) = \binom{n}{m}$

These tables contains the number of combinations of n distinct things taken m at a time, given by $C(n, m) = \binom{n}{m} = \frac{n!}{m!(n - m)!}$.

| n | m | | | | | | | |
|-----|-----|---|----|----|---|---|---|---|
| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | | | | | | |
| 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | | | | | |
| 3 | 1 | 3 | 3 | 1 | | | | |
| 4 | 1 | 4 | 6 | 4 | 1 | | | |
| 5 | 1 | 5 | 10 | 10 | 5 | 1 | | |

| n | m | | | | | | | |
|-----|---|----|-----|------|-------|--------|---------|----------|
| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |
| 6 | 1 | 6 | 15 | 20 | 15 | 6 | 1 | |
| 7 | 1 | 7 | 21 | 35 | 35 | 21 | 7 | 1 |
| 8 | 1 | 8 | 28 | 56 | 70 | 56 | 28 | 8 |
| 9 | 1 | 9 | 36 | 84 | 126 | 126 | 84 | 36 |
| 10 | 1 | 10 | 45 | 120 | 210 | 252 | 210 | 120 |
| 11 | 1 | 11 | 55 | 165 | 330 | 462 | 462 | 330 |
| 12 | 1 | 12 | 66 | 220 | 495 | 792 | 924 | 792 |
| 13 | 1 | 13 | 78 | 286 | 715 | 1287 | 1716 | 1716 |
| 14 | 1 | 14 | 91 | 364 | 1001 | 2002 | 3003 | 3432 |
| 15 | 1 | 15 | 105 | 455 | 1365 | 3003 | 5005 | 6435 |
| 16 | 1 | 16 | 120 | 560 | 1820 | 4368 | 8008 | 11440 |
| 17 | 1 | 17 | 136 | 680 | 2380 | 6188 | 12376 | 19448 |
| 18 | 1 | 18 | 153 | 816 | 3060 | 8568 | 18564 | 31824 |
| 19 | 1 | 19 | 171 | 969 | 3876 | 11628 | 27132 | 50388 |
| 20 | 1 | 20 | 190 | 1140 | 4845 | 15504 | 38760 | 77520 |
| 21 | 1 | 21 | 210 | 1330 | 5985 | 20349 | 54264 | 116280 |
| 22 | 1 | 22 | 231 | 1540 | 7315 | 26334 | 74613 | 170544 |
| 23 | 1 | 23 | 253 | 1771 | 8855 | 33649 | 100947 | 245157 |
| 24 | 1 | 24 | 276 | 2024 | 10626 | 42504 | 134596 | 346104 |
| 25 | 1 | 25 | 300 | 2300 | 12650 | 53130 | 177100 | 480700 |
| 26 | 1 | 26 | 325 | 2600 | 14950 | 65780 | 230230 | 657800 |
| 27 | 1 | 27 | 351 | 2925 | 17550 | 80730 | 296010 | 888030 |
| 28 | 1 | 28 | 378 | 3276 | 20475 | 98280 | 376740 | 1184040 |
| 29 | 1 | 29 | 406 | 3654 | 23751 | 118755 | 475020 | 1560780 |
| 30 | 1 | 30 | 435 | 4060 | 27405 | 142506 | 593775 | 2035800 |
| 31 | 1 | 31 | 465 | 4495 | 31465 | 169911 | 736281 | 2629575 |
| 32 | 1 | 32 | 496 | 4960 | 35960 | 201376 | 906192 | 3365856 |
| 33 | 1 | 33 | 528 | 5456 | 40920 | 237336 | 1107568 | 4272048 |
| 34 | 1 | 34 | 561 | 5984 | 46376 | 278256 | 1344904 | 5379616 |
| 35 | 1 | 35 | 595 | 6545 | 52360 | 324632 | 1623160 | 6724520 |
| 36 | 1 | 36 | 630 | 7140 | 58905 | 376992 | 1947792 | 8347680 |
| 37 | 1 | 37 | 666 | 7770 | 66045 | 435897 | 2324784 | 10295472 |
| 38 | 1 | 38 | 703 | 8436 | 73815 | 501942 | 2760681 | 12620256 |
| 39 | 1 | 39 | 741 | 9139 | 82251 | 575757 | 3262623 | 15380937 |
| 40 | 1 | 40 | 780 | 9880 | 91390 | 658008 | 3838380 | 18643560 |

| n | m | | | | |
|-----|------|------|------|-----|----|
| | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 |
| 8 | 1 | | | | |
| 9 | 9 | 1 | | | |
| 10 | 45 | 10 | 1 | | |
| 11 | 165 | 55 | 11 | 1 | |
| 12 | 495 | 220 | 66 | 12 | 1 |
| 13 | 1287 | 715 | 286 | 78 | 13 |
| 14 | 3003 | 2002 | 1001 | 364 | 91 |

| <i>n</i> | m | | | | |
|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|------------|------------|
| | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 |
| 15 | 6435 | 5005 | 3003 | 1365 | 455 |
| 16 | 12870 | 11440 | 8008 | 4368 | 1820 |
| 17 | 24310 | 24310 | 19448 | 12376 | 6188 |
| 18 | 43758 | 48620 | 43758 | 31824 | 18564 |
| 19 | 75582 | 92378 | 92378 | 75582 | 50388 |
| 20 | 125970 | 167960 | 184756 | 167960 | 125970 |
| 21 | 203490 | 293930 | 352716 | 352716 | 293930 |
| 22 | 319770 | 497420 | 646646 | 705432 | 646646 |
| 23 | 490314 | 817190 | 1144066 | 1352078 | 1352078 |
| 24 | 735471 | 1307504 | 1961256 | 2496144 | 2704156 |
| 25 | 1081575 | 2042975 | 3268760 | 4457400 | 5200300 |
| 26 | 1562275 | 3124550 | 5311735 | 7726160 | 9657700 |
| 27 | 2220075 | 4686825 | 8436285 | 13037895 | 17383860 |
| 28 | 3108105 | 6906900 | 13123110 | 21474180 | 30421755 |
| 29 | 4292145 | 10015005 | 20030010 | 34597290 | 51895935 |
| 30 | 5852925 | 14307150 | 30045015 | 54627300 | 86493225 |
| 31 | 7888725 | 20160075 | 44352165 | 84672315 | 141120525 |
| 32 | 10518300 | 28048800 | 64512240 | 129024480 | 225792840 |
| 33 | 13884156 | 38567100 | 92561040 | 193536720 | 354817320 |
| 34 | 18156204 | 52451256 | 131128140 | 286097760 | 548354040 |
| 35 | 23535820 | 70607460 | 183579396 | 417225900 | 834451800 |
| 36 | 30260340 | 94143280 | 254186856 | 600805296 | 1251677700 |
| 37 | 38608020 | 124403620 | 348330136 | 854992152 | 1852482996 |
| 38 | 48903492 | 163011640 | 472733756 | 1203322288 | 2707475148 |
| 39 | 61523748 | 211915132 | 635745396 | 1676056044 | 3910797436 |
| 40 | 76904685 | 273438880 | 847660528 | 2311801440 | 5586853480 |

| <i>n</i> | m | | | | |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|---------|
| | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 |
| 13 | 1 | | | | |
| 14 | 14 | 1 | | | |
| 15 | 105 | 15 | 1 | | |
| 16 | 560 | 120 | 16 | 1 | |
| 17 | 2380 | 680 | 136 | 17 | 1 |
| 18 | 8568 | 3060 | 816 | 153 | 18 |
| 19 | 27132 | 11628 | 3876 | 969 | 171 |
| 20 | 77520 | 38760 | 15504 | 4845 | 1140 |
| 21 | 203490 | 116280 | 54264 | 20349 | 5985 |
| 22 | 497420 | 319770 | 170544 | 74613 | 26334 |
| 23 | 1144066 | 817190 | 490314 | 245157 | 100947 |
| 24 | 2496144 | 1961256 | 1307504 | 735471 | 346104 |
| 25 | 5200300 | 4457400 | 3268760 | 2042975 | 1081575 |
| 26 | 10400600 | 9657700 | 7726160 | 5311735 | 3124550 |
| 27 | 20058300 | 20058300 | 17383860 | 13037895 | 8436285 |

| n | m | | | | |
|-----|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 |
| 28 | 37442160 | 40116600 | 37442160 | 30421755 | 21474180 |
| 29 | 67863915 | 77558760 | 77558760 | 67863915 | 51895935 |
| 30 | 119759850 | 145422675 | 155117520 | 145422675 | 119759850 |
| 31 | 206253075 | 265182525 | 300540195 | 300540195 | 265182525 |
| 32 | 347373600 | 471435600 | 565722720 | 601080390 | 565722720 |
| 33 | 573166440 | 818809200 | 1037158320 | 1166803110 | 1166803110 |
| 34 | 927983760 | 1391975640 | 1855967520 | 2203961430 | 2333606220 |
| 35 | 1476337800 | 2319959400 | 3247943160 | 4059928950 | 4537567650 |
| 36 | 2310789600 | 3796297200 | 5567902560 | 7307872110 | 8597496600 |
| 37 | 3562467300 | 6107086800 | 9364199760 | 12875774670 | 15905368710 |
| 38 | 5414950296 | 9669554100 | 15471286560 | 22239974430 | 28781143380 |
| 39 | 8122425444 | 15084504396 | 25140840660 | 37711260990 | 51021117810 |
| 40 | 12033222880 | 23206929840 | 40225345056 | 62852101650 | 88732378800 |

3.3.11.3 Fractional binomial coef cients $\binom{a}{k}$

| a | k | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|---------|----------|-------------|-------------|
| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| 1/2 | 1 | 1/2 | -1/8 | 1/16 | -5/128 | 7/256 |
| 1/3 | 1 | 1/3 | -1/9 | 5/81 | -10/243 | 22/729 |
| 1/4 | 1 | 1/4 | -3/32 | 7/128 | -77/2048 | 231/8192 |
| 1/5 | 1 | 1/5 | -2/25 | 6/125 | -21/625 | 399/15625 |
| 1/6 | 1 | 1/6 | -5/72 | 55/1296 | -935/31104 | 4301/186624 |
| 1/7 | 1 | 1/7 | -3/49 | 13/343 | -65/2401 | 351/16807 |
| 1/8 | 1 | 1/8 | -7/128 | 35/1024 | -805/32768 | 4991/262144 |
| 1/9 | 1 | 1/9 | -4/81 | 68/2187 | -442/19683 | 3094/177147 |
| 2/3 | 1 | 2/3 | -1/9 | 4/81 | -7/243 | 14/729 |
| 2/5 | 1 | 2/5 | -3/25 | 8/125 | -26/625 | 468/15625 |
| 2/7 | 1 | 2/7 | -5/49 | 20/343 | -95/2401 | 494/16807 |
| 2/9 | 1 | 2/9 | -7/81 | 112/2187 | -700/19683 | 4760/177147 |
| 3/4 | 1 | 3/4 | -3/32 | 5/128 | -45/2048 | 117/8192 |
| 3/5 | 1 | 3/5 | -3/25 | 7/125 | -21/625 | 357/15625 |
| 3/7 | 1 | 3/7 | -6/49 | 22/343 | -99/2401 | 495/16807 |
| 3/8 | 1 | 3/8 | -15/128 | 65/1024 | -1365/32768 | 7917/262144 |
| 4/5 | 1 | 4/5 | -2/25 | 4/125 | -11/625 | 176/15625 |
| 4/7 | 1 | 4/7 | -6/49 | 20/343 | -85/2401 | 408/16807 |
| 4/9 | 1 | 4/9 | -10/81 | 140/2187 | -805/19683 | 5152/177147 |
| 5/6 | 1 | 5/6 | -5/72 | 35/1296 | -455/31104 | 1729/186624 |
| 5/7 | 1 | 5/7 | -5/49 | 15/343 | -60/2401 | 276/16807 |
| 5/8 | 1 | 5/8 | -15/128 | 55/1024 | -1045/32768 | 5643/262144 |
| 5/9 | 1 | 5/9 | -10/81 | 130/2187 | -715/19683 | 4433/177147 |
| 6/7 | 1 | 6/7 | -3/49 | 8/343 | -30/2401 | 132/16807 |
| 7/8 | 1 | 7/8 | -7/128 | 21/1024 | -357/32768 | 1785/262144 |
| 7/9 | 1 | 7/9 | -7/81 | 77/2187 | -385/19683 | 2233/177147 |
| 8/9 | 1 | 8/9 | -4/81 | 40/2187 | -190/19683 | 1064/177147 |

3.4 GRAPHS

3.4.1 NOTATION

3.4.1.1 Notation for graphs

| | | | |
|-----|----------|--------|-------------------|
| E | edge set | V | vertex set |
| G | graph | ϕ | incidence mapping |

3.4.1.2 Graph invariants

| | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| $\text{Aut}(G)$ | automorphism group | $c(G)$ | circumference |
| $d(u, v)$ | distance between two vertices | $\text{diam}(G)$ | diameter |
| $\text{deg } x$ | degree of a vertex | $e(G)$ | size |
| $\text{ecc}(x)$ | eccentricity | $\text{gir}(G)$ | girth |
| $\text{rad}(G)$ | radius | $P_G(x)$ | chromatic polynomial |
| $Z(G)$ | center | $\alpha(G)$ | independence number |
| $\chi(G)$ | chromatic number | $\chi'(G)$ | chromatic index |
| $\delta(G)$ | minimum degree | $\Delta(G)$ | maximum degree |
| $\gamma(G)$ | genus | $\tilde{\gamma}(G)$ | crosscap number |
| $\kappa(G)$ | vertex connectivity | $\lambda(G)$ | edge connectivity |
| $\nu(G)$ | crossing number | $\bar{\nu}(G)$ | rectilinear crossing number |
| $\theta(G)$ | thickness | $\Upsilon(G)$ | arboricity |
| $\omega(G)$ | clique number | $ G $ | order |

3.4.1.3 Examples of graphs

| | | | |
|------------------|--------------------------|-----------|-------------|
| C_n | cycle | O_n | odd graph |
| \overline{K}_n | empty graph | P_n | path |
| K_n | complete graph | Q_n | cube |
| $K_{m,n}$ | complete bipartite graph | S_n | star |
| $K_n^{(m)}$ | Kneser graphs | $T_{n,k}$ | Turán graph |
| M_n | Möbius ladder | W_n | wheel |

3.4.2 BASIC DEFINITIONS

There are two standard definitions of graphs, a general definition and a more common simplification. Except where otherwise indicated, this book uses the simplified definition, according to which a *graph* is an ordered pair (V, E) consisting of an arbitrary set V and a set E of 2-element subsets of V . Each element of V is called a *vertex* (plural *vertices*). Each element of E is called an *edge*.

According to the general definition, a *graph* is an ordered triple $G = (V, E, \phi)$ consisting of arbitrary sets V and E and an *incidence mapping* ϕ that assigns to each element $e \in E$ a non-empty set $\phi(e) \subseteq V$ of cardinality at most two. Again, the elements of V are called *vertices* and the elements of E are called *edges*. A *loop* is an edge e for which $|\phi(e)| = 1$. A graph has *multiple edges* if edges $e \neq e'$ exist for which $\phi(e) = \phi(e')$.

A (general) graph is called *simple* if it has neither loops nor multiple edges. Because each edge in a simple graph can be identified with the two-element set $\phi(e) \subseteq V$, the simplified definition of graph given above is just an alternative definition of a simple graph.

The word *multigraph* is used to discuss general graphs with multiple edges but no loops. Occasionally the word *pseudograph* is used to emphasize that the graphs under discussion may have both loops and multiple edges. Every graph $G = (V, E)$ considered here is *finite*, i.e., both V and E are finite sets.

Specialized graph terms include the following:

acyclic: A graph is *acyclic* if it has no cycles.

adjacency: Two distinct vertices v and w in a graph are *adjacent* if the pair $\{v, w\}$ is an edge. Two distinct edges are *adjacent* if their intersection is non-empty, i.e., if there is a vertex incident with both of them.

adjacency matrix: For an ordering v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n of the vertices of a graph $G = (V, E)$ of order $|G| = n$, there is a corresponding $n \times n$ *adjacency matrix* $A = (a_{ij})$ defined as follows:

$$a_{ij} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } \{v_i, v_j\} \in E; \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (3.4.1)$$

arboricity: The *arboricity* $\Upsilon(G)$ of a graph G is the minimum number of edge-disjoint spanning forests into which G can be partitioned.

automorphism: An *automorphism* of a graph is a permutation of its vertices that is an isomorphism.

automorphism group: The composition of two automorphisms is again an automorphism; with this binary operation, the automorphisms of a graph G form a group $\text{Aut}(G)$ called the *automorphism group* of G .

ball: The *ball* of radius k about a vertex u in a graph is the set

$$B(u, k) = \{v \in V \mid d(u, v) \leq k\}. \quad (3.4.2)$$

See also *sphere* and *neighborhood*.

block: A *block* is a graph with no cut vertex. A *block* of a graph is a maximal subgraph that is a block.

boundary operator: The *boundary operator* for a graph is the linear mapping from 1-chains (elements of the edge space) to 0-chains (elements of the vertex space) that sends each edge to the indicator mapping the set of two vertices incident with it. See also *vertex space* and *edge space*.

bridge: A *bridge* is an edge in a connected graph whose removal would disconnect the graph.

cactus: A *cactus* is a connected graph, each of whose blocks is a cycle.

cage: An (r, n) -*cage* is a graph of minimal order among r -regular graphs with girth n . A $(3, n)$ -cage is also called an n -cage.

center: The *center* $Z(G)$ of a graph $G = (V, E)$ consists of all vertices whose eccentricity equals the radius of G :

$$Z(G) = \{v \in V(G) \mid \text{ecc}(v) = \text{rad}(G)\}. \quad (3.4.3)$$

Each vertex in the center of G is called a *central vertex*.

characteristic polynomial: All adjacency matrices of a graph G have the same characteristic polynomial, which is called the *characteristic polynomial* of G .

chromatic index: The *chromatic index* $\chi'(G)$ is the least k for which there exists a proper k -coloring of the edges of G ; in other words, it is the least number of matchings into which the edge set can be decomposed.

chromatic number: The *chromatic number* $\chi(G)$ of a graph G is the least k for which there exists a proper k -coloring of the vertices of G ; in other words, it is the least k for which G is k -partite. See also *multipartite*.

chromatic polynomial: For a graph G of order $|G| = n$ with exactly k connected components, the *chromatic polynomial* of G is the unique polynomial $P_G(x)$ for which $P_G(m)$ is the number of proper colorings of G with m colors for each positive integer m .

circuit: A *circuit* in a graph is a trail whose first and last vertices are identical.

circulant graph: A graph G is a *circulant graph* if its adjacency matrix is a circulant matrix; that is, the rows are circular shifts of one another.

circumference: The *circumference* of a graph is the length of its longest cycle.

clique: A *clique* is a set S of vertices for which the induced subgraph $G[S]$ is complete.

clique number: The *clique number* $\omega(G)$ of a graph G is the largest cardinality of a clique in G .

coboundary operator: The *coboundary operator* for a graph is the linear mapping from 0-chains (elements of the vertex space) to 1-chains (elements of the edge space) that sends each vertex to the indicator mapping of the set of edges incident with it.

cocycle vector: A cut vector is sometimes called a *cocycle vector*.

coloring: A partition of the vertex set of a graph is called a *coloring*, and the blocks of the partition are called *color classes*. A coloring with k color classes is called a k -*coloring*. A coloring is *proper* if no two adjacent vertices belong to the same color class. See also *chromatic number* and *chromatic polynomial*.

complement: The *complement* \overline{G} of a graph $G = (V, E)$ has vertex set V and edge set $\binom{V}{2} \setminus E$; that is, its edges are exactly the pairs of vertices that are not edges of G .

complete graph: A graph is *complete* if every pair of distinct vertices is an edge; K_n denotes a complete graph with n vertices.

component: A *component* of a graph is a maximal connected subgraph.

connectedness: A graph is said to be *connected* if each pair of vertices is joined by a walk; otherwise, the graph is *disconnected*. A graph is k -*connected* if it has order at least $k + 1$ and each pair of vertices is joined by k pairwise internally disjoint paths.

connectivity: The *connectivity* $\kappa(G)$ of G is the largest k for which G is k -connected.

contraction: To *contract* an edge $\{v, w\}$ of a graph G is to construct a new graph G' from G by removing the edge $\{v, w\}$ and identifying the vertices v and w . A graph G is *contractible* to a graph H if H can be obtained from G via the contraction of one or more edges of G .

cover: A set $S \subseteq V$ is a *vertex cover* if every edge of G is incident with some vertex in S . A set $T \subseteq E$ is an *edge cover* of a graph $G = (V, E)$ if each vertex of G is incident to at least one edge in T .

crosscap number: The *crosscap number* $\tilde{\gamma}(G)$ of a graph G is the least g for which G has an embedding in a non-orientable surface obtained from the sphere by adding g crosscaps. See also *genus*.

crossing: A *crossing* is a point lying in images of two edges of a drawing of a graph on a surface.

crossing number: The *crossing number* $\nu(G)$ of a graph G is the minimum number of crossings among all drawings of G in the plane. The *rectilinear crossing number* $\overline{\nu}(G)$ of a graph G is the minimum number of crossings among all drawings of G in the plane for which the image of each edge is a straight line segment.

cubic: A graph is a *cubic* graph if it is regular of degree 3.

cut: For each partition $V = V_1 \uplus V_2$ of the vertex set of a graph $G = (V, E)$ into two disjoint blocks, the set of all edges joining a vertex in V_1 to a vertex in V_2 is called a *cut*.

cut space: The *cut space* of a graph G is the subspace of the edge space of G spanned by the cut vectors.

cut vector: The *cut vector* corresponding to a cut C of a graph $G = (V, E)$ is the mapping $v: E \rightarrow GF(2)$ in the edge space of G

$$v(e) = \begin{cases} 1, & e \in C, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (3.4.4)$$

cut vertex: A *cut vertex* of a connected graph is a vertex whose removal, along with all edges incident with it, leaves a disconnected graph.

cycle: A *cycle* is a circuit, each pair of whose vertices other than the first and the last are distinct.

cycle space: The *cycle space* of a graph G is the subspace of the edge space of G consisting of all 1-chains with boundary 0. An indicator mapping of a set of edges with which each vertex is incident an even number of times is called a *cycle vector*. The cycle space is the span of the cycle vectors.

degree: The *degree* $\deg x$ of a vertex x in a graph is the number of vertices adjacent to it. The maximum and minimum degrees of vertices in a graph G are denoted $\Delta(G)$ and $\delta(G)$, respectively.

degree sequence: A sequence (d_1, \dots, d_n) is a *degree sequence* of a graph if there is some ordering v_1, \dots, v_n of the vertices for which d_i is the degree of v_i for each i .

diameter: The *diameter* of G is the maximum distance between two vertices of G ; thus it is also the maximum eccentricity of a vertex in G .

digraph: A *digraph* is a directed graph; one in which each edge has a direction.

distance: The *distance* $d(u, v)$ between vertices u and v in a graph G is the minimum among the lengths of u, v -paths in G , or ∞ if there is no u, v -path.

drawing: A *drawing* of a graph G in a surface S consists of a one-to-one mapping from the vertices of G to points of S and a one-to-one mapping from the edges of G to open arcs in X so that (i) no image of an edge contains an image of some vertex, (ii) the image of each edge $\{v, w\}$ joins the images of v and w , (iii) the images of adjacent edges are disjoint, (iv) the images of two distinct edges never have more than one point in common, and (v) no point of the surface lies in the images of more than two edges.

eccentricity: The *eccentricity* $\text{ecc}(x)$ of a vertex x in a graph G is the maximum distance from x to a vertex of G .

edge connectivity: The *edge connectivity* of G , denoted $\lambda(G)$, is the minimum number of edges whose removal results in a disconnected graph.

edge space: The *edge space* of a graph $G = (V, E)$ is the vector space of all mappings from E to the two-element field $GF(2)$. Elements of the edge space are called *1-chains*.

embedding: An *embedding* of a graph G in a topological space X consists of an assignment of the vertices of G to distinct points of X and an assignment of the edges of G to disjoint open arcs in X so that no arc representing an edge contains some point representing a vertex and so that each arc representing an edge joins the points representing the vertices incident with the edge. See also *drawing*.

end vertex: A vertex of degree 1 in a graph is called an *end vertex*.

Eulerian circuits and trails: A trail or circuit that includes every edge of a graph is said to be *Eulerian*, and a graph is *Eulerian* if it has an Eulerian circuit.

even: A graph is *even* if the degree of every vertex is even.

factor of a graph: A *factor* of a graph G is a spanning subgraph of G . A factor in which every vertex has the same degree k is called a k -factor. If G_1, G_2, \dots, G_k ($k \geq 2$) are edge-disjoint factors of the graph G , and if $\bigcup_{i=1}^k E(G_i) = E(G)$, then G is said to be *factored* into G_1, G_2, \dots, G_k and we write $G = G_1 \oplus G_2 \oplus \dots \oplus G_k$.

forest: A *forest* is an acyclic simple graph; see also *tree*.

genus: The *genus* $\gamma(G)$ (plural form *genera*) of a graph G is the least g for which G has an embedding in an orientable surface of genus g . See also *crosscap number*.

girth: The *girth* $\text{gir}(G)$ of a graph G is the minimum length of a cycle in G , or ∞ if G is acyclic.

Hamiltonian cycles and paths: A path or cycle through all the vertices of a graph is said to be *Hamiltonian*. A graph is *Hamiltonian* if it has a Hamiltonian cycle.

homeomorphic graphs: Two graphs are *homeomorphic* to one another if there is a third graph of which each is a subdivision.

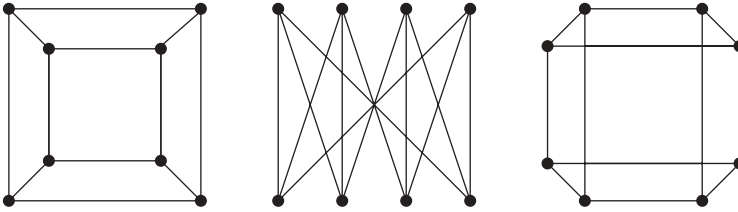
identification of vertices: To *identify* vertices v and w of a graph G is to construct a new graph G' from G by removing the vertices v and w and all the edges of G incident with them and introducing a new vertex u and new edges joining u to each vertex that was adjacent to v or to w in G . See also *contraction*.

incidence: A vertex v and an edge e are *incident* with one another if $v \in e$.

incidence matrix: For an ordering v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n of the vertices and an ordering e_1, e_2, \dots, e_m of the edges of a graph $G = (V, E)$ with order $|G| = n$ and

FIGURE 3.2

Three graphs that are isomorphic.



size $e(G) = m$, there is a corresponding $n \times m$ incidence matrix $B = (b_{ij})$ defined as follows:

$$b_{ij} = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } v_i \text{ and } e_j \text{ are incident,} \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (3.4.5)$$

independence number: The independence number $\alpha(G)$ of a graph $G = (V, E)$ is the largest cardinality of an independent subset of V .

independent set: A set $S \subseteq V$ is said to be *independent* if the induced subgraph $G[S]$ is empty. See also *matching*.

internally disjoint paths: Two paths in a graph with the same initial vertex v and terminal vertex w are *internally disjoint* if they have no internal vertex in common.

isolated vertex: A vertex is *isolated* if it is adjacent to no other vertex.

isomorphism: An *isomorphism* between the two graphs $G = (V_G, E_G)$ and $H = (V_H, E_H)$ is a bijective mapping $\psi: V_G \rightarrow V_H$ for which $\{x, y\} \in E_G$ if and only if $\{\psi(x), \psi(y)\} \in E_H$. If there is an isomorphism between G and H , then G and H are said to be *isomorphic* to one another; this is denoted as $G \cong H$. Figure 3.2 contains three graphs that are isomorphic.

labeled graph: Graph theorists sometimes speak loosely of *labeled graphs* of order n and *unlabeled graphs* of order n to distinguish between graphs with a fixed vertex set of cardinality n and the family of isomorphism classes of such graphs. Thus, one may refer to *labeled graphs* to indicate an intention to distinguish between any two graphs that are *distinct* (i.e., have different vertex sets and/or different edge sets). One may refer to *unlabeled graphs* to indicate the intention to view any two distinct but isomorphic graphs as the ‘same’ graph, and to distinguish only between non-isomorphic graphs.

matching: A *matching* in a graph is a set of edges, no two having a vertex in common. A *maximal matching* is a matching that is not a proper subset of any other matching. A *maximum matching* is a matching of greatest cardinality. For a matching M , an M -*alternating path* is a path whose every other edge

belongs to M , and an M -*augmenting* path is an M -alternating path whose first and last edges do not belong to M . A matching *saturates* a vertex if the vertex belongs to some edge of the matching.

monotone graph property: A property \mathcal{P} that a graph may or may not enjoy is said to be *monotone* if, whenever H is a graph enjoying \mathcal{P} , every supergraph G of H with $|G| = |H|$ also enjoys \mathcal{P} .

multipartite graph: A graph is k -*partite* if its vertex set can be partitioned into k disjoint sets called *color classes* in such a way that every edge joins vertices in two different color classes (see also *coloring*). A two-partite graph is called *bipartite*.

neighbor: Adjacent vertices v and w in a graph are said to be *neighbors* of one another.

neighborhood: The sphere $S(x, 1)$ is called the *neighborhood* of x , and the ball $B(x, 1)$ is called the *closed neighborhood* of x .

order: The *order* $|G|$ of a graph $G = (V, E)$ is the number of vertices in G ; in other words, $|G| = |V|$.

path: A *path* is a walk whose vertices are distinct.

perfect graph: A graph is *perfect* if $\chi(H) = \omega(H)$ for all induced subgraphs H of G .

planarity: A graph is *planar* if it has a proper embedding in the plane.

radius: The *radius* $\text{rad}(G)$ of a graph G is the minimum vertex eccentricity in G .

regularity: A graph is k -*regular* if each of its vertices has degree k . A graph is *strongly regular* with parameters (k, λ, μ) if (i) it is k -regular, (ii) every pair of adjacent vertices has exactly λ common neighbors, and (iii) every pair of non-adjacent vertices has exactly μ common neighbors. A graph $G = (V, E)$ of order $|G| \geq 3$ is called *highly regular* if there exists an $n \times n$ matrix $C = (c_{ij})$, where $2 \leq n < |G|$, called a *collapsed adjacency matrix*, so that, for each vertex v of G , there is a partition of V into n subsets $V_1 = \{v\}, V_2, \dots, V_n$ so that every vertex $y \in V_j$ is adjacent to exactly c_{ij} vertices in V_i . Every highly regular graph is regular.

rooted graph: A *rooted graph* is an ordered pair (G, v) consisting of a graph G and a distinguished vertex v of G called the *root*.

self-complementary: A graph is *self-complementary* if it is isomorphic to its complement.

similarity: Two vertices u and v of a graph G are *similar* (in symbols $u \sim v$) if there is an automorphism α of G for which $\alpha(u) = v$. Similarly, two edges (u, v) and (a, b) in the graph G are *similar* if an automorphism α of G exists for which $\{\alpha(u), \alpha(v)\} = \{a, b\}$.

size: The *size* $e(G)$ of a graph $G = (V, E)$ is the number of edges of G , that is, $e(G) = |E|$.

spectrum: The *spectrum* of a graph G is the spectrum of its characteristic polynomial, i.e., the non-decreasing sequence of $|G|$ eigenvalues of the characteristic polynomial of G . Since adjacency matrices are real symmetric, their spectrum is real.

sphere: The *sphere* of radius k about a vertex u is the set

$$S(u, k) = \{v \in V \mid d(u, v) = k\}. \quad (3.4.6)$$

See also *ball* and *neighborhood*.

subdivision: To *subdivide* an edge $\{v, w\}$ of a graph G is to construct a new graph G' from G by removing the edge $\{v, w\}$ and introducing new vertices x_i and new edges $\{v, x_1\}$, $\{x_k, w\}$ and $\{x_i, x_{i+1}\}$ for $1 \leq i < k$. A *subdivision* of a graph is a graph obtained by subdividing one or more edges of the graph.

subgraph: A graph $H = (V_H, E_H)$ is a *subgraph* of a graph $G = (V_G, E_G)$ (in symbols, $H \preceq G$), if $V_H \subseteq V_G$ and $E_H \subseteq E_G$. In that case, G is a *supergraph* of H (in symbols, $G \succeq H$). If $V_H = V_G$, then H is called a *spanning subgraph* of G . For each set $S \subseteq V_G$, the subgraph $G[S]$ of G *induced* by S is the unique subgraph of G with vertex set S for which every edge of G incident with two vertices in S is also an edge of $G[S]$.

symmetry: A graph is *vertex symmetric* if every pair of vertices is similar. A graph is *edge symmetric* if every pair of edges is similar. A graph is *symmetric* if it is both vertex and edge symmetric.

2-switch: For vertices v, w, x, y in a graph G for which $\{v, w\}$ and $\{x, y\}$ are edges, but $\{v, y\}$ and $\{x, w\}$ are not edges, the construction of a new graph G' from G via the removal of edges $\{v, w\}$ and $\{x, y\}$ together with the insertion of the edges $\{v, y\}$ and $\{x, w\}$ is called a *2-switch*.

thickness: The *thickness* $\theta(G)$ of a graph G is the least k for which G is a union of k planar graphs.

trail: A *trail* in a graph is a walk whose edges are distinct.

tree: A *tree* is a connected forest, i.e., a connected acyclic graph. A spanning subgraph of a graph G that is a tree is called a *spanning tree* of G .

triangle: A 3-cycle is called a triangle.

trivial graph: A *trivial* graph is a graph with exactly one vertex and no edges.

unicyclic graph: A unicyclic graph is a connected graph that contains exactly one cycle.

vertex space: The *vertex space* of a graph G is the vector space of all mappings from V to the two-element field $GF(2)$. The elements of the vertex space are called *0-chains*.

walk: A *walk* in a graph is an alternating sequence $v_0, e_1, v_1, \dots, e_k, v_k$ of vertices v_i and edges e_i for which e_i is incident with v_{i-1} and with v_i for each i . Such a walk is said to have *length* k and to *join* v_0 and v_k . The vertices v_0 and v_k are called the *initial vertex* and *terminal vertex* of the walk; the remaining vertices are called *internal vertices* of the walk.

3.4.3 CONSTRUCTIONS

3.4.3.1 Operations on graphs

For graphs $G_1 = (V_1, E_1)$ and $G_2 = (V_2, E_2)$, there are several binary operations that yield a new graph from G_1 and G_2 . The following table gives the names of some of those operations and the orders and sizes of the resulting graphs.

| Operation producing G | Order $ G $ | Size $e(G)$ |
|--|---------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Composition $G_1[G_2]$ | $ G_1 \cdot G_2 $ | $ G_1 e(G_2) + G_2 ^2e(G_1)$ |
| Conjunction $G_1 \wedge G_2$ | $ G_1 \cdot G_2 $ | |
| Edge sum ^a $G_1 \oplus G_2$ | $ G_1 = G_2 $ | $\leq (e(G_1) + e(G_2))$ |
| Join $G_1 + G_2$ | $ G_1 + G_2 $ | $e(G_1) + e(G_2) + G_1 \cdot G_2 $ |
| Product $G_1 \times G_2$ | $ G_1 \cdot G_2 $ | $ G_1 e(G_2) + G_2 e(G_1)$ |
| Union $G_1 \cup G_2$ | $ G_1 + G_2 $ | $e(G_1) + e(G_2)$ |

^aWhen applicable.

composition: For graphs $G_1 = (V_1, E_1)$ and $G_2 = (V_2, E_2)$, the *composition* $G = G_1[G_2]$ is the graph with vertex set $V_1 \times V_2$ whose edges are (1) the pairs $\{(u, v), (u, w)\}$ with $u \in V_1$ and $\{v, w\} \in E_2$ and (2) the pairs $\{(t, u), (v, w)\}$ for which $\{t, v\} \in E_1$.

conjunction: The conjunction $G_1 \wedge G_2$ of two graphs $G_1 = (V_1, E_1)$ and $G_2 = (V_2, E_2)$ is the graph $G_3 = (V_3, E_3)$ for which $V_3 = V_1 \times V_2$ and for which vertices $\mathbf{e}_1 = (u_1, u_2)$ and $\mathbf{e}_2 = (v_1, v_2)$ in V_3 are adjacent in G_3 if, and only if, u_1 is adjacent to v_1 in G_1 and u_2 is adjacent to v_2 in G_2 .

edge difference: For graphs $G_1 = (V, E_1)$ and $G_2 = (V, E_2)$ with the same vertex set V , the *edge difference* $G_1 - G_2$ is the graph with vertex set V and edge set $E_1 \setminus E_2$.

edge sum: For graphs $G_1 = (V, E_1)$ and $G_2 = (V, E_2)$ with the same vertex set V , the *edge sum* of G_1 and G_2 is the graph $G_1 \oplus G_2$ with vertex set V and edge set $E_1 \cup E_2$. Sometimes the edge sum is denoted $G_1 \cup G_2$.

join: For graphs $G_1 = (V_1, E_1)$ and $G_2 = (V_2, E_2)$ with $V_1 \cap V_2 = \emptyset$, the *join* $G_1 + G_2 = G_2 + G_1$ is the graph obtained from the union of G_1 and G_2 by adding edges joining each vertex in V_1 to each vertex in V_2 .

power: For a graph $G = (V, E)$, the k^{th} *power* G^k is the graph with the same vertex set V whose edges are the pairs $\{u, v\}$ for which $d(u, v) \leq k$ in G . The *square* of G is G^2 .

product: For graphs $G_1 = (V_1, E_1)$ and $G_2 = (V_2, E_2)$, the *product* $G_1 \times G_2$ has vertex set $V_1 \times V_2$; its edges are all of the pairs $\{(u, v), (u, w)\}$ for which $u \in V_1$ and $\{v, w\} \in E_2$ and all of the pairs $\{(t, v), (u, v)\}$ for which $\{t, u\} \in E_1$ and $v \in V_2$.

union: For graphs $G_1 = (V_1, E_1)$ and $G_2 = (V_2, E_2)$ with $V_1 \cap V_2 = \emptyset$, the *union* of G_1 and G_2 is the graph $G_1 \cup G_2 = (V_1 \cup V_2, E_1 \cup E_2)$. The union is sometimes called the *disjoint union* to distinguish it from the *edge sum*.

3.4.3.2 Graphs described by one parameter

complete graph, K_n : A complete graph of order n is a graph isomorphic to the graph K_n with vertex set $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ whose every pair of vertices is an edge. The graph K_n has size $\binom{n}{2}$ and is Hamiltonian. If G is a graph g of order n , then $K_n = G \oplus \overline{G}$.

cube, Q_n : An n -cube is a graph isomorphic to the graph Q_n whose vertices are the 2^n binary n -vectors and whose edges are the pairs of vectors that differ in exactly one place. It is an n -regular bipartite graph of order 2^n and size $n2^{n-1}$. An equivalent recursive definition, $Q_1 = K_2$ and $Q_n = Q_{n-1} \times K_2$.

cycle, C_n : A *cycle* of order n is a graph isomorphic to the graph C_n with vertex set $\{0, 1, \dots, n-1\}$ whose edges are the pairs $\{v_i, v_{i+1}\}$ with $0 \leq i < n$ and arithmetic modulo n . The cycle C_n has size n and is Hamiltonian.

The graph C_n is a special case of a circulant graph. The graph C_3 is called a *triangle*; the graph C_4 is called a *square*.

empty graph: A graph is *empty* if it has no edges; \overline{K}_n denotes an empty graph of order n .

Kneser graphs, $K_n^{(m)}$: For $n \geq 2m$, the *Kneser graph* $K_n^{(m)}$ is the complement of the intersection graph of the m -subsets of an n -set. The *odd graph* O_m is the Kneser graph $K_{2m+1}^{(m)}$. The *Petersen graph* is the odd graph $O_2 = K_5^{(2)}$.

ladder: A *ladder* is a graph of the form $P_n \times P_2$. The *Möbius ladder* M_n is the graph obtained from the ladder $P_n \times P_2$ by joining the opposite end vertices of the two copies of P_n .

path, P_n : A *path* of order n is a graph isomorphic to the graph P_n whose vertex set is $\{1, \dots, n\}$ and whose edges are the pairs $\{v_i, v_{i+1}\}$ with $1 \leq i < n$. A path of order n has size $n-1$ and is a tree.

star, S_n : A *star* of order n is a graph isomorphic to the graph $S_n = K_{1,n}$. It has a vertex cover consisting of a single vertex, its size is n , and it is a complete bipartite graph and a tree.

wheel, W_n : The wheel W_n of order $n \geq 4$ consists of a cycle of order $n-1$ and an additional vertex adjacent to every vertex in the cycle. Equivalently, $W_n = C_{n-1} + K_1$. This graph has size $2(n-1)$.

3.4.3.3 Graphs described by two parameters

complete bipartite graph, $K_{n,m}$: The complete bipartite graph $K_{n,m}$ is the graph $\overline{K}_n + \overline{K}_m$. Its vertex set can be partitioned into two color classes of cardinalities n and m , respectively, so that each vertex in one color class is adjacent to every vertex in the other color class. The graph $K_{n,m}$ has order $n+m$ and size nm .

planar mesh: A graph of the form $P_n \times P_m$ is called a *planar mesh*.

prism: A graph of the form $C_m \times P_n$ is called a *prism*.

Toeplitz graph, $TN(w, s)$: The Toeplitz graph $TN(w, s)$ is defined in terms of its adjacency matrix $A = (a_{ij})$, for which

$$a_{ij} = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } |i - j| = 1 \pmod{w}, \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (3.4.7)$$

The Toeplitz graph is of order $ws + 2$, size $(s + 1)(w - s + 2)/2$, and girth 3 or 4; it is $(s + 1)$ -regular and Hamiltonian. Moreover, $TN(1, s) = K_{s+2}$ and $TN(w, 1) = C_{w+2}$.

toroidal mesh: A graph of the form $C_m \times C_n$ with $m \geq 2$ and $n \geq 2$ is called a *toroidal mesh*.

Turán graph, $T_{n,k}$: The *Turán graph* $T_{n,k}$ is the complete k -partite graph in which the cardinalities of any two color classes differ by, at most, one. It has $n - k \lfloor n/k \rfloor$ color classes of cardinality $\lfloor n/k \rfloor + 1$ and $k - n + k \lfloor n/k \rfloor$ color classes of cardinality $\lfloor n/k \rfloor$. Note that $\omega(T_{n,k}) = k$.

3.4.3.4 Graphs described by three or more parameters

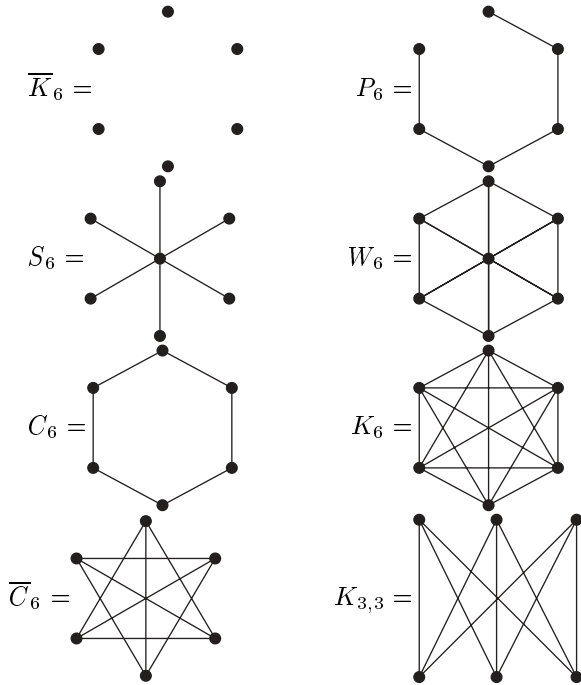
Cayley graph: For a group Γ and a set X of generators of Γ , the *Cayley graph* of the pair (Γ, X) is the graph with vertex set Γ in which $\{\alpha, \beta\}$ is an edge if either $\alpha^{-1}\beta \in X$ or $\beta^{-1}\alpha \in X$.

complete multipartite graph, K_{n_1, n_2, \dots, n_k} : The *complete k -partite graph* K_{n_1, n_2, \dots, n_k} is the graph $\overline{K}_{n_1} + \dots + \overline{K}_{n_k}$. It is a k -partite graph with color classes V_i of cardinalities $|V_i| = n_i$ for which every pair of vertices in two distinct color classes is an edge. The graph K_{n_1, n_2, \dots, n_k} has order $\sum_{i=1}^k n_k$ and size $\sum_{1 \leq i < j \leq k} n_i n_j$.

double loop graph, $DLG(n; a, b)$: The double loop graph $DLG(n; a, b)$ (with a and b between 1 and $(n - 1)/2$) consists of n vertices with every vertex i connected by an edge to the vertices $i \pm a$ and $i \pm b$ (modulo n). The name comes from the following fact: If $\text{GCD}(a, b, n) = 1$, then $DLG(n; a, b)$ is Hamiltonian and, additionally, $DLG(n; a, b)$ can be decomposed into two Hamiltonian cycles. These graphs are also known as circulant graphs.

FIGURE 3.3

Examples of graphs with 6 or 7 vertices.



intersection graph: For a family $F = \{S_1, \dots, S_n\}$ of subsets of a set S , the *intersection graph* of F is the graph with vertex set F in which $\{S_i, S_j\}$ is an edge if and only if $S_i \cap S_j \neq \emptyset$. Each graph G is an intersection graph of some family of subsets of a set of cardinality at most $\lfloor |G|^2/4 \rfloor$.

interval graph: An *interval graph* is an intersection graph of a family of intervals on the real line.

3.4.4 FUNDAMENTAL RESULTS

3.4.4.1 Walks and connectivity

1. Every x, y walk includes all the edges of some x, y path.
2. Some path in G has length $\delta(G)$.
3. Connectivity is a monotone graph property. If more edges are added to a connected graph, the new graph is itself connected.
4. A graph is disconnected if, and only if, it is the union of two graphs.
5. The sets S for which $G[S]$ is a component partition of the vertex set V .

-
6. Every vertex of a graph lies in at least one block.
 7. For every graph G , $0 \leq \kappa(G) \leq |G| - 1$.
 8. For all integers a, b, c with $0 < a \leq b \leq c$, a graph G exists with $\kappa(G) = a$, $\lambda(G) = b$, and $\delta(G) = c$.
 9. For any graph G , $\kappa(G) \leq \lambda(G) \leq \delta(G)$.
 10. *Menger's theorem*: Suppose that G is a connected graph of order greater than k . Then G is k -connected if, and only if, it is impossible to disconnect G by removing fewer than k vertices, and G is k -edge connected if, and only if, it is impossible to disconnect G by removing fewer than k edges.
 11. If G is a connected graph with a bridge, then $\lambda(G) = 1$. If G has order n and is r -regular with $r \geq n/2$, then $\lambda(G) = r$.

3.4.4.2 Trees

1. A graph is a tree if, and only if, it is acyclic and has size $|G| - 1$.
2. A graph is a tree if, and only if, it is connected and has size $|G| - 1$.
3. A graph is a tree if, and only if, each of its edges is a bridge.
4. A graph is a tree if, and only if, each vertex of degree greater than 1 is a cut vertex.
5. A graph is a tree if, and only if, each pair of its vertices is joined by exactly one path.
6. Every tree of order greater than 1 has at least two end vertices.
7. The center of a tree consists of one vertex or two adjacent vertices.
8. For each graph G , every tree with at most $\delta(G)$ edges is a subgraph of G .
9. Every connected graph has a spanning tree.
10. *Kirchhoff matrix-tree theorem*: Let G be a connected graph and let A be an adjacency matrix for G . Obtain a matrix M from $-A$ by replacing each term a_{ii} on the main diagonal with $\deg v_i$. Then all cofactors of M have the same value, which is the number of spanning trees of G .
11. *Nash-Williams arboricity theorem*: For a graph G and for each $n \leq |G|$, define $e_n(G) = \max\{e(H) : H \preceq G, \text{ and } |H| = n\}$. Then

$$\Upsilon(G) = \max_n \left\lceil \frac{e_n}{n-1} \right\rceil. \quad (3.4.8)$$

3.4.4.3 Circuits and cycles

1. *Euler's theorem:* A multigraph is Eulerian if and only if it is connected and even.
2. If G is Hamiltonian, and if G' is obtained from G by removing a non-empty set S of vertices, then the number of components of G' is at most $|S|$.
3. *Ore's theorem:* If G is a graph for which $\deg v + \deg w \geq |G|$ whenever v and w are non-adjacent vertices, then G is Hamiltonian.
4. *Dirac's theorem:* If G is a graph of order $|G| \geq 3$ and $\deg v \geq |G|/2$ for each vertex v , then G is Hamiltonian.
5. (Erdős–Chvátal) If $\alpha(G) \leq \kappa(G)$, then G is Hamiltonian.
6. Every 4-connected planar graph is Hamiltonian.
7. The following table tells which members of several families of graphs are Eulerian or Hamiltonian:

| graph | Is it Eulerian? | Is it Hamiltonian? |
|-----------|--------------------------------|---------------------|
| B_n | yes | yes, for $n \geq 1$ |
| C_n | yes | yes, for $n \geq 1$ |
| D_n | yes, for n even | yes, for $n \geq 2$ |
| K_n | yes, for odd n | yes, for $n \geq 3$ |
| $K_{m,n}$ | yes, for m and n both even | yes, for $m = n$ |
| Q_n | yes, for n even | yes, for $n \geq 2$ |
| W_n | no | yes, for $n \geq 2$ |

3.4.4.4 Cliques and independent sets

1. A set $S \subseteq V$ is a vertex cover if, and only if, $V \setminus S$ is an independent set.
2. *Turán's theorem:* If $|G| = n$ and $\omega(G) \leq k$, then $e(G) \leq e(T_{n,k})$.
3. *Ramsey's theorem:* For all positive integers k and l , there is a least integer $R(k, l)$ for which every graph of order at least $R(k, l)$ has either a clique of cardinality k or an independent set of cardinality l . For $k \geq 2$ and $l \geq 2$, $R(k, l) \leq R(k, l - 1) + R(k - 1, l)$.

| $R(k, l)$ | $l = 1$ | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |
|-----------|---------|---|---|---|----|----|----|
| $k = 1$ | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 2 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |
| 3 | 1 | 3 | 6 | 9 | 14 | 18 | 23 |

3.4.4.5 Colorings and partitions

1. Every graph G is k -partite for some k ; in particular, G is $|G|$ -partite.
2. Every graph G has a bipartite subgraph H for which $e(H) \geq e(G)/2$.
3. $P_G(x) = P_{G-e}(x) - P_{G \setminus e}(x)$.
4. *Brooks' theorem:* If G is a connected graph that is neither a complete graph nor a cycle of odd length, then $\chi(G) \leq \Delta(G)$.
5. For all positive integers g and c , a graph G exists with $\chi(G) \geq c$ and $\text{gir}(G) \geq g$.
6. *Nordhaus–Gaddum bounds:* For every graph G ,

$$2\sqrt{|G|} \leq \chi(G) + \chi(\bar{G}) \leq |G| + 1, \text{ and}$$

$$|G| \leq \chi(G)\chi(\bar{G}) \leq \left(\frac{|G| + 1}{2}\right)^2.$$

7. *Szekeres–Wilf theorem:* For every graph $G = (V, E)$,

$$\chi(G) \leq 1 + \max_{S \subseteq V} \delta(G[S]).$$

8. (König) If G is bipartite, then $\chi'(G) = \Delta(G)$.
9. *Vizing's theorem:* For every graph G , $\Delta(G) \leq \chi'(G) \leq \Delta(G) + 1$.
10. The following table gives the chromatic numbers and chromatic polynomials of various graphs:

| G | $\chi(G)$ | $P_G(x)$ |
|-------------|-----------|-------------------------|
| K_n | n | $x(x-1) \cdots (x-n+1)$ |
| \bar{K}_n | 1 | x^n |
| T_n | 2 | $x(x-1)^{n-1}$ |
| P_n | 2 | $x(x-1)^{n-1}$ |
| C_4 | 2 | $x(x-1)(x^2-3x+3)$ |

11. The following table gives the chromatic numbers and edge-chromatic numbers of various graphs:

| G | $\chi(G)$ | $\chi_1(G)$ |
|---|-----------|-------------------------|
| C_n with n even, $n \geq 2$ | 2 | 2 |
| C_n with n odd, $n \geq 3$ | 3 | 3 |
| K_n with n even, $n \geq 2$ | n | $n-1$ |
| K_n with n odd, $n \geq 3$ | n | n |
| $K_{m,n}$ with $m, n \geq 1$ | 2 | $\max(m, n)$ |
| K_{m_1, \dots, m_k} with $m_i \geq 1$ | k | $\max(m_1, \dots, m_k)$ |
| P_n | 2 | 2 |
| Petersen graph | 3 | 4 |
| W_n with n even, $n \geq 2$ | 3 | n |
| W_n with n odd, $n \geq 3$ | 4 | n |

-
12. (Appel–Haken) *Four-color theorem*: $\chi(G) \leq 4$ for every planar graph G .
13. For each graph G of order $|G| = n$ and size $e(G) = m$ with exactly k components, the chromatic polynomial is of the form

$$P_G(x) = \sum_{i=0}^{n-k} (-1)^i a_i x^{n-i}, \quad (3.4.9)$$

with $a_0 = 1$, $a_1 = m$ and every a_i positive.

14. Not every polynomial is a chromatic polynomial. For example $P(x) = x^4 - 4x^3 + 3x^2$ is not a chromatic polynomial.
15. Sometimes a class of chromatic polynomials can only come from a specific class of graphs. For example:
- If $P_G(x) = x^n$, then $G = \overline{K}_n$.
 - If $P_G(x) = (x)_n$, then $G = K_n$.
 - If $P_G(x) = x(x-1) \cdots (x-r+2)(x-r+1)^2(x-r)^{n-r-1}$ for a graph of order $n \geq r+1$, then G can be obtained from an r -tree T of order n by deleting an edge contained in exactly $r-1$ triangles of T .

3.4.4.6 Distance

- A metric space (X, d) is the metric space associated with a connected graph with vertex set X if, and only if, it satisfies two conditions: (i) $d(u, v)$ is a non-negative integer for all $u, v \in X$, and (ii) whenever $d(u, v) \geq 2$, some element of X lies between u and v . The edges of the graph are the pairs $\{u, v\} \subseteq X$ for which $d(u, v) = 1$. (In an arbitrary metric space (X, d) , a point $v \in X$ is said to lie *between* distinct points $u \in X$ and $w \in X$ if it satisfies the *triangle equality* $d(u, w) = d(u, v) + d(v, w)$.)
- If $G = (V, E)$ is connected, then distance is always finite, and d is a metric on V . Note that $\deg(x) = |S(x, 1)|$.
- Moore bound*: For every connected graph G ,

$$|G| \leq 1 + \Delta(G) \sum_{i=1}^{\text{diam}(G)} (\Delta(G) - 1)^i. \quad (3.4.10)$$

A graph for which the Moore bound holds exactly is called a *Moore graph* with parameters $(|G|, \Delta(G), \text{diam}(G))$. Every Moore graph is regular. If G is a Moore graph with parameters (n, r, d) , then $(n, r, d) = (n, n-1, 1)$ (in which case G is complete), $(n, r, d) = (2m+1, 2, m)$ (in which case G is a $(2m+1)$ -cycle), or $(n, r, d) \in \{(10, 3, 2), (50, 7, 2), (3250, 57, 2)\}$.

3.4.4.7 Drawings, embeddings, planarity, and thickness

1. Every graph has an embedding in \mathbb{R}^3 for which the arcs representing edges are all straight line segments. Such an embedding can be constructed by using distinct points on the curve $\{(t, t^2, t^3) : 0 \leq t \leq 1\}$ as representatives for the vertices.

2. For $n \geq 2$,

$$\begin{aligned}\gamma(Q_n) &= (n-4)2^{n-3} + 1, \text{ and} \\ \tilde{\gamma}(Q_n) &= (n-4)2^{n-2} + 2.\end{aligned}\tag{3.4.11}$$

3. For $r, s \geq 2$,

$$\begin{aligned}\gamma(K_{r,s}) &= \left\lceil \frac{(r-2)(s-2)}{4} \right\rceil, \text{ and} \\ \tilde{\gamma}(K_{r,s}) &= \left\lceil \frac{(r-2)(s-2)}{2} \right\rceil.\end{aligned}\tag{3.4.12}$$

4. For $n \geq 3$,

$$\begin{aligned}\gamma(K_n) &= \left\lceil \frac{(n-3)(n-4)}{12} \right\rceil, \text{ and} \\ \tilde{\gamma}(K_n) &= \left\lceil \frac{(n-3)(n-4)}{6} \right\rceil.\end{aligned}\tag{3.4.13}$$

5. *Heawood map coloring theorem:* The greatest chromatic number among graphs of genus n is

$$\max\{\chi(G) \mid \gamma(G) = n\} = \left\lceil \frac{7 + \sqrt{1 + 48n}}{2} \right\rceil.$$

6. *Kuratowski's theorem:* A graph is planar if and only if it has no subgraph homeomorphic to K_5 or $K_{3,3}$.

7. A graph is planar if and only if it does not have a subgraph contractible to K_5 or $K_{3,3}$.

8. The graph K_n is non-planar if and only if $n \geq 5$.

9. Every planar graph can be embedded in the plane so that every edge is a straight line segment; this is a *Fary embedding*.

10. The four-color theorem states that any planar graph is four colorable.

11. For every graph G of order $|G| \geq 3$, $\theta(G) \geq \left\lceil \frac{e(G)}{3|G| - 6} \right\rceil$.

12. The complete graphs K_9 and K_{10} have thickness 3; for $n \notin \{9, 10\}$,

$$\theta(K_n) = \left\lceil \frac{n+7}{6} \right\rceil.\tag{3.4.14}$$

-
13. The n -cube has thickness $\theta(Q_n) = \lfloor n/4 \rfloor + 1$.
 14. For every planar graph G , $\nu(G) = \overline{\nu}(G)$. That equality does not hold for all graphs: $\nu(K_8) = 18$, and $\overline{\nu}(K_8) = 19$.

3.4.4.8 Vertex degrees

1. *Handshaking lemma*: For every graph G , $\sum_{v \in V} \deg v = 2e(G)$.
2. Every 2-switch preserves the degree sequence.
3. If G and H have the same degree sequence, then H can be obtained from G via a sequence of 2-switches.
4. *Havel theorem*: The values $\{d_1, d_2, \dots, d_n\}$ with $d_1 \geq d_2 \geq \dots \geq d_n > 0$ are a degree sequence if and only if the sequence obtained by deleting d_1 and subtracting 1 from each of the next d_1 largest values (i.e., $\{d_2 - 1, d_3 - 1, \dots, d_{d_1+1} - 1, d_{d_1+2}, \dots, d_n\}$) is a degree sequence.

3.4.4.9 Algebraic methods

1. The bipartite graphs $K_{n,n}$ are circulant graphs.
2. For a graph G with exactly k connected components, the cycle space has dimension $e(G) - |G| + k$, and the cut space has dimension $|G| - k$.
3. In the k^{th} power $A^k = (a_{ij}^k)$ of the adjacency matrix, each entry a_{ij}^k is the number of v_i, v_j walks of length k .
4. The incidence matrix of a graph G is totally unimodular if, and only if, G is bipartite.
5. Every odd graph is vertex-transitive.
6. The smallest graph that is vertex symmetric, but is not edge symmetric, is the prism $K_3 \times K_2$. The smallest graph that is edge symmetric, but is not vertex symmetric, is $S_2 = P_3 = K_{1,2}$.
7. The spectrum of a disconnected graph is the union of the spectra of its components.
8. The sum of the eigenvalues in the spectrum of a graph is zero.
9. The number of distinct eigenvalues in the spectrum of a connected graph is greater than the diameter of the graph.
10. The largest eigenvalue in the spectrum of a graph G is, at most, $\Delta(G)$, with equality if, and only if, G is regular.

-
11. (Wilf) If G is a connected graph and its largest eigenvalue is λ , then $\chi(G) \leq 1 + \lambda$. Moreover, equality holds if, and only if, G is a complete graph or a cycle of odd length.
 12. (Hoffman) If G is a connected graph of order n with spectrum $\lambda_1 \geq \dots \geq \lambda_n$, then $\chi(G) \geq 1 - \lambda_1/\lambda_n$.
 13. *Integrality condition:* If G is a strongly regular graph with parameters (k, λ, μ) , then the quantities

$$\frac{1}{2} \left(|G| - 1 \pm \frac{(|G| - 1)(\mu - \lambda) - 2k}{\sqrt{(\mu - \lambda)^2 + 4(k - \mu)}} \right) \quad (3.4.15)$$

are non-negative integers.

14. The following table gives the automorphism groups of various graphs:

| G | $\text{Aut}(G)$ |
|------------------|-----------------|
| C_n | D_n |
| \overline{K}_n | S_n |
| K_n | S_n |
| $K_{1,n}$ | $E_1 + S_n$ |
| P_n | C_n |

15. A graph and its complement have the same group, $\text{Aut}(G) = \text{Aut}(\overline{G})$.
16. *Frucht's theorem:* Every finite group is the automorphism group of some graph.
17. If G and G' are edge isomorphic, then G and G' are not necessarily required to be isomorphic. For example, the graphs C_3 and S_3 are edge isomorphic, but not isomorphic.
18. If the graph G has order n , then the order of its automorphism group $|\text{Aut}(G)|$ is a divisor of $n!$. The order of the automorphism group equals $n!$ if and only if $G \simeq K_n$ or $G \simeq \overline{K}_n$.

3.4.4.10 Matchings

1. A matching M is a maximum matching if, and only if, there is no M -augmenting path.
2. *Hall's theorem:* A bipartite graph G with bipartition (B_1, B_2) has a matching that saturates every vertex in B_1 if, and only if, $|S(A, 1)| \geq |A|$ for every $A \subseteq B_1$.
3. *König's theorem:* In a bipartite graph, the cardinality of a maximum matching equals the cardinality of a minimum vertex cover.

3.4.4.11 Enumeration

1. The number of labeled graphs of order n is $2^{\binom{n}{2}}$.
2. The number of labeled graphs of order n and size m is $\binom{\binom{n}{2}}{m}$.
3. The number of different ways in which a graph G of order n can be labeled is $n!/|\text{Aut}(G)|$.
4. *Cayley's formula*: The number of labeled trees of order n is n^{n-2} .
5. The number of labeled trees of order n with exactly t end vertices is $\frac{n!}{t!} S(n-2, n-t)$ for $2 \leq t \leq n-1$ (where $S(\cdot, \cdot)$ is a Stirling number of the second kind).
6. The following table lists the number of graphs, number of digraphs, number of trees (t_n), number of rooted trees (T_n), of different orders.

| Order | Graphs | Digraphs | Trees (t_n) | Rooted trees (T_n) |
|-------|----------|---------------|-----------------|------------------------|
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 2 | 2 | 3 | 1 | 1 |
| 3 | 4 | 16 | 1 | 2 |
| 4 | 11 | 218 | 2 | 4 |
| 5 | 34 | 9608 | 3 | 9 |
| 6 | 156 | 1540944 | 6 | 20 |
| 7 | 1044 | 882033440 | 11 | 48 |
| 8 | 12346 | 1793359192848 | 23 | 115 |
| 9 | 274668 | | 47 | 286 |
| 10 | 12005168 | | 106 | 719 |

7. Define the generating functions $T(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} T_n x^n$ and $t(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} t_n x^n$. Then $T(x) = x \exp\left(\sum_{r=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{r} T(x)^r\right)$, and $t(x) = T(x) - \frac{1}{2}[T^2(x) - T(x^2)]$.
8. The following table lists the number of isomorphism classes of graphs of order n and size m .

| m | $n = 1$ | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 |
|-----|---------|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 1 | | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 2 | | | 1 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 1 |
| 3 | | | | 1 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 5 | 5 |
| 4 | | | | | 2 | 6 | 9 | 10 | 11 |
| 5 | | | | | | 1 | 6 | 15 | 24 |
| 6 | | | | | | | 1 | 6 | 21 |
| 7 | | | | | | | | 4 | 24 |
| 8 | | | | | | | | | 2 |
| 9 | | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | | | | | | | | | |

| m | $n = 1$ | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 |
|-----|---------|---|---|---|---|---|-----|------|-------|
| 11 | | | | | | 9 | 148 | 980 | 3252 |
| 12 | | | | | | 5 | 131 | 1312 | 5995 |
| 13 | | | | | | 2 | 97 | 1557 | 10120 |
| 14 | | | | | | 1 | 65 | 1646 | 15615 |
| 15 | | | | | | 1 | 41 | 1557 | 21933 |
| 16 | | | | | | | 21 | 1312 | 27987 |
| 17 | | | | | | | 10 | 980 | 32403 |
| 18 | | | | | | | 5 | 663 | 34040 |

9. The following table lists the number of isomorphism classes of digraphs with n vertices and m arcs.

| m | $n = 1$ | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
|-----|---------|---|----|-----|--------|
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 1 | | 2 | 6 | 12 | 20 |
| 2 | | 1 | 15 | 66 | 190 |
| 3 | | | 20 | 220 | 1,140 |
| 4 | | | 15 | 495 | 4,845 |
| 5 | | | 6 | 792 | 15,504 |
| 6 | | | 1 | 924 | 38,760 |
| 7 | | | | 792 | 77,520 |

10. The following table gives the number of labeled graphs of order n having various properties:

| n | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 |
|-----------|---|---|---|----|-------|----------|-----------|-------------|
| All | 1 | 2 | 8 | 64 | 1 024 | 2^{15} | 2^{21} | 2^{28} |
| Connected | 1 | 1 | 4 | 38 | 728 | 26 704 | 1 866 256 | 251 548 592 |
| Even | 1 | 1 | 2 | 8 | 64 | 1 024 | 2^{15} | 2^{21} |
| Trees | 1 | 1 | 3 | 16 | 125 | 1 296 | 16 807 | 262 144 |

11. The following table gives the numbers of isomorphism classes of graphs of order n exhibiting various properties:

| n | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 |
|--------------|---|---|---|----|----|-----|-------|--------|
| All | 1 | 2 | 4 | 11 | 34 | 156 | 1 044 | 12 346 |
| Connected | 1 | 1 | 2 | 6 | 21 | 112 | 853 | 11 117 |
| Even | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 7 | 16 | 54 | 243 |
| Eulerian | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 4 | 8 | 37 | 184 |
| Blocks | 0 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 10 | 56 | 468 | 7 123 |
| Trees | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 6 | 11 | 23 |
| Rooted trees | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 9 | 20 | 48 | 115 |

3.4.4.12 Descriptions of graphs with few vertices

The small graphs can be described in terms of the operations on page 228. Let $\mathcal{G}_{n,m}$ denote the family of isomorphism classes of graphs of order n and size m . Then

$$\begin{array}{ll}
 \mathcal{G}_{1,0} = \{K_1\}, & \mathcal{G}_{4,0} = \{\overline{K}_4\}, \\
 \mathcal{G}_{2,0} = \{\overline{K}_2\}, & \mathcal{G}_{4,1} = \{P_2 \cup \overline{K}_2\}, \\
 \mathcal{G}_{2,1} = \{K_2\}, & \mathcal{G}_{4,2} = \{P_3 \cup \overline{K}_1, P_2 \cup P_2\}, \\
 \mathcal{G}_{3,0} = \{\overline{K}_3\}, & \mathcal{G}_{4,3} = \{P_4, K_3 \cup \overline{K}_1, K_{1,3}\}, \\
 \mathcal{G}_{3,1} = \{K_2 \cup K_1\}, & \mathcal{G}_{4,4} = \{C_4, (K_2 \cup K_1) + K_1\}, \\
 \mathcal{G}_{3,2} = \{P_3\}, & \mathcal{G}_{4,5} = \{K_4 - e\}, \\
 \mathcal{G}_{3,3} = \{K_3\}, & \mathcal{G}_{4,6} = \{K_4\}
 \end{array}$$

3.4.5 TREE DIAGRAMS

Let $T_{n,m}$ denote the m^{th} isomorphism class of trees of order n . [Figure 3.4](#) (page 242) depicts trees of order at most 7. [Figure 3.5](#) (page 243) depicts trees of order 8.

3.5 COMBINATORIAL DESIGN THEORY

Combinatorial design theory is the study of families of subsets with various prescribed regularity properties. An *incidence structure* is an ordered pair (X, \mathcal{B}) :

1. $X = \{x_1, \dots, x_v\}$ is a set of *points*.
2. $\mathcal{B} = \{B_1, \dots, B_b\}$ is a set of *blocks* or *lines*; each $B_j \subseteq X$.
3. The *replication number* r_i of x_i is the number of blocks that contain x_i .
4. The size of B_j is k_j .

Counting the number of pairs (x, B) with $x \in B$ yields $\sum_{i=1}^v r_i = \sum_{j=1}^b k_j$. The *incidence matrix* of an incidence structure is the $v \times b$ matrix $A = (a_{ij})$ with $a_{ij} = 1$ if $x_i \in B_j$ and 0 otherwise.

3.5.1 t -DESIGNS

The incidence structure (X, \mathcal{B}) is called a t - (v, k, λ) *design* if

1. For all j , $k_j = k$ and $1 < k < v$, and
2. Any subset of t points is contained in exactly λ blocks.

FIGURE 3.4

Trees with 7 or fewer vertices.

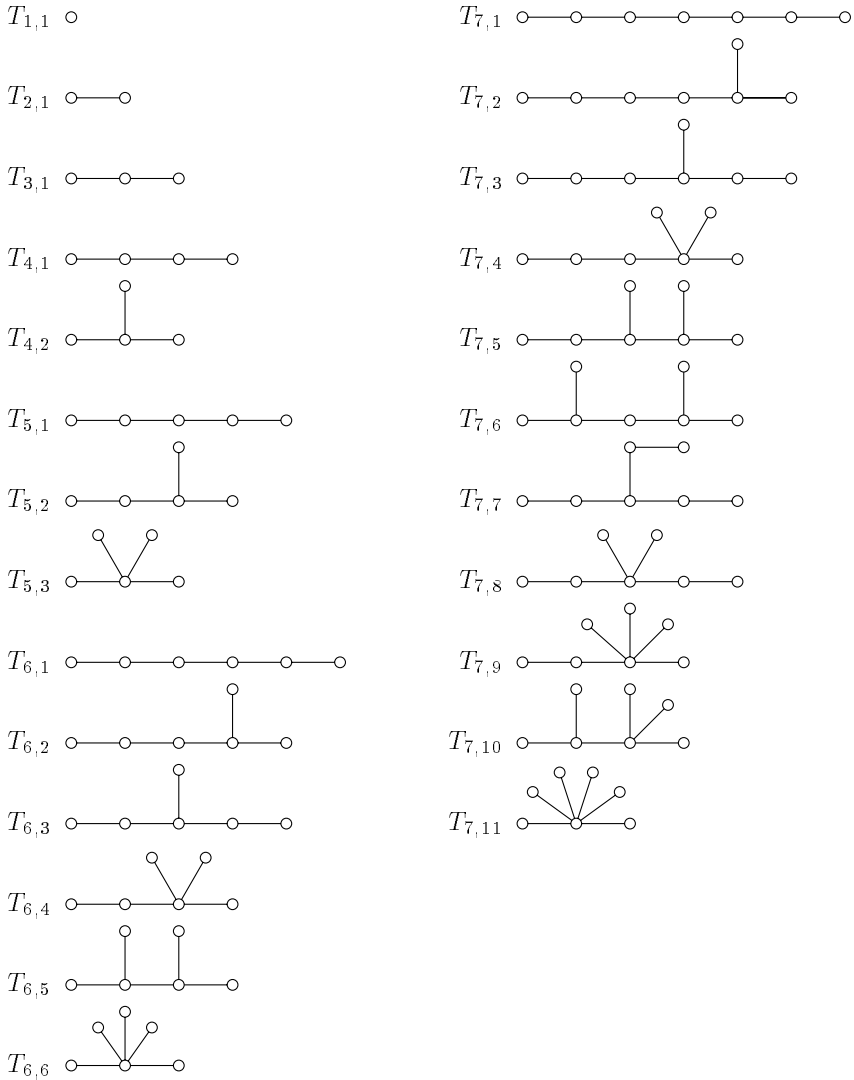
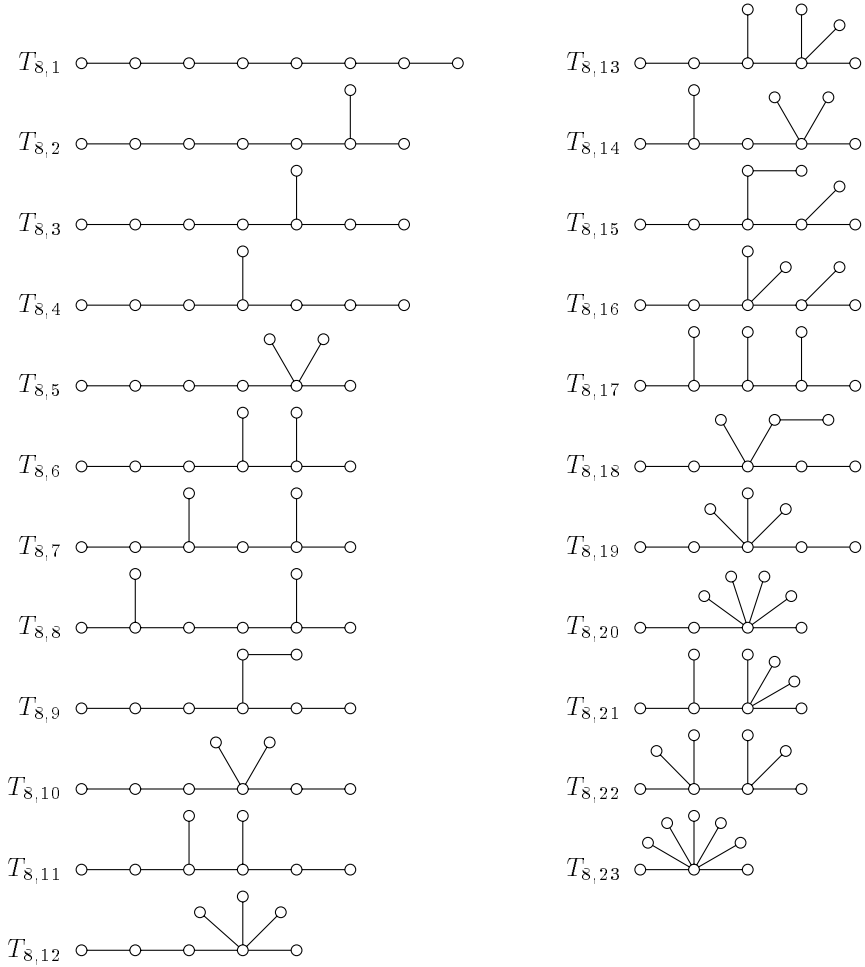


FIGURE 3.5*Trees with 8 vertices.*

A 1-design is equivalent to a $v \times b$ 0-1 matrix with constant row and column sums. Every t -(v, k, λ) design is also a ℓ -(v, k, λ_ℓ) design ($1 \leq \ell \leq t$), where

$$\lambda_\ell = \lambda \binom{v-\ell}{t-\ell} / \binom{k-\ell}{t-\ell}. \tag{3.5.1}$$

A necessary condition for the existence of a t -(v, k, λ) design is that λ_ℓ must be an integer for all $\ell, 1 \leq \ell \leq t$. Another necessary condition is the generalized Fisher's inequality: if $t = 2s$, then $b \geq \binom{v}{s}$.

3.5.1.1 Related designs

The existence of a t -(v, k, λ) design also implies the existence of the following designs:

Complementary design

Let $\mathcal{B}_C = \{X \setminus B \mid B \in \mathcal{B}\}$. Then the incidence structure (X, \mathcal{B}_C) is a t -($v, v-k, \lambda \binom{v-t}{k-t}$) design (provided $v \geq k+t$).

Derived design

Fix $x \in X$ and let $\mathcal{B}_D = \{B \setminus \{x\} \mid B \in \mathcal{B} \text{ with } x \in B\}$. Then the incidence structure $(X \setminus \{x\}, \mathcal{B}_D)$ is a $(t-1)$ -($v-1, k-1, \lambda$) design.

Residual design

Fix $x \in X$ and let $\mathcal{B}_R = \{B \mid B \in \mathcal{B} \text{ with } x \notin B\}$. Then the incidence structure $(X \setminus \{x\}, \mathcal{B}_R)$ is a $(t-1)$ -($v-1, k-1, \lambda \binom{v-t}{k-t+1}$) design.

3.5.1.2 The Mathieu 5-design

The following are the 132 blocks of a 5-(12,6,1) design. The blocks are the supports of the weight-6 codewords in the ternary Golay code (page 258). Similarly, the supports of the 759 weight-8 codewords in the binary Golay code form the blocks of a 5-(24,8,1) design.

| | | | |
|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| 0 1 2 3 4 11 | 0 1 2 3 5 10 | 0 1 2 3 6 8 | 0 1 2 3 7 9 |
| 0 1 2 4 5 9 | 0 1 2 4 6 10 | 0 1 2 4 7 8 | 0 1 2 5 6 7 |
| 0 1 2 5 8 11 | 0 1 2 6 9 11 | 0 1 2 7 10 11 | 0 1 2 8 9 10 |
| 0 1 3 4 5 8 | 0 1 3 4 6 7 | 0 1 3 4 9 10 | 0 1 3 5 6 9 |
| 0 1 3 5 7 11 | 0 1 3 6 10 11 | 0 1 3 7 8 10 | 0 1 3 8 9 11 |
| 0 1 4 5 6 11 | 0 1 4 5 7 10 | 0 1 4 6 8 9 | 0 1 4 7 9 11 |
| 0 1 4 8 10 11 | 0 1 5 6 8 10 | 0 1 5 7 8 9 | 0 1 5 9 10 11 |
| 0 1 6 7 8 11 | 0 1 6 7 9 10 | 0 2 3 4 5 7 | 0 2 3 4 6 9 |
| 0 2 3 4 8 10 | 0 2 3 5 6 11 | 0 2 3 5 8 9 | 0 2 3 6 7 10 |
| 0 2 3 7 8 11 | 0 2 3 9 10 11 | 0 2 4 5 6 8 | 0 2 4 5 10 11 |
| 0 2 4 6 7 11 | 0 2 4 7 9 10 | 0 2 4 8 9 11 | 0 2 5 6 9 10 |
| 0 2 5 7 8 10 | 0 2 5 7 9 11 | 0 2 6 7 8 9 | 0 2 6 8 10 11 |
| 0 3 4 5 6 10 | 0 3 4 5 9 11 | 0 3 4 6 8 11 | 0 3 4 7 8 9 |
| 0 3 4 7 10 11 | 0 3 5 6 7 8 | 0 3 5 7 9 10 | 0 3 5 8 10 11 |
| 0 3 6 7 9 11 | 0 3 6 8 9 10 | 0 4 5 6 7 9 | 0 4 5 7 8 11 |
| 0 4 5 8 9 10 | 0 4 6 7 8 10 | 0 4 6 9 10 11 | 0 4 6 7 10 11 |
| 0 5 6 8 9 11 | 0 7 8 9 10 11 | 1 2 3 4 5 6 | 1 2 3 4 7 10 |
| 1 2 3 4 8 9 | 1 2 3 5 7 8 | 1 2 3 5 9 11 | 1 2 3 6 7 11 |

| | | | |
|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1 2 3 6 9 10 | 1 2 3 8 10 11 | 1 2 4 5 7 11 | 1 2 4 5 8 10 |
| 1 2 4 6 7 9 | 1 2 4 6 8 11 | 1 2 4 9 10 11 | 1 2 5 6 8 9 |
| 1 2 5 6 10 11 | 1 2 5 7 9 10 | 1 2 6 7 8 10 | 1 2 7 8 9 11 |
| 1 3 4 5 7 9 | 1 3 4 5 10 11 | 1 3 4 6 8 10 | 1 3 4 6 9 11 |
| 1 3 4 7 8 11 | 1 3 5 6 7 10 | 1 3 5 6 8 11 | 1 3 5 8 9 10 |
| 1 3 6 7 8 9 | 1 3 7 9 10 11 | 1 4 5 6 7 8 | 1 4 5 6 9 10 |
| 1 4 5 8 9 11 | 1 4 6 7 10 11 | 1 4 7 8 9 10 | 1 5 6 7 9 11 |
| 1 5 7 8 10 11 | 1 6 8 9 10 11 | 2 3 4 5 8 11 | 2 3 4 5 9 10 |
| 2 3 4 6 7 8 | 2 3 4 6 10 11 | 2 3 4 7 9 11 | 2 3 5 6 7 9 |
| 2 3 5 6 8 10 | 2 3 5 7 10 11 | 2 3 6 8 9 11 | 2 3 7 8 9 10 |
| 2 4 5 6 7 10 | 2 4 5 6 9 11 | 2 4 5 7 8 9 | 2 4 6 8 9 10 |
| 2 4 7 8 10 11 | 2 5 6 7 8 11 | 2 5 8 9 10 11 | 2 6 7 9 10 11 |
| 3 4 5 6 7 11 | 3 4 5 6 8 9 | 3 4 5 7 8 10 | 3 4 6 7 9 10 |
| 3 4 8 9 10 11 | 3 5 6 9 10 11 | 3 5 7 8 9 11 | 3 6 7 8 10 11 |
| 4 5 6 8 10 11 | 4 5 7 9 10 11 | 4 6 7 8 9 11 | 5 6 7 8 9 10 |

3.5.2 BALANCED INCOMPLETE BLOCK DESIGNS (BIBDS)

Balanced incomplete block designs (BIBDs) are t -designs with $t = 2$, so that every pair of points is on the same number of blocks. The relevant parameters are v , b , r , k , and λ with

$$vr = bk \quad \text{and} \quad v(v-1)\lambda = bk(k-1). \quad (3.5.2)$$

If A is the $v \times b$ incidence matrix, then $AA^T = (r - \lambda)I_v + \lambda J_v$, where I_n is the $n \times n$ identity matrix and J_n is the $n \times n$ matrix of all ones.

3.5.2.1 Symmetric designs

Fisher's inequality states that $b \geq v$. If $b = v$ (equivalently, $r = k$), then the BIBD is called a *symmetric design*, denoted as a (v, k, λ) -design. The incidence matrix for a symmetric design satisfies

$$J_v A = k J_v = A J_v \quad \text{and} \quad A^T A = (k - \lambda) I_v + \lambda J_v, \quad (3.5.3)$$

that is, any two blocks intersect in λ points. The dualness of symmetric designs can be summarized by the following:

$$\begin{array}{ll} v \text{ points} & \longleftrightarrow v \text{ blocks,} \\ k \text{ blocks on a point} & \longleftrightarrow k \text{ points in a block, and} \\ \text{Any two points on } \lambda \text{ blocks} & \longleftrightarrow \text{Any two blocks share } \lambda \text{ points.} \end{array}$$

Some necessary conditions for symmetric designs are

1. If v is even, then $k - \lambda$ is a square integer.
2. *Bruck–Ryser–Chowla theorem*: If v is odd, then the following equation has integer solutions (not all zero):

$$x^2 = (k - \lambda)y^2 + (-1)^{(v-1)/2} \lambda z^2.$$

3.5.2.2 Existence table for BIBDs

Some of the most fruitful construction methods for BIBD are dealt with in separate sections, difference sets (page 246), finite geometry (page 247), Steiner triple systems (page 249), and Hadamard matrices (page 249). The table below gives all parameters for which BIBDs exist with $k \leq v/2$ and $b \leq 30$.

| v | b | r | k | λ | v | b | r | k | λ | v | b | r | k | λ |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----------|
| 6 | 10 | 5 | 3 | 2 | 10 | 18 | 9 | 5 | 4 | 15 | 30 | 14 | 7 | 6 |
| 6 | 20 | 10 | 3 | 4 | 10 | 30 | 9 | 3 | 2 | 16 | 16 | 6 | 6 | 2 |
| 6 | 30 | 15 | 3 | 6 | 10 | 30 | 12 | 4 | 4 | 16 | 20 | 5 | 4 | 1 |
| 7 | 7 | 3 | 3 | 1 | 11 | 11 | 5 | 5 | 2 | 16 | 24 | 9 | 6 | 3 |
| 7 | 14 | 6 | 3 | 2 | 11 | 22 | 10 | 5 | 4 | 16 | 30 | 15 | 8 | 7 |
| 7 | 21 | 9 | 3 | 3 | 12 | 22 | 11 | 6 | 5 | 19 | 19 | 9 | 9 | 4 |
| 7 | 28 | 12 | 3 | 4 | 13 | 13 | 4 | 4 | 1 | 21 | 21 | 5 | 5 | 1 |
| 8 | 14 | 7 | 4 | 3 | 13 | 26 | 6 | 3 | 1 | 21 | 30 | 10 | 7 | 3 |
| 8 | 28 | 14 | 4 | 6 | 13 | 26 | 8 | 4 | 2 | 23 | 23 | 11 | 11 | 5 |
| 9 | 12 | 4 | 3 | 1 | 13 | 26 | 12 | 6 | 5 | 25 | 25 | 9 | 9 | 3 |
| 9 | 18 | 8 | 4 | 3 | 14 | 26 | 13 | 7 | 6 | 25 | 30 | 6 | 5 | 1 |
| 9 | 24 | 8 | 3 | 2 | 15 | 15 | 7 | 7 | 3 | 27 | 27 | 13 | 13 | 6 |
| 10 | 15 | 6 | 4 | 2 | | | | | | | | | | |

3.5.3 DIFFERENCE SETS

Let G be a finite group of order v (see page 161). A subset D of size k is a (v, k, λ) -difference set in G if every non-identity element of G can be written λ times as a “difference” $d_1 d_2^{-1}$ with d_1 and d_2 in D . If G is the cyclic group \mathbb{Z}_v , then the difference set is a *cyclic difference set*. The *order* of a difference set is $n = k - \lambda$. For example, $\{1, 2, 4\}$ is a $(7, 3, 1)$ cyclic difference set of order 2.

The existence of a (v, k, λ) -difference set implies the existence of a (v, k, λ) -design. The points are the elements of G and the blocks are the translates of D : all sets $Dg = \{dg : d \in D\}$ for $g \in G$. Note that each translate Dg is itself a difference set.

EXAMPLES

- Here are the 7 blocks for a $(7, 3, 1)$ -design based on $D = \{1, 2, 4\}$:

1 2 4 2 3 5 3 4 6 4 5 0 5 6 1 6 0 2 0 1 3

- A $(16, 6, 2)$ -difference set in $G = \mathbb{Z}_2 \oplus \mathbb{Z}_2 \oplus \mathbb{Z}_2 \oplus \mathbb{Z}_2$ is

0000 0001 0010 0100 1000 1111

- A $(21, 5, 1)$ -difference set in $G = \langle a, b \mid a^3 = b^7 = 1, a^{-1}ba = a^4 \rangle$ is $\{a, a^2, b, b^2, b^4\}$.

3.5.3.1 Some families of cyclic difference sets

Paley: Let v be a prime congruent to 3 modulo 4. Then the non-zero squares in \mathbb{Z}_v form a $(v, (v-1)/2, (v-3)/4)$ -difference set. Example: $(v, k, \lambda) = (11, 5, 2)$.

Stanton–Sprott: Let $v = p(p + 2)$, where p and $p + 2$ are both primes. Then there is a $(v, (v - 1)/2, (v - 3)/4)$ -difference set. Example: $(v, k, \lambda) = (35, 17, 8)$.

Biquadratic residues (I): If $v = 4a^2 + 1$ is a prime with a odd, then the non-zero fourth powers modulo v form a $(v, (v - 1)/4, (v - 5)/16)$ -difference set. Example: $(v, k, \lambda) = (37, 9, 2)$.

Biquadratic residues (II): If $v = 4a^2 + 9$ is a prime with a odd, then zero and the fourth powers modulo v form a $(v, (v + 3)/4, (v + 3)/16)$ -difference set. Example: $(v, k, \lambda) = (13, 4, 1)$.

Singer: If q is a prime power, then there exists a $\left(\frac{q^m - 1}{q - 1}, \frac{q^{m-1} - 1}{q - 1}, \frac{q^{m-2} - 1}{q - 1}\right)$ -difference set for all $m \geq 3$.

3.5.3.2 Existence table of cyclic difference sets

This table gives all cyclic difference sets for $k \leq v/2$ and $v \leq 50$ up to equivalence by translation and multiplication by a number relatively prime to v .

| v | k | λ | n | Difference set |
|-----|-----|-----------|-----|--|
| 7 | 3 | 1 | 2 | 1 2 4 |
| 11 | 5 | 2 | 3 | 1 3 4 5 9 |
| 13 | 4 | 1 | 3 | 0 1 3 9 |
| 15 | 7 | 3 | 4 | 0 1 2 4 5 8 10 |
| 19 | 9 | 4 | 5 | 1 4 5 6 7 9 11 16 17 |
| 21 | 5 | 1 | 4 | 3 6 7 12 14 |
| 23 | 11 | 5 | 6 | 1 2 3 4 6 8 9 12 13 16 18 |
| 31 | 6 | 1 | 5 | 1 5 11 24 25 27 |
| 31 | 15 | 7 | 8 | 1 2 3 4 6 8 12 15 16 17 23 24 27 29 30 1 2 4 5 7 8 9 10 14 16 18 19 20 25 28 |
| 35 | 17 | 8 | 9 | 0 1 3 4 7 9 11 12 13 14 16 17 21 27 28 29 33 |
| 37 | 9 | 2 | 7 | 1 7 9 10 12 16 26 33 34 |
| 40 | 13 | 4 | 9 | 1 2 3 5 6 9 14 15 18 20 25 27 35 |
| 43 | 21 | 10 | 11 | 1 2 3 4 5 8 11 12 16 19 20 21 22 27 32 33 35 37 39 41 42 1 4 6 9 10 11 13 14 15 16 17 21 23 24 25 31 35 36 38 40 41 |
| 47 | 23 | 11 | 12 | 1 2 3 4 6 7 8 9 12 14 16 17 18 21 24 25 27 28 32 34 36 37 42 |

3.5.4 FINITE GEOMETRY

3.5.4.1 Af ne planes

A finite *af ne plane* is a finite set of *points* together with subsets of points called *lines* that satisfy the axioms:

1. Any two points are on exactly one line.

2. (*Parallel postulate*) Given a point P and a line L not containing P , there is exactly one line through P that does not intersect L .
3. There are four points, no three of which are collinear.

These axioms are sufficient to show that a finite affine plane is a BIBD (see page 245) with

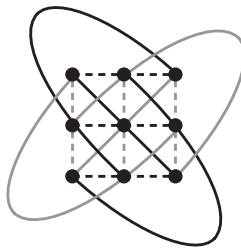
$$v = n^2 \quad b = n^2 + n \quad r = n + 1 \quad k = n \quad \lambda = 1$$

(n is the *order* of the plane). The lines of a projective plane can be divided into $n + 1$ parallel classes each containing n lines. A sufficient condition for affine planes to exist is for n to be a prime power.

Below are two views of the affine plane of order 2 showing the parallel classes.



Below is the affine plane of order 3 showing the parallel classes.



3.5.4.2 Projective planes

A finite *projective plane* is a finite set of points together with subsets of points called *lines* that satisfy the axioms:

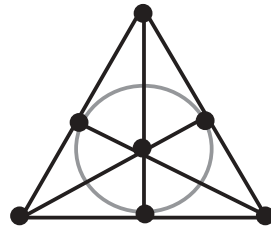
1. Any two points are on exactly one line.
2. Any two lines intersect in exactly one point.
3. There are four points, no three of which are collinear.

These axioms are sufficient to show that a finite projective plane is a symmetric design (see page 245) with

$$v = n^2 + n + 1 \quad k = n + 1 \quad \lambda = 1 \quad (3.5.4)$$

(n is the *order* of the plane). A sufficient condition for projective planes to exist is for n to be a prime power.

A projective plane of order n can be constructed from an affine plane of order n by adding a *line at infinity*. A line of $n + 1$ new points is added to the affine plane. For each parallel class, one distinct new point is added to each line. The construction works in reverse: removing any one line from a projective plane of order n and its points leaves an affine plane of order n . To the right is the projective plane of order 2. The center circle functions as a line at infinity; removing it produces the affine plane of order 2.



3.5.5 STEINER TRIPLE SYSTEMS

A *Steiner triple system* (STS) is a $2-(v,3,1)$ design. In particular, STSs are BIBDs (see page 245). STSs exist if, and only if, $v \equiv 1$ or $3 \pmod{6}$. The number of blocks in an STS is $b = v(v - 1)/6$.

3.5.5.1 Some families of Steiner triple systems

$v = 2^m - 1$: Take as points all non-zero vectors over \mathbb{Z}_2 of length m . A block consists of any set of three distinct vectors $\{x, y, z\}$ such that $x + y + z = 0$.

$v = 3^m$: Take as points all vectors over \mathbb{Z}_3 of length m . A block consists of any set of three distinct vectors $\{x, y, z\}$ such that $x + y + z = 0$.

3.5.5.2 Resolvable Steiner triple systems

An STS is *resolvable* if the blocks can be divided into parallel classes such that each point occurs in exactly one block per class. A resolvable STS exists if and only if $v \equiv 3 \pmod{6}$. For example, the affine plane of order 3 is a resolvable STS with $v = 9$ (see page 247).

A resolvable STS with $v = 15$ ($b = 35$) is known as the *Kirkman schoolgirl problem* and dates from 1850. Here is an example. Each column of 5 triples is a parallel class:

| | | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| a b i | a c j | a d k | a e l | a f m | a g n | a h o |
| c d f | d e g | e f h | f g b | g h c | h b d | b c e |
| g j o | h k i | b l j | c m k | d n l | e o m | f i n |
| e k n | f l o | g m i | h n j | b o k | c i l | d j m |
| h l m | b m n | c n o | d o i | e i j | f j k | g k l |

3.5.6 HADAMARD MATRICES

A *Hadamard matrix* of order n is an $n \times n$ matrix H with entries ± 1 such that $HH^T = nI_n$. In order for a Hadamard matrix to exist, n must be 1, 2, or a multiple of 4. It is conjectured that this condition is also sufficient. If H_1 and H_2 are Hadamard matrices, then so is the Kronecker product $H_1 \otimes H_2$.

3.5.6.1 Some Hadamard matrices

We use “-” to denote -1 .

$$\begin{array}{l}
 n = 2 \qquad n = 4 \qquad n = 8 \\
 \left[\begin{array}{cc} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & - \end{array} \right] \quad \left[\begin{array}{cccc} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & - & 1 & - \\ 1 & 1 & - & - \\ 1 & - & - & 1 \end{array} \right] \quad \left[\begin{array}{cccccccc} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & - & 1 & - & 1 & - & 1 & - \\ 1 & 1 & - & - & 1 & 1 & - & - \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & - & - & - & - \\ 1 & - & 1 & - & - & 1 & - & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & - & - & - & - & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & - & - & 1 & - & 1 & 1 & - \\ 1 & 1 & - & - & 1 & - & 1 & 1 \end{array} \right] \\
 \\
 n = 12 \qquad \left[\begin{array}{cccccccccccc} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & - & - & 1 & - & - & 1 & - & - & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & - & 1 & - & - & 1 & - & - & 1 & - \\ 1 & - & - & - & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & - & - & - & - \\ 1 & - & 1 & 1 & - & - & 1 & 1 & - & - & - & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & - & 1 & - & - & 1 & - & 1 & - & 1 & - \\ 1 & - & - & - & - & - & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & - & - \\ 1 & - & 1 & - & - & 1 & 1 & - & - & - & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & - & - & - & 1 & - & - & - & - & 1 & - \\ 1 & - & - & 1 & 1 & 1 & - & - & - & - & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & - & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & - & - & - & - & 1 & - \\ 1 & 1 & - & - & 1 & - & - & - & 1 & - & - & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & - & - & 1 & 1 & - & - & - & 1 & 1 & - & 1 \\ 1 & - & - & 1 & 1 & - & - & - & 1 & 1 & - & - & 1 \\ 1 & - & - & 1 & - & - & - & - & 1 & - & - & 1 & - \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & - & - & - & - & - & - & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & - & 1 & - & - & 1 & - & 1 & - & 1 & 1 & - & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & - & - & - & 1 & 1 & - & - & 1 & 1 & 1 & - \\ 1 & 1 & - & - & - & 1 & 1 & - & - & 1 & 1 & 1 & - \\ 1 & - & - & 1 & - & 1 & - & - & 1 & 1 & - & - & 1 \end{array} \right] \\
 \\
 n = 16 \qquad \left[\begin{array}{cccccccccccccccc} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & - & 1 & - & 1 & - & 1 & - & 1 & - & 1 & - & 1 & - & 1 & - \\ 1 & 1 & - & - & 1 & 1 & - & - & 1 & 1 & - & - & 1 & 1 & - & - \\ 1 & - & - & 1 & 1 & - & - & - & 1 & 1 & - & - & 1 & 1 & - & - \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & - & - & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & - & - & - & - & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & - & - & - & - & - & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & - & - & - & - & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & - & - & - & - & - & - & - & - \\ 1 & - & 1 & - & - & 1 & - & - & 1 & - & - & 1 & - & - & 1 & - \\ 1 & 1 & - & - & 1 & 1 & - & - & - & 1 & 1 & - & - & - & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & - & - & 1 & 1 & - & - & - & 1 & - & 1 & - & - & - & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & - & - & - & - & - & - & - & - & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & - & 1 & - & - & 1 & - & 1 & - & 1 & 1 & - & 1 & - & 1 & - \\ 1 & 1 & - & - & - & 1 & 1 & - & - & 1 & 1 & - & 1 & 1 & - & - \\ 1 & 1 & - & - & - & 1 & 1 & - & - & 1 & 1 & - & 1 & 1 & - & - \\ 1 & - & - & 1 & - & 1 & 1 & - & - & 1 & 1 & - & 1 & - & - & 1 \end{array} \right]
 \end{array}$$

3.5.6.2 Designs and Hadamard matrices

Without loss of generality, a Hadamard matrix can be assumed to have a r st row and column consisting of all $+1$ s.

BIBDs: Delete the r st row and column. The points of the design are the remaining column indices. Each row produces a block of the design, namely those indices where the entry is $+1$. The resulting design is an $(n - 1, (n - 2)/2, (n - 4)/4)$ symmetric design (see page 249).

3-Designs: The points are the indices of the columns. Each row, except the r st row, yields two blocks, one block for those indices where the entries are $+1$ and one block for those indices where the entries are -1 . The resulting design is a 3 -($n, n/2, (n - 2)/2$) design.

3.5.7 LATIN SQUARES

A *Latin square* of size n is an $n \times n$ array $S = [s_{ij}]$ of n symbols such that every symbol appears exactly once in each row and column. Two Latin squares S and T are *orthogonal* if every pair of symbols occurs exactly once as a pair (s_{ij}, t_{ij}) . Let $M(n)$ be the maximum size of a set of mutually orthogonal Latin squares (MOLS).

1. $M(n) \leq n - 1$.
2. $M(n) = n - 1$ if n is a prime power.
3. $M(n_1 n_2) \geq \min(M(n_1), M(n_2))$.
4. $M(6) = 1$ (i.e., there are no two MOLS of size 6).
5. $M(n) \geq 2$ for all $n \geq 3$ except $n = 6$. (Latin squares of all sizes exist.)

The existence of $n - 1$ MOLS of size n is equivalent to the existence of an affine plane of order n (see page 247).

3.5.7.1 Examples of mutually orthogonal Latin squares

These are complete sets of MOLS for $n = 3, 4$, and 5 .

| | | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|--|--|
| $n = 3$ | | $n = 4$ | |
| 0 1 2 1 2 0 2 0 1 | 0 1 2 2 0 1 1 2 0 | 0 1 2 3 1 0 3 2 2 3 0 1 3 2 1 0 | 0 1 2 3 2 3 0 1 3 2 1 0 1 0 3 2 |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| $n = 5$ | | | |
| 0 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4 0 2 3 4 0 1 3 4 0 1 2 4 0 1 2 3 | 0 1 2 3 4 2 3 4 0 1 4 0 1 2 3 1 2 3 4 0 3 4 0 1 2 | 0 1 2 3 4 3 4 0 1 2 1 2 3 4 0 4 0 1 2 3 2 3 4 0 1 | 0 1 2 3 4 4 0 1 2 3 3 4 0 1 2 2 3 4 0 1 1 2 3 4 0 |

These are two superimposed MOLS for $n = 7, 8, 9$, and 10 .

| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---------|----|----|----|----|----|----|---------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| $n = 7$ | | | | | | | $n = 8$ | | | | | | | |
| 00 | 11 | 22 | 33 | 44 | 55 | 66 | 00 | 11 | 22 | 33 | 44 | 55 | 66 | 77 |
| 16 | 20 | 31 | 42 | 53 | 64 | 05 | 12 | 03 | 30 | 21 | 56 | 47 | 74 | 65 |
| 25 | 36 | 40 | 51 | 62 | 03 | 14 | 24 | 35 | 06 | 17 | 60 | 71 | 42 | 53 |
| 34 | 45 | 56 | 60 | 01 | 12 | 23 | 33 | 22 | 11 | 00 | 77 | 66 | 55 | 44 |
| 43 | 54 | 65 | 06 | 10 | 21 | 32 | 46 | 57 | 64 | 75 | 02 | 13 | 20 | 31 |
| 52 | 63 | 04 | 15 | 26 | 30 | 41 | 57 | 46 | 75 | 64 | 13 | 02 | 31 | 20 |
| 61 | 02 | 13 | 24 | 35 | 46 | 50 | 65 | 74 | 47 | 56 | 21 | 30 | 03 | 12 |
| | | | | | | | 71 | 60 | 53 | 42 | 35 | 24 | 17 | 06 |

| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| $n = 9$ | | | | | | | | | $n = 10$ | | | | | | | | | |
| 00 | 11 | 22 | 33 | 44 | 55 | 66 | 77 | 88 | 00 | 67 | 58 | 49 | 91 | 83 | 75 | 12 | 24 | 36 |
| 12 | 20 | 01 | 45 | 53 | 34 | 78 | 86 | 67 | 76 | 11 | 07 | 68 | 59 | 92 | 84 | 23 | 35 | 40 |
| 21 | 02 | 10 | 54 | 35 | 43 | 87 | 68 | 76 | 85 | 70 | 22 | 17 | 08 | 69 | 93 | 34 | 46 | 51 |
| 36 | 47 | 58 | 60 | 71 | 82 | 03 | 14 | 25 | 94 | 86 | 71 | 33 | 27 | 18 | 09 | 45 | 50 | 62 |
| 48 | 56 | 37 | 72 | 80 | 61 | 15 | 23 | 04 | 19 | 95 | 80 | 72 | 44 | 37 | 28 | 56 | 61 | 03 |
| 57 | 38 | 46 | 81 | 62 | 70 | 24 | 05 | 13 | 38 | 29 | 96 | 81 | 73 | 55 | 47 | 60 | 02 | 14 |
| 63 | 74 | 85 | 06 | 17 | 28 | 30 | 41 | 52 | 57 | 48 | 39 | 90 | 82 | 74 | 66 | 01 | 13 | 25 |
| 75 | 83 | 64 | 18 | 26 | 07 | 42 | 50 | 31 | 21 | 32 | 43 | 54 | 65 | 06 | 10 | 77 | 88 | 99 |
| 84 | 65 | 73 | 27 | 08 | 16 | 51 | 32 | 40 | 42 | 53 | 64 | 05 | 16 | 20 | 31 | 89 | 97 | 78 |
| | | | | | | | | | 63 | 04 | 15 | 26 | 30 | 41 | 52 | 98 | 79 | 87 |

3.5.8 ROOM SQUARES

A *Room square* of side n is an $n \times n$ array with entries either empty or consisting of an unordered pair of symbols from a symbol set of size $n + 1$ with the requirements:

1. Each symbol appears exactly once in each row and column.
2. Every unordered pair occurs exactly once in the array.

Room squares exist if and only if n is odd and $n \geq 7$.

A Room square yields a construction of a round-robin tournament between $n + 1$ opponents over n rounds and played at n locales:

1. Rows of the square represent rounds in the tournament.
2. Columns in the square represent locales.
3. Each pair represents one competition.

Then each team plays exactly once in each round, at each locale, and against each opponent.

EXAMPLE This is a Room square of side 7:

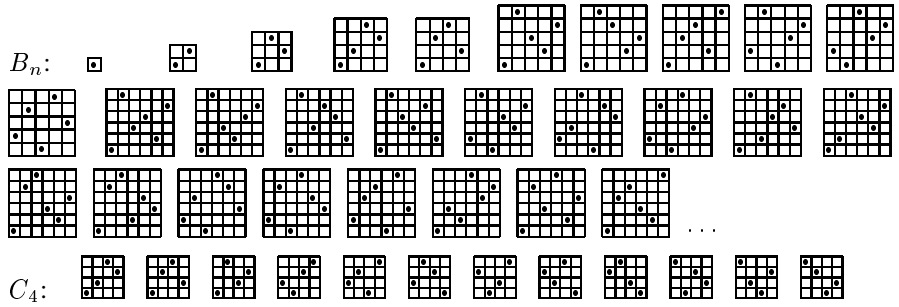
| | | | | | | |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 01 | | | 26 | | 57 | 34 |
| 45 | 02 | | | 37 | | 61 |
| 72 | 56 | 03 | | | 41 | |
| | 13 | 67 | 04 | | | 52 |
| 63 | | 24 | 71 | 05 | | |
| | 74 | | 35 | 12 | 06 | |
| | | 15 | | 46 | 23 | 07 |

3.5.9 COSTAS ARRAYS

An $n \times n$ *Costas array* is an array of zeros and ones whose two-dimensional autocorrelation function is n at the origin and no more than 1 anywhere else. There are B_n basic Costas arrays; there are C_n arrays when rotations and ips are allowed. Each array can be interpreted as a permutation.

| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|---|---|---|----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|------|------|
| n | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 |
| B_n | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 6 | 17 | 13 | 17 | 30 | 60 | 555 | 990 |
| C_n | 1 | 2 | 4 | 12 | 40 | 116 | 200 | 444 | 760 | 2160 | 4368 | 7852 |

| | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------|
| n | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 |
| B_n | 1616 | 2168 | 2467 | 2648 | 2294 | 1892 | 1283 | 810 |
| C_n | 12828 | 17252 | 19612 | 21104 | 18276 | 15096 | 10240 | 6464 |



3.6 COMMUNICATION THEORY

3.6.1 INFORMATION THEORY

3.6.1.1 Definitions

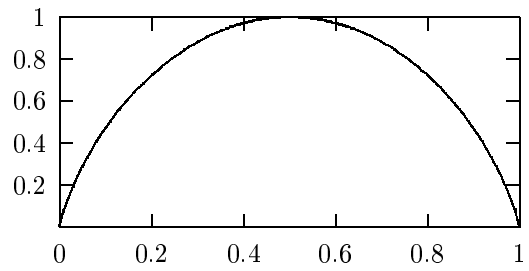
Let $\mathbf{p}_X = (p_{x_1}, p_{x_2}, \dots, p_{x_n})$ be the probability distribution of the discrete random variable X with $\text{Prob}(X = x_i) = p_{x_i}$. The *entropy* of the distribution is

$$H(\mathbf{p}_X) = - \sum_{x_i} p_{x_i} \log_2 p_{x_i}. \tag{3.6.1}$$

The units for entropy are *bits*. Entropy measures how much information is gained from learning the value of X . When X takes only two values, $\mathbf{p} = (p, 1 - p)$, then

$$H(\mathbf{p}_X) = H(p, 1 - p) = -p \log_2 p - (1 - p) \log_2(1 - p). \tag{3.6.2}$$

This is also denoted $H(p)$. The range of $H(p)$ is from 0 to 1 with a maximum at $p = 0.5$. Below is a plot of p versus $H(p)$. The maximum of $H(\mathbf{p}_X)$ is $\log_2 n$ and is obtained when X is uniformly distributed, taking n values.



Given two discrete random variables X and Y , $\mathbf{p}_{X \times Y}$ is the joint distribution of X and Y . The *mutual information* of X and Y is defined by

$$I(X, Y) = H(\mathbf{p}_X) + H(\mathbf{p}_Y) - H(\mathbf{p}_{X \times Y}). \quad (3.6.3)$$

Note that (a) $I(X, Y) = I(Y, X)$; (b) $I(X, Y) \geq 0$; and (c) $I(X, Y) = 0$ if, and only if, X and Y are independent. Mutual information gives the amount of information that learning a value of X says about the value of Y (and vice versa).

3.6.1.2 Continuous entropy

For a d -dimensional continuous random variable \mathbf{X} , the entropy is

$$h(\mathbf{X}) = - \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} p(\mathbf{x}) \log p(\mathbf{x}) \, d\mathbf{x}. \quad (3.6.4)$$

Continuous entropy is not the limiting case of the entropy of a discrete random variable. In fact, if X is the limit of the one-dimensional discrete random variable $\{X_n\}$, and the entropy of X is finite, then

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (H(X_n) - n \log 2) = h(X). \quad (3.6.5)$$

If \mathbf{X} and \mathbf{Y} are continuous d -dimensional random variables with density functions $p(\mathbf{x})$ and $q(\mathbf{y})$, then the *relative entropy* is

$$H(\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{Y}) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^d} p(\mathbf{x}) \log \frac{p(\mathbf{x})}{q(\mathbf{x})} \, d\mathbf{x}. \quad (3.6.6)$$

A d -dimensional normal (or Gaussian) random variable $N(\mathbf{a}, \Gamma)$ has the density function

$$g(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{d/2} \sqrt{|\Gamma|}} \exp \left(-\frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{a})^T \Gamma^{-1} (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{a}) \right) \quad (3.6.7)$$

where \mathbf{a} is the vector of means and Γ is the positive definite covariance matrix.

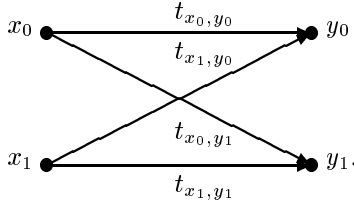
1. If $\mathbf{X} = (X_1, X_2, \dots, X_d)$ is a d -dimensional normal random vector with distribution $N(\mathbf{a}, \Gamma)$ then $h(\mathbf{X}) = \frac{1}{2} \log \left((2\pi e)^d |\Gamma| \right)$.
2. If \mathbf{X} and \mathbf{Y} are d -dimensional normal random vectors with distributions $N(\mathbf{a}, \Gamma)$ and $N(\mathbf{b}, \Delta)$ then

$$H(\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{Y}) = \frac{1}{2} \left(\log \frac{|\Delta|}{|\Gamma|} + \text{tr} (\Gamma (\Delta^{-1} - \Gamma^{-1})) + (\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b})^T \Delta^{-1} (\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}) \right) \quad (3.6.8)$$

3. If \mathbf{X} is a d -dimensional normal random vector with distribution $N(\mathbf{a}, \Gamma)$, and if \mathbf{Y} is a d -dimensional random vector with a continuous probability distribution having the same covariance matrix Γ , then $h(\mathbf{X}) \leq h(\mathbf{Y})$.

3.6.1.3 Channel capacity

The *transition probabilities* are defined by $t_{x,y} = \text{Prob}(Y = y \mid X = x)$. The distribution \mathbf{p}_X determines \mathbf{p}_Y by $p_y = \sum_x t_{x,y} p_x$. The matrix $T = (t_{x,y})$ is the *transition matrix*. The matrix T defines a *channel* given by a transition diagram (input is X , output is Y). For example (here X and Y only take two values),

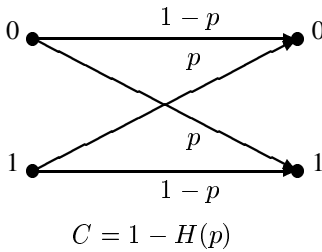


The *capacity* of the channel is defined as

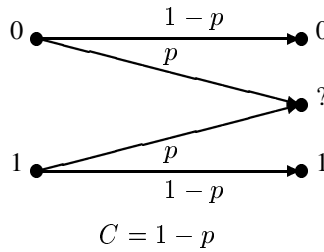
$$C = \max_{\mathbf{p}_X} I(X, Y). \tag{3.6.9}$$

A channel is *symmetric* if each row is a permutation of the first row and each column is a permutation of the first column. The capacity of a symmetric channel is $C = \log_2 n - H(\mathbf{p})$, where \mathbf{p} is the first row; the capacity is achieved when \mathbf{p}_X represents equally likely inputs. The channel shown on the left is symmetric; both channels achieve capacity with equally likely inputs.

Binary symmetric channel



Binary erasure channel



3.6.1.4 Shannon's theorem

Let both X and Y be discrete random variables with values in an alphabet A . A *code* is a set of *codewords* (n -tuples with entries from A) that is in one-to-one correspondence with a set of M messages. The *rate* R of the code is defined as $\frac{1}{n} \log_2 M$. Assume that the codeword is sent via a channel with transition matrix T by sending each vector element independently. Define

$$e = \max_{\text{all codewords}} \text{Prob}(\text{codeword incorrectly decoded}). \tag{3.6.10}$$

Shannon's coding theorem states:

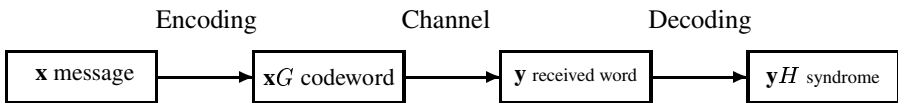
1. If $R < C$, then there is a sequence of codes with rate R and $n \rightarrow \infty$ such that $e \rightarrow 0$.
2. If $R \geq C$, then e is always bounded away from 0.

3.6.2 BLOCK CODING

3.6.2.1 Definitions

A code C over an alphabet A is a set of vectors of a fixed length n with entries from A . Let A be the finite field $\text{GF}(q)$ (see Section 2.7.6.1). If C is a vector space over A , then C is a *linear code*; the *dimension* k of a linear code is its dimension as a vector space. The *Hamming distance* $d_H(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v})$ between two vectors, \mathbf{u} and \mathbf{v} , is the number of places in which they differ. For a vector \mathbf{u} over $\text{GF}(q)$, define the *weight*, $\text{wt}(\mathbf{u})$, as the number of non-zero components. Then $d_H(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}) = \text{wt}(\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v})$. The minimum Hamming distance between two distinct vectors in a code C is called the *minimum distance* d . A code can detect e errors if $e < d$. A code can correct t errors if $2t + 1 \leq d$.

3.6.2.2 Coding diagram for linear codes



1. A message \mathbf{x} consists of k information symbols.
2. The message is encoded as $\mathbf{x}G \in C$, where G is a $k \times n$ matrix called the generating matrix.
3. After transmission over a channel, a (possibly corrupted) vector \mathbf{y} is received.
4. There exists a *parity check matrix* H such that $\mathbf{c} \in C$ if and only if $\mathbf{c}H = \mathbf{0}$. Thus the *syndrome* $\mathbf{z} = \mathbf{y}H$ can be used to try to decode \mathbf{y} .
5. If G has the form $[I \ A]$, where I is the $k \times k$ identity matrix, then $H = \begin{bmatrix} -A \\ I \end{bmatrix}$.

Note: in coding theory unspecified vectors are usually row vectors.

3.6.2.3 Cyclic codes

A linear code C of length n is *cyclic* if $(a_0, \dots, a_{n-1}) \in C$ implies $(a_{n-1}, a_0, \dots, a_{n-2}) \in C$. To each codeword $(a_0, a_1, \dots, a_{n-1}) \in C$ is associated the polynomial $a(x) = \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} a_i x^i$. Every cyclic code has a *generating polynomial* $g(x)$ such that $a(x)$ corresponds to a codeword if, and only if, $a(x) \equiv d(x)g(x) \pmod{x^n - 1}$ for some $d(x)$. The *roots* of a cyclic code are roots of $g(x)$ in some extension field $\text{GF}(q')$ with primitive element α .

1. *BCH Bound*: If a cyclic code C has roots $\alpha^i, \alpha^{i+1}, \dots, \alpha^{i+d-2}$, then the minimum distance of C is at least d .

2. **Binary BCH codes** (BCH stands for Bose, Ray-Chaudhuri, and Hocquenghem): Fix m , define $n = 2^m - 1$, and let α be a primitive element in $\text{GF}(2^m)$. Define $f_i(x)$ as the minimum binary polynomial of α^i . Then

$$g(x) = \text{LCM}(f_1(x), \dots, f_{2e}(x)) \quad (3.6.11)$$

defines a generating polynomial for a binary BCH code of length n and minimum distance at least $\delta = 2e + 1$ (δ is called the *designed distance*). The code dimension is at least $n - me$.

3. **Dual code:** Given a code C , the dual code is $C^\perp = \{\mathbf{a} \mid \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{x} = 0 \text{ for all } \mathbf{x} \in C\}$. The code C^\perp is an $(n, n - k)$ linear code over the same field. A code is *self-dual* if $C = C^\perp$.
4. **MDS codes:** A linear code that meets the Singleton bound, $n + 1 = k + d$, is called *MDS* (for *maximum distance separable*). Any k columns of a generating matrix of an MDS code are linearly independent.
5. **Reed-Solomon codes:** Let α be a primitive element for $\text{GF}(q)$ and $n = q - 1$. The generating polynomial $g(x) = (x - \alpha)(x - \alpha^2) \cdots (x - \alpha^{d-1})$ defines a cyclic MDS code with distance d and dimension $k = n - d + 1$.
6. **Hexacode:** The *hexacode* is a $(6, 3, 4)$ self-dual MDS code over $\text{GF}(4)$. Let the finite field of four elements be $\{0, 1, a, b\}$ with $b = a^2 = a + 1$. The code is generated by the vectors $(1, 0, 0, 1, b, a)$, $(0, 1, 0, 1, a, b)$, and $(0, 0, 1, 1, 1, 1)$. The 64 codewords are:

```

000000  1001ba  a00a1b  b00ba1  0101ab  110011  a10bb0  b10a0a
0a0ab1  1a0b0b  aa00aa  ba0110  0b0b1a  1b0aa0  ab0101  bb00bb
001111  1010ab  a01b0a  b01ab0  0110ba  111100  a11aa1  b11b1b
0a1ba0  1a1a1a  aa11bb  ba1001  0b1a0b  1b1bb1  ab1010  bb11aa
00aaaa  10ab10  a0a0b1  b0a10b  01ab01  11aabb  a1a11a  b1a0a0
0aa01b  1aa1a1  aaaa00  baabba  0ba1b0  1ba00a  ababab  bbaa11
00bbbb  10ba01  a0b1a0  b0b01a  01ba10  11bbaa  a1b00b  b1b1b1
0ab10a  1ab0b0  aabb11  babaab  0bb0a1  1bb11b  abbaba  bbb000.

```

7. **Perfect codes:** A linear code is *perfect* if it satisfies the Hamming bound, $q^{n-k} = \sum_{i=0}^e \binom{n}{i} (q-1)^i$. The binary Hamming codes and Golay codes are perfect.
8. **Binary Hamming codes:** These codes have parameters $\{n = 2^m - 1, k = 2^m - 1 - m, d = 3\}$. The parity check matrix is the $2^m - 1 \times m$ matrix whose rows are all of the binary m -tuples in a fixed order. The generating and parity check matrices for the $(7, 4)$ Hamming code are

$$G = [I \quad A] = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad H = \begin{bmatrix} -A \\ I \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (3.6.12)$$

9. *Binary Golay code*: This has the parameters $\{n = 24, k = 12, d = 8\}$. The generating matrix is

$$G = [I \quad A] = \begin{bmatrix} 100000000000 & 011111111111 \\ 010000000000 & 111011100010 \\ 001000000000 & 110111000101 \\ 000100000000 & 101110001011 \\ 000010000000 & 111100010110 \\ 000001000000 & 111000101101 \\ 000000100000 & 110001011011 \\ 000000010000 & 100010110111 \\ 000000001000 & 100101101110 \\ 000000000100 & 101011011100 \\ 000000000010 & 110110111000 \\ 000000000001 & 101101110001 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (3.6.13)$$

10. *Ternary Golay code*: This has the parameters $\{n = 12, k = 6, d = 6\}$. The generating matrix is

$$G = [I \quad A] = \begin{bmatrix} 100000 & 011111 \\ 010000 & 101221 \\ 001000 & 110122 \\ 000100 & 121012 \\ 000010 & 122101 \\ 000001 & 112210 \end{bmatrix}. \quad (3.6.14)$$

3.6.2.4 Bounds

Bounds for block codes investigate the trade-offs between the length n , the number of codewords M , the minimum distance d , and the alphabet size q . The number of errors that can be corrected is e with $2e + 1 \leq d$. If the code is linear, then the bounds concern the dimension k with $M = q^k$.

1. *Hamming or sphere-packing bound*: $M \leq q^n / \sum_{i=0}^e \binom{n}{i} (q-1)^i$.
2. *Plotkin bound*: Suppose that $d > n(q-1)/q$. Then $M \leq \frac{qd}{qd - n(q-1)}$.
3. *Singleton bound*: For any code, $M \leq q^{n-d+1}$; if the code is linear, then $k + d \leq n + 1$.
4. *Varsharmov–Gilbert bound*: There is a block code with minimum distance at least d and $M \geq q^n / \sum_{i=0}^{d-1} \binom{n}{i} (q-1)^i$.

3.6.2.5 Table of binary BCH codes

| n | k | d |
|-----|-----|-----|
| 7 | 4 | 3 |
| 15 | 11 | 3 |
| | 7 | 5 |
| | 5 | 7 |
| 31 | 26 | 3 |
| | 21 | 5 |
| | 16 | 7 |
| | 11 | 11 |
| | 6 | 15 |
| 63 | 57 | 3 |
| | 51 | 5 |

| n | k | d |
|-----|-----|-----|
| 63 | 45 | 7 |
| | 39 | 9 |
| | 36 | 11 |
| | 30 | 13 |
| | 24 | 15 |
| | 18 | 21 |
| | 16 | 23 |
| | 10 | 27 |
| 127 | 7 | 31 |
| | 120 | 3 |
| | 113 | 5 |
| | 106 | 7 |
| | 99 | 9 |

| n | k | d |
|-----|-----|-----------|
| 127 | 92 | 11 |
| | 85 | 13 |
| | 78 | 15 |
| | 71 | 19 |
| | 64 | 21 |
| | 57 | 23 |
| | 50 | 27 |
| | 43 | 31 |
| | 36 | 31 |
| | 29 | ≥ 43 |
| 22 | 47 | |
| 15 | 55 | |
| 8 | 63 | |

3.6.2.6 Table of best binary codes

Let $A(n, d)$ be the number of codewords¹ in the largest binary code of length n and minimum distance d . Note that $A(n - 1, d - 1) = A(n, d)$ if d is odd and $A(n, 2) = 2^{n-1}$ (given, e.g., by even weight words).

| n | $d = 4$ | $d = 6$ | $d = 8$ | $d = 10$ |
|-----|---------------|-------------|---------|----------|
| 6 | 4 | 2 | 1 | 1 |
| 7 | 8 | 2 | 1 | 1 |
| 8 | 16 | 2 | 2 | 1 |
| 9 | 20 | 4 | 2 | 1 |
| 10 | 40 | 6 | 2 | 2 |
| 11 | 72 | 12 | 2 | 2 |
| 12 | 144 | 24 | 4 | 2 |
| 13 | 256 | 32 | 4 | 2 |
| 14 | 512 | 64 | 8 | 2 |
| 15 | 1024 | 128 | 16 | 4 |
| 16 | 2048 | 256 | 32 | 4 |
| 17 | 2720–3276 | 256–340 | 36–37 | 6 |
| 18 | 5312–6552 | 512–680 | 64–74 | 10 |
| 19 | 10496–13104 | 1024–1288 | 128–144 | 20 |
| 20 | 20480–26208 | 2048–2372 | 256–279 | 40 |
| 21 | 36864–43690 | 2560–4096 | 512 | 42–48 |
| 22 | 73728–87380 | 4096–6942 | 1024 | 50–88 |
| 23 | 147456–173784 | 8192–13774 | 2048 | 76–150 |
| 24 | 294912–344636 | 16384–24106 | 4096 | 128–280 |

¹Data from *Sphere Packing, Lattices and Groups* by J. H. Conway and N. J. A. Sloane, 3rd ed., Springer-Verlag, New York, 1998.

3.6.3 SOURCE CODING FOR ENGLISH TEXT

English text has, on average, 4.08 bits/character.

| Letter | Probability | Huffman code | Alphabetical code |
|--------|-------------|--------------|-------------------|
| Space | 0.1859 | 000 | 00 |
| A | 0.0642 | 0100 | 0100 |
| B | 0.0127 | 011111 | 010100 |
| C | 0.0218 | 11111 | 010101 |
| D | 0.0317 | 01011 | 01011 |
| E | 0.1031 | 101 | 0110 |
| F | 0.0208 | 001100 | 011100 |
| G | 0.0152 | 011101 | 011101 |
| H | 0.0467 | 1110 | 01111 |
| I | 0.0575 | 1000 | 1000 |
| J | 0.0008 | 0111001110 | 1001000 |
| K | 0.0049 | 01110010 | 1001001 |
| L | 0.0321 | 01010 | 100101 |
| M | 0.0198 | 001101 | 10011 |
| N | 0.0574 | 1001 | 1010 |
| O | 0.0632 | 0110 | 1011 |
| P | 0.0152 | 011110 | 110000 |
| Q | 0.0008 | 0111001101 | 110001 |
| R | 0.0484 | 1101 | 11001 |
| S | 0.0514 | 0010 | 1101 |
| T | 0.0796 | 0010 | 1110 |
| U | 0.0228 | 11110 | 111100 |
| V | 0.0083 | 0111000 | 111101 |
| W | 0.0175 | 001110 | 111110 |
| X | 0.0013 | 0111001100 | 1111110 |
| Y | 0.0164 | 001111 | 11111110 |
| Z | 0.0005 | 0111001111 | 11111111 |
| Cost | 4.0799 | 4.1195 | 4.1978 |

3.6.4 MORSE CODE

The international version of Morse code is

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---------|---|---------|----------|-------------|---|-----------|
| A | • — | K | — • — | U | • • — | 1 | • — — — — |
| B | — • • • | L | • — • • | V | • • • — | 2 | • • — — — |
| C | — • — • | M | — — | W | • — — | 3 | • • • — — |
| D | — • • | N | — • | X | — • • — | 4 | • • • • — |
| E | • | O | — — — | Y | — • — — | 5 | • • • • • |
| F | • • — • | P | • — — • | Z | — — • • | 6 | — • • • • |
| G | — — • | Q | — — • — | Period | • — • — • — | 7 | — — • • • |
| H | • • • • | R | • — • | Comma | — — • • — — | 8 | — — — • • |
| I | • • | S | • • • | Question | • • — — • • | 9 | — — — — • |
| J | • — — — | T | — | | | 0 | — — — — — |

3.6.5 GRAY CODE

A *Gray code* is a sequence ordering such that a small change in the sequence number results in a small change in the sequence.

EXAMPLES

- The sixteen 4-bit strings $\{0000, 0001, \dots, 1111\}$ can be ordered so that adjacent bit strings differ in only 1 bit:

| Sequence number | Bit string | Sequence number | Bit string |
|-----------------|------------|-----------------|------------|
| 0 | 0000 | 8 | 1100 |
| 1 | 0001 | 9 | 1101 |
| 2 | 0011 | 10 | 1111 |
| 3 | 0010 | 11 | 1110 |
| 4 | 0110 | 12 | 1010 |
| 5 | 0111 | 13 | 1011 |
| 6 | 0101 | 14 | 1001 |
| 7 | 0100 | 15 | 1000 |

- The subsets of $\{a, b, c\}$ can be ordered so that adjacent subsets differ by only the insertion or deletion of a single element:

$$\phi, \{a\}, \{a, b\}, \{b\}, \{b, c\}, \{a, b, c\}, \{a, c\}, \{c\}.$$

3.6.6 FINITE FIELDS

Pertinent definitions for finite fields may be found in [Section 2.7.6](#) on page 169.

3.6.6.1 Irreducible polynomials

Let $N_q(n)$ be the number of monic irreducible polynomials of degree n over $\text{GF}(q)$. Then

$$q^n = \sum_{d|n} dN_q(d) \quad \text{and} \quad N_q(n) = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{d|n} \mu\left(\frac{n}{d}\right) q^d, \quad (3.6.15)$$

where $\mu(\cdot)$ is the number theoretic Möbius function (see page 102).

3.6.6.2 Table of binary irreducible polynomials

The table lists the non-zero coefficients of binary irreducible polynomials, e.g., 2110 corresponds to $x^2 + x^1 + x^0 = x^2 + x + 1$. The *exponent* of an irreducible polynomial is the smallest L such that $f(x)$ divides $x^L - 1$. A “P” after the exponent indicates that the polynomial is primitive.

| $f(x)$ | Exponent | $f(x)$ | Exponent | $f(x)$ | Exponent |
|-----------|----------|---------------|----------|---------------|----------|
| 2 1 0 | 3 P | 7 3 2 1 0 | 127 P | 8 6 4 3 2 1 0 | 255 P |
| 3 1 0 | 7 P | 7 4 0 | 127 P | 8 6 5 1 0 | 255 P |
| 3 2 0 | 7 P | 7 4 3 2 0 | 127 P | 8 6 5 2 0 | 255 P |
| 4 1 0 | 15 P | 7 5 2 1 0 | 127 P | 8 6 5 3 0 | 255 P |
| 4 2 0 | 15 P | 7 5 3 1 0 | 127 P | 8 6 5 4 0 | 255 P |
| 4 3 2 1 0 | 5 | 7 5 4 3 0 | 127 P | 8 6 5 4 2 1 0 | 85 |
| 5 2 0 | 31 P | 7 5 4 3 2 1 0 | 127 P | 8 6 5 4 3 1 0 | 85 |
| 5 3 0 | 31 P | 7 6 0 | 127 P | 8 7 2 1 0 | 255 P |
| 5 3 2 1 0 | 31 P | 7 6 3 1 0 | 127 P | 8 7 3 1 0 | 85 |
| 5 4 2 1 0 | 31 P | 7 6 4 1 0 | 127 P | 8 7 3 2 0 | 255 P |
| 5 4 3 1 0 | 31 P | 7 6 4 2 0 | 127 P | 8 7 4 3 2 1 0 | 51 |
| 5 4 3 2 0 | 31 P | 7 6 5 2 0 | 127 P | 8 7 5 1 0 | 85 |
| 6 1 0 | 63 P | 7 6 5 3 2 1 0 | 127 P | 8 7 5 3 0 | 255 P |
| 6 3 0 | 9 | 7 6 5 4 0 | 127 P | 8 7 5 4 0 | 51 |
| 6 4 2 1 0 | 21 | 7 6 5 4 2 1 0 | 127 P | 8 7 5 4 3 2 0 | 85 |
| 6 4 3 1 0 | 63 P | 7 6 5 4 3 2 0 | 127 P | 8 7 6 1 0 | 255 P |
| 6 5 0 | 63 P | 8 4 3 1 0 | 51 | 8 7 6 3 2 1 0 | 255 P |
| 6 5 2 1 0 | 63 P | 8 4 3 2 0 | 255 P | 8 7 6 4 2 1 0 | 17 |
| 6 5 3 2 0 | 63 P | 8 5 3 1 0 | 255 P | 8 7 6 4 3 2 0 | 85 |
| 6 5 4 1 0 | 63 | 8 5 3 2 0 | 255 P | 8 7 6 5 2 1 0 | 255 P |
| 6 5 4 2 0 | 21 P | 8 5 4 3 0 | 17 | 8 7 6 5 4 1 0 | 51 |
| 7 1 0 | 127 P | 8 5 4 3 2 1 0 | 85 | 8 7 6 5 4 2 0 | 255 P |
| 7 3 0 | 127 P | 8 6 3 2 0 | 255 P | 8 7 6 5 4 3 0 | 85 |

3.6.6.3 Table of binary primitive polynomials

Listed below² are primitive polynomials, with the least number of non-zero terms, of degree from 1 to 64. Only the exponents of the non-zero terms are listed, e.g., 2 1 0 corresponds to $x^2 + x + 1$.

| | | | | |
|------------|------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1 0 | 14 5 3 1 0 | 27 5 2 1 0 | 40 5 4 3 0 | 53 6 2 1 0 |
| 2 1 0 | 15 1 0 | 28 3 0 | 41 3 0 | 54 6 5 4 3 2 0 |
| 3 1 0 | 16 5 3 2 0 | 29 2 0 | 42 5 4 3 2 1 0 | 55 6 2 1 0 |
| 4 1 0 | 17 3 0 | 30 6 4 1 0 | 43 6 4 3 0 | 56 7 4 2 0 |
| 5 2 0 | 18 5 2 1 0 | 31 3 0 | 44 6 5 2 0 | 57 5 3 2 0 |
| 6 1 0 | 19 5 2 1 0 | 32 7 5 3 2 1 0 | 45 4 3 1 0 | 58 6 5 1 0 |
| 7 1 0 | 20 3 0 | 33 6 4 1 0 | 46 8 5 3 2 1 0 | 59 6 5 4 3 1 0 |
| 8 4 3 2 0 | 21 2 0 | 34 7 6 5 2 1 0 | 47 5 0 | 60 1 0 |
| 9 4 0 | 22 1 0 | 35 2 0 | 48 7 5 4 2 1 0 | 61 5 2 1 0 |
| 10 3 0 | 23 5 0 | 36 6 5 4 2 1 0 | 49 6 5 4 0 | 62 6 5 3 0 |
| 11 2 0 | 24 4 3 1 0 | 37 5 4 3 2 1 0 | 50 4 3 2 0 | 63 1 0 |
| 12 6 4 1 0 | 25 3 0 | 38 6 5 1 0 | 51 6 3 1 0 | 64 4 3 1 0 |
| 13 4 3 1 0 | 26 6 2 1 0 | 39 4 0 | 52 3 0 | |

²Taken in part from "Primitive Polynomials (Mod 2)", E. J. Watson, *Math. Comp.*, **16**, 368–369, 1962.

3.6.7 BINARY SEQUENCES

3.6.7.1 Barker sequences

A *Barker sequence* is a sequence (s_1, s_2, \dots, s_N) with $s_j = \pm 1$ such that $\sum_{j=1}^{N-i} s_j s_{j+i} = \pm 1$ or 0 , for $i = 1, \dots, N - 1$. The following table lists all known Barker sequences (up to reversal, multiplication by -1 , and multiplying alternate values by -1).

| Length | Barker sequence |
|--------|--|
| 2 | +1 +1 |
| 3 | +1 +1 -1 |
| 4 | +1 +1 +1 -1 |
| 4 | +1 +1 -1 +1 |
| 5 | +1 +1 +1 -1 +1 |
| 7 | +1 +1 +1 -1 -1 +1 -1 |
| 11 | +1 +1 +1 -1 -1 -1 +1 -1 -1 +1 -1 |
| 13 | +1 +1 +1 +1 +1 -1 -1 +1 +1 -1 +1 -1 +1 |

3.6.7.2 Periodic sequences

Let $\mathbf{s} = (s_0, s_1, \dots, s_{N-1})$ be a periodic sequence with period N . A (left) *shift* of \mathbf{s} is the sequence $(s_1, \dots, s_{N-1}, s_0)$. For τ relatively prime to N , the *decimation* of \mathbf{s} is the sequence $(s_0, s_\tau, s_{2\tau}, \dots)$, which also has period N . The *periodic autocorrelation* is defined as the vector (a_0, \dots, a_{N-1}) , with

$$a_i = \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} s_j s_{j+i}, \quad (\text{subscripts taken modulo } N). \quad (3.6.16)$$

An autocorrelation is *two-valued* if all values are equal except possibly for the 0^{th} term.

3.6.7.3 The m -sequences

A binary *m-sequence* of length $N = 2^r - 1$ is the sequence of period N defined by

$$(s_0, s_1, \dots, s_{N-1}), \quad s_i = \text{Tr}(\alpha^i), \quad (3.6.17)$$

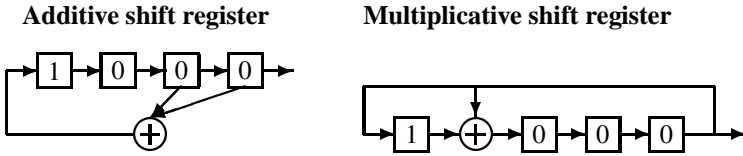
where α is a primitive element of $\text{GF}(2^r)$ and Tr is the trace function from $\text{GF}(2^r)$ to $\text{GF}(2)$ defined by $\text{Tr}(\beta) = \beta + \beta^2 + \beta^4 + \dots + \beta^{2^{r-1}}$.

1. All m -sequences of a given length are equivalent under decimation.
2. Binary m -sequences have a two-valued autocorrelation (with the identification that $0 \leftrightarrow +1$ and $1 \leftrightarrow -1$).
3. All m -sequences possess the *span property*: all binary r -tuples occur in the sequence except the all-zeros r -tuple.

The existence of a binary sequence of length $2^n - 1$ with a two-valued autocorrelation is equivalent to the existence of a cyclic difference set with parameters $(2^n - 1, 2^{n-1} - 1, 2^{n-2} - 1)$.

3.6.7.4 Shift registers

Below are examples of the two types of shift registers used to generate binary m -sequences. The generating polynomial in each case is $x^4 + x + 1$, the initial register loading is $1\ 0\ 0\ 0$, and the generated sequence is $\{0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0, 1, 1, 0, 1, 1, 1, 1, \dots\}$.



3.6.7.5 Binary sequences with two-valued autocorrelation

The following table lists all binary sequences with two-valued periodic autocorrelation of length $2^n - 1$ for $n = 3$ to 8 (up to shifts, decimations, and complementation). The table indicates the positions of 0; the remaining values are 1. An S indicates that that sequence has the span property.

| n | Positions of 0 |
|-----|---|
| 3 S | 1 2 4 |
| 4 S | 0 1 2 4 5 8 10 |
| 5 S | 1 2 3 4 6 8 12 15 16 17 23 24 27 29 30 |
| 5 | 1 2 4 5 7 8 9 10 14 16 18 19 20 25 28 |
| 6 S | 0 1 2 3 4 6 7 8 9 12 13 14 16 18 19 24 26 27 28 32 33 35 36 38 41 45 48 49 52 54 56 |
| 6 | 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 8 9 10 12 16 17 18 20 23 24 27 29 32 33 34 36 40 43 45 46 48 53 54 58 |
| 7 | 1 2 4 8 9 11 13 15 16 17 18 19 21 22 25 26 30 31 32 34 35 36 37 38 41 42 44 47 49 50 52 60 61 62 64 68 69 70 71 72 73 74 76 79 81 82 84 87 88 94 98 99 100 103 104 107 113 115 117 120 121 122 124 |
| 7 | 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 10 12 14 16 19 20 23 24 25 27 28 32 33 38 40 46 47 48 50 51 54 56 57 61 63 64 65 66 67 73 75 76 77 80 87 89 92 94 95 96 97 100 101 102 107 108 111 112 114 117 119 122 123 125 126 |
| 7 S | 1 2 3 4 6 7 8 9 12 14 15 16 17 18 24 27 28 29 30 31 32 34 36 39 47 48 51 54 56 58 60 61 62 64 65 67 68 71 72 77 78 79 83 87 89 94 96 97 99 102 103 105 107 108 112 113 115 116 117 120 121 122 124 |
| 7 | 1 2 3 4 6 7 8 9 12 13 14 16 17 18 19 24 25 26 27 28 31 32 34 35 36 38 47 48 50 51 52 54 56 61 62 64 65 67 68 70 72 73 76 77 79 81 87 89 94 96 97 100 102 103 104 107 108 112 115 117 121 122 124 |
| 7 | 1 2 3 4 5 6 8 9 10 12 15 16 17 18 19 20 24 25 27 29 30 32 33 34 36 38 39 40 48 50 51 54 55 58 59 60 64 65 66 68 71 72 73 76 77 78 80 83 89 91 93 96 99 100 102 105 108 109 110 113 116 118 120 |
| 7 | 1 2 3 4 5 6 8 10 11 12 16 19 20 21 22 24 25 27 29 32 33 37 38 39 40 41 42 44 48 49 50 51 54 58 63 64 65 66 69 73 74 76 77 78 80 82 83 84 88 89 95 96 98 100 102 105 108 111 116 119 123 125 126 |
| 8 S | 0 1 2 3 4 6 7 8 12 13 14 16 17 19 23 24 25 26 27 28 31 32 34 35 37 38 41 45 46 48 49 50 51 52 54 56 59 62 64 67 68 70 73 74 75 76 82 85 90 92 96 98 99 100 102 103 104 105 108 111 112 113 118 119 123 124 127 128 129 131 134 136 137 139 140 141 143 145 146 148 150 152 153 157 161 164 165 170 177 179 180 183 184 187 189 191 192 193 196 197 198 199 200 204 206 208 210 216 217 219 221 222 223 224 226 227 236 237 238 239 241 246 247 248 251 253 254 |
| 8 | 0 1 2 4 7 8 9 11 14 16 17 18 19 21 22 23 25 27 28 29 32 33 34 35 36 38 42 43 44 46 49 50 51 54 56 58 61 64 66 68 69 70 71 72 76 79 81 84 85 86 87 88 89 92 93 95 97 98 99 100 101 102 108 112 113 116 117 119 122 125 128 131 132 133 136 137 138 139 140 141 142 144 145 149 152 153 158 162 163 167 168 170 171 172 174 175 176 177 178 184 186 187 190 193 194 196 197 198 200 202 204 209 211 213 215 216 221 224 226 232 233 234 235 238 244 245 250 |
| 8 | 0 1 2 3 4 6 8 12 13 15 16 17 24 25 26 27 29 30 31 32 34 35 39 47 48 50 51 52 54 57 58 59 60 61 62 64 67 68 70 71 78 79 85 91 94 96 99 100 102 103 104 107 108 109 114 116 118 119 120 121 122 124 127 128 129 134 135 136 140 141 142 143 145 147 151 153 156 157 158 161 163 167 170 173 177 179 181 182 187 188 191 192 195 198 199 200 201 203 204 206 208 209 211 214 216 217 218 221 223 225 227 228 229 232 233 236 238 239 240 241 242 244 247 248 251 253 254 |
| 8 | 0 1 2 3 4 6 7 8 11 12 14 15 16 17 21 22 23 24 25 28 29 30 32 34 35 37 41 42 44 46 47 48 50 51 56 58 60 64 68 69 70 71 73 74 81 82 84 85 88 91 92 94 96 97 100 102 107 109 111 112 113 116 119 120 121 123 127 128 129 131 133 135 136 138 139 140 142 145 146 148 151 153 162 163 164 168 170 173 176 181 182 183 184 187 188 189 191 192 193 194 195 197 200 203 204 209 214 218 219 221 222 223 224 225 226 229 232 237 238 239 240 242 246 247 251 253 254 |

3.7 DIFFERENCE EQUATIONS

3.7.1 THE CALCULUS OF FINITE DIFFERENCES

1. $\Delta(f(x)) = f(x+h) - f(x)$ (forward difference).
2. $\Delta^2(f(x)) = f(x+2h) - 2f(x+h) + f(x)$.
3. $\Delta^n(f(x)) = \Delta(\Delta^{n-1}(f(x))) = \sum_{k=0}^n (-1)^k \binom{n}{k} f(x + (n-k)h)$.
4. $\Delta(cf(x)) = c\Delta(f(x))$.
5. $\Delta(f(x) + g(x)) = \Delta(f(x)) + \Delta(g(x))$.
6. $\Delta(f(x)g(x)) = g(x)\Delta(f(x)) + f(x)\Delta(g(x))$.
7. $\Delta\left(\frac{f(x)}{g(x)}\right) = \frac{g(x)\Delta(f(x)) - f(x)\Delta(g(x))}{g(x)g(x+h)}$, provided that $g(x)g(x+h) \neq 0$.
8. $\Delta^n(x^n) = n! h^n$, $n = 0, 1, \dots$

3.7.2 EXISTENCE AND UNIQUENESS

A difference equation of order k has the form

$$x_{n+k} = f(x_n, x_{n+1}, \dots, x_{n+(k-1)}, n) \quad (3.7.1)$$

where f is a given function and k is a positive integer. A *solution* to Equation (3.7.1) is a sequence of numbers $\{x_n\}_{n=0}^{\infty}$ which satisfies the equation. Any constant solution of Equation (3.7.1) is called an *equilibrium solution*.

A *linear* difference equation of order k has the form

$$a_n^{(k)} x_{n+k} + a_n^{(k-1)} x_{n+(k-1)} + \dots + a_n^{(1)} x_{n+1} + a_n^{(0)} x_n = g_n, \quad (3.7.2)$$

where k is a positive integer and the coefficients $a_n^{(0)}, \dots, a_n^{(k)}$ along with $\{g_n\}$ are known. If the sequence g_n is identically zero, then Equation (3.7.2) is called *homogeneous*; otherwise, it is called *non-homogeneous*. If the coefficients $a_n^{(0)}, \dots, a_n^{(k)}$ are constants (i.e., do not depend on n), Equation (3.7.2) is a *difference equation with constant coefficients*; otherwise it is a *difference equation with variable coefficients*.

THEOREM 3.7.1 (Existence and uniqueness)

Consider the initial-value problem (IVP)

$$\begin{aligned} x_{n+k} + b_n^{(k-1)} x_{n+(k-1)} + \dots + b_n^{(1)} x_{n+1} + b_n^{(0)} x_n &= f_n, \\ x_i &= \alpha_i, \quad i = 0, 1, \dots, k-1, \end{aligned} \quad (3.7.3)$$

for $n = 0, 1, \dots$, where $b_n^{(i)}$ and f_n are given sequences with $b_n^{(0)} \neq 0$ for all n and the $\{\alpha_i\}$ are given initial conditions. Then the above equations have exactly one solution.

3.7.3 LINEAR INDEPENDENCE: GENERAL SOLUTION

The sequences $x^{(1)}, x^{(2)}, \dots, x^{(k)}$ (sequence $x^{(i)}$ has the terms $\{x_1^{(i)}, x_2^{(i)}, x_2^{(i)}, \dots\}$) are *linearly dependent* if constants c_1, c_2, \dots, c_k (not all of them zero) exist such that

$$\sum_{i=1}^k c_i x_n^{(i)} = 0 \quad \text{for } n = 0, 1, \dots \quad (3.7.4)$$

Otherwise the sequences $x^{(1)}, x^{(2)}, \dots, x^{(k)}$ are *linearly independent*.

The *Casoratian* of the k sequences $x^{(1)}, x^{(2)}, \dots, x^{(k)}$ is the $k \times k$ determinant

$$C \left(x_n^{(1)}, x_n^{(2)}, \dots, x_n^{(k)} \right) = \begin{vmatrix} x_n^{(1)} & x_n^{(2)} & \cdots & x_n^{(k)} \\ x_{n+1}^{(1)} & x_{n+1}^{(2)} & \cdots & x_{n+1}^{(k)} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ x_{n+k-1}^{(1)} & x_{n+k-1}^{(2)} & \cdots & x_{n+k-1}^{(k)} \end{vmatrix}. \quad (3.7.5)$$

THEOREM 3.7.2

The solutions $x^{(1)}, x^{(2)}, \dots, x^{(k)}$ of the linear homogeneous difference equation,

$$x_{n+k} + b_n^{(k-1)} x_{n+(k-1)} + \cdots + b_n^{(1)} x_{n+1} + b_n^{(0)} x_n = 0, \quad n = 0, 1, \dots, \quad (3.7.6)$$

are linearly independent if, and only if, their Casoratian is different from zero for $n = 0$.

Note that the solutions to Equation (3.7.6) form a k -dimensional vector space. The set $\{x^{(1)}, x^{(2)}, \dots, x^{(k)}\}$ is a *fundamental system* of solutions for Equation (3.7.6) if, and only if, the sequences $x^{(1)}, x^{(2)}, \dots, x^{(k)}$ are linearly independent solutions of the homogeneous difference Equation (3.7.6).

THEOREM 3.7.3

Consider the non-homogeneous linear difference equation

$$x_{n+k} + b_n^{(k-1)} x_{n+(k-1)} + \cdots + b_n^{(1)} x_{n+1} + b_n^{(0)} x_n = d_n, \quad n = 0, 1, \dots \quad (3.7.7)$$

where $b_n^{(i)}$ and d_n are given sequences. Let $x_n^{(h)}$ be the general solution of the corresponding homogeneous equation

$$x_{n+k} + b_n^{(k-1)} x_{n+(k-1)} + \cdots + b_n^{(1)} x_{n+1} + b_n^{(0)} x_n = 0, \quad n = 0, 1, \dots,$$

and let $x_n^{(p)}$ be a particular solution of Equation (3.7.7). Then $x_n^{(p)} + x_n^{(h)}$ is the general solution of Equation (3.7.7).

THEOREM 3.7.4 (*Superposition principle*)

Let $x^{(1)}$ and $x^{(2)}$ be solutions of the non-homogeneous linear difference equations

$$x_{n+k} + b_n^{(k-1)} x_{n+(k-1)} + \cdots + b_n^{(1)} x_{n+1} + b_n^{(0)} x_n = \alpha_n, \quad n = 0, 1, \dots,$$

and

$$x_{n+k} + b_n^{(k-1)} x_{n+(k-1)} + \cdots + b_n^{(1)} x_{n+1} + b_n^{(0)} x_n = \beta_n, \quad n = 0, 1, \dots,$$

respectively, where $b^{(i)}$ and $\{\alpha_n\}$ and $\{\beta_n\}$ are given sequences. Then $x^{(1)} + x^{(2)}$ is a solution of the equation

$$x_{n+k} + b_n^{(k-1)} x_{n+(k-1)} + \cdots + b_n^{(1)} x_{n+1} + b_n^{(0)} x_n = \alpha_n + \beta_n, \quad n = 0, 1, \dots$$

3.7.4 HOMOGENEOUS EQUATIONS WITH CONSTANT COEFFICIENTS

The results given below for second-order linear difference equations extend naturally to higher order equations.

Consider the second-order linear homogeneous difference equation,

$$\alpha_2 x_{n+2} + \alpha_1 x_{n+1} + \alpha_0 x_n = 0, \quad (3.7.8)$$

where the $\{\alpha_i\}$ are real constant coefficients with $\alpha_2 \alpha_0 \neq 0$. The *characteristic equation* corresponding to Equation (3.7.8) is defined as the quadratic equation

$$\alpha_2 \lambda^2 + \alpha_1 \lambda + \alpha_0 = 0. \quad (3.7.9)$$

The solutions λ_1, λ_2 of the characteristic equation are the *eigenvalues* or the *characteristic roots* of Equation (3.7.8).

THEOREM 3.7.5

Let λ_1 and λ_2 be the eigenvalues of Equation (3.7.8). Then the general solution of Equation (3.7.8) is given as described below with arbitrary constants c_1 and c_2 .

Case 1: $\lambda_1 \neq \lambda_2$ with $\lambda_1, \lambda_2 \in \mathbb{R}$ (real and distinct roots).

The general solution is given by $x_n = c_1 \lambda_1^n + c_2 \lambda_2^n$.

Case 2: $\lambda_1 = \lambda_2 \in \mathbb{R}$ (real and equal roots).

The general solution is given by $x_n = c_1 \lambda_1^n + c_2 n \lambda_1^n$.

Case 3: $\lambda_1 = \overline{\lambda_2}$ (complex conjugate roots).

Suppose that $\lambda_1 = r e^{i\phi}$. The general solution is given by

$$x_n = c_1 r^n \cos(n\phi) + c_2 r^n \sin(n\phi).$$

The constants $\{c_1, c_2\}$ are determined from the initial conditions.

EXAMPLE The unique solution of the initial-value problem

$$\begin{aligned} F_{n+2} &= F_{n+1} + F_n, & n &= 0, 1, \dots, \\ F_0 &= 0, & F_1 &= 1, \end{aligned} \tag{3.7.10}$$

is the Fibonacci sequence. The equation $\lambda^2 = \lambda + 1$ has the real and distinct roots $\lambda_{1,2} = \frac{1 \pm \sqrt{5}}{2}$. Using Theorem 3.7.5 the solution is

$$F_n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \left[\left(\frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2} \right)^n - \left(\frac{1 - \sqrt{5}}{2} \right)^n \right], \quad n = 0, 1, \dots \tag{3.7.11}$$

3.7.5 NON-HOMOGENEOUS EQUATIONS

THEOREM 3.7.6 (*Variation of parameters*)

Consider the difference equation, $x_{n+2} + \alpha_n x_{n+1} + \beta_n x_n = \gamma_n$, where $\{\alpha_n\}$, $\{\beta_n\}$, and $\{\gamma_n\}$ are given sequences with $\beta_n \neq 0$. Let $x^{(1)}$ and $x^{(2)}$ be two linearly independent solutions of the homogeneous equation corresponding to this equation. A particular solution $x^{(p)}$ has the component values $x_n^{(p)} = x_n^{(1)} v_n^{(1)} + x_n^{(2)} v_n^{(2)}$ where the sequences $v^{(1)}$ and $v^{(2)}$ satisfy the following system of equations:

$$\begin{aligned} x_{n+1}^{(1)} (v_{n+1}^{(1)} - v_n^{(1)}) + x_{n+1}^{(2)} (v_{n+1}^{(2)} - v_n^{(2)}) &= 0, \text{ and} \\ x_{n+2}^{(1)} (v_{n+1}^{(1)} - v_n^{(1)}) + x_{n+2}^{(2)} (v_{n+1}^{(2)} - v_n^{(2)}) &= \gamma_n. \end{aligned} \tag{3.7.12}$$

3.7.6 GENERATING FUNCTIONS AND Z TRANSFORMS

Generating functions can be used to solve initial-value problems of difference equations in the same way that Laplace transforms are used to solve initial-value problems of differential equations.

The *generating function* of the sequence $\{x_n\}$, denoted by $G[x_n]$, is defined by the infinite series

$$G[x_n] = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x_n s^n \tag{3.7.13}$$

provided that the series converges for $|s| < r$, for some positive number r . The following are useful properties of the generating function:

1. *Linearity:* $G [c_1 x_n + c_2 y_n] = c_1 G [x_n] + c_2 G [y_n]$.
2. *Translation invariance:* $G [x_{n+k}] = \frac{1}{s^k} \left(G [x_n] - \sum_{n=0}^{k-1} x_n s^n \right)$.
3. *Uniqueness:* $G [x_n] = G [y_n] \iff x_n = y_n \quad \text{for } n = 0, 1, \dots$

The Z -transform of a sequence $\{x_n\}$ is denoted by $\mathcal{Z}[x_n]$ and is defined by the infinite series,

$$\mathcal{Z}[x_n] = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{x_n}{z^n}, \tag{3.7.14}$$

provided that the series converges for $|z| > r$, for some positive number r .

Comparing the definitions for the generating function and the Z -transform one can see that they are connected because Equation (3.7.14) can be obtained from Equation (3.7.13) by setting $s = z^{-1}$.

Generating functions for some common sequences

| $\{x_n\}$ | $G[x_n]$ | $\{x_n\}$ | $G[x_n]$ |
|-----------|--|---------------------|--|
| 1 | $\frac{1}{1-s}$ | $\sin(\beta n)$ | $\frac{s \sin \beta}{1 - 2s \cos \beta + s^2}$ |
| a^n | $\frac{1}{1-as}$ | $\cos(\beta n)$ | $\frac{1 - s \cos \beta}{1 - 2s \cos \beta + s^2}$ |
| na^n | $\frac{as}{(1-as)^2}$ | $a^n \sin(\beta n)$ | $\frac{as \sin \beta}{1 - 2as \cos \beta + a^2 s^2}$ |
| $n^p a^n$ | $\left(s \frac{d}{ds}\right)^p \frac{1}{1-as}$ | $a^n \cos(\beta n)$ | $\frac{1 - as \cos \beta}{1 - 2as \cos \beta + a^2 s^2}$ |
| n | $\frac{s}{(1-s)^2}$ | x_{n+1} | $\frac{1}{s} (G[x_n] - x_0)$ |
| $n+1$ | $\frac{1}{(1-s)^2}$ | x_{n+2} | $\frac{1}{s^2} (G[x_n] - x_0 - sx_1)$ |
| n^p | $\left(s \frac{d}{ds}\right)^p \frac{1}{1-s}$ | x_{n+k} | $\frac{1}{s^k} \left(G[x_n] - \sum_{n=0}^{k-1} x_n s^n \right)$ |

3.7.7 CLOSED-FORM SOLUTIONS FOR SPECIAL EQUATIONS

In general, it is difficult to find a closed-form solution for a difference equation which is not linear of order one or linear of any order with constant coefficients. A few special difference equations which possess closed-form solutions are presented below.

3.7.7.1 First order equation

The general solution of the first-order linear difference equation with variable coefficients,

$$x_{n+1} - \alpha_n x_n = \beta_n, \quad n = 0, 1, \dots, \tag{3.7.15}$$

is given by

$$x_n = \left(\prod_{k=0}^{n-1} \alpha_k \right) x_0 + \sum_{m=0}^{n-2} \left(\prod_{k=m+1}^{n-1} \alpha_k \right) \beta_m + \beta_{n-1}, \quad n = 0, 1, \dots, \quad (3.7.16)$$

where x_0 is an arbitrary constant.

3.7.7.2 Riccati equation

Consider the non-linear first-order equation,

$$x_{n+1} = \frac{\alpha_n x_n + \beta_n}{\gamma_n x_n + \delta_n}, \quad n = 0, 1, \dots, \quad (3.7.17)$$

where $\alpha_n, \beta_n, \gamma_n, \delta_n$ are given sequences of real numbers with

$$\gamma_n \neq 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{vmatrix} \alpha_n & \beta_n \\ \gamma_n & \delta_n \end{vmatrix} \neq 0, \quad n = 0, 1, \dots \quad (3.7.18)$$

The following statements are true:

1. The change of variables,

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{u_{n+1}}{u_n} &= \gamma_n x_n + \delta_n, & n = 0, 1, \dots, \\ u_0 &= 1, \end{aligned} \quad (3.7.19)$$

reduces Equation (3.7.17) to the linear second-order equation,

$$\begin{aligned} u_{n+2} &= A_n u_n + B_n, & n = 0, 1, \dots, \\ u_0 &= 1, \\ u_1 &= \gamma_0 x_0 + \delta_0, \end{aligned} \quad (3.7.20)$$

where $A_n = \delta_{n+1} + \alpha_n \frac{\gamma_{n+1}}{\gamma_n}$, and $B_n = (\beta_n \gamma_n - \alpha_n \delta_n) \frac{\gamma_{n+1}}{\gamma_n}$.

2. Let $x^{(p)}$ be a particular solution of Equation (3.7.17). The change of variables,

$$v_n = \frac{1}{x_n - x_n^{(p)}}, \quad n = 0, 1, \dots, \quad (3.7.21)$$

reduces Equation (3.7.17) to the linear first-order equation,

$$v_{n+1} + C_n v_n + D_n = 0, \quad n = 0, 1, \dots, \quad (3.7.22)$$

where $C_n = \frac{(\gamma_n x_n^{(p)} + \delta_n)^2}{\beta_n \gamma_n - \alpha_n \delta_n}$, and $D_n = \frac{\gamma_n (\gamma_n x_n^{(p)} + \delta_n)}{\beta_n \gamma_n - \alpha_n \delta_n}$.

3. Let $x^{(1)}$ and $x^{(2)}$ be two particular solutions of Equation (3.7.17) with $x_n^{(1)} \neq x_n^{(2)}$ for $n = 0, 1, \dots$. Then the change of variables,

$$w_n = \frac{1}{x_n - x_n^{(1)}} + \frac{1}{x_n^{(1)} - x_n^{(2)}}, \quad n = 0, 1, \dots, \quad (3.7.23)$$

reduces Equation (3.7.17) to the linear homogeneous first-order equation,

$$w_{n+1} + E_n w_n = 0, \quad n = 0, 1, \dots, \quad (3.7.24)$$

$$\text{where } E_n = \frac{(\gamma_n x_n^{(1)} + \delta_n)^2}{\beta_n \gamma_n - \alpha_n \delta_n}.$$

3.7.7.3 Logistic equation

Consider the initial-value problem

$$\begin{aligned} x_{n+1} &= r x_n \left(1 - \frac{x_n}{k}\right), & n &= 0, 1, \dots, & (3.7.25) \\ x_0 &= \alpha, & & \text{with } \alpha \in [0, k], \end{aligned}$$

where r and k are positive numbers with $r \leq 4$. The following are true:

1. When $r = k = 4$, Equation (3.7.25) reduces to

$$x_{n+1} = 4x_n - x_n^2. \quad (3.7.26)$$

If $\alpha = 4 \sin^2(\theta)$ with $\theta \in [0, \frac{\pi}{2}]$, then Equation (3.7.26) has the closed-form solution

$$\begin{aligned} x_{n+1} &= 4 \sin^2(2^{n+1}\theta), & n &= 0, 1, \dots, & (3.7.27) \\ x_0 &= 4 \sin^2(\theta), & & \text{with } \theta \in \left[0, \frac{\pi}{2}\right]. \end{aligned}$$

2. When $r = 4$ and $k = 1$, Equation (3.7.25) reduces to

$$x_{n+1} = 4x_n - 4x_n^2. \quad (3.7.28)$$

If $\alpha = \sin^2(\theta)$ with $\theta \in [0, \frac{\pi}{2}]$, then Equation (3.7.28) has the closed-form solution

$$\begin{aligned} x_{n+1} &= \sin^2(2^{n+1}\theta), & n &= 0, 1, \dots, & (3.7.29) \\ x_0 &= \sin^2(\theta), & & \text{with } \theta \in \left[0, \frac{\pi}{2}\right]. \end{aligned}$$

3.8 DISCRETE DYNAMICAL SYSTEMS AND CHAOS

A dynamical system described by a function $f : M \rightarrow M$ is *chaotic* if

1. f is *transitive*—that is, for any pair of non-empty open sets U and V in M there exists a positive constant k such that $f^k(U) \cap V$ is not empty (here $f^k = \underbrace{f \circ f \circ \dots \circ f}_{k \text{ times}}$); and
2. The *periodic points* of f are dense in M ; and
3. f has a sensitive dependence on initial conditions—that is, there is a positive number δ (depending only on f and M) such that in every non-empty open subset of M there is a pair of points whose eventual iterates under f are separated by a distance of at least δ .

Some systems depend on a parameter and become chaotic for some values of that parameter. There are various routes to chaos, one of them is via period doubling bifurcations.

Let the distance between successive bifurcations of a process be d_k . The limiting ratio $\delta = \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} d_k/d_{k+1}$ is constant in many situations and is equal to Feigenbaum's constant $\delta \approx 4.6692016091029$.

3.8.1 CHAOTIC ONE-DIMENSIONAL MAPS

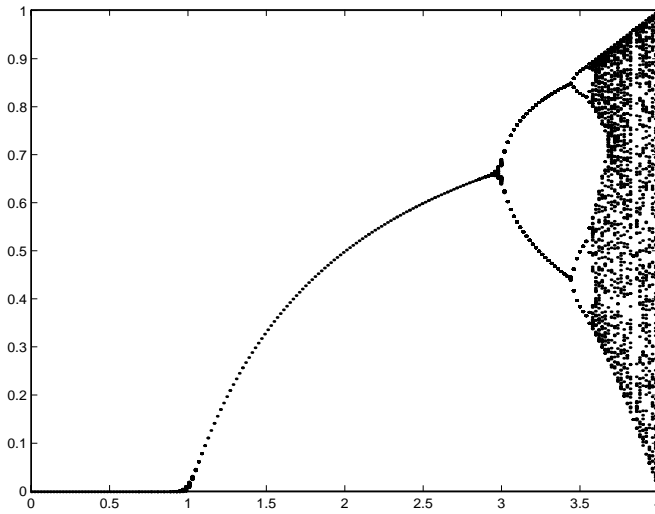
1. Logistic map: $x_{n+1} = 4x_n(1 - x_n)$ with $x_0 \in [0, 1]$.
Solution is $x_n = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \cos[2^n \cos^{-1}(1 - 2x_0)]$.
2. Tent map: $x_{n+1} = 1 - 2|x_n - \frac{1}{2}|$ with $x_0 \in [0, 1]$.
Solution is $x_n = \frac{1}{\pi} \cos^{-1}[\cos(2^n \pi x_0)]$.
3. Baker transformation: $x_{n+1} = 2x_n \pmod{1}$ with $x_0 \in [0, 1]$.
Solution is $x_n = \frac{1}{\pi} \cot^{-1}[\cot(2^n \pi x_0)]$.

3.8.2 LOGISTIC MAP

Consider $u_{n+1} = f(u_n) = au_n(1 - u_n)$ with $a \in [0, 4]$. Note that if $0 \leq u_0 \leq 1$ then $0 \leq u_n \leq 1$. The fixed points satisfy $u = f(u) = au(1 - u)$; they are $u = 0$ and $u = (a - 1)/a$.

1. If $a = 0$ then $u_n = 0$.
2. If $0 < a \leq 1$ then $u_n \rightarrow 0$.
3. If $1 < a < 3$ then $u_n \rightarrow (a - 1)/a$.
4. If $3 < a < 3.449\dots$ then u_n oscillates between the two roots of $u = f(f(u))$ which are not roots of $u = f(u)$, that is, $u_{\pm} = (a + 1 \pm \sqrt{a^2 - 2a - 3})/2a$.

The location of the minimal state is summarized by the following diagram (the horizontal axis is the a value).



Minimal values of a at which a cycle with a given number of points appears:

| n | 2^n points in a cycle | minimal a |
|-----|-------------------------|----------------|
| 1 | 2 | 3 |
| 2 | 4 | 3.449490... |
| 3 | 8 | 3.544090... |
| 4 | 16 | 3.564407... |
| 5 | 32 | 3.568750... |
| 6 | 64 | 3.56969... |
| 7 | 128 | 3.56989... |
| 8 | 256 | 3.569934... |
| 9 | 512 | 3.569943... |
| 10 | 1024 | 3.5699451... |
| 11 | 2048 | 3.569945557... |

3.8.3 JULIA SETS AND THE MANDELBROT SET

For the function $f(x) = x^2 + c$ consider the iterates of all complex points z , $z_{n+1} = f(z_n)$ with $z_0 = z$. For each z , either the iterates remain bounded (z is in the *prisoner set*) or they escape to infinity (z is in the *escape set*). The *Julia set* J_c is the boundary between these two sets. Using lighter colors to indicate a “faster” escape to infinity, Figure 3.6 shows two Julia sets. One of these Julia sets is connected, the other is disconnected. The Mandelbrot set, M , is the set of those complex values c for which J_c is a connected set (see Figure 3.7). Alternately, the *Mandelbrot set* consists of all points c for which the discrete dynamical system, $z_{n+1} = z_n^2 + c$ with $z_0 = 0$, converges.

The boundary of the Mandelbrot set is a *fractal*. There is not universal agreement on the definition of “fractal”. One definition is that it is a set whose fractal dimension differs from its topological dimension.

FIGURE 3.6

Connected Julia set for $c = -0.5i$ (left). Disconnected Julia set for $c = -\frac{3}{4}(1 + i)$ (right). (Julia sets are the black objects.)

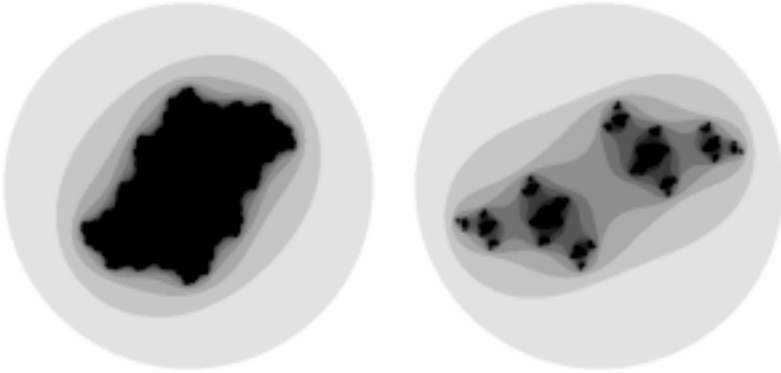
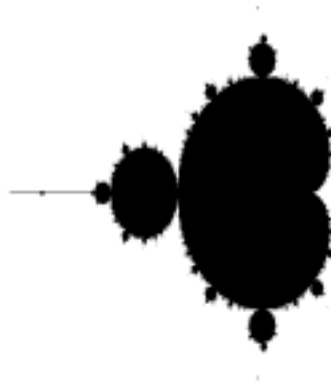


FIGURE 3.7

The Mandelbrot set. The leftmost point has the coordinates $(-2, 0)$.



3.9 GAME THEORY

3.9.1 TWO PERSON NON-COOPERATIVE MATRIX GAMES

Matrix games idealize situations with participants having different goals. Given matrices $A = (a_{i,j})$ and $B = (b_{i,j})$ consider a game played as follows. After Alice chooses action i (one choice out of n possible actions) and simultaneously Bob chooses action j (one choice out of m possible actions) Alice and Bob receive a payoff of $a_{i,j}$ and $b_{i,j}$, respectively. Define (i, j) as the *outcome* of the game. If the

players have a *mixed* or *random strategy* then Alice selects $\mathbf{x}^T = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$ where x_i corresponds to the probability that she chooses action i and Bob selects $\mathbf{y}^T = (y_1, y_2, \dots, y_m)$ where y_j corresponds to the probability that he chooses action j . Here, the players seek to maximize their average payoff; that is, Alice wants to maximize $\mathbf{x}^T A \mathbf{y} = \sum_i \sum_j x_i a_{i,j} y_j$ and Bob wants to maximize $\mathbf{x}^T B \mathbf{y} = \sum_i \sum_j x_i b_{i,j} y_j$.

If $a_{i,j} \leq a_{i^*,j}$ for all i and j then i^* is a *dominant strategy* for Alice. Similarly, if $b_{i,j} \leq b_{i,j^*}$ for all i and j then j^* is a *dominant strategy* for Bob. An outcome (i^*, j^*) is *Pareto optimal* if, for all i and j , the relation $a_{i^*,j^*} < a_{i,j}$ implies $b_{i^*,j^*} > b_{i,j}$.

If $A + B = 0$ then the game is a *zero sum game* and Bob equivalently is trying to minimize Alice's payoff. If $A + B \neq 0$ then the game is a *non-zero sum game* and there is potential for mutual gain or loss.

3.9.1.1 The pure zero sum game

For a zero sum game, $A + B = 0$. The outcome (\hat{i}, \hat{j}) is an *equilibrium* if $a_{i,\hat{j}} \leq a_{\hat{i},\hat{j}} \leq a_{i,j}$ for all i and j . (Note that this implies $b_{\hat{i},\hat{j}} \leq b_{i,\hat{j}} \leq b_{i,j}$.)

1. If (\hat{i}, \hat{j}) is an equilibrium then $\max_i \min_j a_{i,j} = \min_j \max_i a_{i,j} = a_{\hat{i},\hat{j}}$.
2. For all A , $\max_i \min_j a_{i,j} \leq \min_j \max_i a_{i,j}$.
3. For some A , there is no equilibrium. For example, if $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ then $1 = \max_i \min_j a_{i,j} < \min_j \max_i a_{i,j} = 2$.
4. For some A , there might be an equilibrium which is not a dominant strategy for a player. For example, if $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$, then the outcome (1,1) is an equilibrium with the property that Alice has the dominant strategy $i = 1$ as $a_{1,1} \geq a_{2,1}$ and $a_{1,2} \geq a_{2,2}$, but there is no dominant strategy for Bob as $a_{1,1} < a_{1,2}$ but $a_{2,1} > a_{2,2}$.
5. For all A , all outcomes are Pareto optimal as $a_{\hat{i},\hat{j}} < a_{i,j}$ implies $b_{\hat{i},\hat{j}} = -a_{\hat{i},\hat{j}} > -a_{i,j} = b_{i,j}$.
6. For a given A , there can be multiple equilibria. If (i_1, j_1) and (i_2, j_2) are each an equilibrium then $a_{i_1,j_1} = a_{i_2,j_2} = a_{i_1,j_2} = a_{i_2,j_1}$ and (i_1, j_2) and (i_2, j_1) are also equilibria. For example, if $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 4 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$ then the outcomes (1,1), (1,3), (3,1) and (3,3) are each an equilibrium.
7. Order of actions: If Alice chooses her action before Bob (or commits to an action first) and she chooses i then Bob will choose action $\beta(i) = \arg \min_j a_{i,j}$. Hence Alice will choose $\hat{i} = \arg \max_i a_{i,\beta(i)} = \arg \max_i \min_j a_{i,j}$ which is said to be the *maximin* strategy. Alternatively, if Bob chooses his action before Alice he will choose the *minimax strategy* $\hat{j} = \arg \min_j \max_i a_{i,j}$. A player should never prefer to choose an action first, but if there is an equilibrium, the advantage of taking the second action can be eliminated.

³The "arg" function refers to the index.

3.9.1.2 The mixed zero sum game

The outcome $(\hat{\mathbf{x}}, \hat{\mathbf{y}})$ is an *equilibrium* for the mixed zero sum game if

$$\mathbf{x}^T A \hat{\mathbf{y}} \leq \hat{\mathbf{x}}^T A \hat{\mathbf{y}} \leq \hat{\mathbf{x}}^T A \mathbf{y} \quad \text{for all } \mathbf{x} \in S_x \text{ and all } \mathbf{y} \in S_y$$

where $S_x = \{\mathbf{x} \mid 0 \leq x_i \text{ and } \sum_i x_i = 1\}$ and $S_y = \{\mathbf{y} \mid 0 \leq y_j \text{ and } \sum_j y_j = 1\}$.

1. If $(\hat{\mathbf{x}}, \hat{\mathbf{y}})$ is an equilibrium then

$$\max_{\mathbf{x} \in S_x} \min_{\mathbf{y} \in S_y} \mathbf{x}^T A \mathbf{y} = \min_{\mathbf{y} \in S_y} \max_{\mathbf{x} \in S_x} \mathbf{x}^T A \mathbf{y} = \hat{\mathbf{x}}^T A \hat{\mathbf{y}}.$$

2. For all A , there exists at least one mixed strategy equilibrium. If there is more than one equilibrium, the average payoff to each player is independent of which equilibrium is used.
3. If $\min_j \sum_i x_i a_{i,j} \leq \min_j \sum_i \hat{x}_i a_{i,j}$ for all $\mathbf{x} \in S_x$ and $\max_i \sum_j a_{i,j} y_j \geq \max_i \sum_j a_{i,j} \hat{y}_j$ for all $\mathbf{y} \in S_y$ then $(\hat{\mathbf{x}}, \hat{\mathbf{y}})$ is an equilibrium.
4. If $A \geq 0$ then an equilibrium strategy for Alice solves $\max_{\mathbf{x}} v$ subject to $v \leq \sum_i x_i a_{i,j}$ for all j , with $\sum_i x_i = 1$, and $x_i \geq 0$. Here, the optimal value of v will correspond to the average payoff to Alice in equilibrium. If $x'_i = x_i/v$ this is equivalent to solving

$$\text{minimize } \sum_i x'_i \quad \text{subject to} \quad \begin{cases} \sum_i x'_i a_{i,j} \geq 1, & \text{for all } j, \\ x'_i \geq 0, & \text{for all } i. \end{cases}$$

Similarly, if $\mathbf{y}' = (y'_1, \dots, y'_n)$ is a solution to

$$\text{maximize } \sum_j y'_j \quad \text{subject to} \quad \begin{cases} \sum_j a_{i,j} y'_j \leq 1, & \text{for all } i, \\ y'_j \geq 0, & \text{for all } j, \end{cases}$$

then $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{y}' / \sum_j y'_j$ is the equilibrium strategy for Bob. The payoff to Alice in equilibrium is $v = 1 / \sum_i x'_i = 1 / \sum_j y'_j$. These optimization problems are an example of *linear programming* (see page 280).

For example, if $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ then the solution to

$$\text{maximize } x'_1 + x'_2 \quad \text{subject to} \quad \begin{cases} x'_1 + 2x'_2 \geq 1, & x'_1 \geq 0, \\ 2x'_1 + x'_2 \geq 1, & x'_2 \geq 0, \end{cases}$$

is $x'_1 = x'_2 = \frac{1}{3}$ so the payoff to Alice in equilibrium is $\frac{2}{3}$ and the equilibrium is $(x_1, x_2) = (\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$.

5. If A is 2×2 and $a_{1,1} < a_{1,2}$, $a_{1,1} < a_{2,1}$, $a_{2,2} < a_{2,1}$, and $a_{2,2} < a_{1,2}$ (so neither player has a dominant strategy) then the mixed strategy equilibrium is

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{\mathbf{x}} &= \left(\frac{a_{2,1} - a_{2,2}}{a_{1,2} + a_{2,1} - a_{1,1} - a_{2,2}}, \frac{a_{1,2} - a_{1,1}}{a_{1,2} + a_{2,1} - a_{1,1} - a_{2,2}} \right), \\ \hat{\mathbf{y}} &= \left(\frac{a_{1,2} - a_{2,2}}{a_{1,2} + a_{2,1} - a_{1,1} - a_{2,2}}, \frac{a_{2,1} - a_{1,1}}{a_{1,2} + a_{2,1} - a_{1,1} - a_{2,2}} \right) \end{aligned} \quad (3.9.1)$$

and the payoff to Alice in equilibrium is

$$\begin{aligned} \max_{\hat{\mathbf{x}} \in S_x} \min_{\hat{\mathbf{y}} \in S_y} \sum_i \sum_j \hat{x}_i a_{i,j} \hat{y}_j &= \min_{\hat{\mathbf{y}} \in S_y} \max_{\hat{\mathbf{x}} \in S_x} \sum_i \sum_j \hat{x}_i a_{i,j} \hat{y}_j \\ &= \frac{a_{1,2}a_{2,1} - a_{1,1}a_{2,2}}{a_{1,2} + a_{2,1} - a_{1,1} - a_{2,2}}. \end{aligned} \quad (3.9.2)$$

For example, if $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ then the solution is $\hat{\mathbf{x}} = \hat{\mathbf{y}} = (\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$ and the payoff to Alice in equilibrium is $\frac{3}{2}$.

- Order of actions: It is never an advantage to take the first action. However, if the first player uses a mixed strategy equilibrium then the advantages of taking the second action can always be eliminated.

3.9.1.3 The non-zero sum game

The outcome (\hat{i}, \hat{j}) is a *Nash equilibrium* if $a_{i,\hat{j}} \leq a_{i,\hat{j}}$ for all i and $b_{\hat{i},j} \leq b_{\hat{i},j}$ for all j . For the mixed strategy game the outcome $(\hat{\mathbf{x}}, \hat{\mathbf{y}})$ is a Nash equilibrium if $\mathbf{x}^T A \hat{\mathbf{y}} \leq \hat{\mathbf{x}}^T A \hat{\mathbf{y}}$ for all $\mathbf{x} \in S_x$ and $\hat{\mathbf{x}}^T A \mathbf{y} \leq \hat{\mathbf{x}}^T A \hat{\mathbf{y}}$ for all $\mathbf{y} \in S_y$.

- For all A and B , there exists at least one mixed strategy Nash equilibrium.
- For all A and B , $\max_i \sum_j a_{i,j} \hat{y}_j \leq \sum_i \sum_j \hat{x}_i a_{i,j} \hat{y}_j$ and $\max_j \sum_i \hat{x}_i b_{i,j} \leq \sum_i \sum_j \hat{x}_i b_{i,j} \hat{y}_j$ is a necessary and sufficient condition for $(\hat{\mathbf{x}}, \hat{\mathbf{y}})$ to be a Nash equilibrium. For example, if $A = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 1 \\ 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 1 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$ then there are three Nash equilibria: (i) $\{\hat{\mathbf{x}} = (0, 1), \hat{\mathbf{y}} = (0, 1)\}$, (ii) $\{\hat{\mathbf{x}} = (\frac{3}{5}, \frac{2}{5}), \hat{\mathbf{y}} = (\frac{2}{5}, \frac{3}{5})\}$, and (iii) $\{\hat{\mathbf{x}} = (1, 0), \hat{\mathbf{y}} = (1, 0)\}$.
- For all A and B , if $\sum_j a_{i,j} \hat{y}_j$ is a constant for all i and $\sum_i \hat{x}_i b_{i,j}$ is a constant for all j (i.e., each player chooses an action to make the other indifferent to their action) then $(\hat{\mathbf{x}}, \hat{\mathbf{y}})$ is a Nash equilibrium.
- For some A and B if (i_1, j_1) and (i_2, j_2) are each a (pure strategy) Nash equilibrium then, unlike the case for a zero sum game, a_{i_1, j_1} need not equal a_{i_2, j_2} , b_{i_1, j_1} need not equal b_{i_2, j_2} , and neither (i_1, j_2) nor (i_2, j_1) need be a Nash equilibrium. For example, if $A = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 1 \\ 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 1 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$ then both of the outcomes (1,1) and (2,2) are Nash equilibria yet $a_{1,1} \neq a_{2,2}$, $b_{1,1} \neq b_{2,2}$ and neither (1,2) nor (2,1) is a Nash equilibrium.
- Prisoners' Dilemma*: A game in which there is a dominant strategy for both players but it is not Pareto optimal. For example, if $A = \begin{bmatrix} 10 & 2 \\ 10 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 10 & 15 \\ 2 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$ then the dominant (and equilibrium) outcome is (2,2) since $a_{2,j} > a_{1,j}$ for all j and $b_{i,2} > b_{i,1}$ for all i . Here, Alice and Bob receive a payoff of 5 although the outcome (1,1) would be preferred by both because each would receive a payoff of 10. The name is derived from the possibility that the potential jail sentence for two people accused of a joint crime could be constructed to create a dominant strategy for both to choose to confess to the crime, yet both would serve less jail time if neither confesses.

-
6. *Braess Paradox*: A game in which the Nash equilibrium has a worse payoff for all players than the Nash equilibrium which would result if there were fewer possible actions. For example, if $A = \begin{bmatrix} 10 & 2 & 1 \\ 15 & 5 & 2 \\ 20 & 6 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 10 & 15 & 20 \\ 2 & 5 & 6 \\ 1 & 2 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$ then the Nash equilibrium is (3,3) which is worse for both players than the Nash equilibrium (2,2) which would occur if the third option for each player was unavailable. This paradox was originally constructed to demonstrate that the equilibrium distribution of flows in a traffic network would be preferred by everyone if a traffic link, e.g., a bridge, weren't there.
7. Order of actions: If Alice chooses action i before Bob chooses an action then Bob will choose $\beta(i) = \arg \max_j b_{i,j}$ and hence Alice will choose $\hat{i} = \arg \max_i a_{i,\beta(i)}$. Alternatively, if Bob chooses an action before Alice, he will choose $\hat{j} = \arg \max_j b_{\alpha(j),j}$ where $\alpha(j) = \arg \max_i a_{i,j}$. Unlike the zero sum game there might be an advantage to choosing the action first, e.g., for $A = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 1 \\ 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 1 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$ if Alice is first the outcome will be (1,1) with a payoff of 4 to Alice and 3 to Bob. If Bob is first the outcome will be (2,2) with a payoff of 4 to Bob and 3 to Alice.

3.9.2 VOTING POWER

Matrix games implicitly exclude the possibility of binding agreements among the players to resolve their differing goals. When such agreement exist, it is sometimes possible to quantify the relative power of the players.

3.9.2.1 Voting power definitions

A *weighted voting game* is represented by the vector $[q; w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n]$; this means:

1. There are n players.
2. Player i has w_i votes (with $w_i > 0$).
3. A *coalition* is a subset of players.
4. A coalition S is *winning* if $\sum_{i \in S} w_i \geq q$, where q is the *quota*.
5. A game is *proper* if $\frac{1}{2} \sum w_i < q$.

A player

1. can have *veto power*: no coalition can win without this player
2. is a *dictator*: has more votes than the quota
3. is a *dummy*: cannot affect any coalitions

3.9.2.2 Shapley–Shubik power index

Consider all permutations of players. Scan each permutation from beginning to end; add together the votes that each player contributes. Eventually a total of at least q will be arrived at, this occurs at the *pivotal* player. The *Shapley–Shubik power index* (ϕ) of player i is the number of permutations for which player i is pivotal, divided by the total number of permutations.

EXAMPLE

1. Consider the $[5; 4, 2, 1, 1]$ game; the players are $\{A,B,C,D\}$.
2. For the $4! = 24$ permutations of four players the pivotal player is underlined:

$A\underline{B}CD$ $B\underline{A}CD$ $C\underline{A}BD$ $D\underline{A}BC$
 $A\underline{B}DC$ $B\underline{A}DC$ $C\underline{A}DB$ $D\underline{A}CB$
 $A\underline{C}BD$ $B\underline{C}AD$ $C\underline{B}AD$ $D\underline{B}AC$
 $A\underline{C}DB$ $B\underline{C}DA$ $C\underline{B}DA$ $D\underline{B}CA$
 $A\underline{D}BC$ $B\underline{D}AC$ $C\underline{D}AB$ $D\underline{C}AB$
 $A\underline{D}CB$ $B\underline{D}CA$ $C\underline{D}BA$ $D\underline{C}BA$

3. Hence player A has power $\phi(A) = \frac{18}{24} = 0.75$.
4. The other three players have equal power of $\frac{2}{24} \approx 0.083$.

3.9.2.3 Banzhaf power index

Consider all 2^N possible coalitions of players. For each coalition, if player i can change the winningness of the coalition, by either entering it or leaving it, then i is *marginal* or *swing*. The *Banzhaf power index* (β) of player i is proportional to the number of times he is marginal; the total power of all players is 1.

EXAMPLE

1. Consider the $[5; 4, 2, 1, 1]$ game; the players are $\{A,B,C,D\}$.
2. There are 16 subsets of four players; each player is “in” (I) or is “out” (0) of a coalition. For each coalition the marginal players are listed (in total there are 20 marginal players).

| | |
|---|--|
| $0000 \Rightarrow \{\}$ $000I \Rightarrow \{A\}$ $00I0 \Rightarrow \{A\}$ $00II \Rightarrow \{A\}$ $0I00 \Rightarrow \{A\}$ $0I0I \Rightarrow \{A\}$ $0IIO \Rightarrow \{A\}$ $0III \Rightarrow \{A\}$ | $I000 \Rightarrow \{B,C,D\}$ $I00I \Rightarrow \{A,D\}$ $I0I0 \Rightarrow \{A,C\}$ $I0II \Rightarrow \{A\}$ $II00 \Rightarrow \{A,B\}$ $II0I \Rightarrow \{A\}$ $IIIO \Rightarrow \{A\}$ $IIII \Rightarrow \{A\}$ |
|---|--|

3. Player A is marginal 14 times, and has power $\beta(A) = \frac{14}{20} = 0.7$.
4. The players B, C, and D are each marginal 2 times and have equal power of $\frac{2}{20} = 0.1$.

3.9.2.4 Voting power examples

1. For the game $[51; 49, 48, 3]$ the winning coalitions are: $\{1, 2, 3\}$, $\{1, 2\}$, $\{1, 3\}$, and $\{2, 3\}$. These are the same winning coalitions as the game $[3; 1, 1, 1]$. Hence, all players have equal power by either index, even though the number of votes each player has is different.
2. The original EEC (1958) had France, Germany, Italy, Belgium, The Netherlands, and Luxembourg. They voted as $[12; 4, 4, 4, 2, 2, 1]$. Therefore:

$$\phi = \frac{1}{60}(14, 14, 14, 9, 9, 0) \quad \text{and} \quad \beta = \frac{1}{21}(5, 5, 5, 3, 3, 0). \quad (3.9.3)$$

3. The *UN security council* has 15 members. The five permanent members have veto power. For a motion to pass, it must be supported by at least 9 members of the council and it must not be vetoed. A game representation is: $[39; \underbrace{7, 7, 7, 7, 7}_{5 \text{ members}}, \underbrace{1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1}_{10 \text{ members}}]$.

(a) Shapley–Shubik powers: of each permanent member $\phi_{\text{major}} = \frac{421}{2145} \approx 0.196$, of each minor member $\phi_{\text{minor}} = \frac{4}{2145} \approx 0.002$.

(b) Banzhaf powers: $\beta_{\text{major}} = \frac{106}{635} \approx 0.167$ and $\beta_{\text{minor}} = \frac{21}{1270} \approx 0.017$.

4. Changing the quota in a game may change the powers of the players:

(a) For $[6; 4, 3, 2]$ have $\phi = \frac{1}{6}(4, 1, 1)$.

(b) For $[7; 4, 3, 2]$ have $\phi = \frac{1}{2}(1, 1, 0)$.

(c) For $[8; 4, 3, 2]$ have $\phi = \frac{1}{3}(1, 1, 1)$.

5. For the n -player game $[q; a, 1, 1, 1, \dots, 1]$ with $1 < a \leq q \leq n$ we find $\phi_{\text{major}} = a/n$ and $\phi_{\text{minor}} = (n - a)/n(n - 1)$.

6. Four-person committee, one member is chair. Use majority rule until deadlock, then chair decides. This is a $[3; 2, 1, 1, 1]$ game so that $\phi = \frac{1}{8}(3, 1, 1, 1)$.

7. Five-person committee, with two co-chairs. Need a majority, and at least one co-chair. This is a $[7; 3, 3, 2, 2, 2]$ game so that $\phi = \frac{1}{12}(3, 3, 2, 2, 2)$ and $\beta = \frac{1}{29}(7, 7, 5, 5, 5)$.

8. For the game $[7; 5, 3, 3, 1]$ the powers are $\phi = \beta = \frac{1}{12}(5, 3, 3, 1)$.

3.10 OPERATIONS RESEARCH

Operations research integrates mathematical modeling and analysis with engineering in an effort to design and control systems.

3.10.1 LINEAR PROGRAMMING

Linear programming (LP) is a technique for modeling problems with linear objective functions and linear constraints. The *standard form* for an LP model with n decision

variables and m resource constraints is

$$\begin{aligned}
 &\text{Minimize} && \sum_{j=1}^n c_j x_j && \text{(objective function),} \\
 &\text{Subject to} && \begin{cases} x_j \geq 0 & \text{for } j = 1, \dots, n, & \text{(non-negativity requirement),} \\ \sum_{j=1}^n a_{ij} x_j = b_i & \text{for } i = 1, \dots, m, & \text{(constraint functions),} \end{cases}
 \end{aligned}
 \tag{3.10.1}$$

where x_j is the amount of decision variable j used, c_j is decision j 's per unit contribution to the objective, a_{ij} is decision j 's per unit usage of resource i , and b_i is the total amount of resource i to be used.

Let \mathbf{x} represent the $(n \times 1)$ vector $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)^T$, \mathbf{c} the $(n \times 1)$ vector $(c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n)^T$, \mathbf{b} the $(m \times 1)$ vector $(b_1, b_2, \dots, b_m)^T$, A the $(m \times n)$ matrix (a_{ij}) , and $\mathbf{A}_{.j}$ the $(n \times 1)$ column of A associated with x_j . Then the standard model, written in matrix notation, is “minimize $\mathbf{c}^T \mathbf{x}$ subject to $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ and $\mathbf{x} \geq \mathbf{0}$ ”. A vector \mathbf{x} is called *feasible* if, and only if, $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ and $\mathbf{x} \geq \mathbf{0}$.

3.10.1.1 Modeling in LP

LP is an appropriate modeling technique if the following four assumptions are satisfied by the situation:

1. All data coefficients are known with certainty.
2. There is a single objective.
3. The problem relationships are linear functions of the decisions.
4. The decisions can take on continuous values.

Branches of optimization such as stochastic programming, multi-objective programming, non-linear programming, and integer programming have developed in operations research to allow a richer variety of models and solution techniques for situations where the assumptions required for LP are inapplicable.

1. *Product mix problem* — Consider a company that has three products to sell. Each product requires four operations and the per unit data are given in the following table:

| Product | Drilling | Assembly | Finishing | Packing | Profit |
|-----------------|----------|----------|-----------|---------|--------|
| A | 2 | 3 | 1 | 2 | 45 |
| B | 3 | 6 | 2 | 4 | 90 |
| C | 2 | 1 | 4 | 1 | 55 |
| Hours available | 480 | 960 | 540 | 320 | |

Let x_A , x_B , and x_C represent the number of units of A , B , and C manufac-

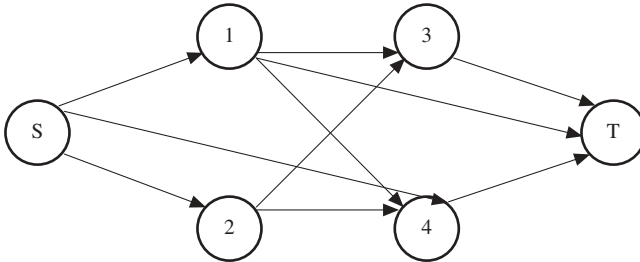
tured daily. A model to maximize profit subject to the labor restrictions is

$$\begin{aligned}
 &\text{Maximize} && 45x_A + 90x_B + 55x_C && \text{(total profit),} \\
 &\text{Subject to:} && \begin{cases} 2x_A + 3x_B + 2x_C \leq 480 & \text{(drilling hours),} \\ 3x_A + 6x_B + 1x_C \leq 960 & \text{(assembly hours),} \\ 1x_A + 2x_B + 4x_C \leq 540 & \text{(finishing hours),} \\ 2x_A + 4x_B + 1x_C \leq 320 & \text{(packing hours),} \\ x_A \geq 0, \quad x_B \geq 0, \quad x_C \geq 0. \end{cases}
 \end{aligned}
 \tag{3.10.2}$$

2. *Maximum flow through a network* — Consider the directed network in Figure 3.8. Node S is the source node and node T is the terminal node. On each arc shipping material up to the arc capacity C_{ij} is permitted. Material is neither created nor destroyed at nodes other than S and T . The goal is to maximize the amount of material that can be shipped through the network from S to T . Letting x_{ij} represent the amount of material shipped from node i to node j , a model that determines the maximum flow is shown below.

FIGURE 3.8

Directed network modeling a flow problem.



$$\begin{aligned}
 &\text{Maximize} && x_{1T} + x_{3T} + x_{4T}, \\
 &\text{Subject to} && \begin{cases} x_{S1} = x_{13} + x_{14} + x_{1T} & \text{(node 1 conservation),} \\ x_{S2} = x_{23} + x_{24} & \text{(node 2 conservation),} \\ x_{13} + x_{23} = x_{3T} & \text{(node 3 conservation),} \\ x_{S4} + x_{24} + x_{14} = x_{4T} & \text{(node 4 conservation),} \\ 0 \leq x_{ij} \leq C_{ij} & \text{for all pairs } (i, j) \text{ (arc capacity).} \end{cases}
 \end{aligned}
 \tag{3.10.3}$$

3.10.1.2 Transformation to standard form

Any LP model can be transformed to standard form as follows:

| Original model | Standard form |
|---|-------------------------|
| change “maximize objective” | to “minimize objective” |
| multiply c_j by -1 | |
| change “ \leq ” constraint | to “=” constraint |
| add slack variable(s) to $\sum_{j=1}^n a_{ij}x_j \leq b_i$ | |
| (for example: $\sum_{j=1}^n a_{ij}x_j + S_i = b_i$) | |
| change “ \geq ” constraint | to “=” constraint |
| subtract surplus variable(s) from $\sum_{j=1}^n a_{ij}x_j \geq b_i$ | |
| (for example: $\sum_{j=1}^n a_{ij}x_j - U_i = b_i$) | |

LP requires that the slack and surplus variables are non-negative; therefore, decisions are feasible to the new constraint if, and only if, they are feasible to the original constraint. All slack and surplus variables have $c_j = 0$.

3.10.1.3 Solving LP models: simplex method

Assume that there is at least one feasible \mathbf{x} vector, and that A has rank m . Geometrically, because all constraints are linear, the set of feasible \mathbf{x} forms a convex polyhedral set (bounded or unbounded) that must have at least one extreme point. The motivation for the simplex method for solving LP models is the following:

For any LP model with a bounded optimal solution, an optimal solution exists at an extreme point of the feasible set.

Given a feasible solution \mathbf{x} , let \mathbf{x}^B be the components of \mathbf{x} with $x_j > 0$ and \mathbf{x}^N be the components with $x_j = 0$. Associated with \mathbf{x}^B , define B as the columns of A associated with each x_j in \mathbf{x}^B . For example, if x_2, x_4 , and S_1 are positive in \mathbf{x} , then $\mathbf{x}^B = (x_2, x_4, S_1)^T$, and B is the matrix with columns $\mathbf{A}_{.2}, \mathbf{A}_{.4}, \mathbf{A}_{.S_1}$. Define N as the remaining columns of A , i.e., those associated with \mathbf{x}^N . A *basic feasible solution* (BFS) is a feasible solution where the columns of B are linearly independent. The following theorem relates a BFS with extreme points:

A feasible solution \mathbf{x} is at an extreme point of the feasible region if, and only if, \mathbf{x} is a BFS.

The following simplex method finds an optimal solution to the LP by finding the optimal partition of \mathbf{x} into \mathbf{x}^B and \mathbf{x}^N :

Step (1) Find an initial basic feasible solution. Define $\mathbf{x}^B, \mathbf{x}^N, B, N, \mathbf{c}^B$, and \mathbf{c}^N as above.

Step (2) Compute the vector $\mathbf{c}' = (\mathbf{c}^N - \mathbf{c}^B B^{-1}N)$. If $\mathbf{c}'_j \geq \mathbf{0}$ for all j , then stop; the solution $\mathbf{x}^B = B^{-1}\mathbf{b}$ is optimal with objective value $\mathbf{c}^B B^{-1}\mathbf{b}$. Otherwise, select the variable x_j in \mathbf{x}^N with the most negative c'_j value, and go to Step (3).

Step (3) Compute $\mathbf{A}'_{.j} = B^{-1}\mathbf{A}_{.j}$. If $\mathbf{A}'_{.j} \leq \mathbf{0}$ for all j , then stop; the problem is unbounded and the objective can decrease to $-\infty$. Otherwise, compute $\mathbf{b}' = B^{-1}\mathbf{b}$ and $\text{nd} \min_{i|a'_{ij}>0} \frac{b'_i}{a'_{ij}}$. Assume the minimum ratio occurs in row r . Insert x_j into the r^{th} position of \mathbf{x}^B , take the variable that was in this position, and move it to \mathbf{x}^N . Update B , N , \mathbf{c}^B , and \mathbf{c}^N accordingly. Return to Step (2).

Ties in the selections in Steps (2) and (3) can be broken arbitrarily. The unbound- edness signal suggests that the model is missing constraints or that there has been an incorrect data entry or computational error, because, in real problems, the profit or cost cannot be unbounded. For maximization problems, only Step (2) changes. The solution is optimal when $c'_j \leq 0$ for all j , then choose the variable with the maximum c'_j value to move into \mathbf{x}^B . Effective methods for updating B^{-1} in each iteration of Step (3) exist to ease the computational burden.

To find an initial basic feasible solution define a variable A_i and add this variable to the left hand side of constraint i transforming to $\sum_{j=1}^n a_{ij} + A_i = b_i$. The new constraint is equivalent to the original constraint if, and only if, $A_i = 0$. Also, because A_i appears only in constraint i and there are m A_i variables, the columns corresponding to the A_i variables are of rank m . We now solve a “new” LP model with the adjusted constraints and the new objective “minimize $\sum_{i=1}^m A_i$ ”. If the optimal solution to this new model is 0, the solution is a basic feasible solution to the original problem and we can use it in step (1). Otherwise, no basic feasible solution exists for the original problem.

3.10.1.4 Solving LP models: interior point method

An alternative method to investigating extreme points is to cut through the middle of the polyhedron and go directly towards the optimal solution. Extreme points, however, provide an efficient method of determining movement directions (Step (1) of simplex method) and movement distances (Step (2) of simplex method). There were no effective methods on the interior of the feasible set until Karmarkar’s method was developed in 1984. The method assumes that the model has the following form:

$$\begin{array}{l}
\text{Minimize} \\
\text{Subject to}
\end{array}
\left\{ \begin{array}{l}
\sum_{j=1}^n c_j x_j, \\
\sum_{j=1}^n a_{ij} x_j = 0 \quad \text{for } i = 1, \dots, m, \\
\sum_{j=1}^n x_j = 1, \\
x_j \geq 0, \quad \text{for } j = 1, \dots, n.
\end{array} \right. \quad (3.10.4)$$

Also, assume that the optimal objective value is 0 and that $x_j = 1/n$ for $j = 1, \dots, n$ is feasible. Any model can be transformed so that these assumptions hold.

The following *centering transformation*, relative to the k^{th} estimate of solution vector \mathbf{x}^k , takes any feasible solution vector \mathbf{x} and transforms it to \mathbf{y} such that the \mathbf{x}^k is transformed to the center of the feasible simplex: $\mathbf{y}_j = \frac{x_j/x_j^k}{\sum_{r=1}^n (x_r/x_r^k)}$. Let $\text{Diag}(x^k)$ represent an $n \times n$ matrix with off-diagonal entries equal to 0 and the diagonal entry in row j equal to x_j^k . The formal algorithm is as follows:

Step (1) Initialize $x_j^0 = 1/n$ and set the iteration count $k = 0$.

Step (2) If $\sum_{j=1}^n x_j^k c_j$ is sufficiently close to 0, then stop; \mathbf{x}^k is optimal. Otherwise go to Step (3).

Step (3) Move from the center of the transformed space in an improving direction using

$$\mathbf{y}^{k+1} = \left[\frac{1}{n}, \frac{1}{n}, \dots, \frac{1}{n} \right]^T - \frac{\theta(I - P^T(PP^T)^{-1}P)[\text{Diag}(\mathbf{x}^k)]\mathbf{c}^T}{\|C_p\|\sqrt{n(n-1)}},$$

where $\|C_p\|$ is the length of the vector $(I - P^T(PP^T)^{-1}P)[\text{Diag}(\mathbf{x}^k)]\mathbf{c}^T$, P is an $(m+1) \times n$ matrix whose first m rows are $A[\text{Diag}(\mathbf{x}^k)]$ and whose last row is a vector of 1's, and θ is a parameter that must be between 0 and 1. Go to Step (4).

Step (4) Find the new point \mathbf{x}^{k+1} in the original space by applying the inverse transformation of the centering transformation to \mathbf{y}^{k+1} . Set $k = k + 1$ and return to Step (2).

The method is guaranteed to converge to the optimal solution when $\theta = \frac{1}{4}$ is used.

3.10.2 DUALITY AND COMPLEMENTARY SLACKNESS

Define y_i as the *dual variable (shadow price)* representing the purchase price for a unit of resource i . The *dual problem* to the primal model (maximize objective, all

constraints of the form “ \leq ”) is

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{Minimize} && \sum_{i=1}^m b_i y_i, \\ & \text{Subject to} && \begin{cases} \sum_{i=1}^m a_{ij} y_i \geq c_j & \text{for } j = 1, \dots, n, \\ y_i \geq 0, & \text{for } i = 1, \dots, m. \end{cases} \end{aligned} \tag{3.10.5}$$

The objective minimizes the amount of money spent to obtain the resources. The constraints ensure that the marginal cost of the resources is greater than or equal to the marginal profit for each product.

The following results link the dual model (minimization) with its primal model (maximization).

1. *Weak duality theorem:* Assume that \mathbf{x} and \mathbf{y} are feasible solutions to the respective primal and dual problems. Then

$$\sum_{j=1}^n c_j x_j \leq \sum_{i=1}^m b_i y_i.$$

2. *Strong duality theorem:* Assume that the primal model has a finite optimal solution \mathbf{x}^* . Then the dual has a finite optimal solution \mathbf{y}^* , and

$$\sum_{j=1}^n c_j x_j^* = \sum_{i=1}^m b_i y_i^*.$$

3. *Complementary slackness theorem:* Assume that x and y are feasible solutions to the respective primal and dual problems. Then, x is optimal for the primal and y is optimal for the dual if and only if:

$$\begin{aligned} y_i \cdot \left(b_i - \sum_{j=1}^n a_{ij} x_j \right) &= 0, & \text{for } i = 1, \dots, m, & \text{ and} \\ x_j \cdot \left(\sum_{i=1}^m a_{ij} y_i - c_j \right) &= 0, & \text{for } j = 1, \dots, n. \end{aligned} \tag{3.10.6}$$

3.10.3 LINEAR INTEGER PROGRAMMING

Linear integer programming models result from restricting the decisions in linear programming models to be integer valued. The standard form is

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Minimize} \quad & \sum_{j=1}^n c_j x_j \quad (\text{objective function}), \\ \text{Subject to} \quad & \begin{cases} x_j \geq 0, & \text{and integer for } j = 1, \dots, n, \\ \sum_{j=1}^n a_{ij} x_j = b_i & \text{for } i = 1, \dots, m \quad (\text{constraint functions}). \end{cases} \end{aligned} \quad (3.10.7)$$

As long as the variable values are bounded, then the general model can be transformed into a model where all variable values are restricted to either 0 or 1. Therefore, algorithms that can solve 0–1 integer programming models are sufficient for most applications.

3.10.4 BRANCH AND BOUND

Branch and bound implicitly enumerates all feasible integer solutions to find the optimal solution. The main idea is to break the feasible set into subsets (branching) and then evaluate the best solution in each subset or determine that the subset cannot contain the optimal solution (bounding). When a subset is evaluated, it is said to be *fathomed*. The following algorithm performs the branching by partitioning on variables with fractional values and uses a linear programming relaxation to generate a bound on the best solution in a subset:

- Step (1) Assume that a feasible integer solution, called the *incumbent*, is known whose objective function value is z (initially, z may be set to infinity if no feasible solution is known). Set p , the subset counter, equal to 1. Set the original model as the first problem in the subset list.
- Step (2) If $p = 0$, then stop. The incumbent solution is the optimal solution. Otherwise go to Step (3).
- Step (3) Solve the LP relaxation of the p^{th} problem in the subset list (allow all integer valued variables to take on continuous values). Denote the LP objective value by v . If $v \geq z$ or the LP is infeasible, then set $p = p - 1$ (fathom by bound or infeasibility), and return to Step (2). If the LP solution is integer valued, then update the incumbent to the LP solution, set $z = \min(z, v)$ and $p = p - 1$, and return to Step (2). Otherwise, go to Step (4).
- Step (4) Take any variable x_j with fractional value in the LP solution. Replace problem p with two problems created by individually adding the constraints $x_j \leq \lfloor x_j \rfloor$ and $x_j \geq \lceil x_j \rceil$ to problem p . Add these two problems to the bottom of the subset list replacing the p^{th} problem, set $p = p + 1$, and go to Step (2).

3.10.5 NETWORK FLOW METHODS

A *network* consists of N , the set of nodes, and A , the set of arcs. Each arc (i, j) denotes a connection from node i to node j . Depending on the application, arc (i, j) may have an associated cost and upper and lower capacity on flow.

Decision problems on networks can often be modeled using linear programming models, and these models usually have the property that solutions from the simplex method are integer valued (the *total unimodularity property*). Because of the underlying graphical structure, more efficient algorithms are also available. We present the augmenting path algorithm for the maximum flow problem and the Hungarian method for the assignment problem.

3.10.5.1 Maximum flow

Let x_{ij} represent the flow on arc (i, j) , c_{ij} the flow capacity of (i, j) , S be the source node, and T be the terminal node. The maximum flow problem is to ship as much flow from S to T without violating the capacity on any arc, and all flow sent into node i must leave i (for $i \neq S, T$). The following algorithm solves the problem by continually adding flow-carrying paths until no path can be found:

Step (1) Initialize $x_{ij} = 0$ for all (i, j) .

Step (2) Find a flow-augmenting path from S to T using the following labeling method. Start by labeling S with a^* . From any labeled node i , label node j with the label i if j is unlabeled and $x_{ij} < c_{ij}$ (*forward labeling arc*). From any labeled node i , label node j with the label i if j is unlabeled and $x_{ji} > 0$ (*backward labeling arc*). Perform labeling until no additional nodes can be labeled. If T cannot be labeled, then stop. The current x_{ij} values are optimal. Otherwise, go to Step (3).

Step (3) There is a path from S to T where flow is increased on the forward labeling arcs, decreased on the backward labeling arcs, and gets more flow from S to T . Let F be the minimum of $c_{ij} - x_{ij}$ over all forward labeling arcs and of x_{ji} over all backward labeling arcs. Set $x_{ij} = x_{ij} + F$ for the forward arcs and $x_{ji} = x_{ji} - F$ for the backward arcs. Return to Step (2).

The algorithm terminates with a set of arcs with $x_{ij} = c_{ij}$ and if these are deleted, then S and T are in two disconnected pieces of the network. The algorithm finds the maximum flow by finding the minimum capacity set of arcs that disconnects S and T (minimum capacity cutset).

3.10.6 ASSIGNMENT PROBLEM

Consider a set J of jobs and a set I of employees. Each employee can do 1 job, and each job must be done by 1 employee. If job j is assigned to employee i , then the cost to the company is c_{ij} . The problem is to assign employees to jobs to minimize the overall cost.

This problem can be formulated as an optimization problem on a bipartite graph where the jobs are one part and the employees are the other. Let m be the cardinality of J and I (they must be equal cardinality sets, otherwise there is no feasible solution), and let C be the $m \times m$ matrix of costs c_{ij} . The following algorithm solves for the optimal assignment.

Step (1) Find $l_i = \min_j c_{ij}$ for each row i . Let $c_{ij} = c_{ij} - l_i$. Find $n_j = \min_i c_{ij}$ for each column j . Let $c_{ij} = c_{ij} - n_j$.

Step (2) Construct a graph with nodes for S , T , and each element of the sets J and I . Construct an arc from S to each node in I , and set its capacity to 1. Construct an arc from each node in J to T , and set its capacity to 1. If $c_{ij} = 0$, then construct an arc from $i \in I$ to $j \in J$, and set its capacity to 2. Solve a maximum flow problem on the constructed graph. If m units of flow can go through the network, then stop. The maximum flow solution on the arcs between I and J represents the optimal assignment. Otherwise, go to Step (3).

Step (3) Update C using the following rules based on the labels in the solution to the maximum flow problem: Let L_I and L_J be the set of elements of I and J respectively with labels when the maximum flow algorithm terminates. Let $\delta = \min_{i \in L_I, j \in (J - L_J)} c_{ij}$; note that $\delta > 0$. For $i \in L_I$ and $j \in (J - L_J)$, set $c_{ij} = c_{ij} - \delta$. For $i \in (I - L_I)$ and $j \in L_J$, set $c_{ij} = c_{ij} + \delta$. Leave all other c_{ij} values unchanged. Return to Step (2).

In Step (3), the algorithm creates new arcs, eliminates some unused arcs, and leaves unchanged arcs with $x_{ij} = 1$. When returning to Step (2), you can solve the next maximum flow problem by adding and deleting the appropriate arcs and starting with the flows and labels of the preceding execution of the maximum flow algorithm.

3.10.7 DYNAMIC PROGRAMMING

Dynamic programming is a technique for determining a sequence of optimal decisions for a system or process that operates over time and requires successive dependent decisions. The following five properties are required for using dynamic programming:

1. The system can be characterized by a set of parameters called *state variables*.
2. At each decision point or *stage* of the process, there is a choice of actions.
3. Given the current state and the decision, it is possible to specify how the state will evolve before the next decision.
4. Only the current state matters, not the path by which the system arrived at the state (termed *time separability*).
5. An objective function depends on the state and the decisions made.

The time separability requirement is necessary to formulate a functional form for the decision problem. Let $f_t^*(i)$ denote the optimal objective value to take the

system from stage t to the end of the process, given that the process is now in state i , $A_t(i)$ is the set of decisions possible at stage t and state i , a_j is a particular action in $A_t(i)$, $\Delta_{it}(a_j)$ is the change from state i between stage t and stage $t + 1$ based on the action taken, and $c_{it}(a_j)$ is the immediate impact on the objective of taking action a_j at stage t and state i .

The *principle of optimality* states:

An optimal sequence of decisions has the property that, whatever the initial state and initial decision are, the remaining decisions must be an optimal policy based on the state resulting from the initial information.

Using the principle, Bellman's equations are

$$f_t^*(i) = \min_{a_j \in A_t(i)} \left(f_t^*(i) = \min_{a_j \in A_t(i)} \{c_{it}(a_j) + f_{t+1}^*[\Delta_{it}(a_j)]\} \right), \quad \text{for all } i.$$

3.10.8 SHORTEST PATH PROBLEM

Consider a network (N, A) where N is the set of nodes, A the set of arcs, and d_{ij} represents the "distance" of traveling on arc (i, j) (if no arc exists between i and j , $d_{ij} = \infty$). For any two nodes R and S , the shortest path problem is to find the shortest distance route through the network from R to S . Let the state space be N and a stage representing travel along one arc. $f^*(i)$ is the optimal distance from node i to S . The resultant recursive equations to solve are

$$f^*(i) = \min_{j \in N} [d_{ij} + f^*(j)], \quad \text{for all } i.$$

Dijkstra's algorithm can be used successively to approximate the solution to the equations when $d_{ij} > 0$ for all (i, j) .

Step (1) Set $f^*(S) = 0$ and $f^*(i) = d_{iS}$ for all $i \in N$. Let P be the set of permanently labeled nodes; $P = \{S\}$. Let $T = N - P$ be the set of temporarily labeled nodes.

Step (2) Find $i \in T$ with $f^*(i) = \min_{j \in T} f^*(j)$. Set $T = T - \{i\}$ and $P = P \cup \{i\}$. If $T = \emptyset$ (the empty set), then stop; $f^*(R)$ is the optimal path length. Otherwise, go to Step (3).

Step (3) Set $f^*(j) = \min[f^*(j), f^*(i) + d_{ij}]$ for all $j \in T$. Return to Step (2).

3.10.9 HEURISTIC SEARCH TECHNIQUES

Heuristic search techniques are commonly used in algorithms for combinatorial optimization problems. The method starts with an initial vector \mathbf{x}_0 and attempts to find improved solutions. Define \mathbf{x} to be the current solution vector, $f(\mathbf{x})$ to be its objective value, and $N(\mathbf{x})$ to be its neighborhood. For the remainder of this section, assume

that we seek to find the minimum value of $f(\mathbf{x})$. In each iteration of a neighborhood search algorithm, we generate a number of solutions $\mathbf{x}' \in N(\mathbf{x})$, and compare $f(\mathbf{x})$ with each $f(\mathbf{x}')$. If $f(\mathbf{x}')$ is a better value than $f(\mathbf{x})$, then we update the current solution to \mathbf{x}' (termed *accepting \mathbf{x}'*) and we iterate again searching from \mathbf{x}' . The process continues until none of the generated neighbors of the current solution yield lower solutions. Common improvement procedures such as *pairwise interchange* and “*k-opt*” are specific instances of neighborhood search methods. Note that at each iteration, we move to a better solution or we terminate with the best solution seen so far.

The key issues involved in designing a neighborhood search method are the definition of the neighborhood of \mathbf{x} , and the number of neighbors to generate in each iteration. When the neighborhood of \mathbf{x} is easily computed and evaluated, then one can generate the entire neighborhood to ensure finding a better solution if one exists in the neighborhood. It is also possible to generate only a portion of the neighborhood (however, this could lead to premature termination with a poorer solution). In general, deterministic neighborhood search can only guarantee finding a local minimum solution to the optimization problem. One can make multiple runs, each with different initial solution vectors, to increase the chances of finding the global minimum solution.

3.10.9.1 Simulated annealing (SA)

Simulated annealing is neighborhood search method that uses randomization to avoid terminating at a locally optimal point. In each iteration of SA, we generate a single neighbor \mathbf{x}' of \mathbf{x} . If $f(\mathbf{x}') \leq f(\mathbf{x})$, then we accept \mathbf{x}' . Otherwise, we accept \mathbf{x}' with a probability that depends upon $f(\mathbf{x}') - f(\mathbf{x})$, and a non-stationary control parameter.

Define the following notation:

1. C_k is the k^{th} control parameter,
2. L_k is the maximum number of neighbors evaluated while the k^{th} control parameter is in use, and
3. I_k is the counter for the number of solutions currently evaluated at the k^{th} control parameter.

To initialize the algorithm, we assume that we are given the sequences $\{C_k\}$ (termed the *cooling schedule*) and $\{L_k\}$ such that $C_k \rightarrow 0$ as $k \rightarrow \infty$, and an initial value \mathbf{x}_0 . The SA algorithm is (assuming that we are trying to minimize $f(\mathbf{x})$):

Step (1) Set $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}_0$, $k = 1$ and $I_k = 0$.

Step (2) Generate a neighbor \mathbf{x}' of \mathbf{x} , compute $f(\mathbf{x}')$ and increment I_k by 1.

Step (3) If $f(\mathbf{x}') \leq f(\mathbf{x})$, then replace \mathbf{x} with \mathbf{x}' and go to Step (5).

Step (4) If $f(\mathbf{x}') > f(\mathbf{x})$, then with probability $\exp\left(\frac{f(\mathbf{x}) - f(\mathbf{x}')}{C_k}\right)$, replace \mathbf{x} with \mathbf{x}' .

Step (5) If $I_k = L_k$, then increment k by 1, reset $I_k = 0$, and check for the termination criterion. If the termination criterion is met, then stop, \mathbf{x} is the solution; if not, then go to Step (2).

This SA description uses an exponential form for the acceptance probability for inferior solutions; this was proposed by Metropolis *et al.* The algorithm terminates when C_k approaches 0, or there has been no improvement in the solution over a number of C_k values. In the above SA description we only store the current solution, not the best solution encountered. In practice, however, in Step (2), we also compare $f(\mathbf{x}')$ with an incumbent solution. If the incumbent solution is worse, then we replace the incumbent with \mathbf{x}' ; otherwise we retain the current incumbent. Note that SA only generates one neighbor of \mathbf{x} in each iteration. However, we may not accept \mathbf{x}' and therefore may generate another neighbor of \mathbf{x} .

Several issues related to parameter setting, neighborhood definition, and solution updating must be resolved when implementing SA. For example, the sequences of C_k and L_k values are critical for successful application. If C_k goes to zero too quickly, then the algorithm can easily get stuck in a local minimum solution. If C_1 is large and C_k tends to zero too slowly, then the algorithm requires more computation to achieve convergence. To date, the majority of the analytical results and empirical studies in the SA literature consider the effects of the C_k schedule, the L_k schedule, and the initial solution \mathbf{x}_0 . The method can be shown to converge with probability one to the set of optimal solutions as long as $C_k \rightarrow 0$ as $k \rightarrow \infty$ and $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} C_k < \infty$.

3.10.9.2 Tabu search

Tabu search (TS) is similar to simulated annealing. A problem in SA is that one can start to climb out of a local minimum solution, only to return via a sequence of “better” solutions that leads directly back to where the algorithm has already searched. Also, the neighborhood structure may permit moving to extremely poor solutions where one knows that no optimal solutions exist. Finally, the modeler may have insight on where to look for good solutions and SA has no easy mechanism for enabling the search of specific areas. Tabu search tries to remedy each of these deficiencies.

The key terminology in TS is $S(\mathbf{x})$, the set of moves from \mathbf{x} . This is similar to the neighborhood of \mathbf{x} , and is all the solutions that you can get to from \mathbf{x} in one *move*. The terminology “move” is similar to the “step” in simulated annealing, but can be more general because it can be applied to both continuous and discrete variable problems. Let s be a move in $S(\mathbf{x})$. For example, consider a 5-city traveling salesman problem where \mathbf{x} is a vector containing the sequence of cities visited, including the return to the initial city. Let $\mathbf{x} = (2, 1, 5, 3, 4, 2)$. If we define a move to be an “adjacent pairwise interchange”, then the set of moves $S(\mathbf{x})$ is:

$$\{(1, 2, 5, 3, 4, 1), (2, 5, 1, 3, 4, 2), (2, 1, 3, 5, 4, 2), (2, 1, 5, 4, 3, 2), (4, 1, 5, 3, 2, 4)\}$$

For another example, if we use a standard non-linear programming direction–step size search algorithm, then one can construct a family of moves of the form $S(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{x} + u\mathbf{d}$. Here, u is a step size scalar and \mathbf{d} is the direction of movement and the family depends on the values of u and \mathbf{d} selected.

To run the method, define T as the *tabu set*. This is a set of moves that one does not want the method to use. Also, define OPT to be the function that selects a particular $s \in S(\mathbf{x})$ that creates an eventual improvement in the objective. Then

Step (1) Find initial incumbent \mathbf{x}_0 . Set $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}^*$, $k = 0$, $T = \phi$.

Step (2) If $S(\mathbf{x}) - T = \phi$, then go to Step (4). Otherwise set $k = k + 1$ and select $s_k \in S(\mathbf{x}) - T$ such that $s_k(\mathbf{x}) = OPT(s \mid s \in S(\mathbf{x}) - T)$.

Step (3) Let $\mathbf{x} = s_k(\mathbf{x})$. If $f(\mathbf{x}) < f(\mathbf{x}_0)$, then $\mathbf{x}_0 = \mathbf{x}$.

Step (4) If a chosen number of iterations has elapsed either in total or since \mathbf{x}_0 was last improved, or if $S(\mathbf{x}) - T = \phi$ from Step (2), then stop. Otherwise, update T (if necessary) and return to Step (2).

The method is more effective if the user understands the solution space and can guide the search somewhat. Often the tabu list contains solutions that were previously visited or solutions that would reverse properties of good solutions. Early in the method, it is important that the search space is evaluated in a coarse manner so that one does not skip an area where the optimal solution is located. Management of the tabu list is also critical; the list will be expanding and contracting as you obtain more information about the solution space. The ability to solve the *OPT* problem quickly in Step (2) also helps the method by enabling the evaluation of more candidate solutions. Tabu search can move to inferior solutions temporarily when *OPT* returns a solution that has a worse objective value than $f(\mathbf{x})$ and, in fact, this happens every time when \mathbf{x} is a local minimum solution. For more details, see Glover.

3.10.9.3 Genetic algorithms

A different approach to heuristically solving difficult combinatorial optimization problems mimics evolutionary theory within an algorithmic process. A population of individuals is represented by K various feasible solutions \mathbf{x}_k for $k = 1, \dots, K$. The collection of such solutions at any iteration of a genetic algorithm is referred to as a *generation*, and the individual elements of each solution \mathbf{x}_k are called *chromosomes*. For instance, in the context of the traveling salesman problem, a generation would consist of a set of traveling salesman tours, and the chromosomes of an individual solution would each represent a city.

To continue drawing parallels with the evolutionary process, each iteration of a genetic algorithm creates a new generation by computing new solutions based on the previous population. More specifically, an individual of the new generation is created from (usually two) parent solutions by means of a *crossover operator*. The crossover operator prescribes methodology by which a solution is created by combining characteristics of the parent solutions. The selection of the crossover operator is one of the most important aspects of designing an algorithm.

The rules for composing a new generation differ among various implementations, but often consist of selecting some of the best solutions from the previous generation along with some new solutions created by crossovers from the previous generation. Additionally, these solutions may mutate from generation to generation in order to introduce new elements and chromosomal patterns into the population. The objective value of each new solution in the new generation is computed, and the best solution found thus far in the algorithm is updated if applicable. The creation of the new generation of solutions concludes a genetic algorithm iteration. The algorithm stops once some termination criteria are reached (e.g., after a specified number

of generations are evolved, or perhaps if no new best solution was recorded in the last q generations). A typical genetic algorithm for minimization is:

- Step (1) Choose a population size K , a maximum number of generations Q , and a number of survivors $S < K$, where K , Q , and S are all integers. Also, choose some mutation probability p (typically, p is set to be a small value, often close to 0.05). Create some initial set of solutions \mathbf{x}_k , for $k = 1, \dots, K$, and let Generation 0 consist of these solutions. Calculate the objective function of each solution in Generation 0, and let \mathbf{x}^* with objective function $f(\mathbf{x}^*)$ denote the best such solution. Initialize the generation counter $i = 0$.
- Step (2) Copy the best (according to objective function value) S solutions from Generation i into Generation $i + 1$.
- Step (3) Create the remaining $K - S$ solutions for Generation $i + 1$ by executing a crossover operation on randomly selected parents from Generation i . For each new solution \mathbf{x}_k created, calculate its objective function value $f(\mathbf{x}_k)$. If $f(\mathbf{x}_k) < f(\mathbf{x}^*)$, then set $\mathbf{x}^* = \mathbf{x}_k$ and $f(\mathbf{x}^*) = f(\mathbf{x}_k)$.
- Step (4) For $k = 1, \dots, K$, mutate solution \mathbf{x}_k in Generation i with probability p . Calculate the new objective function value $f(\mathbf{x}_k)$, and if $f(\mathbf{x}_k) < f(\mathbf{x}^*)$, then set $\mathbf{x}^* = \mathbf{x}_k$ and $f(\mathbf{x}^*) = f(\mathbf{x}_k)$.
- Step (5) Set $i = i + 1$. If $i = Q$, then terminate with solution \mathbf{x}^* . Otherwise, return to Step 2.

Genetic algorithm implementations differ because of the application area and the processes required by the algorithm. Three specific processes required by genetic algorithms are discussed below. For more details, see Goldberg.

1. *Creating the initial population* — Although often overlooked as an important part of executing genetic algorithms, careful consideration should be given to the creation of the initial set of solutions for Generation 0. For instance, we may employ a rudimentary constructive heuristic to generate a set of good initial solutions rather than using some blindly random approach. However, care must also be taken to ensure that the set of heuristic solutions generated is sufficiently diverse. That is, if all initial solutions are nearly identical, then the solutions created in the next generation may closely resemble those of the previous generation, thus limiting the scope of the genetic algorithm search space. Hence, one may penalize solutions having too close a resemblance to previously generated solutions in the initial step.
2. *The crossover process* — The crossover operator is the most important consideration in designing a genetic algorithm. While the selection of the parents for the crossover operation is done randomly, preference should be given to parent solutions having better quality objective function values (imitating mating of the most fit individuals, as in evolution theory). However, feasibility restrictions are sometimes implied by the structure of a solution, and must therefore apply to the output of the crossover operator.

EXAMPLE For example, in the traveling salesman problem, one such feasibility restriction requires that a solution must be a permutation of integers. Consider the following two parent solutions, where the return to the first city is implied:

$$(1, 3, 5, 2, 4, 6) \quad \text{and} \quad (1, 2, 3, 6, 5, 4).$$

A crossover operator that simply takes the first three chromosomes from the first parent and the last three chromosomes from the last parent would result in the solution (1, 3, 5, 6, 5, 4), which is infeasible to the permutation restriction. An alternative operator might modify the foregoing operator with the following modification: post-process the solution by replacing repeated chromosomes with omitted chromosomes. In the prior example, city 5 is repeated while city 2 is omitted, and thus one of the following two solutions would be generated:

$$(1, 3, 2, 6, 5, 4) \quad \text{or} \quad (1, 3, 5, 6, 2, 4).$$

3. *The mutation operator* — A common behavior of genetic algorithms executed without the mutation operator is that the solutions within the same generation converge to a small set of distinct solutions, from which radically different (and perhaps optimal) solutions cannot be created via the given crossover operator. The purpose of the mutation operator is to inject diverse elements into future iterations. Generally speaking, the mutation operator is often a small change within the solution, such as a pairwise interchange on a solution to the traveling salesman problem. However, the mutation operator must generate significant enough change in the solution to ensure that there exists a chance of having this modification propagate into solutions in future generations.

Chapter

2

Algebra

2.1 PROOFS WITHOUT WORDS

2.2 ELEMENTARY ALGEBRA

- 2.2.1 *Basic algebra*
- 2.2.2 *Progressions*
- 2.2.3 *DeMoivre's theorem*
- 2.2.4 *Partial fractions*

2.3 POLYNOMIALS

- 2.3.1 *Quadratic polynomials*
- 2.3.2 *Cubic polynomials*
- 2.3.3 *Quartic polynomials*
- 2.3.4 *Quartic curves*
- 2.3.5 *Quintic polynomials*
- 2.3.6 *Tschirnhaus' transformation*
- 2.3.7 *Polynomial norms*
- 2.3.8 *Cyclotomic polynomials*
- 2.3.9 *Other polynomial properties*

2.4 NUMBER THEORY

- 2.4.1 *Divisibility*
- 2.4.2 *Congruences*
- 2.4.3 *Chinese remainder theorem*
- 2.4.4 *Continued fractions*
- 2.4.5 *Diophantine equations*
- 2.4.6 *Greatest common divisor*
- 2.4.7 *Least common multiple*
- 2.4.8 *Magic squares*
- 2.4.9 *Möbius function*
- 2.4.10 *Prime numbers*
- 2.4.11 *Prime numbers of special forms*
- 2.4.12 *Prime numbers less than 100,000*
- 2.4.13 *Factorization table*
- 2.4.14 *Factorization of $2^m - 1$*
- 2.4.15 *Euler Totient function*

2.5 VECTOR ALGEBRA

- 2.5.1 *Notation for vectors and scalars*
- 2.5.2 *Physical vectors*
- 2.5.3 *Fundamental definitions*

-
- 2.5.4 *Laws of vector algebra*
 - 2.5.5 *Vector norms*
 - 2.5.6 *Dot, scalar, or inner product*
 - 2.5.7 *Vector or cross product*
 - 2.5.8 *Scalar and vector triple products*

2.6 LINEAR AND MATRIX ALGEBRA

- 2.6.1 *Definitions*
- 2.6.2 *Types of matrices*
- 2.6.3 *Conformability for addition and multiplication*
- 2.6.4 *Determinants and permanents*
- 2.6.5 *Matrix norms*
- 2.6.6 *Singularity, rank, and inverses*
- 2.6.7 *Systems of linear equations*
- 2.6.8 *Linear spaces and linear mappings*
- 2.6.9 *Traces*
- 2.6.10 *Generalized inverses*
- 2.6.11 *Eigenstructure*
- 2.6.12 *Matrix diagonalization*
- 2.6.13 *Matrix exponentials*
- 2.6.14 *Quadratic forms*
- 2.6.15 *Matrix factorizations*
- 2.6.16 *Theorems*
- 2.6.17 *The vector operation*
- 2.6.18 *Kronecker products*
- 2.6.19 *Kronecker sums*

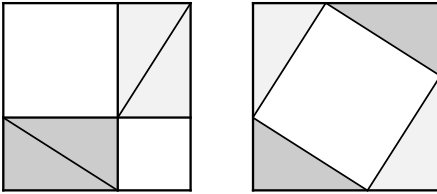
2.7 ABSTRACT ALGEBRA

- 2.7.1 *Definitions*
- 2.7.2 *Groups*
- 2.7.3 *Rings*
- 2.7.4 *Fields*
- 2.7.5 *Quadratic fields*
- 2.7.6 *Finite fields*
- 2.7.7 *Homomorphisms and isomorphisms*
- 2.7.8 *Matrix classes that are groups*
- 2.7.9 *Permutation groups*
- 2.7.10 *Tables*

2.1 PROOFS WITHOUT WORDS

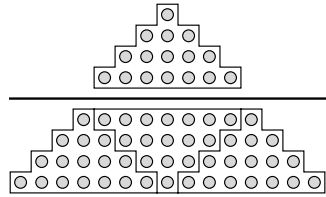
A Property of the Sequence of Odd Integers (Galileo, 1615)

The Pythagorean Theorem



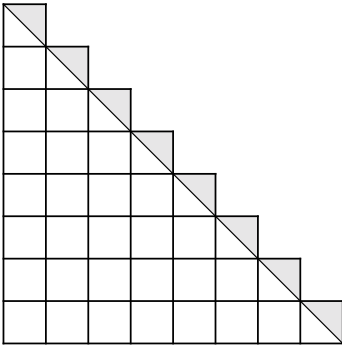
—the *Chou pei suan ching*
(author unknown, circa B.C. 200?)

$$\frac{1}{3} = \frac{1+3}{5+7} = \frac{1+3+5}{7+9+11} = \dots$$



$$\frac{1+3+\dots+(2n-1)}{(2n+1)+(2n+3)+\dots+(4n-1)} = \frac{1}{3}$$

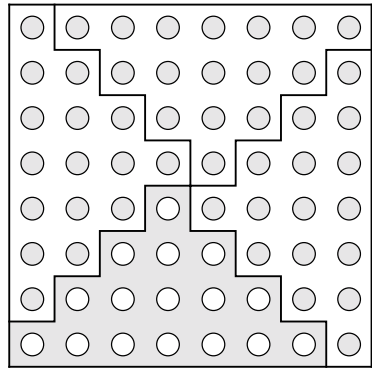
$$1+2+\dots+n = \frac{n(n+1)}{2}$$



$$1+2+\dots+n = \frac{1}{2} \cdot n^2 + n \cdot \frac{1}{2} = \frac{n(n+1)}{2}$$

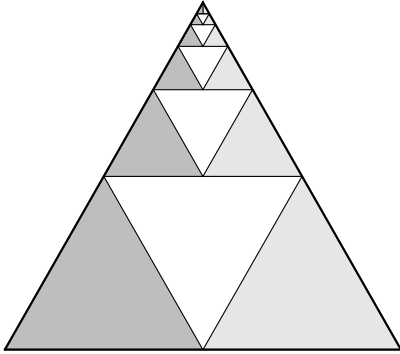
—Ian Richards

$$1+3+5+\dots+(2n-1) = n^2$$



$$1+3+\dots+(2n-1) = \frac{1}{4} (2n)^2 = n^2$$

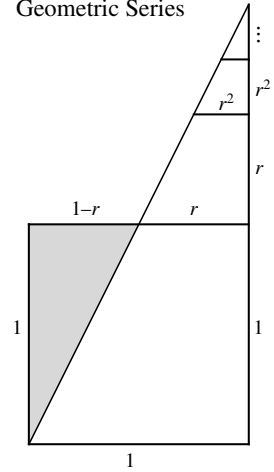
Geometric Series



$$\frac{1}{4} + \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^3 + \dots = \frac{1}{3}$$

—Rick Mabry

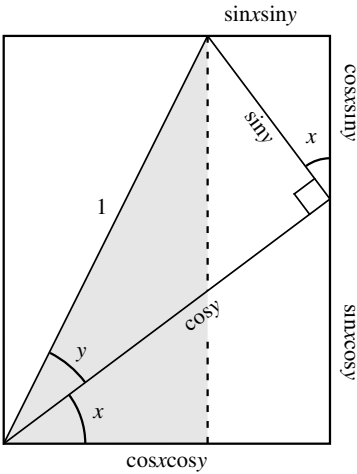
Geometric Series



$$\frac{1 + r + r^2 + \dots}{1} = \frac{1}{1 - r}$$

—Benjamin G. Klein
and Irl C. Bivens

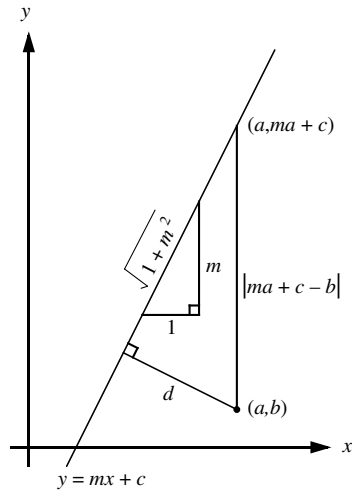
Addition Formulae for the Sine and Cosine



$$\sin(x + y) = \sin x \cos y + \cos x \sin y$$

$$\cos(x + y) = \cos x \cos y - \sin x \sin y$$

The Distance Between a Point and a Line

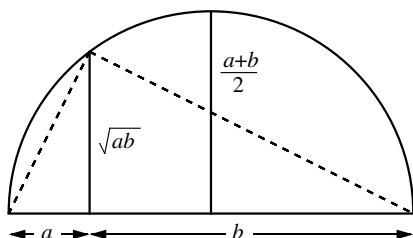


$$\frac{d}{1} = \frac{|ma + c - b|}{\sqrt{1 + m^2}}$$

—R. L. Eisenman

The Arithmetic Mean-Geometric Mean Inequality

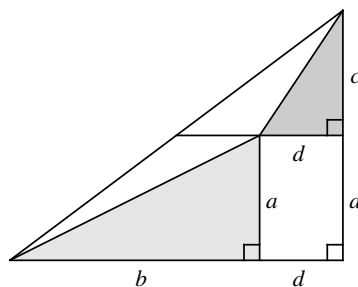
$$a, b > 0 \Rightarrow \frac{a+b}{2} \geq \sqrt{ab}$$



—Charles D. Gallant

The Mediant Property

$$\frac{a}{b} < \frac{c}{d} \Rightarrow \frac{a}{b} < \frac{a+c}{b+d} < \frac{c}{d}$$



—Richard A. Gibbs

Reprinted from “Proofs Without Words: Exercises in Visual Thinking”, by Roger B. Nelsen. Copyright 1993 by The Mathematical Association of America, pages: 3, 40, 49, 60, 70, 72, 115, 120.

Reprinted from “Proofs Without Words II: More Exercises in Visual Thinking”, by Roger B. Nelsen. Copyright 2000 by The Mathematical Association of America, pages 46, 111.

2.2 ELEMENTARY ALGEBRA

2.2.1 BASIC ALGEBRA

2.2.1.1 Algebraic equations

A polynomial equation in one variable has the form $f(x) = 0$ where $f(x)$ is a polynomial of degree n

$$f(x) = a_n x^n + a_{n-1} x^{n-1} + \dots + a_1 x + a_0 \quad (2.2.1)$$

and $a_n \neq 0$.

A complex number z is a *root* of the polynomial $f(x)$ if $f(z) = 0$. A complex number z is a *root of multiplicity k* if $f(z) = f'(z) = f''(z) = \dots = f^{(k-1)}(z) = 0$, but $f^{(k)}(z) \neq 0$. A root of multiplicity 1 is called a *simple root*. A root of multiplicity 2 is called a *double root*, and a root of multiplicity 3 is called a *triple root*.

2.2.1.2 Roots of polynomials

1. *Fundamental theorem of algebra*

A polynomial equation of degree n has exactly n complex roots, where a double root is counted twice, a triple root three times, and so on. If the n roots of the polynomial $f(x)$ are z_1, z_2, \dots, z_n (where a double root is listed twice, a triple root three times, and so on), then the polynomial can be written as

$$f(x) = a_n(x - z_1)(x - z_2) \dots (x - z_n). \tag{2.2.2}$$

2. If the coefficients of the polynomial, $\{a_0, a_1, \dots, a_n\}$, are real numbers, then the polynomial will always have an even number of complex roots occurring in pairs. That is, if z is a complex root, then so is \bar{z} . If the polynomial has an odd degree and the coefficients are real, then it must have at least one real root.
3. The coefficients of the polynomial may be expressed as symmetric functions of the roots. For example, the elementary symmetric functions $\{s_i\}$, and their values for a polynomial of degree n (known as *Viete's formulae*), are:

$$\begin{aligned} s_1 &= z_1 + z_2 + \dots + z_n = -\frac{a_{n-1}}{a_n}, \\ s_2 &= z_1z_2 + z_1z_3 + z_2z_3 + \dots = \sum_{i>j} z_i z_j = \frac{a_{n-2}}{a_n}, \\ &\vdots \\ s_n &= z_1z_2z_3 \dots z_n = (-1)^n \frac{a_0}{a_n}, \end{aligned} \tag{2.2.3}$$

where s_k is the sum of $\binom{n}{k}$ products, each product combining k factors without repetition.

4. The *discriminant* of the polynomial is defined by $\prod_{i>j} (z_i - z_j)^2$, where the ordering of the roots is irrelevant. The discriminant can always be written as a polynomial combination of a_0, a_1, \dots, a_n , divided by a_n .

(a) For the quadratic equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ the discriminant is $\frac{b^2 - 4ac}{a^2}$.

(b) For the cubic equation $ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d = 0$ the discriminant is

$$\frac{b^2c^2 - 4b^3d - 4ac^3 + 18abcd - 27a^2d^2}{a^4}.$$

5. The number of roots of a polynomial in modular arithmetic is difficult to predict. For example

(a) $y^4 + y + 1 = 0$ has one root modulo 51: $y = 37$

(b) $y^4 + y + 2 = 0$ has no roots modulo 51

(c) $y^4 + y + 3 = 0$ has six roots modulo 51: $y = \{15, 27, 30, 32, 44, 47\}$

2.2.1.3 Resultants

Let $f(x) = a_n x^n + a_{n-1} x^{n-1} + \dots + a_1 x + a_0$ and $g(x) = b_m x^m + b_{m-1} x^{m-1} + \dots + b_1 x + b_0$, where $a_n \neq 0$ and $b_m \neq 0$. The *resultant* of f and g is the determinant of the $(m+n) \times (m+n)$ matrix

$$\det \begin{bmatrix} a_n & a_{n-1} & \dots & \dots & a_0 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & a_n & a_{n-1} & \dots & a_1 & a_0 & & 0 \\ \vdots & & & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \\ 0 & \dots & 0 & a_n & a_{n-1} & \dots & a_1 & a_0 \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ 0 & \dots & \dots & 0 & b_m & \dots & b_1 & b_0 \\ \vdots & & & \ddots & \ddots & & & \\ 0 & b_m & b_{m-1} & \dots & b_0 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ b_m & b_{m-1} & \dots & b_0 & 0 & \dots & \dots & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.2.4)$$

The resultant of $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ is 0 if and only if $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ have a common root. Hence, the resultant of $f(x)$ and $f'(x)$ is zero if and only if $f(x)$ has a multiple root.

EXAMPLES

1. If $f(x) = x^2 + 2x + 3$ and $g(x; \alpha) = 4x^3 + 5x^2 + 6x + (7 + \alpha)$, then the resultant of $f(x)$ and $g(x; \alpha)$ is

$$\det \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 + \alpha \\ 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 + \alpha & 0 \end{bmatrix} = (16 + \alpha)^2$$

Note that $g(x, -16) = (4x - 3)(x^2 + 2x + 3) = (4x - 3)f(x)$.

2. The resultant of $ax + b$ and $cx + d$ is $da - bc$.
3. The resultant of $(x + a)^5$ and $(x + b)^5$ is $(b - a)^{25}$.

2.2.1.4 Algebraic identities

$$(a \pm b)^2 = a^2 \pm 2ab + b^2.$$

$$(a \pm b)^3 = a^3 \pm 3a^2b + 3ab^2 \pm b^3.$$

$$(a \pm b)^4 = a^4 \pm 4a^3b + 6a^2b^2 \pm 4ab^3 + b^4.$$

$$(a \pm b)^n = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} a^k (\pm b)^{n-k} \quad \text{where } \binom{n}{k} = \frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!}.$$

$$a^2 + b^2 = (a + bi)(a - bi).$$

$$a^4 + b^4 = (a^2 + \sqrt{2}ab + b^2)(a^2 - \sqrt{2}ab + b^2).$$

$$a^2 - b^2 = (a - b)(a + b).$$

$$a^3 - b^3 = (a - b)(a^2 + ab + b^2).$$

$$a^n - b^n = (a - b)(a^{n-1} + a^{n-2}b + \dots + ab^{n-2} + b^{n-1}).$$

$$(a + b + c)^2 = a^2 + b^2 + c^2 + 2ab + 2ac + 2bc.$$

$$(a + b + c)^3 = a^3 + b^3 + c^3 + 3(a^2b + ab^2 + a^2c + ac^2 + b^2c + bc^2) + 6abc.$$

$$a^n + b^n = (a + b) (a^{n-1} + (-b)a^{n-2} + (-b)^2a^{n-3} + \cdots + (-b)^{n-1}) \quad n \text{ odd}$$

2.2.1.5 Laws of exponents

Assuming all quantities are real, a and b positive, and no denominators are zero, then

$$\begin{aligned} a^x a^y &= a^{x+y}, & \frac{a^x}{a^y} &= a^{x-y}, & (ab)^x &= a^x b^x, \\ a^0 &= 1 \text{ if } a \neq 0, & a^{-x} &= \frac{1}{a^x}, & \left(\frac{a}{b}\right)^x &= \frac{a^x}{b^x}, \\ (a^x)^y &= a^{xy}, & a^{\frac{1}{x}} &= \sqrt[x]{a}, & \sqrt[xy]{ab} &= \sqrt[x]{a} \sqrt[y]{b}, \\ \sqrt[x]{\sqrt[y]{a}} &= \sqrt[xy]{a}, & a^{\frac{x}{y}} &= \sqrt[y]{a^x} = (\sqrt[y]{a})^x, & \sqrt[x]{\frac{a}{b}} &= \frac{\sqrt[x]{a}}{\sqrt[x]{b}}. \end{aligned}$$

2.2.1.6 Proportion

If $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$, then $\frac{a}{c} = \frac{b}{d}$, $ad = bc$, $\frac{a+b}{b} = \frac{c+d}{d}$, $\frac{a-b}{b} = \frac{c-d}{d}$, and $\frac{a-b}{a+b} = \frac{c-d}{c+d}$.

If $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$, where a, b, c , and d are all positive numbers and a is the largest of the four numbers, then $a + d > b + c$.

2.2.2 PROGRESSIONS

2.2.2.1 Arithmetic progression

An *arithmetic progression* is a sequence of numbers such that the difference of any two consecutive numbers is constant. If the sequence is a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n , where $a_{i+1} - a_i = d$, then $a_k = a_1 + (k - 1)d$ and

$$a_1 + a_2 + \cdots + a_n = \frac{n}{2} (2a_1 + (n - 1)d). \quad (2.2.5)$$

In particular, the arithmetic progression $1, 2, \dots, n$ has the sum $n(n + 1)/2$. (See page 22.)

2.2.2.2 Geometric progression

A *geometric progression* is a sequence of numbers such that the ratio of any two consecutive numbers is constant. If the sequence is a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n , where $a_{i+1}/a_i = r$, then $a_k = a_1 r^{k-1}$.

$$a_1 + a_2 + \cdots + a_n = \begin{cases} a_1 \frac{1-r^n}{1-r} & r \neq 1 \\ na_1 & r = 1. \end{cases} \quad (2.2.6)$$

If $|r| < 1$, then the infinite geometric series $a_1(1 + r + r^2 + r^3 + \cdots)$ converges to $\frac{a_1}{1-r}$. For example, $1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{8} + \cdots = 2$.

2.2.2.3 Means

1. The *arithmetic mean* of a and b is given by $\frac{a+b}{2}$. More generally, the arithmetic mean of a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n is given by $(a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_n)/n$.
2. The *geometric mean* of a and b is given by \sqrt{ab} . More generally, the geometric mean of a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n is given by $\sqrt[n]{a_1 a_2 \dots a_n}$. The geometric mean of n positive numbers is less than the corresponding arithmetic mean, unless all of the numbers are equal.
3. The *harmonic mean* of a and b is given by $\frac{1}{\frac{1}{2}(\frac{1}{a} + \frac{1}{b})} = \frac{2ab}{a+b}$.

If A , G , and H represent the arithmetic, geometric, and harmonic means of a and b , then $AH = G^2$.

2.2.3 DEMOIVRE'S THEOREM

A complex number $a + bi$ can be written in the form $re^{i\theta}$, where $r^2 = a^2 + b^2$ and $\tan \theta = b/a$. Because $e^{i\theta} = \cos \theta + i \sin \theta$,

$$(a + bi)^n = r^n (\cos n\theta + i \sin n\theta),$$
$$\sqrt[n]{1} = \cos \frac{2k\pi}{n} + i \sin \frac{2k\pi}{n}, \quad k = 0, 1, \dots, n-1. \quad (2.2.7)$$
$$\sqrt[n]{-1} = \cos \frac{(2k+1)\pi}{n} + i \sin \frac{(2k+1)\pi}{n}, \quad k = 0, 1, \dots, n-1.$$

2.2.4 PARTIAL FRACTIONS

The technique of partial fractions allows a quotient of two polynomials to be written as a sum of simpler terms.

Let $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ be polynomials and let the fraction be $\frac{f(x)}{g(x)}$. If the degree of $f(x)$ is greater than the degree of $g(x)$ then divide $f(x)$ by $g(x)$ to produce a quotient $q(x)$ and a remainder $r(x)$, where the degree of $r(x)$ is less than the degree of $g(x)$. That is, $\frac{f(x)}{g(x)} = q(x) + \frac{r(x)}{g(x)}$. Therefore, assume that the fraction has the form $\frac{r(x)}{g(x)}$, where the degree of the numerator is less than the degree of the denominator.

The techniques used to find the partial fraction decomposition of $\frac{r(x)}{g(x)}$ depend on the factorization of $g(x)$.

2.2.4.1 Single linear factor

Suppose that $g(x) = (x - a)h(x)$, where $h(a) \neq 0$. Then

$$\frac{r(x)}{g(x)} = \frac{A}{x - a} + \frac{s(x)}{h(x)}, \quad (2.2.8)$$

where $s(x)$ can be computed and the number A is given by $r(a)/h(a)$. For example (here $r(x) = 2x$, $g(x) = x^2 - 1 = (x - 1)(x + 1)$, $h(x) = x + 1$, and $a = 1$):

$$\frac{2x}{x^2 - 1} = \frac{1}{x - 1} + \frac{1}{x + 1}. \quad (2.2.9)$$

2.2.4.2 Repeated linear factor

Suppose that $g(x) = (x - a)^k h(x)$, where $h(a) \neq 0$. Then

$$\frac{r(x)}{g(x)} = \frac{A_1}{x - a} + \frac{A_2}{(x - a)^2} + \cdots + \frac{A_k}{(x - a)^k} + \frac{s(x)}{h(x)}, \quad (2.2.10)$$

for a computable $s(x)$ where

$$\begin{aligned} A_k &= \frac{r(a)}{h(a)}, \\ A_{k-1} &= \frac{d}{dx} \left(\frac{r(x)}{h(x)} \right) \Big|_{x=a}, \\ A_{k-2} &= \frac{1}{2!} \frac{d^2}{dx^2} \left(\frac{r(x)}{h(x)} \right) \Big|_{x=a}, \\ A_{k-j} &= \frac{1}{j!} \frac{d^j}{dx^j} \left(\frac{r(x)}{h(x)} \right) \Big|_{x=a}. \end{aligned} \quad (2.2.11)$$

2.2.4.3 Single quadratic factor

Suppose that $g(x) = (x^2 + bx + c)h(x)$, where $b^2 - 4c < 0$ (so that $x^2 + bx + c$ does not factor into real linear factors) and $h(x)$ is relatively prime to $x^2 + bx + c$ (that is $h(x)$ and $x^2 + bx + c$ have no factors in common). Then

$$\frac{r(x)}{g(x)} = \frac{Ax + B}{x^2 + bx + c} + \frac{s(x)}{h(x)}. \quad (2.2.12)$$

In order to determine A and B , multiply the equation by $g(x)$ so that there are no denominators remaining, and substitute any two values for x , yielding two equations for A and B .

When A and B are both real, if after multiplying the equation by $g(x)$ a root of $x^2 + bx + c$ is substituted for x , then the values of A and B can be inferred from this single complex equation by equating real and imaginary parts. (Since $x^2 + bx + c$ divides $g(x)$, there are no zeros in the denominator.) This technique can also be used for repeated quadratic factors (below).

2.2.4.4 Repeated quadratic factor

Suppose that $g(x) = (x^2 + bx + c)^k h(x)$, where $b^2 - 4c < 0$ (so that $x^2 + bx + c$ does not factor into real linear factors) and $h(x)$ is relatively prime to $x^2 + bx + c$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{r(x)}{g(x)} &= \frac{A_1 x + B_1}{x^2 + bx + c} + \frac{A_2 x + B_2}{(x^2 + bx + c)^2} + \frac{A_3 x + B_3}{(x^2 + bx + c)^3} \\ &\quad + \cdots + \frac{A_k x + B_k}{(x^2 + bx + c)^k} + \frac{s(x)}{h(x)}. \end{aligned}$$

In order to determine A_i and B_i , multiply the equation by $g(x)$ so that there are no denominators remaining, and substitute any $2k$ values for x , yielding $2k$ equations for A_i and B_i .

2.3 POLYNOMIALS

All polynomials of degree 2, 3, or 4 are solvable by radicals. That is, their roots can be written in terms of a finite number of algebraic operations (+, −, ×, and ÷) and root-taking ($\sqrt[n]{}$). While some polynomials of higher degree can be solved by radicals (e.g., $x^{10} = 1$ is easy to solve), the general polynomial of degree 5 or higher cannot be solved by radicals. However, general polynomials of degree 5 and higher can be solved using hypergeometric functions.

2.3.1 QUADRATIC POLYNOMIALS

The solution of the equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, where $a \neq 0$, is given by

$$x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}. \quad (2.3.1)$$

The discriminant of the quadratic equation is $(b^2 - 4ac)/a^2$. Suppose that a , b , and c are all real. If the discriminant is negative, then the two roots are complex numbers which are conjugate. If the discriminant is positive, then the two roots are unequal real numbers. If the discriminant is 0, then the two roots are equal.

2.3.2 CUBIC POLYNOMIALS

To solve the equation $ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d = 0$, where $a \neq 0$, begin by making the substitution $y = x + \frac{b}{3a}$. That gives the equation $y^3 + 3py + q = 0$, where $p = \frac{3ac - b^2}{9a^2}$ and $q = \frac{2b^3 - 9abc + 27a^2d}{27a^3}$. The discriminant of this polynomial is $4p^3 + q^2$.

The solutions of $y^3 + 3py + q = 0$ are given by $\sqrt[3]{\alpha} + \sqrt[3]{\beta}$, $e^{\frac{2\pi i}{3}}\sqrt[3]{\alpha} + e^{\frac{4\pi i}{3}}\sqrt[3]{\beta}$, and $e^{\frac{4\pi i}{3}}\sqrt[3]{\alpha} + e^{\frac{2\pi i}{3}}\sqrt[3]{\beta}$, where

$$\alpha = \frac{-q + \sqrt{q^2 + 4p^3}}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad \beta = \frac{-q - \sqrt{q^2 + 4p^3}}{2}. \quad (2.3.2)$$

Suppose that p and q are real numbers. If the discriminant is positive, then one root is real, and two are complex conjugates. If the discriminant is 0, then there are three real roots, of which at least two are equal. If the discriminant is negative, then there are three unequal real roots.

2.3.2.1 Trigonometric solution of cubic polynomials

In the event that the roots of the polynomial $y^3 + 3py + q = 0$ are all real, meaning that $q^2 + 4p^3 \leq 0$, then the expressions above involve complex numbers. In that case one can also express the solution in terms of trigonometric functions. Define r and θ by

$$r = \sqrt{-p^3} \quad \text{and} \quad \theta = \cos^{-1} \frac{-q}{2r}. \quad (2.3.3)$$

Then the three roots are given by

$$2\sqrt[3]{r} \cos \frac{\theta}{3}, \quad 2\sqrt[3]{r} \cos \frac{\theta + 2\pi}{3}, \quad \text{and} \quad 2\sqrt[3]{r} \cos \frac{\theta + 4\pi}{3}. \quad (2.3.4)$$

2.3.3 QUARTIC POLYNOMIALS

To solve the equation $ax^4 + bx^3 + cx^2 + dx + e = 0$, where $a \neq 0$, start with the substitution $y = x + \frac{b}{4a}$. This gives $y^4 + py^2 + qy + r = 0$, where $p = \frac{8ac - 3b^2}{8a^2}$, $q = \frac{b^3 - 4abc + 8a^2d}{8a^3}$, and $r = \frac{16ab^2c + 256a^3e - 3b^4 - 64a^2bd}{256a^4}$.

The *cubic resolvent* of this polynomial is defined as $t^3 - pt^2 - 4rt + (4pr - q^2) = 0$. If u is a root of the cubic resolvent (see previous section), then the solutions of the original quartic are given by $x = y - \frac{b}{4a}$ where y is a solution of:

$$y^2 \pm \sqrt{u - p} \left(y - \frac{q}{2(u - p)} \right) + \frac{u}{2} = 0. \quad (2.3.5)$$

2.3.4 QUARTIC CURVES

Any quartic curve of the form $y^2 = (x - \alpha)(x - \beta)(x - \gamma)(x - \delta)$ can be written as

$$\left(\frac{y}{(x - \alpha)^2} \right)^2 = \left(1 - \frac{\beta - \alpha}{x - \alpha} \right) \left(1 - \frac{\gamma - \alpha}{x - \alpha} \right) \left(1 - \frac{\delta - \alpha}{x - \alpha} \right) \quad (2.3.6)$$

and hence it is cubic in the coordinates $X = \frac{1}{x - \alpha}$ and $Y = \frac{y}{x - \alpha^2}$. For example, $y^2 = 1 - x^4$ is the cubic $Y^2 = 4X^3 - 6X^2 + 4X - 1$ in the coordinates $X = 1/(1 - x)$ and $Y = y/(1 - x)^2$.

2.3.5 QUINTIC POLYNOMIALS

Some quintic equations are solvable by radicals. If the function $f(x) = x^5 + ax + b$ (with a and b rational) is irreducible, then $f(x) = 0$ is solvable by radicals if, and only if, numbers ϵ , c , and e exist (with $\epsilon = \pm 1$, $c \geq 0$, and $e \neq 0$) such that

$$a = \frac{5e^4(3 - 4\epsilon c)}{c^2 + 1} \quad \text{and} \quad b = \frac{-4e^5(11\epsilon + 2c)}{c^2 + 1}. \quad (2.3.7)$$

In this case, the roots are given by $x = e(\omega^j u_1 + \omega^{2j} u_2 + \omega^{3j} u_3 + \omega^{4j} u_4)$ for $j = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4$, where ω is a fifth root of unity ($\omega = \exp(2\pi i/5)$) and

$$\begin{aligned} u_1 &= \left(\frac{v_1^2 v_3}{D^2} \right), & u_2 &= \left(\frac{v_3^2 v_4}{D^2} \right), & u_3 &= \left(\frac{v_2^2 v_1}{D^2} \right), & u_4 &= \left(\frac{v_4^2 v_2}{D^2} \right), \\ v_1 &= \sqrt{D} + \sqrt{D - \epsilon\sqrt{D}}, & v_2 &= -\sqrt{D} - \sqrt{D + \epsilon\sqrt{D}}, \\ v_3 &= -\sqrt{D} + \sqrt{D + \epsilon\sqrt{D}}, & v_4 &= \sqrt{D} - \sqrt{D - \epsilon\sqrt{D}}, \quad \text{and} \\ D &= c^2 + 1. \end{aligned}$$

EXAMPLE The quintic $f(x) = x^5 + 15x + 12$ has the values $\epsilon = -1$, $c = 4/3$, and $e = 1$. Hence the unique real root is given by

$$x = \left(\frac{-75 + 21\sqrt{10}}{125}\right)^{1/5} + \left(\frac{-75 - 21\sqrt{10}}{125}\right)^{1/5} + \left(\frac{225 + 72\sqrt{10}}{125}\right)^{1/5} + \left(\frac{225 - 72\sqrt{10}}{125}\right)^{1/5}.$$

2.3.6 TSCHIRNHAUS' TRANSFORMATION

The n^{th} degree polynomial equation

$$a_n x^n + a_{n-1} x^{n-1} + \dots + a_1 x + a_0 = 0 \tag{2.3.8}$$

can be transformed to one with up to three fewer terms,

$$z^n + b_{n-4} z^{n-4} + \dots + b_1 z + b_0 = 0 \tag{2.3.9}$$

by making a transformation of the form

$$z_j = \gamma_4 x_j^4 + \gamma_3 x_j^3 + \gamma_2 x_j^2 + \gamma_1 x_j + \gamma_0 \tag{2.3.10}$$

for $j = 1, \dots, n$ where the $\{\gamma_i\}$ can be computed, in terms of radicals, from the $\{a_i\}$. Hence, a general quintic polynomial can be transformed to the form $z^5 + az + b = 0$.

2.3.7 POLYNOMIAL NORMS

The polynomial $P(x) = \sum_{j=0}^n a_j x^j$ has the norms:

$$\|P\|_1 = \int_0^{2\pi} |P(e^{i\theta})| \frac{d\theta}{2\pi} \qquad |P|_1 = \sum_{j=0}^n |a_j|. \tag{2.3.11}$$

$$\|P\|_2 = \left(\int_0^{2\pi} |P(e^{i\theta})|^2 \frac{d\theta}{2\pi} \right)^{1/2} \qquad |P|_2 = \left(\sum_{j=1}^n |a_j|^2 \right)^{1/2}. \tag{2.3.12}$$

$$\|P\|_\infty = \max_{|z|=1} |P(z)| \qquad |P|_\infty = \max_j |a_j|. \tag{2.3.13}$$

For the double bar norms, P is considered as a function on the unit circle; for the single bar norms, P is identified with its coefficients. These norms are comparable:

$$|P|_\infty \leq \|P\|_1 \leq |P|_2 = \|P\|_2 \leq |P|_\infty \leq |P|_1 \leq n|P|_\infty. \tag{2.3.14}$$

2.3.8 CYCLOTOMIC POLYNOMIALS

The d^{th} cyclotomic polynomial, $\Phi_d(x)$, is

$$\Phi_d(x) = \prod_{\substack{k=1,2,\dots \\ (k,d)=1}}^d (x - \xi_k) = x^{\phi(d)} + \dots \tag{2.3.15}$$

where the $\xi_k = e^{2\pi ik/d}$ are the primitive d^{th} roots of unity

$$\begin{aligned} \Phi_p(x) &= \sum_{k=0}^{p-1} x^k = \frac{x^p - 1}{x - 1} \quad \text{if } p \text{ is prime} \\ x^n - 1 &= \prod_{d|n} \Phi_d(x) \\ x^n + 1 &= \frac{x^{2n} - 1}{x^n - 1} = \frac{\prod_{d|2n} \Phi_d(x)}{\prod_{d|n} \Phi_d(x)} = \prod_{d|n} \Phi_{2^t d}(x) \end{aligned} \tag{2.3.16}$$

where $n = 2^{t-1}m$ and m is odd.

| n | cyclotomic polynomial of degree n |
|-----|---|
| 1 | $-1 + x$ |
| 2 | $1 + x$ |
| 3 | $1 + x + x^2 = \frac{x^3 - 1}{x - 1}$ |
| 4 | $1 + x^2$ |
| 5 | $1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + x^4 = \frac{x^5 - 1}{x - 1}$ |
| 6 | $1 - x + x^2$ |
| 7 | $1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + x^4 + x^5 + x^6 = \frac{x^7 - 1}{x - 1}$ |
| 8 | $1 + x^4$ |
| 9 | $1 + x^3 + x^6$ |
| 10 | $1 - x + x^2 - x^3 + x^4$ |
| 11 | $1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + x^4 + x^5 + x^6 + x^7 + x^8 + x^9 + x^{10} = \frac{x^{11} - 1}{x - 1}$ |
| 12 | $1 - x^2 + x^4$ |
| 13 | $\frac{x^{13} - 1}{x - 1}$ |
| 14 | $1 - x + x^2 - x^3 + x^4 - x^5 + x^6$ |
| 15 | $1 - x + x^3 - x^4 + x^5 - x^7 + x^8$ |
| 16 | $1 + x^8$ |
| 17 | $\frac{x^{17} - 1}{x - 1}$ |
| 18 | $1 - x^3 + x^6$ |
| 19 | $\frac{x^{19} - 1}{x - 1}$ |
| 20 | $1 - x^2 + x^4 - x^6 + x^8$ |
| 21 | $1 - x + x^3 - x^4 + x^6 - x^8 + x^9 - x^{11} + x^{12}$ |
| 22 | $1 - x + x^2 - x^3 + x^4 - x^5 + x^6 - x^7 + x^8 - x^9 + x^{10}$ |
| 23 | $\frac{x^{23} - 1}{x - 1}$ |
| 24 | $1 - x^4 + x^8$ |
| 25 | $1 + x^5 + x^{10} + x^{15} + x^{20}$ |
| 26 | $1 - x + x^2 - x^3 + x^4 - x^5 + x^6 - x^7 + x^8 - x^9 + x^{10} - x^{11} + x^{12}$ |
| 27 | $1 + x^9 + x^{18}$ |
| 28 | $1 - x^2 + x^4 - x^6 + x^8 - x^{10} + x^{12}$ |
| 29 | $\frac{x^{29} - 1}{x - 1}$ |
| 30 | $1 + x - x^3 - x^4 - x^5 + x^7 + x^8$ |

2.3.9 OTHER POLYNOMIAL PROPERTIES

1. *Jensen's inequality*: For the polynomial $P(x) = \sum_{j=0}^n a_j x^j$, with $a_0 \neq 0$

$$\int_0^{2\pi} \log |P(e^{i\theta})| \frac{d\theta}{2\pi} \geq \log |a_0|. \quad (2.3.17)$$

2. *Symmetric form*: The polynomial $P(x_1, \dots, x_n) = \sum_{|\alpha|=m} a_\alpha x_1^{\alpha_1} x_2^{\alpha_2} \dots x_n^{\alpha_n}$,

where $\alpha = (\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n)$ can be written in the symmetric form

$$P(x_1, \dots, x_n) = \sum_{i_1, \dots, i_m=1}^N c_{i_1, \dots, i_m} x_{i_1} x_{i_2} \dots x_{i_m} \quad (2.3.18)$$

with $c_{i_1, \dots, i_m} = \frac{1}{m!} \frac{\partial^m P}{\partial x_{i_1} \dots \partial x_{i_m}}$. This means that the $x_1 x_2$ term is written as $\frac{1}{2}(x_1 x_2 + x_2 x_1)$, the term $x_1 x_2^2$ becomes $\frac{1}{3}(x_1 x_2 x_2 + x_2 x_1 x_2 + x_2 x_2 x_1)$.

3. The *Mahler measure* (a valuation) of the polynomial $P(x) = a_n x^n + a_{n-1} x^{n-1} + \dots + a_0 = a_n(x - z_1)(x - z_2) \dots (x - z_n)$ is given by

$$M(P) = |a_n| \prod_{i=1}^n \max(1, |z_i|) = \exp \left(\int_0^1 \log |P(e^{2\pi i t})| dt \right).$$

This valuation satisfies the properties:

- (a) $M(P)M(Q) = M(PQ)$
- (b) $M(P(x)) = M(P(x^k))$ for $k \geq 1$
- (c) $M(x^n P(x^{-1})) = M(P(x))$

2.4 NUMBER THEORY

2.4.1 DIVISIBILITY

The notation “ $a|b$ ” means that the number a evenly divides the number b . That is, the ratio $\frac{b}{a}$ is an integer.

2.4.2 CONGRUENCES

1. If the integers a and b leave the same remainder when divided by the number n , then a and b are *congruent* modulo n . This is written $a \equiv b \pmod{n}$.
2. If the congruence $x^2 \equiv a \pmod{p}$ has a solution, then a is a *quadratic residue* of p . Otherwise, a is a *quadratic non-residue* of p .

(a) Let p be an odd prime. *Legendre's symbol* $\left(\frac{a}{p}\right)$ has the value $+1$ if a is a quadratic residue of p , and the value -1 if a is a quadratic non-residue of p . This can be written $\left(\frac{a}{p}\right) \equiv a^{(p-1)/2} \pmod{p}$.

(b) The *Jacobi symbol* generalizes the Legendre symbol to non-prime moduli. If $n = \prod_{i=1}^k p_i^{b_i}$ then the Jacobi symbol can be written in terms of the Legendre symbol as follows

$$\left(\frac{a}{n}\right) = \prod_{i=1}^k \left(\frac{a}{p_i}\right)^{b_i}. \quad (2.4.1)$$

3. An *exact covering* sequence is a set of non-negative ordered pairs $\{(a_i, b_i)\}_{i=1}^k$ such that every non-negative integer n satisfies $n \equiv a_i \pmod{b_i}$ for exactly one i . An exact covering sequence satisfies

$$\sum_{i=1}^k \frac{x^{a_i}}{1 - x^{b_i}} = \frac{1}{1 - x}. \quad (2.4.2)$$

For example, every positive integer n is either congruent to $1 \pmod{2}$, or $0 \pmod{4}$, or $2 \pmod{4}$. Hence, the three pairs $\{(1, 2), (0, 4), (2, 4)\}$ of residues and moduli *exactly cover* the positive integers. Note that

$$\frac{x}{1 - x^2} + \frac{1}{1 - x^4} + \frac{x^2}{1 - x^4} = \frac{1}{1 - x}. \quad (2.4.3)$$

4. Carmichael numbers are composite numbers n that satisfy $a^{n-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{n}$ for every a (with $1 < a < n$) that is relatively prime to n . There are infinitely many Carmichael numbers. Every Carmichael number has at least three prime factors. If $n = \prod_i p_i$ is a Carmichael number, then $(p_i - 1)$ divides $(n - 1)$ for each i .

There are 43 Carmichael numbers less than 10^6 and 105,212 less than 10^{15} . The Carmichael numbers less than ten thousand are 561, 1105, 1729, 2465, 2821, 6601, and 8911.

2.4.2.1 Properties of congruences

1. If $a \equiv b \pmod{n}$, then $b \equiv a \pmod{n}$.
2. If $a \equiv b \pmod{n}$, and $b \equiv c \pmod{n}$, then $a \equiv c \pmod{n}$.
3. If $a \equiv a' \pmod{n}$, and $b \equiv b' \pmod{n}$, then $a \pm b \equiv a' \pm b' \pmod{n}$.
4. If $a \equiv a' \pmod{n}$, then $a^2 \equiv (a')^2 \pmod{n}$, $a^3 \equiv (a')^3 \pmod{n}$, etc.
5. If $\text{GCD}(k, m) = d$, then the congruence $kx \equiv n \pmod{m}$ is solvable if and only if d divides n . It then has d solutions.
6. If p is a prime, then $a^p \equiv a \pmod{p}$.
7. If p is a prime, and p does not divide a , then $a^{p-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$.
8. If $\text{GCD}(a, m) = 1$ then $a^{\phi(m)} \equiv 1 \pmod{m}$. (See [Section 2.4.15](#) for $\phi(m)$.)
9. If p is an odd prime and a is not a multiple of p , then Wilson's theorem states $(p-1)! \equiv -\left(\frac{a}{p}\right) a^{(p-1)/2} \pmod{p}$.
10. If p and q are odd primes, then Gauss's law of quadratic reciprocity states that $\left(\frac{p}{q}\right) \left(\frac{q}{p}\right) = (-1)^{(p-1)(q-1)/4}$. Therefore, if a and b are relatively prime odd integers and $b \geq 3$, then $\left(\frac{a}{b}\right) = (-1)^{(a-1)(b-1)/4} \left(\frac{b}{a}\right)$.
11. The number -1 is a quadratic residue of primes of the form $4k + 1$ and a non-residue of primes of the form $4k + 3$. That is

$$\left(\frac{-1}{p}\right) = (-1)^{(p-1)/2} = \begin{cases} +1 & \text{when } p \equiv 1 \pmod{4} \\ -1 & \text{when } p \equiv 3 \pmod{4} \end{cases}$$

12. The number 2 is a quadratic residue of primes of the form $8k \pm 1$ and a non-residue of primes of the form $8k \pm 3$. That is

$$\left(\frac{2}{p}\right) = (-1)^{(p^2-1)/8} = \begin{cases} +1 & \text{when } p \equiv \pm 1 \pmod{8} \\ -1 & \text{when } p \equiv \pm 3 \pmod{8} \end{cases}$$

13. The number -3 is a quadratic residue of primes of the form $6k + 1$ and a non-residue of primes of the form $6k + 5$.
14. The number 3 is a quadratic residue of primes of the form $12k \pm 1$ and a non-residue of primes of the form $12k \pm 5$.

2.4.3 CHINESE REMAINDER THEOREM

Let m_1, m_2, \dots, m_r be pairwise relatively prime integers. Then the system of congruences

$$\begin{aligned} x &\equiv a_1 \pmod{m_1} \\ x &\equiv a_2 \pmod{m_2} \\ &\vdots \\ x &\equiv a_r \pmod{m_r} \end{aligned} \tag{2.4.4}$$

has a unique solution modulo $M = m_1 m_2 \cdots m_r$. This unique solution can be written as

$$x = a_1 M_1 y_1 + a_2 M_2 y_2 + \cdots + a_r M_r y_r \tag{2.4.5}$$

where $M_k = M/m_k$, and y_k is the inverse of M_k (modulo m_k).

EXAMPLE For the system of congruences

$$\begin{aligned} x &\equiv 1 \pmod{3} \\ x &\equiv 2 \pmod{5} \\ x &\equiv 3 \pmod{7} \end{aligned}$$

we have $M = 3 \cdot 5 \cdot 7 = 105$. Hence $M_1 = 35$, $M_2 = 21$, and $M_3 = 15$. The equation for y_1 is $M_1 y_1 = 35 y_1 \equiv 1 \pmod{3}$ with solution $y_1 \equiv 2 \pmod{3}$. Likewise, $y_2 \equiv 1 \pmod{5}$ and $y_3 \equiv 1 \pmod{7}$. This results in $x = 1 \cdot 35 \cdot 2 + 2 \cdot 21 \cdot 1 + 3 \cdot 15 \cdot 1 \equiv 52 \pmod{105}$.

2.4.4 CONTINUED FRACTIONS

The symbol $[a_0, a_1, \dots, a_N]$, with $a_i > 0$, represents the simple *continued fraction*,

$$[a_0, a_1, \dots, a_N] = a_0 + \frac{1}{a_1 + \frac{1}{a_2 + \frac{1}{a_3 + \frac{1}{a_4 + \frac{\dots}{\dots + \frac{1}{a_N}}}}}} \tag{2.4.6}$$

The n^{th} *convergent* (with $0 < n < N$) of $[a_0, a_1, \dots, a_N]$ is defined to be $[a_0, a_1, \dots, a_n]$. If $\{p_n\}$ and $\{q_n\}$ are defined by

$$\begin{aligned} p_0 &= a_0, & p_1 &= a_1 a_0 + 1, & p_n &= a_n p_{n-1} + p_{n-2} & (2 \leq n \leq N) \\ q_0 &= 1, & q_1 &= a_1, & q_n &= a_n q_{n-1} + q_{n-2} & (2 \leq n \leq N) \end{aligned}$$

then $[a_0, a_1, \dots, a_n] = p_n/q_n$. The continued fraction is convergent if and only if the infinite series $\sum_i a_i$ is divergent.

If the positive rational number x can be represented by a simple continued fraction with an odd (even) number of terms, then it is also representable by one with an even (odd) number of terms. (Specially, if $a_n = 1$ then $[a_0, \dots, a_{n-1}, 1] = [a_0, \dots, a_{n-1} + 1]$, and if $a_n \geq 2$, then $[a_0, \dots, a_n] = [a_0, \dots, a_n - 1, 1]$.) Aside from this indeterminacy, the simple continued fraction of x is unique. The error in approximating by a convergent is bounded by

$$\left| x - \frac{p_n}{q_n} \right| \leq \frac{1}{q_n q_{n+1}} < \frac{1}{q_n^2}. \quad (2.4.7)$$

The algorithm for finding a continued fraction expansion of a number is to remove the integer part of the number (this becomes a_i), take the reciprocal, and repeat. For example, for the number π :

$$\begin{aligned} \beta_0 &= \pi \approx 3.14159 & a_0 &= \lfloor \beta_0 \rfloor = 3 \\ \beta_1 &= 1/(\beta_0 - a_0) \approx 7.062 & a_1 &= \lfloor \beta_1 \rfloor = 7 \\ \beta_2 &= 1/(\beta_1 - a_1) \approx 15.997 & a_2 &= \lfloor \beta_2 \rfloor = 15 \\ \beta_3 &= 1/(\beta_2 - a_2) \approx 1.0034 & a_3 &= \lfloor \beta_3 \rfloor = 1 \\ \beta_4 &= 1/(\beta_3 - a_3) \approx 292.6 & a_4 &= \lfloor \beta_4 \rfloor = 292 \end{aligned}$$

Approximations to π and e may be found from $\pi = [3, 7, 15, 1, 292, 1, 1, 1, 2, 1, 3, 1, 14, 2, \dots]$ and $e = [2, 1, 2, 1, 1, 4, 1, 1, 6, \dots, 1, 1, 2n, \dots]$. The convergents for π are $\frac{22}{7} \approx 3.142$, $\frac{333}{106} \approx 3.14150$, $\frac{355}{113} \approx 3.1415929$, $\frac{103993}{33102} \approx 3.1415926530, \dots$. The convergents for e are $\frac{8}{3} \approx 2.6$, $\frac{11}{4} \approx 2.75$, $\frac{19}{7} \approx 2.714$, $\frac{87}{32} \approx 2.7187, \dots$

A *periodic continued fraction* is an infinite continued fraction in which $a_l = a_{l+k}$ for all $l \geq L$. The set of partial quotients $a_L, a_{L+1}, \dots, a_{L+k-1}$ is the *period*. A periodic continued fraction may be written as

$$[a_0, a_1, \dots, a_{L-1}, \overline{a_L, a_{L+1}, \dots, a_{L+k-1}}]. \quad (2.4.8)$$

For example,

$$\begin{aligned} \sqrt{2} &= [1, \overline{2}] & \sqrt{6} &= [2, \overline{2, 4}] & \sqrt{10} &= [3, \overline{6}] & \sqrt{14} &= [3, \overline{1, 2, 1, 6}] \\ \sqrt{3} &= [1, \overline{1, 2}] & \sqrt{7} &= [2, \overline{1, 1, 1, 4}] & \sqrt{11} &= [3, \overline{3, 6}] & \sqrt{15} &= [3, \overline{1, 6}] \\ \sqrt{4} &= [2] & \sqrt{8} &= [2, \overline{1, 4}] & \sqrt{12} &= [3, \overline{2, 6}] & \sqrt{16} &= [4] \\ \sqrt{5} &= [2, \overline{4}] & \sqrt{9} &= [3] & \sqrt{13} &= [3, \overline{1, 1, 1, 1, 6}] & \sqrt{17} &= [4, \overline{8}] \end{aligned}$$

If $x = [\overline{b, a}]$ then $x = \frac{1}{2}(b + \sqrt{b^2 + \frac{4b}{a}})$. For example, $[\overline{1}] = [\overline{1, 1}] = (1 + \sqrt{5})/2$, $[\overline{2}] = [\overline{2, 2}] = 1 + \sqrt{2}$, and $[\overline{2, 1}] = 1 + \sqrt{3}$.

Functions can be represented as continued fractions. Using the notation

$$b_0 + \frac{a_1}{b_1 + \frac{a_2}{b_2 + \frac{a_3}{b_3 + \frac{a_4}{b_4 + \dots}}}} \equiv b_0 + \frac{a_1}{b_1 +} \frac{a_2}{b_2 +} \frac{a_3}{b_3 +} \frac{a_4}{b_4 +} \dots \quad (2.4.9)$$

we have (allowable values of z may be restricted in the following)

$$(a) \ln(1 + z) = \frac{z}{1+} - \frac{z}{2+} + \frac{z}{3+} - \frac{4z}{4+} + \frac{4z}{5+} - \frac{9z}{6+} \dots$$

$$(b) e^z = \frac{1}{1-} + \frac{z}{1+} - \frac{z^2}{2-} + \frac{z^2}{3+} - \frac{z^3}{2-} + \frac{z^3}{5+} - \frac{z^4}{2-} + \frac{z^4}{7-} \dots = 1 + \frac{z}{1-} - \frac{z}{2+} + \frac{z}{3-} - \frac{z}{2+} + \frac{z}{5-} - \frac{z}{2+} + \frac{z}{7-} \dots$$

$$(c) \tan z = \frac{z}{1-} - \frac{z^2}{3-} + \frac{z^2}{5-} - \frac{z^2}{7-} \dots$$

$$(d) \tanh z = \frac{z}{1+} - \frac{z^2}{3+} + \frac{z^2}{5+} - \frac{z^2}{7+} \dots$$

2.4.5 DIOPHANTINE EQUATIONS

A *diophantine equation* is one which requires the solutions to come from the set of integers.

1. Apart from the trivial solutions (with $x = y = 0$ or $x = u$), the general solution to the equation $x^3 + y^3 = u^3 + v^3$ is given by

$$\begin{aligned} x &= \lambda [1 - (a - 3b)(a^2 + 3b^2)] & y &= \lambda [(a + 3b)(a^2 + 3b^2) - 1] \\ u &= \lambda [(a + 3b) - (a^2 + 3b^2)^2] & v &= \lambda [(a^2 + 3b^2)^2 - (a - 3b)] \end{aligned} \tag{2.4.10}$$

where $\{\lambda, a, b\}$ are any rational numbers except that $\lambda \neq 0$.

2. A parametric solution to $x^4 + y^4 = u^4 + v^4$ is given by

$$\begin{aligned} x &= a^7 + a^5b^2 - 2a^3b^4 + 3a^2b^5 + ab^6 \\ y &= a^6b - 3a^5b^2 - 2a^4b^3 + a^2b^5 + b^7 \\ u &= a^7 + a^5b^2 - 2a^3b^4 - 3a^2b^5 + ab^6 \\ v &= a^6b + 3a^5b^2 - 2a^4b^3 + a^2b^5 + b^7 \end{aligned} \tag{2.4.11}$$

3. Fermat's last theorem states that there are no integer solutions to $x^n + y^n = z^n$, when $n > 2$. This was proved by Andrew Wiles in 1995.
4. Bachet's equation, $y^2 = x^3 + k$, has no solutions for k equal to any of the following: $-144, -105, -78, -69, -42, -34, -33, -31, -24, -14, -5, 7, 11, 23, 34, 45, 58, 70$.

2.4.5.1 Pythagorean triples

If the positive integers A, B , and C satisfy the relationship $A^2 + B^2 = C^2$, then the triplet (A, B, C) is a *Pythagorean triple*. It is possible to construct a right triangle with sides of length A and B and a hypotenuse of C .

There are in nitely many Pythagorean triples. The most general solution to $A^2 + B^2 = C^2$, with $\text{GCD}(A, B) = 1$ and A even, is given by

$$A = 2xy \quad B = x^2 - y^2 \quad C = x^2 + y^2, \tag{2.4.12}$$

where x and y are relatively prime integers of opposite parity (i.e., one is even and the other is odd) with $x > y > 0$. The following table shows some Pythagorean triples with the associated (x, y) values.

| x | y | $A = 2xy$ | $B = x^2 - y^2$ | $C = x^2 + y^2$ |
|-----|-----|-----------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 2 | 1 | 4 | 3 | 5 |
| 4 | 1 | 8 | 15 | 17 |
| 6 | 1 | 12 | 35 | 37 |
| 8 | 1 | 16 | 63 | 65 |
| 10 | 1 | 20 | 99 | 101 |
| 3 | 2 | 12 | 5 | 13 |
| 5 | 2 | 20 | 21 | 29 |
| 7 | 2 | 28 | 45 | 51 |
| 4 | 3 | 24 | 7 | 25 |

2.4.5.2 Pell's equation

Pell's equation is $x^2 - dy^2 = 1$. The solutions, integral values of (x, y) , arise from continued fraction convergents of \sqrt{d} (see page 96). If (x, y) is the least positive solution to Pell's equation (with d square-free), then every positive solution (x_k, y_k) is given by

$$x_k + y_k\sqrt{d} = (x + y\sqrt{d})^k. \tag{2.4.13}$$

The following tables contain the least positive solutions to Pell's equation with d square-free and $d < 100$.

| d | x | y | d | x | y | d | x | y |
|-----|-------|-------|-----|---------------|-------------|-----|------------|-----------|
| 2 | 3 | 2 | 35 | 6 | 1 | 69 | 7,775 | 936 |
| 3 | 2 | 1 | 37 | 73 | 12 | 70 | 251 | 30 |
| 5 | 9 | 4 | 38 | 37 | 6 | 71 | 3,480 | 413 |
| 6 | 5 | 2 | 39 | 25 | 4 | 73 | 2,281,249 | 267,000 |
| 7 | 8 | 3 | 41 | 2,049 | 320 | 74 | 3,699 | 430 |
| 10 | 19 | 6 | 42 | 13 | 2 | 77 | 351 | 40 |
| 11 | 10 | 3 | 43 | 3,482 | 531 | 78 | 53 | 6 |
| 13 | 649 | 180 | 46 | 24,335 | 3,588 | 79 | 80 | 9 |
| 14 | 15 | 4 | 47 | 48 | 7 | 82 | 163 | 18 |
| 15 | 4 | 1 | 51 | 50 | 7 | 83 | 82 | 9 |
| 17 | 33 | 8 | 53 | 66,249 | 9,100 | 85 | 285,769 | 30,996 |
| 19 | 170 | 39 | 55 | 89 | 12 | 86 | 10,405 | 1,122 |
| 21 | 55 | 12 | 57 | 151 | 20 | 87 | 28 | 3 |
| 22 | 197 | 42 | 58 | 19,603 | 2,574 | 89 | 500,001 | 53,000 |
| 23 | 24 | 5 | 59 | 530 | 69 | 91 | 1,574 | 165 |
| 26 | 51 | 10 | 61 | 1,766,319,049 | 226,153,980 | 93 | 12,151 | 1,260 |
| 29 | 9,801 | 1,820 | 62 | 63 | 8 | 94 | 2,143,295 | 221,064 |
| 30 | 11 | 2 | 65 | 129 | 16 | 95 | 39 | 4 |
| 31 | 1,520 | 273 | 66 | 65 | 8 | 97 | 62,809,633 | 6,377,352 |
| 33 | 23 | 4 | 67 | 48,842 | 5,967 | | | |

EXAMPLES

1. The number $\sqrt{2}$ has the continued fraction expansion $[1, 2, 2, 2, 2, \dots]$, with convergents $\frac{3}{2}, \frac{7}{5}, \frac{17}{12}, \frac{41}{29}, \frac{99}{70}, \dots$. In this case, every second convergent represents a solution:

$$\begin{aligned}
 3^2 - 2 \cdot 2^2 &= 1, \\
 17^2 - 2 \cdot 12^2 &= 1, \text{ and} \\
 99^2 - 2 \cdot 70^2 &= 1.
 \end{aligned}$$

2. The least positive solution for $d = 11$ is $(x, y) = (10, 3)$. Since $(10 + 3\sqrt{11})^2 = 199 + 60\sqrt{11}$, another solution is given by $(x_2, y_2) = (199, 60)$.

2.4.5.3 Waring’s problem

If each positive integer can be expressed as a sum of n k^{th} powers, then there is a least value of n for which this is true: this is the number $g(k)$. For all sufficiently large numbers, however, a smaller value of n may suffice: this is the number $G(k)$. Waring’s problem is to determine $g(n)$ and $G(n)$.

1. *Lagrange’s theorem* states: “Every positive integer is the sum of four squares”; this is equivalent to the statement $g(2) = 4$. The following identity shows how a product can be written as the sum of four squares:

$$\begin{aligned}
 (x_1^2 + x_2^2 + x_3^2 + x_4^2)(y_1^2 + y_2^2 + y_3^2 + y_4^2) &= \tag{2.4.14} \\
 (x_1y_1 + x_2y_2 + x_3y_3 + x_4y_4)^2 + (x_1y_2 - x_2y_1 + x_3y_4 - x_4y_3)^2 \\
 + (x_1y_3 - x_3y_1 + x_4y_2 - x_2y_4)^2 + (x_1y_4 - x_4y_1 + x_2y_3 - x_3y_2)^2
 \end{aligned}$$

2. Consider $k = 3$; all numbers can be written as the sum of not more than 9 cubes, so that $g(3) = 9$. However, only the two numbers

$$\begin{aligned}
 23 &= 2^3 + 2^3 + 1^3 + 1^3 + 1^3 + 1^3 + 1^3 + 1^3 + 1^3, \\
 239 &= 4^3 + 4^3 + 3^3 + 3^3 + 3^3 + 3^3 + 1^3 + 1^3 + 1^3,
 \end{aligned}$$

require the use of 9 cubes; so $G(3) \leq 8$.

3. $G(k) \leq 6k \log k + (4 + 3 \log(3 + \frac{2}{k}))k + 3$.

4. Known values include

| | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| $g(2) = 4$ | $G(2) = 4$ |
| $g(3) = 9$ | $4 \leq G(3) \leq 7$ |
| $g(4) = 19$ | $G(4) = 16$ |
| $g(5) = 37$ | $6 \leq G(5) \leq 18$ |
| $g(6) = 73$ | $9 \leq G(6) \leq 27$ |
| $143 \leq g(7) \leq 306$ | $8 \leq G(7) \leq 36$ |
| $279 \leq g(8) \leq 36, 119$ | $32 \leq G(8) \leq 42$ |
| $548 \leq g(9)$ | $13 \leq G(9) \leq 82$ |
| $1, 079 \leq g(10)$ | $12 \leq G(10) \leq 102$ |

2.4.6 GREATEST COMMON DIVISOR

The *greatest common divisor* of the integers n and m is the largest integer that evenly divides both n and m ; this is written as $\text{GCD}(n, m)$ or (n, m) . The Euclidean algorithm is frequently used for computing the GCD of two numbers; it utilizes the fact that $m = \lfloor \frac{m}{n} \rfloor n + p$ where $0 \leq p < n$.

Given the integers m and n , two integers a and b can always be found so that $am + bn = \text{GCD}(n, m)$.

Two numbers, m and n , are said to be *relatively prime* if they have no divisors in common; i.e., if $\text{GCD}(a, b) = 1$. The probability that two integers chosen randomly are relatively prime is $\pi/6$.

EXAMPLE Consider 78 and 21. Since $78 = 3 \cdot 21 + 15$, the largest integer that evenly divides both 78 and 21 is also the largest integer that evenly divides both 21 and 15. Iterating results in:

$$\begin{aligned}78 &= 3 \cdot 21 + 15 \\21 &= 1 \cdot 15 + 6 \\15 &= 2 \cdot 6 + 3 \\6 &= 2 \cdot 3 + 0\end{aligned}$$

Hence $\text{GCD}(78, 21) = \text{GCD}(21, 15) = \text{GCD}(15, 6) = \text{GCD}(6, 3) = 3$. Note that $78 \cdot (-4) + 21 \cdot 15 = 3$.

2.4.7 LEAST COMMON MULTIPLE

The *least common multiple* of the integers a and b (denoted $\text{LCM}(a, b)$) is the smallest integer r that is divisible by both a and b . The simplest way to find the LCM of a and b is via the formula $\text{LCM}(a, b) = ab/\text{GCD}(a, b)$. For example, $\text{LCM}(10, 4) = \frac{10 \cdot 4}{\text{GCD}(10, 4)} = \frac{10 \cdot 4}{2} = 20$.

2.4.8 MAGIC SQUARES

A *magic square* is a square array of integers with the property that the sum of the integers in each row or column is the same. If $(c, n) = (d, n) = (e, n) = (f, n) = (cf - en, n) = 1$, then the array $A = (a_{ij})$ will be magic (and use the n^2 numbers $0, 1, \dots, n^2 - 1$) if $a_{ij} = k$ with

$$i \equiv ck + e \left\lfloor \frac{k}{n} \right\rfloor \pmod{n} \quad \text{and} \quad j \equiv dk + f \left\lfloor \frac{k}{n} \right\rfloor \pmod{n}$$

For example, with $c = 1$, $d = e = f = 2$, and $n = 3$, a magic square is

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 6 | 1 | 5 |
| 2 | 3 | 7 |
| 4 | 8 | 0 |

2.4.9 MÖBIUS FUNCTION

The *Möbius function* is defined by

1. $\mu(1) = 1$
2. $\mu(n) = 0$ if n has a squared factor
3. $\mu(p_1 p_2 \dots p_k) = (-1)^k$ if all the primes $\{p_1, \dots, p_k\}$ are distinct

Its properties include:

1. If $\text{GCD}(m, n) = 1$ then $\mu(mn) = \mu(m) \mu(n)$
2. $\sum_{d|n} \mu(d) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } n = 1 \\ 0 & \text{if } n > 1 \end{cases}$
3. Generating function: $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \mu(n)n^{-s} = \frac{1}{\zeta(s)}$

The Möbius inversion formula states that, if $g(n) = \sum_{d|n} f(d)$, then

$$f(n) = \sum_{d|n} \mu\left(\frac{n}{d}\right) g(d) = \sum_{d|n} \mu(d) g\left(\frac{n}{d}\right). \quad (2.4.15)$$

For example, the Möbius inversion of $n = \sum_{d|n} \phi(d)$ is $\phi(n) = n \sum_{d|n} \frac{\mu(d)}{d}$.

The table below can be derived from the table in [Section 2.4.13](#). The value of $\mu(10n + k)$ is in row n and column k .

Möbius function values
(For example, $\mu(2) = -1$, $\mu(4) = 0$, and $\mu(6) = 1$.)

| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 0 | | 1 | -1 | -1 | 0 | -1 | 1 | -1 | 0 | 0 |
| 1 | 1 | -1 | 0 | -1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | -1 | 0 | -1 |
| 2 | 0 | 1 | 1 | -1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | -1 |
| 3 | -1 | -1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | -1 | 1 | 1 |
| 4 | 0 | -1 | -1 | -1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | -1 | 0 | 0 |
| 5 | 0 | 1 | 0 | -1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | -1 |
| 6 | 0 | -1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | -1 | -1 | 0 | 1 |
| 7 | -1 | -1 | 0 | -1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | -1 | -1 |
| 8 | 0 | 0 | 1 | -1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | -1 |
| 9 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | -1 | 0 | 0 |
| 10 | 0 | -1 | -1 | -1 | 0 | -1 | 1 | -1 | 0 | -1 |
| 11 | -1 | 1 | 0 | -1 | -1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 |

2.4.10 PRIME NUMBERS

1. A *prime number* is a positive integer greater than 1 with no positive, integral divisors other than 1 and itself. There are infinitely many prime numbers, 2, 3, 5, 7, ... The sum of the reciprocals of the prime numbers diverges: $\sum_n \frac{1}{p_n} = \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{5} + \frac{1}{7} + \dots = \infty$.
2. *Twin primes* are prime numbers that differ by two: (3, 5), (5, 7), (11, 13), (17, 19), ... It is not known whether there are infinitely many twin primes. The sum of the reciprocals of the twin primes converges; the value

$$B = \left(\frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{5}\right) + \left(\frac{1}{5} + \frac{1}{7}\right) + \left(\frac{1}{11} + \frac{1}{13}\right) + \dots + \left(\frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{p+2}\right) + \dots$$

known as Brun's constant is approximately $B \approx 1.90216054$.

3. For every integer $n \geq 2$, the numbers $\{n! + 2, n! + 3, \dots, n! + n\}$ are a sequence of $n - 1$ consecutive composite (i.e., not prime) numbers.
4. *Dirichlet's theorem on primes in arithmetic progressions*: Let a and b be relatively prime positive integers. Then the arithmetic progression $an + b$ (for $n = 1, 2, \dots$) contains infinitely many primes.
5. *Goldbach conjecture*: every even number is the sum of two prime numbers.
6. The function $\pi(x)$ represents the number of primes less than x . The prime number theorem states that $\pi(x) \sim x / \log x$ as $x \rightarrow \infty$. The exact number of primes less than a given number is:

| | | | | | | | |
|----------|-----|------|--------|--------|--------|---------|-----------|
| x | 100 | 1000 | 10,000 | 10^5 | 10^6 | 10^7 | 10^8 |
| $\pi(x)$ | 25 | 168 | 1,229 | 9,592 | 78,498 | 664,579 | 5,761,455 |

| | | | |
|----------|-------------|--------------------|----------------------------|
| x | 10^{10} | 10^{15} | 10^{21} |
| $\pi(x)$ | 455,052,511 | 29,844,570,422,669 | 21,127,269,486,018,731,928 |

2.4.10.1 Prime formulae

The polynomial $x^2 - x + 41$ yields prime numbers when evaluated at $x = 0, 1, 2, \dots, 39$.

The set of prime numbers is identical with the set of positive values taken on by the polynomial of degree 25 in the 26 variables $\{a, b, \dots, z\}$:

$$\begin{aligned} & (k+2)\{1 - [wz + h + j - q]^2 - [(gk + 2g + k + 1)(h + j) + h - z]^2 - [2n + p + q + z - e]^2 \\ & - [16(k+1)^3(k+2)(n+1)^2 + 1 - f^2]^2 - [e^3(e+2)(a+1)^2 + 1 - o^2]^2 - [(a^2 - 1)y^2 + 1 - x^2]^2 \\ & - [16r^2y^4(a^2 - 1) + 1 - u^2]^2 - [(a + u^2(u^2 - a))^2 - 1)(n + 4dy)^2 + 1 - (x + cu)^2]^2 - [n + l + v - y]^2 \\ & - [(a^2 - 1)l^2 + 1 - m^2]^2 - [ai + k + 1 - l - i]^2 - [p + l(a - n - 1) + b(2an + 2a - n^2 - 2n - 2) - m]^2 \\ & - [q + y(a - p - 1) + s(2ap + 2a - p^2 - 2p - 2) - x]^2 - [z + pl(a - p) + t(2ap - p^2 - 1) - pm]^2\}. \end{aligned} \tag{2.4.16}$$

Although this polynomial appears to factor, the factors are improper, $P = P \cdot 1$. Note that this formula will also take on negative values, such as -76 . There also exists a prime representing polynomial with 12 variables of degree 13697, and one of 10 variables and degree about 10^{45} .

2.4.10.2 Lucas–Lehmer primality test

Define the sequence $r_{m+1} = r_m^2 - 2$ with $r_1 = 3$. If p is a prime of the form $4n + 3$ and $M_p = 2^p - 1$, then M_p will be prime (called a *Mersenne prime*) if, and only if, M_p divides r_{p-1} .

This simple test is the reason that the largest known prime numbers are Mersenne primes. For example, consider $p = 7$ and $M_7 = 127$. The $\{r_n\}$ sequence is $\{3, 7, 47, 2207 \equiv 48, 2302 \equiv 16, 254 \equiv 0\}$; hence M_7 is prime.

2.4.10.3 Primality test certificates

A *primality certificate* is an easily verifiable statement (easier than it was to determine that it was prime in the first place) that proves that a specific number is prime. There are several types of certificates that can be given. The Atkin–Morain certificate uses elliptic curves.

To prove that the number p is prime, Pratt’s certificate consists of a number a and the factorization of the number $p - 1$. The number p will be prime if there exists a primitive root a in the field $\text{GF}[p]$. This primitive root must satisfy the conditions $a^{p-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$ and $a^{(p-1)/q} \not\equiv 1 \pmod{p}$ for any prime q that divides $p - 1$.

EXAMPLE The number $p = 31$ has $p - 1 = 30 = 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 5$, and a primitive root is given by $a = 3$. Hence, to verify that $p = 31$ is prime, we compute

$$\begin{aligned} 3^{(31-1)/2} &= 3^{15} \equiv 14348907 \equiv -1 \not\equiv 1 \pmod{31}, \\ 3^{(31-1)/3} &= 3^{10} \equiv 59049 \equiv 25 \not\equiv 1 \pmod{31}, \\ 3^{(31-1)/5} &= 3^6 \equiv 729 \equiv 16 \not\equiv 1 \pmod{31}, \\ 3^{(31-1)} &= \left(3^{(31-1)/2}\right)^2 \equiv (-1)^2 \equiv 1 \pmod{31}. \end{aligned}$$

2.4.10.4 Probabilistic primality test

Let n be a number whose primality is to be determined. Probabilistic primality tests can return one of two results: either a proof that the number n is composite or a statement of the form, “The probability that the number n is not prime is less than ϵ ”, where ϵ can be specified by the user. Typically, we take $\epsilon = 2^{-200} < 10^{-60}$.

From Fermat’s theorem, if $b \neq 0$, then $b^{n-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{n}$ whenever n is prime. If this holds, then n is a *probable prime to the base b*. Given a value of n , if a value of b can be found such that this does not hold, then n cannot be prime. It can happen, however, that a probable prime is not prime.

Let $P(x)$ be the probability that n is composite under the hypotheses:

1. n is an odd integer chosen randomly from the range $[2, x]$;
2. b is an integer chosen randomly from the range $[2, n - 2]$;
3. n is a probable prime to the base b .

Then $P(x) \leq (\log x)^{-197}$ for $x \geq 10^{10000}$.

A different test can be obtained from the following theorem. Given the number n , and s and t with $n - 1 = 2^s t$, with t odd. Then choose a random integer b from the range $[2, n - 2]$. If either

$$b^t \equiv 1 \pmod{n} \quad \text{or} \quad b^{2^i t} \equiv -1 \pmod{n}, \quad \text{for some } i < s,$$

then n is a strong probable prime to the base b . Every odd prime must pass this test. If $n > 1$ is an odd composite, then the probability that it is a strong probable prime to the base b , when b is chosen randomly, is less than $1/4$.

A stronger test can be obtained by choosing k independent values for b in the range $[2, n - 2]$ and checking the above relation for each value of b . Let $P_k(x)$ be the probability that n is found to be a strong probable prime to each base b . Then $P_k(x) \leq 4^{-(k-1)} P(x) / (1 - P(x))$.

2.4.11 PRIME NUMBERS OF SPECIAL FORMS

- The largest known prime numbers, in descending order, are

| Prime number | Number of digits |
|---------------------------|------------------|
| $2^{13466917} - 1$ | 4,053,946 |
| $2^{6972593} - 1$ | 2,098,960 |
| $2^{3021377} - 1$ | 909,526 |
| $2^{2976221} - 1$ | 895,932 |
| $2^{1398269} - 1$ | 420,921 |
| $1266062^{65536} + 1$ | 399,931 |
| $5 \cdot 2^{1320487} + 1$ | 397,507 |
| $857678^{65536} + 1$ | 388,847 |
| $843832^{65536} + 1$ | 388,384 |
| $5 \cdot 2^{1282755} + 1$ | 386,149 |

- The largest known twin primes are: $318032361 \cdot 2^{107001} \pm 1$ (with 32,220 digits), $1807318575 \cdot 2^{98305} \pm 1$ (with 29,603 digits), and $665551035 \cdot 2^{80025} \pm 1$ (with 24,099 digits).

- There exist constants $\theta \approx 1.30637788$ and $\omega \approx 1.9287800$ such that $\lfloor \theta^{3^n} \rfloor$

and $\left\lfloor \underbrace{2^{2^{\dots^{2^\omega}}}}_n \right\rfloor$ are prime for every $n \geq 1$.

- Primes with special properties

- A Sophie Germain prime p has the property that $2p + 1$ is also prime. Sophie Germain primes include: 2, 3, 5, 11, 23, 29, 41, 53, 83, 89, 113, 131, ..., $3714089895285 \cdot 2^{60000} - 1$, $984798015 \cdot 2^{66444} - 1$, $109433307 \cdot 2^{66452} - 1$, ...

(b) An odd prime p is called a *Wieferich prime* if $2^{p-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{p^2}$.
Wieferich primes include 1093 and 3511.

(c) A *Wilson prime* satisfies $(p-1)! \equiv -1 \pmod{p^2}$. Wilson primes include 5, 13, and 563.

5. For each n shown below, the numbers $\{a + md \mid m = 0, 1, \dots, n-1\}$ are an arithmetic sequence of n prime numbers:

| n | a | $a + (n-1)d$ | d |
|-----|----------------|-----------------|---------------|
| 3 | 3 | 7 | 2 |
| 4 | 61 | 79 | 6 |
| 5 | 11 | 131 | 30 |
| 10 | 199 | 2089 | 210 |
| 22 | 11410337850553 | 108201410428753 | 4609098694200 |

6. Define $p\#$ to be the product of the prime numbers less than or equal to p .

| Form | Values of n or p for which the form is prime |
|---------------|--|
| $2^{2^n} + 1$ | 0, 1, 2, 3, 4 ... (Fermat primes) |
| $2^n - 1$ | 2, 3, 5, 7, 13, 17, 19, 31, 61, 89, 107, 127, 521, 607, 1279, 2203, 2281, 3217, 4253, 4423, 9689, 9941, 11213, 19937, 21701, 23209, 44497, 86243, 110503, 132049, 216091, 756839, 859433, 1257787, 1398269, 2976221, 3021377, 6972593, ..., 13466917 ... (Mersenne primes) |
| $n! - 1$ | 3, 4, 6, 7, 12, 14, 30, 32, 33, 38, 94, 166, 324, 379, 469, 546, 974, 1963, 3507, 3610, 6917, ... (factorial primes) |
| $n! + 1$ | 1, 2, 3, 11, 27, 37, 41, 73, 77, 116, 154, 320, 340, 399, 427, 872, 1477, 6380, ... (factorial primes) |
| $p\# - 1$ | 3, 5, 11, 13, 41, 89, 317, 337, 991, 1873, 2053, 2377, 4093, 4297, 4583, 6569, 13033, 15877, ... (primorial primes) |
| $p\# + 1$ | 2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 31, 379, 1019, 1021, 2657, 3229, 4547, 4787, 11549, 13649, 18523, 23801, 24029, 42209, ..., 145823, 366439, 392113, ... (primorial primes) |
| $n2^n + 1$ | 1, 141, 4713, 5795, 6611, 18496, 32292, 32469, 59656, 90825, 262419, 361275, ..., 481899, ... (Cullen primes) |
| $n2^n - 1$ | 2, 3, 6, 30, 75, 81, 115, 123, 249, 362, 384, 462, 512, 751, 822, 5312, 7755, 9531, 12379, 15822, 18885, ... 143018, 151023, 667071, ... (Woodall primes) |

7. Prime numbers of the form $\frac{a^n - 1}{a - 1}$ (called repunits).

| Form | Values of n for which the form is prime |
|-----------------------|---|
| $\frac{2^n - 1}{1}$ | These are Mersenne primes; see the previous table. |
| $\frac{3^n - 1}{2}$ | 3, 7, 13, 71, 103, 541, 1091, 1367, 1627, 4177, 9011, 9551, ... |
| $\frac{5^n - 1}{4}$ | 3, 7, 11, 13, 47, 127, 149, 181, 619, 929, 3407, 10949, ... |
| $\frac{6^n - 1}{5}$ | 2, 3, 7, 29, 71, 127, 271, 509, 1049, 6389, 6883, 10613, ... |
| $\frac{7^n - 1}{6}$ | 5, 13, 131, 149, 1699, ... |
| $\frac{10^n - 1}{9}$ | 2, 19, 23, 317, 1031, 49081, 86453, ... |
| $\frac{11^n - 1}{10}$ | 17, 19, 73, 139, 907, 1907, 2029, 4801, 5153, 10867, ... |
| $\frac{12^n - 1}{11}$ | 2, 3, 5, 19, 97, 109, 317, 353, 701, 9739, ... |

8. Prime numbers of the forms $2^n \pm a$, $10^n \pm b$, and $16^n \pm c$.

In the following table, for a given value of n , the quantities a_{\pm} , b_{\pm} , and c_{\pm} are the least values such that $2^n + a_{\pm}$, $10^n + b_{\pm}$, and $16^n + c_{\pm}$ are probably primes. (A probabilistic primality test was used.) For example, for $n = 3$, the numbers $2^3 - 1 = 7$, $2^3 + 3 = 11$, $10^3 - 3 = 997$, $10^3 + 9 = 1009$, $16^3 - 3 = 4093$, and $16^3 + 3 = 4099$ are all prime.

| n | $2^n + a$ | | $10^n + b$ | | $16^n + c$ | |
|-----|-----------|---------|------------|---------|------------|---------|
| | a_{-} | a_{+} | b_{-} | b_{+} | c_{-} | c_{+} |
| 2 | -1 | 1 | -3 | 1 | -5 | 1 |
| 3 | -1 | 3 | -3 | 9 | -3 | 3 |
| 4 | -3 | 1 | -27 | 7 | -15 | 1 |
| 5 | -1 | 5 | -9 | 3 | -3 | 7 |
| 6 | -3 | 3 | -17 | 3 | -3 | 43 |
| 7 | -1 | 3 | -9 | 19 | -57 | 3 |
| 8 | -5 | 1 | -11 | 7 | -5 | 15 |
| 9 | -3 | 9 | -63 | 7 | -5 | 31 |
| 10 | -3 | 7 | -33 | 19 | -87 | 15 |
| 11 | -9 | 5 | -23 | 3 | -17 | 7 |
| 12 | -3 | 3 | -11 | 39 | -59 | 21 |
| 13 | -1 | 17 | -29 | 37 | -47 | 21 |
| 14 | -3 | 27 | -27 | 31 | -5 | 81 |

| n | $2^n + a$ | | $10^n + b$ | | $16^n + c$ | |
|------|-----------|-------|------------|-------|------------|-------|
| | a_- | a_+ | b_- | b_+ | c_- | c_+ |
| 15 | -19 | 3 | -11 | 37 | -93 | 33 |
| 16 | -15 | 1 | -63 | 61 | -59 | 13 |
| 17 | -1 | 29 | -3 | 3 | -23 | 33 |
| 18 | -5 | 3 | -11 | 3 | -93 | 15 |
| 19 | -1 | 21 | -39 | 51 | -15 | 15 |
| 20 | -3 | 7 | -11 | 39 | -65 | 13 |
| 50 | -27 | 55 | -57 | 151 | -75 | 235 |
| 100 | -15 | 277 | -797 | 267 | -593 | 181 |
| 150 | -3 | 147 | -273 | 67 | -95 | 187 |
| 200 | -75 | 235 | -189 | 357 | -105 | 25 |
| 300 | -153 | 157 | -69 | 331 | -305 | 1515 |
| 400 | -593 | 181 | -513 | 69 | -2273 | 895 |
| 500 | -863 | 55 | -1037 | 961 | -2217 | 841 |
| 600 | -95 | 187 | -1791 | 543 | -5 | 255 |
| 700 | -1113 | 535 | -2313 | 7 | -909 | 2823 |
| 800 | -105 | 25 | -1007 | 1537 | -1683 | 751 |
| 900 | -207 | 693 | -773 | 1873 | -1193 | 8767 |
| 1000 | -1245 | 297 | -1769 | 453 | -2303 | 63 |

2.4.12 PRIME NUMBERS LESS THAN 100,000

The prime number p_{10n+k} is found by looking at row n_- and the column k_+ .

| | $_0$ | $_1$ | $_2$ | $_3$ | $_4$ | $_5$ | $_6$ | $_7$ | $_8$ | $_9$ |
|---------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 0 $_-$ | | 2 | 3 | 5 | 7 | 11 | 13 | 17 | 19 | 23 |
| 1 $_-$ | 29 | 31 | 37 | 41 | 43 | 47 | 53 | 59 | 61 | 67 |
| 2 $_-$ | 71 | 73 | 79 | 83 | 89 | 97 | 101 | 103 | 107 | 109 |
| 3 $_-$ | 113 | 127 | 131 | 137 | 139 | 149 | 151 | 157 | 163 | 167 |
| 4 $_-$ | 173 | 179 | 181 | 191 | 193 | 197 | 199 | 211 | 223 | 227 |
| 5 $_-$ | 229 | 233 | 239 | 241 | 251 | 257 | 263 | 269 | 271 | 277 |
| 6 $_-$ | 281 | 283 | 293 | 307 | 311 | 313 | 317 | 331 | 337 | 347 |
| 7 $_-$ | 349 | 353 | 359 | 367 | 373 | 379 | 383 | 389 | 397 | 401 |
| 8 $_-$ | 409 | 419 | 421 | 431 | 433 | 439 | 443 | 449 | 457 | 461 |
| 9 $_-$ | 463 | 467 | 479 | 487 | 491 | 499 | 503 | 509 | 521 | 523 |
| 10 $_-$ | 541 | 547 | 557 | 563 | 569 | 571 | 577 | 587 | 593 | 599 |
| 11 $_-$ | 601 | 607 | 613 | 617 | 619 | 631 | 641 | 643 | 647 | 653 |
| 12 $_-$ | 659 | 661 | 673 | 677 | 683 | 691 | 701 | 709 | 719 | 727 |
| 13 $_-$ | 733 | 739 | 743 | 751 | 757 | 761 | 769 | 773 | 787 | 797 |
| 14 $_-$ | 809 | 811 | 821 | 823 | 827 | 829 | 839 | 853 | 857 | 859 |
| 15 $_-$ | 863 | 877 | 881 | 883 | 887 | 907 | 911 | 919 | 929 | 937 |
| 16 $_-$ | 941 | 947 | 953 | 967 | 971 | 977 | 983 | 991 | 997 | 1009 |
| 17 $_-$ | 1013 | 1019 | 1021 | 1031 | 1033 | 1039 | 1049 | 1051 | 1061 | 1063 |
| 18 $_-$ | 1069 | 1087 | 1091 | 1093 | 1097 | 1103 | 1109 | 1117 | 1123 | 1129 |
| 19 $_-$ | 1151 | 1153 | 1163 | 1171 | 1181 | 1187 | 1193 | 1201 | 1213 | 1217 |
| 20 $_-$ | 1223 | 1229 | 1231 | 1237 | 1249 | 1259 | 1277 | 1279 | 1283 | 1289 |
| 21 $_-$ | 1291 | 1297 | 1301 | 1303 | 1307 | 1319 | 1321 | 1327 | 1361 | 1367 |
| 22 $_-$ | 1373 | 1381 | 1399 | 1409 | 1423 | 1427 | 1429 | 1433 | 1439 | 1447 |

| | _0 | _1 | _2 | _3 | _4 | _5 | _6 | _7 | _8 | _9 |
|-----|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 23_ | 1451 | 1453 | 1459 | 1471 | 1481 | 1483 | 1487 | 1489 | 1493 | 1499 |
| 24_ | 1511 | 1523 | 1531 | 1543 | 1549 | 1553 | 1559 | 1567 | 1571 | 1579 |
| 25_ | 1583 | 1597 | 1601 | 1607 | 1609 | 1613 | 1619 | 1621 | 1627 | 1637 |
| 26_ | 1657 | 1663 | 1667 | 1669 | 1693 | 1697 | 1699 | 1709 | 1721 | 1723 |
| 27_ | 1733 | 1741 | 1747 | 1753 | 1759 | 1777 | 1783 | 1787 | 1789 | 1801 |
| 28_ | 1811 | 1823 | 1831 | 1847 | 1861 | 1867 | 1871 | 1873 | 1877 | 1879 |
| 29_ | 1889 | 1901 | 1907 | 1913 | 1931 | 1933 | 1949 | 1951 | 1973 | 1979 |
| 30_ | 1987 | 1993 | 1997 | 1999 | 2003 | 2011 | 2017 | 2027 | 2029 | 2039 |
| 31_ | 2053 | 2063 | 2069 | 2081 | 2083 | 2087 | 2089 | 2099 | 2111 | 2113 |
| 32_ | 2129 | 2131 | 2137 | 2141 | 2143 | 2153 | 2161 | 2179 | 2203 | 2207 |
| 33_ | 2213 | 2221 | 2237 | 2239 | 2243 | 2251 | 2267 | 2269 | 2273 | 2281 |
| 34_ | 2287 | 2293 | 2297 | 2309 | 2311 | 2333 | 2339 | 2341 | 2347 | 2351 |
| 35_ | 2357 | 2371 | 2377 | 2381 | 2383 | 2389 | 2393 | 2399 | 2411 | 2417 |
| 36_ | 2423 | 2437 | 2441 | 2447 | 2459 | 2467 | 2473 | 2477 | 2503 | 2521 |
| 37_ | 2531 | 2539 | 2543 | 2549 | 2551 | 2557 | 2579 | 2591 | 2593 | 2609 |
| 38_ | 2617 | 2621 | 2633 | 2647 | 2657 | 2659 | 2663 | 2671 | 2677 | 2683 |
| 39_ | 2687 | 2689 | 2693 | 2699 | 2707 | 2711 | 2713 | 2719 | 2729 | 2731 |
| 40_ | 2741 | 2749 | 2753 | 2767 | 2777 | 2789 | 2791 | 2797 | 2801 | 2803 |
| 41_ | 2819 | 2833 | 2837 | 2843 | 2851 | 2857 | 2861 | 2879 | 2887 | 2897 |
| 42_ | 2903 | 2909 | 2917 | 2927 | 2939 | 2953 | 2957 | 2963 | 2969 | 2971 |
| 43_ | 2999 | 3001 | 3011 | 3019 | 3023 | 3037 | 3041 | 3049 | 3061 | 3067 |
| 44_ | 3079 | 3083 | 3089 | 3109 | 3119 | 3121 | 3137 | 3163 | 3167 | 3169 |
| 45_ | 3181 | 3187 | 3191 | 3203 | 3209 | 3217 | 3221 | 3229 | 3251 | 3253 |
| 46_ | 3257 | 3259 | 3271 | 3299 | 3301 | 3307 | 3313 | 3319 | 3323 | 3329 |
| 47_ | 3331 | 3343 | 3347 | 3359 | 3361 | 3371 | 3373 | 3389 | 3391 | 3407 |
| 48_ | 3413 | 3433 | 3449 | 3457 | 3461 | 3463 | 3467 | 3469 | 3491 | 3499 |
| 49_ | 3511 | 3517 | 3527 | 3529 | 3533 | 3539 | 3541 | 3547 | 3557 | 3559 |
| 50_ | 3571 | 3581 | 3583 | 3593 | 3607 | 3613 | 3617 | 3623 | 3631 | 3637 |
| 51_ | 3643 | 3659 | 3671 | 3673 | 3677 | 3691 | 3697 | 3701 | 3709 | 3719 |
| 52_ | 3727 | 3733 | 3739 | 3761 | 3767 | 3769 | 3779 | 3793 | 3797 | 3803 |
| 53_ | 3821 | 3823 | 3833 | 3847 | 3851 | 3853 | 3863 | 3877 | 3881 | 3889 |
| 54_ | 3907 | 3911 | 3917 | 3919 | 3923 | 3929 | 3931 | 3943 | 3947 | 3967 |
| 55_ | 3989 | 4001 | 4003 | 4007 | 4013 | 4019 | 4021 | 4027 | 4049 | 4051 |
| 56_ | 4057 | 4073 | 4079 | 4091 | 4093 | 4099 | 4111 | 4127 | 4129 | 4133 |
| 57_ | 4139 | 4153 | 4157 | 4159 | 4177 | 4201 | 4211 | 4217 | 4219 | 4229 |
| 58_ | 4231 | 4241 | 4243 | 4253 | 4259 | 4261 | 4271 | 4273 | 4283 | 4289 |
| 59_ | 4297 | 4327 | 4337 | 4339 | 4349 | 4357 | 4363 | 4373 | 4391 | 4397 |
| 60_ | 4409 | 4421 | 4423 | 4441 | 4447 | 4451 | 4457 | 4463 | 4481 | 4483 |
| 61_ | 4493 | 4507 | 4513 | 4517 | 4519 | 4523 | 4547 | 4549 | 4561 | 4567 |
| 62_ | 4583 | 4591 | 4597 | 4603 | 4621 | 4637 | 4639 | 4643 | 4649 | 4651 |
| 63_ | 4657 | 4663 | 4673 | 4679 | 4691 | 4703 | 4721 | 4723 | 4729 | 4733 |
| 64_ | 4751 | 4759 | 4783 | 4787 | 4789 | 4793 | 4799 | 4801 | 4813 | 4817 |
| 65_ | 4831 | 4861 | 4871 | 4877 | 4889 | 4903 | 4909 | 4919 | 4931 | 4933 |
| 66_ | 4937 | 4943 | 4951 | 4957 | 4967 | 4969 | 4973 | 4987 | 4993 | 4999 |
| 67_ | 5003 | 5009 | 5011 | 5021 | 5023 | 5039 | 5051 | 5059 | 5077 | 5081 |
| 68_ | 5087 | 5099 | 5101 | 5107 | 5113 | 5119 | 5147 | 5153 | 5167 | 5171 |
| 69_ | 5179 | 5189 | 5197 | 5209 | 5227 | 5231 | 5233 | 5237 | 5261 | 5273 |
| 70_ | 5279 | 5281 | 5297 | 5303 | 5309 | 5323 | 5333 | 5347 | 5351 | 5381 |
| 71_ | 5387 | 5393 | 5399 | 5407 | 5413 | 5417 | 5419 | 5431 | 5437 | 5441 |
| 72_ | 5443 | 5449 | 5471 | 5477 | 5479 | 5483 | 5501 | 5503 | 5507 | 5519 |
| 73_ | 5521 | 5527 | 5531 | 5557 | 5563 | 5569 | 5573 | 5581 | 5591 | 5623 |
| 74_ | 5639 | 5641 | 5647 | 5651 | 5653 | 5657 | 5659 | 5669 | 5683 | 5689 |
| 75_ | 5693 | 5701 | 5711 | 5717 | 5737 | 5741 | 5743 | 5749 | 5779 | 5783 |
| 76_ | 5791 | 5801 | 5807 | 5813 | 5821 | 5827 | 5839 | 5843 | 5849 | 5851 |
| 77_ | 5857 | 5861 | 5867 | 5869 | 5879 | 5881 | 5897 | 5903 | 5923 | 5927 |
| 78_ | 5939 | 5953 | 5981 | 5987 | 6007 | 6011 | 6029 | 6037 | 6043 | 6047 |

| | _0 | _1 | _2 | _3 | _4 | _5 | _6 | _7 | _8 | _9 |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 79_ | 6053 | 6067 | 6073 | 6079 | 6089 | 6091 | 6101 | 6113 | 6121 | 6131 |
| 80_ | 6133 | 6143 | 6151 | 6163 | 6173 | 6197 | 6199 | 6203 | 6211 | 6217 |
| 81_ | 6221 | 6229 | 6247 | 6257 | 6263 | 6269 | 6271 | 6277 | 6287 | 6299 |
| 82_ | 6301 | 6311 | 6317 | 6323 | 6329 | 6337 | 6343 | 6353 | 6359 | 6361 |
| 83_ | 6367 | 6373 | 6379 | 6389 | 6397 | 6421 | 6427 | 6449 | 6451 | 6469 |
| 84_ | 6473 | 6481 | 6491 | 6521 | 6529 | 6547 | 6551 | 6553 | 6563 | 6569 |
| 85_ | 6571 | 6577 | 6581 | 6599 | 6607 | 6619 | 6637 | 6653 | 6659 | 6661 |
| 86_ | 6673 | 6679 | 6689 | 6691 | 6701 | 6703 | 6709 | 6719 | 6733 | 6737 |
| 87_ | 6761 | 6763 | 6779 | 6781 | 6791 | 6793 | 6803 | 6823 | 6827 | 6829 |
| 88_ | 6833 | 6841 | 6857 | 6863 | 6869 | 6871 | 6883 | 6899 | 6907 | 6911 |
| 89_ | 6917 | 6947 | 6949 | 6959 | 6961 | 6967 | 6971 | 6977 | 6983 | 6991 |
| 90_ | 6997 | 7001 | 7013 | 7019 | 7027 | 7039 | 7043 | 7057 | 7069 | 7079 |
| 91_ | 7103 | 7109 | 7121 | 7127 | 7129 | 7151 | 7159 | 7177 | 7187 | 7193 |
| 92_ | 7207 | 7211 | 7213 | 7219 | 7229 | 7237 | 7243 | 7247 | 7253 | 7283 |
| 93_ | 7297 | 7307 | 7309 | 7321 | 7331 | 7333 | 7349 | 7351 | 7369 | 7393 |
| 94_ | 7411 | 7417 | 7433 | 7451 | 7457 | 7459 | 7477 | 7481 | 7487 | 7489 |
| 95_ | 7499 | 7507 | 7517 | 7523 | 7529 | 7537 | 7541 | 7547 | 7549 | 7559 |
| 96_ | 7561 | 7573 | 7577 | 7583 | 7589 | 7591 | 7603 | 7607 | 7621 | 7639 |
| 97_ | 7643 | 7649 | 7669 | 7673 | 7681 | 7687 | 7691 | 7699 | 7703 | 7717 |
| 98_ | 7723 | 7727 | 7741 | 7753 | 7757 | 7759 | 7789 | 7793 | 7817 | 7823 |
| 99_ | 7829 | 7841 | 7853 | 7867 | 7873 | 7877 | 7879 | 7883 | 7901 | 7907 |
| 100_ | 7919 | 7927 | 7933 | 7937 | 7949 | 7951 | 7963 | 7993 | 8009 | 8011 |
| 101_ | 8017 | 8039 | 8053 | 8059 | 8069 | 8081 | 8087 | 8089 | 8093 | 8101 |
| 102_ | 8111 | 8117 | 8123 | 8147 | 8161 | 8167 | 8171 | 8179 | 8191 | 8209 |
| 103_ | 8219 | 8221 | 8231 | 8233 | 8237 | 8243 | 8263 | 8269 | 8273 | 8287 |
| 104_ | 8291 | 8293 | 8297 | 8311 | 8317 | 8329 | 8353 | 8363 | 8369 | 8377 |
| 105_ | 8387 | 8389 | 8419 | 8423 | 8429 | 8431 | 8443 | 8447 | 8461 | 8467 |
| 106_ | 8501 | 8513 | 8521 | 8527 | 8537 | 8539 | 8543 | 8563 | 8573 | 8581 |
| 107_ | 8597 | 8599 | 8609 | 8623 | 8627 | 8629 | 8641 | 8647 | 8663 | 8669 |
| 108_ | 8677 | 8681 | 8689 | 8693 | 8699 | 8707 | 8713 | 8719 | 8731 | 8737 |
| 109_ | 8741 | 8747 | 8753 | 8761 | 8779 | 8783 | 8803 | 8807 | 8819 | 8821 |
| 110_ | 8831 | 8837 | 8839 | 8849 | 8861 | 8863 | 8867 | 8887 | 8893 | 8923 |
| 111_ | 8929 | 8933 | 8941 | 8951 | 8963 | 8969 | 8971 | 8999 | 9001 | 9007 |
| 112_ | 9011 | 9013 | 9029 | 9041 | 9043 | 9049 | 9059 | 9067 | 9091 | 9103 |
| 113_ | 9109 | 9127 | 9133 | 9137 | 9151 | 9157 | 9161 | 9173 | 9181 | 9187 |
| 114_ | 9199 | 9203 | 9209 | 9221 | 9227 | 9239 | 9241 | 9257 | 9277 | 9281 |
| 115_ | 9283 | 9293 | 9311 | 9319 | 9323 | 9337 | 9341 | 9343 | 9349 | 9371 |
| 116_ | 9377 | 9391 | 9397 | 9403 | 9413 | 9419 | 9421 | 9431 | 9433 | 9437 |
| 117_ | 9439 | 9461 | 9463 | 9467 | 9473 | 9479 | 9491 | 9497 | 9511 | 9521 |
| 118_ | 9533 | 9539 | 9547 | 9551 | 9587 | 9601 | 9613 | 9619 | 9623 | 9629 |
| 119_ | 9631 | 9643 | 9649 | 9661 | 9677 | 9679 | 9689 | 9697 | 9719 | 9721 |
| 120_ | 9733 | 9739 | 9743 | 9749 | 9767 | 9769 | 9781 | 9787 | 9791 | 9803 |
| 121_ | 9811 | 9817 | 9829 | 9833 | 9839 | 9851 | 9857 | 9859 | 9871 | 9883 |
| 122_ | 9887 | 9901 | 9907 | 9923 | 9929 | 9931 | 9941 | 9949 | 9967 | 9973 |
| 123_ | 10007 | 10009 | 10037 | 10039 | 10061 | 10067 | 10069 | 10079 | 10091 | 10093 |
| 124_ | 10099 | 10103 | 10111 | 10133 | 10139 | 10141 | 10151 | 10159 | 10163 | 10169 |
| 125_ | 10177 | 10181 | 10193 | 10211 | 10223 | 10243 | 10247 | 10253 | 10259 | 10267 |
| 126_ | 10271 | 10273 | 10289 | 10301 | 10303 | 10313 | 10321 | 10331 | 10333 | 10337 |
| 127_ | 10343 | 10357 | 10369 | 10391 | 10399 | 10427 | 10429 | 10433 | 10453 | 10457 |
| 128_ | 10459 | 10463 | 10477 | 10487 | 10499 | 10501 | 10513 | 10529 | 10531 | 10559 |
| 129_ | 10567 | 10589 | 10597 | 10601 | 10607 | 10613 | 10627 | 10631 | 10639 | 10651 |
| 130_ | 10657 | 10663 | 10667 | 10687 | 10691 | 10709 | 10711 | 10723 | 10729 | 10733 |
| 131_ | 10739 | 10753 | 10771 | 10781 | 10789 | 10799 | 10831 | 10837 | 10847 | 10853 |
| 132_ | 10859 | 10861 | 10867 | 10883 | 10889 | 10891 | 10903 | 10909 | 10937 | 10939 |
| 133_ | 10949 | 10957 | 10973 | 10979 | 10987 | 10993 | 11003 | 11027 | 11047 | 11057 |
| 134_ | 11059 | 11069 | 11071 | 11083 | 11087 | 11093 | 11113 | 11117 | 11119 | 11131 |

| | _0 | _1 | _2 | _3 | _4 | _5 | _6 | _7 | _8 | _9 |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 135_ | 11149 | 11159 | 11161 | 11171 | 11173 | 11177 | 11197 | 11213 | 11239 | 11243 |
| 136_ | 11251 | 11257 | 11261 | 11273 | 11279 | 11287 | 11299 | 11311 | 11317 | 11321 |
| 137_ | 11329 | 11351 | 11353 | 11369 | 11383 | 11393 | 11399 | 11411 | 11423 | 11437 |
| 138_ | 11443 | 11447 | 11467 | 11471 | 11483 | 11489 | 11491 | 11497 | 11503 | 11519 |
| 139_ | 11527 | 11549 | 11551 | 11579 | 11587 | 11593 | 11597 | 11617 | 11621 | 11633 |
| 140_ | 11657 | 11677 | 11681 | 11689 | 11699 | 11701 | 11717 | 11719 | 11731 | 11743 |
| 141_ | 11777 | 11779 | 11783 | 11789 | 11801 | 11807 | 11813 | 11821 | 11827 | 11831 |
| 142_ | 11833 | 11839 | 11863 | 11867 | 11887 | 11897 | 11903 | 11909 | 11923 | 11927 |
| 143_ | 11933 | 11939 | 11941 | 11953 | 11959 | 11969 | 11971 | 11981 | 11987 | 12007 |
| 144_ | 12011 | 12037 | 12041 | 12043 | 12049 | 12071 | 12073 | 12097 | 12101 | 12107 |
| 145_ | 12109 | 12113 | 12119 | 12143 | 12149 | 12157 | 12161 | 12163 | 12197 | 12203 |
| 146_ | 12211 | 12227 | 12239 | 12241 | 12251 | 12253 | 12263 | 12269 | 12277 | 12281 |
| 147_ | 12289 | 12301 | 12323 | 12329 | 12343 | 12347 | 12373 | 12377 | 12379 | 12391 |
| 148_ | 12401 | 12409 | 12413 | 12421 | 12433 | 12437 | 12451 | 12457 | 12473 | 12479 |
| 149_ | 12487 | 12491 | 12497 | 12503 | 12511 | 12517 | 12527 | 12539 | 12541 | 12547 |
| 150_ | 12553 | 12569 | 12577 | 12583 | 12589 | 12601 | 12611 | 12613 | 12619 | 12637 |
| 151_ | 12641 | 12647 | 12653 | 12659 | 12671 | 12689 | 12697 | 12703 | 12713 | 12721 |
| 152_ | 12739 | 12743 | 12757 | 12763 | 12781 | 12791 | 12799 | 12809 | 12821 | 12823 |
| 153_ | 12829 | 12841 | 12853 | 12889 | 12893 | 12899 | 12907 | 12911 | 12917 | 12919 |
| 154_ | 12923 | 12941 | 12953 | 12959 | 12967 | 12973 | 12979 | 12983 | 13001 | 13003 |
| 155_ | 13007 | 13009 | 13033 | 13037 | 13043 | 13049 | 13063 | 13093 | 13099 | 13103 |
| 156_ | 13109 | 13121 | 13127 | 13147 | 13151 | 13159 | 13163 | 13171 | 13177 | 13183 |
| 157_ | 13187 | 13217 | 13219 | 13229 | 13241 | 13249 | 13259 | 13267 | 13291 | 13297 |
| 158_ | 13309 | 13313 | 13327 | 13331 | 13337 | 13339 | 13367 | 13381 | 13397 | 13399 |
| 159_ | 13411 | 13417 | 13421 | 13441 | 13451 | 13457 | 13463 | 13469 | 13477 | 13487 |
| 160_ | 13499 | 13513 | 13523 | 13537 | 13553 | 13567 | 13577 | 13591 | 13597 | 13613 |
| 161_ | 13619 | 13627 | 13633 | 13649 | 13669 | 13679 | 13681 | 13687 | 13691 | 13693 |
| 162_ | 13697 | 13709 | 13711 | 13721 | 13723 | 13729 | 13751 | 13757 | 13759 | 13763 |
| 163_ | 13781 | 13789 | 13799 | 13807 | 13829 | 13831 | 13841 | 13859 | 13873 | 13877 |
| 164_ | 13879 | 13883 | 13901 | 13903 | 13907 | 13913 | 13921 | 13931 | 13933 | 13963 |
| 165_ | 13967 | 13997 | 13999 | 14009 | 14011 | 14029 | 14033 | 14051 | 14057 | 14071 |
| 166_ | 14081 | 14083 | 14087 | 14107 | 14143 | 14149 | 14153 | 14159 | 14173 | 14177 |
| 167_ | 14197 | 14207 | 14221 | 14243 | 14249 | 14251 | 14281 | 14293 | 14303 | 14321 |
| 168_ | 14323 | 14327 | 14341 | 14347 | 14369 | 14387 | 14389 | 14401 | 14407 | 14411 |
| 169_ | 14419 | 14423 | 14431 | 14437 | 14447 | 14449 | 14461 | 14479 | 14489 | 14503 |
| 170_ | 14519 | 14533 | 14537 | 14543 | 14549 | 14551 | 14557 | 14561 | 14563 | 14591 |
| 171_ | 14593 | 14621 | 14627 | 14629 | 14633 | 14639 | 14653 | 14657 | 14669 | 14683 |
| 172_ | 14699 | 14713 | 14717 | 14723 | 14731 | 14737 | 14741 | 14747 | 14753 | 14759 |
| 173_ | 14767 | 14771 | 14779 | 14783 | 14797 | 14813 | 14821 | 14827 | 14831 | 14843 |
| 174_ | 14851 | 14867 | 14869 | 14879 | 14887 | 14891 | 14897 | 14923 | 14929 | 14939 |
| 175_ | 14947 | 14951 | 14957 | 14969 | 14983 | 15013 | 15017 | 15031 | 15053 | 15061 |
| 176_ | 15073 | 15077 | 15083 | 15091 | 15101 | 15107 | 15121 | 15131 | 15137 | 15139 |
| 177_ | 15149 | 15161 | 15173 | 15187 | 15193 | 15199 | 15217 | 15227 | 15233 | 15241 |
| 178_ | 15259 | 15263 | 15269 | 15271 | 15277 | 15287 | 15289 | 15299 | 15307 | 15313 |
| 179_ | 15319 | 15329 | 15331 | 15349 | 15359 | 15361 | 15373 | 15377 | 15383 | 15391 |
| 180_ | 15401 | 15413 | 15427 | 15439 | 15443 | 15451 | 15461 | 15467 | 15473 | 15493 |
| 181_ | 15497 | 15511 | 15527 | 15541 | 15551 | 15559 | 15569 | 15581 | 15583 | 15601 |
| 182_ | 15607 | 15619 | 15629 | 15641 | 15643 | 15647 | 15649 | 15661 | 15667 | 15671 |
| 183_ | 15679 | 15683 | 15727 | 15731 | 15733 | 15737 | 15739 | 15749 | 15761 | 15767 |
| 184_ | 15773 | 15787 | 15791 | 15797 | 15803 | 15809 | 15817 | 15823 | 15859 | 15877 |
| 185_ | 15881 | 15887 | 15889 | 15901 | 15907 | 15913 | 15919 | 15923 | 15937 | 15959 |
| 186_ | 15971 | 15973 | 15991 | 16001 | 16007 | 16033 | 16057 | 16061 | 16063 | 16067 |
| 187_ | 16069 | 16073 | 16087 | 16091 | 16097 | 16103 | 16111 | 16127 | 16139 | 16141 |
| 188_ | 16183 | 16187 | 16189 | 16193 | 16217 | 16223 | 16229 | 16231 | 16249 | 16253 |
| 189_ | 16267 | 16273 | 16301 | 16319 | 16333 | 16339 | 16349 | 16361 | 16363 | 16369 |
| 190_ | 16381 | 16411 | 16417 | 16421 | 16427 | 16433 | 16447 | 16451 | 16453 | 16477 |

| | _0 | _1 | _2 | _3 | _4 | _5 | _6 | _7 | _8 | _9 |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 191_ | 16481 | 16487 | 16493 | 16519 | 16529 | 16547 | 16553 | 16561 | 16567 | 16573 |
| 192_ | 16603 | 16607 | 16619 | 16631 | 16633 | 16649 | 16651 | 16657 | 16661 | 16673 |
| 193_ | 16691 | 16693 | 16699 | 16703 | 16729 | 16741 | 16747 | 16759 | 16763 | 16787 |
| 194_ | 16811 | 16823 | 16829 | 16831 | 16843 | 16871 | 16879 | 16883 | 16889 | 16901 |
| 195_ | 16903 | 16921 | 16927 | 16931 | 16937 | 16943 | 16963 | 16979 | 16981 | 16987 |
| 196_ | 16993 | 17011 | 17021 | 17027 | 17029 | 17033 | 17041 | 17047 | 17053 | 17077 |
| 197_ | 17093 | 17099 | 17107 | 17117 | 17123 | 17137 | 17159 | 17167 | 17183 | 17189 |
| 198_ | 17191 | 17203 | 17207 | 17209 | 17231 | 17239 | 17257 | 17291 | 17293 | 17299 |
| 199_ | 17317 | 17321 | 17327 | 17333 | 17341 | 17351 | 17359 | 17377 | 17383 | 17387 |
| 200_ | 17389 | 17393 | 17401 | 17417 | 17419 | 17431 | 17443 | 17449 | 17467 | 17471 |
| 201_ | 17477 | 17483 | 17489 | 17491 | 17497 | 17509 | 17519 | 17539 | 17551 | 17569 |
| 202_ | 17573 | 17579 | 17581 | 17597 | 17599 | 17609 | 17623 | 17627 | 17657 | 17659 |
| 203_ | 17669 | 17681 | 17683 | 17707 | 17713 | 17729 | 17737 | 17747 | 17749 | 17761 |
| 204_ | 17783 | 17789 | 17791 | 17807 | 17827 | 17837 | 17839 | 17851 | 17863 | 17881 |
| 205_ | 17891 | 17903 | 17909 | 17911 | 17921 | 17923 | 17929 | 17939 | 17957 | 17959 |
| 206_ | 17971 | 17977 | 17981 | 17987 | 17989 | 18013 | 18041 | 18043 | 18047 | 18049 |
| 207_ | 18059 | 18061 | 18077 | 18089 | 18097 | 18119 | 18121 | 18127 | 18131 | 18133 |
| 208_ | 18143 | 18149 | 18169 | 18181 | 18191 | 18199 | 18211 | 18217 | 18223 | 18229 |
| 209_ | 18233 | 18251 | 18253 | 18257 | 18269 | 18287 | 18289 | 18301 | 18307 | 18311 |
| 210_ | 18313 | 18329 | 18341 | 18353 | 18367 | 18371 | 18379 | 18397 | 18401 | 18413 |
| 211_ | 18427 | 18433 | 18439 | 18443 | 18451 | 18457 | 18461 | 18481 | 18493 | 18503 |
| 212_ | 18517 | 18521 | 18523 | 18539 | 18541 | 18553 | 18583 | 18587 | 18593 | 18617 |
| 213_ | 18637 | 18661 | 18671 | 18679 | 18691 | 18701 | 18713 | 18719 | 18731 | 18743 |
| 214_ | 18749 | 18757 | 18773 | 18787 | 18793 | 18797 | 18803 | 18839 | 18859 | 18869 |
| 215_ | 18899 | 18911 | 18913 | 18917 | 18919 | 18947 | 18959 | 18973 | 18979 | 19001 |
| 216_ | 19009 | 19013 | 19031 | 19037 | 19051 | 19069 | 19073 | 19079 | 19081 | 19087 |
| 217_ | 19121 | 19139 | 19141 | 19157 | 19163 | 19181 | 19183 | 19207 | 19211 | 19213 |
| 218_ | 19219 | 19231 | 19237 | 19249 | 19259 | 19267 | 19273 | 19289 | 19301 | 19309 |
| 219_ | 19319 | 19333 | 19373 | 19379 | 19381 | 19387 | 19391 | 19403 | 19417 | 19421 |
| 220_ | 19423 | 19427 | 19429 | 19433 | 19441 | 19447 | 19457 | 19463 | 19469 | 19471 |
| 221_ | 19477 | 19483 | 19489 | 19501 | 19507 | 19531 | 19541 | 19543 | 19553 | 19559 |
| 222_ | 19571 | 19577 | 19583 | 19597 | 19603 | 19609 | 19661 | 19681 | 19687 | 19697 |
| 223_ | 19699 | 19709 | 19717 | 19727 | 19739 | 19751 | 19753 | 19759 | 19763 | 19777 |
| 224_ | 19793 | 19801 | 19813 | 19819 | 19841 | 19843 | 19853 | 19861 | 19867 | 19889 |
| 225_ | 19891 | 19913 | 19919 | 19927 | 19937 | 19949 | 19961 | 19963 | 19973 | 19979 |
| 226_ | 19991 | 19993 | 19997 | 20011 | 20021 | 20023 | 20029 | 20047 | 20051 | 20063 |
| 227_ | 20071 | 20089 | 20101 | 20107 | 20113 | 20117 | 20123 | 20129 | 20143 | 20147 |
| 228_ | 20149 | 20161 | 20173 | 20177 | 20183 | 20201 | 20219 | 20231 | 20233 | 20249 |
| 229_ | 20261 | 20269 | 20287 | 20297 | 20323 | 20327 | 20333 | 20341 | 20347 | 20353 |
| 230_ | 20357 | 20359 | 20369 | 20389 | 20393 | 20399 | 20407 | 20411 | 20431 | 20441 |
| 231_ | 20443 | 20477 | 20479 | 20483 | 20507 | 20509 | 20521 | 20533 | 20543 | 20549 |
| 232_ | 20551 | 20563 | 20593 | 20599 | 20611 | 20627 | 20639 | 20641 | 20663 | 20681 |
| 233_ | 20693 | 20707 | 20717 | 20719 | 20731 | 20743 | 20747 | 20749 | 20753 | 20759 |
| 234_ | 20771 | 20773 | 20789 | 20807 | 20809 | 20849 | 20857 | 20873 | 20879 | 20887 |
| 235_ | 20897 | 20899 | 20903 | 20921 | 20929 | 20939 | 20947 | 20959 | 20963 | 20981 |
| 236_ | 20983 | 21001 | 21011 | 21013 | 21017 | 21019 | 21023 | 21031 | 21059 | 21061 |
| 237_ | 21067 | 21089 | 21101 | 21107 | 21121 | 21139 | 21143 | 21149 | 21157 | 21163 |
| 238_ | 21169 | 21179 | 21187 | 21191 | 21193 | 21211 | 21221 | 21227 | 21247 | 21269 |
| 239_ | 21277 | 21283 | 21313 | 21317 | 21319 | 21323 | 21341 | 21347 | 21377 | 21379 |
| 240_ | 21383 | 21391 | 21397 | 21401 | 21407 | 21419 | 21433 | 21467 | 21481 | 21487 |
| 241_ | 21491 | 21493 | 21499 | 21503 | 21517 | 21521 | 21523 | 21529 | 21557 | 21559 |
| 242_ | 21563 | 21569 | 21577 | 21587 | 21589 | 21599 | 21601 | 21611 | 21613 | 21617 |
| 243_ | 21647 | 21649 | 21661 | 21673 | 21683 | 21701 | 21713 | 21727 | 21737 | 21739 |
| 244_ | 21751 | 21757 | 21767 | 21773 | 21787 | 21799 | 21803 | 21817 | 21821 | 21839 |
| 245_ | 21841 | 21851 | 21859 | 21863 | 21871 | 21881 | 21893 | 21911 | 21929 | 21937 |
| 246_ | 21943 | 21961 | 21977 | 21991 | 21997 | 22003 | 22013 | 22027 | 22031 | 22037 |

| | _0 | _1 | _2 | _3 | _4 | _5 | _6 | _7 | _8 | _9 |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 247_ | 22039 | 22051 | 22063 | 22067 | 22073 | 22079 | 22091 | 22093 | 22109 | 22111 |
| 248_ | 22123 | 22129 | 22133 | 22147 | 22153 | 22157 | 22159 | 22171 | 22189 | 22193 |
| 249_ | 22229 | 22247 | 22259 | 22271 | 22273 | 22277 | 22279 | 22283 | 22291 | 22303 |
| 250_ | 22307 | 22343 | 22349 | 22367 | 22369 | 22381 | 22391 | 22397 | 22409 | 22433 |
| 251_ | 22441 | 22447 | 22453 | 22469 | 22481 | 22483 | 22501 | 22511 | 22531 | 22541 |
| 252_ | 22543 | 22549 | 22567 | 22571 | 22573 | 22613 | 22619 | 22621 | 22637 | 22639 |
| 253_ | 22643 | 22651 | 22669 | 22679 | 22691 | 22697 | 22699 | 22709 | 22717 | 22721 |
| 254_ | 22727 | 22739 | 22741 | 22751 | 22769 | 22777 | 22783 | 22787 | 22807 | 22811 |
| 255_ | 22817 | 22853 | 22859 | 22861 | 22871 | 22877 | 22901 | 22907 | 22921 | 22937 |
| 256_ | 22943 | 22961 | 22963 | 22973 | 22993 | 23003 | 23011 | 23017 | 23021 | 23027 |
| 257_ | 23029 | 23039 | 23041 | 23053 | 23057 | 23059 | 23063 | 23071 | 23081 | 23087 |
| 258_ | 23099 | 23117 | 23131 | 23143 | 23159 | 23167 | 23173 | 23189 | 23197 | 23201 |
| 259_ | 23203 | 23209 | 23227 | 23251 | 23269 | 23279 | 23291 | 23293 | 23297 | 23311 |
| 260_ | 23321 | 23327 | 23333 | 23339 | 23357 | 23369 | 23371 | 23399 | 23417 | 23431 |
| 261_ | 23447 | 23459 | 23473 | 23497 | 23509 | 23531 | 23537 | 23539 | 23549 | 23557 |
| 262_ | 23561 | 23563 | 23567 | 23581 | 23593 | 23599 | 23603 | 23609 | 23623 | 23627 |
| 263_ | 23629 | 23633 | 23663 | 23669 | 23671 | 23677 | 23687 | 23689 | 23719 | 23741 |
| 264_ | 23743 | 23747 | 23753 | 23761 | 23767 | 23773 | 23789 | 23801 | 23813 | 23819 |
| 265_ | 23827 | 23831 | 23833 | 23857 | 23869 | 23873 | 23879 | 23887 | 23893 | 23899 |
| 266_ | 23909 | 23911 | 23917 | 23929 | 23957 | 23971 | 23977 | 23981 | 23993 | 24001 |
| 267_ | 24007 | 24019 | 24023 | 24029 | 24043 | 24049 | 24061 | 24071 | 24077 | 24083 |
| 268_ | 24091 | 24097 | 24103 | 24107 | 24109 | 24113 | 24121 | 24133 | 24137 | 24151 |
| 269_ | 24169 | 24179 | 24181 | 24197 | 24203 | 24223 | 24229 | 24239 | 24247 | 24251 |
| 270_ | 24281 | 24317 | 24329 | 24337 | 24359 | 24371 | 24373 | 24379 | 24391 | 24407 |
| 271_ | 24413 | 24419 | 24421 | 24439 | 24443 | 24469 | 24473 | 24481 | 24499 | 24509 |
| 272_ | 24517 | 24527 | 24533 | 24547 | 24551 | 24571 | 24593 | 24611 | 24623 | 24631 |
| 273_ | 24659 | 24671 | 24677 | 24683 | 24691 | 24697 | 24709 | 24733 | 24749 | 24763 |
| 274_ | 24767 | 24781 | 24793 | 24799 | 24809 | 24821 | 24841 | 24847 | 24851 | 24859 |
| 275_ | 24877 | 24889 | 24907 | 24917 | 24919 | 24923 | 24943 | 24953 | 24967 | 24971 |
| 276_ | 24977 | 24979 | 24989 | 25013 | 25031 | 25033 | 25037 | 25057 | 25073 | 25087 |
| 277_ | 25097 | 25111 | 25117 | 25121 | 25127 | 25147 | 25153 | 25163 | 25169 | 25171 |
| 278_ | 25183 | 25189 | 25219 | 25229 | 25237 | 25243 | 25247 | 25253 | 25261 | 25301 |
| 279_ | 25303 | 25307 | 25309 | 25321 | 25339 | 25343 | 25349 | 25357 | 25367 | 25373 |
| 280_ | 25391 | 25409 | 25411 | 25423 | 25439 | 25447 | 25453 | 25457 | 25463 | 25469 |
| 281_ | 25471 | 25523 | 25537 | 25541 | 25561 | 25577 | 25579 | 25583 | 25589 | 25601 |
| 282_ | 25603 | 25609 | 25621 | 25633 | 25639 | 25643 | 25657 | 25667 | 25673 | 25679 |
| 283_ | 25693 | 25703 | 25717 | 25733 | 25741 | 25747 | 25759 | 25763 | 25771 | 25793 |
| 284_ | 25799 | 25801 | 25819 | 25841 | 25847 | 25849 | 25867 | 25873 | 25889 | 25903 |
| 285_ | 25913 | 25919 | 25931 | 25933 | 25939 | 25943 | 25951 | 25969 | 25981 | 25997 |
| 286_ | 25999 | 26003 | 26017 | 26021 | 26029 | 26041 | 26053 | 26083 | 26099 | 26107 |
| 287_ | 26111 | 26113 | 26119 | 26141 | 26153 | 26161 | 26171 | 26177 | 26183 | 26189 |
| 288_ | 26203 | 26209 | 26227 | 26237 | 26249 | 26251 | 26261 | 26263 | 26267 | 26293 |
| 289_ | 26297 | 26309 | 26317 | 26321 | 26339 | 26347 | 26357 | 26371 | 26387 | 26393 |
| 290_ | 26399 | 26407 | 26417 | 26423 | 26431 | 26437 | 26449 | 26459 | 26479 | 26489 |
| 291_ | 26497 | 26501 | 26513 | 26539 | 26557 | 26561 | 26573 | 26591 | 26597 | 26627 |
| 292_ | 26633 | 26641 | 26647 | 26669 | 26681 | 26683 | 26687 | 26693 | 26699 | 26701 |
| 293_ | 26711 | 26713 | 26717 | 26723 | 26729 | 26731 | 26737 | 26759 | 26777 | 26783 |
| 294_ | 26801 | 26813 | 26821 | 26833 | 26839 | 26849 | 26861 | 26863 | 26879 | 26881 |
| 295_ | 26891 | 26893 | 26903 | 26921 | 26927 | 26947 | 26951 | 26953 | 26959 | 26981 |
| 296_ | 26987 | 26993 | 27011 | 27017 | 27031 | 27043 | 27059 | 27061 | 27067 | 27073 |
| 297_ | 27077 | 27091 | 27103 | 27107 | 27109 | 27127 | 27143 | 27179 | 27191 | 27197 |
| 298_ | 27211 | 27239 | 27241 | 27253 | 27259 | 27271 | 27277 | 27281 | 27283 | 27299 |
| 299_ | 27329 | 27337 | 27361 | 27367 | 27397 | 27407 | 27409 | 27427 | 27431 | 27437 |
| 300_ | 27449 | 27457 | 27479 | 27481 | 27487 | 27509 | 27527 | 27529 | 27539 | 27541 |
| 301_ | 27551 | 27581 | 27583 | 27611 | 27617 | 27631 | 27647 | 27653 | 27673 | 27689 |
| 302_ | 27691 | 27697 | 27701 | 27733 | 27737 | 27739 | 27743 | 27749 | 27751 | 27763 |

| | _0 | _1 | _2 | _3 | _4 | _5 | _6 | _7 | _8 | _9 |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 303_ | 27767 | 27773 | 27779 | 27791 | 27793 | 27799 | 27803 | 27809 | 27817 | 27823 |
| 304_ | 27827 | 27847 | 27851 | 27883 | 27893 | 27901 | 27917 | 27919 | 27941 | 27943 |
| 305_ | 27947 | 27953 | 27961 | 27967 | 27983 | 27997 | 28001 | 28019 | 28027 | 28031 |
| 306_ | 28051 | 28057 | 28069 | 28081 | 28087 | 28097 | 28099 | 28109 | 28111 | 28123 |
| 307_ | 28151 | 28163 | 28181 | 28183 | 28201 | 28211 | 28219 | 28229 | 28277 | 28279 |
| 308_ | 28283 | 28289 | 28297 | 28307 | 28309 | 28319 | 28349 | 28351 | 28387 | 28393 |
| 309_ | 28403 | 28409 | 28411 | 28429 | 28433 | 28439 | 28447 | 28463 | 28477 | 28493 |
| 310_ | 28499 | 28513 | 28517 | 28537 | 28541 | 28547 | 28549 | 28559 | 28571 | 28573 |
| 311_ | 28579 | 28591 | 28597 | 28603 | 28607 | 28619 | 28621 | 28627 | 28631 | 28643 |
| 312_ | 28649 | 28657 | 28661 | 28663 | 28669 | 28687 | 28697 | 28703 | 28711 | 28723 |
| 313_ | 28729 | 28751 | 28753 | 28759 | 28771 | 28789 | 28793 | 28807 | 28813 | 28817 |
| 314_ | 28837 | 28843 | 28859 | 28867 | 28871 | 28879 | 28901 | 28909 | 28921 | 28927 |
| 315_ | 28933 | 28949 | 28961 | 28979 | 29009 | 29017 | 29021 | 29023 | 29027 | 29033 |
| 316_ | 29059 | 29063 | 29077 | 29101 | 29123 | 29129 | 29131 | 29137 | 29147 | 29153 |
| 317_ | 29167 | 29173 | 29179 | 29191 | 29201 | 29207 | 29209 | 29221 | 29231 | 29243 |
| 318_ | 29251 | 29269 | 29287 | 29297 | 29303 | 29311 | 29327 | 29333 | 29339 | 29347 |
| 319_ | 29363 | 29383 | 29387 | 29389 | 29399 | 29401 | 29411 | 29423 | 29429 | 29437 |
| 320_ | 29443 | 29453 | 29473 | 29483 | 29501 | 29527 | 29531 | 29537 | 29567 | 29569 |
| 321_ | 29573 | 29581 | 29587 | 29599 | 29611 | 29629 | 29633 | 29641 | 29663 | 29669 |
| 322_ | 29671 | 29683 | 29717 | 29723 | 29741 | 29753 | 29759 | 29761 | 29789 | 29803 |
| 323_ | 29819 | 29833 | 29837 | 29851 | 29863 | 29867 | 29873 | 29879 | 29881 | 29917 |
| 324_ | 29921 | 29927 | 29947 | 29959 | 29983 | 29989 | 30011 | 30013 | 30029 | 30047 |
| 325_ | 30059 | 30071 | 30089 | 30091 | 30097 | 30103 | 30109 | 30113 | 30119 | 30133 |
| 326_ | 30137 | 30139 | 30161 | 30169 | 30181 | 30187 | 30197 | 30203 | 30211 | 30223 |
| 327_ | 30241 | 30253 | 30259 | 30269 | 30271 | 30293 | 30307 | 30313 | 30319 | 30323 |
| 328_ | 30341 | 30347 | 30367 | 30389 | 30391 | 30403 | 30427 | 30431 | 30449 | 30467 |
| 329_ | 30469 | 30491 | 30493 | 30497 | 30509 | 30517 | 30529 | 30539 | 30553 | 30557 |
| 330_ | 30559 | 30577 | 30593 | 30631 | 30637 | 30643 | 30649 | 30661 | 30671 | 30677 |
| 331_ | 30689 | 30697 | 30703 | 30707 | 30713 | 30727 | 30757 | 30763 | 30773 | 30781 |
| 332_ | 30803 | 30809 | 30817 | 30829 | 30839 | 30841 | 30851 | 30853 | 30859 | 30869 |
| 333_ | 30871 | 30881 | 30893 | 30911 | 30931 | 30937 | 30941 | 30949 | 30971 | 30977 |
| 334_ | 30983 | 31013 | 31019 | 31033 | 31039 | 31051 | 31063 | 31069 | 31079 | 31081 |
| 335_ | 31091 | 31121 | 31123 | 31139 | 31147 | 31151 | 31153 | 31159 | 31177 | 31181 |
| 336_ | 31183 | 31189 | 31193 | 31219 | 31223 | 31231 | 31237 | 31247 | 31249 | 31253 |
| 337_ | 31259 | 31267 | 31271 | 31277 | 31307 | 31319 | 31321 | 31327 | 31333 | 31337 |
| 338_ | 31357 | 31379 | 31387 | 31391 | 31393 | 31397 | 31469 | 31477 | 31481 | 31489 |
| 339_ | 31511 | 31513 | 31517 | 31531 | 31541 | 31543 | 31547 | 31567 | 31573 | 31583 |
| 340_ | 31601 | 31607 | 31627 | 31643 | 31649 | 31657 | 31663 | 31667 | 31687 | 31699 |
| 341_ | 31721 | 31723 | 31727 | 31729 | 31741 | 31751 | 31769 | 31771 | 31793 | 31799 |
| 342_ | 31817 | 31847 | 31849 | 31859 | 31873 | 31883 | 31891 | 31907 | 31957 | 31963 |
| 343_ | 31973 | 31981 | 31991 | 32003 | 32009 | 32027 | 32029 | 32051 | 32057 | 32059 |
| 344_ | 32063 | 32069 | 32077 | 32083 | 32089 | 32099 | 32117 | 32119 | 32141 | 32143 |
| 345_ | 32159 | 32173 | 32183 | 32189 | 32191 | 32203 | 32213 | 32233 | 32237 | 32251 |
| 346_ | 32257 | 32261 | 32297 | 32299 | 32303 | 32309 | 32321 | 32323 | 32327 | 32341 |
| 347_ | 32353 | 32359 | 32363 | 32369 | 32371 | 32377 | 32381 | 32401 | 32411 | 32413 |
| 348_ | 32423 | 32429 | 32441 | 32443 | 32467 | 32479 | 32491 | 32497 | 32503 | 32507 |
| 349_ | 32531 | 32533 | 32537 | 32561 | 32563 | 32569 | 32573 | 32579 | 32587 | 32603 |
| 350_ | 32609 | 32611 | 32621 | 32633 | 32647 | 32653 | 32687 | 32693 | 32707 | 32713 |
| 351_ | 32717 | 32719 | 32749 | 32771 | 32779 | 32783 | 32789 | 32797 | 32801 | 32803 |
| 352_ | 32831 | 32833 | 32839 | 32843 | 32869 | 32887 | 32909 | 32911 | 32917 | 32933 |
| 353_ | 32939 | 32941 | 32957 | 32969 | 32971 | 32983 | 32987 | 32993 | 32999 | 33013 |
| 354_ | 33023 | 33029 | 33037 | 33049 | 33053 | 33071 | 33073 | 33083 | 33091 | 33107 |
| 355_ | 33113 | 33119 | 33149 | 33151 | 33161 | 33179 | 33181 | 33191 | 33199 | 33203 |
| 356_ | 33211 | 33223 | 33247 | 33287 | 33289 | 33301 | 33311 | 33317 | 33329 | 33331 |
| 357_ | 33343 | 33347 | 33349 | 33353 | 33359 | 33377 | 33391 | 33403 | 33409 | 33413 |
| 358_ | 33427 | 33457 | 33461 | 33469 | 33479 | 33487 | 33493 | 33503 | 33521 | 33529 |

| | _0 | _1 | _2 | _3 | _4 | _5 | _6 | _7 | _8 | _9 |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 359_ | 33533 | 33547 | 33563 | 33569 | 33577 | 33581 | 33587 | 33589 | 33599 | 33601 |
| 360_ | 33613 | 33617 | 33619 | 33623 | 33629 | 33637 | 33641 | 33647 | 33679 | 33703 |
| 361_ | 33713 | 33721 | 33739 | 33749 | 33751 | 33757 | 33767 | 33769 | 33773 | 33791 |
| 362_ | 33797 | 33809 | 33811 | 33827 | 33829 | 33851 | 33857 | 33863 | 33871 | 33889 |
| 363_ | 33893 | 33911 | 33923 | 33931 | 33937 | 33941 | 33961 | 33967 | 33997 | 34019 |
| 364_ | 34031 | 34033 | 34039 | 34057 | 34061 | 34123 | 34127 | 34129 | 34141 | 34147 |
| 365_ | 34157 | 34159 | 34171 | 34183 | 34211 | 34213 | 34217 | 34231 | 34253 | 34259 |
| 366_ | 34261 | 34267 | 34273 | 34283 | 34297 | 34301 | 34303 | 34313 | 34319 | 34327 |
| 367_ | 34337 | 34351 | 34361 | 34367 | 34369 | 34381 | 34403 | 34421 | 34429 | 34439 |
| 368_ | 34457 | 34469 | 34471 | 34483 | 34487 | 34499 | 34501 | 34511 | 34513 | 34519 |
| 369_ | 34537 | 34543 | 34549 | 34583 | 34589 | 34591 | 34603 | 34607 | 34613 | 34631 |
| 370_ | 34649 | 34651 | 34667 | 34673 | 34679 | 34687 | 34693 | 34703 | 34721 | 34729 |
| 371_ | 34739 | 34747 | 34757 | 34759 | 34763 | 34781 | 34807 | 34819 | 34841 | 34843 |
| 372_ | 34847 | 34849 | 34871 | 34877 | 34883 | 34897 | 34913 | 34919 | 34939 | 34949 |
| 373_ | 34961 | 34963 | 34981 | 35023 | 35027 | 35051 | 35053 | 35059 | 35069 | 35081 |
| 374_ | 35083 | 35089 | 35099 | 35107 | 35111 | 35117 | 35129 | 35141 | 35149 | 35153 |
| 375_ | 35159 | 35171 | 35201 | 35221 | 35227 | 35251 | 35257 | 35267 | 35279 | 35281 |
| 376_ | 35291 | 35311 | 35317 | 35323 | 35327 | 35339 | 35353 | 35363 | 35381 | 35393 |
| 377_ | 35401 | 35407 | 35419 | 35423 | 35437 | 35447 | 35449 | 35461 | 35491 | 35507 |
| 378_ | 35509 | 35521 | 35527 | 35531 | 35533 | 35537 | 35543 | 35569 | 35573 | 35591 |
| 379_ | 35593 | 35597 | 35603 | 35617 | 35671 | 35677 | 35729 | 35731 | 35747 | 35753 |
| 380_ | 35759 | 35771 | 35797 | 35801 | 35803 | 35809 | 35831 | 35837 | 35839 | 35851 |
| 381_ | 35863 | 35869 | 35879 | 35897 | 35899 | 35911 | 35923 | 35933 | 35951 | 35963 |
| 382_ | 35969 | 35977 | 35983 | 35993 | 35999 | 36007 | 36011 | 36013 | 36017 | 36037 |
| 383_ | 36061 | 36067 | 36073 | 36083 | 36097 | 36107 | 36109 | 36131 | 36137 | 36151 |
| 384_ | 36161 | 36187 | 36191 | 36209 | 36217 | 36229 | 36241 | 36251 | 36263 | 36269 |
| 385_ | 36277 | 36293 | 36299 | 36307 | 36313 | 36319 | 36341 | 36343 | 36353 | 36373 |
| 386_ | 36383 | 36389 | 36433 | 36451 | 36457 | 36467 | 36469 | 36473 | 36479 | 36493 |
| 387_ | 36497 | 36523 | 36527 | 36529 | 36541 | 36551 | 36559 | 36563 | 36571 | 36583 |
| 388_ | 36587 | 36599 | 36607 | 36629 | 36637 | 36643 | 36653 | 36671 | 36677 | 36683 |
| 389_ | 36691 | 36697 | 36709 | 36713 | 36721 | 36739 | 36749 | 36761 | 36767 | 36779 |
| 390_ | 36781 | 36787 | 36791 | 36793 | 36809 | 36821 | 36833 | 36847 | 36857 | 36871 |
| 391_ | 36877 | 36887 | 36899 | 36901 | 36913 | 36919 | 36923 | 36929 | 36931 | 36943 |
| 392_ | 36947 | 36973 | 36979 | 36997 | 37003 | 37013 | 37019 | 37021 | 37039 | 37049 |
| 393_ | 37057 | 37061 | 37087 | 37097 | 37117 | 37123 | 37139 | 37159 | 37171 | 37181 |
| 394_ | 37189 | 37199 | 37201 | 37217 | 37223 | 37243 | 37253 | 37273 | 37277 | 37307 |
| 395_ | 37309 | 37313 | 37321 | 37337 | 37339 | 37357 | 37361 | 37363 | 37369 | 37379 |
| 396_ | 37397 | 37409 | 37423 | 37441 | 37447 | 37463 | 37483 | 37489 | 37493 | 37501 |
| 397_ | 37507 | 37511 | 37517 | 37529 | 37537 | 37547 | 37549 | 37561 | 37567 | 37571 |
| 398_ | 37573 | 37579 | 37589 | 37591 | 37607 | 37619 | 37633 | 37643 | 37649 | 37657 |
| 399_ | 37663 | 37691 | 37693 | 37699 | 37717 | 37747 | 37781 | 37783 | 37799 | 37811 |
| 400_ | 37813 | 37831 | 37847 | 37853 | 37861 | 37871 | 37879 | 37889 | 37897 | 37907 |
| 401_ | 37951 | 37957 | 37963 | 37967 | 37987 | 37991 | 37993 | 37997 | 38011 | 38039 |
| 402_ | 38047 | 38053 | 38069 | 38083 | 38113 | 38119 | 38149 | 38153 | 38167 | 38177 |
| 403_ | 38183 | 38189 | 38197 | 38201 | 38219 | 38231 | 38237 | 38239 | 38261 | 38273 |
| 404_ | 38281 | 38287 | 38299 | 38303 | 38317 | 38321 | 38327 | 38329 | 38333 | 38351 |
| 405_ | 38371 | 38377 | 38393 | 38431 | 38447 | 38449 | 38453 | 38459 | 38461 | 38501 |
| 406_ | 38543 | 38557 | 38561 | 38567 | 38569 | 38593 | 38603 | 38609 | 38611 | 38629 |
| 407_ | 38639 | 38651 | 38653 | 38669 | 38671 | 38677 | 38693 | 38699 | 38707 | 38711 |
| 408_ | 38713 | 38723 | 38729 | 38737 | 38747 | 38749 | 38767 | 38783 | 38791 | 38803 |
| 409_ | 38821 | 38833 | 38839 | 38851 | 38861 | 38867 | 38873 | 38891 | 38903 | 38917 |
| 410_ | 38921 | 38923 | 38933 | 38953 | 38959 | 38971 | 38977 | 38993 | 39019 | 39023 |
| 411_ | 39041 | 39043 | 39047 | 39079 | 39089 | 39097 | 39103 | 39107 | 39113 | 39119 |
| 412_ | 39133 | 39139 | 39157 | 39161 | 39163 | 39181 | 39191 | 39199 | 39209 | 39217 |
| 413_ | 39227 | 39229 | 39233 | 39239 | 39241 | 39251 | 39293 | 39301 | 39313 | 39317 |
| 414_ | 39323 | 39341 | 39343 | 39359 | 39367 | 39371 | 39373 | 39383 | 39397 | 39409 |

| | _0 | _1 | _2 | _3 | _4 | _5 | _6 | _7 | _8 | _9 |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 415_ | 39419 | 39439 | 39443 | 39451 | 39461 | 39499 | 39503 | 39509 | 39511 | 39521 |
| 416_ | 39541 | 39551 | 39563 | 39569 | 39581 | 39607 | 39619 | 39623 | 39631 | 39659 |
| 417_ | 39667 | 39671 | 39679 | 39703 | 39709 | 39719 | 39727 | 39733 | 39749 | 39761 |
| 418_ | 39769 | 39779 | 39791 | 39799 | 39821 | 39827 | 39829 | 39839 | 39841 | 39847 |
| 419_ | 39857 | 39863 | 39869 | 39877 | 39883 | 39887 | 39901 | 39929 | 39937 | 39953 |
| 420_ | 39971 | 39979 | 39983 | 39989 | 40009 | 40013 | 40031 | 40037 | 40039 | 40063 |
| 421_ | 40087 | 40093 | 40099 | 40111 | 40123 | 40127 | 40129 | 40151 | 40153 | 40163 |
| 422_ | 40169 | 40177 | 40189 | 40193 | 40213 | 40231 | 40237 | 40241 | 40253 | 40277 |
| 423_ | 40283 | 40289 | 40343 | 40351 | 40357 | 40361 | 40387 | 40423 | 40427 | 40429 |
| 424_ | 40433 | 40459 | 40471 | 40483 | 40487 | 40493 | 40499 | 40507 | 40519 | 40529 |
| 425_ | 40531 | 40543 | 40559 | 40577 | 40583 | 40591 | 40597 | 40609 | 40627 | 40637 |
| 426_ | 40639 | 40693 | 40697 | 40699 | 40709 | 40739 | 40751 | 40759 | 40763 | 40771 |
| 427_ | 40787 | 40801 | 40813 | 40819 | 40823 | 40829 | 40841 | 40847 | 40849 | 40853 |
| 428_ | 40867 | 40879 | 40883 | 40897 | 40903 | 40927 | 40933 | 40939 | 40949 | 40961 |
| 429_ | 40973 | 40993 | 41011 | 41017 | 41023 | 41039 | 41047 | 41051 | 41057 | 41077 |
| 430_ | 41081 | 41113 | 41117 | 41131 | 41141 | 41143 | 41149 | 41161 | 41177 | 41179 |
| 431_ | 41183 | 41189 | 41201 | 41203 | 41213 | 41221 | 41227 | 41231 | 41233 | 41243 |
| 432_ | 41257 | 41263 | 41269 | 41281 | 41299 | 41333 | 41341 | 41351 | 41357 | 41381 |
| 433_ | 41387 | 41389 | 41399 | 41411 | 41413 | 41443 | 41453 | 41467 | 41479 | 41491 |
| 434_ | 41507 | 41513 | 41519 | 41521 | 41539 | 41543 | 41549 | 41579 | 41593 | 41597 |
| 435_ | 41603 | 41609 | 41611 | 41617 | 41621 | 41627 | 41641 | 41647 | 41651 | 41659 |
| 436_ | 41669 | 41681 | 41687 | 41719 | 41729 | 41737 | 41759 | 41761 | 41771 | 41777 |
| 437_ | 41801 | 41809 | 41813 | 41843 | 41849 | 41851 | 41863 | 41879 | 41887 | 41893 |
| 438_ | 41897 | 41903 | 41911 | 41927 | 41941 | 41947 | 41953 | 41957 | 41959 | 41969 |
| 439_ | 41981 | 41983 | 41999 | 42013 | 42017 | 42019 | 42023 | 42043 | 42061 | 42061 |
| 440_ | 42073 | 42083 | 42089 | 42101 | 42131 | 42139 | 42157 | 42169 | 42179 | 42181 |
| 441_ | 42187 | 42193 | 42197 | 42209 | 42221 | 42223 | 42227 | 42239 | 42257 | 42281 |
| 442_ | 42283 | 42293 | 42299 | 42307 | 42323 | 42331 | 42337 | 42349 | 42359 | 42373 |
| 443_ | 42379 | 42391 | 42397 | 42403 | 42407 | 42409 | 42433 | 42437 | 42443 | 42451 |
| 444_ | 42457 | 42461 | 42463 | 42467 | 42473 | 42487 | 42491 | 42499 | 42509 | 42533 |
| 445_ | 42557 | 42569 | 42571 | 42577 | 42589 | 42611 | 42641 | 42643 | 42649 | 42667 |
| 446_ | 42677 | 42683 | 42689 | 42697 | 42701 | 42703 | 42709 | 42719 | 42727 | 42737 |
| 447_ | 42743 | 42751 | 42767 | 42773 | 42787 | 42793 | 42797 | 42821 | 42829 | 42839 |
| 448_ | 42841 | 42853 | 42859 | 42863 | 42899 | 42901 | 42923 | 42929 | 42937 | 42943 |
| 449_ | 42953 | 42961 | 42967 | 42979 | 42989 | 43003 | 43013 | 43019 | 43037 | 43049 |
| 450_ | 43051 | 43063 | 43067 | 43093 | 43103 | 43117 | 43133 | 43151 | 43159 | 43177 |
| 451_ | 43189 | 43201 | 43207 | 43223 | 43237 | 43261 | 43271 | 43283 | 43291 | 43313 |
| 452_ | 43319 | 43321 | 43331 | 43391 | 43397 | 43399 | 43403 | 43411 | 43427 | 43441 |
| 453_ | 43451 | 43457 | 43481 | 43487 | 43499 | 43517 | 43541 | 43543 | 43573 | 43577 |
| 454_ | 43579 | 43591 | 43597 | 43607 | 43609 | 43613 | 43627 | 43633 | 43649 | 43651 |
| 455_ | 43661 | 43669 | 43691 | 43711 | 43717 | 43721 | 43753 | 43759 | 43777 | 43781 |
| 456_ | 43783 | 43787 | 43789 | 43793 | 43801 | 43853 | 43867 | 43889 | 43891 | 43913 |
| 457_ | 43933 | 43943 | 43951 | 43961 | 43963 | 43969 | 43973 | 43987 | 43991 | 43997 |
| 458_ | 44017 | 44021 | 44027 | 44029 | 44041 | 44053 | 44059 | 44071 | 44087 | 44089 |
| 459_ | 44101 | 44111 | 44119 | 44123 | 44129 | 44131 | 44159 | 44171 | 44179 | 44189 |
| 460_ | 44201 | 44203 | 44207 | 44221 | 44249 | 44257 | 44263 | 44267 | 44269 | 44273 |
| 461_ | 44279 | 44281 | 44293 | 44351 | 44357 | 44371 | 44381 | 44383 | 44389 | 44417 |
| 462_ | 44449 | 44453 | 44483 | 44491 | 44497 | 44501 | 44507 | 44519 | 44531 | 44533 |
| 463_ | 44537 | 44543 | 44549 | 44563 | 44579 | 44587 | 44617 | 44621 | 44623 | 44633 |
| 464_ | 44641 | 44647 | 44651 | 44657 | 44683 | 44687 | 44699 | 44701 | 44711 | 44729 |
| 465_ | 44741 | 44753 | 44771 | 44773 | 44777 | 44789 | 44797 | 44809 | 44819 | 44839 |
| 466_ | 44843 | 44851 | 44867 | 44879 | 44887 | 44893 | 44909 | 44917 | 44927 | 44939 |
| 467_ | 44953 | 44959 | 44963 | 44971 | 44983 | 44987 | 45007 | 45013 | 45053 | 45061 |
| 468_ | 45077 | 45083 | 45119 | 45121 | 45127 | 45131 | 45137 | 45139 | 45161 | 45179 |
| 469_ | 45181 | 45191 | 45197 | 45233 | 45247 | 45259 | 45263 | 45281 | 45289 | 45293 |
| 470_ | 45307 | 45317 | 45319 | 45329 | 45337 | 45341 | 45343 | 45361 | 45377 | 45389 |

| | _0 | _1 | _2 | _3 | _4 | _5 | _6 | _7 | _8 | _9 |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 471_ | 45403 | 45413 | 45427 | 45433 | 45439 | 45481 | 45491 | 45497 | 45503 | 45523 |
| 472_ | 45533 | 45541 | 45553 | 45557 | 45569 | 45587 | 45589 | 45599 | 45613 | 45631 |
| 473_ | 45641 | 45659 | 45667 | 45673 | 45677 | 45691 | 45697 | 45707 | 45737 | 45751 |
| 474_ | 45757 | 45763 | 45767 | 45779 | 45817 | 45821 | 45823 | 45827 | 45833 | 45841 |
| 475_ | 45853 | 45863 | 45869 | 45887 | 45893 | 45943 | 45949 | 45953 | 45959 | 45971 |
| 476_ | 45979 | 45989 | 46021 | 46027 | 46049 | 46051 | 46061 | 46073 | 46091 | 46093 |
| 477_ | 46099 | 46103 | 46133 | 46141 | 46147 | 46153 | 46171 | 46181 | 46183 | 46187 |
| 478_ | 46199 | 46219 | 46229 | 46237 | 46261 | 46271 | 46273 | 46279 | 46301 | 46307 |
| 479_ | 46309 | 46327 | 46337 | 46349 | 46351 | 46381 | 46399 | 46411 | 46439 | 46441 |
| 480_ | 46447 | 46451 | 46457 | 46471 | 46477 | 46489 | 46499 | 46507 | 46511 | 46523 |
| 481_ | 46549 | 46559 | 46567 | 46573 | 46589 | 46591 | 46601 | 46619 | 46633 | 46639 |
| 482_ | 46643 | 46649 | 46663 | 46679 | 46681 | 46687 | 46691 | 46703 | 46723 | 46727 |
| 483_ | 46747 | 46751 | 46757 | 46769 | 46771 | 46807 | 46811 | 46817 | 46819 | 46829 |
| 484_ | 46831 | 46853 | 46861 | 46867 | 46877 | 46889 | 46901 | 46919 | 46933 | 46957 |
| 485_ | 46993 | 46997 | 47017 | 47041 | 47051 | 47057 | 47059 | 47087 | 47093 | 47111 |
| 486_ | 47119 | 47123 | 47129 | 47137 | 47143 | 47147 | 47149 | 47161 | 47189 | 47207 |
| 487_ | 47221 | 47237 | 47251 | 47269 | 47279 | 47287 | 47293 | 47297 | 47303 | 47309 |
| 488_ | 47317 | 47339 | 47351 | 47353 | 47363 | 47381 | 47387 | 47389 | 47407 | 47417 |
| 489_ | 47419 | 47431 | 47441 | 47459 | 47491 | 47497 | 47501 | 47507 | 47513 | 47521 |
| 490_ | 47527 | 47533 | 47543 | 47563 | 47569 | 47581 | 47591 | 47599 | 47609 | 47623 |
| 491_ | 47629 | 47639 | 47653 | 47657 | 47659 | 47681 | 47699 | 47701 | 47711 | 47713 |
| 492_ | 47717 | 47737 | 47741 | 47743 | 47777 | 47779 | 47791 | 47797 | 47807 | 47809 |
| 493_ | 47819 | 47837 | 47843 | 47857 | 47869 | 47881 | 47903 | 47911 | 47917 | 47933 |
| 494_ | 47939 | 47947 | 47951 | 47963 | 47969 | 47977 | 47981 | 48017 | 48023 | 48029 |
| 495_ | 48049 | 48073 | 48079 | 48091 | 48109 | 48119 | 48121 | 48131 | 48157 | 48163 |
| 496_ | 48179 | 48187 | 48193 | 48197 | 48221 | 48239 | 48247 | 48259 | 48271 | 48281 |
| 497_ | 48299 | 48311 | 48313 | 48337 | 48341 | 48353 | 48371 | 48383 | 48397 | 48407 |
| 498_ | 48409 | 48413 | 48437 | 48449 | 48463 | 48473 | 48479 | 48481 | 48487 | 48491 |
| 499_ | 48497 | 48523 | 48527 | 48533 | 48539 | 48541 | 48563 | 48571 | 48589 | 48593 |
| 500_ | 48611 | 48619 | 48623 | 48647 | 48649 | 48661 | 48673 | 48677 | 48679 | 48731 |
| 501_ | 48733 | 48751 | 48757 | 48761 | 48767 | 48779 | 48781 | 48787 | 48799 | 48809 |
| 502_ | 48817 | 48821 | 48823 | 48847 | 48857 | 48859 | 48869 | 48871 | 48883 | 48889 |
| 503_ | 48907 | 48947 | 48953 | 48973 | 48989 | 48991 | 49003 | 49009 | 49019 | 49031 |
| 504_ | 49033 | 49037 | 49043 | 49057 | 49069 | 49081 | 49103 | 49109 | 49117 | 49121 |
| 505_ | 49123 | 49139 | 49157 | 49169 | 49171 | 49177 | 49193 | 49199 | 49201 | 49207 |
| 506_ | 49211 | 49223 | 49253 | 49261 | 49277 | 49279 | 49297 | 49307 | 49331 | 49333 |
| 507_ | 49339 | 49363 | 49367 | 49369 | 49391 | 49393 | 49409 | 49411 | 49417 | 49429 |
| 508_ | 49433 | 49451 | 49459 | 49463 | 49477 | 49481 | 49499 | 49523 | 49529 | 49531 |
| 509_ | 49537 | 49547 | 49549 | 49559 | 49597 | 49603 | 49613 | 49627 | 49633 | 49639 |
| 510_ | 49663 | 49667 | 49669 | 49681 | 49697 | 49711 | 49727 | 49739 | 49741 | 49747 |
| 511_ | 49757 | 49783 | 49787 | 49789 | 49801 | 49807 | 49811 | 49823 | 49831 | 49843 |
| 512_ | 49853 | 49871 | 49877 | 49891 | 49919 | 49921 | 49927 | 49937 | 49939 | 49943 |
| 513_ | 49957 | 49991 | 49993 | 49999 | 50021 | 50023 | 50033 | 50047 | 50051 | 50053 |
| 514_ | 50069 | 50077 | 50087 | 50093 | 50101 | 50111 | 50119 | 50123 | 50129 | 50131 |
| 515_ | 50147 | 50153 | 50159 | 50177 | 50207 | 50221 | 50227 | 50231 | 50261 | 50263 |
| 516_ | 50273 | 50287 | 50291 | 50311 | 50321 | 50329 | 50333 | 50341 | 50359 | 50363 |
| 517_ | 50377 | 50383 | 50387 | 50411 | 50417 | 50423 | 50441 | 50459 | 50461 | 50497 |
| 518_ | 50503 | 50513 | 50527 | 50539 | 50543 | 50549 | 50551 | 50581 | 50587 | 50591 |
| 519_ | 50593 | 50599 | 50627 | 50647 | 50651 | 50671 | 50683 | 50707 | 50723 | 50741 |
| 520_ | 50753 | 50767 | 50773 | 50777 | 50789 | 50821 | 50833 | 50839 | 50849 | 50857 |
| 521_ | 50867 | 50873 | 50891 | 50893 | 50909 | 50923 | 50929 | 50951 | 50957 | 50969 |
| 522_ | 50971 | 50989 | 50993 | 51001 | 51031 | 51043 | 51047 | 51059 | 51061 | 51071 |
| 523_ | 51109 | 51131 | 51133 | 51137 | 51151 | 51157 | 51169 | 51193 | 51197 | 51199 |
| 524_ | 51203 | 51217 | 51229 | 51239 | 51241 | 51257 | 51263 | 51283 | 51287 | 51307 |
| 525_ | 51329 | 51341 | 51343 | 51347 | 51349 | 51361 | 51383 | 51407 | 51413 | 51419 |
| 526_ | 51421 | 51427 | 51431 | 51437 | 51439 | 51449 | 51461 | 51473 | 51479 | 51481 |

| | _0 | _1 | _2 | _3 | _4 | _5 | _6 | _7 | _8 | _9 |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 527_ | 51487 | 51503 | 51511 | 51517 | 51521 | 51539 | 51551 | 51563 | 51577 | 51581 |
| 528_ | 51593 | 51599 | 51607 | 51613 | 51631 | 51637 | 51647 | 51659 | 51673 | 51679 |
| 529_ | 51683 | 51691 | 51713 | 51719 | 51721 | 51749 | 51767 | 51769 | 51787 | 51797 |
| 530_ | 51803 | 51817 | 51827 | 51829 | 51839 | 51853 | 51859 | 51869 | 51871 | 51893 |
| 531_ | 51899 | 51907 | 51913 | 51929 | 51941 | 51949 | 51971 | 51973 | 51977 | 51991 |
| 532_ | 52009 | 52021 | 52027 | 52051 | 52057 | 52067 | 52069 | 52081 | 52103 | 52121 |
| 533_ | 52127 | 52147 | 52153 | 52163 | 52177 | 52181 | 52183 | 52189 | 52201 | 52223 |
| 534_ | 52237 | 52249 | 52253 | 52259 | 52267 | 52289 | 52291 | 52301 | 52313 | 52321 |
| 535_ | 52361 | 52363 | 52369 | 52379 | 52387 | 52391 | 52433 | 52453 | 52457 | 52489 |
| 536_ | 52501 | 52511 | 52517 | 52529 | 52541 | 52543 | 52553 | 52561 | 52567 | 52571 |
| 537_ | 52579 | 52583 | 52609 | 52627 | 52631 | 52639 | 52667 | 52673 | 52691 | 52697 |
| 538_ | 52709 | 52711 | 52721 | 52727 | 52733 | 52747 | 52757 | 52769 | 52783 | 52807 |
| 539_ | 52813 | 52817 | 52837 | 52859 | 52861 | 52879 | 52883 | 52889 | 52901 | 52903 |
| 540_ | 52919 | 52937 | 52951 | 52957 | 52963 | 52967 | 52973 | 52981 | 52999 | 53003 |
| 541_ | 53017 | 53047 | 53051 | 53069 | 53077 | 53087 | 53089 | 53093 | 53101 | 53113 |
| 542_ | 53117 | 53129 | 53147 | 53149 | 53161 | 53171 | 53173 | 53189 | 53197 | 53201 |
| 543_ | 53231 | 53233 | 53239 | 53267 | 53269 | 53279 | 53281 | 53299 | 53309 | 53323 |
| 544_ | 53327 | 53353 | 53359 | 53377 | 53381 | 53401 | 53407 | 53411 | 53419 | 53437 |
| 545_ | 53441 | 53453 | 53479 | 53503 | 53507 | 53527 | 53549 | 53551 | 53569 | 53591 |
| 546_ | 53593 | 53597 | 53609 | 53611 | 53617 | 53623 | 53629 | 53633 | 53639 | 53653 |
| 547_ | 53657 | 53681 | 53693 | 53699 | 53717 | 53719 | 53731 | 53759 | 53773 | 53777 |
| 548_ | 53783 | 53791 | 53813 | 53819 | 53831 | 53849 | 53857 | 53861 | 53881 | 53887 |
| 549_ | 53891 | 53897 | 53899 | 53917 | 53923 | 53927 | 53939 | 53951 | 53959 | 53987 |
| 550_ | 53993 | 54001 | 54011 | 54013 | 54037 | 54049 | 54059 | 54083 | 54091 | 54101 |
| 551_ | 54121 | 54133 | 54139 | 54151 | 54163 | 54167 | 54181 | 54193 | 54217 | 54251 |
| 552_ | 54269 | 54277 | 54287 | 54293 | 54311 | 54319 | 54323 | 54331 | 54347 | 54361 |
| 553_ | 54367 | 54371 | 54377 | 54401 | 54403 | 54409 | 54413 | 54419 | 54421 | 54437 |
| 554_ | 54443 | 54449 | 54469 | 54493 | 54497 | 54499 | 54503 | 54517 | 54521 | 54539 |
| 555_ | 54541 | 54547 | 54559 | 54563 | 54577 | 54581 | 54583 | 54601 | 54617 | 54623 |
| 556_ | 54629 | 54631 | 54647 | 54667 | 54673 | 54679 | 54709 | 54713 | 54721 | 54727 |
| 557_ | 54751 | 54767 | 54773 | 54779 | 54787 | 54799 | 54829 | 54833 | 54851 | 54869 |
| 558_ | 54877 | 54881 | 54907 | 54917 | 54919 | 54941 | 54949 | 54959 | 54973 | 54979 |
| 559_ | 54983 | 55001 | 55009 | 55021 | 55049 | 55051 | 55057 | 55061 | 55073 | 55079 |
| 560_ | 55103 | 55109 | 55117 | 55127 | 55147 | 55163 | 55171 | 55201 | 55207 | 55213 |
| 561_ | 55217 | 55219 | 55229 | 55243 | 55249 | 55259 | 55291 | 55313 | 55331 | 55333 |
| 562_ | 55337 | 55339 | 55343 | 55351 | 55373 | 55381 | 55399 | 55411 | 55439 | 55441 |
| 563_ | 55457 | 55469 | 55487 | 55501 | 55511 | 55529 | 55541 | 55547 | 55579 | 55589 |
| 564_ | 55603 | 55609 | 55619 | 55621 | 55631 | 55633 | 55639 | 55661 | 55663 | 55667 |
| 565_ | 55673 | 55681 | 55691 | 55697 | 55711 | 55717 | 55721 | 55733 | 55763 | 55787 |
| 566_ | 55793 | 55799 | 55807 | 55813 | 55817 | 55819 | 55823 | 55829 | 55837 | 55843 |
| 567_ | 55849 | 55871 | 55889 | 55897 | 55901 | 55903 | 55921 | 55927 | 55931 | 55933 |
| 568_ | 55949 | 55967 | 55987 | 55997 | 56003 | 56009 | 56039 | 56041 | 56053 | 56081 |
| 569_ | 56087 | 56093 | 56099 | 56101 | 56113 | 56123 | 56131 | 56149 | 56167 | 56171 |
| 570_ | 56179 | 56197 | 56207 | 56209 | 56237 | 56239 | 56249 | 56263 | 56267 | 56269 |
| 571_ | 56299 | 56311 | 56333 | 56359 | 56369 | 56377 | 56383 | 56393 | 56401 | 56417 |
| 572_ | 56431 | 56437 | 56443 | 56453 | 56467 | 56473 | 56477 | 56479 | 56489 | 56501 |
| 573_ | 56503 | 56509 | 56519 | 56527 | 56531 | 56533 | 56543 | 56569 | 56591 | 56597 |
| 574_ | 56599 | 56611 | 56629 | 56633 | 56659 | 56663 | 56671 | 56681 | 56687 | 56701 |
| 575_ | 56711 | 56713 | 56731 | 56737 | 56747 | 56767 | 56773 | 56779 | 56783 | 56807 |
| 576_ | 56809 | 56813 | 56821 | 56827 | 56843 | 56857 | 56873 | 56891 | 56893 | 56897 |
| 577_ | 56909 | 56911 | 56921 | 56923 | 56929 | 56941 | 56951 | 56957 | 56963 | 56983 |
| 578_ | 56989 | 56993 | 56999 | 57037 | 57041 | 57047 | 57059 | 57073 | 57077 | 57089 |
| 579_ | 57097 | 57107 | 57119 | 57131 | 57139 | 57143 | 57149 | 57163 | 57173 | 57179 |
| 580_ | 57191 | 57193 | 57203 | 57221 | 57223 | 57241 | 57251 | 57259 | 57269 | 57271 |
| 581_ | 57283 | 57287 | 57301 | 57329 | 57331 | 57347 | 57349 | 57367 | 57373 | 57383 |
| 582_ | 57389 | 57397 | 57413 | 57427 | 57457 | 57467 | 57487 | 57493 | 57503 | 57527 |

| | _0 | _1 | _2 | _3 | _4 | _5 | _6 | _7 | _8 | _9 |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 583_ | 57529 | 57557 | 57559 | 57571 | 57587 | 57593 | 57601 | 57637 | 57641 | 57649 |
| 584_ | 57653 | 57667 | 57679 | 57689 | 57697 | 57709 | 57713 | 57719 | 57727 | 57731 |
| 585_ | 57737 | 57751 | 57773 | 57781 | 57787 | 57791 | 57793 | 57803 | 57809 | 57829 |
| 586_ | 57839 | 57847 | 57853 | 57859 | 57881 | 57899 | 57901 | 57917 | 57923 | 57943 |
| 587_ | 57947 | 57973 | 57977 | 57991 | 58013 | 58027 | 58031 | 58043 | 58049 | 58057 |
| 588_ | 58061 | 58067 | 58073 | 58099 | 58109 | 58111 | 58129 | 58147 | 58151 | 58153 |
| 589_ | 58169 | 58171 | 58189 | 58193 | 58199 | 58207 | 58211 | 58217 | 58229 | 58231 |
| 590_ | 58237 | 58243 | 58271 | 58309 | 58313 | 58321 | 58337 | 58363 | 58367 | 58369 |
| 591_ | 58379 | 58391 | 58393 | 58403 | 58411 | 58417 | 58427 | 58439 | 58441 | 58451 |
| 592_ | 58453 | 58477 | 58481 | 58511 | 58537 | 58543 | 58549 | 58567 | 58573 | 58579 |
| 593_ | 58601 | 58603 | 58613 | 58631 | 58657 | 58661 | 58679 | 58687 | 58693 | 58699 |
| 594_ | 58711 | 58727 | 58733 | 58741 | 58757 | 58763 | 58771 | 58787 | 58789 | 58831 |
| 595_ | 58889 | 58897 | 58901 | 58907 | 58909 | 58913 | 58921 | 58937 | 58943 | 58963 |
| 596_ | 58967 | 58979 | 58991 | 58997 | 59009 | 59011 | 59021 | 59023 | 59029 | 59051 |
| 597_ | 59053 | 59063 | 59069 | 59077 | 59083 | 59093 | 59107 | 59113 | 59119 | 59123 |
| 598_ | 59141 | 59149 | 59159 | 59167 | 59183 | 59197 | 59207 | 59209 | 59219 | 59221 |
| 599_ | 59233 | 59239 | 59243 | 59263 | 59273 | 59281 | 59333 | 59341 | 59351 | 59357 |
| 600_ | 59359 | 59369 | 59377 | 59387 | 59393 | 59399 | 59407 | 59417 | 59419 | 59441 |
| 601_ | 59443 | 59447 | 59453 | 59467 | 59471 | 59473 | 59497 | 59509 | 59513 | 59539 |
| 602_ | 59557 | 59561 | 59567 | 59581 | 59611 | 59617 | 59621 | 59627 | 59629 | 59651 |
| 603_ | 59659 | 59663 | 59669 | 59671 | 59693 | 59699 | 59707 | 59723 | 59729 | 59743 |
| 604_ | 59747 | 59753 | 59771 | 59779 | 59791 | 59797 | 59809 | 59833 | 59863 | 59879 |
| 605_ | 59887 | 59921 | 59929 | 59951 | 59957 | 59971 | 59981 | 59999 | 60013 | 60017 |
| 606_ | 60029 | 60037 | 60041 | 60077 | 60083 | 60089 | 60091 | 60101 | 60103 | 60107 |
| 607_ | 60127 | 60133 | 60139 | 60149 | 60161 | 60167 | 60169 | 60209 | 60217 | 60223 |
| 608_ | 60251 | 60257 | 60259 | 60271 | 60289 | 60293 | 60317 | 60331 | 60337 | 60343 |
| 609_ | 60353 | 60373 | 60383 | 60397 | 60413 | 60427 | 60443 | 60449 | 60457 | 60493 |
| 610_ | 60497 | 60509 | 60521 | 60527 | 60539 | 60589 | 60601 | 60607 | 60611 | 60617 |
| 611_ | 60623 | 60631 | 60637 | 60647 | 60649 | 60659 | 60661 | 60679 | 60689 | 60703 |
| 612_ | 60719 | 60727 | 60733 | 60737 | 60757 | 60761 | 60763 | 60773 | 60779 | 60793 |
| 613_ | 60811 | 60821 | 60859 | 60869 | 60887 | 60889 | 60899 | 60901 | 60913 | 60917 |
| 614_ | 60919 | 60923 | 60937 | 60943 | 60953 | 60961 | 61001 | 61007 | 61027 | 61031 |
| 615_ | 61043 | 61051 | 61057 | 61091 | 61099 | 61121 | 61129 | 61141 | 61151 | 61153 |
| 616_ | 61169 | 61211 | 61223 | 61231 | 61253 | 61261 | 61283 | 61291 | 61297 | 61331 |
| 617_ | 61333 | 61339 | 61343 | 61357 | 61363 | 61379 | 61381 | 61403 | 61409 | 61417 |
| 618_ | 61441 | 61463 | 61469 | 61471 | 61483 | 61487 | 61493 | 61507 | 61511 | 61519 |
| 619_ | 61543 | 61547 | 61553 | 61559 | 61561 | 61583 | 61603 | 61609 | 61613 | 61627 |
| 620_ | 61631 | 61637 | 61643 | 61651 | 61657 | 61667 | 61673 | 61681 | 61687 | 61703 |
| 621_ | 61717 | 61723 | 61729 | 61751 | 61757 | 61781 | 61813 | 61819 | 61837 | 61843 |
| 622_ | 61861 | 61871 | 61879 | 61909 | 61927 | 61933 | 61949 | 61961 | 61967 | 61979 |
| 623_ | 61981 | 61987 | 61991 | 62003 | 62011 | 62017 | 62039 | 62047 | 62053 | 62057 |
| 624_ | 62071 | 62081 | 62099 | 62119 | 62129 | 62131 | 62137 | 62141 | 62143 | 62171 |
| 625_ | 62189 | 62191 | 62201 | 62207 | 62213 | 62219 | 62233 | 62273 | 62297 | 62299 |
| 626_ | 62303 | 62311 | 62323 | 62327 | 62347 | 62351 | 62383 | 62401 | 62417 | 62423 |
| 627_ | 62459 | 62467 | 62473 | 62477 | 62483 | 62497 | 62501 | 62507 | 62533 | 62539 |
| 628_ | 62549 | 62563 | 62581 | 62591 | 62597 | 62603 | 62617 | 62627 | 62633 | 62639 |
| 629_ | 62653 | 62659 | 62683 | 62687 | 62701 | 62723 | 62731 | 62743 | 62753 | 62761 |
| 630_ | 62773 | 62791 | 62801 | 62819 | 62827 | 62851 | 62861 | 62869 | 62873 | 62897 |
| 631_ | 62903 | 62921 | 62927 | 62929 | 62939 | 62969 | 62971 | 62981 | 62983 | 62987 |
| 632_ | 62989 | 63029 | 63031 | 63059 | 63067 | 63073 | 63079 | 63097 | 63103 | 63113 |
| 633_ | 63127 | 63131 | 63149 | 63179 | 63197 | 63199 | 63211 | 63241 | 63247 | 63277 |
| 634_ | 63281 | 63299 | 63311 | 63313 | 63317 | 63331 | 63337 | 63347 | 63353 | 63361 |
| 635_ | 63367 | 63377 | 63389 | 63391 | 63397 | 63409 | 63419 | 63421 | 63439 | 63443 |
| 636_ | 63463 | 63467 | 63473 | 63487 | 63493 | 63499 | 63521 | 63527 | 63533 | 63541 |
| 637_ | 63559 | 63577 | 63587 | 63589 | 63599 | 63601 | 63607 | 63611 | 63617 | 63629 |
| 638_ | 63647 | 63649 | 63659 | 63667 | 63671 | 63689 | 63691 | 63697 | 63703 | 63709 |

| | _0 | _1 | _2 | _3 | _4 | _5 | _6 | _7 | _8 | _9 |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 639_ | 63719 | 63727 | 63737 | 63743 | 63761 | 63773 | 63781 | 63793 | 63799 | 63803 |
| 640_ | 63809 | 63823 | 63839 | 63841 | 63853 | 63857 | 63863 | 63901 | 63907 | 63913 |
| 641_ | 63929 | 63949 | 63977 | 63997 | 64007 | 64013 | 64019 | 64033 | 64037 | 64063 |
| 642_ | 64067 | 64081 | 64091 | 64109 | 64123 | 64151 | 64153 | 64157 | 64171 | 64187 |
| 643_ | 64189 | 64217 | 64223 | 64231 | 64237 | 64271 | 64279 | 64283 | 64301 | 64303 |
| 644_ | 64319 | 64327 | 64333 | 64373 | 64381 | 64399 | 64403 | 64433 | 64439 | 64451 |
| 645_ | 64453 | 64483 | 64489 | 64499 | 64513 | 64553 | 64567 | 64577 | 64579 | 64591 |
| 646_ | 64601 | 64609 | 64613 | 64621 | 64627 | 64633 | 64661 | 64663 | 64667 | 64679 |
| 647_ | 64693 | 64709 | 64717 | 64747 | 64763 | 64781 | 64783 | 64793 | 64811 | 64817 |
| 648_ | 64849 | 64853 | 64871 | 64877 | 64879 | 64891 | 64901 | 64919 | 64921 | 64927 |
| 649_ | 64937 | 64951 | 64969 | 64997 | 65003 | 65011 | 65027 | 65029 | 65033 | 65053 |
| 650_ | 65063 | 65071 | 65089 | 65099 | 65101 | 65111 | 65119 | 65123 | 65129 | 65141 |
| 651_ | 65147 | 65167 | 65171 | 65173 | 65179 | 65183 | 65203 | 65213 | 65239 | 65257 |
| 652_ | 65267 | 65269 | 65287 | 65293 | 65309 | 65323 | 65327 | 65353 | 65357 | 65371 |
| 653_ | 65381 | 65393 | 65407 | 65413 | 65419 | 65423 | 65437 | 65447 | 65449 | 65479 |
| 654_ | 65497 | 65519 | 65521 | 65537 | 65539 | 65543 | 65551 | 65557 | 65563 | 65579 |
| 655_ | 65581 | 65587 | 65599 | 65609 | 65617 | 65629 | 65633 | 65647 | 65651 | 65657 |
| 656_ | 65677 | 65687 | 65699 | 65701 | 65707 | 65713 | 65717 | 65719 | 65729 | 65731 |
| 657_ | 65761 | 65777 | 65789 | 65809 | 65827 | 65831 | 65837 | 65839 | 65843 | 65851 |
| 658_ | 65867 | 65881 | 65899 | 65921 | 65927 | 65929 | 65951 | 65957 | 65963 | 65981 |
| 659_ | 65983 | 65993 | 66029 | 66037 | 66041 | 66047 | 66067 | 66071 | 66083 | 66089 |
| 660_ | 66103 | 66107 | 66109 | 66137 | 66161 | 66169 | 66173 | 66179 | 66191 | 66221 |
| 661_ | 66239 | 66271 | 66293 | 66301 | 66337 | 66343 | 66347 | 66359 | 66361 | 66373 |
| 662_ | 66377 | 66383 | 66403 | 66413 | 66431 | 66449 | 66457 | 66463 | 66467 | 66491 |
| 663_ | 66499 | 66509 | 66523 | 66529 | 66533 | 66541 | 66553 | 66569 | 66571 | 66587 |
| 664_ | 66593 | 66601 | 66617 | 66629 | 66643 | 66653 | 66683 | 66697 | 66701 | 66713 |
| 665_ | 66721 | 66733 | 66739 | 66749 | 66751 | 66763 | 66791 | 66797 | 66809 | 66821 |
| 666_ | 66841 | 66851 | 66853 | 66863 | 66877 | 66883 | 66889 | 66919 | 66923 | 66931 |
| 667_ | 66943 | 66947 | 66949 | 66959 | 66973 | 66977 | 67003 | 67021 | 67033 | 67043 |
| 668_ | 67049 | 67057 | 67061 | 67073 | 67079 | 67103 | 67121 | 67129 | 67139 | 67141 |
| 669_ | 67153 | 67157 | 67169 | 67181 | 67187 | 67189 | 67211 | 67213 | 67217 | 67219 |
| 670_ | 67231 | 67247 | 67261 | 67271 | 67273 | 67289 | 67307 | 67339 | 67343 | 67349 |
| 671_ | 67369 | 67391 | 67399 | 67409 | 67411 | 67421 | 67427 | 67429 | 67433 | 67447 |
| 672_ | 67453 | 67477 | 67481 | 67489 | 67493 | 67499 | 67511 | 67523 | 67531 | 67537 |
| 673_ | 67547 | 67559 | 67567 | 67577 | 67579 | 67589 | 67601 | 67607 | 67619 | 67631 |
| 674_ | 67651 | 67679 | 67699 | 67709 | 67723 | 67733 | 67741 | 67751 | 67757 | 67759 |
| 675_ | 67763 | 67777 | 67783 | 67789 | 67801 | 67807 | 67819 | 67829 | 67843 | 67853 |
| 676_ | 67867 | 67883 | 67891 | 67901 | 67927 | 67931 | 67933 | 67939 | 67943 | 67957 |
| 677_ | 67961 | 67967 | 67979 | 67987 | 67993 | 68023 | 68041 | 68053 | 68059 | 68071 |
| 678_ | 68087 | 68099 | 68111 | 68113 | 68141 | 68147 | 68161 | 68171 | 68207 | 68209 |
| 679_ | 68213 | 68219 | 68227 | 68239 | 68261 | 68279 | 68281 | 68311 | 68329 | 68351 |
| 680_ | 68371 | 68389 | 68399 | 68437 | 68443 | 68447 | 68449 | 68473 | 68477 | 68483 |
| 681_ | 68489 | 68491 | 68501 | 68507 | 68521 | 68531 | 68539 | 68543 | 68567 | 68581 |
| 682_ | 68597 | 68611 | 68633 | 68639 | 68659 | 68669 | 68683 | 68687 | 68699 | 68711 |
| 683_ | 68713 | 68729 | 68737 | 68743 | 68749 | 68767 | 68771 | 68777 | 68791 | 68813 |
| 684_ | 68819 | 68821 | 68863 | 68879 | 68881 | 68891 | 68897 | 68899 | 68903 | 68909 |
| 685_ | 68917 | 68927 | 68947 | 68963 | 68993 | 69001 | 69011 | 69019 | 69029 | 69031 |
| 686_ | 69061 | 69067 | 69073 | 69109 | 69119 | 69127 | 69143 | 69149 | 69151 | 69163 |
| 687_ | 69191 | 69193 | 69197 | 69203 | 69221 | 69233 | 69239 | 69247 | 69257 | 69259 |
| 688_ | 69263 | 69313 | 69317 | 69337 | 69341 | 69371 | 69379 | 69383 | 69389 | 69401 |
| 689_ | 69403 | 69427 | 69431 | 69439 | 69457 | 69463 | 69467 | 69473 | 69481 | 69491 |
| 690_ | 69493 | 69497 | 69499 | 69539 | 69557 | 69593 | 69623 | 69653 | 69661 | 69677 |
| 691_ | 69691 | 69697 | 69709 | 69737 | 69739 | 69761 | 69763 | 69767 | 69779 | 69809 |
| 692_ | 69821 | 69827 | 69829 | 69833 | 69847 | 69857 | 69859 | 69877 | 69899 | 69911 |
| 693_ | 69929 | 69931 | 69941 | 69959 | 69991 | 69997 | 70001 | 70003 | 70009 | 70019 |
| 694_ | 70039 | 70051 | 70061 | 70067 | 70079 | 70099 | 70111 | 70117 | 70121 | 70123 |

| | _0 | _1 | _2 | _3 | _4 | _5 | _6 | _7 | _8 | _9 |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 695_ | 70139 | 70141 | 70157 | 70163 | 70177 | 70181 | 70183 | 70199 | 70201 | 70207 |
| 696_ | 70223 | 70229 | 70237 | 70241 | 70249 | 70271 | 70289 | 70297 | 70309 | 70313 |
| 697_ | 70321 | 70327 | 70351 | 70373 | 70379 | 70381 | 70393 | 70423 | 70429 | 70439 |
| 698_ | 70451 | 70457 | 70459 | 70481 | 70487 | 70489 | 70501 | 70507 | 70529 | 70537 |
| 699_ | 70549 | 70571 | 70573 | 70583 | 70589 | 70607 | 70619 | 70621 | 70627 | 70639 |
| 700_ | 70657 | 70663 | 70667 | 70687 | 70709 | 70717 | 70729 | 70753 | 70769 | 70783 |
| 701_ | 70793 | 70823 | 70841 | 70843 | 70849 | 70853 | 70867 | 70877 | 70879 | 70891 |
| 702_ | 70901 | 70913 | 70919 | 70921 | 70937 | 70949 | 70951 | 70957 | 70969 | 70979 |
| 703_ | 70981 | 70991 | 70997 | 70999 | 71011 | 71023 | 71039 | 71059 | 71069 | 71081 |
| 704_ | 71089 | 71119 | 71129 | 71143 | 71147 | 71153 | 71161 | 71167 | 71171 | 71191 |
| 705_ | 71209 | 71233 | 71237 | 71249 | 71257 | 71261 | 71263 | 71287 | 71293 | 71317 |
| 706_ | 71327 | 71329 | 71333 | 71339 | 71341 | 71347 | 71353 | 71359 | 71363 | 71387 |
| 707_ | 71389 | 71399 | 71411 | 71413 | 71419 | 71429 | 71437 | 71443 | 71453 | 71471 |
| 708_ | 71473 | 71479 | 71483 | 71503 | 71527 | 71537 | 71549 | 71551 | 71563 | 71569 |
| 709_ | 71593 | 71597 | 71633 | 71647 | 71663 | 71671 | 71693 | 71699 | 71707 | 71711 |
| 710_ | 71713 | 71719 | 71741 | 71761 | 71777 | 71789 | 71807 | 71809 | 71821 | 71837 |
| 711_ | 71843 | 71849 | 71861 | 71867 | 71879 | 71881 | 71887 | 71899 | 71909 | 71917 |
| 712_ | 71933 | 71941 | 71947 | 71963 | 71971 | 71983 | 71987 | 71993 | 71999 | 72019 |
| 713_ | 72031 | 72043 | 72047 | 72053 | 72073 | 72077 | 72089 | 72091 | 72101 | 72103 |
| 714_ | 72109 | 72139 | 72161 | 72167 | 72169 | 72173 | 72211 | 72221 | 72223 | 72227 |
| 715_ | 72229 | 72251 | 72253 | 72269 | 72271 | 72277 | 72287 | 72307 | 72313 | 72337 |
| 716_ | 72341 | 72353 | 72367 | 72379 | 72383 | 72421 | 72431 | 72461 | 72467 | 72469 |
| 717_ | 72481 | 72493 | 72497 | 72503 | 72533 | 72547 | 72551 | 72559 | 72577 | 72613 |
| 718_ | 72617 | 72623 | 72643 | 72647 | 72649 | 72661 | 72671 | 72673 | 72679 | 72689 |
| 719_ | 72701 | 72707 | 72719 | 72727 | 72733 | 72739 | 72763 | 72767 | 72797 | 72817 |
| 720_ | 72823 | 72859 | 72869 | 72871 | 72883 | 72889 | 72893 | 72901 | 72907 | 72911 |
| 721_ | 72923 | 72931 | 72937 | 72949 | 72953 | 72959 | 72973 | 72977 | 72997 | 73009 |
| 722_ | 73013 | 73019 | 73037 | 73039 | 73043 | 73061 | 73063 | 73079 | 73091 | 73121 |
| 723_ | 73127 | 73133 | 73141 | 73181 | 73189 | 73237 | 73243 | 73259 | 73277 | 73291 |
| 724_ | 73303 | 73309 | 73327 | 73331 | 73351 | 73361 | 73363 | 73369 | 73379 | 73387 |
| 725_ | 73417 | 73421 | 73433 | 73453 | 73459 | 73471 | 73477 | 73483 | 73517 | 73523 |
| 726_ | 73529 | 73547 | 73553 | 73561 | 73571 | 73583 | 73589 | 73597 | 73607 | 73609 |
| 727_ | 73613 | 73637 | 73643 | 73651 | 73673 | 73679 | 73681 | 73693 | 73699 | 73709 |
| 728_ | 73721 | 73727 | 73751 | 73757 | 73771 | 73783 | 73819 | 73823 | 73847 | 73849 |
| 729_ | 73859 | 73867 | 73877 | 73883 | 73897 | 73907 | 73939 | 73943 | 73951 | 73961 |
| 730_ | 73973 | 73999 | 74017 | 74021 | 74027 | 74047 | 74051 | 74071 | 74077 | 74093 |
| 731_ | 74099 | 74101 | 74131 | 74143 | 74149 | 74159 | 74161 | 74167 | 74177 | 74189 |
| 732_ | 74197 | 74201 | 74203 | 74209 | 74219 | 74231 | 74257 | 74279 | 74287 | 74293 |
| 733_ | 74297 | 74311 | 74317 | 74323 | 74353 | 74357 | 74363 | 74377 | 74381 | 74383 |
| 734_ | 74411 | 74413 | 74419 | 74441 | 74449 | 74453 | 74471 | 74489 | 74507 | 74509 |
| 735_ | 74521 | 74527 | 74531 | 74551 | 74561 | 74567 | 74573 | 74587 | 74597 | 74609 |
| 736_ | 74611 | 74623 | 74653 | 74687 | 74699 | 74707 | 74713 | 74717 | 74719 | 74729 |
| 737_ | 74731 | 74747 | 74759 | 74761 | 74771 | 74779 | 74797 | 74821 | 74827 | 74831 |
| 738_ | 74843 | 74857 | 74861 | 74869 | 74873 | 74887 | 74891 | 74897 | 74903 | 74923 |
| 739_ | 74929 | 74933 | 74941 | 74959 | 75011 | 75013 | 75017 | 75029 | 75037 | 75041 |
| 740_ | 75079 | 75083 | 75109 | 75133 | 75149 | 75161 | 75167 | 75169 | 75181 | 75193 |
| 741_ | 75209 | 75211 | 75217 | 75223 | 75227 | 75239 | 75253 | 75269 | 75277 | 75289 |
| 742_ | 75307 | 75323 | 75329 | 75337 | 75347 | 75353 | 75367 | 75377 | 75389 | 75391 |
| 743_ | 75401 | 75403 | 75407 | 75431 | 75437 | 75479 | 75503 | 75511 | 75521 | 75527 |
| 744_ | 75533 | 75539 | 75541 | 75553 | 75557 | 75571 | 75577 | 75583 | 75611 | 75617 |
| 745_ | 75619 | 75629 | 75641 | 75653 | 75659 | 75679 | 75683 | 75689 | 75703 | 75707 |
| 746_ | 75709 | 75721 | 75731 | 75743 | 75767 | 75773 | 75781 | 75787 | 75793 | 75797 |
| 747_ | 75821 | 75833 | 75853 | 75869 | 75883 | 75913 | 75931 | 75937 | 75941 | 75967 |
| 748_ | 75979 | 75983 | 75989 | 75991 | 75997 | 76001 | 76003 | 76031 | 76039 | 76079 |
| 749_ | 76081 | 76091 | 76099 | 76103 | 76123 | 76129 | 76147 | 76157 | 76159 | 76163 |
| 750_ | 76207 | 76213 | 76231 | 76243 | 76249 | 76253 | 76259 | 76261 | 76283 | 76289 |

| | _0 | _1 | _2 | _3 | _4 | _5 | _6 | _7 | _8 | _9 |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 751_ | 76303 | 76333 | 76343 | 76367 | 76369 | 76379 | 76387 | 76403 | 76421 | 76423 |
| 752_ | 76441 | 76463 | 76471 | 76481 | 76487 | 76493 | 76507 | 76511 | 76519 | 76537 |
| 753_ | 76541 | 76543 | 76561 | 76579 | 76597 | 76603 | 76607 | 76631 | 76649 | 76651 |
| 754_ | 76667 | 76673 | 76679 | 76697 | 76717 | 76733 | 76753 | 76757 | 76771 | 76777 |
| 755_ | 76781 | 76801 | 76819 | 76829 | 76831 | 76837 | 76847 | 76871 | 76873 | 76883 |
| 756_ | 76907 | 76913 | 76919 | 76943 | 76949 | 76961 | 76963 | 76991 | 77003 | 77017 |
| 757_ | 77023 | 77029 | 77041 | 77047 | 77069 | 77081 | 77093 | 77101 | 77137 | 77141 |
| 758_ | 77153 | 77167 | 77171 | 77191 | 77201 | 77213 | 77237 | 77239 | 77243 | 77249 |
| 759_ | 77261 | 77263 | 77267 | 77269 | 77279 | 77291 | 77317 | 77323 | 77339 | 77347 |
| 760_ | 77351 | 77359 | 77369 | 77377 | 77383 | 77417 | 77419 | 77431 | 77447 | 77471 |
| 761_ | 77477 | 77479 | 77489 | 77491 | 77509 | 77513 | 77521 | 77527 | 77543 | 77549 |
| 762_ | 77551 | 77557 | 77563 | 77569 | 77573 | 77587 | 77591 | 77611 | 77617 | 77621 |
| 763_ | 77641 | 77647 | 77659 | 77681 | 77687 | 77689 | 77699 | 77711 | 77713 | 77719 |
| 764_ | 77723 | 77731 | 77743 | 77747 | 77761 | 77773 | 77783 | 77797 | 77801 | 77813 |
| 765_ | 77839 | 77849 | 77863 | 77867 | 77893 | 77899 | 77929 | 77933 | 77951 | 77969 |
| 766_ | 77977 | 77983 | 77999 | 78007 | 78017 | 78031 | 78041 | 78049 | 78059 | 78079 |
| 767_ | 78101 | 78121 | 78137 | 78139 | 78157 | 78163 | 78167 | 78173 | 78179 | 78191 |
| 768_ | 78193 | 78203 | 78229 | 78233 | 78241 | 78259 | 78277 | 78283 | 78301 | 78307 |
| 769_ | 78311 | 78317 | 78341 | 78347 | 78367 | 78401 | 78427 | 78437 | 78439 | 78467 |
| 770_ | 78479 | 78487 | 78497 | 78509 | 78511 | 78517 | 78539 | 78541 | 78553 | 78569 |
| 771_ | 78571 | 78577 | 78583 | 78593 | 78607 | 78623 | 78643 | 78649 | 78653 | 78691 |
| 772_ | 78697 | 78707 | 78713 | 78721 | 78737 | 78779 | 78781 | 78787 | 78791 | 78797 |
| 773_ | 78803 | 78809 | 78823 | 78839 | 78853 | 78857 | 78877 | 78887 | 78889 | 78893 |
| 774_ | 78901 | 78919 | 78929 | 78941 | 78977 | 78979 | 78989 | 79031 | 79039 | 79043 |
| 775_ | 79063 | 79087 | 79103 | 79111 | 79133 | 79139 | 79147 | 79151 | 79153 | 79159 |
| 776_ | 79181 | 79187 | 79193 | 79201 | 79229 | 79231 | 79241 | 79259 | 79273 | 79279 |
| 777_ | 79283 | 79301 | 79309 | 79319 | 79333 | 79337 | 79349 | 79357 | 79367 | 79379 |
| 778_ | 79393 | 79397 | 79399 | 79411 | 79423 | 79427 | 79433 | 79451 | 79481 | 79493 |
| 779_ | 79531 | 79537 | 79549 | 79559 | 79561 | 79579 | 79589 | 79601 | 79609 | 79613 |
| 780_ | 79621 | 79627 | 79631 | 79633 | 79657 | 79669 | 79687 | 79691 | 79693 | 79697 |
| 781_ | 79699 | 79757 | 79769 | 79777 | 79801 | 79811 | 79813 | 79817 | 79823 | 79829 |
| 782_ | 79841 | 79843 | 79847 | 79861 | 79867 | 79873 | 79889 | 79901 | 79903 | 79907 |
| 783_ | 79939 | 79943 | 79967 | 79973 | 79979 | 79987 | 79997 | 79999 | 80021 | 80039 |
| 784_ | 80051 | 80071 | 80077 | 80107 | 80111 | 80141 | 80147 | 80149 | 80153 | 80167 |
| 785_ | 80173 | 80177 | 80191 | 80207 | 80209 | 80221 | 80231 | 80233 | 80239 | 80251 |
| 786_ | 80263 | 80273 | 80279 | 80287 | 80309 | 80317 | 80329 | 80341 | 80347 | 80363 |
| 787_ | 80369 | 80387 | 80407 | 80429 | 80447 | 80449 | 80471 | 80473 | 80489 | 80491 |
| 788_ | 80513 | 80527 | 80537 | 80557 | 80567 | 80599 | 80603 | 80611 | 80621 | 80627 |
| 789_ | 80629 | 80651 | 80657 | 80669 | 80671 | 80677 | 80681 | 80683 | 80687 | 80701 |
| 790_ | 80713 | 80737 | 80747 | 80749 | 80761 | 80777 | 80779 | 80783 | 80789 | 80803 |
| 791_ | 80809 | 80819 | 80831 | 80833 | 80849 | 80863 | 80897 | 80909 | 80911 | 80917 |
| 792_ | 80923 | 80929 | 80933 | 80953 | 80963 | 80989 | 81001 | 81013 | 81017 | 81019 |
| 793_ | 81023 | 81031 | 81041 | 81043 | 81047 | 81049 | 81071 | 81077 | 81083 | 81097 |
| 794_ | 81101 | 81119 | 81131 | 81157 | 81163 | 81173 | 81181 | 81197 | 81199 | 81203 |
| 795_ | 81223 | 81233 | 81239 | 81281 | 81283 | 81293 | 81299 | 81307 | 81331 | 81343 |
| 796_ | 81349 | 81353 | 81359 | 81371 | 81373 | 81401 | 81409 | 81421 | 81439 | 81457 |
| 797_ | 81463 | 81509 | 81517 | 81527 | 81533 | 81547 | 81551 | 81553 | 81559 | 81563 |
| 798_ | 81569 | 81611 | 81619 | 81629 | 81637 | 81647 | 81649 | 81667 | 81671 | 81677 |
| 799_ | 81689 | 81701 | 81703 | 81707 | 81727 | 81737 | 81749 | 81761 | 81769 | 81773 |
| 800_ | 81799 | 81817 | 81839 | 81847 | 81853 | 81869 | 81883 | 81899 | 81901 | 81919 |
| 801_ | 81929 | 81931 | 81937 | 81943 | 81953 | 81967 | 81971 | 81973 | 82003 | 82007 |
| 802_ | 82009 | 82013 | 82021 | 82031 | 82037 | 82039 | 82051 | 82067 | 82073 | 82129 |
| 803_ | 82139 | 82141 | 82153 | 82163 | 82171 | 82183 | 82189 | 82193 | 82207 | 82217 |
| 804_ | 82219 | 82223 | 82231 | 82237 | 82241 | 82261 | 82267 | 82279 | 82301 | 82307 |
| 805_ | 82339 | 82349 | 82351 | 82361 | 82373 | 82387 | 82393 | 82421 | 82457 | 82463 |
| 806_ | 82469 | 82471 | 82483 | 82487 | 82493 | 82499 | 82507 | 82529 | 82531 | 82549 |

| | _0 | _1 | _2 | _3 | _4 | _5 | _6 | _7 | _8 | _9 |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 807_ | 82559 | 82561 | 82567 | 82571 | 82591 | 82601 | 82609 | 82613 | 82619 | 82633 |
| 808_ | 82651 | 82657 | 82699 | 82721 | 82723 | 82727 | 82729 | 82757 | 82759 | 82763 |
| 809_ | 82781 | 82787 | 82793 | 82799 | 82811 | 82813 | 82837 | 82847 | 82883 | 82889 |
| 810_ | 82891 | 82903 | 82913 | 82939 | 82963 | 82981 | 82997 | 83003 | 83009 | 83023 |
| 811_ | 83047 | 83059 | 83063 | 83071 | 83077 | 83089 | 83093 | 83101 | 83117 | 83137 |
| 812_ | 83177 | 83203 | 83207 | 83219 | 83221 | 83227 | 83231 | 83233 | 83243 | 83257 |
| 813_ | 83267 | 83269 | 83273 | 83299 | 83311 | 83339 | 83341 | 83357 | 83383 | 83389 |
| 814_ | 83399 | 83401 | 83407 | 83417 | 83423 | 83431 | 83437 | 83443 | 83449 | 83459 |
| 815_ | 83471 | 83477 | 83497 | 83537 | 83557 | 83561 | 83563 | 83579 | 83591 | 83597 |
| 816_ | 83609 | 83617 | 83621 | 83639 | 83641 | 83653 | 83663 | 83689 | 83701 | 83717 |
| 817_ | 83719 | 83737 | 83761 | 83773 | 83777 | 83791 | 83813 | 83833 | 83843 | 83857 |
| 818_ | 83869 | 83873 | 83891 | 83903 | 83911 | 83921 | 83933 | 83939 | 83969 | 83983 |
| 819_ | 83987 | 84011 | 84017 | 84047 | 84053 | 84059 | 84061 | 84067 | 84089 | 84121 |
| 820_ | 84127 | 84131 | 84137 | 84143 | 84163 | 84179 | 84181 | 84191 | 84199 | 84211 |
| 821_ | 84221 | 84223 | 84229 | 84239 | 84247 | 84263 | 84299 | 84307 | 84313 | 84317 |
| 822_ | 84319 | 84347 | 84349 | 84377 | 84389 | 84391 | 84401 | 84407 | 84421 | 84431 |
| 823_ | 84437 | 84443 | 84449 | 84457 | 84463 | 84467 | 84481 | 84499 | 84503 | 84509 |
| 824_ | 84521 | 84523 | 84533 | 84551 | 84559 | 84589 | 84629 | 84631 | 84649 | 84653 |
| 825_ | 84659 | 84673 | 84691 | 84697 | 84701 | 84713 | 84719 | 84731 | 84737 | 84751 |
| 826_ | 84761 | 84787 | 84793 | 84809 | 84811 | 84827 | 84857 | 84859 | 84869 | 84871 |
| 827_ | 84913 | 84919 | 84947 | 84961 | 84967 | 84977 | 84979 | 84991 | 85009 | 85021 |
| 828_ | 85027 | 85037 | 85049 | 85061 | 85081 | 85087 | 85091 | 85093 | 85103 | 85109 |
| 829_ | 85121 | 85133 | 85147 | 85159 | 85193 | 85199 | 85201 | 85213 | 85223 | 85229 |
| 830_ | 85237 | 85243 | 85247 | 85259 | 85297 | 85303 | 85313 | 85331 | 85333 | 85361 |
| 831_ | 85363 | 85369 | 85381 | 85411 | 85427 | 85429 | 85439 | 85447 | 85451 | 85453 |
| 832_ | 85469 | 85487 | 85513 | 85517 | 85523 | 85531 | 85549 | 85571 | 85577 | 85597 |
| 833_ | 85601 | 85607 | 85619 | 85621 | 85627 | 85639 | 85643 | 85661 | 85667 | 85669 |
| 834_ | 85691 | 85703 | 85711 | 85717 | 85733 | 85751 | 85781 | 85793 | 85817 | 85819 |
| 835_ | 85829 | 85831 | 85837 | 85843 | 85847 | 85853 | 85889 | 85903 | 85909 | 85931 |
| 836_ | 85933 | 85991 | 85999 | 86011 | 86017 | 86027 | 86029 | 86069 | 86077 | 86083 |
| 837_ | 86111 | 86113 | 86117 | 86131 | 86137 | 86143 | 86161 | 86171 | 86179 | 86183 |
| 838_ | 86197 | 86201 | 86209 | 86239 | 86243 | 86249 | 86257 | 86263 | 86269 | 86287 |
| 839_ | 86291 | 86293 | 86297 | 86311 | 86323 | 86341 | 86351 | 86353 | 86357 | 86369 |
| 840_ | 86371 | 86381 | 86389 | 86399 | 86413 | 86423 | 86441 | 86453 | 86461 | 86467 |
| 841_ | 86477 | 86491 | 86501 | 86509 | 86531 | 86533 | 86539 | 86561 | 86573 | 86579 |
| 842_ | 86587 | 86599 | 86627 | 86629 | 86677 | 86689 | 86693 | 86711 | 86719 | 86729 |
| 843_ | 86743 | 86753 | 86767 | 86771 | 86783 | 86813 | 86837 | 86843 | 86851 | 86857 |
| 844_ | 86861 | 86869 | 86923 | 86927 | 86929 | 86939 | 86951 | 86959 | 86969 | 86981 |
| 845_ | 86993 | 87011 | 87013 | 87037 | 87041 | 87049 | 87071 | 87083 | 87103 | 87107 |
| 846_ | 87119 | 87121 | 87133 | 87149 | 87151 | 87179 | 87181 | 87187 | 87211 | 87221 |
| 847_ | 87223 | 87251 | 87253 | 87257 | 87277 | 87281 | 87293 | 87299 | 87313 | 87317 |
| 848_ | 87323 | 87337 | 87359 | 87383 | 87403 | 87407 | 87421 | 87427 | 87433 | 87443 |
| 849_ | 87473 | 87481 | 87491 | 87509 | 87511 | 87517 | 87523 | 87539 | 87541 | 87547 |
| 850_ | 87553 | 87557 | 87559 | 87583 | 87587 | 87589 | 87613 | 87623 | 87629 | 87631 |
| 851_ | 87641 | 87643 | 87649 | 87671 | 87679 | 87683 | 87691 | 87697 | 87701 | 87719 |
| 852_ | 87721 | 87739 | 87743 | 87751 | 87767 | 87793 | 87797 | 87803 | 87811 | 87833 |
| 853_ | 87853 | 87869 | 87877 | 87881 | 87887 | 87911 | 87917 | 87931 | 87943 | 87959 |
| 854_ | 87961 | 87973 | 87977 | 87991 | 88001 | 88003 | 88007 | 88019 | 88037 | 88069 |
| 855_ | 88079 | 88093 | 88117 | 88129 | 88169 | 88177 | 88211 | 88223 | 88237 | 88241 |
| 856_ | 88259 | 88261 | 88289 | 88301 | 88321 | 88327 | 88337 | 88339 | 88379 | 88397 |
| 857_ | 88411 | 88423 | 88427 | 88463 | 88469 | 88471 | 88493 | 88499 | 88513 | 88523 |
| 858_ | 88547 | 88589 | 88591 | 88607 | 88609 | 88643 | 88651 | 88657 | 88661 | 88663 |
| 859_ | 88667 | 88681 | 88721 | 88729 | 88741 | 88747 | 88771 | 88789 | 88793 | 88799 |
| 860_ | 88801 | 88807 | 88811 | 88813 | 88817 | 88819 | 88843 | 88853 | 88861 | 88867 |
| 861_ | 88873 | 88883 | 88897 | 88903 | 88919 | 88937 | 88951 | 88969 | 88993 | 88997 |
| 862_ | 89003 | 89009 | 89017 | 89021 | 89041 | 89051 | 89057 | 89069 | 89071 | 89083 |

| | _0 | _1 | _2 | _3 | _4 | _5 | _6 | _7 | _8 | _9 |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 863_ | 89087 | 89101 | 89107 | 89113 | 89119 | 89123 | 89137 | 89153 | 89189 | 89203 |
| 864_ | 89209 | 89213 | 89227 | 89231 | 89237 | 89261 | 89269 | 89273 | 89293 | 89303 |
| 865_ | 89317 | 89329 | 89363 | 89371 | 89381 | 89387 | 89393 | 89399 | 89413 | 89417 |
| 866_ | 89431 | 89443 | 89449 | 89459 | 89477 | 89491 | 89501 | 89513 | 89519 | 89521 |
| 867_ | 89527 | 89533 | 89561 | 89563 | 89567 | 89591 | 89597 | 89599 | 89603 | 89611 |
| 868_ | 89627 | 89633 | 89653 | 89657 | 89659 | 89669 | 89671 | 89681 | 89689 | 89753 |
| 869_ | 89759 | 89767 | 89779 | 89783 | 89797 | 89809 | 89819 | 89821 | 89833 | 89839 |
| 870_ | 89849 | 89867 | 89891 | 89897 | 89899 | 89909 | 89917 | 89923 | 89939 | 89959 |
| 871_ | 89963 | 89977 | 89983 | 89989 | 90001 | 90007 | 90011 | 90017 | 90019 | 90023 |
| 872_ | 90031 | 90053 | 90059 | 90067 | 90071 | 90073 | 90089 | 90107 | 90121 | 90127 |
| 873_ | 90149 | 90163 | 90173 | 90187 | 90191 | 90197 | 90199 | 90203 | 90217 | 90227 |
| 874_ | 90239 | 90247 | 90263 | 90271 | 90281 | 90289 | 90313 | 90353 | 90359 | 90371 |
| 875_ | 90373 | 90379 | 90397 | 90401 | 90403 | 90407 | 90437 | 90439 | 90469 | 90473 |
| 876_ | 90481 | 90499 | 90511 | 90523 | 90527 | 90529 | 90533 | 90547 | 90583 | 90599 |
| 877_ | 90617 | 90619 | 90631 | 90641 | 90647 | 90659 | 90677 | 90679 | 90697 | 90703 |
| 878_ | 90709 | 90731 | 90749 | 90787 | 90793 | 90803 | 90821 | 90823 | 90833 | 90841 |
| 879_ | 90847 | 90863 | 90887 | 90901 | 90907 | 90911 | 90917 | 90931 | 90947 | 90971 |
| 880_ | 90977 | 90989 | 90997 | 91009 | 91019 | 91033 | 91079 | 91081 | 91097 | 91099 |
| 881_ | 91121 | 91127 | 91129 | 91139 | 91141 | 91151 | 91153 | 91159 | 91163 | 91183 |
| 882_ | 91193 | 91199 | 91229 | 91237 | 91243 | 91249 | 91253 | 91283 | 91291 | 91297 |
| 883_ | 91303 | 91309 | 91331 | 91367 | 91369 | 91373 | 91381 | 91387 | 91393 | 91397 |
| 884_ | 91411 | 91423 | 91433 | 91453 | 91457 | 91459 | 91463 | 91493 | 91499 | 91513 |
| 885_ | 91529 | 91541 | 91571 | 91573 | 91577 | 91583 | 91591 | 91621 | 91631 | 91639 |
| 886_ | 91673 | 91691 | 91703 | 91711 | 91733 | 91753 | 91757 | 91771 | 91781 | 91801 |
| 887_ | 91807 | 91811 | 91813 | 91823 | 91837 | 91841 | 91867 | 91873 | 91909 | 91921 |
| 888_ | 91939 | 91943 | 91951 | 91957 | 91961 | 91967 | 91969 | 91997 | 92003 | 92009 |
| 889_ | 92033 | 92041 | 92051 | 92077 | 92083 | 92107 | 92111 | 92119 | 92143 | 92153 |
| 890_ | 92173 | 92177 | 92179 | 92189 | 92203 | 92219 | 92221 | 92227 | 92233 | 92237 |
| 891_ | 92243 | 92251 | 92269 | 92297 | 92311 | 92317 | 92333 | 92347 | 92353 | 92357 |
| 892_ | 92363 | 92369 | 92377 | 92381 | 92383 | 92387 | 92399 | 92401 | 92413 | 92419 |
| 893_ | 92431 | 92459 | 92461 | 92467 | 92479 | 92489 | 92503 | 92507 | 92551 | 92557 |
| 894_ | 92567 | 92569 | 92581 | 92593 | 92623 | 92627 | 92639 | 92641 | 92647 | 92657 |
| 895_ | 92669 | 92671 | 92681 | 92683 | 92693 | 92699 | 92707 | 92717 | 92723 | 92737 |
| 896_ | 92753 | 92761 | 92767 | 92779 | 92789 | 92791 | 92801 | 92809 | 92821 | 92831 |
| 897_ | 92849 | 92857 | 92861 | 92863 | 92867 | 92893 | 92899 | 92921 | 92927 | 92941 |
| 898_ | 92951 | 92957 | 92959 | 92987 | 92993 | 93001 | 93047 | 93053 | 93059 | 93077 |
| 899_ | 93083 | 93089 | 93097 | 93103 | 93113 | 93131 | 93133 | 93139 | 93151 | 93169 |
| 900_ | 93179 | 93187 | 93199 | 93229 | 93239 | 93241 | 93251 | 93253 | 93257 | 93263 |
| 901_ | 93281 | 93283 | 93287 | 93307 | 93319 | 93323 | 93329 | 93337 | 93371 | 93377 |
| 902_ | 93383 | 93407 | 93419 | 93427 | 93463 | 93479 | 93481 | 93487 | 93491 | 93493 |
| 903_ | 93497 | 93503 | 93523 | 93529 | 93553 | 93557 | 93559 | 93563 | 93581 | 93601 |
| 904_ | 93607 | 93629 | 93637 | 93683 | 93701 | 93703 | 93719 | 93739 | 93761 | 93763 |
| 905_ | 93787 | 93809 | 93811 | 93827 | 93851 | 93871 | 93887 | 93889 | 93893 | 93901 |
| 906_ | 93911 | 93913 | 93923 | 93937 | 93941 | 93949 | 93967 | 93971 | 93979 | 93983 |
| 907_ | 93997 | 94007 | 94009 | 94033 | 94049 | 94057 | 94063 | 94079 | 94099 | 94109 |
| 908_ | 94111 | 94117 | 94121 | 94151 | 94153 | 94169 | 94201 | 94207 | 94219 | 94229 |
| 909_ | 94253 | 94261 | 94273 | 94291 | 94307 | 94309 | 94321 | 94327 | 94331 | 94343 |
| 910_ | 94349 | 94351 | 94379 | 94397 | 94399 | 94421 | 94427 | 94433 | 94439 | 94441 |
| 911_ | 94447 | 94463 | 94477 | 94483 | 94513 | 94529 | 94531 | 94541 | 94543 | 94547 |
| 912_ | 94559 | 94561 | 94573 | 94583 | 94597 | 94603 | 94613 | 94621 | 94649 | 94651 |
| 913_ | 94687 | 94693 | 94709 | 94723 | 94727 | 94747 | 94771 | 94777 | 94781 | 94789 |
| 914_ | 94793 | 94811 | 94819 | 94823 | 94837 | 94841 | 94847 | 94849 | 94873 | 94889 |
| 915_ | 94903 | 94907 | 94933 | 94949 | 94951 | 94961 | 94993 | 94999 | 95003 | 95009 |
| 916_ | 95021 | 95027 | 95063 | 95071 | 95083 | 95087 | 95089 | 95093 | 95101 | 95107 |
| 917_ | 95111 | 95131 | 95143 | 95153 | 95177 | 95189 | 95191 | 95203 | 95213 | 95219 |
| 918_ | 95231 | 95233 | 95239 | 95257 | 95261 | 95267 | 95273 | 95279 | 95287 | 95311 |

| | _0 | _1 | _2 | _3 | _4 | _5 | _6 | _7 | _8 | _9 |
|------|-------|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 919_ | 95317 | 95327 | 95339 | 95369 | 95383 | 95393 | 95401 | 95413 | 95419 | 95429 |
| 920_ | 95441 | 95443 | 95461 | 95467 | 95471 | 95479 | 95483 | 95507 | 95527 | 95531 |
| 921_ | 95539 | 95549 | 95561 | 95569 | 95581 | 95597 | 95603 | 95617 | 95621 | 95629 |
| 922_ | 95633 | 95651 | 95701 | 95707 | 95713 | 95717 | 95723 | 95731 | 95737 | 95747 |
| 923_ | 95773 | 95783 | 95789 | 95791 | 95801 | 95803 | 95813 | 95819 | 95857 | 95869 |
| 924_ | 95873 | 95881 | 95891 | 95911 | 95917 | 95923 | 95929 | 95947 | 95957 | 95959 |
| 925_ | 95971 | 95987 | 95989 | 96001 | 96013 | 96017 | 96043 | 96053 | 96059 | 96079 |
| 926_ | 96097 | 96137 | 96149 | 96157 | 96167 | 96179 | 96181 | 96199 | 96211 | 96221 |
| 927_ | 96223 | 96233 | 96259 | 96263 | 96269 | 96281 | 96289 | 96293 | 96323 | 96329 |
| 928_ | 96331 | 96337 | 96353 | 96377 | 96401 | 96419 | 96431 | 96443 | 96451 | 96457 |
| 929_ | 96461 | 96469 | 96479 | 96487 | 96493 | 96497 | 96517 | 96527 | 96553 | 96557 |
| 930_ | 96581 | 96587 | 96589 | 96601 | 96643 | 96661 | 96667 | 96671 | 96697 | 96703 |
| 931_ | 96731 | 96737 | 96739 | 96749 | 96757 | 96763 | 96769 | 96779 | 96787 | 96797 |
| 932_ | 96799 | 96821 | 96823 | 96827 | 96847 | 96851 | 96857 | 96893 | 96907 | 96911 |
| 933_ | 96931 | 96953 | 96959 | 96973 | 96979 | 96989 | 96997 | 97001 | 97003 | 97007 |
| 934_ | 97021 | 97039 | 97073 | 97081 | 97103 | 97117 | 97127 | 97151 | 97157 | 97159 |
| 935_ | 97169 | 97171 | 97177 | 97187 | 97213 | 97231 | 97241 | 97259 | 97283 | 97301 |
| 936_ | 97303 | 97327 | 97367 | 97369 | 97373 | 97379 | 97381 | 97387 | 97397 | 97423 |
| 937_ | 97429 | 97441 | 97453 | 97459 | 97463 | 97499 | 97501 | 97511 | 97523 | 97547 |
| 938_ | 97549 | 97553 | 97561 | 97571 | 97577 | 97579 | 97583 | 97607 | 97609 | 97613 |
| 939_ | 97649 | 97651 | 97673 | 97687 | 97711 | 97729 | 97771 | 97777 | 97787 | 97789 |
| 940_ | 97813 | 97829 | 97841 | 97843 | 97847 | 97849 | 97859 | 97861 | 97871 | 97879 |
| 941_ | 97883 | 97919 | 97927 | 97931 | 97943 | 97961 | 97967 | 97973 | 97987 | 98009 |
| 942_ | 98011 | 98017 | 98041 | 98047 | 98057 | 98081 | 98101 | 98123 | 98129 | 98143 |
| 943_ | 98179 | 98207 | 98213 | 98221 | 98227 | 98251 | 98257 | 98269 | 98297 | 98299 |
| 944_ | 98317 | 98321 | 98323 | 98327 | 98347 | 98369 | 98377 | 98387 | 98389 | 98407 |
| 945_ | 98411 | 98419 | 98429 | 98443 | 98453 | 98459 | 98467 | 98473 | 98479 | 98491 |
| 946_ | 98507 | 98519 | 98533 | 98543 | 98561 | 98563 | 98573 | 98597 | 98621 | 98627 |
| 947_ | 98639 | 98641 | 98663 | 98669 | 98689 | 98711 | 98713 | 98717 | 98729 | 98731 |
| 948_ | 98737 | 98773 | 98779 | 98801 | 98807 | 98809 | 98837 | 98849 | 98867 | 98869 |
| 949_ | 98873 | 98887 | 98893 | 98897 | 98899 | 98909 | 98911 | 98927 | 98929 | 98939 |
| 950_ | 98947 | 98953 | 98963 | 98981 | 98993 | 98999 | 99013 | 99017 | 99023 | 99041 |
| 951_ | 99053 | 99079 | 99083 | 99089 | 99103 | 99109 | 99119 | 99131 | 99133 | 99137 |
| 952_ | 99139 | 99149 | 99173 | 99181 | 99191 | 99223 | 99233 | 99241 | 99251 | 99257 |
| 953_ | 99259 | 99277 | 99289 | 99317 | 99347 | 99349 | 99367 | 99371 | 99377 | 99391 |
| 954_ | 99397 | 99401 | 99409 | 99431 | 99439 | 99469 | 99487 | 99497 | 99523 | 99527 |
| 955_ | 99529 | 99551 | 99559 | 99563 | 99571 | 99577 | 99581 | 99607 | 99611 | 99623 |
| 956_ | 99643 | 99661 | 99667 | 99679 | 99689 | 99707 | 99709 | 99713 | 99719 | 99721 |
| 957_ | 99733 | 99761 | 99767 | 99787 | 99793 | 99809 | 99817 | 99823 | 99829 | 99833 |
| 958_ | 99839 | 99859 | 99871 | 99877 | 99881 | 99901 | 99907 | 99923 | 99929 | 99961 |
| 959_ | 99971 | 99989 | 99991 | 100003 | 100019 | 100043 | 100049 | 100057 | 100069 | 100103 |

2.4.13 FACTORIZATION TABLE

The following is a list of the factors of numbers up to and beyond 1,000. When a number is prime, it is shown in a bold face font.

| | _0 | _1 | _2 | _3 | _4 | _5 | _6 | _7 | _8 | _9 |
|----|---------------------|----------------|--------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------|----------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| 0_ | | 2 | 3 | 2 ² | 5 | 2·3 | 7 | 2 ³ | 3 ² | |
| 1_ | 2·5 | 11 | 2 ² ·3 | 13 | 2·7 | 3·5 | 2 ⁴ | 17 | 2·3 ² | 19 |
| 2_ | 2 ² ·5 | 3·7 | 2·11 | 23 | 2 ³ ·3 | 5 ² | 2·13 | 3 ³ | 2 ² ·7 | 29 |
| 3_ | 2·3·5 | 31 | 2 ⁵ | 3·11 | 2·17 | 5·7 | 2 ² ·3 ² | 37 | 2·19 | 3·13 |
| 4_ | 2 ³ ·5 | 41 | 2·3·7 | 43 | 2 ² ·11 | 3 ² ·5 | 2·23 | 47 | 2 ⁴ ·3 | 7 ² |
| 5_ | 2·5 ² | 3·17 | 2 ² ·13 | 53 | 2·3 ³ | 5·11 | 2 ³ ·7 | 3·19 | 2·29 | 59 |
| 6_ | 2 ² ·3·5 | 61 | 2·31 | 3 ² ·7 | 2 ⁶ | 5·13 | 2·3·11 | 67 | 2 ² ·17 | 3·23 |
| 7_ | 2·5·7 | 71 | 2 ³ ·3 ² | 73 | 2·37 | 3·5 ² | 2 ² ·19 | 7·11 | 2·3·13 | 79 |
| 8_ | 2 ⁴ ·5 | 3 ⁴ | 2·41 | 83 | 2 ² ·3·7 | 5·17 | 2·43 | 3·29 | 2 ³ ·11 | 89 |
| 9_ | 2·3 ² ·5 | 7·13 | 2 ² ·23 | 3·31 | 2·47 | 5·19 | 2 ⁵ ·3 | 97 | 2·7 ² | 3 ² ·11 |

| | _0 | _1 | _2 | _3 | _4 | _5 | _6 | _7 | _8 | _9 |
|-----|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------|
| 10. | 2 ² ·5 ² | 101 | 2·3·17 | 103 | 2 ³ ·13 | 3·5·7 | 2·53 | 107 | 2 ² ·3 ³ | 109 |
| 11. | 2·5·11 | 3·37 | 2 ⁴ ·7 | 113 | 2·3·19 | 5·23 | 2 ² ·29 | 3 ² ·13 | 2·59 | 7·17 |
| 12. | 2 ³ ·3·5 | 11 ² | 2·61 | 3·41 | 2 ² ·31 | 5 ³ | 2·3 ² ·7 | 127 | 2 ⁷ | 3·43 |
| 13. | 2·5·13 | 131 | 2 ² ·3·11 | 7·19 | 2·67 | 3 ³ ·5 | 2 ³ ·17 | 137 | 2·3·23 | 139 |
| 14. | 2 ² ·5·7 | 3·47 | 2·71 | 11·13 | 2 ⁴ ·3 ² | 5·29 | 2·73 | 3·7 ² | 2 ² ·37 | 149 |
| 15. | 2·3·5 ² | 151 | 2 ³ ·19 | 3 ² ·17 | 2·7·11 | 5·31 | 2 ² ·3·13 | 157 | 2·79 | 3·53 |
| 16. | 2 ⁵ ·5 | 7·23 | 2·3 ⁴ | 163 | 2 ² ·41 | 3·5·11 | 2·83 | 167 | 2 ³ ·3·7 | 13 ² |
| 17. | 2·5·17 | 3 ² ·19 | 2 ² ·43 | 173 | 2·3·29 | 5 ² ·7 | 2 ⁴ ·11 | 3·59 | 2·89 | 179 |
| 18. | 2 ² ·3 ² ·5 | 181 | 2·7·13 | 3·61 | 2 ³ ·23 | 5·37 | 2·3·31 | 11·17 | 2 ² ·47 | 3 ³ ·7 |
| 19. | 2·5·19 | 191 | 2 ⁶ ·3 | 193 | 2·97 | 3·5·13 | 2 ² ·7 ² | 197 | 2·3 ² ·11 | 199 |
| 20. | 2 ³ ·5 ² | 3·67 | 2·101 | 7·29 | 2 ² ·3·17 | 5·41 | 2·103 | 3 ² ·23 | 2 ⁴ ·13 | 11·19 |
| 21. | 2·3·5·7 | 211 | 2 ² ·53 | 3·71 | 2·107 | 5·43 | 2 ³ ·3 ³ | 7·31 | 2·109 | 3·73 |
| 22. | 2 ² ·5·11 | 13·17 | 2·3·37 | 223 | 2 ⁵ ·7 | 3 ² ·5 ² | 2·113 | 227 | 2 ² ·3·19 | 229 |
| 23. | 2·5·23 | 3·7·11 | 2 ³ ·29 | 233 | 2·3 ² ·13 | 5·47 | 2 ² ·59 | 3·79 | 2·7·17 | 239 |
| 24. | 2 ⁴ ·3·5 | 241 | 2·11 ² | 3 ⁵ | 2 ² ·61 | 5·7 ² | 2 ³ ·41 | 13·19 | 2 ³ ·31 | 3·83 |
| 25. | 2·5 ³ | 251 | 2 ² ·3 ² ·7 | 11·23 | 2·127 | 3·5·17 | 2 ⁸ | 257 | 2·3·43 | 7·37 |
| 26. | 2 ² ·5·13 | 3 ² ·29 | 2·131 | 263 | 2 ³ ·3·11 | 5·53 | 2·7·19 | 3·89 | 2 ² ·67 | 269 |
| 27. | 2·3 ³ ·5 | 271 | 2 ⁴ ·17 | 3·7·13 | 2·137 | 5 ² ·11 | 2 ² ·3·23 | 277 | 2·139 | 3 ² ·31 |
| 28. | 2 ³ ·5·7 | 281 | 2·3·47 | 283 | 2 ² ·71 | 3·5·19 | 2·11·13 | 7·41 | 2 ⁵ ·3 ² | 17 ² |
| 29. | 2·5·29 | 3·97 | 2 ² ·73 | 293 | 2·3·7 ² | 5·59 | 2 ³ ·37 | 3 ³ ·11 | 2·149 | 13·23 |
| 30. | 2 ² ·3·5 ² | 7·43 | 2·151 | 3·101 | 2 ⁴ ·19 | 5·61 | 2·3 ² ·17 | 307 | 2 ² ·7·11 | 3·103 |
| 31. | 2·5·31 | 311 | 2 ³ ·3·13 | 313 | 2·157 | 3 ² ·5·7 | 2 ² ·79 | 317 | 2·3·53 | 11·29 |
| 32. | 2 ⁶ ·5 | 3·107 | 2·7·23 | 17·19 | 2 ² ·3 ⁴ | 5 ² ·13 | 2·163 | 3·109 | 2 ³ ·41 | 7·47 |
| 33. | 2·3·5·11 | 331 | 2 ² ·83 | 3 ² ·37 | 2·167 | 5·67 | 2 ⁴ ·3·7 | 337 | 2·13 ² | 3·113 |
| 34. | 2 ² ·5·17 | 11·31 | 2·3 ² ·19 | 7 ³ | 2 ³ ·43 | 3·5·23 | 2·173 | 347 | 2 ² ·3·29 | 349 |
| 35. | 2·5 ² ·7 | 3 ³ ·13 | 2 ⁵ ·11 | 353 | 2·3·59 | 5·71 | 2 ² ·89 | 3·7·17 | 2·179 | 359 |
| 36. | 2 ³ ·3 ² ·5 | 19 ² | 2·181 | 3·11 ² | 2 ² ·7·13 | 5·73 | 2·3·61 | 367 | 2 ⁴ ·23 | 3 ² ·41 |
| 37. | 2·5·37 | 7·53 | 2 ² ·3·31 | 373 | 2·11·17 | 3·5 ³ | 2 ³ ·47 | 13·29 | 2·3 ³ ·7 | 379 |
| 38. | 2 ² ·5·19 | 3·127 | 2·191 | 383 | 2 ⁷ ·3 | 5·7·11 | 2·193 | 3 ² ·43 | 2 ² ·97 | 389 |
| 39. | 2·3·5·13 | 17·23 | 2 ³ ·7 ² | 3·131 | 2·197 | 5·79 | 2 ² ·3 ² ·11 | 397 | 2·199 | 3·7·19 |
| 40. | 2 ⁴ ·5 ² | 401 | 2·3·67 | 13·31 | 2 ² ·101 | 3 ⁴ ·5 | 2·7·29 | 11·37 | 2 ³ ·3·17 | 409 |
| 41. | 2·5·41 | 3·137 | 2 ² ·103 | 7·59 | 2·3 ² ·23 | 5·83 | 2 ⁵ ·13 | 3·139 | 2·11·19 | 419 |
| 42. | 2 ² ·3·5·7 | 421 | 2·211 | 3 ² ·47 | 2 ³ ·53 | 5 ² ·17 | 2·3·71 | 7·61 | 2 ² ·107 | 3·11·13 |
| 43. | 2·5·43 | 431 | 2 ⁴ ·3 ³ | 433 | 2·7·31 | 3·5·29 | 2 ² ·109 | 19·23 | 2·3·73 | 439 |
| 44. | 2 ³ ·5·11 | 3 ² ·7 ² | 2·13·17 | 443 | 2 ² ·3·37 | 5·89 | 2·223 | 3·149 | 2 ⁶ ·7 | 449 |
| 45. | 2·3 ² ·5 ² | 11·41 | 2 ² ·113 | 3·151 | 2·227 | 5·7·13 | 2 ³ ·3·19 | 457 | 2·229 | 3 ³ ·17 |
| 46. | 2 ² ·5·23 | 461 | 2·3·7·11 | 463 | 2 ⁴ ·29 | 3·5·31 | 2·233 | 467 | 2 ² ·3 ² ·13 | 7·67 |
| 47. | 2·5·47 | 3·157 | 2 ³ ·59 | 11·43 | 2·3·79 | 5 ² ·19 | 2 ² ·7·17 | 3 ² ·53 | 2·239 | 479 |
| 48. | 2 ⁵ ·3·5 | 13·37 | 2·241 | 3·7·23 | 2 ² ·11 ² | 5·97 | 2·3 ⁵ | 487 | 2 ³ ·61 | 3·163 |
| 49. | 2·5·7 ² | 491 | 2 ² ·3·41 | 17·29 | 2·13·19 | 3 ² ·5·11 | 2 ⁴ ·31 | 7·71 | 2·3·83 | 499 |
| 50. | 2 ² ·5 ³ | 3·167 | 2·251 | 503 | 2 ³ ·3 ² ·7 | 5·101 | 2·11·23 | 3·13 ² | 2 ² ·127 | 509 |
| 51. | 2·3·5·17 | 7·73 | 2 ⁹ | 3 ³ ·19 | 2·257 | 5·103 | 2 ² ·3·43 | 11·47 | 2·7·37 | 3·173 |
| 52. | 2 ³ ·5·13 | 521 | 2·3 ² ·29 | 523 | 2 ² ·131 | 3·5 ² ·7 | 2·263 | 17·31 | 2 ⁴ ·3·11 | 23 ² |
| 53. | 2·5·53 | 3 ² ·59 | 2 ² ·7·19 | 13·41 | 2·3·89 | 5·107 | 2 ³ ·67 | 3·179 | 2·269 | 7 ² ·11 |
| 54. | 2 ² ·3 ³ ·5 | 541 | 2·271 | 3·181 | 2 ⁵ ·17 | 5·109 | 2·3·7·13 | 547 | 2 ² ·137 | 3 ² ·61 |
| 55. | 2·5 ² ·11 | 19·29 | 2 ³ ·3·23 | 7·79 | 2·277 | 3·5·37 | 2 ² ·139 | 557 | 2·3 ² ·31 | 13·43 |
| 56. | 2 ⁴ ·5·7 | 3·11·17 | 2·281 | 563 | 2 ² ·3·47 | 5·113 | 2·283 | 3 ⁴ ·7 | 2 ³ ·71 | 569 |
| 57. | 2·3·5·19 | 571 | 2 ² ·11·13 | 3·191 | 2·7·41 | 5 ² ·23 | 2 ⁶ ·3 ² | 577 | 2·17 ² | 3·193 |
| 58. | 2 ² ·5·29 | 7·83 | 2·3·97 | 11·53 | 2 ³ ·73 | 3 ² ·5·13 | 2·293 | 587 | 2 ² ·3·7 ² | 19·31 |
| 59. | 2·5·59 | 3·197 | 2 ⁴ ·37 | 593 | 2·3 ³ ·11 | 5·7·17 | 2 ² ·149 | 3·199 | 2·13·23 | 599 |
| 60. | 2 ³ ·3·5 ² | 601 | 2·7·43 | 3 ² ·67 | 2 ² ·151 | 5·11 ² | 2·3·101 | 607 | 2 ⁵ ·19 | 3·7·29 |
| 61. | 2·5·61 | 13·47 | 2 ² ·3 ² ·17 | 613 | 2·307 | 3·5·41 | 2 ³ ·7·11 | 617 | 2·3·103 | 619 |

2.4.14 FACTORIZATION OF $2^m - 1$

| | |
|---|---|
| $2^3 - 1 = 7$ | $2^{19} - 1 = 524287$ |
| $2^4 - 1 = 3 \times 5$ | $2^{20} - 1 = 3 \times 5^2 \times 11 \times 31 \times 41$ |
| $2^5 - 1 = 31$ | $2^{21} - 1 = 7^2 \times 127 \times 337$ |
| $2^6 - 1 = 3^2 \times 7$ | $2^{22} - 1 = 3 \times 23 \times 89 \times 683$ |
| $2^7 - 1 = 127$ | $2^{23} - 1 = 47 \times 178481$ |
| $2^8 - 1 = 3 \times 5 \times 17$ | $2^{24} - 1 = 3^2 \times 5 \times 7 \times 13 \times 17 \times 241$ |
| $2^9 - 1 = 7 \times 73$ | $2^{25} - 1 = 31 \times 601 \times 1801$ |
| $2^{10} - 1 = 3 \times 11 \times 31$ | $2^{26} - 1 = 3 \times 2731 \times 8191$ |
| $2^{11} - 1 = 23 \times 89$ | $2^{27} - 1 = 7 \times 73 \times 262657$ |
| $2^{12} - 1 = 3^2 \times 5 \times 7 \times 13$ | $2^{28} - 1 = 3 \times 5 \times 29 \times 43 \times 113 \times 127$ |
| $2^{13} - 1 = 8191$ | $2^{29} - 1 = 233 \times 1103 \times 2089$ |
| $2^{14} - 1 = 3 \times 43 \times 127$ | $2^{30} - 1 = 3^2 \times 7 \times 11 \times 31 \times 151 \times 331$ |
| $2^{15} - 1 = 7 \times 31 \times 151$ | $2^{31} - 1 = 2147483647$ |
| $2^{16} - 1 = 3 \times 5 \times 17 \times 257$ | $2^{32} - 1 = 3 \times 5 \times 17 \times 257 \times 65537$ |
| $2^{17} - 1 = 131071$ | $2^{33} - 1 = 7 \times 23 \times 89 \times 599479$ |
| $2^{18} - 1 = 3^3 \times 7 \times 19 \times 73$ | $2^{34} - 1 = 3 \times 43691 \times 131071$ |

2.4.15 EULER TOTIENT FUNCTION

2.4.15.1 Definitions

1. $\phi(n)$ the *totient function* is the number of integers not exceeding and relatively prime to n .
2. $\sigma(n)$ is the *sum of the divisors* of n .
3. $\tau(n)$ is the *number of divisors* of n . (Also called the $d(n)$ function.)

Define $\sigma_k(n)$ to be the k^{th} divisor function, the sum of the k^{th} powers of the divisors of n . Then $\tau(n) = \sigma_0(n)$ and $\sigma(n) = \sigma_1(n)$.

EXAMPLE The numbers less than 6 and relatively prime to 6 are $\{1, 5\}$. Hence $\phi(6) = 2$. The divisors of 6 are $\{1, 2, 3, 6\}$. There are $\tau(6) = 4$ divisors. The sum of these numbers is $\sigma(6) = 1 + 2 + 3 + 6 = 12$.

2.4.15.2 Properties of the totient function

1. ϕ is a multiplicative function: if $(n, m) = 1$, then $\phi(nm) = \phi(n)\phi(m)$.
2. If p is prime, then $\phi(p) = p - 1$.
3. Gauss's theorem states: $n = \sum_{d|n} \phi(d)$.
4. When $n = \prod_i p_i^{\alpha_i}$, and the $\{p_i\}$ are prime

$$\sigma_k(n) = \sum_{d|n} d^k = \prod_i \frac{p_i^{k(\alpha_i+1)} - 1}{p_i^k - 1}. \quad (2.4.17)$$

5. Generating functions

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\sigma_k(n)}{n^s} = \zeta(s)\zeta(s-k) \quad (2.4.18)$$

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\phi(n)}{n^s} = \frac{\zeta(s-1)}{\zeta(s)}$$

6. A *perfect number* n satisfies $\sigma(n) = 2n$. The integer n is an even perfect number if, and only if, $n = 2^{m-1}(2^m - 1)$, where m is a positive integer such that $M_m = 2^m - 1$ is a Mersenne prime. The sequence of perfect numbers is $\{6, 28, 496, \dots\}$ (see page 31), corresponding to $m = 2, 3, 5, \dots$. It is not known whether there exists an odd perfect number.

2.4.15.3 Table of totient function values

| n | $\phi(n)$ | $\tau(n)$ | $\sigma(n)$ | n | $\phi(n)$ | $\tau(n)$ | $\sigma(n)$ | n | $\phi(n)$ | $\tau(n)$ | $\sigma(n)$ | n | $\phi(n)$ | $\tau(n)$ | $\sigma(n)$ |
|-----|-----------|-----------|-------------|-----|-----------|-----------|-------------|-----|-----------|-----------|-------------|-----|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 3 | 2 | 2 | 4 | 4 | 2 | 3 | 7 |
| 5 | 4 | 2 | 6 | 6 | 2 | 4 | 12 | 7 | 6 | 2 | 8 | 8 | 4 | 4 | 15 |
| 9 | 6 | 3 | 13 | 10 | 4 | 4 | 18 | 11 | 10 | 2 | 12 | 12 | 4 | 6 | 28 |
| 13 | 12 | 2 | 14 | 14 | 6 | 4 | 24 | 15 | 8 | 4 | 24 | 16 | 8 | 5 | 31 |
| 17 | 16 | 2 | 18 | 18 | 6 | 6 | 39 | 19 | 18 | 2 | 20 | 20 | 8 | 6 | 42 |
| 21 | 12 | 4 | 32 | 22 | 10 | 4 | 36 | 23 | 22 | 2 | 24 | 24 | 8 | 8 | 60 |
| 25 | 20 | 3 | 31 | 26 | 12 | 4 | 42 | 27 | 18 | 4 | 40 | 28 | 12 | 6 | 56 |
| 29 | 28 | 2 | 30 | 30 | 8 | 8 | 72 | 31 | 30 | 2 | 32 | 32 | 16 | 6 | 63 |
| 33 | 20 | 4 | 48 | 34 | 16 | 4 | 54 | 35 | 24 | 4 | 48 | 36 | 12 | 9 | 91 |
| 37 | 36 | 2 | 38 | 38 | 18 | 4 | 60 | 39 | 24 | 4 | 56 | 40 | 16 | 8 | 90 |
| 41 | 40 | 2 | 42 | 42 | 12 | 8 | 96 | 43 | 42 | 2 | 44 | 44 | 20 | 6 | 84 |
| 45 | 24 | 6 | 78 | 46 | 22 | 4 | 72 | 47 | 46 | 2 | 48 | 48 | 16 | 10 | 124 |
| 49 | 42 | 3 | 57 | 50 | 20 | 6 | 93 | 51 | 32 | 4 | 72 | 52 | 24 | 6 | 98 |
| 53 | 52 | 2 | 54 | 54 | 18 | 8 | 120 | 55 | 40 | 4 | 72 | 56 | 24 | 8 | 120 |
| 57 | 36 | 4 | 80 | 58 | 28 | 4 | 90 | 59 | 58 | 2 | 60 | 60 | 16 | 12 | 168 |
| 61 | 60 | 2 | 62 | 62 | 30 | 4 | 96 | 63 | 36 | 6 | 104 | 64 | 32 | 7 | 127 |
| 65 | 48 | 4 | 84 | 66 | 20 | 8 | 144 | 67 | 66 | 2 | 68 | 68 | 32 | 6 | 126 |
| 69 | 44 | 4 | 96 | 70 | 24 | 8 | 144 | 71 | 70 | 2 | 72 | 72 | 24 | 12 | 195 |
| 73 | 72 | 2 | 74 | 74 | 36 | 4 | 114 | 75 | 40 | 6 | 124 | 76 | 36 | 6 | 140 |
| 77 | 60 | 4 | 96 | 78 | 24 | 8 | 168 | 79 | 78 | 2 | 80 | 80 | 32 | 10 | 186 |
| 81 | 54 | 5 | 121 | 82 | 40 | 4 | 126 | 83 | 82 | 2 | 84 | 84 | 24 | 12 | 224 |
| 85 | 64 | 4 | 108 | 86 | 42 | 4 | 132 | 87 | 56 | 4 | 120 | 88 | 40 | 8 | 180 |
| 89 | 88 | 2 | 90 | 90 | 24 | 12 | 234 | 91 | 72 | 4 | 112 | 92 | 44 | 6 | 168 |
| 93 | 60 | 4 | 128 | 94 | 46 | 4 | 144 | 95 | 72 | 4 | 120 | 96 | 32 | 12 | 252 |
| 97 | 96 | 2 | 98 | 98 | 42 | 6 | 171 | 99 | 60 | 6 | 156 | 100 | 40 | 9 | 217 |
| 101 | 100 | 2 | 102 | 102 | 32 | 8 | 216 | 103 | 102 | 2 | 104 | 104 | 48 | 8 | 210 |
| 105 | 48 | 8 | 192 | 106 | 52 | 4 | 162 | 107 | 106 | 2 | 108 | 108 | 36 | 12 | 280 |
| 109 | 108 | 2 | 110 | 110 | 40 | 8 | 216 | 111 | 72 | 4 | 152 | 112 | 48 | 10 | 248 |
| 113 | 112 | 2 | 114 | 114 | 36 | 8 | 240 | 115 | 88 | 4 | 144 | 116 | 56 | 6 | 210 |
| 117 | 72 | 6 | 182 | 118 | 58 | 4 | 180 | 119 | 96 | 4 | 144 | 120 | 32 | 16 | 360 |

| n | $\phi(n)$ | $\tau(n)$ | $\sigma(n)$ | n | $\phi(n)$ | $\tau(n)$ | $\sigma(n)$ | n | $\phi(n)$ | $\tau(n)$ | $\sigma(n)$ | n | $\phi(n)$ | $\tau(n)$ | $\sigma(n)$ |
|-----|-----------|-----------|-------------|-----|-----------|-----------|-------------|-----|-----------|-----------|-------------|-----|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| 121 | 110 | 3 | 133 | 122 | 60 | 4 | 186 | 123 | 80 | 4 | 168 | 124 | 60 | 6 | 224 |
| 125 | 100 | 4 | 156 | 126 | 36 | 12 | 312 | 127 | 126 | 2 | 128 | 128 | 64 | 8 | 255 |
| 129 | 84 | 4 | 176 | 130 | 48 | 8 | 252 | 131 | 130 | 2 | 132 | 132 | 40 | 12 | 336 |
| 133 | 108 | 4 | 160 | 134 | 66 | 4 | 204 | 135 | 72 | 8 | 240 | 136 | 64 | 8 | 270 |
| 137 | 136 | 2 | 138 | 138 | 44 | 8 | 288 | 139 | 138 | 2 | 140 | 140 | 48 | 12 | 336 |
| 141 | 92 | 4 | 192 | 142 | 70 | 4 | 216 | 143 | 120 | 4 | 168 | 144 | 48 | 15 | 403 |
| 145 | 112 | 4 | 180 | 146 | 72 | 4 | 222 | 147 | 84 | 6 | 228 | 148 | 72 | 6 | 266 |
| 149 | 148 | 2 | 150 | 150 | 40 | 12 | 372 | 151 | 150 | 2 | 152 | 152 | 72 | 8 | 300 |
| 153 | 96 | 6 | 234 | 154 | 60 | 8 | 288 | 155 | 120 | 4 | 192 | 156 | 48 | 12 | 392 |
| 157 | 156 | 2 | 158 | 158 | 78 | 4 | 240 | 159 | 104 | 4 | 216 | 160 | 64 | 12 | 378 |
| 161 | 132 | 4 | 192 | 162 | 54 | 10 | 363 | 163 | 162 | 2 | 164 | 164 | 80 | 6 | 294 |
| 165 | 80 | 8 | 288 | 166 | 82 | 4 | 252 | 167 | 166 | 2 | 168 | 168 | 48 | 16 | 480 |
| 169 | 156 | 3 | 183 | 170 | 64 | 8 | 324 | 171 | 108 | 6 | 260 | 172 | 84 | 6 | 308 |
| 173 | 172 | 2 | 174 | 174 | 56 | 8 | 360 | 175 | 120 | 6 | 248 | 176 | 80 | 10 | 372 |
| 177 | 116 | 4 | 240 | 178 | 88 | 4 | 270 | 179 | 178 | 2 | 180 | 180 | 48 | 18 | 546 |
| 181 | 180 | 2 | 182 | 182 | 72 | 8 | 336 | 183 | 120 | 4 | 248 | 184 | 88 | 8 | 360 |
| 185 | 144 | 4 | 228 | 186 | 60 | 8 | 384 | 187 | 160 | 4 | 216 | 188 | 92 | 6 | 336 |
| 189 | 108 | 8 | 320 | 190 | 72 | 8 | 360 | 191 | 190 | 2 | 192 | 192 | 64 | 14 | 508 |
| 193 | 192 | 2 | 194 | 194 | 96 | 4 | 294 | 195 | 96 | 8 | 336 | 196 | 84 | 9 | 399 |
| 197 | 196 | 2 | 198 | 198 | 60 | 12 | 468 | 199 | 198 | 2 | 200 | 200 | 80 | 12 | 465 |
| 201 | 132 | 4 | 272 | 202 | 100 | 4 | 306 | 203 | 168 | 4 | 240 | 204 | 64 | 12 | 504 |
| 205 | 160 | 4 | 252 | 206 | 102 | 4 | 312 | 207 | 132 | 6 | 312 | 208 | 96 | 10 | 434 |
| 209 | 180 | 4 | 240 | 210 | 48 | 16 | 576 | 211 | 210 | 2 | 212 | 212 | 104 | 6 | 378 |
| 213 | 140 | 4 | 288 | 214 | 106 | 4 | 324 | 215 | 168 | 4 | 264 | 216 | 72 | 16 | 600 |
| 217 | 180 | 4 | 256 | 218 | 108 | 4 | 330 | 219 | 144 | 4 | 296 | 220 | 80 | 12 | 504 |
| 221 | 192 | 4 | 252 | 222 | 72 | 8 | 456 | 223 | 222 | 2 | 224 | 224 | 96 | 12 | 504 |
| 225 | 120 | 9 | 403 | 226 | 112 | 4 | 342 | 227 | 226 | 2 | 228 | 228 | 72 | 12 | 560 |
| 229 | 228 | 2 | 230 | 230 | 88 | 8 | 432 | 231 | 120 | 8 | 384 | 232 | 112 | 8 | 450 |
| 233 | 232 | 2 | 234 | 234 | 72 | 12 | 546 | 235 | 184 | 4 | 288 | 236 | 116 | 6 | 420 |
| 237 | 156 | 4 | 320 | 238 | 96 | 8 | 432 | 239 | 238 | 2 | 240 | 240 | 64 | 20 | 744 |
| 241 | 240 | 2 | 242 | 242 | 110 | 6 | 399 | 243 | 162 | 6 | 364 | 244 | 120 | 6 | 434 |
| 245 | 168 | 6 | 342 | 246 | 80 | 8 | 504 | 247 | 216 | 4 | 280 | 248 | 120 | 8 | 480 |
| 249 | 164 | 4 | 336 | 250 | 100 | 8 | 468 | 251 | 250 | 2 | 252 | 252 | 72 | 18 | 728 |
| 253 | 220 | 4 | 288 | 254 | 126 | 4 | 384 | 255 | 128 | 8 | 432 | 256 | 128 | 9 | 511 |
| 257 | 256 | 2 | 258 | 258 | 84 | 8 | 528 | 259 | 216 | 4 | 304 | 260 | 96 | 12 | 588 |
| 261 | 168 | 6 | 390 | 262 | 130 | 4 | 396 | 263 | 262 | 2 | 264 | 264 | 80 | 16 | 720 |
| 265 | 208 | 4 | 324 | 266 | 108 | 8 | 480 | 267 | 176 | 4 | 360 | 268 | 132 | 6 | 476 |
| 269 | 268 | 2 | 270 | 270 | 72 | 16 | 720 | 271 | 270 | 2 | 272 | 272 | 128 | 10 | 558 |
| 273 | 144 | 8 | 448 | 274 | 136 | 4 | 414 | 275 | 200 | 6 | 372 | 276 | 88 | 12 | 672 |
| 277 | 276 | 2 | 278 | 278 | 138 | 4 | 420 | 279 | 180 | 6 | 416 | 280 | 96 | 16 | 720 |
| 281 | 280 | 2 | 282 | 282 | 92 | 8 | 576 | 283 | 282 | 2 | 284 | 284 | 140 | 6 | 504 |
| 285 | 144 | 8 | 480 | 286 | 120 | 8 | 504 | 287 | 240 | 4 | 336 | 288 | 96 | 18 | 819 |
| 289 | 272 | 3 | 307 | 290 | 112 | 8 | 540 | 291 | 192 | 4 | 392 | 292 | 144 | 6 | 518 |
| 293 | 292 | 2 | 294 | 294 | 84 | 12 | 684 | 295 | 232 | 4 | 360 | 296 | 144 | 8 | 570 |
| 297 | 180 | 8 | 480 | 298 | 148 | 4 | 450 | 299 | 264 | 4 | 336 | 300 | 80 | 18 | 868 |
| 301 | 252 | 4 | 352 | 302 | 150 | 4 | 456 | 303 | 200 | 4 | 408 | 304 | 144 | 10 | 620 |
| 305 | 240 | 4 | 372 | 306 | 96 | 12 | 702 | 307 | 306 | 2 | 308 | 308 | 120 | 12 | 672 |

2.5 VECTOR ALGEBRA

2.5.1 NOTATION FOR VECTORS AND SCALARS

A *vector* is an ordered n -tuple of values. A vector is usually represented by a lower-case, bold-faced letter, such as \mathbf{v} . The individual components of a vector \mathbf{v} are typically denoted by a lower-case letter along with a subscript identifying the relative position of the component in the vector, such as $\mathbf{v} = [v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n]$. In this case, the vector is said to be n -dimensional. If the n individual components of the vector are real numbers, then $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbb{R}^n$. Similarly, if the n components of \mathbf{v} are complex, then $\mathbf{v} \in \mathbb{C}^n$.

Subscripts are also typically used to identify individual vectors within a set of vectors all belonging to the same type. For example, a set of n velocity vectors can be denoted by $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$. In this case, a bold-face type is used on the individual members of the set to signify these elements of the set are vectors and not vector components.

Two vectors, \mathbf{v} and \mathbf{u} , are said to be equal if all their components are equal. The negative of a vector, written as $-\mathbf{v}$, is one that acts in a direction opposite to \mathbf{v} , but is of equal magnitude.

2.5.2 PHYSICAL VECTORS

Any quantity that is completely determined by its magnitude is called a *scalar*. For example, mass, density, and temperature are scalars. Any quantity that is completely determined by its magnitude and direction is called, in physics, a vector. We often use a three-dimensional vector to represent a physical vector. Examples of physical vectors include velocity, acceleration, and force. A physical vector is represented by a directed line segment, the length of which represents the magnitude of the vector. Two vectors are said to be *parallel* if they have exactly the same direction, i.e., the angle between the two vectors equals zero.

2.5.3 FUNDAMENTAL DEFINITIONS

1. A *row vector* is a vector whose components are aligned horizontally. A *column vector* has its components aligned vertically. The *transpose* operator, denoted by the superscript T , switches the orientation of a vector between horizontal and vertical.

EXAMPLE

$$\mathbf{v} = [1, 2, 3, 4], \quad \mathbf{v}^T = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}, \quad (\mathbf{v}^T)^T = [1, 2, 3, 4].$$

row vector column vector row vector

Vectors are traditionally written with either parentheses or with square brackets.

- Two vectors, \mathbf{v} and \mathbf{u} , are said to be *orthogonal* if $\mathbf{v}^T \mathbf{u} = 0$. (This is also written $\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{u} = 0$, where the “ \cdot ” denotes an inner product; see page 133.)
- A set of vectors $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$ is said to be *orthogonal* if $\mathbf{v}_i^T \mathbf{v}_j = 0$ for all $i \neq j$.
- A set of orthogonal vectors $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \dots, \mathbf{v}_m\}$ is said to be *orthonormal* if, in addition to possessing the property of orthogonality, the set possesses the property that $\mathbf{v}_i^T \mathbf{v}_i = 1$ for all $1 \leq i \leq m$.

2.5.4 LAWS OF VECTOR ALGEBRA

- The vector sum of \mathbf{v} and \mathbf{u} , represented by $\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u}$, results in another vector of the same dimension, and is calculated by simply adding corresponding vector components, e.g., if $\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u} \in \mathbb{R}^n$, then $\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u} = [v_1 + u_1, \dots, v_n + u_n]$.
- The vector subtraction of \mathbf{u} from \mathbf{v} , represented by $\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{u}$, is equivalent to the addition of \mathbf{v} and $-\mathbf{u}$.
- If $r > 0$ is a scalar, then the scalar multiplication $r\mathbf{v}$ (equal to $\mathbf{v}r$) represents a scaling by a factor r of the vector \mathbf{v} in the same direction as \mathbf{v} . That is, the multiplicative scalar is distributed to each component of \mathbf{v} .
- If $0 \leq r < 1$, then the scalar multiplication of r and \mathbf{v} shrinks the length of \mathbf{v} , multiplication by $r = 1$ leaves \mathbf{v} unchanged, and, if $r > 1$, then $r\mathbf{v}$ stretches the length of \mathbf{v} . When $r < 0$, scalar multiplication of r and \mathbf{v} has the same effect on the magnitude (length) of \mathbf{v} as when $r > 0$, but results in a vector oriented in the direction opposite to \mathbf{v} .

EXAMPLE

$$4 \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ 0 \\ 12 \end{bmatrix}, \quad -4 \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -4 \\ 0 \\ -12 \end{bmatrix}.$$

- If r and s are scalars, and \mathbf{v} , \mathbf{u} , and \mathbf{w} are vectors, the following rules of algebra are valid:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u} &= \mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}, \\ (r + s)\mathbf{v} &= r\mathbf{v} + s\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v}r + \mathbf{v}s = \mathbf{v}(r + s), \\ r(\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u}) &= r\mathbf{v} + r\mathbf{u}, \\ \mathbf{v} + (\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{w}) &= (\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u}) + \mathbf{w} = \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u} + \mathbf{w}. \end{aligned} \tag{2.5.1}$$

2.5.5 VECTOR NORMS

1. A *norm* is the vector analog to the measure of absolute value for real scalars. Norms provide a distance measure for a vector space.
2. A vector norm applied to a vector \mathbf{v} is denoted by a double bar notation $\|\mathbf{v}\|$. (Single bar notation, $|\mathbf{v}|$, is also sometimes used).
3. A norm on a vector space equips it with a *metric space* structure.
4. The properties of a vector norm are:
 - (a) For any vector $\mathbf{v} \neq \mathbf{0}$, $\|\mathbf{v}\| > 0$,
 - (b) $\|\gamma\mathbf{v}\| = |\gamma| \|\mathbf{v}\|$, and
 - (c) $\|\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u}\| \leq \|\mathbf{v}\| + \|\mathbf{u}\|$ (triangle inequality).
5. The three most commonly used vector norms on \mathbb{R}^n or \mathbb{C}^n are
 - (a) The L_1 norm is defined as $\|\mathbf{v}\|_1 = |v_1| + \dots + |v_n| = \sum_{i=1}^n |v_i|$.
 - (b) The L_2 norm (Euclidean norm) is defined as

$$\|\mathbf{v}\|_2 = (|v_1|^2 + |v_2|^2 + \dots + |v_n|^2)^{1/2} = \left(\sum_{i=1}^n v_i^2 \right)^{1/2}. \quad (2.5.2)$$

- (c) The L_∞ norm is defined as $\|\mathbf{v}\|_\infty = \max_{1 \leq i \leq n} |v_i|$.
6. In the absence of any subscript, the norm $\|\cdot\|$ is usually assumed to be the L_2 (Euclidean) norm.
 7. A *unit vector* with respect to a particular norm $\|\cdot\|$ is a vector that satisfies the property that $\|\mathbf{v}\| = 1$, and is sometimes denoted by $\hat{\mathbf{v}}$.

2.5.6 DOT, SCALAR, OR INNER PRODUCT

1. The *dot* (or *scalar* or *inner product*) of two vectors of the same dimension, represented by $\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{u}$ or $\mathbf{v}^T \mathbf{u}$, has two common definitions, depending upon the context in which this product is encountered.
 - (a) In vector calculus and physics, the dot or scalar product is defined by

$$\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{u} = \|\mathbf{v}\| \|\mathbf{u}\| \cos \theta, \quad (2.5.3)$$

where θ represents the angle between the vectors \mathbf{v} and \mathbf{u} .

(b) In optimization, linear algebra, and computer science, the inner product of two vectors, \mathbf{u} and \mathbf{v} , is equivalently defined as

$$\mathbf{u}^T \mathbf{v} = \sum_{i=1}^n u_i v_i = u_1 v_1 + \cdots + u_n v_n. \quad (2.5.4)$$

From the first definition, it is apparent that the inner product of two perpendicular, or orthogonal, vectors is zero, since the cosine of 90° is zero.

2. The inner product of two parallel vectors (with $\mathbf{u} = r\mathbf{v}$) is given by $\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{u} = r \|\mathbf{v}\|^2$. For example, when $r > 0$,

$$\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{u} = \|\mathbf{v}\| \|\mathbf{u}\| \cos 0 = \|\mathbf{v}\| \|\mathbf{u}\| = \|\mathbf{v}\| \|r\mathbf{v}\| = r \|\mathbf{v}\|^2. \quad (2.5.5)$$

3. The dot product is distributive, e.g.,

$$(\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u}) \cdot \mathbf{w} = \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{w} + \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{w}. \quad (2.5.6)$$

4. For $\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{w} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ with $n > 1$,

$$\mathbf{v}^T \mathbf{u} = \mathbf{v}^T \mathbf{w} \quad \not\Rightarrow \quad \mathbf{u} = \mathbf{w}. \quad (2.5.7)$$

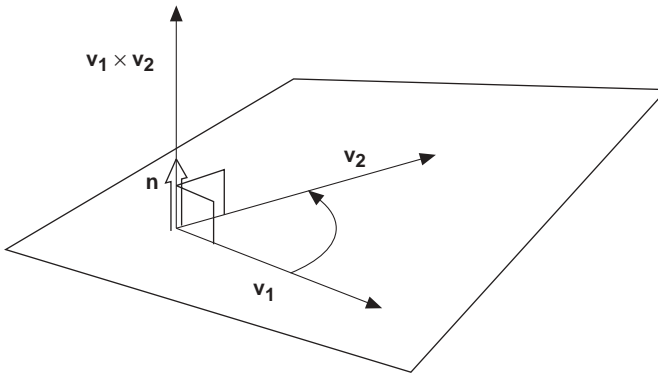
However, it is valid to conclude that

$$\mathbf{v}^T \mathbf{u} = \mathbf{v}^T \mathbf{w} \quad \Rightarrow \quad \mathbf{v}^T (\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{w}) = 0, \quad (2.5.8)$$

i.e., the vector \mathbf{v} is orthogonal to the vector $(\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{w})$.

FIGURE 2.1

Depiction of right-hand rule.



2.5.7 VECTOR OR CROSS PRODUCT

1. The *vector* (or *cross product*) of two non-zero three-dimensional vectors \mathbf{v} and \mathbf{u} is defined as

$$\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{u} = \hat{\mathbf{n}} \|\mathbf{v}\| \|\mathbf{u}\| \sin \theta, \quad (2.5.9)$$

where $\hat{\mathbf{n}}$ is the unit *normal* vector (i.e., vector perpendicular to both \mathbf{v} and \mathbf{u}) in the direction adhering to the *right-hand rule* (see [Figure 2.1](#)) and θ is the angle between \mathbf{v} and \mathbf{u} .

2. If \mathbf{v} and \mathbf{u} are parallel, then $\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}$.
3. The quantity $\|\mathbf{v}\| \|\mathbf{u}\| |\sin \theta|$ represents the area of the parallelogram determined by \mathbf{v} and \mathbf{u} .
4. The following rules apply for vector products:

$$\begin{aligned} (\gamma \mathbf{v}) \times (\alpha \mathbf{u}) &= (\gamma \alpha) \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{u}, \\ \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{u} &= -\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}, \\ \mathbf{v} \times (\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{w}) &= \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{w}, \\ (\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u}) \times \mathbf{w} &= \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{w} + \mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{w}, \\ \mathbf{v} \times (\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{w}) &= \mathbf{u}(\mathbf{w} \cdot \mathbf{v}) - \mathbf{w}(\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{u}), \\ (\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{u}) \cdot (\mathbf{w} \times \mathbf{z}) &= (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{w})(\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{z}) - (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{z})(\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{w}), \\ (\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{u}) \times (\mathbf{w} \times \mathbf{z}) &= [\mathbf{v} \cdot (\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{z})]\mathbf{w} - [\mathbf{v} \cdot (\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{w})]\mathbf{z} \\ &= [\mathbf{v} \cdot (\mathbf{w} \times \mathbf{z})]\mathbf{u} - [\mathbf{u} \cdot (\mathbf{w} \times \mathbf{z})]\mathbf{v}. \end{aligned} \quad (2.5.10)$$

5. The pairwise cross products of the unit vectors $\hat{\mathbf{i}}$, $\hat{\mathbf{j}}$, and $\hat{\mathbf{k}}$, corresponding to the directions of $\mathbf{v} = v_1 \hat{\mathbf{i}} + v_2 \hat{\mathbf{j}} + v_3 \hat{\mathbf{k}}$, are given by

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{\mathbf{i}} \times \hat{\mathbf{j}} &= -(\hat{\mathbf{j}} \times \hat{\mathbf{i}}) = \hat{\mathbf{k}}, \\ \hat{\mathbf{j}} \times \hat{\mathbf{k}} &= -(\hat{\mathbf{k}} \times \hat{\mathbf{j}}) = \hat{\mathbf{i}}, \\ \hat{\mathbf{k}} \times \hat{\mathbf{i}} &= -(\hat{\mathbf{i}} \times \hat{\mathbf{k}}) = \hat{\mathbf{j}}, \quad \text{and} \\ \hat{\mathbf{i}} \times \hat{\mathbf{i}} &= \hat{\mathbf{j}} \times \hat{\mathbf{j}} = \hat{\mathbf{k}} \times \hat{\mathbf{k}} = \mathbf{0}. \end{aligned} \quad (2.5.11)$$

6. If $\mathbf{v} = v_1 \hat{\mathbf{i}} + v_2 \hat{\mathbf{j}} + v_3 \hat{\mathbf{k}}$ and $\mathbf{u} = u_1 \hat{\mathbf{i}} + u_2 \hat{\mathbf{j}} + u_3 \hat{\mathbf{k}}$, then

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{u} &= \begin{vmatrix} \hat{\mathbf{i}} & \hat{\mathbf{j}} & \hat{\mathbf{k}} \\ v_1 & v_2 & v_3 \\ u_1 & u_2 & u_3 \end{vmatrix} \\ &= (v_2 u_3 - u_2 v_3) \hat{\mathbf{i}} + (v_3 u_1 - u_3 v_1) \hat{\mathbf{j}} + (v_1 u_2 - u_1 v_2) \hat{\mathbf{k}}. \end{aligned} \quad (2.5.12)$$

2.5.8 SCALAR AND VECTOR TRIPLE PRODUCTS

1. The *scalar triple product* involving three three-dimensional vectors \mathbf{v} , \mathbf{u} , and \mathbf{w} , sometimes denoted by $[\mathbf{vuw}]$ (not to be confused with a matrix containing three columns $[\mathbf{v} \ \mathbf{u} \ \mathbf{w}]$), can be computed using the determinant

$$\begin{aligned}
 [\mathbf{vuw}] &= \mathbf{v} \cdot (\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{v} \cdot \left[\begin{vmatrix} u_2 & u_3 \\ w_2 & w_3 \end{vmatrix} \hat{\mathbf{i}} - \begin{vmatrix} u_1 & u_3 \\ w_1 & w_3 \end{vmatrix} \hat{\mathbf{j}} + \begin{vmatrix} u_1 & u_2 \\ w_1 & w_2 \end{vmatrix} \hat{\mathbf{k}} \right] \\
 &= v_1 \begin{vmatrix} u_2 & u_3 \\ w_2 & w_3 \end{vmatrix} - v_2 \begin{vmatrix} u_1 & u_3 \\ w_1 & w_3 \end{vmatrix} + v_3 \begin{vmatrix} u_1 & u_2 \\ w_1 & w_2 \end{vmatrix} \\
 &= \begin{vmatrix} v_1 & v_2 & v_3 \\ u_1 & u_2 & u_3 \\ w_1 & w_2 & w_3 \end{vmatrix} \tag{2.5.13} \\
 &= \|v\| \|u\| \|w\| \cos \phi \sin \theta,
 \end{aligned}$$

where θ is the angle between \mathbf{u} and \mathbf{w} , and ϕ is the angle between \mathbf{v} and the normal to the plane defined by \mathbf{u} and \mathbf{w} .

2. The absolute value of a triple scalar product calculates the volume of the parallelepiped determined by the three vectors. The result is independent of the order in which the triple product is taken.
3. $(\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{u}) \times (\mathbf{w} \times \mathbf{z}) = [\mathbf{vwz}]\mathbf{u} - [\mathbf{uwz}]\mathbf{v} = [\mathbf{vuz}]\mathbf{w} - [\mathbf{vuw}]\mathbf{z}$.
4. The *vector triple product* involving three three-dimensional vectors \mathbf{v} , \mathbf{u} , and \mathbf{w} , given by $\mathbf{v} \times (\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{w})$, results in a vector, perpendicular to \mathbf{v} , lying in the plane of \mathbf{u} and \mathbf{w} , and is defined as

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mathbf{v} \times (\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{w}) &= (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{w})\mathbf{u} - (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{u})\mathbf{w}, \\
 &= \begin{vmatrix} \hat{\mathbf{i}} & \hat{\mathbf{j}} & \hat{\mathbf{k}} \\ v_1 & v_2 & v_3 \\ \begin{vmatrix} u_2 & u_3 \\ w_2 & w_3 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} u_3 & u_1 \\ w_3 & w_1 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} u_1 & u_2 \\ w_1 & w_2 \end{vmatrix} \end{vmatrix}. \tag{2.5.14}
 \end{aligned}$$

5. Given three non-coplanar reference vectors \mathbf{v} , \mathbf{u} , and \mathbf{w} , the *reciprocal system* is given by \mathbf{v}^* , \mathbf{u}^* , and \mathbf{w}^* , where

$$\mathbf{v}^* = \frac{\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{w}}{[\mathbf{vuw}]}, \quad \mathbf{u}^* = \frac{\mathbf{w} \times \mathbf{v}}{[\mathbf{vuw}]}, \quad \mathbf{w}^* = \frac{\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{u}}{[\mathbf{vuw}]} \tag{2.5.15}$$

Note that

$$\begin{aligned}
 1 &= \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v}^* = \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{u}^* = \mathbf{w} \cdot \mathbf{w}^* \\
 \text{and } 0 &= \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{u}^* = \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{w}^* = \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}^*, \text{ etc.} \tag{2.5.16}
 \end{aligned}$$

The system $\hat{\mathbf{i}}, \hat{\mathbf{j}}, \hat{\mathbf{k}}$ is its own reciprocal.

2.6 LINEAR AND MATRIX ALGEBRA

2.6.1 DEFINITIONS

1. An $m \times n$ matrix is a two-dimensional array of numbers consisting of m rows and n columns. By convention, a matrix is denoted by a capital letter emphasized with italics, as in A , B , D , or boldface, \mathbf{A} , \mathbf{B} , \mathbf{D} . Sometimes a matrix has a subscript denoting the dimensions of the matrix, e.g., $A_{2 \times 3}$. If A is a real $n \times m$ matrix, then we write $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times m}$. Higher dimensional matrices, although less frequently encountered, are accommodated in a similar fashion, e.g., a three-dimensional matrix $A_{m \times n \times p}$, and so on.
2. $A_{m \times n}$ is called *rectangular* if $m \neq n$.
3. $A_{m \times n}$ is called *square* if $m = n$.
4. A particular component (equivalently: element) of a matrix is denoted by the lower-case letter of that which names the matrix, along with two subscripts corresponding to the row i and column j location of the component in the array, e.g.,

$$\begin{array}{ll} A_{m \times n} & \text{has components } a_{ij}; \\ B_{m \times n} & \text{has components } b_{ij}. \end{array}$$

For example, a_{23} is the component in the second row and third column of matrix A .

5. Any component a_{ij} with $i = j$ is called a *diagonal* component.
6. The diagonal alignment of components in a matrix extending from the upper left to the lower right is called the *principal* or *main* diagonal.
7. Any component a_{ij} with $i \neq j$ is called an *off-diagonal* component.
8. Two matrices A and B are said to be equal if they have the same number of rows (m) and columns (n), and $a_{ij} = b_{ij}$ for all $1 \leq i \leq m$, $1 \leq j \leq n$.
9. An $m \times 1$ dimensional matrix is called a *column vector*. Similarly, a $1 \times n$ dimensional matrix is called a *row vector*.
10. A column (row) vector with all components equal to zero is called a *null* vector and is usually denoted by $\mathbf{0}$.
11. A column vector with all components equal to one is often denoted by \mathbf{e} . The analogous row vector is denoted by \mathbf{e}^T .
12. The standard basis consists of the vectors $\{\mathbf{e}_1, \mathbf{e}_2, \dots, \mathbf{e}_n\}$ where \mathbf{e}_i is an $n \times 1$ vector of all zeros, except for the i^{th} component, which is one.

-
13. The scalar $\mathbf{x}^T \mathbf{x} = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2$ is the sum of squares of all components of the vector \mathbf{x} .
 14. The *weighted* sum of squares is defined by $\mathbf{x}^T D_w \mathbf{x} = \sum_{i=1}^n w_i x_i^2$, when \mathbf{x} has n components and the diagonal matrix D_w is of dimension $(n \times n)$.
 15. If Q is a square matrix, then $\mathbf{x}^T Q \mathbf{x}$ is called a *quadratic* form.
 16. An $n \times n$ matrix A is called *non-singular*, or *invertible*, or *regular*, if there exists an $n \times n$ matrix B such that $AB = BA = I$. The unique matrix B satisfying this condition is called the *inverse* of A , and is denoted by A^{-1} .
 17. The scalar $\mathbf{x}^T \mathbf{y} = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i y_i$, the inner product of \mathbf{x} and \mathbf{y} , is the sum of products of the components of \mathbf{x} by those of \mathbf{y} .
 18. The *weighted* sum of products is $\mathbf{x}^T D_w \mathbf{y} = \sum_{i=1}^n w_i x_i y_i$, when \mathbf{x} and \mathbf{y} have n components, and the diagonal matrix D_w is $(n \times n)$.
 19. The map $\mathbf{x} \mapsto \mathbf{x}^T Q \mathbf{y}$ is called a *bilinear* form, where Q is a matrix of appropriate dimension.
 20. The *transpose* of an $m \times n$ matrix A , denoted by A^T , is an $n \times m$ matrix with rows and columns interchanged, so that the (i, j) component of A is the (j, i) component of A^T , and $(A^T)_{ji} = (A)_{ij} = a_{ij}$.
 21. The *Hermitian conjugate* of a matrix A , denoted by A^H , is obtained by transposing A and replacing each element by its complex conjugate. Hence, if $a_{kl} = u_{kl} + iv_{kl}$, then $(A^H)_{kl} = u_{lk} - iv_{lk}$, with $i = \sqrt{-1}$.
 22. If Q is a square matrix, then the map $\mathbf{x} \mapsto \mathbf{x}^H Q \mathbf{x}$ is called a *Hermitian* form.

2.6.2 TYPES OF MATRICES

1. A square matrix with all components off the principal diagonal equal to zero is called a *diagonal matrix*, typically denoted by the letter D with a subscript indicating the typical element in the principal diagonal.

EXAMPLE

$$D_a = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & a_{22} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & a_{33} \end{bmatrix}, \quad D_\lambda = \begin{bmatrix} \lambda_{11} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_{22} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \lambda_{33} \end{bmatrix}.$$

2. A *zero*, or *null*, *matrix* is one whose elements are all zero (notation is “0”).
3. The *identity matrix*, denoted by I , is the diagonal matrix with $a_{ij} = 1$ for all $i = j$, and $a_{ij} = 0$ for $i \neq j$. The $n \times n$ identity matrix is denoted I_n .
4. The *elementary matrix*, E_{ij} , is defined differently in different contexts:

(a) Elementary matrices have the form $E_{ij} = \mathbf{e}_i \mathbf{e}_j^T$. Hence, $A = \sum_i \sum_j a_{ij} E_{ij}$.

- (b) Elementary matrices are also written as $E = I - \alpha uv^T$, where I is the identity matrix, α is a scalar, and u and v are vectors of the same dimension. In this context, the elementary matrix is referred to as a *rank-one modification* of an identity matrix.
- (c) In Gaussian elimination, the matrix that subtracts a multiple ℓ of row j from row i is called $E_{ij} = I - \ell \mathbf{e}_i \mathbf{e}_j^T$, with 1's on the diagonal and the number $-\ell$ in row i column j .

EXAMPLE

$$E_{31} = I - 5\mathbf{e}_3\mathbf{e}_1^T = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -5 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

5. A matrix with all components above the principal diagonal equal to zero is called a *lower triangular matrix*.

EXAMPLE

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & 0 & 0 \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & 0 \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{is lower triangular.}$$

6. A matrix with all components below the principal diagonal equal to zero is called an *upper triangular matrix*. (The transpose of a lower triangular matrix is an upper triangular matrix.)
7. A matrix whose components are arranged in m rows and a single column is called a *column matrix*, or *column vector*, and is typically denoted using bold-face, lower-case letters, e.g., \mathbf{a} and \mathbf{b} .
8. A matrix whose components are arranged in n columns and a single row is called a *row matrix*, or *row vector*, and is typically denoted as a transposed column vector, e.g., \mathbf{a}^T and \mathbf{b}^T .
9. A square matrix is called *symmetric* if $A = A^T$.
10. A square matrix is called *skew symmetric* if $A^T = -A$.
11. A square matrix A is called *Hermitian* if $A = A^H$. A square matrix A is called *skew-Hermitian* if $A^H = -A$. All real symmetric matrices are Hermitian.
12. A square matrix Q with orthonormal columns is said to be *orthogonal*.¹ It follows directly that the rows of Q must also be orthonormal, so that $QQ^T = Q^TQ = I$, or $Q^T = Q^{-1}$. The determinant of an orthogonal matrix is ± 1 .
A *rotation matrix* is an orthogonal matrix whose determinant is equal to $+1$.
13. An $m \times n$ matrix A with orthonormal columns has the property $A^T A = I$.

¹Note the inconsistency in terminology that has persisted.

-
14. A square matrix is called *unitary* if $A^H A = I$. A real unitary matrix is orthogonal. The eigenvalues of a unitary matrix all have an absolute value of one.
 15. A square matrix is called a *permutation matrix* if its columns are a permutation of the columns of I . A permutation matrix is orthogonal.
 16. A square matrix is called *idempotent* if $AA = A^2 = A$.
 17. A square matrix is called a *projection matrix* if it is both Hermitian and idempotent: $A^H = A^2 = A$.
 18. A square matrix is called *normal* if $A^H A = A A^H$. The following matrices are normal: diagonal, Hermitian, unitary, skew-Hermitian.
 19. A square matrix is called *nilpotent* to index k if $A^k = 0$ but $A^{k-1} \neq 0$. The eigenvalues of a nilpotent matrix are all zero.
 20. A *principal sub-matrix* of a symmetric matrix A is formed by deleting rows and columns of A simultaneously, e.g., row 1 and column 1; row 9 and column 9, etc.
 21. A square matrix whose elements are constant along each diagonal is called a *Toeplitz* matrix.

EXAMPLE

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a & d & e \\ b & a & d \\ c & b & a \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad M = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 0 & 1 \\ -11 & 4 & 0 \\ 3 & -11 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.6.1)$$

are Toeplitz matrices. Notice that Toeplitz matrices are symmetric about a diagonal extending from the upper right-hand corner element to the lower left-hand corner element. This type of symmetry is called *persymmetry*.

22. A *Vandermonde* matrix is a square matrix $V \in \mathbb{R}^{(n+1) \times (n+1)}$ in which each column contains unit increasing powers of a single matrix value:

$$V = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & \cdots & 1 \\ v_1 & v_2 & \cdots & v_{(n+1)} \\ v_1^2 & v_2^2 & \cdots & v_{(n+1)}^2 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \cdots & \vdots \\ v_1^n & v_2^n & \cdots & v_{(n+1)}^n \end{bmatrix}. \quad (2.6.2)$$

23. A square matrix U is said to be in *upper Hessenberg* form if $u_{ij} = 0$ whenever $i > j+1$. An upper Hessenberg matrix is essentially an upper triangular matrix with an extra non-zero element immediately below the main diagonal entry in each column of U . For example,

$$U = \begin{bmatrix} u_{11} & u_{12} & u_{13} & u_{14} \\ b_{21} & u_{22} & u_{23} & u_{24} \\ 0 & b_{32} & u_{33} & u_{34} \\ 0 & 0 & b_{43} & u_{44} \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{is upper Hessenberg.}$$

24. If the sum of the components of each column of a matrix $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ equals one, then A is called a *Markov matrix*.

25. A *circulant matrix* is an $n \times n$ matrix of the form

$$C = \begin{bmatrix} c_0 & c_1 & c_2 & \cdots & c_{n-2} & c_{n-1} \\ c_{n-1} & c_0 & c_1 & \cdots & c_{n-3} & c_{n-2} \\ c_{n-2} & c_{n-1} & c_0 & \cdots & c_{n-4} & c_{n-3} \\ \vdots & & & & & \vdots \\ c_1 & c_2 & c_3 & \cdots & c_{n-1} & c_0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad (2.6.3)$$

where the components c_{ij} are such that $(j - i) \bmod n$ have the same value c_k . These components comprise the k^{th} *stripe* of C .

26. A matrix $A = (a_{ij})$ has *lower bandwidth* p if $a_{ij} = 0$ whenever $i > j + p$ and *upper bandwidth* q if $a_{ij} = 0$ whenever $j > i + q$. When they are equal, they are the *bandwidth* of A . A diagonal matrix has bandwidth 0. A *tridiagonal matrix* has bandwidth 1. An upper (resp. lower) triangular matrix has upper (resp. lower) bandwidth of $n - 1$ (resp. $m - 1$).

27. If a rotation is defined by the matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} \end{bmatrix}$ then its *fixed axis* of rotation is given by $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{i}(a_{23} - a_{32}) + \mathbf{j}(a_{31} - a_{13}) + \mathbf{k}(a_{12} - a_{21})$.

28. A *Householder transformation*, or *Householder reflection*, is an $n \times n$ matrix H of the form $H = I - (2\mathbf{u}\mathbf{u}^T)/(\mathbf{u}^T\mathbf{u})$, where the *Householder vector* $\mathbf{u} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ is non-zero.

29. A *Givens rotation* is defined as a rank-two correction to the identity matrix given by

$$G(i, k, \theta) = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \cdots & 0 & \cdots & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & & \vdots & & \vdots \\ 0 & \cdots & c & \cdots & s & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ 0 & \cdots & -s & \cdots & c & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & & \vdots & & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & \cdots & 0 & \cdots & 0 & \cdots & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{matrix} i \\ \\ k \\ \\ k \\ \\ i \end{matrix}, \quad (2.6.4)$$

where $c = \cos \theta$ and $s = \sin \theta$ for some angle θ . Premultiplication by $G(i, k, \theta)^T$ induces a counterclockwise rotation of θ radians in the (i, k) plane. For $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ and $\mathbf{y} = G(i, k, \theta)^T \mathbf{x}$, the components of \mathbf{y} are given by

$$y_j = \begin{cases} cx_i - sx_k, & \text{for } j = i \\ sx_i + cx_k, & \text{for } j = k \\ x_j, & \text{for } j \neq i, k. \end{cases} \quad (2.6.5)$$

2.6.3 CONFORMABILITY FOR ADDITION AND MULTIPLICATION

- Two matrices A and B can be added (subtracted) if they are of the same dimension. The result is a matrix of the same dimension. If $C = A + B$ then $c_{ij} = a_{ij} + b_{ij}$.

EXAMPLE

$$A_{2 \times 3} + B_{2 \times 3} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 2 & -1 \\ 4 & 0 & 9 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 11 & -2 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 14 & 0 & 2 \\ 4 & 1 & 10 \end{bmatrix}.$$

- Multiplication of a matrix or a vector by a scalar is achieved by multiplying each component by that scalar. If $B = \alpha A$, then $b_{ij} = \alpha a_{ij}$ for all components.
- The matrix multiplication AB is defined if the number of columns of A is equal to the number of rows of B .
- The multiplication of two matrices $A_{m \times n}$ and $B_{n \times q}$ results in a matrix $C_{m \times q}$ whose components are defined as

$$c_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^n a_{ik} b_{kj} \quad (2.6.6)$$

for $i = 1, 2, \dots, m$ and $j = 1, 2, \dots, q$. Each c_{ij} is the result of the inner (dot) product of the i^{th} row of A with the j^{th} column of B .

$$\left[\begin{array}{c} \text{---} \\ \vdots \\ \text{---} \end{array} \right] \left[\begin{array}{c} \vdots \\ \text{---} \\ \vdots \end{array} \right] = \left[\begin{array}{c} \text{---} \\ \vdots \\ \text{---} \end{array} \right]$$

i^{th} row of A j^{th} column of B $(ij)^{\text{th}}$ element of C

This rule applies similarly for matrix multiplication involving more than two matrices. If $ABCD = E$ then

$$e_{ij} = \sum_k \sum_l \sum_m a_{ik} b_{kl} c_{lm} d_{mj}. \quad (2.6.7)$$

The second subscript for each matrix component must coincide with the first subscript of the next one.

EXAMPLE

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 & 3 \\ -4 & 1 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 5 & -3 & -3 \\ 2 & 2 & -1 \\ -7 & 1 & 5 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -13 & -5 & 10 \\ -46 & 18 & 31 \end{bmatrix}.$$

5. In general, matrix multiplication is not commutative: $AB \neq BA$.
6. Matrix multiplication is associative: $A(BC) = (AB)C$.
7. The distributive law of multiplication and addition holds: $C(A + B) = CA + CB$ and $(A + B)C = AC + BC$.
8. Both the transpose operator and the Hermitian operator reverse the order of matrix multiplication: $(ABC)^T = C^T B^T A^T$ and $(ABC)^H = C^H B^H A^H$.

9. *Strassen algorithm*: The matrix product $\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} b_{11} & b_{12} \\ b_{21} & b_{22} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} c_{11} & c_{12} \\ c_{21} & c_{22} \end{bmatrix}$ can be computed in the following way:

$$\begin{aligned} m_1 &= (a_{12} - a_{22})(b_{21} + b_{22}), & c_{11} &= m_1 + m_2 - m_4 + m_6, \\ m_2 &= (a_{11} + a_{22})(b_{11} + b_{22}), & c_{12} &= m_4 + m_5, \\ m_3 &= (a_{11} - a_{21})(b_{11} + b_{12}), & c_{21} &= m_6 + m_7, \text{ and} \\ m_4 &= (a_{11} + a_{12})b_{22}, & c_{22} &= m_2 - m_3 + m_5 - m_7. \\ m_5 &= a_{11}(b_{12} - b_{22}), \\ m_6 &= a_{22}(b_{21} - b_{11}), \\ m_7 &= (a_{21} + a_{22})b_{11}, \end{aligned}$$

This computation uses 7 multiplications and 18 additions and subtractions. Using this formula recursively allows multiplication of two $n \times n$ matrices using $O(n^{\log_2 7}) = O(n^{2.807\dots})$ scalar multiplications.

10. The order in which matrices are grouped together for multiplication can change the number of scalar multiplications required. The straightforward number of scalar multiplications required to multiply matrix $X_{a \times b}$ by matrix $Y_{b \times c}$ is abc , without using clever algorithms such as Strassen's. For example, consider the matrix product $P = A_{10 \times 100} B_{100 \times 5} C_{5 \times 50}$. The parenthesization $P = ((AB)C)$ requires $(10 \times 100 \times 5) + (10 \times 5 \times 50) = 7,500$ scalar multiplications. The parenthesization $P = (A(BC))$ requires $(10 \times 100 \times 50) + (100 \times 5 \times 50) = 75,000$ scalar multiplications.
11. Pre-multiplication by a diagonal matrix scales the rows

$$\begin{bmatrix} d_{11} & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & d_{22} & & 0 \\ \vdots & & \ddots & \\ 0 & 0 & & d_{nn} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & \cdots & a_{1m} \\ a_{21} & \cdots & a_{2m} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{n1} & \cdots & a_{nm} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} d_{11}a_{11} & \cdots & d_{11}a_{1m} \\ d_{22}a_{21} & \cdots & d_{22}a_{2m} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ d_{nn}a_{n1} & \cdots & d_{nn}a_{nm} \end{bmatrix}$$

12. Post-multiplication by a diagonal matrix scales the columns

$$\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & \cdots & a_{1m} \\ a_{21} & \cdots & a_{2m} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{n1} & \cdots & a_{nm} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} d_{11} & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & d_{22} & & 0 \\ \vdots & & \ddots & \\ 0 & 0 & & d_{mm} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} d_{11}a_{11} & \cdots & d_{mm}a_{1m} \\ d_{11}a_{21} & \cdots & d_{mm}a_{2m} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ d_{11}a_{n1} & \cdots & d_{mm}a_{nm} \end{bmatrix}$$

2.6.4 DETERMINANTS AND PERMANENTS

1. The *determinant* of a square matrix A , denoted by $|A|$ or $\det(A)$ or $\det A$, is a scalar function of A defined as

$$\begin{aligned} \det(A) &= \det \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \dots & \vdots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \cdots & a_{nn} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \cdots & a_{nn} \end{vmatrix} \quad (2.6.8) \\ &= \sum_{\sigma} \operatorname{sgn}(\sigma) a_{1,\sigma(1)} a_{2,\sigma(2)} \cdots a_{n,\sigma(n)} \\ &= \sum (-1)^{\delta} a_{1i_1} a_{2i_2} \cdots a_{ni_n} \end{aligned}$$

where the sum is taken either

- (a) over all permutations σ of $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ and the signum function, $\operatorname{sgn}(\sigma)$, is (-1) raised to the power of the number of successive transpositions required to change the permutation σ to the identity permutation; or
 - (b) over all permutations $i_1 \neq i_2 \neq \cdots \neq i_n$, and δ denotes the number of transpositions necessary to bring the sequence (i_1, i_2, \dots, i_n) back into the natural order $(1, 2, \dots, n)$.
2. For a 2×2 matrix, $\begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{vmatrix} = a_{11}a_{22} - a_{12}a_{21}$.

For a 3×3 matrix,

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} \end{vmatrix} = a_{11}a_{22}a_{33} + a_{12}a_{23}a_{31} + a_{13}a_{21}a_{32} \quad (2.6.9) \\ - a_{13}a_{22}a_{31} - a_{11}a_{23}a_{32} - a_{12}a_{21}a_{33}.$$

3. The determinant of the identity matrix is one.
4. Note that $|A||B| = |AB|$ and $|A| = |A^T|$.
5. Interchanging two rows (or columns) of a matrix changes the sign of its determinant.
6. A determinant does not change its value if a linear combination of other rows (or columns) is added to or subtracted from any given row (or column).
7. Multiplying an entire row (or column) of A by a scalar γ causes the determinant to be multiplied by the same scalar γ .
8. For an $n \times n$ matrix A , $|\gamma A| = \gamma^n |A|$.
9. If $\det(A) = 0$, then A is *singular*; if $\det(A) \neq 0$, then A is *non-singular* or *invertible*.

-
10. $\det(A^{-1}) = 1/\det(A)$.
11. When the edges of a parallelepiped P are defined by the rows (or columns) of A , the absolute value of the determinant of A measures the volume of P . Thus, if any row (or column) of A is dependent upon another row (or column) of A , the determinant of A equals zero.
12. The *cofactor* of a square matrix A , $\text{cof}_{ij}(A)$, is the determinant of a sub-matrix obtained by striking the i^{th} row and the j^{th} column of A and choosing a positive (negative) sign if $(i + j)$ is even (odd).

EXAMPLE

$$\text{cof}_{23} \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 & 3 \\ 6 & 1 & 5 \\ -2 & 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix} = (-1)^{2+3} \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ -2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = -(2 + 8) = -10. \quad (2.6.10)$$

13. Let a_{ij} denote the components of A and a^{ij} those of A^{-1} . Then,

$$a^{ij} = \text{cof}_{ji}(A)/|A|. \quad (2.6.11)$$

14. *Partitioning of determinants*: Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} B & C \\ D & E \end{bmatrix}$. Assuming all inverses exist, then

$$|A| = |E| |(B - CE^{-1}D)| = |B| |(E - DB^{-1}C)|. \quad (2.6.12)$$

15. *Laplace development*: The determinant of A is a combination of row i (column j) and the cofactors of row i (column j), i.e.,

$$\begin{aligned} |A| &= a_{i1}\text{cof}_{i1}(A) + a_{i2}\text{cof}_{i2}(A) + \cdots + a_{in}\text{cof}_{in}(A), \\ &= a_{1j}\text{cof}_{1j}(A) + a_{2j}\text{cof}_{2j}(A) + \cdots + a_{nj}\text{cof}_{nj}(A), \end{aligned} \quad (2.6.13)$$

for any row i or any column j .

16. Omitting the signum function in Equation (2.6.8) yields the definition of *permanent* of A , given by $\text{per } A = \sum_{\sigma} a_{1,\sigma(1)} \cdots a_{n,\sigma(n)}$. Properties of the permanent include:

- (a) If A is an $m \times n$ matrix and B is an $n \times m$ matrix, then

$$|\text{per}(AB)|^2 \leq \text{per}(AA^H) \text{per}(B^H B). \quad (2.6.14)$$

- (b) If P and Q are permutation matrices, then $\text{per } PAQ = \text{per } A$.
- (c) If D and G are diagonal matrices, then $\text{per } DAG = \text{per } D \text{ per } A \text{ per } G$.

2.6.5 MATRIX NORMS

- The mapping $g : \mathbb{R}^{m \times n} \Rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is a *matrix norm* if g satisfies the same three properties as a vector norm:
 - $g(A) \geq 0$ for all A and $g(A) = 0$ if and only if $A \equiv 0$, so that (in norm notation) $\|A\| > 0$ for all non-zero A .
 - For two matrices $A, B \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$, $g(A + B) \leq g(A) + g(B)$, so that $\|A + B\| \leq \|A\| + \|B\|$.
 - $g(rA) = |r|g(A)$, where $r \in \mathbb{R}$, so that $\|\gamma A\| = |\gamma| \|A\|$.
- The most common matrix norms are the L_p matrix norm and the *Frobenius* norm.
- The L_p norm of a matrix A is the number defined by

$$\|A\|_p = \sup_{\mathbf{x} \neq \mathbf{0}} \frac{\|A\mathbf{x}\|_p}{\|\mathbf{x}\|_p} \quad (2.6.15)$$

where $\|\cdot\|_p$ represents one of the L_p (vector) norms with $p = 1, 2$, or ∞ .

- The L_1 norm of $A_{m \times n}$ is defined as $\|A\|_1 = \max_{1 \leq j \leq n} \sum_{i=1}^m |a_{ij}|$.
 - The L_2 norm of A is the square root of the greatest eigenvalue of $A^T A$, (i.e., $\|A\|_2^2 = \lambda_{\max}(A^T A)$), which is the same as the largest singular value of A , $\|A\|_2 = \sigma_1(A)$.
 - The L_∞ norm is defined as $\|A\|_\infty = \max_{1 \leq i \leq m} \sum_{j=1}^n |a_{ij}|$.
- The *Frobenius* or *Hilbert–Schmidt* norm of a matrix A is defined as

$$\|A\|_F = \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^m \sum_{j=1}^n |a_{ij}|^2} \quad (2.6.16)$$

which satisfies $\|A\|_F^2 = \text{tr}(A^T A)$. Since $\mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$ is isomorphic to \mathbb{R}^{mn} , the Frobenius norm can be interpreted as the L_2 norm of an $nm \times 1$ column vector in which each column of A is appended to the next in succession. (See the Vector operation (“Vec”) in [Section 2.6.17](#).)

- When A is symmetric, then $\|A\|_2 = \max_j |\lambda_j|$, where $\{\lambda_j\}$ are the eigenvalues of A .
- The following properties hold:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{\sqrt{m}} \|A\|_1 &\leq \|A\|_2 \leq \sqrt{n} \|A\|_1, \\ \max_{i,j} |a_{ij}| &\leq \|A\|_2 \leq \sqrt{mn} \max_{i,j} |a_{ij}|, \text{ and} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{n}} \|A\|_\infty &\leq \|A\|_2 \leq \sqrt{m} \|A\|_\infty. \end{aligned} \quad (2.6.17)$$

-
- The matrix p norms satisfy the additional property of *consistency*, defined as $\|AB\|_p \leq \|A\|_p \|B\|_p$.
 - The Frobenius norm is *compatible* with the vector 2 norm, i.e., $\|A\mathbf{x}\|_F \leq \|A\|_F \|\mathbf{x}\|_2$. The Frobenius norm also satisfies $\|A\|_2 \leq \|A\|_F \leq \sqrt{n} \|A\|_2$.

2.6.6 SINGULARITY, RANK, AND INVERSES

- An $n \times n$ matrix A is called *singular* if there exists a vector $\mathbf{x} \neq \mathbf{0}$ such that $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ or $A^T\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$. (Note that $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ means that all components of \mathbf{x} are zero.) If a matrix is not singular, it is called *non-singular*. (This is consistent with note 16 on page 138.)
- $(AB)^{-1} = B^{-1}A^{-1}$, provided all inverses exist.
- $(A^{-1})^T = (A^T)^{-1}$.
- $(\gamma A)^{-1} = (1/\gamma)A^{-1}$.
- If D_w is a diagonal matrix, then $D_w^{-1} = D_{1/w}$.

EXAMPLE If $D_w = \begin{bmatrix} w_{11} & 0 \\ 0 & w_{22} \end{bmatrix}$ then $D_w^{-1} = D_{1/w} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{w_{11}} & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{1}{w_{22}} \end{bmatrix}$.

- Partitioning: Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} B & C \\ D & E \end{bmatrix}$. Assuming that all inverses exist, then $A^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} X & Y \\ Z & U \end{bmatrix}$, where

$$\begin{aligned} X &= (B - CE^{-1}D)^{-1}, & U &= (E - DB^{-1}C)^{-1}, \\ Y &= -B^{-1}CU, & Z &= -E^{-1}DX. \end{aligned}$$

- The inverse of a 2×2 matrix is as follows (defined when $ad \neq bc$):

$$\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix}^{-1} = \frac{1}{ad - bc} \begin{bmatrix} d & -b \\ -c & a \end{bmatrix}$$

- If A and B are both invertible, then

$$(A + B)^{-1} = B^{-1} (A^{-1} + B^{-1})^{-1} A^{-1} = A^{-1} (A^{-1} + B^{-1})^{-1} B^{-1}. \quad (2.6.18)$$

- The *row rank* of a matrix A is defined as the number of linearly independent rows of A . Likewise, the *column rank* equals the number of linearly independent columns of A . For any matrix, the row rank equals the column rank.
- If $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ has rank of n , then A is said to have *full rank*.
- A square matrix is invertible if, and only if, it has full rank.
- $\text{Rank}(AB) \leq \min[\text{rank}(A), \text{rank}(B)]$.
- $\text{Rank}(A^T A) = \text{rank}(A A^T) = \text{rank}(A)$.

2.6.7 SYSTEMS OF LINEAR EQUATIONS

1. Suppose that A is a matrix. Then $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ is a *system of linear equations*. If A is square and non-singular, there exists a unique solution $\mathbf{x} = A^{-1}\mathbf{b}$.
2. For the linear system of equations involving n variables and m equations, written as $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ or

$$\begin{aligned}
 a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + \cdots + a_{1m}x_m &= b_1, \\
 a_{21}x_1 + a_{22}x_2 + \cdots + a_{2m}x_m &= b_2, \\
 &\vdots \\
 a_{n1}x_1 + a_{n2}x_2 + \cdots + a_{nm}x_m &= b_n,
 \end{aligned}
 \tag{2.6.19}$$

the possible outcomes when searching for a solution are:

- (a) A unique solution exists, and the system is called *consistent*.
 - (b) No such solution exists and the system is called *inconsistent*.
 - (c) Multiple solutions exist, the system has an infinite number of solutions, and the system is called *undetermined*.
3. The solvability cases of the linear systems $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ (when A is $m \times n$) are:
 - (a) If $\text{rank}(A) = m = n$, then there is a unique solution.
 - (b) If $\text{rank}(A) = m < n$, then there is an exact solution with free parameters.
 - (c) If $\text{rank}(A) = n < m$, then either there is a unique solution, or there is a unique least-squares solution.
 - (d) If $\text{rank}(A) < m < n$, or $\text{rank}(A) < n < m$, or $\text{rank}(A) < n = m$: then either there is an exact solution with free parameters, or there are non-unique least-squares solutions.
 4. If the system of equations $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ is undetermined, then we may find the \mathbf{x} that minimizes $\|A\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{b}\|_p$ for some p .

EXAMPLE If $A = [1 \ 1 \ 1]^T$ and $\mathbf{b} = [b_1 \ b_2 \ b_3]^T$ with $b_1 \geq b_2 \geq b_3 \geq 0$ then the minimum of $\|A\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{b}\|_p$ in different norms is:

$$\begin{aligned}
 p = 1 &\longrightarrow \mathbf{x}_{\text{optimal}} = b_2 \\
 p = 2 &\longrightarrow \mathbf{x}_{\text{optimal}} = (b_1 + b_2 + b_3)/3 \\
 p = \infty &\longrightarrow \mathbf{x}_{\text{optimal}} = (b_1 + b_3)/2
 \end{aligned}
 \tag{2.6.20}$$

5. For the system of linear equations $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ (with A square and non-singular), the sensitivity of the solution \mathbf{x} to perturbations in A and \mathbf{b} is given in terms of the *condition number* of A defined by

$$\text{cond}(A) = \|A^{-1}\| \|A\|,
 \tag{2.6.21}$$

where $\|\cdot\|$ is any of the L_p norms. In all cases, $\text{cond}(A) \geq 1$.

When $\text{cond}(A)$ is equal to one, A is said to be *perfectly conditioned*. Matrices with small condition numbers are called *well-conditioned*. If $\text{cond}(A)$ is large, then A is called *ill-conditioned*.

6. For the system of equations $(A + \epsilon F)\mathbf{x}(\epsilon) = (\mathbf{b} + \epsilon \mathbf{f})$, the solution satisfies

$$\frac{\|\mathbf{x}(\epsilon) - \mathbf{x}(0)\|}{\|\mathbf{x}(0)\|} \leq \text{cond}(A) \left(\epsilon \frac{\|F\|}{\|A\|} + \epsilon \frac{\|\mathbf{f}\|}{\|\mathbf{b}\|} \right) + O(\epsilon^2). \quad (2.6.22)$$

7. When A is singular, the definition of condition number is modified slightly, incorporating the pseudo-inverse of A , and is defined by $\text{cond}(A) = \|A^+ \| \|A\|$ (see page 151).
8. The size of the determinant of a square matrix A is *not* related to the condition number of A . For example, the $n \times n$ matrices below have $\kappa_\infty(B_n) = n2^{n-1}$ and $\det(B_n) = 1$; $\kappa_p(D_n) = 1$ and $\det(D_n) = 10^{-n}$.

$$B_n = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & \dots & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & & -1 \\ \vdots & & \ddots & \\ 0 & 0 & & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad D_n = \text{diag}(10^{-1}, \dots, 10^{-1}).$$

9. Let $A = (a_{ij})$ be an $n \times n$ matrix. Using the L_2 condition number, $\text{cond} A = \max_j |\lambda_j(A)| / \min_i |\lambda_i(A)|$:

| Matrix $A_{n \times n} = (a_{ij})$ | Condition number |
|---|--|
| A is orthogonal | $\text{cond}(A) = 1$ |
| $a_{ij} = \sqrt{2/(n+1)} \sin(ij\pi/(n+1))$ | $\text{cond}(A) = 1$ |
| $a_{ij} = n\delta_{ij} + 1$ | $\text{cond}(A) = 2$ |
| $a_{ij} = (i+j)/p, n = p-1, p$ a prime | $\text{cond}(A) = \sqrt{n+1}$ |
| The circulant whose first row is $(1, 2, \dots, n)$ | $\text{cond}(A) \sim n$ |
| $a_{ij} = \begin{cases} i/j & \text{if } i \leq j \\ j/i & \text{if } i > j \end{cases}$ | $\text{cond}(A) \sim cn^{1+\epsilon},$ $0 \leq \epsilon \leq 1$ |
| $a_{ij} = \begin{cases} -2 & \text{if } i = j \\ 1 & \text{if } i-j = 1 \\ 0 & \text{if } i-j \geq 2 \end{cases}$ | $\text{cond}(A) \sim 4n^2/\pi^2$ |
| $a_{ij} = 2 \min(i, j) - 1$ | $\text{cond}(A) \sim 16n^2/\pi^2$ |
| $a_{ij} = (i+j-1)^{-1}$ (Hilbert matrix) | $\log \text{cond}(A) \sim Kn,$ $K \approx 3.5$ |

2.6.8 LINEAR SPACES AND LINEAR MAPPINGS

1. Let $R(A)$ and $N(A)$ denote, respectively, the range space and null space of an $m \times n$ matrix A . They are defined by:

$$\begin{aligned} R(A) &= \{\mathbf{y} \mid \mathbf{y} = A\mathbf{x}; \text{ for some } \mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n\}, \\ N(A) &= \{\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}\}. \end{aligned} \quad (2.6.23)$$

2. The *projection matrix*, onto a subspace S , denoted P_S , is the unique matrix possessing the three properties:

- (a) $P_S = P_S^T$;
- (b) $P_S^2 = P_S$ (the projection matrix is *idempotent*);
- (c) The vector \mathbf{b}_S lies in the subspace S if, and only if, $\mathbf{b}_S = P_S \mathbf{v}$ for some vector \mathbf{v} . In other words, \mathbf{b}_S can be written as a linear combination of the columns of P_S .

3. When the $m \times n$ matrix A (with $n \leq m$) has rank n , the projection of A onto the subspaces of A is given by:

$$\begin{aligned} P_{R(A)} &= A(A^T A)^{-1} A^T, \\ P_{R(A^T)} &= I, \\ P_{N(A^T)} &= I - A(A^T A)^{-1} A^T. \end{aligned} \tag{2.6.24}$$

When A is of rank m , the projection of A onto the subspaces of A is given by:

$$\begin{aligned} P_{R(A)} &= I, \\ P_{R(A^T)} &= A^T(AA^T)^{-1} A, \\ P_{N(A)} &= I - A^T(AA^T)^{-1} A. \end{aligned} \tag{2.6.25}$$

4. When A is not of full rank, the matrix $A\tilde{A}$ satisfies the requirements for a projection matrix. The matrix \tilde{A} is the coefficient matrix of the system of equations $\mathbf{x}_+ = \tilde{A}\mathbf{b}$, generated by the *least-squares* problem $\min \|\mathbf{b} - A\mathbf{x}\|_2^2$. Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} P_{R(A)} &= A\tilde{A}, \\ P_{R(A^T)} &= \tilde{A}A, \\ P_{N(A)} &= I - \tilde{A}A, \\ P_{N(A^T)} &= I - A\tilde{A}. \end{aligned} \tag{2.6.26}$$

5. A matrix $B \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ is called *similar* to a matrix $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ if $B = T^{-1}AT$ for some non-singular matrix T .

6. If B is similar to A , then B has the same eigenvalues as A .

7. If B is similar to A and if \mathbf{x} is an eigenvector of A , then $\mathbf{y} = T^{-1}\mathbf{x}$ is an eigenvector of B corresponding to the same eigenvalue.

2.6.9 TRACES

1. The *trace* of an $n \times n$ matrix A , usually denoted as $\text{tr}(A)$, is defined as the sum of the n diagonal components of A .

-
2. The trace of an $n \times n$ matrix A equals the sum of the n eigenvalues of A , i.e., $\text{tr } A = a_{11} + a_{22} + \cdots + a_{nn} = \lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \cdots + \lambda_n$.
 3. The trace of a 1×1 matrix, a scalar, is itself.
 4. If $A \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times k}$ and $B \in \mathbb{R}^{k \times m}$, then $\text{tr}(AB) = \text{tr}(BA)$.
 5. If $A \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times k}$, $B \in \mathbb{R}^{k \times r}$, and $C \in \mathbb{R}^{r \times m}$, then $\text{tr}(ABC) = \text{tr}(BCA) = \text{tr}(CAB)$. For example, if $B = \mathbf{b}$ is a column vector and $C = \mathbf{c}^T$ is a row vector, then $\text{tr}(A\mathbf{b}\mathbf{c}^T) = \text{tr}(\mathbf{b}\mathbf{c}^T A) = \text{tr}(\mathbf{c}^T A\mathbf{b})$.
 6. $\text{tr}(A + \gamma B) = \text{tr}(A) + \gamma \text{tr}(B)$, where γ is a scalar.
 7. $\text{tr}(AB) = (\text{Vec } A^T)^T \text{Vec } B$ (see [Section 2.6.17](#) for the “Vec” operation)

2.6.10 GENERALIZED INVERSES

1. Every matrix A (singular or non-singular, rectangular or square) has a *generalized inverse*, or *pseudo-inverse*, A^+ defined by the *Moore–Penrose* conditions:

$$\begin{aligned}
 AA^+A &= A, \\
 A^+AA^+ &= A^+, \\
 (AA^+)^T &= AA^+, \\
 (A^+A)^T &= A^+A.
 \end{aligned}
 \tag{2.6.27}$$

There is a unique pseudo-inverse satisfying the conditions in (2.6.27).

2. If, and only if, A is square and non-singular, then $A^+ = A^{-1}$.
3. For a square singular matrix A , $AA^+ \neq I$, and $A^+A \neq I$.
4. The pseudo-inverse is the unique solution to $\min_X \|AX - I_m\|_F$.
5. The least-squares problem is to find the \mathbf{x} that minimizes $\|\mathbf{y} - A\mathbf{x}\|_2$. The \mathbf{x} of least norm is $\mathbf{x} = A^+\mathbf{y}$.
6. If A is a rectangular $m \times n$ matrix of rank n , with $m > n$, then A^+ is of order $n \times m$ and $A^+A = I \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$. In this case A^+ is called a *left inverse*, and $AA^+ \neq I$.
7. If A is a rectangular $m \times n$ matrix of rank m , with $m < n$, then A^+ is of order $n \times m$ and $AA^+ = I \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times m}$. In this case A^+ is called a *right inverse*, and $A^+A \neq I$.
8. The matrices AA^+ and A^+A are idempotent.

9. *Computing the pseudo-inverse:* The pseudo-inverse of $A_{m \times n}$ can be determined by the singular value decomposition $A = U\Sigma V^T$. If A has rank $r > 0$, then $\Sigma_{m \times n}$ has r positive singular values (σ_i) along the main diagonal extending from the upper left-hand corner and the remaining components of Σ are zero. Then $A^+ = (U\Sigma V^T)^+ = (V^T)^+ \Sigma^+ U^+ = V \Sigma^+ U^T$ since $(V^T)^+ = V$ and $U^+ = U^T$ because of their orthogonality. The components σ_i^+ in Σ^+ are

$$\sigma_i^+ = \begin{cases} 1/\sigma_i, & \text{if } \sigma_i \neq 0; \\ 0, & \text{if } \sigma_i = 0. \end{cases} \quad (2.6.28)$$

10. The pseudo-inverse is ill-conditioned with respect to rank-changing perturbations. For example:

$$\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 2 & -2 \end{bmatrix} + \epsilon \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix} \right)^+ = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\epsilon^2} \begin{bmatrix} -1 & \frac{1}{2} \\ -1 & \frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix} + \frac{1}{\epsilon} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix}, & \epsilon \neq 0, \\ \frac{1}{10} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ -1 & -2 \end{bmatrix}, & \epsilon = 0. \end{cases}$$

(Note that the pseudo-inverse is the same as the inverse when $\epsilon \neq 0$.)

EXAMPLE If $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ then $A^+ = \frac{1}{12} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$.

2.6.11 EIGENSTRUCTURE

1. If A is a square $n \times n$ matrix, then the n^{th} degree polynomial defined by $\det(A - \lambda I) = 0$ is called the *characteristic polynomial*, or *characteristic equation* of A .
2. The n roots (not necessarily distinct) of the characteristic polynomial are called the *eigenvalues* (or *characteristic roots*) of A . Therefore, the values, λ_i , $i = 1, \dots, n$, are eigenvalues if, and only if, $|A - \lambda_i I| = 0$.
3. The characteristic polynomial $\det(A - \lambda I) = \sum_{i=0}^n r_i \lambda^i$ has the properties

$$\begin{aligned} r_n &= (-1)^n, \\ r_{n-1} &= -r_n \operatorname{tr}(A), \\ r_{n-2} &= -\frac{1}{2} [r_{n-1} \operatorname{tr}(A) + r_n \operatorname{tr}(A^2)], \\ r_{n-3} &= -\frac{1}{3} [r_{n-2} \operatorname{tr}(A) + r_{n-1} \operatorname{tr}(A^2) + r_n \operatorname{tr}(A^3)], \\ &\vdots \\ r_0 &= -\frac{1}{n} \left[\sum_{p=1}^n r_p \operatorname{tr}(A^p) \right]. \end{aligned}$$

4. Each eigenvalue λ has a corresponding *eigenvector* \mathbf{x} (different from $\mathbf{0}$) that solves the system $A\mathbf{x} = \lambda\mathbf{x}$, or $(A - \lambda I)\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$.
5. If \mathbf{x} solves $A\mathbf{x} = \lambda\mathbf{x}$, then so does $\gamma\mathbf{x}$, where γ is an arbitrary scalar.
6. *Cayley–Hamilton theorem*: Any matrix A satisfies its own characteristic equation. That is $\sum_{i=0}^n r_i A^i = 0$.
7. The eigenvalues of a triangular (or diagonal) matrix are the diagonal components of the matrix.
8. The eigenvalues of idempotent matrices are zeros and ones.
9. If A is a real matrix with positive eigenvalues, then

$$\lambda_{\min}(AA^T) \leq [\lambda_{\min}(A)]^2 \leq [\lambda_{\max}(A)]^2 \leq \lambda_{\max}(AA^T), \quad (2.6.29)$$

where λ_{\min} denotes the smallest and λ_{\max} the largest eigenvalue.

10. If all the eigenvalues of a real symmetric matrix are distinct, then their associated eigenvectors are also distinct (linearly independent).
11. Real symmetric and Hermitian matrices have real eigenvalues.
12. The determinant of a matrix is equal to the product of the eigenvalues. That is, if A has the eigenvalues $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n$, then $\det(A) = \lambda_1 \lambda_2 \cdots \lambda_n$.
13. The following table shows the eigenvalues of specific matrices

| matrix | eigenvalues |
|---|---|
| diagonal matrix | diagonal elements |
| upper or lower triangular | diagonal elements |
| A is $n \times n$ and nilpotent | 0 (n times) |
| A is $n \times n$ and idempotent of rank r | 1 (r times); and 0 ($n - r$ times) |
| $(a - b)I_n + bJ_n$, where J_n is the $n \times n$ matrix of all 1's | $a + (n - 1)b$; and $a - b$ ($n - 1$ times) |

14. Let A have the eigenvalues $\{\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n\}$. The eigenvalues of some functions of A are shown below:

| matrix | eigenvalues |
|---|--|
| A^T | eigenvalues of A |
| A^H | complex conjugates of $\{\lambda_1^k, \lambda_2^k, \dots, \lambda_n^k\}$ |
| A^k , k an integer | $\{\lambda_1^k, \lambda_2^k, \dots, \lambda_n^k\}$ |
| A^{-k} , k an integer, A non-singular | $\{\lambda_1^{-k}, \lambda_2^{-k}, \dots, \lambda_n^{-k}\}$ |
| $q(A)$, q is a polynomial | $\{q(\lambda_1^k), q(\lambda_2^k), \dots, q(\lambda_n^k)\}$ |
| SAS^{-1} , S non-singular | eigenvalues of A |
| AB , where A is $m \times n$, B is $n \times m$, and $m \geq n$ | eigenvalues of BA ; and 0 ($m - n$ times) |

2.6.12 MATRIX DIAGONALIZATION

1. If $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ possesses n linearly independent eigenvectors $\mathbf{x}_1, \dots, \mathbf{x}_n$, then A can be diagonalized as $S^{-1}AS = \Lambda = \text{diag}(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n)$, where the eigenvectors of A are chosen to comprise the columns of S .
2. If $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ can be diagonalized into $S^{-1}AS = \Lambda$, then $A^k = S\Lambda^kS^{-1}$, or $\Lambda^k = S^{-1}A^kS$.
3. *Spectral decomposition*: Any real symmetric matrix $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ can be diagonalized into the form $A = U\Lambda U^T$, where Λ is the diagonal matrix of ordered eigenvalues of A such that $\lambda_1 \geq \lambda_2 \geq \dots \geq \lambda_n$, and the columns of U are the corresponding n orthonormal eigenvectors of A .
That is, if $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ is symmetric, then a real orthogonal matrix Q exists such that $Q^T A Q = \text{diag}(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n)$.
4. The *spectral radius* of a real symmetric matrix A , commonly denoted by $\rho(A)$, is defined as $\rho(A) = \max_{1 \leq i \leq n} |\lambda_i(A)|$.
5. If $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ and $B \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ are diagonalizable, then they share a common eigenvector matrix S if and only if $AB = BA$. (Not every eigenvector of A need be an eigenvector for B , e.g., the above equation is always true if $A = I$.)
6. *Schur decomposition*: If $A \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$, then a unitary matrix $Q \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$ exists such that $Q^H A Q = D + N$, where $D = \text{diag}(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n)$ and $N \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$ is strictly upper triangular. The matrix Q can be chosen so that the eigenvalues λ_i appear in any order along the diagonal.
7. If $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ possesses $s \leq n$ linearly independent eigenvectors, it is similar to a matrix with s *Jordan blocks* (for some matrix M)

$$J = M^{-1}AM = \begin{bmatrix} J_1 & & & \mathbf{0} \\ & \ddots & & \\ & & \mathbf{0} & \\ & & & \ddots \\ \mathbf{0} & & & & J_s \end{bmatrix},$$

where each Jordan block J_i is an upper triangular matrix with (a) the single eigenvalue λ_i repeated n_i times along the main diagonal; (b) $(n_i - 1)$ 1's appearing above the diagonal entries; and (c) all other components zero:

$$J_i = \begin{bmatrix} \lambda_i & 1 & & \mathbf{0} \\ & \ddots & 1 & \\ & & \ddots & 1 \\ \mathbf{0} & & & \lambda_i \end{bmatrix}. \quad (2.6.30)$$

2.6.13 MATRIX EXPONENTIALS

1. *Matrix exponentiation* is defined as (the series always converges):

$$e^{At} = I + At + \frac{(At)^2}{2!} + \frac{(At)^3}{3!} + \dots \quad (2.6.31)$$

2. Common properties of matrix exponentials are:

- (a) $(e^{As})(e^{At}) = e^{A(s+t)}$,
- (b) $(e^{At})(e^{-At}) = I$,
- (c) $\frac{d}{dt}e^{At} = Ae^{At}$,
- (d) When A and B are square matrices, the commutator of A and B is $C = [B, A] = BA - AB$. Then $e^{(A+B)t} = e^A e^B e^{C/2}$ provided that $[C, A] = [C, B] = \mathbf{0}$ (i.e., each of A and B commute with their commutator). In particular, if A and B commute then $e^{A+B} = e^A e^B$.

3. For a matrix $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$, the determinant of e^{At} is given by:

$$\det(e^{At}) = e^{\lambda_1 t} e^{\lambda_2 t} \dots e^{\lambda_n t} = e^{\text{tr}(At)}. \quad (2.6.32)$$

4. The diagonalization of e^{At} , when A is diagonalizable, is given by $e^{At} = S e^{Dt} S^{-1}$ where the columns of S consist of the eigenvectors of A , and the entries of the diagonal matrix D are the corresponding eigenvalues of A , that is, $A = SDS^{-1}$.

2.6.14 QUADRATIC FORMS

1. For a symmetric matrix A , the map $\mathbf{x} \mapsto \mathbf{x}^T A \mathbf{x}$ is called a *pure quadratic form*. It has the form

$$\mathbf{x}^T A \mathbf{x} = \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^n a_{ij} x_i x_j = a_{11} x_1^2 + a_{12} x_1 x_2 + a_{21} x_2 x_1 + \dots + a_{nn} x_n^2. \quad (2.6.33)$$

2. For A symmetric, the gradient of $\mathbf{x}^T A \mathbf{x} / \mathbf{x}^T \mathbf{x}$ equals zero if, and only if, \mathbf{x} is an eigenvector of A . Thus, the stationary values of this function (where the gradient vanishes) are the eigenvalues of A .
3. The ratio of two quadratic forms (B non-singular) $u(\mathbf{x}) = (\mathbf{x}^T A \mathbf{x}) / (\mathbf{x}^T B \mathbf{x})$ attains stationary values at the eigenvalues of $B^{-1}A$. In particular,

$$u_{\max} = \lambda_{\max}(B^{-1}A), \quad \text{and} \quad u_{\min} = \lambda_{\min}(B^{-1}A).$$

4. A matrix A is *positive definite* if $\mathbf{x}^T A \mathbf{x} > 0$ for all $\mathbf{x} \neq \mathbf{0}$.

-
5. A matrix A is *positive semi-definite* if $\mathbf{x}^T A \mathbf{x} \geq 0$ for all \mathbf{x} .
6. For a real, symmetric matrix $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$, the following are necessary and sufficient conditions to establish the positive definiteness of A :
- All eigenvalues of A have $\lambda_i > 0$, for $i = 1, \dots, n$, and
 - The upper-left sub-matrices of A , called the *principal sub-matrices*, denoted by $A_1 = [a_{11}]$,

$$A_2 = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{bmatrix}, \quad \dots, \quad A_n = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \cdots & a_{nn} \end{bmatrix},$$

have $\det(A_k) > 0$, for all $k = 1, \dots, n$.

7. If A is positive definite, then all of the principal sub-matrices of A are also positive definite. Additionally, all diagonal entries of A are positive.
8. For a real, symmetric matrix $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$, the following are necessary and sufficient conditions to establish the positive semi-definiteness of A :
- All eigenvalues of A have $\lambda_i \geq 0$, for $i = 1, \dots, n$,
 - The principal sub-matrices of A have $\det A_k \geq 0$, for all $k = 1, \dots, n$.
9. If A is positive semi-definite, then all of the principal sub-matrices of A are also positive semi-definite. Additionally, all diagonal entries of A are non-negative.
10. If the matrix Q is positive definite, then $(\mathbf{x}^T - \mathbf{x}_0^T)Q^{-1}(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_0) = 1$ is the equation of an ellipsoid with its center at \mathbf{x}_0^T . The lengths of the semi-axes are equal to the square roots of the eigenvalues of Q ; see page 330.

2.6.15 MATRIX FACTORIZATIONS

1. **Singular value decomposition (SVD):** Any $m \times n$ matrix A can be written as the product $A = U \Sigma V^T$, where U is an $m \times m$ orthogonal matrix, V is an $n \times n$ orthogonal matrix, and $\Sigma = \text{diag}(\sigma_1, \sigma_2, \dots, \sigma_p)$, with $p = \min(m, n)$ and $\sigma_1 \geq \sigma_2 \geq \dots \geq \sigma_p \geq 0$. The values σ_i , $i = 1, \dots, p$, are called the *singular values* of A .
- When $\text{rank}(A) = r > 0$, A has exactly r positive singular values, and $\sigma_{r+1} = \dots = \sigma_p = 0$.
 - When A is a symmetric $n \times n$ matrix, then $\sigma_1 = |\lambda_1|, \dots, \sigma_n = |\lambda_n|$, where $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n$ are the eigenvalues of A .

-
- (c) When A is an $m \times n$ matrix, if $m \geq n$ then the singular values of A are the square roots of the eigenvalues of $A^T A$. Otherwise, they are the square roots of the eigenvalues of AA^T .
- Any non-singular $m \times n$ matrix A of maximal rank can be factored as $PA = LU$, where P is a permutation matrix, L is lower triangular, and U is upper triangular.
 - QR factorization:** If all the columns of $A \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$ are linearly independent, then A can be factored as $A = QR$, where $Q \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$ has orthonormal columns and $R \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ is upper triangular and non-singular.
 - If $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ is symmetric positive definite, then

$$A = LDL^T = LD^{1/2}D^{1/2}L^T = \left(LD^{1/2}\right) \left(LD^{1/2}\right)^T = GG^T \quad (2.6.34)$$

where L is a lower triangular matrix and D is a diagonal matrix. The factorization $A = GG^T$ is called the *Cholesky factorization*, and the matrix G is commonly referred to as the *Cholesky triangle*.

2.6.16 THEOREMS

- Frobenius–Perron theorem:** If $A > 0$ (i.e., A is positive definite), then there exists a $\lambda_0 > 0$ and $\mathbf{x}_0 > \mathbf{0}$ such that
 - $A\mathbf{x}_0 = \lambda_0\mathbf{x}_0$,
 - if λ is any other eigenvalue of A , $\lambda \neq \lambda_0$, then $|\lambda| < \lambda_0$, and
 - λ_0 is an eigenvalue with geometric and algebraic multiplicity equal to one.
- If $A \geq 0$, and $A^k > 0$ for some positive integer k , then the results of the Frobenius–Perron theorem apply to A .
- Courant–Fischer minimax theorem:** If $\lambda_i(A)$ denotes the i^{th} largest eigenvalue of a matrix $A = A^T \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$, then

$$\lambda_j(A) = \max_{S_j} \min_{\mathbf{0} \neq \mathbf{x} \in S_j} \frac{\mathbf{x}^T A \mathbf{x}}{\mathbf{x}^T \mathbf{x}} \quad j = 1, \dots, n \quad (2.6.35)$$

where $\mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ and S_j is a j -dimensional subspace.

From this follows *Raleigh's principle*: The quotient $R(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{x}^T A \mathbf{x} / \mathbf{x}^T \mathbf{x}$ is minimized by the eigenvector $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}_1$ corresponding to the smallest eigenvalue λ_1 of A . The minimum of $R(\mathbf{x})$ is λ_1 , that is,

$$\min R(\mathbf{x}) = \min \frac{\mathbf{x}^T A \mathbf{x}}{\mathbf{x}^T \mathbf{x}} = R(\mathbf{x}_1) = \frac{\mathbf{x}_1^T A \mathbf{x}_1}{\mathbf{x}_1^T \mathbf{x}_1} = \frac{\mathbf{x}_1^T \lambda_1 \mathbf{x}_1}{\mathbf{x}_1^T \mathbf{x}_1} = \lambda_1. \quad (2.6.36)$$

4. *Cramer's rule*: The j^{th} component of $\mathbf{x} = A^{-1}\mathbf{b}$ is given by

$$x_j = \frac{\det B_j}{\det A}, \quad \text{where}$$

$$B_j = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1,j-1} & b_1 & a_{1,j+1} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \cdots & a_{n,j-1} & b_n & a_{n,j+1} & \cdots & a_{nn} \end{bmatrix} \quad (2.6.37)$$

The vector $\mathbf{b} = [b_1 \ \cdots \ b_n]^T$ replaces the j^{th} column of the matrix A to form the matrix B_j .

5. *Sylvester's law of inertia*: For a symmetric matrix $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$, the matrices A and $C^T A C$, for C non-singular, have the same number of positive, negative, and zero eigenvalues.

6. *Gerschgorin circle theorem*: Each eigenvalue of an arbitrary $n \times n$ matrix $A = (a_{ij})$ lies in at least one of the circles $\{C_1, C_2, \dots, C_n\}$ in the complex plane, where circle C_i has center a_{ii} and radius ρ_i given by $\rho_i = \sum_{\substack{j=1 \\ j \neq i}}^n |a_{ij}|$.

2.6.17 THE VECTOR OPERATION

The matrix $A_{m \times n}$ can be represented as a collection of $m \times 1$ column vectors: $A = [\mathbf{a}_1 \ \mathbf{a}_2 \ \cdots \ \mathbf{a}_n]$. Define $\text{Vec } A$ as the matrix of size $nm \times 1$ (i.e., a vector) by

$$\text{Vec } A = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{a}_1 \\ \mathbf{a}_2 \\ \vdots \\ \mathbf{a}_n \end{bmatrix}. \quad (2.6.38)$$

This operator has the following properties:

1. $\text{tr } AB = (\text{Vec } A^T)^T \text{Vec } B$.
2. The permutation matrix U that associates $\text{Vec } X$ and $\text{Vec } X^T$ (that is, $\text{Vec } X^T = U \text{Vec } X$) is given by:

$$U = [\text{Vec } E_{11}^T \ \text{Vec } E_{21}^T \ \cdots \ \text{Vec } E_{n1}^T] = \sum_{r,s} E_{rs} \otimes E_{rs}^T. \quad (2.6.39)$$

3. $\text{Vec}(AYB) = (B^T \otimes A) \text{Vec } Y$.
4. If A and B are both of size $n \times n$, then
 - (a) $\text{Vec } AB = (I_n \otimes A) \text{Vec } B$.
 - (b) $\text{Vec } AB = (B^T \otimes A) \text{Vec } I_n$.

2.6.18 KRONECKER PRODUCTS

If the matrix $A = (a_{ij})$ has size $m \times n$, and the matrix $B = (b_{ij})$ has size $r \times s$, then the *Kronecker product* (sometimes called the *tensor product*) of these matrices, denoted $A \otimes B$, is defined as the partitioned matrix

$$A \otimes B = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11}B & a_{12}B & \dots & a_{1n}B \\ a_{21}B & a_{22}B & \dots & a_{2n}B \\ \vdots & \vdots & \dots & \vdots \\ a_{m1}B & a_{m2}B & \dots & a_{mn}B \end{bmatrix}. \quad (2.6.40)$$

Hence, the matrix $A \otimes B$ has size $mr \times ns$.

EXAMPLE If $A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} b_{11} & b_{12} \\ b_{21} & b_{22} \end{bmatrix}$, then

$$A \otimes B = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11}B & a_{12}B \\ a_{21}B & a_{22}B \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11}b_{11} & a_{11}b_{12} & a_{12}b_{11} & a_{12}b_{12} \\ a_{11}b_{21} & a_{11}b_{22} & a_{12}b_{21} & a_{12}b_{22} \\ a_{21}b_{11} & a_{21}b_{12} & a_{22}b_{11} & a_{22}b_{12} \\ a_{21}b_{21} & a_{21}b_{22} & a_{22}b_{21} & a_{22}b_{22} \end{bmatrix}. \quad (2.6.41)$$

The Kronecker product has the following properties:

1. If \mathbf{z} and \mathbf{w} are vectors of appropriate dimensions, then $A\mathbf{z} \otimes B\mathbf{w} = (A \otimes B)(\mathbf{z} \otimes \mathbf{w})$.
2. If α is a scalar, then $(\alpha A) \otimes B = A \otimes (\alpha B) = \alpha(A \otimes B)$.
3. The Kronecker product is distributive with respect to addition:
 - (a) $(A + B) \otimes C = A \otimes C + B \otimes C$, and
 - (b) $A \otimes (B + C) = A \otimes B + A \otimes C$.
4. The Kronecker product is associative: $A \otimes (B \otimes C) = (A \otimes B) \otimes C$.
5. $(A \otimes B)^T = A^T \otimes B^T$.
6. The *mixed product rule*: If the dimensions of the matrices are such that the following expressions exist, then $(A \otimes B)(C \otimes D) = AC \otimes BD$.
7. If the inverses exist, then $(A \otimes B)^{-1} = A^{-1} \otimes B^{-1}$.
8. If $\{\lambda_i\}$ and $\{\mathbf{x}_i\}$ are the eigenvalues and the corresponding eigenvectors for A , and $\{\mu_j\}$ and $\{\mathbf{y}_j\}$ are the eigenvalues and the corresponding eigenvectors for B , then $A \otimes B$ has eigenvalues $\{\lambda_i \mu_j\}$ with corresponding eigenvectors $\{\mathbf{x}_i \otimes \mathbf{y}_j\}$.
9. If matrix A has size $n \times n$ and B has size $m \times m$, then $\det(A \otimes B) = (\det A)^m (\det B)^n$.
10. If f is an analytic matrix function and A has size $n \times n$, then

-
- (a) $f(I_n \otimes A) = I_n \otimes f(A)$, and
 (b) $f(A \otimes I_n) = f(A) \otimes I_n$.

11. $\text{tr}(A \otimes B) = (\text{tr } A)(\text{tr } B)$.
12. If A, B, C , and D are matrices with A similar to C and B similar to D , then $A \otimes B$ is similar to $C \otimes D$.
13. If $C(t) = A(t) \otimes B(t)$, then $\frac{dC}{dt} = \frac{dA}{dt} \otimes B + A \otimes \frac{dB}{dt}$.

2.6.19 KRONECKER SUMS

If the matrix $A = (a_{ij})$ has size $n \times n$ and matrix $B = (b_{ij})$ has size $m \times m$, then the *Kronecker sum* of these matrices, denoted $A \oplus B$, is defined² as

$$A \oplus B = A \otimes I_m + I_n \otimes B. \quad (2.6.42)$$

The Kronecker sum has the following properties:

1. If A has eigenvalues $\{\lambda_i\}$ and B has eigenvalues $\{\mu_j\}$, then $A \oplus B$ has eigenvalues $\{\lambda_i + \mu_j\}$.
2. The matrix equation $AX + XB = C$ may be equivalently written as $(B^T \oplus A) \text{Vec } X = \text{Vec } C$, where Vec is defined in [Section 2.6.17](#).
3. $e^{A \oplus B} = e^A \otimes e^B$.

2.7 ABSTRACT ALGEBRA

2.7.1 DEFINITIONS

1. A *binary operation on a set* S is a function $\star : S \times S \rightarrow S$.
2. An *algebraic structure* $(S, \star_1, \dots, \star_n)$ consists of a non-empty set S with one or more binary operations \star_i defined on S . If the operations are understood, then the binary operations need not be mentioned explicitly.
3. The *order* of an algebraic structure S is the number of elements in S , written $|S|$.

²Note that $A \oplus B$ is also used to denote the $(m+n) \times (m+n)$ matrix $\begin{bmatrix} A & 0 \\ 0 & B \end{bmatrix}$.

4. A binary operation \star on an algebraic structure (S, \star) may have the following properties:

- (a) *Associative*: $a \star (b \star c) = (a \star b) \star c$ for all $a, b, c \in S$.
- (b) *Identity*: there exists an element $e \in S$ (*identity element* of S) such that $e \star a = a \star e = a$ for all $a \in S$.
- (c) *Inverse*: $a^{-1} \in S$ is an *inverse* of a if $a \star a^{-1} = a^{-1} \star a = e$.
- (d) *Commutative* (or *abelian*): if $a \star b = b \star a$ for all $a, b \in S$.

5. A *semigroup* (S, \star) consists of a non-empty set S and an associative binary operation \star on S .

6. A *monoid* (S, \star) consists of a non-empty set S with an identity element and an associative binary operation \star .

2.7.1.1 Examples of semigroups and monoids

- 1. The sets $\mathbb{N} = \{0, 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$ (natural numbers), $\mathbb{Z} = \{0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots\}$ (integers), \mathbb{Q} (rational numbers), \mathbb{R} (real numbers), and \mathbb{C} (complex numbers) where \star is either addition or multiplication are semigroups and monoids.
- 2. The set of positive integers under addition is a semigroup but not a monoid.
- 3. If A is any non-empty set, then the set of all functions $f : A \rightarrow A$ where \star is the composition of functions is a semigroup and a monoid.
- 4. Given a set S , the set of all strings of elements of S , where \star is concatenation of strings, is a monoid (the identity is λ , the empty string).

2.7.2 GROUPS

1. A *group* (G, \star) consists of a set G with a binary operation \star defined on G such that \star satisfies the associative, identity, and inverse laws. *Note*: The operation \star is often written as $+$ (an *additive group*) or as \cdot or \times (a *multiplicative group*).

(a) If $+$ is used, the identity is written 0 and the inverse of a is written $-a$. Usually, in this case, the group is commutative. The following notation is then used: $na = \underbrace{a + \dots + a}_{n \text{ times}}$.

(b) If multiplicative notation is used, $a \star b$ is often written ab , the identity is often written 1 , and the inverse of a is written a^{-1} .

2. The *order* of $a \in G$ is the smallest positive integer n such that $a^n = 1$ where $a^n = a \cdot a \cdot \dots \cdot a$ (n times) (or $a + a + \dots + a = 0$ if G is written additively). If there is no such integer, the element has *infinite order*. In a finite group of order n , each element has some order k (depending on the particular element) and it must be that k divides n .

3. (H, \star) is a subgroup of (G, \star) if $H \subseteq G$ and (H, \star) is a group (using the same binary operation as in (G, \star)).

-
4. The *cyclic subgroup* $\langle a \rangle$ generated by $a \in G$ is the subgroup $\{a^n \mid n \in \mathbb{Z}\} = \{\dots, a^{-2} = (a^{-1})^2, a^{-1}, a^0 = e, a, a^2, \dots\}$. The element a is a *generator* of $\langle a \rangle$. A group G is *cyclic* if there is $a \in G$ such that $G = \langle a \rangle$.
 5. If H is a subgroup of a group G , then a *left [right] coset* of H in G is the set $aH = \{ah \mid h \in H\}$ [$Ha = \{ha \mid h \in H\}$].
 6. A *normal subgroup* of a group G is a subgroup H such that $aH = Ha$ for all $a \in G$.
 7. A *simple group* is a group $G \neq \{e\}$ with only G and $\{e\}$ as normal subgroups.
 8. If H is a normal subgroup of G , then the *quotient group* (or *factor group*) of G modulo H is the group $G/H = \{aH \mid a \in G\}$, with binary operation $aH \cdot bH = (ab)H$.
 9. A nite group G is *solvable* if there is a sequence of subgroups G_1, G_2, \dots, G_k , with $G_1 = G$ and $G_k = \{e\}$, such that each G_{i+1} is a normal subgroup of G_i and G_i/G_{i+1} is abelian.

2.7.2.1 Facts about groups

1. The identity element is unique.
2. Each element has exactly one inverse.
3. Each of the equations $a \star x = b$ and $x \star a = b$ has exactly one solution, $x = a^{-1} \star b$ and $x = b \star a^{-1}$.
4. $(a^{-1})^{-1} = a$.
5. $(a \star b)^{-1} = b^{-1} \star a^{-1}$.
6. The *left* (respectively *right*) *cancellation law* holds in all groups: If $a \star b = a \star c$ then $b = c$ (respectively, if $b \star a = c \star a$ then $b = c$).
7. *Lagrange's theorem*: If G is a nite group and H is a subgroup of G , then the order of H divides the order of G .
8. Every group of prime order is abelian and hence simple.
9. Every cyclic group is abelian.
10. Every abelian group is solvable.
11. *Feit–Thompson theorem*: All groups of odd order are solvable. Hence, all nite non-Abelian simple groups have even order.
12. Finite simple groups are of the following types:
 - (a) \mathbb{Z}_p (p prime)
 - (b) A group of Lie type
 - (c) A_n ($n \geq 5$)
 - (d) Sporadic groups (see table on page 191)

2.7.2.2 Examples of groups

1. \mathbb{Z} , \mathbb{Q} , \mathbb{R} , and \mathbb{C} , with \star the addition of numbers, are additive groups.
2. For n a positive integer, $n\mathbb{Z} = \{nz \mid z \in \mathbb{Z}\}$ is an additive group.
3. $\mathbb{Q} - \{0\} = \mathbb{Q}^*$, $\mathbb{R} - \{0\} = \mathbb{R}^*$, $\mathbb{C} - \{0\} = \mathbb{C}^*$, with \star the multiplication of numbers, are multiplicative groups.
4. $\mathbb{Z}_n = \mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z} = \{0, 1, 2, \dots, n - 1\}$ is a group where \star is addition modulo n .
5. $\mathbb{Z}_n^* = \{k \mid k \in \mathbb{Z}_n, k \text{ has a multiplicative inverse (under multiplication modulo } n) \text{ in } \mathbb{Z}_n\}$ is a group under multiplication modulo n . If p is prime, \mathbb{Z}_p^* is cyclic. If p is prime and $a \in \mathbb{Z}_p^*$ has order (index) $p - 1$, then a is a *primitive root modulo* p . See the tables on pages 192 and 193 for power residues and primitive roots.
6. If $(G_1, \star_1), (G_2, \star_2), \dots, (G_n, \star_n)$ are groups, the *(direct) product group* is $(G_1 \times G_2 \times \dots \times G_n, \star) = \{(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) \mid a_i \in G_i, i = 1, 2, \dots, n\}$ where \star is defined by

$$(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) \star (b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n) = (a_1 \star_1 b_1, a_2 \star_2 b_2, \dots, a_n \star_n b_n).$$

7. All $m \times n$ matrices with real entries form a group under addition of matrices.
8. All $n \times n$ matrices with real entries and non-zero determinants form a group under matrix multiplication.
9. All 1–1, onto functions $f : S \rightarrow S$ (*permutations* of S), where S is any non-empty set, form a group under composition of functions. See [Section 2.7.9](#).

In particular, if $S = \{1, 2, 3, \dots, n\}$, the group of permutations of S is called the *symmetric group*, S_n . In S_n , each permutation can be written as a product of cycles. A *cycle* is a permutation $\sigma = (i_1 i_2 \dots i_k)$, where $\sigma(i_1) = i_2, \sigma(i_2) = i_3, \dots, \sigma(i_k) = i_1$. Each cycle of length greater than 1 can be written as a product of transpositions (cycles of length 2). A permutation is *even (odd)* if it can be written as the product of an even (odd) number of transpositions. (Every permutation is either even or odd.) The set of all even permutations in S_n is a normal subgroup, A_n , of S_n . The group A_n is called the *alternating group* on n elements.

10. Given a regular polygon, the *dihedral group* D_n is the group of all symmetries of the polygon, that is, the group composed of the set of all rotations around the center of the polygon through angles of $360k/n$ degrees (where $k = 0, 1, 2, \dots, n - 1$), together with all reflections in lines passing through a vertex and the center of the polygon, using composition of functions. Alternately, $D_n = \{a^i b^j \mid i = 0, 1; j = 0, 1, \dots, n - 1; aba^{-1} = b^{-1}\}$.

2.7.3 RINGS

2.7.3.1 Definitions

1. A ring $(R, +, \cdot)$ consists of a non-empty set R and two binary operations, $+$ and \cdot , such that $(R, +)$ is an abelian group, the operation \cdot is associative, and the *left distributive law* $a(b + c) = (ab) + (ac)$ and the *right distributive law* $(a + b)c = (ac) + (bc)$ hold for all $a, b, c \in R$.
2. A subset S of a ring R is a *subring* of R if S is a ring using the same operations used in R with the same unit.
3. A ring R is a *commutative ring* if the multiplication operation is commutative: $ab = ba$ for all $a, b \in R$.
4. A ring R (with $R \neq \{0\}$) is a *ring with unity* if there is an element 1 (called *unity*) such that $a1 = 1a = a$ for all $a \in R$.
5. A *unit* in a ring with unity is an element a with a multiplicative inverse a^{-1} (that is, $aa^{-1} = a^{-1}a = 1$).
6. If $a \neq 0$, $b \neq 0$, and $ab = 0$, then a is a *left divisor of zero* and b is a *right divisor of zero*.
7. A subset I of a ring $(R, +, \cdot)$ is a (two-sided) *ideal* of R if $(I, +)$ is a subgroup of $(R, +)$ and I is closed under left and right multiplication by elements of R (if $x \in I$ and $r \in R$, then $rx \in I$ and $xr \in I$).
8. An ideal $I \subseteq R$ is
 - (a) *Proper*: if $I \neq \{0\}$ and $I \neq R$
 - (b) *Maximal*: if I is proper and if there is no proper ideal properly containing I
 - (c) *Prime*: if $ab \in I$ implies that a or $b \in I$
 - (d) *Principal*: if there is $a \in R$ such that I is the intersection of all ideals containing a .
9. If I is an ideal in a ring R , then a *coset* is a set $r + I = \{r + a \mid a \in I\}$.
10. If I is an ideal in a ring R , then the *quotient ring* is the ring $R/I = \{r + I \mid r \in R\}$, where $(r + I) + (s + I) = (r + s) + I$ and $(r + I)(s + I) = (rs) + I$.
11. An *integral domain* $(R, +, \cdot)$ is a commutative ring with unity such that cancellations hold: if $ab = ac$ then $b = c$ (respectively, if $ba = ca$ then $b = c$) for all $a, b, c \in R$, where $a \neq 0$. (Equivalently, an integral domain is a commutative ring with unity that has no divisors of zero.)
12. If R is an integral domain, then a non-zero element $r \in R$ that is not a unit is *irreducible* if $r = ab$ implies that either a or b is a unit.

-
13. If R is an integral domain, a non-zero element $r \in R$ that is not a unit is a *prime* if, whenever $r|ab$, then either $r|a$ or $r|b$ ($x|y$ means that there is an element $z \in R$ such that $y = zx$).
 14. A *unique factorization domain* (UFD) is an integral domain such that every non-zero element that is not a unit can be written uniquely as the product of irreducible elements (except for factors that are units and except for the order in which the factor appears).
 15. A *principal ideal domain* (PID) is an integral domain in which every ideal is a principal ideal.
 16. A *division ring* is a ring in which every non-zero element has a multiplicative inverse (that is, every non-zero element is a unit). (Equivalently, a division ring is a ring in which the non-zero elements form a multiplicative group.) A non-commutative division ring is called a *skew eld*.

2.7.3.2 Facts about rings

1. The set of all units of a ring is a group under the multiplication defined on the ring.
2. Every principal ideal domain is a unique factorization domain.
3. If R is a commutative ring with unity, then every maximal ideal is a prime ideal.
4. If R is a commutative ring with unity, then R is a *eld* if and only if the only ideals of R are R and $\{0\}$.
5. If R is a commutative ring with unity and $I \neq R$ is an ideal, then R/I is an integral domain if and only if I is a prime ideal.
6. If R is a commutative ring with unity, then I is a maximal ideal if and only if R/I is a *eld*.
7. If $f(x) \in F[x]$ (where F is a *eld*) and the ideal generated by $f(x)$ is not $\{0\}$, then the ideal is maximal if and only if $f(x)$ is irreducible over F .
8. There are exactly four normed division rings; they have dimensions 1, 2, 4, and 8. They are the real numbers, the complex numbers, the quaternions, and the octonions. The quaternions are non-commutative and the octonions are non-associative.

2.7.3.3 Examples of rings

1. \mathbb{Z} (integers), \mathbb{Q} (rational numbers), \mathbb{R} (real numbers), and \mathbb{C} (complex numbers) are rings, with ordinary addition and multiplication of numbers.

2. \mathbb{Z}_n is a ring, with addition and multiplication modulo n .
3. If \sqrt{n} is not an integer, then $\mathbb{Z}[\sqrt{n}] = \{a + b\sqrt{n} \mid a, b \in \mathbb{Z}\}$, where $(a + b\sqrt{n}) + (c + d\sqrt{n}) = (a + c) + (b + d)\sqrt{n}$ and $(a + b\sqrt{n})(c + d\sqrt{n}) = (ac + nbd) + (ad + bc)\sqrt{n}$ is a ring.
4. The set of *Gaussian integers* $\mathbb{Z}[i] = \{a + bi \mid a, b \in \mathbb{Z}\}$ is a ring, with the usual definitions of addition and multiplication of complex numbers.
5. The *polynomial ring* in one variable over a ring R is the ring $R[x] = \{a_n x^n + \dots + a_1 x + a_0 \mid a_i \in R; i = 0, 1, \dots, n; n \in \mathcal{N}\}$. (Elements of $R[x]$ are added and multiplied using the usual rules for addition and multiplication of polynomials.) The *degree* of a polynomial $a_n x^n + \dots + a_1 x + a_0$ with $a_n \neq 0$ is n . A polynomial is *monic* if $a_n = 1$. A polynomial $f(x)$ is *irreducible over* R if $f(x)$ cannot be factored as a product of polynomials in $R[x]$ of degree less than the degree of $f(x)$. A monic irreducible polynomial $f(x)$ of degree k in $\mathbb{Z}_p[x]$ (p prime) is *primitive* if the order of x in $\mathbb{Z}_p[x]/(f(x))$ is $p^k - 1$, where $(f(x)) = \{f(x)g(x) \mid g(x) \in \mathbb{Z}_p[x]\}$ (the ideal generated by $f(x)$).

For example, the polynomial $x^2 + 1$ is

- (a) Irreducible in $\mathbb{R}[x]$ because $x^2 + 1$ has no real root
- (b) Reducible in $\mathbb{C}[x]$ because $x^2 + 1 = (x - i)(x + i)$
- (c) Reducible in $\mathbb{Z}_2[x]$ because $x^2 + 1 = (x + 1)^2$
- (d) Reducible in $\mathbb{Z}_5[x]$ because $x^2 + 1 = (x + 2)(x + 3)$

See the table on page 194.

6. The *division ring of quaternions* is the ring $(\{a + bi + cj + dk \mid a, b, c, d \in \mathbb{R}\}, +, \cdot)$, where operations are carried out using the rules for polynomial addition and multiplication and the defining relations for the quaternion group Q (see page 182).
7. Every octonion is a real linear combination of the unit octonions $\{1, e_1, e_2, e_3, e_4, e_5, e_6, e_7\}$. Their properties include: (a) $e_i^2 = -1$; (b) $e_i e_j = -e_j e_i$ when $i \neq j$; (c) the index doubling identity: $e_i e_j = e_k \implies e_{2i} e_{2j} = e_{2k}$; and (d) the index cycling identity: $e_i e_j = e_k \implies e_{i+1} e_{j+1} = e_{k+1}$ where the indices are computed modulo 7. The full multiplication table is as follows:

| | 1 | e_1 | e_2 | e_3 | e_4 | e_5 | e_6 | e_7 |
|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1 | 1 | e_1 | e_2 | e_3 | e_4 | e_5 | e_6 | e_7 |
| e_1 | e_1 | -1 | e_4 | e_7 | $-e_2$ | e_6 | $-e_5$ | $-e_3$ |
| e_2 | e_2 | $-e_4$ | -1 | e_5 | e_1 | $-e_3$ | e_7 | $-e_6$ |
| e_3 | e_3 | $-e_7$ | $-e_5$ | -1 | e_6 | e_2 | $-e_4$ | e_1 |
| e_4 | e_4 | e_2 | $-e_1$ | $-e_6$ | -1 | e_7 | e_3 | $-e_5$ |
| e_5 | e_5 | $-e_6$ | e_3 | $-e_2$ | $-e_7$ | -1 | e_1 | e_4 |
| e_6 | e_6 | e_5 | $-e_7$ | e_4 | $-e_3$ | $-e_1$ | -1 | e_2 |
| e_7 | e_7 | e_3 | e_6 | $-e_1$ | e_5 | $-e_4$ | $-e_2$ | -1 |

8. The following table gives examples of rings with additional properties:

| ring | commuta- tive ring with unity | integral domain | principal ideal domain | Euclidean domain | division ring | eld |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------|------------------------------|---------------------|------------------|-----|
| $\mathbb{Q}, \mathbb{R}, \mathbb{C}$ | yes | yes | yes | yes | yes | yes |
| \mathbb{Z} | yes | yes | yes | yes | no | no |
| \mathbb{Z}_p (p prime) | yes | yes | yes | yes | yes | yes |
| \mathbb{Z}_n (n composite) | yes | no | no | no | no | no |
| $\mathbb{Z}[x]$ | yes | yes | no | no | no | no |
| $\mathcal{M}_{n \times n}$ | no | no | no | no | no | no |

2.7.4 FIELDS

2.7.4.1 Definitions

1. A *eld* $(F, +, \cdot)$ is a commutative ring with unity such that each non-zero element of F has a multiplicative inverse (equivalently, a *eld* is a commutative division ring).
2. The *characteristic* of a *eld* (or a ring) is the smallest positive integer n such that $1 + 1 + \cdots + 1 = 0$ (n summands). If no such n exists, the *eld* has characteristic 0 (or characteristic ∞).
3. Field K is an *extension eld* of the *eld* F if F is a sub *eld* of K (i.e., $F \subseteq K$, and F is a *eld* using the same operations used in K).

2.7.4.2 Examples of elds

1. \mathbb{Q}, \mathbb{R} , and \mathbb{C} with ordinary addition and multiplication are *elds*.
2. \mathbb{Z}_p (p a prime) is a *eld* under addition and multiplication modulo p .
3. $F[x]/(f(x))$ is a *eld*, provided that F is a *eld* and $f(x)$ is a non-constant polynomial irreducible in $F[x]$.

2.7.5 QUADRATIC FIELDS

2.7.5.1 Definitions

1. A complex number is an *algebraic integer* if it is a root of a polynomial with integer coefficients that has a leading coefficient of 1.
2. If d is a square-free integer, then $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d}) = \{a + b\sqrt{d}\}$, where a and b are rational numbers, is called a *quadratic eld*. If $d > 0$ then $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$ is a *real quadratic eld*; if $d < 0$ then $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$ is an *imaginary quadratic eld*.

-
3. The *integers* of an algebraic number field are the algebraic integers that belong to this number field.
 4. If $\{\alpha, \beta, \gamma\}$ are integers in $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$ such that $\alpha\gamma = \beta$ then we say that α *divides* β ; written $\alpha|\beta$.
 5. An integer ϵ in $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$ is a *unit* if it divides 1.
 6. If $\alpha = a + b\sqrt{d}$ then
 - (a) the *conjugate* of α is $\bar{\alpha} = a - b\sqrt{d}$.
 - (b) the *norm* of α is $N(\alpha) = \alpha\bar{\alpha} = a^2 - db^2$.
 7. If α is an integer of $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$ and if ϵ is a unit of $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$, then the number $\epsilon\alpha$ is an *associate* of α . A *prime* in $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$ is an integer of $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$ that is only divisible by the units and its associates.
 8. A quadratic field $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$ is a *Euclidean field* if, given integers α and β in $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$ with $\beta \neq 0$, there are integers γ and δ in $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$ such that $\alpha = \gamma\beta + \delta$ and $|N(\delta)| < |N(\beta)|$.
 9. A quadratic field $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$ has the *unique factorization property* if, whenever α is a non-zero, non-unit, integer in $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$ with $\alpha = \epsilon\pi_1\pi_2\cdots\pi_r = \epsilon'\pi'_1\pi'_2\cdots\pi'_s$ where ϵ and ϵ' are units, then $r = s$ and the primes π_i and π'_j can be paired off into pairs of associates.

2.7.5.2 Facts about quadratic fields

1. The integers of $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$ are of the form
 - (a) $a + b\sqrt{d}$, with a and b integers, if $d \equiv 2 \pmod{4}$ or $d \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$.
 - (b) $a + b\left(\frac{\sqrt{d-1}}{2}\right)$, with a and b integers, if $d \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$.
2. Norms are positive in imaginary quadratic fields, but not necessarily positive in real quadratic fields. It is always true that $N(\alpha\beta) = N(\alpha)N(\beta)$.
3. If α is an integer in $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$ and $N(\alpha)$ is an integer that is prime, then α is prime.
4. The number of units in $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$ is as follows:
 - (a) If $d = -3$, there are 6 units: $\pm 1, \pm \frac{-1+\sqrt{-3}}{2},$ and $\pm \frac{-1-\sqrt{-3}}{2}$.
 - (b) If $d = -1$, there are 4 units: ± 1 and $\pm i$.
 - (c) If $d < 0$ and $d \neq -1$ and $d \neq -3$ there are 2 units: ± 1 .
 - (d) If $d > 0$ there are infinitely many units. There is a fundamental unit, ϵ_0 , such that all other units have the form $\pm\epsilon_0^n$ where n is an integer.

-
5. The quadratic eld $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$ is Euclidean if and only if d is one of the following: $-11, -7, -3, -2, -1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 11, 13, 17, 19, 21, 29, 33, 37, 41, 57, 73$.
 6. If $d < 0$ then the imaginary quadratic eld $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$ has the unique factorization property if and only if d is one of the following: $-1, -2, -3, -7, -11, -19, -43, -163$.
 7. Of the 60 real quadratic elds $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$ with $2 \leq d \leq 100$, exactly 38 of them have the unique factorization property: $d = 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 11, 13, 14, 17, 19, 21, 22, 23, 29, 31, 33, 37, 38, 41, 43, 46, 47, 53, 57, 59, 61, 62, 67, 69, 71, 73, 77, 83, 86, 89, 93, 94$, and 97.

2.7.5.3 Examples of quadratic elds

1. The algebraic integers of $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{-1})$ are of the form $a + bi$ where a and b are integers; they are called the *Gaussian integers*.
2. The number $1 + \sqrt{2}$ is a fundamental unit of $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{2})$. Hence, all units in $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{2})$ have the form $\pm(1 + \sqrt{2})^n$ for $n = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$
3. The eld $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{-5})$ is not a unique factorization domain. This is illustrated by $6 = 2 \cdot 3 = (1 + \sqrt{-5}) \cdot (1 - \sqrt{-5})$, yet each of $\{2, 3, 1 + \sqrt{-5}, 1 - \sqrt{-5}\}$ is prime in this eld.
4. The eld $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{10})$ is not a unique factorization domain. This is illustrated by $6 = 2 \cdot 3 = (4 + \sqrt{10}) \cdot (4 - \sqrt{10})$, yet each of $\{2, 3, 4 + \sqrt{10}, 4 - \sqrt{10}\}$ is prime in this eld.

2.7.6 FINITE FIELDS

2.7.6.1 Facts about finite elds

1. If p is prime, then the ring \mathbb{Z}_p is a finite eld.
2. If p is prime and n is a positive integer, then there is exactly one eld (up to isomorphism) with p^n elements. This eld is denoted $GF(p^n)$ or F_{p^n} and is called a *Galois eld*. (See the table on page 190.)
3. For F a finite eld, there is a prime p and a positive integer n such that F has p^n elements. The prime number p is the characteristic of F . The eld F is a *finite extension* of \mathbb{Z}_p , that is, F is a finite dimensional vector space over \mathbb{Z}_p .
4. If F is a finite eld, then the set of non-zero elements of F under multiplication is a cyclic group. A generator of this group is a *primitive element*.
5. There are $\phi(p^n - 1)/n$ primitive polynomials of degree n ($n > 1$) over $GF(p)$, where ϕ is the Euler ϕ -function. (See table on page 128.)

6. There are $\frac{\sum_{j|k} \mu(k/j)p^{nj}}{k}$ irreducible polynomials of degree k over $GF(p^n)$, where μ is the Möbius function.
7. If F is a finite field where $|F| = k$ and $p(x)$ is a polynomial of degree n irreducible over F , then the field $F[x]/(p(x))$ has order k^n . If α is a root of $p(x) \in F[x]$ of degree $n \geq 1$, then $F[x]/(p(x)) = \{c_{n-1}\alpha^{n-1} + \dots + c_1\alpha + c_0 \mid c_i \in F \text{ for all } i\}$.
8. When p is a prime, $GF(p^n)$ can be viewed as a vector space of dimension n over F_p . A basis of F_{p^n} of the form $\{\alpha, \alpha^p, \alpha^{p^2}, \dots, \alpha^{p^{n-1}}\}$ is called a *normal basis*. If α is a primitive element of F_{p^n} , then the basis is said to be a *primitive normal basis*. Such an α satisfies a primitive normal polynomial of degree n over F_p .

| Degree n | Primitive normal polynomials | | |
|---------------|------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| | $p = 2$ | $p = 3$ | $p = 5$ |
| 2 | $x^2 + x + 1$ | $x^2 + x + 2$ | $x^2 + x + 2$ |
| 3 | $x^3 + x^2 + 1$ | $x^3 + 2x^2 + 1$ | $x^3 + x^2 + 2$ |
| 4 | $x^4 + x^3 + 1$ | $x^4 + x^3 + 2$ | $x^4 + x^3 + 4x + 2$ |
| 5 | $x^5 + x^4 + x^2 + x + 1$ | $x^5 + 2x^4 + 1$ | $x^5 + 2x^4 + 3$ |
| 6 | $x^6 + x^5 + 1$ | $x^6 + x^5 + x^3 + 2$ | $x^6 + x^5 + 2$ |
| 7 | $x^7 + x^6 + 1$ | $x^7 + x^6 + x^2 + 1$ | $x^7 + x^6 + 2$ |

2.7.7 HOMOMORPHISMS AND ISOMORPHISMS

2.7.7.1 Definitions

1. A *group homomorphism* from group G_1 to group G_2 is a function $\varphi : G_1 \rightarrow G_2$ such that $\varphi(ab) = \varphi(a)\varphi(b)$ for all $a, b \in G_1$. *Note:* $a\varphi$ is often written instead of $\varphi(a)$.
2. A *character* of a group G is a group homomorphism $\chi : G \rightarrow \mathbb{C}^*$ (non-zero complex numbers under multiplication). (See table on page 191.)
3. A *ring homomorphism* from ring R_1 to ring R_2 is a function $\varphi : R_1 \rightarrow R_2$ such that $\varphi(a + b) = \varphi(a) + \varphi(b)$ and $\varphi(ab) = \varphi(a)\varphi(b)$ for all $a, b \in R_1$.
4. An *isomorphism* from group (ring) S_1 to group (ring) S_2 is a group (ring) homomorphism $\varphi : S_1 \rightarrow S_2$ that is 1-1 and onto S_2 . If an isomorphism exists, then S_1 is said to be *isomorphic* to S_2 . Write $S_1 \cong S_2$. (See the table on page 176 for numbers of non-isomorphic groups and the table on page 178 for examples of groups of orders less than 16.)
5. An *automorphism* of S is an isomorphism $\varphi : S \rightarrow S$.
6. The *kernel* of a group homomorphism $\varphi : G_1 \rightarrow G_2$ is $\varphi^{-1}(e) = \{g \in G_1 \mid \varphi(g) = e\}$. The *kernel* of a ring homomorphism $\varphi : R_1 \rightarrow R_2$ is $\varphi^{-1}(0) = \{r \in R_1 \mid \varphi(r) = 0\}$.

2.7.7.2 Facts about homomorphisms and isomorphisms

1. If $\varphi : G_1 \rightarrow G_2$ is a group homomorphism, then $\varphi(G_1)$ is a subgroup of G_2 .
2. *Fundamental homomorphism theorem for groups:* If $\varphi : G_1 \rightarrow G_2$ is a group homomorphism with kernel K , then K is a normal subgroup of G_1 and $G_1/K \cong \varphi(G_1)$.
3. If G is a cyclic group of finite order, then $G \cong (\mathbb{Z}, +)$.
4. If G is a cyclic group of order n , then $G \cong (\mathbb{Z}_n, +)$.
5. If p is prime, then there is only one group (up to isomorphism) of order p , the group $(\mathbb{Z}_p, +)$.
6. *Cayley's theorem:* If G is a finite group of order n , then G is isomorphic to some subgroup of the group of permutations on n objects.
7. $\mathbb{Z}_m \times \mathbb{Z}_n \cong \mathbb{Z}_{mn}$ if and only if m and n are relatively prime.
8. If $n = n_1 \cdot n_2 \cdot \dots \cdot n_k$ where each n_i is a power of a different prime, then $\mathbb{Z}_n \cong \mathbb{Z}_{n_1} \times \mathbb{Z}_{n_2} \times \dots \times \mathbb{Z}_{n_k}$.
9. *Fundamental theorem of finite abelian groups:* Every finite abelian group G (order ≥ 2) is isomorphic to a product of cyclic groups where each cyclic group has order a power of a prime. That is, there is a unique set $\{n_1, \dots, n_k\}$ where each n_i is a power of some prime such that $G \cong \mathbb{Z}_{n_1} \times \mathbb{Z}_{n_2} \times \dots \times \mathbb{Z}_{n_k}$.
10. *Fundamental theorem of finitely generated abelian groups:* If G is a finitely generated abelian group, then there is a unique integer $n \geq 0$ and a unique set $\{n_1, \dots, n_k\}$ where each n_i is a power of some prime such that $G \cong \mathbb{Z}_{n_1} \times \mathbb{Z}_{n_2} \times \dots \times \mathbb{Z}_{n_k} \times \mathbb{Z}^n$ (G is *finitely generated* if there are $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n \in G$ such that every element of G can be written as $a_{k_1}^{\epsilon_1} a_{k_2}^{\epsilon_2} \dots a_{k_j}^{\epsilon_j}$ where $k_i \in \{1, \dots, n\}$ (the k_i are not necessarily distinct) and $\epsilon_i \in \{1, -1\}$).
11. *Fundamental homomorphism theorem for rings:* If $\varphi : R_1 \rightarrow R_2$ is a ring homomorphism with kernel K , then K is an ideal in R_1 and $R_1/K \cong \varphi(R_1)$.

2.7.8 MATRIX CLASSES THAT ARE GROUPS

In the following examples, the group operation is ordinary matrix multiplication:

1. $GL(n, \mathbb{C})$ all complex non-singular $n \times n$ matrices
2. $GL(n, \mathbb{R})$ all real non-singular $n \times n$ matrices
3. $O(n)$ all $n \times n$ matrices A with $AA^T = I$, also called the *orthogonal group*
4. $SL(n, \mathbb{C})$ all complex $n \times n$ matrices of determinant 1, also called the *unimodular group* or the *special linear group*
5. $SL(n, \mathbb{R})$ all real $n \times n$ matrices of determinant 1

6. $SO(2)$ rotations of the plane: matrices of the form

$$A(\theta) = \begin{bmatrix} \cos \theta & -\sin \theta \\ \sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{bmatrix}$$
7. $SO(n)$ rotations of n -dimensional space
8. $SU(n)$ all $n \times n$ unitary matrices of determinant 1
9. $U(n)$ all $n \times n$ unitary matrices with $UU^H = I$

2.7.9 PERMUTATION GROUPS

| Name | Symbol | Order | Definition |
|-------------------|--------|--------|--|
| Symmetric group | S_n | $n!$ | All permutations on $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ |
| Alternating group | A_n | $n!/2$ | All even permutations on $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$ |
| Cyclic group | C_n | n | Generated by $(12 \cdots n)$ |
| Dihedral group | D_n | $2n$ | Generated by $(12 \cdots n)$ and $(1n)(2n-1)(3n-2) \cdots$ |
| Identity group | E_n | 1 | $(1)(2) \cdots (n)$ is the only permutation |

EXAMPLE With $p = 3$ elements, the identity permutation is (123) , and:

$$A_3 = \{(123), (231), (312)\},$$

$$C_3 = \{(123), (231), (312)\},$$

$$D_3 = \{(231), (213), (132), (321), (312), (123)\},$$

$$E_3 = \{(123)\} \text{ and}$$

$$S_3 = \{(231), (213), (132), (321), (312), (123)\}.$$

2.7.9.1 Creating new permutation groups

Let A have permutations $\{X_i\}$, order n , degree d , let B have permutations $\{Y_j\}$, order m , degree e , and let C (a function of A and B) have permutations $\{W_k\}$, order p , degree f .

| Name | Definition | Permutation | Order | Degree |
|-------------|------------------|------------------|------------|-------------|
| Sum | $C = A + B$ | $W = X \cup Y$ | $p = mn$ | $f = d + e$ |
| Product | $C = A \times B$ | $W = X \times Y$ | $p = mn$ | $f = de$ |
| Composition | $C = A[B]$ | $W = X \times Y$ | $p = mn^d$ | $f = de$ |
| Power | $C = B^A$ | $W = Y^X$ | $p = mn$ | $f = e^d$ |

2.7.9.2 Polya theory

Let π be a permutation. Define $\text{Inv}(\pi)$ to be the number of invariant elements (i.e., mapped to themselves) in π . Define $\text{cyc}(\pi)$ as the number of cycles in π . Suppose π has b_1 cycles of length 1, b_2 cycles of length 2, ..., b_k cycles of length k in its unique cycle decomposition. Then π can be encoded as the expression $x_1^{b_1} x_2^{b_2} \cdots x_k^{b_k}$. Summing these expressions for all permutations in the group G , and normalizing by the number of elements in G results in the *cycle index* of the group G :

$$P_G(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_l) = \frac{1}{|G|} \sum_{\pi \in G} (x_1^{b_1} x_2^{b_2} \cdots x_k^{b_k}). \quad (2.7.1)$$

1. *Burnside's Lemma:* Let G be a group of permutations of a set A , and let S be the equivalence relation on A induced by G . Then the number of equivalence classes in A is given by $\frac{1}{|G|} \sum_{\pi \in G} \text{Inv}(\pi)$.

2. *Special case of Polya's theorem:* Let R be an m element set of colors. Let G be a group of permutations $\{\pi_1, \pi_2, \dots\}$ of the set A . Let $C(A, R)$ be the set of colorings of the elements of A using colors in R . Then the number of distinct colorings in $C(A, R)$ is given by

$$\frac{1}{|G|} \left[m^{\text{cyc}(\pi_1)} + m^{\text{cyc}(\pi_2)} + \dots \right].$$

3. *Polya's theorem:* Let G be a group of permutations on a set A with cycle index $P_G(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_k)$. Let $C(A, R)$ be the collection of all colorings of A using colors in R . If w is a weight assignment on R , then the pattern inventory of colorings in $C(A, R)$ is given by

$$P_G \left(\sum_{r \in R} w(r), \sum_{r \in R} w^2(r), \dots, \sum_{r \in R} w^k(r) \right).$$

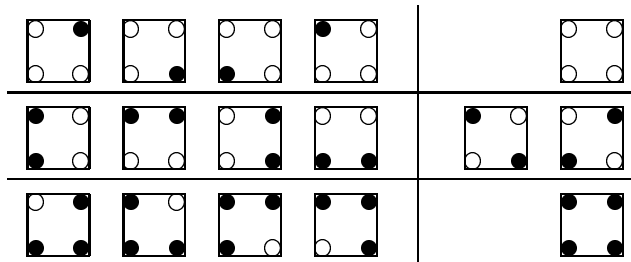
EXAMPLES

1. Consider necklaces constructed of $2k$ beads. Since a necklace can be flipped over, the appropriate permutation group is $G = \{\pi_1, \pi_2\}$ with $\pi_1 = (1)(2) \dots (2k)$ and $\pi_2 = (1 \ 2k)(2 \ 2k-1)(3 \ 2k-2) \dots (k \ k+1)$. Hence, $\text{cyc}(\pi_1) = 2k$, $\text{cyc}(\pi_2) = k$, and the cycle index is $P_G(x_1, x_2) = (x_1^{2k} + x_2^k)/2$. Using r colors, the number of distinct necklaces is $(r^{2k} + r^k)/2$.

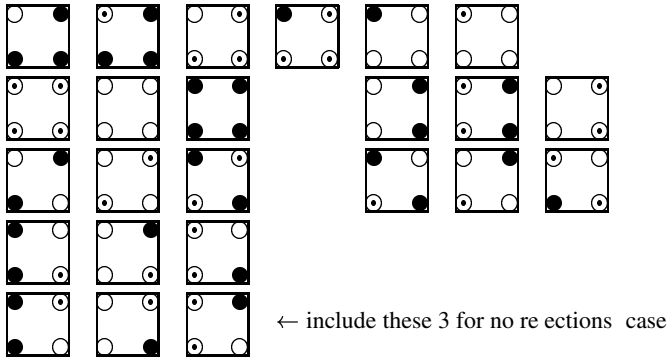
For a 4 bead necklace ($k = 2$) using $r = 2$ colors (say $w_1 = b$ for "black" and $w_2 = w$ for "white"), the $(2^4 + 2^2)/2 = 10$ different necklaces are $\{bbbb\}$, $\{bbbw\}$, $\{bbwb\}$, $\{bbww\}$, $\{bwbw\}$, $\{bwbw\}$, $\{bwbb\}$, $\{bwwb\}$, $\{wbww\}$, and $\{wwww\}$. The pattern inventory of colorings, $P_G(\sum_i w_i, \sum_i w_i^2) = ((b+w)^4 + (b^2+w^2)^2)/2 = b^4 + 2b^3w + 4b^2w^2 + 2bw^3 + w^4$, tells how many colorings of each type there are.

2. Consider coloring the corners of a square. If the squares can be rotated, but not reflected, then the number of distinct colorings, using k colors, is $\frac{1}{4}(k^4 + k^2 + 2k)$. If the squares can be rotated and reflected, then the number of distinct colorings, using k colors, is $\frac{1}{8}(k^4 + 2k^3 + 3k^2 + 2k)$.

(a) If $k = 2$ colors are used, then there are 6 distinct classes of colorings whether reflections are allowed, or not. These classes are the same in both cases. The 16 colorings of a square with 2 colors form 6 distinct classes as shown:



- (b) If $k = 3$ colors are used, then there are 21 distinct classes of colorings if reflections are allowed, and 24 distinct classes of colorings if reflections are not allowed. Shown below are representative elements of each of these classes:



2.7.9.3 Polya theory tables

- Number of distinct corner colorings of regular polygons using rotations and reflections, or rotations only, with no more than k colors:

| object | rotations & reflections | | | rotations only | | |
|----------|-------------------------|---------|---------|----------------|---------|---------|
| | $k = 2$ | $k = 3$ | $k = 4$ | $k = 2$ | $k = 3$ | $k = 4$ |
| triangle | 4 | 10 | 20 | 4 | 11 | 24 |
| square | 6 | 21 | 55 | 6 | 24 | 70 |
| pentagon | 8 | 39 | 136 | 8 | 51 | 208 |
| hexagon | 13 | 92 | 430 | 14 | 130 | 700 |

- Coloring regular 2- and 3- dimensional objects with no more than k colors:

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| tetrahedron | |
| corners of a tetrahedron | $\frac{1}{12} (k^6 + 3k^4 + 8k^2)$ |
| edges of a tetrahedron | $\frac{1}{12} (k^6 + 3k^4 + 8k^2)$ |
| faces of a tetrahedron | $\frac{1}{12} (k^4 + 11k^2)$ |
| cube | |
| corners of a cube | $\frac{1}{24} (k^8 + 17k^4 + 6k^2)$ |
| edges of a cube | $\frac{1}{24} (k^{12} + 6k^7 + 3k^6 + 8k^4 + 6k^3)$ |
| faces of a cube | $\frac{1}{24} (k^6 + 3k^4 + 12k^3 + 8k^2)$ |

| | |
|--|---|
| corners of a triangle | |
| with rotations | $\frac{1}{3} (k^3 + 2k)$ |
| with rotations and reflections | $\frac{1}{6} (k^3 + 3k^2 + 2k)$ |
| corners of a square | |
| with rotations | $\frac{1}{4} (k^4 + k^2 + 2k)$ |
| with rotations and reflections | $\frac{1}{8} (k^4 + 2k^3 + 3k^2 + 2k)$ |
| corners of a pentagon | |
| with rotations | $\frac{1}{5} (k^5 + 4k)$ |
| with rotations and reflections | $\frac{1}{10} (k^5 + 5k^3 + 4k)$ |
| corners of a hexagon | |
| with rotations | $\frac{1}{6} (k^6 + k^3 + 2k^2 + 2k)$ |
| with rotations and reflections | $\frac{1}{12} (k^6 + 3k^4 + 4k^3 + 2k^2 + 2k)$ |
| corners of a regular polygon | |
| with rotations | $\frac{1}{n} \sum_{d n} \phi(d) k^{\frac{n}{d}}$ |
| with rotations and reflections (n even) | $\frac{1}{2n} \sum_{d n} \phi(d) k^{\frac{n}{d}} + \frac{1}{4} (k^{\frac{n}{2}} + k^{\frac{n+2}{2}})$ |
| with rotations and reflections (n odd) | $\frac{1}{2n} \sum_{d n} \phi(d) k^{\frac{n}{d}} + \frac{1}{2} k^{\frac{n+1}{2}}$ |

3. The cycle index $P(x_1, x_2, \dots)$ and number of black-white colorings of regular objects under all permutations

| | |
|-----------------------|---|
| corners of a triangle | |
| cycle index | $\frac{1}{6} (x_1^3 + 3x_1x_2 + 2x_3)$ |
| pattern inventory | $1b^3 + 1b^2w + 1bw^2 + 1w^3$ |
| corners of a square | |
| cycle index | $\frac{1}{8} (x_1^4 + 2x_2^2x_2 + 3x_2^2 + 2x_4)$ |
| pattern inventory | $1b^4 + 1b^3w + 2b^2w^2 + 1bw^3 + 1w^4$ |
| corners of a pentagon | |
| cycle index | $\frac{1}{10} (x_1^5 + 4x_5 + 5x_1x_2^2)$ |
| pattern inventory | $1b^5 + 1b^4w + 2b^3w^2 + 2b^2w^3 + 1bw^4 + 1w^5$ |

corners of a cube

$$\text{cycle index} \quad \frac{1}{24} (x_1^8 + 6x_4^2 + 9x_2^4 + 8x_1^2x_3^2)$$

$$\text{pattern inventory} \quad b^8 + b^7w + 3b^6w^2 + 3b^5w^3 + 7b^4w^4 \\ + 3b^3w^5 + 3b^2w^6 + bw^7 + w^8$$

Note that the pattern inventory for the black-white colorings is given by $P((b+w), (b^2+w^2), (b^3+w^3), \dots)$.

2.7.10 TABLES

2.7.10.1 Number of non-isomorphic groups of different orders

The $10n + k$ entry is found by looking at row n and the column k . There are 10,494,213 non-isomorphic groups with 512 elements.

| | _0 | _1 | _2 | _3 | _4 | _5 | _6 | _7 | _8 | _9 |
|-----|-----|----|------|----|-----|----|-----|----|------|----|
| 0_ | | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 5 | 2 |
| 1_ | 2 | 1 | 5 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 14 | 1 | 5 | 1 |
| 2_ | 5 | 2 | 2 | 1 | 15 | 2 | 2 | 5 | 4 | 1 |
| 3_ | 4 | 1 | 51 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 14 | 1 | 2 | 2 |
| 4_ | 14 | 1 | 6 | 1 | 4 | 2 | 2 | 1 | 52 | 2 |
| 5_ | 5 | 1 | 5 | 1 | 15 | 2 | 13 | 2 | 2 | 1 |
| 6_ | 13 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 267 | 1 | 4 | 1 | 5 | 1 |
| 7_ | 4 | 1 | 50 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 1 | 6 | 1 |
| 8_ | 52 | 15 | 2 | 1 | 15 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 12 | 1 |
| 9_ | 10 | 1 | 4 | 2 | 2 | 1 | 231 | 1 | 5 | 2 |
| 10_ | 16 | 1 | 4 | 1 | 14 | 2 | 2 | 1 | 45 | 1 |
| 11_ | 6 | 2 | 43 | 1 | 6 | 1 | 5 | 4 | 2 | 1 |
| 12_ | 47 | 2 | 2 | 1 | 4 | 5 | 16 | 1 | 2328 | 2 |
| 13_ | 4 | 1 | 10 | 1 | 2 | 5 | 15 | 1 | 4 | 1 |
| 14_ | 11 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 197 | 1 | 2 | 6 | 5 | 1 |
| 15_ | 13 | 1 | 12 | 2 | 4 | 2 | 18 | 1 | 2 | 1 |
| 16_ | 238 | 1 | 55 | 1 | 5 | 2 | 2 | 1 | 57 | 2 |
| 17_ | 4 | 5 | 4 | 1 | 4 | 2 | 42 | 1 | 2 | 1 |
| 18_ | 37 | 1 | 4 | 2 | 12 | 1 | 6 | 1 | 4 | 13 |
| 19_ | 4 | 1 | 1543 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 12 | 1 | 10 | 1 |
| 20_ | 52 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 12 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 51 | 1 |
| 21_ | 12 | 1 | 5 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 177 | 1 | 2 | 2 |
| 22_ | 15 | 1 | 6 | 1 | 197 | 6 | 2 | 1 | 15 | 1 |

| | <u>0</u> | <u>1</u> | <u>2</u> | <u>3</u> | <u>4</u> | <u>5</u> | <u>6</u> | <u>7</u> | <u>8</u> | <u>9</u> |
|-----|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| 23_ | 4 | 2 | 14 | 1 | 16 | 1 | 4 | 2 | 4 | 1 |
| 24_ | 208 | 1 | 5 | 67 | 5 | 2 | 4 | 1 | 12 | 1 |
| 25_ | 15 | 1 | 46 | 2 | 2 | 1 | 56092 | 1 | 6 | 1 |
| 26_ | 15 | 2 | 2 | 1 | 39 | 1 | 4 | 1 | 4 | 1 |
| 27_ | 30 | 1 | 54 | 5 | 2 | 4 | 10 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| 28_ | 40 | 1 | 4 | 1 | 4 | 2 | 4 | 1 | 1045 | 2 |
| 29_ | 4 | 2 | 5 | 1 | 23 | 1 | 14 | 5 | 2 | 1 |
| 30_ | 49 | 2 | 2 | 1 | 42 | 2 | 10 | 1 | 9 | 2 |
| 31_ | 6 | 1 | 61 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 4 | 1 | 4 | 1 |
| 32_ | 1640 | 1 | 4 | 1 | 176 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 15 | 1 |
| 33_ | 12 | 1 | 4 | 5 | 2 | 1 | 228 | 1 | 5 | 1 |
| 34_ | 15 | 1 | 18 | 5 | 12 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 12 | 1 |
| 35_ | 10 | 14 | 195 | 1 | 4 | 2 | 5 | 2 | 2 | 1 |
| 36_ | 162 | 2 | 2 | 3 | 11 | 1 | 6 | 1 | 42 | 2 |
| 37_ | 4 | 1 | 15 | 1 | 4 | 7 | 12 | 1 | 60 | 1 |
| 38_ | 11 | 2 | 2 | 1 | 20169 | 2 | 2 | 4 | 5 | 1 |
| 39_ | 12 | 1 | 44 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 30 | 1 | 2 | 5 |
| 40_ | 221 | 1 | 6 | 1 | 5 | 16 | 6 | 1 | 46 | 1 |
| 41_ | 6 | 1 | 4 | 1 | 10 | 1 | 235 | 2 | 4 | 1 |
| 42_ | 41 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 14 | 2 | 4 | 1 | 4 | 2 |
| 43_ | 4 | 1 | 775 | 1 | 4 | 1 | 5 | 1 | 6 | 1 |
| 44_ | 51 | 13 | 4 | 1 | 18 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 1396 | 1 |
| 45_ | 34 | 1 | 5 | 2 | 2 | 1 | 54 | 1 | 2 | 5 |
| 46_ | 11 | 1 | 12 | 1 | 51 | 4 | 2 | 1 | 55 | 1 |
| 47_ | 4 | 2 | 12 | 1 | 6 | 2 | 11 | 2 | 2 | 1 |
| 48_ | 1213 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 12 | 1 | 261 | 1 | 14 | 2 |
| 49_ | 10 | 1 | 12 | 1 | 4 | 4 | 42 | 2 | 4 | 1 |
| 50_ | 56 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 202 | 2 | 6 | 6 | 4 | 1 |
| 51_ | 8 | 1 | * | 15 | 2 | 1 | 15 | 1 | 4 | 1 |

2.7.10.2 Number of non-isomorphic Abelian groups of different orders

The $10n + k$ entry is in row $n_$ and column $k_$.

| | <u>0</u> | <u>1</u> | <u>2</u> | <u>3</u> | <u>4</u> | <u>5</u> | <u>6</u> | <u>7</u> | <u>8</u> | <u>9</u> |
|----|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| 0_ | | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 2 |
| 1_ | 1 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 5 | 1 | 2 | 1 |
| 2_ | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 3 | 2 | 1 |
| 3_ | 1 | 1 | 7 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 4 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 4_ | 3 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 5 | 2 |
| 5_ | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | 3 | 1 | 3 | 1 | 1 | 1 |

2.7.10.3 Names of groups of small order

| Order n | Distinct groups of order n |
|-----------|--|
| 1 | $\{e\}$ |
| 2 | C_2 |
| 3 | C_3 |
| 4 | $C_4, V = C_2 \times C_2$ |
| 5 | C_5 |
| 6 | C_6, D_3 |
| 7 | C_7 |
| 8 | $C_8, C_2 \times C_4, C_2 \times C_2 \times C_2, D_4, Q$ |
| 9 | $C_9, C_3 \times C_3$ |
| 10 | C_{10}, D_5 |
| 11 | C_{11} |
| 12 | $C_{12}, C_2 \times C_6, T = C_3 \times C_4, D_6, A_4$ |
| 13 | C_{13} |
| 14 | C_{14}, D_7 |
| 15 | C_{15} |

2.7.10.4 Representations of groups of small order

In all cases the identity element, $\{1\}$, forms a group of order 1.

1. **C_2 , the cyclic group of order 2**

Generator: a with relation $a^2 = 1$

| | | |
|-----|-----|-----|
| | 1 | a |
| 1 | 1 | a |
| a | a | 1 |

Elements

(a) order 2: a

Subgroups

(a) order 2: $\{1, a\}$

2. **C_3 , the cyclic group of order 3**

Generator: a with relation $a^3 = 1$

| | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| | 1 | a | a^2 |
| 1 | 1 | a | a^2 |
| a | a | a^2 | 1 |
| a^2 | a^2 | 1 | a |

Elements

(a) order 3: a, a^2

Subgroups

(a) order 3: $\{1, a, a^2\}$

3. **C_4 , the cyclic group of order 4**

Generator: a with relation $a^4 = 1$

| | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 |
| 1 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 |
| a | a | a^2 | a^3 | 1 |
| a^2 | a^2 | a^3 | 1 | a |
| a^3 | a^3 | 1 | a | a^2 |

Elements

- (a) order 4: a, a^3
- (b) order 2: a^2

Subgroups

- (a) order 4: $\{1, a, a^2, a^3\}$
- (b) order 2: $\{1, a^2\}$

4. **V , the Klein four group**

Generators: a, b with relations $a^2 = 1, b^2 = 1, ba = ab$:

| | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| | 1 | a | b | ab |
| 1 | 1 | a | b | ab |
| a | a | 1 | ab | b |
| b | b | ab | 1 | a |
| ab | ab | b | a | 1 |

Elements

- (a) order 2: a, b, ab

Subgroups

- (a) order 4: $\{1, a, b, ab\}$
- (b) order 2: $\{1, a\}, \{1, b\}, \{1, ab\}$

5. **C_5 , the cyclic group of order 5**

Generator: a with relation $a^5 = 1$

| | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 |
| 1 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 |
| a | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | 1 |
| a^2 | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | 1 | a |
| a^3 | a^3 | a^4 | 1 | a | a^2 |
| a^4 | a^4 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 |

Elements

- (a) order 5: a, a^2, a^3, a^4

Subgroups

- (a) order 5: $\{1, a, a^2, a^3, a^4\}$

6. **C_6 , the cyclic group of order 6**

Generator: a with relation $a^6 = 1$

| | | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 |
| 1 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 |
| a | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | 1 |
| a^2 | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | 1 | a |
| a^3 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | 1 | a | a^2 |
| a^4 | a^4 | a^5 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 |
| a^5 | a^5 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 |

Elements

- (a) order 6: a, a^5
- (b) order 3: a^2, a^4
- (c) order 2: a^3

Subgroups

- (a) order 6: $\{1, a, a^2, a^3, a^4, a^5\}$
- (b) order 3: $\{1, a^2, a^4\}$
- (c) order 2: $\{1, a^3\}$

7. **S₃, the symmetric group on three elements**

Generators: a, b with relations $a^3 = 1, b^2 = 1, ba = a^{-1}b$

| | | | | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| | 1 | a | a^2 | b | ab | a^2b |
| 1 | 1 | a | a^2 | b | ab | a^2b |
| a | a | a^2 | 1 | ab | a^2b | b |
| a^2 | a^2 | 1 | a | a^2b | b | ab |
| b | b | a^2b | ab | 1 | a^2 | a |
| ab | ab | b | a^2b | a | 1 | a^2 |
| a^2b | a^2b | ab | b | a^2 | a | 1 |

Elements

- (a) order 3: a, a^2
- (b) order 2: b, ab, a^2b

Subgroups

- (a) order 6: $\{1, a, a^2, b, ab, a^2b\}$ (is a normal subgroup)
- (b) order 3: $\{1, a, a^2\}$ (is a normal subgroup)
- (c) order 2: $\{1, b\}, \{1, ab\}, \{1, a^2b\}$

8. **C₇, the cyclic group of order 7**

Generator: a with relation $a^7 = 1$

| | | | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | a^6 |
| 1 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | a^6 |
| a | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | a^6 | 1 |
| a^2 | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | a^6 | 1 | a |
| a^3 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | a^6 | 1 | a | a^2 |
| a^4 | a^4 | a^5 | a^6 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 |
| a^5 | a^5 | a^6 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 |
| a^6 | a^6 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 |

Elements

Subgroups

- (a) order 7: $a, a^2, a^3, a^4, a^5, a^6$
- (a) order 7: $\{1, a, a^2, a^3, a^4, a^5, a^6\}$

9. **C₈, the cyclic group of order 8**

Generator: a with relation $a^8 = 1$

| | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | a^6 | a^7 |
| 1 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | a^6 | a^7 |
| a | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | a^6 | a^7 | 1 |
| a^2 | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | a^6 | a^7 | 1 | a |
| a^3 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | a^6 | a^7 | 1 | a | a^2 |
| a^4 | a^4 | a^5 | a^6 | a^7 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 |
| a^5 | a^5 | a^6 | a^7 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 |
| a^6 | a^6 | a^7 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 |
| a^7 | a^7 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | a^6 |

Elements

- (a) order 8: a, a^3, a^5, a^7
- (b) order 4: a^2, a^6
- (c) order 2: a^4

Subgroups

- (a) order 8: $\{1, a, a^2, a^3, a^4, a^5, a^6, a^7\}$
- (b) order 4: $\{1, a^2, a^4, a^6\}$
- (c) order 2: $\{1, a^4\}$

10. $C_4 \times C_2$, the direct product of a cyclic group of order 4 and a cyclic group of order 2

Generators: a, b with relations $a^4 = 1, b^2 = 1$, and $ba = ab$

| | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | b | ab | a^2b | a^3b |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | b | ab | a^2b | a^3b |
| a | a | a^2 | a^3 | 1 | ab | a^2b | a^3b | b |
| a^2 | a^2 | a^3 | 1 | a | a^2b | a^3b | b | ab |
| a^3 | a^3 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3b | b | ab | a^2b |
| b | b | ab | a^2b | a^3b | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 |
| ab | ab | a^2b | a^3b | b | a | a^2 | a^3 | 1 |
| a^2b | a^2b | a^3b | b | ab | a^2 | a^3 | 1 | a |
| a^3b | a^3b | b | ab | a^2b | a^3 | 1 | a | a^2 |

Elements

- (a) order 4: a, a^3, ab, a^3b
- (b) order 2: a^2, b, a^2b

Subgroups

- (a) order 8: $\{1, a, a^2, a^3, b, ab, a^2b, a^3b\}$
- (b) order 4: $\{1, a, a^2, a^3\}, \{1, ab, a^2, a^3b\}, \{1, a^2, b, a^2b\}$
- (c) order 2: $\{1, a^2\}, \{1, b\}, \{1, a^2b\}$

11. $C_2 \times C_2 \times C_2$, the direct product of 3 cyclic groups of order 2

Generators: a, b, c with relations $a^2 = 1, b^2 = 1, c^2 = 1, ba = ab, ca = ac, cb = bc$

| | 1 | a | b | ab | c | ac | bc | abc |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1 | 1 | a | b | ab | c | ac | bc | abc |
| a | a | 1 | ab | b | ac | c | abc | bc |
| b | b | ab | 1 | a | bc | abc | c | ac |
| ab | ab | b | a | 1 | abc | bc | ac | c |
| c | c | ac | bc | abc | 1 | a | b | ab |
| ac | ac | c | abc | bc | a | 1 | ab | b |
| bc | bc | abc | c | ac | b | ab | 1 | a |
| abc | abc | bc | ac | c | ab | b | a | 1 |

Elements

- (a) order 2: a, b, ab, c, ac, bc, abc

Subgroups

- (a) order 8: $\{1, a, b, ab, c, ac, bc, abc\}$
- (b) order 4: $\{1, a, b, ab\}, \{1, a, c, ac\}, \{1, a, bc, abc\}, \{1, b, c, bc\}, \{1, b, ac, abc\}, \{1, ab, c, abc\}, \{1, ab, ac, bc\}$
- (c) order 2: $\{1, a\}, \{1, b\}, \{1, ab\}, \{1, c\}, \{1, ac\}, \{1, bc\}, \{1, abc\}$

12. D_4 , the dihedral group of order 8

Generators: a, b with relations $a^4 = 1, b^2 = 1, ba = a^{-1}b$

| | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | b | ab | a^2b | a^3b |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | b | ab | a^2b | a^3b |
| a | a | a^2 | a^3 | 1 | ab | a^2b | a^3b | b |
| a^2 | a^2 | a^3 | 1 | a | a^2b | a^3b | b | ab |
| a^3 | a^3 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3b | b | ab | a^2b |
| b | b | a^3b | a^2b | ab | 1 | a^3 | a^2 | a |
| ab | ab | b | a^3b | a^2b | a | 1 | a^3 | a^2 |
| a^2b | a^2b | ab | b | a^3b | a^2 | a | 1 | a^3 |
| a^3b | a^3b | a^2b | ab | b | a^3 | a^2 | a | 1 |

Elements

- (a) order 4: a, a^3
- (b) order 2: a^2, b, ab, a^2b, a^3b

Subgroups

- (a) order 8: $\{1, a, a^2, a^3, b, ab, a^2b, a^3b\}$
- (b) order 4: $\{1, a^2, b, a^2b\}, \{1, a, a^2, a^3\}, \{1, a^2, ab, a^3b\}$
- (c) order 2: $\{1, b\}, \{1, a^2b\}, \{1, a^2\}, \{1, ab\}, \{1, a^3b\}$

Normal subgroups

- (a) order 8: $\{1, a, a^2, a^3, b, ab, a^2b, a^3b\}$
- (b) order 4: $\{1, a^2, b, a^2b\}, \{1, a, a^2, a^3\}, \{1, a^2, ab, a^3b\}$
- (c) order 2: $\{1, a^2\}$

13. Q_4 , the quaternion group (of order 8)

Generators: a, b with relations $a^4 = 1, b^2 = a^2, ba = a^{-1}b$

| | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | b | ab | a^2b | a^3b |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | b | ab | a^2b | a^3b |
| a | a | a^2 | a^3 | 1 | ab | a^2b | a^3b | b |
| a^2 | a^2 | a^3 | 1 | a | a^2b | a^3b | b | ab |
| a^3 | a^3 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3b | b | ab | a^2b |
| b | b | a^3b | a^2b | ab | a^2 | a | 1 | a^3 |
| ab | ab | b | a^3b | a^2b | a^3 | a^2 | a | 1 |
| a^2b | a^2b | ab | b | a^3b | 1 | a^3 | a^2 | a |
| a^3b | a^3b | a^2b | ab | b | a | 1 | a^3 | a^2 |

Elements

- (a) order 4: $a, a^3, b, ab, a^2b, a^3b$
- (b) order 2: a^2

Subgroups

- (a) order 8: $\{1, a, a^2, a^3, b, ab, a^2b, a^3b\}$
- (b) order 4: $\{1, a, a^2, a^3\}, \{1, b, a^2, a^2b\}, \{1, ab, a^2, a^3b\}$
- (c) order 2: $\{1, a^2\}$

Normal subgroups

- (a) order 8: $\{1, a, a^2, a^3, b, ab, a^2b, a^3b\}$
- (b) order 4: $\{1, a, a^2, a^3\}, \{1, b, a^2, a^2b\}, \{1, ab, a^2, a^3b\}$
- (c) order 2: $\{1, a^2\}$

Notes

- Q can be defined as the set $\{1, -1, i, -i, j, -j, k, -k\}$ where multiplication is defined by:

$$i^2 = j^2 = k^2 = -1, \quad ij = -ji = k, \quad jk = -kj = i, \quad ki = -ik = j \quad (2.7.2)$$

| \times | +1 | -1 | +i | -i | +j | -j | +k | -k |
|----------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| +1 | +1 | -1 | +i | -i | +j | -j | +k | -k |
| -1 | -1 | +1 | -i | +i | -j | +j | -k | +k |
| +i | +i | -i | -1 | +1 | +k | -k | -j | +j |
| -i | -i | +i | +1 | -1 | -k | +k | +j | -j |
| +j | +j | -j | -k | +k | -1 | +1 | +i | -i |
| -j | -j | +j | +k | -k | +1 | -1 | -i | +i |
| +k | +k | -k | +j | -j | -i | +i | -1 | +1 |
| -k | -k | +k | -j | +j | +i | -i | +1 | -1 |

Elements

- (a) order 4: $i, -i, j, -j, k, -k$
- (b) order 2: -1

Subgroups (all of them are normal subgroups)

- (a) order 8: $\{1, -1, i, -i, j, -j, k, -k\}$
- (b) order 4: $\{1, i, -1, -i\}, \{1, j, -1, -j\}, \{1, k, -1, -k\}$
- (c) order 2: $\{1, -1\}$

- Q can be defined as the group composed of the 8 matrices:

$$+1_q = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad -1_q = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad +i_q = \begin{bmatrix} -i & 0 \\ 0 & i \end{bmatrix}, \quad -i_q = \begin{bmatrix} i & 0 \\ 0 & -i \end{bmatrix},$$

$$+j_q = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & i \\ i & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad -j_q = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -i \\ -i & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad +k_q = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad -k_q = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

where a subscript of q indicates a quaternion element, $i^2 = -1$, and matrix multiplication is the group operation.

14. C_9 , the cyclic group of order 9

Generator: a with relation $a^9 = 1$

| | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | a^6 | a^7 | a^8 |
| 1 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | a^6 | a^7 | a^8 |
| a | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | a^6 | a^7 | a^8 | 1 |
| a^2 | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | a^6 | a^7 | a^8 | 1 | a |
| a^3 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | a^6 | a^7 | a^8 | 1 | a | a^2 |
| a^4 | a^4 | a^5 | a^6 | a^7 | a^8 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 |
| a^5 | a^5 | a^6 | a^7 | a^8 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 |
| a^6 | a^6 | a^7 | a^8 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 |
| a^7 | a^7 | a^8 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | a^6 |
| a^8 | a^8 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | a^6 | a^7 |

Elements

- (a) order 9: $a, a^2, a^4, a^5, a^6, a^7$
- (b) order 3: a^3, a^6

Subgroups

- (a) order 9: $\{1, a, a^2, a^3, a^4, a^5, a^6, a^7, a^8\}$
- (b) order 3: $\{1, a^3, a^6\}$

15. $C_3 \times C_3$, the direct product of two cyclic groups of order 3

Generators: a, b with relations $a^3 = 1, b^3 = 1, ba = ab$

| | | | | | | | | | |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| | 1 | a | a^2 | b | ab | a^2b | b^2 | ab^2 | a^2b^2 |
| 1 | 1 | a | a^2 | b | ab | a^2b | b^2 | ab^2 | a^2b^2 |
| a | a | a^2 | 1 | ab | a^2b | b | ab^2 | a^2b^2 | b^2 |
| a^2 | a^2 | 1 | a | a^2b | b | ab | a^2b^2 | b^2 | ab^2 |
| b | b | ab | a^2b | b^2 | ab^2 | a^2b^2 | 1 | a | a^2 |
| ab | ab | a^2b | b | ab^2 | a^2b^2 | b^2 | a | a^2 | 1 |
| a^2b | a^2b | b | ab | a^2b^2 | b^2 | ab^2 | a^2 | 1 | a |
| b^2 | b^2 | ab^2 | a^2b^2 | 1 | a | a^2 | b | ab | a^2b |
| ab^2 | ab^2 | a^2b^2 | b^2 | a | a^2 | 1 | ab | a^2b | b |
| a^2b^2 | a^2b^2 | b^2 | ab^2 | a^2 | 1 | a | a^2b | b | ab |

Elements

- (a) order 3: $a, a^2, b, ab, a^2b, b^2, ab^2, a^2b^2$

Subgroups

- (a) order 3: $\{1, a, a^2\}, \{1, b, b^2\}, \{1, ab, a^2b^2\}, \{1, a^2b, ab^2\}$

16. C_{10} , the cyclic group of order 10

Generator: a with relation $a^{10} = 1$

| | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | a^6 | a^7 | a^8 | a^9 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | a^6 | a^7 | a^8 | a^9 |
| a | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | a^6 | a^7 | a^8 | a^9 | 1 |
| a^2 | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | a^6 | a^7 | a^8 | a^9 | 1 | a |
| a^3 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | a^6 | a^7 | a^8 | a^9 | 1 | a | a^2 |
| a^4 | a^4 | a^5 | a^6 | a^7 | a^8 | a^9 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 |
| a^5 | a^5 | a^6 | a^7 | a^8 | a^9 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 |
| a^6 | a^6 | a^7 | a^8 | a^9 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 |
| a^7 | a^7 | a^8 | a^9 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | a^6 |
| a^8 | a^8 | a^9 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | a^6 | a^7 |
| a^9 | a^9 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | a^6 | a^7 | a^8 |

Elements

- (a) order 10: a, a^3, a^7, a^9
- (b) order 5: a^2, a^4, a^6, a^8
- (c) order 2: a^5

Subgroups

- (a) order 10: $\{1, a, a^2, a^3, a^4, a^5, a^6, a^7, a^8, a^9\}$
- (b) order 5: $\{1, a^2, a^4, a^6, a^8\}$
- (c) order 2: $\{1, a^5\}$

17. D_5 , the dihedral group of order 10

Generators: a, b with relations $a^5 = 1, b^2 = 1, ba = a^{-1}b$

| | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | b | ab | a^2b | a^3b | a^4b |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | b | ab | a^2b | a^3b | a^4b |
| a | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | 1 | ab | a^2b | a^3b | a^4b | b |
| a^2 | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | 1 | a | a^2b | a^3b | a^4b | b | ab |
| a^3 | a^3 | a^4 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3b | a^4b | b | ab | a^2b |
| a^4 | a^4 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4b | b | ab | a^2b | a^3b |
| b | b | a^4b | a^3b | a^2b | ab | 1 | a^4 | a^3 | a^2 | a |
| ab | ab | b | a^4b | a^3b | a^2b | a | 1 | a^4 | a^3 | a^2 |
| a^2b | a^2b | ab | b | a^4b | a^3b | a^2 | a | 1 | a^4 | a^3 |
| a^3b | a^3b | a^2b | ab | b | a^4b | a^3 | a^2 | a | 1 | a^4 |
| a^4b | a^4b | a^3b | a^2b | ab | b | a^4 | a^3 | a^2 | a | 1 |

Elements

- (a) order 5: a, a^2, a^3, a^4
- (b) order 2: b, ab, a^2b, a^3b, a^4b

Subgroups

- (a) order 10: $\{1, a, a^2, a^3, a^4, b, ab, a^2b, a^3b, a^4b\}$
- (b) order 5: $\{1, a, a^2, a^3, a^4\}$
- (c) order 2: $\{1, b\}, \{1, ab\}, \{1, a^2b\}, \{1, a^3b\}, \{1, a^4b\}$

Normal subgroups

- (a) order 10: $\{1, a, a^2, a^3, a^4, b, ab, a^2b, a^3b, a^4b\}$
- (b) order 5: $\{1, a, a^2, a^3, a^4\}$

18. D_6 , the dihedral group of order 12

The multiplication table for D_6 (given below)

Generators: a, b with relations $a^6 = 1, b^2 = 1, ba = a^{-1}b$

| | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | b | ab | a^2b | a^3b | a^4b | a^5b |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | b | ab | a^2b | a^3b | a^4b | a^5b |
| a | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | 1 | ab | a^2b | a^3b | a^4b | a^5b | b |
| a^2 | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | 1 | a | a^2b | a^3b | a^4b | a^5b | b | ab |
| a^3 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3b | a^4b | a^5b | b | ab | a^2b |
| a^4 | a^4 | a^5 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4b | a^5b | b | ab | a^2b | a^3b |
| a^5 | a^5 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5b | b | ab | a^2b | a^3b | a^4b |
| b | b | a^5b | a^4b | a^3b | a^2b | ab | 1 | a^5 | a^4 | a^3 | a^2 | a |
| ab | ab | b | a^5b | a^4b | a^3b | a^2b | a | 1 | a^5 | a^4 | a^3 | a^2 |
| a^2b | a^2b | ab | b | a^5b | a^4b | a^3b | a^2 | a | 1 | a^5 | a^4 | a^3 |
| a^3b | a^3b | a^2b | ab | b | a^5b | a^4b | a^3 | a^2 | a | 1 | a^5 | a^4 |
| a^4b | a^4b | a^3b | a^2b | ab | b | a^5b | a^4 | a^3 | a^2 | a | 1 | a^5 |
| a^5b | a^5b | a^4b | a^3b | a^2b | ab | b | a^5 | a^4 | a^3 | a^2 | a | 1 |

Elements

- (a) order 6: a, a^5
- (b) order 3: a^2, a^4
- (c) order 2: $a^3, b, ab, a^2b, a^3b, a^4b, a^5b$

Subgroups

- (a) order 12: $\{1, a, a^2, a^3, a^4, a^5, b, ab, a^2b, a^3b, a^4b, a^5b\}$
- (b) order 6: $\{1, a, a^2, a^3, a^4, a^5\}, \{1, a^2, a^4, b, a^2b, a^4b\}, \{1, a^2, a^4, ab, a^3b, a^5b\}$
- (c) order 4: $\{1, a^3, b, a^3b\}, \{1, a^3, ab, a^4b\}, \{1, a^3, a^2b, a^5b\}$
- (d) order 3: $\{1, a^2, a^4\}$
- (e) order 2: $\{1, a^3\}, \{1, b\}, \{1, ab\}, \{1, a^2b\}, \{1, a^3b\}, \{1, a^4b\}, \{1, a^5b\}$

Normal subgroups

- (a) order 12: $\{1, a, a^2, a^3, a^4, a^5, b, ab, a^2b, a^3b, a^4b, a^5b\}$
- (b) order 6: $\{1, a, a^2, a^3, a^4, a^5\}, \{1, a^2, a^4, b, a^2b, a^4b\}, \{1, a^2, a^4, ab, a^3b, a^5b\}$
- (c) order 3: $\{1, a^2, a^4\}$
- (d) order 2: $\{1, a^3\}$

Conjugacy classes: $\{1\}, \{a, a^5\}, \{a^2, a^4\}, \{b, a^2b, a^4b\}, \{ab, a^3b, a^5b\}$

19. $Z_3 \rtimes Z_4$, the semidirect product of a cyclic group of order 4 acting on a cyclic group of order 3 (Note: \rtimes denotes the semidirect product.)

Generators: a, b with relations $a^6 = 1, b^2 = a^3, ba = a^{-1}b$

| | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | b | ab | a^2b | a^3b | a^4b | a^5b |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | b | ab | a^2b | a^3b | a^4b | a^5b |
| a | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | 1 | ab | a^2b | a^3b | a^4b | a^5b | b |
| a^2 | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | 1 | a | a^2b | a^3b | a^4b | a^5b | b | ab |
| a^3 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3b | a^4b | a^5b | b | ab | a^2b |
| a^4 | a^4 | a^5 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4b | a^5b | b | ab | a^2b | a^3b |
| a^5 | a^5 | 1 | a | a^2 | a^3 | a^4 | a^5b | b | ab | a^2b | a^3b | a^4b |
| b | b | a^5b | a^4b | a^3b | a^2b | ab | a^3 | a^2 | a | 1 | a^5 | a^4 |
| ab | ab | b | a^5b | a^4b | a^3b | a^2b | a^4 | a^3 | a^2 | a | 1 | a^5 |
| a^2b | a^2b | ab | b | a^5b | a^4b | a^3b | a^5 | a^4 | a^3 | a^2 | a | 1 |
| a^3b | a^3b | a^2b | ab | b | a^5b | a^4b | 1 | a^5 | a^4 | a^3 | a^2 | a |
| a^4b | a^4b | a^3b | a^2b | ab | b | a^5b | a | 1 | a^5 | a^4 | a^3 | a^2 |
| a^5b | a^5b | a^4b | a^3b | a^2b | ab | b | a^2 | a | 1 | a^5 | a^4 | a^3 |

Elements

- (a) order 6: a, a^5
- (b) order 4: $b, ab, a^2b, a^3b, a^4b, a^5b$
- (c) order 3: a^2, a^4
- (d) order 2: a^3

Subgroups

- (a) order 12: $\{1, a, a^2, a^3, a^4, a^5, b, ab, a^2b, a^3b, a^4b, a^5b\}$
- (b) order 6: $\{1, a, a^2, a^3, a^4, a^5\}$
- (c) order 4: $\{1, b, a^3, a^3b\}, \{1, ab, a^3, a^4b\}, \{1, a^2b, a^3, a^5b\}$
- (d) order 3: $\{1, a^2, a^4\}$
- (e) order 2: $\{1, a^3\}$

Normal subgroups

- (a) order 12: $\{1, a, a^2, a^3, a^4, a^5, b, ab, a^2b, a^3b, a^4b, a^5b\}$
- (b) order 6: $\{1, a, a^2, a^3, a^4, a^5\}$
- (c) order 3: $\{1, a^2, a^4\}$
- (d) order 2: $\{1, a^3\}$

Conjugacy classes: $\{1\}, \{a^3\}, \{a, a^5\}, \{a^2, a^4\}, \{b, a^2b, a^4b\}, \{ab, a^3b, a^5b\}$

- Alternate representation, the group can be presented as follows,
Generators: x, y with relations $x^3 = 1, y^4 = 1, yx = x^{-1}y$

| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| | 1 | x | x^2 | y | xy | x^2y | y^2 | xy^2 | x^2y^2 | y^3 | xy^3 | x^2y^3 |
| 1 | 1 | x | x^2 | y | xy | x^2y | y^2 | xy^2 | x^2y^2 | y^3 | xy^3 | x^2y^3 |
| x | x | x^2 | 1 | xy | x^2y | y | xy^2 | x^2y^2 | y^2 | xy^3 | x^2y^3 | y^3 |
| x^2 | x^2 | 1 | x | x^2y | y | xy | x^2y^2 | y^2 | xy^2 | x^2y^3 | y^3 | xy^3 |
| y | y | x^2y | xy | y^2 | x^2y^2 | xy^2 | y^3 | x^2y^3 | xy^3 | 1 | x^2 | x |
| xy | xy | y | x^2y | xy^2 | y^2 | x^2y^2 | xy^3 | y^3 | x^2y^3 | x | 1 | x^2 |
| x^2y | x^2y | xy | y | x^2y^2 | xy^2 | y^2 | x^2y^3 | xy^3 | y^3 | x^2 | x | 1 |
| y^2 | y^2 | x^2y^2 | x^2y^2 | y^3 | xy^3 | x^2y^3 | 1 | x | x^2 | y | xy | x^2y |
| xy^2 | xy^2 | x^2y^2 | y^2 | xy^3 | x^2y^3 | y^3 | x | x^2 | 1 | xy | x^2y | y |
| x^2y^2 | x^2y^2 | y^2 | x^2y^3 | xy^3 | xy^3 | xy^3 | x^2 | 1 | x | x^2y | y | xy |
| y^3 | y^3 | x^2y^3 | xy^3 | 1 | x^2 | x | y | x^2y | xy | y^2 | x^2y^2 | xy^2 |
| xy^3 | xy^3 | y^3 | x^2y^3 | x | 1 | x^2 | xy | y | x^2y | xy^2 | y^2 | x^2y^2 |
| x^2y^3 | x^2y^3 | xy^3 | y^3 | x^2 | x | 1 | x^2y | xy | y | x^2y^2 | xy^2 | y^2 |

Elements

- (a) order 6: x^2y^2, xy^2
- (b) order 4: $y, xy, x^2y, y^3, xy^3, x^2y^3$
- (c) order 3: x, x^2
- (d) order 2: y^2

Subgroups

- (a) order 12: $\{1, x, x^2, y, xy, x^2y, y^2, xy^2, x^2y^2, y^3, xy^3, x^2y^3\}$
- (b) order 6: $\{1, x^2y^2, x, y^2, x^2, xy^2\}$
- (c) order 4: $\{1, y, y^2, y^3\}, \{1, xy, y^2, xy^3\}, \{1, x^2y, y^2, x^2y^3\}$
- (d) order 3: $\{1, x, x^2\}$
- (e) order 2: $\{1, y^2\}$

Normal subgroups

- (a) order 12: $\{1, x, x^2, y, xy, x^2y, y^2, xy^2, x^2y^2, y^3, xy^3, x^2y^3\}$
- (b) order 6: $\{1, x^2y^2, x, y^2, x^2, xy^2\}$
- (c) order 3: $\{1, x, x^2\}$
- (d) order 2: $\{1, y^2\}$

Conjugacy classes: $\{1\}, \{y^2\}, \{x, x^2\}, \{xy^2, x^2y^2\}, \{y, xy, x^2y\}, \{y^3, xy^3, x^2y^3\}$

20. A_4 , the alternating group on 4 elements

Generators: a, b, c with relations $a^2 = 1, b^2 = 1, c^3 = 1, ba = ab, ca = abc, cb = ac$

| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| | 1 | a | b | ab | c | ac | bc | abc | c^2 | ac^2 | bc^2 | abc^2 |
| 1 | 1 | a | b | ab | c | ac | bc | abc | c^2 | ac^2 | bc^2 | abc^2 |
| a | a | 1 | ab | b | ac | c | abc | bc | ac^2 | c^2 | abc^2 | bc^2 |
| b | b | ab | 1 | a | bc | abc | c | ac | bc^2 | abc^2 | c^2 | ac^2 |
| ab | ab | b | a | 1 | abc | bc | ac | c | abc^2 | bc^2 | ac^2 | c^2 |
| c | c | abc | ac | bc | c^2 | abc^2 | ac^2 | bc^2 | 1 | ab | a | b |
| ac | ac | bc | c | abc | ac^2 | bc^2 | c^2 | abc^2 | a | b | 1 | ab |
| bc | bc | ac | abc | c | bc^2 | ac^2 | abc^2 | c^2 | b | a | ab | 1 |
| abc | abc | c | bc | ac | abc^2 | c^2 | bc^2 | ac^2 | ab | 1 | b | a |
| c^2 | c^2 | bc^2 | abc^2 | ac^2 | 1 | b | ab | a | c | bc | abc | ac |
| ac^2 | ac^2 | abc^2 | bc^2 | c^2 | a | ab | b | 1 | ac | abc | bc | c |
| bc^2 | bc^2 | c^2 | ac^2 | abc^2 | b | 1 | a | ab | bc | c | ac | abc |
| abc^2 | abc^2 | ac^2 | bc^2 | bc^2 | ab | a | 1 | b | abc | ac | c | bc |

Elements

1. order 3: $c, ac, bc, abc, c^2, ac^2, bc^2, abc^2$
2. order 2: a, b, ab

Subgroups

1. order 12: $\{1, a, b, ab, c, ac, bc, abc, c^2, ac^2, bc^2, abc^2\}$
2. order 4: $\{1, a, b, ab\}$
3. order 3: $\{1, c, c^2\}, \{1, ac, bc^2\}, \{1, bc, abc^2\}, \{1, abc, ac^2\}$
4. order 2: $\{1, a\}, \{1, b\}, \{1, ab\}$

Normal subgroups

1. order 12: $\{1, a, b, ab, c, ac, bc, abc, c^2, ac^2, bc^2, abc^2\}$
2. order 4: $\{1, a, b, ab\}$

Conjugacy classes: $\{1\}, \{a, b, ab\}, \{c, ac, bc, abc\}, \{c^2, ac^2, bc^2, abc^2\}$

2.7.10.5 Small nite elds

In the following, the entries under α^i denote the coef cien t of powers of α . For example, the last entry of the $p(x) = x^3 + x^2 + 1$ table is 1 1 0. That is: $\alpha^6 \equiv 1\alpha^2 + 1\alpha^1 + 0\alpha^0$ modulo $p(\alpha)$, where the coef cien ts are taken modulo 2.

| $q = 4$ | $x^2 + x + 1$ |
|---------|---------------|
| i | α^i |
| 0 | 0 1 |
| 1 | 1 0 |
| 2 | 1 1 |

| $q = 8$ | $x^3 + x + 1$ |
|---------|---------------|
| i | α^i |
| 0 | 0 0 1 |
| 1 | 0 1 0 |
| 2 | 1 0 0 |
| 3 | 0 1 1 |
| 4 | 1 1 0 |
| 5 | 1 1 1 |
| 6 | 1 0 1 |

| $q = 8$ | $x^3 + x^2 + 1$ |
|---------|-----------------|
| i | α^i |
| 0 | 0 0 1 |
| 1 | 0 1 0 |
| 2 | 1 0 0 |
| 3 | 1 0 1 |
| 4 | 1 1 1 |
| 5 | 0 1 1 |
| 6 | 1 1 0 |

| $q = 16$ | | $x^4 + x + 1$ | |
|----------|------------|---------------|---------|
| i | α^i | | |
| 0 | 0 0 0 1 | 7 | 1 0 1 1 |
| 1 | 0 0 1 0 | 8 | 0 1 0 1 |
| 2 | 0 1 0 0 | 9 | 1 0 1 0 |
| 3 | 1 0 0 0 | 10 | 0 1 1 1 |
| 4 | 0 0 1 1 | 11 | 1 1 1 0 |
| 5 | 0 1 1 0 | 12 | 1 1 1 1 |
| 6 | 1 1 0 0 | 13 | 1 1 0 1 |
| | | 14 | 1 0 0 1 |

| $q = 16$ | | $x^4 + x^3 + 1$ | |
|----------|------------|-----------------|---------|
| i | α^i | | |
| 0 | 0 0 0 1 | 7 | 0 1 1 1 |
| 1 | 0 0 1 0 | 8 | 1 1 1 0 |
| 2 | 0 1 0 0 | 9 | 0 1 0 1 |
| 3 | 1 0 0 0 | 10 | 1 0 1 0 |
| 4 | 1 0 0 1 | 11 | 1 1 0 1 |
| 5 | 1 0 1 1 | 12 | 0 0 1 1 |
| 6 | 1 1 1 1 | 13 | 0 1 1 0 |
| | | 14 | 1 1 0 0 |

2.7.10.6 Addition and multiplication tables for F_2 , F_3 , F_4 , and F_8

1. F_2 addition and multiplication:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| + | 0 | 1 |
| 0 | 0 | 1 |
| 1 | 1 | 0 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| · | 0 | 1 |
| 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 1 | 0 | 1 |

2. F_3 addition and multiplication:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| + | 0 | 1 | 2 |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 2 |
| 1 | 1 | 2 | 0 |
| 2 | 2 | 0 | 1 |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| · | 0 | 1 | 2 |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 2 |
| 2 | 0 | 2 | 1 |

3. F_4 addition and multiplication

| | | | | |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| + | 0 | 1 | α | $\alpha + 1$ |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | α | $\alpha + 1$ |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | $\alpha + 1$ | α |
| α | α | $\alpha + 1$ | 0 | 1 |
| $\alpha + 1$ | $\alpha + 1$ | α | 1 | 0 |

| | | | | |
|--------------|---|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| · | 0 | 1 | α | $\alpha + 1$ |
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | α | $\alpha + 1$ |
| α | 0 | α | $\alpha + 1$ | 1 |
| $\alpha + 1$ | 0 | $\alpha + 1$ | 1 | α |

4. F_8 addition and multiplication (using strings of 0s and 1s to represent the polynomials: $0 = 000$, $1 = 001$, $\alpha = 010$, $\alpha + 1 = 011$, $\alpha^2 = 100$, $\alpha^2 + \alpha = 110$, $\alpha^2 + 1 = 101$, $\alpha^2 + \alpha + 1 = 111$):

| | | | | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| + | 000 | 001 | 010 | 011 | 100 | 101 | 110 | 111 |
| 000 | 000 | 001 | 010 | 011 | 100 | 101 | 110 | 111 |
| 001 | 001 | 000 | 011 | 010 | 101 | 100 | 111 | 110 |
| 010 | 010 | 011 | 000 | 001 | 110 | 111 | 100 | 101 |
| 011 | 011 | 010 | 001 | 000 | 111 | 110 | 101 | 100 |
| 100 | 100 | 101 | 110 | 111 | 000 | 001 | 010 | 011 |
| 101 | 101 | 100 | 111 | 110 | 001 | 000 | 011 | 010 |
| 110 | 110 | 111 | 100 | 101 | 010 | 011 | 000 | 001 |
| 111 | 111 | 110 | 101 | 100 | 011 | 010 | 001 | 000 |

| | | | | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| · | 000 | 001 | 010 | 011 | 100 | 101 | 110 | 111 |
| 000 | 000 | 000 | 000 | 000 | 000 | 000 | 000 | 000 |
| 001 | 000 | 001 | 010 | 011 | 100 | 101 | 110 | 111 |
| 010 | 000 | 010 | 100 | 110 | 011 | 001 | 111 | 101 |
| 011 | 000 | 011 | 110 | 101 | 111 | 100 | 001 | 010 |
| 100 | 000 | 100 | 011 | 111 | 110 | 010 | 101 | 001 |
| 101 | 000 | 101 | 001 | 100 | 010 | 111 | 011 | 110 |
| 110 | 000 | 110 | 111 | 001 | 101 | 011 | 010 | 100 |
| 111 | 000 | 111 | 101 | 010 | 001 | 110 | 100 | 011 |

2.7.10.7 Linear characters

A *linear character* of a finite group G is a homomorphism from G to the multiplicative group of the non-zero complex numbers. Let χ be a linear character of G , ι the identity of G and $g, h \in G$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \chi(\iota) &= 1 \\ \chi(g \star h) &= \chi(g)\chi(h) \\ \chi(g) &= e^{2\pi ik/n} \quad \text{for some integer } k, \text{ where } n \text{ is the order of } g \\ \chi(g^{-1}) &= \overline{\chi(g)} \end{aligned}$$

The trivial character of G maps every element to 1. If χ_1 and χ_2 are two linear characters, then so is $\chi = \chi_1\chi_2$ defined by $\chi(g) = \chi_1(g)\chi_2(g)$. In fact, the linear characters form a group.

| Group | Characters |
|-----------------|--|
| \mathbb{Z}_n | For $m = 0, 1, \dots, n - 1$, $\chi_m : k \mapsto e^{2\pi ikm/n}$ |
| G Abelian | $G \cong \mathbb{Z}_{n_1} \times \mathbb{Z}_{n_2} \times \dots \times \mathbb{Z}_{n_j}$ with each n_i a power of a prime. For $m_j = 0, 1, \dots, n_j - 1$ and $g_j = (0, \dots, 0, 1, 0, \dots, 0)$ $\chi_{m_1, m_2, \dots, m_n} : g_j \mapsto e^{2\pi im_j/n_j}$ |
| D_n dihedral | For $x = \pm 1, y = \begin{cases} \pm 1 & \text{if } n \text{ even,} \\ 1 & \text{if } n \text{ odd,} \end{cases}$ $\chi_{x,y} : a \mapsto x, b \mapsto y$. (See definition of D_n .) |
| Quaternions | For $x = \pm 1$ and $y = \pm 1$ or ∓ 1 , $\chi_{x,y} : \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \mapsto x, \quad \chi_{x,y} : \begin{bmatrix} -i & 0 \\ 0 & i \end{bmatrix} \mapsto y$ |
| S_n symmetric | The trivial character and sgn, where sgn is the signum function on permutations. (See Section 1.8.2 .) |

2.7.10.8 List of all sporadic finite simple groups

These are the sporadic finite simple groups that are not in any of the standard classes (see page 162).

| Group | Order |
|----------|--|
| M_{11} | $2^4 \cdot 3^2 \cdot 5 \cdot 11$ |
| M_{12} | $2^6 \cdot 3^3 \cdot 5 \cdot 11$ |
| M_{22} | $2^7 \cdot 3^2 \cdot 5 \cdot 7 \cdot 11$ |
| M_{23} | $2^7 \cdot 3^2 \cdot 5 \cdot 7 \cdot 11 \cdot 23$ |
| M_{24} | $2^{10} \cdot 3^3 \cdot 5 \cdot 7 \cdot 11 \cdot 23$ |
| J_1 | $2^3 \cdot 3 \cdot 5 \cdot 7 \cdot 11 \cdot 19$ |
| J_2 | $2^7 \cdot 3^3 \cdot 5^2 \cdot 7$ |

| Group | Order |
|----------|--|
| J_3 | $2^7 \cdot 3^5 \cdot 5 \cdot 17 \cdot 19$ |
| J_4 | $2^{21} \cdot 3^3 \cdot 5 \cdot 7 \cdot 11^3 \cdot 23 \cdot 29 \cdot 31 \cdot 37 \cdot 43$ |
| HS | $2^9 \cdot 3^2 \cdot 5^3 \cdot 7 \cdot 11$ |
| Mc | $2^7 \cdot 3^6 \cdot 5^3 \cdot 11$ |
| Suz | $2^{13} \cdot 3^7 \cdot 5^2 \cdot 7 \cdot 11 \cdot 13$ |
| Ru | $2^{14} \cdot 3^3 \cdot 5^3 \cdot 7 \cdot 13 \cdot 29$ |
| He | $2^{10} \cdot 3^3 \cdot 5^2 \cdot 7^3 \cdot 17$ |
| Ly | $2^8 \cdot 3^7 \cdot 5^6 \cdot 7 \cdot 11 \cdot 31 \cdot 37 \cdot 67$ |
| ON | $2^9 \cdot 3^4 \cdot 5 \cdot 7^3 \cdot 11 \cdot 19 \cdot 31$ |
| .1 | $2^{21} \cdot 3^9 \cdot 5^4 \cdot 7^2 \cdot 11 \cdot 13 \cdot 23$ |
| .2 | $2^{18} \cdot 3^6 \cdot 5^3 \cdot 7 \cdot 11 \cdot 23$ |
| .3 | $2^{10} \cdot 3^7 \cdot 5^3 \cdot 7 \cdot 11 \cdot 23$ |
| $M(22)$ | $2^{17} \cdot 3^9 \cdot 5^2 \cdot 7 \cdot 11 \cdot 13$ |
| $M(23)$ | $2^{18} \cdot 3^{13} \cdot 5^2 \cdot 7 \cdot 11 \cdot 13 \cdot 17 \cdot 23$ |
| $M(24)'$ | $2^{21} \cdot 3^{16} \cdot 5^2 \cdot 7^3 \cdot 11 \cdot 13 \cdot 23 \cdot 29$ |
| F_5 | $2^{15} \cdot 3^{10} \cdot 5^3 \cdot 7^2 \cdot 13 \cdot 19 \cdot 31$ |
| F_3 | $2^{14} \cdot 3^6 \cdot 5^6 \cdot 7 \cdot 11 \cdot 19$ |
| F_2 | $2^{41} \cdot 3^{13} \cdot 5^6 \cdot 7^2 \cdot 11 \cdot 13 \cdot 17 \cdot 19 \cdot 23 \cdot 31 \cdot 47$ |
| F_1 | $2^{46} \cdot 3^{20} \cdot 5^9 \cdot 7^6 \cdot 11^2 \cdot 13^3 \cdot 17 \cdot 19 \cdot 23 \cdot 29 \cdot 31 \cdot 41 \cdot 47 \cdot 59 \cdot 71$ |

2.7.10.9 Indices and power residues

For \mathbb{Z}_n^* the following table lists the index (order) of a and the *power residues* $a, a^2, \dots, a^{\text{index}(a)} = 1$ for each element a , where $(a, n) = 1$.

| Group | Element | Index | Power residues |
|------------------|---------|-------|----------------|
| \mathbb{Z}_2^* | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | 3 | 2 | 3,1 |
| \mathbb{Z}_3^* | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | 2 | 2 | 2,1 |
| \mathbb{Z}_4^* | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | 3 | 2 | 3,1 |
| \mathbb{Z}_5^* | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | 2 | 4 | 2,4,3,1 |
| | 3 | 4 | 3,4,2,1 |
| | 4 | 2 | 4,1 |
| \mathbb{Z}_6^* | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | 5 | 2 | 5,1 |
| \mathbb{Z}_7^* | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | 2 | 3 | 2,4,1 |
| | 3 | 6 | 3,2,6,4,5,1 |
| | 4 | 3 | 4,2,1 |
| | 5 | 6 | 5,4,6,2,3,1 |
| | 6 | 2 | 6,1 |
| \mathbb{Z}_8^* | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | 3 | 2 | 3,1 |
| | 5 | 2 | 5,1 |
| | 7 | 2 | 7,1 |

| Group | Element | Index | Power residues |
|---------------------|---------|-------|----------------------|
| \mathbb{Z}_9^* | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | 2 | 6 | 2,4,8,7,5,1 |
| | 4 | 3 | 4,7,1 |
| | 5 | 6 | 5,7,8,4,2,1 |
| | 7 | 3 | 7,4,1 |
| \mathbb{Z}_{10}^* | 8 | 2 | 8,1 |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | 3 | 4 | 3,9,7,1 |
| | 7 | 4 | 7,9,3,1 |
| \mathbb{Z}_{11}^* | 9 | 2 | 9,1 |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | 2 | 10 | 2,4,8,5,10,9,7,3,6,1 |
| | 3 | 5 | 3,9,5,4,1 |
| | 4 | 5 | 4,5,9,3,1 |
| | 5 | 5 | 5,3,4,9,1 |
| | 6 | 10 | 6,3,7,9,10,5,8,4,2,1 |
| | 7 | 10 | 7,5,2,3,10,4,6,9,8,1 |
| | 8 | 10 | 8,9,6,4,10,3,2,5,7,1 |
| | 9 | 5 | 9,4,3,5,1 |
| 10 | 2 | 10,1 | |

2.7.10.10 Power residues in \mathbb{Z}_p

For prime $p < 40$, the following table lists the minimal primitive root a and the power residues of a . These can be used to find $a^m \pmod{p}$ for any $(a, p) = 1$. For example, to find $3^7 \pmod{11}$ ($a = 3, m = 7$), look in row $p = 11$ until the power of a that is equal to 3 is found. In this case $2^8 \equiv 3 \pmod{11}$. This means that $3^7 \equiv (2^8)^7 \equiv 2^{56} \equiv (2^{10})^5 \cdot 2^6 \equiv 2^6 \equiv 9 \pmod{11}$.

| p | a | Power residues | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----|-----|----------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 3 | 2 | | .0 | .1 | .2 | .3 | .4 | .5 | .6 | .7 | .8 | .9 |
| | | 0. | 1 | 2 | 1 | | | | | | | |
| 5 | 2 | | .0 | .1 | .2 | .3 | .4 | .5 | .6 | .7 | .8 | .9 |
| | | 0. | 1 | 2 | 4 | 3 | 1 | | | | | |
| 7 | 3 | | .0 | .1 | .2 | .3 | .4 | .5 | .6 | .7 | .8 | .9 |
| | | 0. | 1 | 3 | 2 | 6 | 4 | 5 | 1 | | | |
| 11 | 2 | | .0 | .1 | .2 | .3 | .4 | .5 | .6 | .7 | .8 | .9 |
| | | 0. | 1 | 2 | 4 | 8 | 5 | 10 | 9 | 7 | 3 | 6 |
| | | 1. | 1 | | | | | | | | | |
| 13 | 2 | | .0 | .1 | .2 | .3 | .4 | .5 | .6 | .7 | .8 | .9 |
| | | 0. | 1 | 2 | 4 | 8 | 3 | 6 | 12 | 11 | 9 | 5 |
| | | 1. | 10 | 7 | 1 | | | | | | | |
| 17 | 3 | | .0 | .1 | .2 | .3 | .4 | .5 | .6 | .7 | .8 | .9 |
| | | 0. | 1 | 3 | 9 | 10 | 13 | 5 | 15 | 11 | 16 | 14 |
| | | 1. | 8 | 7 | 4 | 12 | 2 | 6 | 1 | | | |
| 19 | 2 | | .0 | .1 | .2 | .3 | .4 | .5 | .6 | .7 | .8 | .9 |
| | | 0. | 1 | 2 | 4 | 8 | 16 | 13 | 7 | 14 | 9 | 18 |
| | | 1. | 17 | 15 | 11 | 3 | 6 | 12 | 5 | 10 | 1 | |
| 23 | 5 | | .0 | .1 | .2 | .3 | .4 | .5 | .6 | .7 | .8 | .9 |
| | | 0. | 1 | 5 | 2 | 10 | 4 | 20 | 8 | 17 | 16 | 11 |
| | | 1. | 9 | 22 | 18 | 21 | 13 | 19 | 3 | 15 | 6 | 7 |
| | | 2. | 12 | 14 | 1 | | | | | | | |
| 29 | 2 | | .0 | .1 | .2 | .3 | .4 | .5 | .6 | .7 | .8 | .9 |
| | | 0. | 1 | 2 | 4 | 8 | 16 | 3 | 6 | 12 | 24 | 19 |
| | | 1. | 9 | 18 | 7 | 14 | 28 | 27 | 25 | 21 | 13 | 26 |
| | | 2. | 23 | 17 | 5 | 10 | 20 | 11 | 22 | 15 | 1 | |
| 31 | 3 | | .0 | .1 | .2 | .3 | .4 | .5 | .6 | .7 | .8 | .9 |
| | | 0. | 1 | 3 | 9 | 27 | 19 | 26 | 16 | 17 | 20 | 29 |
| | | 1. | 25 | 13 | 8 | 24 | 10 | 30 | 28 | 22 | 4 | 12 |
| | | 2. | 5 | 15 | 14 | 11 | 2 | 6 | 18 | 23 | 7 | 21 |
| 3. | 1 | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 37 | 2 | | .0 | .1 | .2 | .3 | .4 | .5 | .6 | .7 | .8 | .9 |
| | | 0. | 1 | 2 | 4 | 8 | 16 | 32 | 27 | 17 | 34 | 31 |
| | | 1. | 25 | 13 | 26 | 15 | 30 | 23 | 9 | 18 | 36 | 35 |
| | | 2. | 33 | 29 | 21 | 5 | 10 | 20 | 3 | 6 | 12 | 24 |
| 3. | 11 | 22 | 7 | 14 | 28 | 19 | 1 | | | | | |

2.7.10.11 Table of primitive monic polynomials

In the table below, the elements in each string are the coefficients of the polynomial after the highest power of x . (For example, 564 represents $x^3 + 5x^2 + 6x + 4$.)

| Field | Degree | Primitive polynomials | | | | | | |
|-------|--------|-----------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--|
| F_2 | 1 | 0 | 1 | | | | | |
| | 2 | 11 | | | | | | |
| | 3 | 011 | 101 | | | | | |
| | 4 | 0011 | 1001 | | | | | |
| | 5 | 00101 | 01001 | 01111 | 10111 | 11011 | 11101 | |
| | 6 | 000101 | 011011 | 100001 | 100111 | 101101 | 110011 | |
| F_3 | 1 | 0 | 1 | | | | | |
| | 2 | 12 | 22 | | | | | |
| | 3 | 021 | 121 | 201 | 211 | | | |
| | 4 | 0012 | 0022 | 1002 | 1122 | 1222 | 2002 | |
| | | 2112 | 2212 | | | | | |
| F_5 | 1 | 0 | 2 | 3 | | | | |
| | 2 | 12 | 23 | 33 | 42 | | | |
| | | 032 | 033 | 042 | 043 | 102 | 113 | |
| | 3 | 143 | 203 | 213 | 222 | 223 | 242 | |
| | | 302 | 312 | 322 | 323 | 343 | 403 | |
| | | 412 | 442 | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| F_7 | 1 | 0 | 2 | 4 | | | | |
| | 2 | 13 | 23 | 25 | 35 | 45 | 53 | |
| | | 55 | 63 | | | | | |
| | 3 | 032 | 052 | 062 | 112 | 124 | 152 | |
| | | 154 | 214 | 242 | 262 | 264 | 304 | |
| | | 314 | 322 | 334 | 352 | 354 | 362 | |
| | | 422 | 432 | 434 | 444 | 504 | 524 | |
| | | 532 | 534 | 542 | 552 | 564 | 604 | |
| | | 612 | 632 | 644 | 654 | 662 | 664 | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |

2.7.10.12 Table of irreducible polynomials in $\mathbb{Z}_2[x]$

Each polynomial is represented by its coefficients (which are either 0 or 1), beginning with the highest power. For example, $x^4 + x + 1$ is represented as 10011.

| | | | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| degree 1: | 10 | 11 | | | | |
| degree 2: | 111 | | | | | |
| degree 3: | 1011 | 1101 | | | | |
| degree 4: | 10011 | 11001 | 11111 | | | |
| degree 5: | 100101 | 101001 | 101111 | 110111 | 111011 | 111101 |
| degree 6: | 1000011 | 1001001 | 1010111 | 1011011 | 1100001 | 1100111 |
| | 1101101 | 1110011 | 1110101 | | | |
| degree 7: | 10000011 | 10001001 | 10001111 | 10010001 | 10011101 | 10100111 |
| | 10101011 | 10111001 | 10111111 | 11000001 | 11001011 | 11010011 |
| | 11010101 | 11100101 | 11101111 | 11110001 | 11110111 | 11111101 |
| degree 8: | 100011011 | 100011101 | 100101011 | 100101101 | 100111001 | 100111111 |
| | 101001101 | 101011111 | 101100011 | 101100101 | 101101001 | 101110001 |
| | 101110111 | 101111011 | 110000111 | 110001011 | 110001101 | 110011111 |
| | 110100011 | 110101001 | 110110001 | 110111101 | 111000011 | 111001111 |
| | 111010111 | 111011101 | 111100111 | 111110011 | 111110101 | 111111001 |
| | | | | | | |

2.7.10.13 Table of primitive roots

The number of integers not exceeding and relatively prime to the integer n is $\phi(n)$ (see page 128). These integers form a group under multiplication module n ; the group is cyclic if, and only if, $n = 1, 2, 4$ or n is of the form p^k or $2p^k$, where p is an odd prime. The number g is a *primitive root* of n if it generates that group, i.e., if $\{g, g^2, \dots, g^{\phi(n)}\}$ are distinct modulo n . There are $\phi(\phi(n))$ primitive roots of n .

1. If g is a primitive root of p and $g^{p-1} \not\equiv 1 \pmod{p^2}$, then g is a primitive root of p^k for all k .
2. If $g^{p-1} \equiv 1 \pmod{p^2}$ then $g + p$ is a primitive root of p^k for all k .
3. If g is a primitive root of p^k , then either g or $g + p^k$, whichever is odd, is a primitive root of $2p^k$.
4. If g is a primitive root of n , then g^k is a primitive root of n if, and only if, k and $\phi(n)$ are relatively prime, i.e., $(\phi(n), k) = 1$.

In the following table,

- g denotes the least primitive root of p
- G denotes the least negative primitive root of p
- ϵ denotes whether 10, -10 , or both, are primitive roots of p

| p | $p-1$ | g | G | ϵ | p | $p-1$ | g | G | ϵ |
|-----|---------------------------------|-----|-----|------------|-----|---------------------------------|-----|-----|------------|
| 3 | 2 | 2 | -1 | — | 5 | 2 ² | 2 | -2 | — |
| 7 | 2 · 3 | 3 | -2 | 10 | 11 | 2 · 5 | 2 | -3 | — |
| 13 | 2 ² · 3 | 2 | -2 | — | 17 | 2 ⁴ | 3 | -3 | ±10 |
| 19 | 2 · 3 ² | 2 | -4 | 10 | 23 | 2 · 11 | 5 | -2 | 10 |
| 29 | 2 ² · 7 | 2 | -2 | ±10 | 31 | 2 · 3 · 5 | 3 | -7 | -10 |
| 37 | 2 ² · 3 ² | 2 | -2 | — | 41 | 2 ³ · 5 | 6 | -6 | — |
| 43 | 2 · 3 · 7 | 3 | -9 | -10 | 47 | 2 · 23 | 5 | -2 | 10 |
| 53 | 2 ² · 13 | 2 | -2 | — | 59 | 2 · 29 | 2 | -3 | 10 |
| 61 | 2 ² · 3 · 5 | 2 | -2 | ±10 | 67 | 2 · 3 · 11 | 2 | -4 | -10 |
| 71 | 2 · 5 · 7 | 7 | -2 | -10 | 73 | 2 ³ · 3 ² | 5 | -5 | — |
| 79 | 2 · 3 · 13 | 3 | -2 | — | 83 | 2 · 41 | 2 | -3 | -10 |
| 89 | 2 ³ · 11 | 3 | -3 | — | 97 | 2 ⁵ · 3 | 5 | -5 | ±10 |
| 101 | 2 ² · 5 ² | 2 | -2 | — | 103 | 2 · 3 · 17 | 5 | -2 | — |
| 107 | 2 · 53 | 2 | -3 | -10 | 109 | 2 ² · 3 ³ | 6 | -6 | ±10 |
| 113 | 2 ⁴ · 7 | 3 | -3 | ±10 | 127 | 2 · 3 ² · 7 | 3 | -9 | — |
| 131 | 2 · 5 · 13 | 2 | -3 | 10 | 137 | 2 ³ · 17 | 3 | -3 | — |
| 139 | 2 · 3 · 23 | 2 | -4 | — | 149 | 2 ² · 37 | 2 | -2 | ±10 |
| 151 | 2 · 3 · 5 ² | 6 | -5 | -10 | 157 | 2 ² · 3 · 13 | 5 | -5 | — |
| 163 | 2 · 3 ⁴ | 2 | -4 | -10 | 167 | 2 · 83 | 5 | -2 | 10 |

2.7.10.14 Table of factorizations of $x^n - 1$

| n | Factorization of $x^n - 1 \pmod{2}$ |
|-----|---|
| 1 | $-1 + x$ |
| 2 | $(-1 + x)(1 + x)$ |
| 3 | $(-1 + x)(1 + x + x^2)$ |
| 4 | $(-1 + x)(1 + x)(1 + x^2)$ |
| 5 | $(-1 + x)(1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + x^4)$ |
| 6 | $(-1 + x)(1 + x)(1 - x + x^2)(1 + x + x^2)$ |
| 7 | $(-1 + x)(1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + x^4 + x^5 + x^6)$ |
| 8 | $(-1 + x)(1 + x)(1 + x^2)(1 + x^4)$ |
| 9 | $(-1 + x)(1 + x + x^2)(1 + x^3 + x^6)$ |
| 10 | $(-1 + x)(1 + x)(1 - x + x^2 - x^3 + x^4)(1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + x^4)$ |
| 11 | $(-1 + x)(1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + x^4 + x^5 + x^6 + x^7 + x^8 + x^9 + x^{10})$ |
| 12 | $(-1 + x)(1 + x)(1 + x^2)(1 - x + x^2)(1 + x + x^2)(1 - x^2 + x^4)$ |
| 13 | $(-1 + x)\left(\sum_{k=0}^{12} x^k\right)$ |
| 14 | $(-1 + x)(1 + x)(1 - x + x^2 - x^3 + x^4 - x^5 + x^6)$ $(1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + x^4 + x^5 + x^6)$ |
| 15 | $(-1 + x)(1 + x + x^2)(1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + x^4)$ $(1 - x + x^3 - x^4 + x^5 - x^7 + x^8)$ |
| 16 | $(-1 + x)(1 + x)(1 + x^2)(1 + x^4)(1 + x^8)$ |
| 17 | $(-1 + x)\left(\sum_{k=0}^{16} x^k\right)$ |
| 18 | $(-1 + x)(1 + x)(1 - x + x^2)(1 + x + x^2)(1 - x^3 + x^6)(1 + x^3 + x^6)$ |
| 19 | $(-1 + x)\left(\sum_{k=0}^{18} x^k\right)$ |
| 20 | $(-1 + x)(1 + x)(1 + x^2)(1 - x + x^2 - x^3 + x^4)$ $(1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + x^4)(1 - x^2 + x^4 - x^6 + x^8)$ |
| 21 | $(-1 + x)(1 + x + x^2)(1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + x^4 + x^5 + x^6)$ $(1 - x + x^3 - x^4 + x^6 - x^8 + x^9 - x^{11} + x^{12})$ |
| 22 | $(-1 + x)(1 - x + x^2 - x^3 + x^4 - x^5 + x^6 - x^7 + x^8 - x^9 + x^{10})$ $(1 + x)(1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + x^4 + x^5 + x^6 + x^7 + x^8 + x^9 + x^{10})$ |
| 23 | $(-1 + x)\left(\sum_{k=0}^{22} x^k\right)$ |
| 24 | $(-1 + x)(1 + x)(1 + x^2)(1 - x + x^2)(1 + x + x^2)(1 + x^4)$ $(1 - x^2 + x^4)(1 - x^4 + x^8)$ |
| 25 | $(-1 + x)(1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + x^4)(1 + x^5 + x^{10} + x^{15} + x^{20})$ |
| 26 | $(-1 + x)(1 + x)$ $(1 - x + x^2 - x^3 + x^4 - x^5 + x^6 - x^7 + x^8 - x^9 + x^{10} - x^{11} + x^{12})$ $(1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + x^4 + x^5 + x^6 + x^7 + x^8 + x^9 + x^{10} + x^{11} + x^{12})$ |
| 27 | $(-1 + x)(1 + x + x^2)(1 + x^3 + x^6)(1 + x^9 + x^{18})$ |
| 28 | $(-1 + x)(1 + x)(1 + x^2)(1 - x + x^2 - x^3 + x^4 - x^5 + x^6)$ $(1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + x^4 + x^5 + x^6)(1 - x^2 + x^4 - x^6 + x^8 - x^{10} + x^{12})$ |
| 29 | $(-1 + x)\left(\sum_{k=0}^{28} x^k\right)$ |
| 30 | $(-1 + x)(1 + x)(1 - x + x^2)(1 + x + x^2)(1 - x + x^2 - x^3 + x^4)$ $(1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + x^4)(1 - x + x^3 - x^4 + x^5 - x^7 + x^8)$ $(1 + x - x^3 - x^4 - x^5 + x^7 + x^8)$ |
| 32 | $(-1 + x)(1 + x)(1 + x^2)(1 + x^4)(1 + x^8)(1 + x^{16})$ |

List of References

Chapter 1 *Analysis*

1. J. W. Brown and R. V. Churchill, *Complex variables and applications*, 6th edition, McGraw–Hill, New York, 1996.
2. L. B. W. Jolley, *Summation of Series*, Dover Publications, New York, 1961.
3. S. G. Krantz, *Real Analysis and Foundations*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 1991.
4. S. G. Krantz, *The Elements of Advanced Mathematics*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 1995.
5. J. P. Lambert, “Voting Games, Power Indices, and Presidential Elections”, *The UMAP Journal*, Module 690, **9**, No. 3, pages 214–267, 1988.
6. L. D. Servi, “Nested Square Roots of 2”, *American Mathematical Monthly*, to appear in 2003.
7. N. J. A. Sloane and S. Plouffe, *Encyclopedia of Integer Sequences*, Academic Press, New York, 1995.

Chapter 2 *Algebra*

1. C. Caldwell and Y. Gallot, “On the primality of $n! \pm 1$ and $2 \times 3 \times 5 \times \cdots \times p \pm 1$ ”, *Mathematics of Computation*, 71:237, pages 441–448, 2002.
2. I. N. Herstein, *Topics in Algebra*, 2nd edition, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1975.
3. P. Ribenboim, *The book of Prime Number Records*, Springer–Verlag, New York, 1988.
4. G. Strang, *Linear Algebra and Its Applications*, 3rd edition, International Thomson Publishing, 1988.

Chapter 3 *Discrete Mathematics*

1. B. Bollobás, *Graph Theory*, Springer–Verlag, Berlin, 1979.

-
2. C. J. Colbourn and J. H. Dinitz, *Handbook of Combinatorial Designs*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 1996.
 3. F. Glover, “Tabu Search: A Tutorial”, *Interfaces*, 20(4), pages 74–94, 1990.
 4. D. E. Goldberg, *Genetic Algorithms in Search, Optimization, and Machine Learning*, Addison–Wesley, Reading, MA, 1989.
 5. J. Gross, *Handbook of Graph Theory & Applications*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 1999.
 6. D. Luce and H. Raiffa, *Games and Decision Theory*, Wiley, 1957.
 7. F. J. MacWilliams and N. J. A. Sloane, *The Theory of Error-Correcting Codes*, North–Holland, Amsterdam, 1977.
 8. N. Metropolis, A. W. Rosenbluth, M. N. Rosenbluth, A. H. Teller and E. Teller, “Equation of State Calculations by Fast Computing Machines”, *J. Chem. Phys.*, V 21, No. 6, pages 1087–1092, 1953.
 9. K. H. Rosen, *Handbook of Discrete and Combinatorial Mathematics*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 2000.
 10. J. O’Rourke and J. E. Goodman, *Handbook of Discrete and Computational Geometry*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 1997.

Chapter 4 *Geometry*

1. A. Gray, *Modern Differential Geometry of Curves and Surfaces*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 1993.
2. C. Livingston, *Knot Theory*, The Mathematical Association of America, Washington, D.C., 1993.
3. D. J. Struik, *Lectures in Classical Differential Geometry*, 2nd edition, Dover, New York, 1988.

Chapter 5 *Continuous Mathematics*

1. A. G. Butkovskiy, *Green’s Functions and Transfer Functions Handbook*, Halstead Press, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1982.
2. I. S. Gradshteyn and M. Ryzhik, *Tables of Integrals, Series, and Products*, edited by A. Jeffrey and D. Zwillinger, 6th edition, Academic Press, Orlando, Florida, 2000.
3. N. H. Ibragimov, Ed., *CRC Handbook of Lie Group Analysis of Differential Equations*, Volume 1, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 1994.
4. A. J. Jerri, *Introduction to Integral Equations with Applications*, Marcel Dekker, New York, 1985.
5. P. Moon and D. E. Spencer, *Field Theory Handbook*, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1961.
6. A. D. Polyanin and V. F. Zaitsev, *Handbook of Exact Solution for Ordinary Differential Equations*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 1995.

-
7. J. A. Schouten, *Ricci-Calculus*, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1954.
 8. J. L. Synge and A. Schild, *Tensor Calculus*, University of Toronto Press, Toronto, 1949.
 9. D. Zwillinger, *Handbook of Differential Equations*, 3rd ed., Academic Press, New York, 1997.
 10. D. Zwillinger, *Handbook of Integration*, A. K. Peters, Boston, 1992.

Chapter 6 *Special Functions*

1. Staff of the Bateman Manuscript Project, A. Erdélyi, Ed., *Tables of Integral Transforms*, in 3 volumes, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1954.
2. I. S. Gradshteyn and M. Ryzhik, *Tables of Integrals, Series, and Products*, edited by A. Jeffrey and D. Zwillinger, 6th edition, Academic Press, Orlando, Florida, 2000.
3. W. Magnus, F. Oberhettinger, and R. P. Soni, *Formulas and Theorems for the Special Functions of Mathematical Physics*, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1966.
4. N. I. A. Vilenkin, *Special Functions and the Theory of Group Representations*, American Mathematical Society, Providence, RI, 1968.

Chapter 7 *Probability and Statistics*

1. I. Daubechies, *Ten Lectures on Wavelets*, SIAM Press, Philadelphia, 1992.
2. W. Feller, *An Introduction to Probability Theory and Its Applications*, Volume 1, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1968.
3. J. Keilson and L. D. Servi, “The Distributional Form of Little’s Law and the Fuhrmann-Cooper Decomposition”, *Operations Research Letters*, Volume 9, pages 237–247, 1990.
4. *Military Standard 105 D*, U.S. Government Printing Of ce, Washington, D.C., 1963.
5. S. K. Park and K. W. Miller, “Random number generators: good ones are hard to nd”, *Comm. ACM*, October 1988, 31, 10, pages 1192–1201.
6. G. Strang and T. Nguyen, *Wavelets and Filter Banks*, Wellesley-Cambridge Press, Wellesley, MA, 1995.
7. D. Zwillinger and S. Kokoska, *Standard Probability and Statistics Tables and Formulae*, Chapman & Hall/CRC, Boca Raton, Florida, 2000.

Chapter 8 *Scientific Computing*

1. R. L. Burden and J. D. Faires, *Numerical Analysis*, 7th edition, Brooks/Cole, Pacific Grove, CA, 2001.
2. G. H. Golub and C. F. Van Loan, *Matrix Computations*, 2nd ed., The Johns Hopkins Press, Baltimore, 1989.

-
3. W. H. Press, S. A. Teukolsky, W. T. Vetterling, and B. P. Flannery, *Numerical Recipes in C++: The Art of Scientific Computing*, 2nd edition, Cambridge University Press, New York, 2002.
 4. A. Ralston and P. Rabinowitz, *A First Course in Numerical Analysis*, 2nd edition, McGraw–Hill, New York, 1978.
 5. R. Rubinstein, *Simulation and the Monte Carlo Method*, Wiley, New York, 1981.

Chapter 10 *Miscellaneous*

1. American Mathematical Society, *Mathematical Sciences Professional Directory*, Providence, 1995.
2. E. T. Bell, *Men of Mathematics*, Dover, New York, 1945.
3. C. C. Gillispie, Ed., *Dictionary of Scientific Biography*, Scribners, New York, 1970–1990.
4. H. S. Tropp, “The Origins and History of the Fields Medal”, *Historia Mathematica*, 3, pages 167–181, 1976.
5. E. W. Weisstein, *CRC Concise Encyclopedia of Mathematics*, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL, 1999.

List of Figures

- 2.1 Depiction of right-hand rule

- 3.1 Hasse diagrams
- 3.2 Three graphs that are isomorphic
- 3.3 Examples of graphs with 6 or 7 vertices
- 3.4 Trees with 7 or fewer vertices
- 3.5 Trees with 8 vertices
- 3.6 Julia sets
- 3.7 The Mandelbrot set
- 3.8 Directed network modeling a flow problem

- 4.1 Change of coordinates by a rotation
- 4.2 Cartesian coordinates: the 4 quadrants
- 4.3 Polar coordinates
- 4.4 Homogeneous coordinates
- 4.5 Oblique coordinates
- 4.6 A shear with factor $r = \frac{1}{2}$
- 4.7 A perspective transformation
- 4.8 The normal form of a line
- 4.9 Simple polygons
- 4.10 Notation for a triangle
- 4.11 Triangles: isosceles and right
- 4.12 Ceva's theorem and Menelaus's theorem
- 4.13 Quadrilaterals
- 4.14 Conics: ellipse, parabola, and hyperbola
- 4.15 Conics as a function of eccentricity
- 4.16 Ellipse and components
- 4.17 Hyperbola and components
- 4.18 Arc of a circle
- 4.19 Angles within a circle
- 4.20 The general cubic parabola
- 4.21 Curves: semi-cubic parabola, cissoid of Diocles, witch of Agnesi
- 4.22 The folium of Descartes in two positions, and the strophoid

-
- 4.23 Cassini's ovals
 - 4.24 The conchoid of Nichomedes
 - 4.25 The limaçon of Pascal
 - 4.26 Cycloid and trochoids
 - 4.27 Epicycloids: nephroid, and epicycloid
 - 4.28 Hypocycloids: deltoid and astroid
 - 4.29 Spirals: Bernoulli, Archimedes, and Cornu
 - 4.30 Cartesian coordinates in space
 - 4.31 Cylindrical coordinates
 - 4.32 Spherical coordinates
 - 4.33 Relations between Cartesian, cylindrical, and spherical coordinates
 - 4.34 Euler angles
 - 4.35 The Platonic solids
 - 4.36 Cylinders: oblique and right circular
 - 4.37 Right circular cone and frustrum
 - 4.38 A torus of revolution
 - 4.39 The ve nondegenerate real quadrics
 - 4.40 Spherical cap, zone, and segment
 - 4.41 Right spherical triangle and Napier's rule

 - 5.1 Types of critical points

 - 6.1 Notation for trigonometric functions
 - 6.2 Definitions of angles
 - 6.3 Sine and cosine
 - 6.4 Tangent and cotangent
 - 6.5 Different triangles requiring solution
 - 6.6 Graphs of $\Gamma(x)$ and $1/\Gamma(x)$
 - 6.7 Cornu spiral
 - 6.8 Sine and cosine integrals $\text{Si}(x)$ and $\text{Ci}(x)$
 - 6.9 Legendre functions
 - 6.10 Graphs of the Airy functions $\text{Ai}(x)$ and $\text{Bi}(x)$

 - 7.1 Approximation to binomial distributions
 - 7.2 Conceptual layout of a queue
 - 7.3 Sample size code letters for MIL-STD-105 D
 - 7.4 Master table for single sampling inspection (normal inspection)
 - 7.5 Area of a normal random variable
 - 7.6 Illustration of σ and 2σ regions of a normal distribution

 - 8.1 Illustration of Newton's method
 - 8.2 Formulae for integration rules with various weight functions
 - 8.3 Illustration of the Monte-Carlo method

List of Notation

*Page numbers listed do not match PDF page numbers due to deletion of blank pages.

Symbols

| | | | | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|----------|-------------------------------|--|----------|
| ! | factorial | 17 | ∂ | partial differentiation | 386 |
| !! | double factorial | 17 | C^\perp | dual code to C | 257 |
| , | tensor differentiation | 484 | \preceq | partial order | 204 |
| ; | tensor differentiation | 484 | \prod | product symbol | 47 |
| $\langle a \rangle$ | cyclic subgroup generated by a | 162 | \sum | summation symbol | 31 |
| A' | set complement | 203 | \emptyset | empty set | 202 |
| ' | derivative, rst | 386 | \sim | | |
| '' | derivative, second | 386 | | asymptotic relation | 75 |
| $\lceil \cdot \rceil$ | ceiling function | 520 | | logical not | 199 |
| $\lfloor \cdot \rfloor$ | floor function | 520 | | vertex similarity | 226 |
| $\left\{ \begin{matrix} n \\ k \end{matrix} \right\}$ | Stirling subset numbers | 213 | \vee | | |
| \aleph_0 | aleph null | 204 | | logical or | 199 |
| \forall | universal quantifier | 201 | | pseudoscalar product | 467 |
| \uparrow | arrow notation | 4 | \wedge | | |
| \leftrightarrow | if and only if | 199 | | graph conjunction | 228 |
| \Rightarrow | implies | 199 | | logical and | 199 |
| \rightarrow | logical implication | 199 | | wedge product | 395 |
| \cap | set intersection | 203 | ∇ | | |
| \cup | | | | $\nabla \cdot$ divergence | 493 |
| | graph edge sum | 228 | | $\nabla \times$ curl | 493 |
| | graph union | 229 | | ∇^2 Laplacian | 493 |
| | set union | 203 | | backward difference | 736 |
| \cong | group isomorphism | 170, 225 | | gradient | 390, 493 |
| \equiv | congruence | 94 | | linear connection | 484 |
| \exists | existential quantifier | 201 | $\llbracket \cdot \rrbracket$ | | |
| \hbar | Planck constant over 2π | 794 | | $G_1[G_2]$ graph composition | 228 |
| ∞ | infinity | 68 | | $[\cdot, \cdot]$ commutator | 155, 467 |
| \int | | | | $[\mathbf{uvw}]$ scalar triple product | 136 |
| | \int_a^b definite integral | 399 | | $[a_0, \dots, a_n]$ continued fraction | 96 |
| | \oint integral around closed path | 399 | | $[jk, \ell]$ Christoffel symbol, rst kind | 487 |
| | integration symbol | 399 | | $\left[\begin{matrix} n \\ k \end{matrix} \right]$ Stirling cycle numbers | 212 |
| a^n | falling factorial | 17 | | | |
| \neg | logical not | 199 | | | |

| | | | |
|-------------------|---|-----------|--|
| (| (S, \preceq) poset notation 205 | * | *2222 crystallographic group . . 310 |
| | $(a)_n$ shifted factorial 17 | | *333 crystallographic group . . . 311 |
| | (r, s, w) type of tensor 483 | | *442 crystallographic group . . . 310 |
| | (v, k, λ) design nomenclature . 245 | | *632 crystallographic group . . . 311 |
| | (x, y, z) point in three-dimensional space 345 | | ** crystallographic group 309 |
| | $(x : y : t)$ homogeneous coordinates 303 | | binary operation 160 |
| | $(x : y : z : t)$ homogeneous coordinates 348 | | convolution operation 579 |
| | $\begin{pmatrix} j_1 & j_2 & j \\ m_1 & m_2 & m \end{pmatrix}$ Clebsch–Gordan coef cient 574 | \times | dual of a tensor 489 |
| | $\binom{n}{m}$ binomial coef cient 208 | | group operation 161 |
| | $\binom{n}{n_1, n_2, \dots, n_k}$ multinomial coef cient 209 | | re ction 307 |
| | $\left(\frac{a}{n}\right)$ Jacobi symbol 94 | | a \times b vector cross product 135 |
| | $\left(\frac{a}{p}\right)$ Legendre symbol 94 | | \times^* crystallographic group 309 |
| | (iv) fourth derivative 386 | \otimes | $\times \times$ crystallographic group 309 |
| | (n) n^{th} derivative 386 | | glide-re ction 307 |
| | (v) v^{th} derivative 386 | | graph product 228 |
| $\overline{(\)}$ | | | group operation 161 |
| | $\overline{(\)}_\alpha$ α trimmed mean 659 | | product 66 |
| | arithmetic mean 659 | | \otimes Kronecker product 159 |
| | complex conjugate 54 | | \oplus symmetric difference 203 |
| | set complement 203 | | |
| | divisibility 93 | | \oplus exclusive or 645 |
| | | | factored graph 224 |
| | determinant of a matrix 144 | | graph edge sum 228 |
| | graph order 226 | | Kronecker sum 160 |
| | norm 133 | | |
| | order of algebraic structure 160 | | $+$ |
| | polynomial norm 91 | | $b_0 + \frac{a_1}{b_1 +} \frac{a_2}{b_2 +} \frac{a_3}{b_3 +} \dots$ continued fraction 97 |
| | used in tensor notation 487 | | graph join 228 |
| | | | group operation 161 |
| | $ _1$ L_1 norm 133 | | pseudo-inverse operator . . 149, 151 |
| | $ _2$ L_2 norm 133 | | vector addition 132 |
| | $ _F$ Frobenius norm 146 | | |
| | $ _\infty$ in nity norm 133 | | |
| | norm 91, 133 | | |
| . | | | |
| | a \cdot b vector inner product 133 | Δ | $\Delta(G)$ maximum vertex degree 223 |
| | group operation 161 | | Δ_C arg $f(z)$ change in the argument 58 |
| | inner product 132 | | forward difference 265, 728 |
| . | | | Laplacian 493 |
| o | | Γ | |
| | crystallographic group . . . 309, 311 | | $\Gamma(x)$ gamma function 540 |
| | degrees in an angle 503 | | Γ^i_{jk} Christoffel symbol of second kind 487 |
| | function composition 67 | | connection coef cients 484 |
| | temperature degrees 798 | Ω | |
| | translation 307 | | asymptotic function 75 |
| | | | ohm 792 |

Greek Letters

| | | | | |
|----------------------------|---|---------------|--|--|
| $\Phi(x)$ | normal distribution function | 634 | | |
| Θ | asymptotic function | 75 | | |
| $\Upsilon(G)$ | graph arboricity | 220 | | |
| α | | | | |
| | $\alpha(G)$ graph independence number | 225 | | |
| | $\alpha(k)$ function, related to zeta function | 23 | | |
| | one minus the condence coefficient | 666 | | |
| | probability of type I error | 661 | | |
| β | | | | |
| | β probability of type II error | 661 | | |
| | $\beta(k)$ function, related to zeta function | 23 | | |
| χ | | | | |
| | $\chi'(G)$ chromatic index | 221 | | |
| | $\chi(G)$ chromatic number | 221 | | |
| | χ^2 -distribution | 703 | | |
| | χ^2_α critical value | 696 | | |
| | χ^2_n chi-square distributed | 619 | | |
| δ | | | | |
| | $\delta(G)$ minimum vertex degree | 223 | | |
| | $\delta(x)$ delta function | 76 | | |
| | δ_{ij} Kronecker delta | 483 | | |
| | designed distance | 257 | | |
| | Feigenbaum's constant | 272 | | |
| $\epsilon_{i_1 \dots i_n}$ | Levi-Civita symbol | 489 | | |
| η | | | | |
| | η power of a test | 661 | | |
| | $\eta(x, y)$ component of in nitesimal generator | 466 | | |
| γ | | | | |
| | γ Euler's constant | | | |
| | definition | 15 | | |
| | in different bases | 16 | | |
| | value | 16 | | |
| | $\gamma(G)$ graph genus | 224 | | |
| | $\gamma(k)$ function, related to zeta function | 23 | | |
| | γ_1 skewness | 620 | | |
| | γ_2 excess | 620 | | |
| κ | | | | |
| | $\kappa(G)$ connectivity | 222 | | |
| | $\kappa(s)$ curvature | 374 | | |
| | κ_n cumulant | 620 | | |
| λ | | | | |
| | $\lambda(G)$ edge connectivity | 223 | | |
| | average arrival rate | 638 | | |
| | eigenvalue | 152, 477, 478 | | |
| | number of blocks | 241 | | |
| μ | | | | |
| | $\mu(n)$ Möbius function | 102 | | |
| | μ_k centered moments | 620 | | |
| | μ'_k moments | 620 | | |
| | μ_p MTBF for parallel system | 655 | | |
| | μ_s MTBF for series system | 655 | | |
| | average service rate | 638 | | |
| | mean | 620 | | |
| ν | | | | |
| | $\bar{\nu}(G)$ rectilinear graph crossing number | 222 | | |
| | $\nu(G)$ graph crossing number | 222 | | |
| $\omega(G)$ | size of the largest clique | 221 | | |
| ϕ | | | | |
| | $\phi(n)$ totient function | 128, 169 | | |
| | $\phi(t)$ characteristic function | 620 | | |
| | Euler constant | 21 | | |
| | golden ratio | | | |
| | defined | 16 | | |
| | value | 16 | | |
| | incidence mapping | 219 | | |
| | zenith | 346 | | |
| π | | | | |
| | $\pi(x)$ | | | |
| | prime counting function | 103 | | |
| | probability distribution | 640 | | |
| | constants containing | 14 | | |
| | continued fraction | 97 | | |
| | distribution of digits | 15 | | |
| | identities | 14 | | |
| | number | 13 | | |
| | in different bases | 16 | | |
| | permutation | 172 | | |
| | sums involving | 24 | | |
| $\psi(z)$ | logarithmic derivative of the gamma function | 543 | | |
| ρ | | | | |
| | $\rho(A)$ spectral radius | 154 | | |
| | $\rho(s)$ radius of curvature | 374 | | |
| | ρ_{ij} correlation coefficient | 622 | | |
| | server utilization | 638 | | |
| σ | | | | |
| | σ standard deviation | 620 | | |
| | $\sigma(n)$ sum of divisors | 128 | | |
| | σ^2 variance | 620 | | |
| | σ_i singular value of a matrix | 152 | | |
| | $\sigma_k(n)$ sum of k^{th} powers of divisors | 128 | | |
| | σ_{ii} variance | 622 | | |
| | σ_{ij} covariance | 622 | | |

| | | |
|------------|--|-----|
| τ | τ Ramanujan function | 31 |
| | $\tau(n)$ number of divisors | 128 |
| | $\tau(s)$ torsion | 374 |
| θ | $\theta(G)$ graph thickness | 227 |
| | angle in polar coordinates | 302 |
| | argument of a complex number | 53 |
| | azimuth | 346 |
| ξ | $\xi(x, y)$ component of infinitesimal generator | 466 |
| | ξ_p quantile of order p | 659 |
| $\zeta(k)$ | Riemann zeta function | 23 |

Numbers

| | | |
|-----------|--|------------|
| $()^{-1}$ | group inverse | 161 |
| $()^{-1}$ | matrix inverse | 138 |
| 0 | null vector | 137 |
| 1 | | |
| | 1, group identity | 161 |
| | 1-form | 395 |
| | 10, powers of | 6, 13, 798 |
| | 105 D standard | 652 |
| | 16, powers of | 12 |
| | 17 crystallographic groups | 307 |
| 2 | | |
| | 2^A power set of A | 203 |
| | 2^{*22} crystallographic group | 310 |
| | 2, negative powers of | 10 |
| | 2, powers of | 6, 10, 27 |
| | 2-($v,3,1$) Steiner triple system | 249 |
| | 2-form | 396 |
| | 2-sphere | 491 |
| | 2-switch | 227 |
| | 22^* crystallographic group | 309 |
| | 22^x crystallographic group | 309 |
| | 2222 crystallographic group | 310 |
| | 230 crystallographic groups, three-dimensional | 307 |
| 3 | | |
| | 3^*3 crystallographic group | 311 |
| | 3, powers of | 29 |
| | 3-design (Hadamard matrices) | 250 |
| | 3-form | 397 |
| | 3-sphere | 491 |
| | 333 crystallographic group | 311 |
| | 360, degrees in a circle | 503 |

| | | |
|----------|---|-----|
| 4 | | |
| | 4^*2 crystallographic group | 310 |
| | 4, powers of | 30 |
| | 442 crystallographic group | 310 |
| 5 | | |
| | 5, powers of | 30 |
| | 5-(12,6,1) table | 244 |
| | 5-design, Mathieu | 244 |
| | 632 crystallographic group | 311 |

Roman Letters

A

| | | |
|----------|---|----------|
| A | | |
| | A interarrival time | 637 |
| | $A(n, d)$ number of codewords | 259 |
| | $A(T)$ skew symmetric part of a tensor | 484 |
| | A ampere | 792 |
| $A_{()}$ | | |
| | A_4 alternating group on 4 elements | 188 |
| | A_k radius of circumscribed circle | 324 |
| | A_n alternating group | 163, 172 |
| | $A/B/c/K/m/Z$ queue | 637 |
| | $Ai(z)$ Airy function | 465, 565 |
| | ALFS additive lagged-Fibonacci sequence | 646 |
| | AMS American Mathematical Society | 801 |
| | ANOVA analysis of variance | 686 |
| | AOQ average outgoing quality | 652 |
| | AOQL average outgoing quality limit | 652 |
| | AQL acceptable quality level | 652 |
| | $AR(k)$ autoregressive model | 718 |
| | ARMA(k, l) mixed model | 719 |
| | $Aut(G)$ graph automorphism group | 220 |
| $a_{()}$ | | |
| | a_i unit vector | 492 |
| | a_n Fourier coefficients | 48 |
| | a_n proportion of customers | 637 |
| | <i>a.e.</i> almost everywhere | 74 |
| | am amplitude | 572 |
| | arg argument | 53 |

B

B

B amount borrowed 779
 B service time 637
 $B(p, q)$ beta function 544
 B set of blocks 241

$B_{()}$

B_n Bell number 211
 B_n Bernoulli number 19
 B_n a block 241
 $B_n(x)$ Bernoulli polynomial ... 19

B.C.E (before the common era, B.C.) 810

BFS basic feasible solution 283

$Bi(z)$ Airy function 465, 565

BIBD balanced incomplete block design
 245

Bq becquerel 792

b unit binormal vector 374

C

C

C channel capacity 255
 $C(n, r)$ r -combination ... 206, 215
 $C(x)$ Fresnel integral 547
 $C^R(n, r)$ combinations with
 replacement 206

\mathbb{C} complex numbers 3, 167

\mathbb{C}^n complex n element vectors 131

\mathcal{C} integration contour 399, 404

C coulomb 792

C Roman numeral (100) 4

$C_{()}$

C_2 cyclic group of order 2 178
 $C_2 \times C_2 \times C_2$ direct group product
 181

C_3 cyclic group of order 3 178
 $C_3 \times C_3$ direct group product . 184

C_4 cyclic group of order 4 178
 $C_4 \times C_2$ direct group product . 181

C_5 cyclic group of order 5 179

C_6 cyclic group of order 6 179

C_7 cyclic group of order 7 180

C_8 cyclic group of order 8 180

C_9 cyclic group of order 9 184

C_n Catalan numbers 212

C_n cycle graph 229

C_n cyclic group 172

C_{10} cyclic group of order 10 .. 185

C.E. (common era, A.D.) 810

$Ci(z)$ cosine integral 549

c

c cardinality of real numbers .. 204
 c number of identical servers .. 637
 c speed of light 794

cas combination of sin and cos 591

cd candela 792

cm crystallographic group 309

cmm crystallographic group 310

c_n Fourier coefficients 50

$cn(u, k)$ elliptic function 572

$\text{cof}_{ij}(A)$ cofactor of matrix A 145

$\text{cond}(A)$ condition number 148

\cos trigonometric function 505

cosh hyperbolic function 524

cot trigonometric function 505

coth hyperbolic function 524

covers trigonometric function 505

csc trigonometric function 505

csch hyperbolic function 524

cyc number of cycles 172

D

D

D constant service time 637

D diagonal matrix 138

D differentiation operator 456, 466

D Roman numeral (500) 4

$D_{()}$

D_4 dihedral group of order 8 .. 182

D_5 dihedral group of order 10 . 185

D_6 dihedral group of order 12 . 186

D_f region of convergence 595

D_n derangement 210

D_n dihedral group 163, 172

DFT discrete Fourier transform 582

DLG($n; a, b$) double loop graph 230

d

$d(u, v)$ distance between vertices
 223

derivative operator 386

exterior derivative 397

minimum distance 256

$d_{()}$

d_n proportion of customers 637

$d_H(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v})$ Hamming distance ... 256

$dx_k(\mathbf{a})$ projection 395

$\det(A)$ determinant of matrix A 144

$\text{diam}(G)$ graph diameter 223

div divergence 493

$\text{dn}(u, k)$ elliptic function 572

dS differential surface area 405
 dV differential volume 405
 dx fundamental differential 377

E

E

E edge set 219
 E event 617
 $E(u, v)$ rst fundamental metric
 coef cient 377
 $E[]$ expectation operator 619
 $E_{()}$
 E_k Erlang- k service time 637
 E_n Euler numbers 20
 $E_n(x)$ Euler polynomial 20
 $E_n(x)$ exponential integral 550
 E_p identity group 172
 E_{ij} elementary matrix 138
 Ei exbi 6
 e

e algebraic identity 161
 e charge of electron 794
 e constants containing 15
 e continued fraction 97
 e de nition 15
 e eccentricity 325
 e in different bases 16
 $e(u, v)$ second fundamental metric
 coef cient 377
 $e_{()}$
 e vector of ones 137
 e_i unit vector 137
 $e_{i_1 \dots i_n}$ permutation symbol ... 489
 $\text{ecc}(v)$ eccentricity of a vertex 223
 erf error function 545
 erfc complementary error function .. 545
 exsec trigonometric function 505

F

F

$F(u, v)$ rst fundamental metric
 coef cient 377
 $F(x)$ Dawson's integral 546
 $F(x)$ probability distribution
 function 619
 \mathcal{F} Fourier transform 576
 $F(a, b; c; z)$ hypergeometric
 function 553
 $\hat{F}(x)$ sample distribution function
 658

F farad 792
 $F_{()}$
 F_n Fibonacci numbers 21
 F_α critical value 696
 F_{p^n} Galois eld 169
 F_c Fourier cosine transform ... 582
 F_s Fourier sine transform 582
 \mathcal{F}_N discrete Fourier transform . 582
 ${}_pF_q$ hypergeometric function ... 36
 FCFS rst come, rst served 637
 FFT fast Fourier transform 584
 FIFO rst in, rst out 637
 f

$\hat{f}(x)$ sample density function .. 658
 $f(u, v)$ second fundamental metric
 coef cient 377
 $f(x)$ probability density function
 619
 $f_{X(t)}$ density function 467

G

G

G Green's function 471
 G general service time distribution
 637
 G generating matrix 256
 G graph 219
 G gravitational constant 794
 G primitive root 195
 $G(k)$ Waring's problem 100
 $G(s)$ generating function 620
 $G(u, v)$ rst fundamental metric
 coef cient 377
 $G(x; z)$ Green's function 463
 $G[x_n]$ generating function 268
 \mathbf{G} Catalan constant 23
 $G_{n,m}$ isomorphism classes 241
 GCD greatest common divisor 101
 $GF(p^n)$ Galois eld 169
 GI general interarrival time 637
 Gi gibi 6
 $GL(n, \mathbb{C})$ matrix group 171
 $GL(n, \mathbb{R})$ matrix group 171
 G.M. geometric mean 659
 Gy gray 792
 $\text{gir}(()G)$ graph girth 224
 g
 g determinant of the metric tensor
 489
 g metric tensor 487

g primitive root 195
 $g(k)$ Waring's problem 100
 $g(x)$ generating polynomial ... 256
 gd function 530
 $gd\ x$ Gudermannian function 530
 g^{ij} covariant metric 486
 g_{ij} contravariant metric 486
 glb greatest lower bound 68

H

H

H mean curvature 377
 H parity check matrix 256
 $H(\mathbf{p}_X)$ entropy 253
 $H(x)$ Haar wavelet 723
 $H(x)$ Heaviside function .. 77, 408
 \mathcal{H} Hilbert transform 591
 H Hermitian conjugate 138
 H henry 792
 $H_{()}$
 H_0 null hypothesis 661
 H_1 alternative hypothesis 661
 $H_\nu^{(1)}$ Hankel function 559
 $H_\nu^{(2)}$ Hankel function 559
 H_k k -stage hyperexponential
 service time 637
 H_n harmonic numbers 32
 $H_n(x)$ Hermite polynomials .. 532
 \mathcal{H}_ν Hankel transform 589
 H.M. harmonic mean 660
 Hz hertz 792
 hav trigonometric function 372, 505
 h_i metric coef cients 492

I

I

I rst fundamental form 377
 I identity matrix 138
 $I(X, Y)$ mutual information .. 254
 I Roman numeral (1) 4
 ICG inversive congruential generator 646
 II second fundamental form 377
 Im imaginary part of a complex number
 53
 I_n identity matrix 138
 Inv number of invariant elements ... 172
 IVP initial-value problem 265

i

$\hat{\mathbf{i}}$ unit vector 494
 $\hat{\mathbf{i}}$ unit vector 135
 i imaginary unit 53
 i interest rate 779
 iid independent and identically
 distributed 619
 inf greatest lower bound 68
 in mum greatest lower bound 68

J

J

J Jordan form 154
 J joule 792
 j
 $\hat{\mathbf{j}}$ unit vector 494
 $\hat{\mathbf{j}}$ unit vector 135
 $J_{()}$
 $J_\nu(z)$ Bessel function 559
 J_c Julia set 273
 $j_{()}$
 $j_n(z)$ half order Bessel function
 563
 $j_{\nu,k}$ zero of Bessel function ... 563

K

K

K Gaussian curvature 377
 K system capacity 637
 K Kelvin (degrees) 792
 $K_{()}$
 K_n complete graph 229
 $K_{m,n}$ complete bipartite graph 230
 K_{n_1, \dots, n_k} complete multipartite
 graph 230
 \overline{K}_n empty graph 229
 Ki kibi 6
 k
 \mathbf{k} curvature vector 374
 \mathbf{k} unit vector 494
 $\hat{\mathbf{k}}$ unit vector 135
 k Boltzmann constant 794
 k dimension of a code 258
 $k(x, t)$ kernel 478
 $k_{()}$
 \mathbf{k}_g geodesic curvature 377
 \mathbf{k}_n normal curvature vector ... 377
 k_j block size 241
 kg kilogram 792

L

L

| | |
|--|---------|
| L average number of customers | 638 |
| L period | 48 |
| $L(\theta)$ expected loss function | 656 |
| \mathcal{L} Laplace transform | 585 |
| L length | 796 |
| L Roman numeral (50) | 4 |
| $L(\cdot)$ | |
| L_1 norm | 133 |
| L_2 norm | 133 |
| L_Q average number of customers | 638 |
| L_p norm | 73 |
| L_r Lie group | 466 |
| L_∞ space of measurable functions | 73 |
| LCG linear congruential generator | 644 |
| LCL lower control limit | 650 |
| LCM least common multiple | 101 |
| $Li_1(z)$ logarithm | 551 |
| $Li_2(z)$ dilogarithm | 551 |
| LIFO last in, rst out | 637 |
| $Li_n(z)$ polylogarithm | 551 |
| $li(x)$ logarithmic integral | 550 |
| LP linear programming | 280 |
| LTPD lot tolerance percent defective | 652 |
| $\ell(\theta, a)$ loss function | 656 |
| lim limits | 70, 385 |
| liminf limit inferior | 70 |
| limsup limit superior | 70 |
| lm lumen | 792 |
| ln logarithmic function | 522 |
| log logarithmic function | 522 |
| \log_b logarithm to base b | 522 |
| lub least upper bound | 68 |
| lux lux | 792 |

M

M

| | |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| M Mandelbrot set | 273 |
| M exponential service time | 637 |
| M number of codewords | 258 |
| $M(P)$ measure of a polynomial | 93 |
| \mathcal{M} Mellin transform | 612 |
| M mass | 796 |
| M Roman numeral (1000) | 4 |
| MA(l) moving average | 719 |
| M.D. mean deviation | 660 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| MFLG multiplicative lagged-Fibonacci generator | 646 |
| $M/G/1$ queue | 639 |
| $M/G/c/c$ queue | 639 |
| $M/G/\infty$ queue | 639 |
| Mi mebi | 6 |
| MLE maximum likelihood estimator | 662 |
| $M/M/1$ queue | 638 |
| $M/M/c$ queue | 639 |
| M_n Möbius ladder graph | 229 |
| MOLS mutually orthogonal Latin squares | 251 |
| MOM method of moments | 662 |
| MTBF mean time between failures | 655 |
| m | |
| m mortgage amount | 779 |
| m number in the source | 637 |
| m meter | 792 |
| mid midrange | 660 |
| mod modular arithmetic | 94 |
| mol mole | 792 |

N

N

| | |
|--|-----|
| N number of zeros | 58 |
| $N(A)$ null space | 149 |
| $N(\mu, \sigma)$ normal random variable | 619 |
| N unit normal vector | 378 |
| \mathcal{N} normal vector | 377 |
| \mathbb{N} natural numbers | 3 |
| N newton | 792 |
| $N_q(n)$ number of monic irreducible polynomials | 261 |
| n | |
| \mathbf{n} principal normal unit vector | 374 |
| $\hat{\mathbf{n}}$ unit normal vector | 135 |
| n code length | 258 |
| n number of time periods | 779 |
| n order of a plane | 248 |

O

| | |
|-------------------------|-----|
| O asymptotic function | 75 |
| $O(n)$ matrix group | 171 |
| O_n odd graph | 229 |
| o asymptotic function | 75 |

P

P

P number of poles 58
 P principal 779
 $P(B | A)$ conditional probability
 617
 $P(E)$ probability of event E .. 617
 $P(\nu, z)$ auxiliary function 561
 $P(m, r)$ r -permutation 215
 $P(n, r)$ r -permutation 206
 $P(x, y)$ Markov transition function
 640
 $P\{ \}$ Riemann P function 465

$P_{()}$

$P_G(x)$ chromatic polynomial .. 221
 P_n path (type of graph) 229
 $P_n(x)$ Lagrange interpolating
 polynomial 733
 $P_n(x)$ Legendre function 465
 $P_n(x)$ Legendre polynomials .. 534
 $P_n^{(\alpha, \beta)}(x)$ Jacobi polynomials .533
 $P_\nu(z)$ Legendre function 554
 $P_\nu^\mu(x)$ associated Legendre
 functions 557

Pa pascal 792
 Per(x_n) period of a sequence 644
 Pi pebi 6
 PID principal ideal domain 165
 $P^n(x, y)$ n -step Markov transition
 matrix 641
 $P^R(n, r)$ permutations with replacement
 206
 PRI priority service 637
 PRNG pseudorandom number generator
 644

p

$p(n)$ partitions 210
 $p\#$ product of prime numbers . 106
 p1 crystallographic group 309, 311
 p2 crystallographic group 310
 p3 crystallographic group 311
 p31m crystallographic group 311
 p3m1 crystallographic group 311
 p4 crystallographic group 310
 p4g crystallographic group 310
 p4m crystallographic group 310
 p6 crystallographic group 311
 p6m crystallographic group 311
 per permanent 145
 pg crystallographic group 309

pgg crystallographic group 309
 pm crystallographic group 309
 pmg crystallographic group 309
 pmm crystallographic group 310

$P_{()}$

$\mathbf{p}_{X \times Y}$ joint probability distribution
 254
 p_k discrete probability 619
 $p_k(n)$ partitions 207
 $p_m(n)$ restricted partitions 210
 p_n proportion of time 638

Q

Q

Q quaternion group 182
 $Q(\nu, z)$ auxiliary function 561
 \mathbb{Q} rational numbers 3, 167

$Q_{()}$

Q_n cube (type of graph) 229
 $Q_n(x)$ Legendre function 465
 $Q_\nu(z)$ Legendre function 554

$Q_\nu^\mu(x)$ associated Legendre functions
 557

q nome 574

R

R

R Ricci tensor 485, 488
 R Riemann tensor 488
 R curvature tensor 485
 R radius (circumscribed circle) 319,
 513
 R range 650
 R rate of a code 255
 $R(A)$ range space 149
 $R(\theta, d_i)$ risk function 657
 $R(t)$ reliability function 655
 \mathbb{R} continuity in 71
 \mathbb{R} convergence in 70
 \mathbb{R} real numbers 3, 167

$R_{()}$

R_i reliability of a component .. 653
 R_p reliability of parallel system 653
 R_s reliability of series system . 653
 R_\oplus radius of the earth 372
 \mathbb{R}^n real n element vectors 131
 $\mathbb{R}^{n \times m}$ real $n \times m$ matrices 137
 Re real part of a complex number 53
 R.M.S. root mean square 660

RSS random service 637
r
r distance in polar coordinates . 302
r modulus of a complex number 53
r radius (inscribed circle) . 318, 512
r shearing factor 352
r(θ , a) regret function 658
 $\text{rad}(\cdot)G$ radius of graph 226
rad radian 792
 r_i replication number 241
 $r_k(x)$ Rademacher functions 722

S

S
S sample space 617
S torsion tensor 485
S(x) Fresnel integral 547
 S_n symmetric group 163
 $S(n, k)$ Stirling number second
kind 213
 $\mathcal{S}(T)$ symmetric part of a tensor
484
S siemen 792
 $S_{(\cdot)}$
 S_3 symmetric group 180
 S_k area of inscribed polygon .. 324
 S_n star (type of graph) 229
 S_n symmetric group 172
 $S_n(r)$ surface area of a sphere . 368
SA simulated annealing 291
SI Systeme Internationale d'Unites .. 792
 $\text{Si}(z)$ sine integral 549
 $SL(n, \mathbb{C})$ matrix group 171
 $SL(n, \mathbb{R})$ matrix group 171
 $SO(2)$ matrix group 172
 $SO(n)$ matrix group 172
SPRT sequential probability ratio test 681
SRS shift-register sequence 645
STS Steiner triple system 249
 $SU(n)$ matrix group 172
SVD singular value decomposition .. 156
s
 $s(n, k)$ Stirling number rst kind
213
s arc length parameter 373
s sample standard deviation ... 660
s semi-perimeter 512
s second 792

$s_{(\cdot)}$
 s_k area of circumscribed polygon
324
 s_k elementary symmetric functions
84
sec trigonometric function 505
sech hyperbolic function 524
sgn signum function 77, 144
sin trigonometric function 505
sinh hyperbolic function 524
 $\text{sn}(u, k)$ elliptic function 572
sr steradian 792
sup least upper bound 68
supremum least upper bound 68

T

T
T
 T^T transpose 131
T tesla 792
T time interval 796
transpose 138
 $T_{(\cdot)}$
 $T_n(x)$ Chebyshev polynomials 534
 $T_{n,m}$ isomorphism class of trees
241
Ti tebi 6
 $\text{TN}(w, s)$ Toeplitz network 230
 $\text{tr}(A)$ trace of matrix A 150
 t -(v, k, λ) design nomenclature 241
 $t_{(\cdot)}$
 t_α critical value 695
 $t_{x,y}$ transition probabilities ... 255
tan trigonometric function 505
tanh hyperbolic function 524
t unit tangent vector 374

U

U
U universe 201
 $U(n)$ matrix group 172
 $U[a, b)$ uniform random variable
619
 $U_n(x)$ Chebyshev polynomials 535
UCL upper control limit 650
UFD unique factorization domain ... 165
UMVU type of estimator 663
URL Uniform Resource Locators ... 803
u traf c intensity 638
 $u(n)$ unit step function 595
 u_i distance 492

V

| | |
|----------|----------------------------------|
| V | |
| V | Klein four group 179 |
| V | vertex set 219 |
| V | Roman numeral (5) 4 |
| V | volt 792 |
| Vec | vector operation 158 |
| $V_n(r)$ | volume of a sphere 368 |
| vers | trigonometric function 505 |

W

| | |
|-----------|---------------------------------|
| W | |
| W | average time 638 |
| $W(u, v)$ | Wronskian 462 |
| W | watt 792 |
| $W_{()}$ | |
| W_N | root of unity 582 |
| W_Q | average time 638 |
| W_n | wheel (type of graph) 229 |
| $W_n(x)$ | Walsh functions 722 |
| Wb | weber 792 |

X

| | |
|-----------|---|
| X | |
| X | in nitesimal generator 466 |
| X | set of points 241 |
| X | Roman numeral (10) 4 |
| $X^{(1)}$ | rst prolongation 466 |
| $X^{(2)}$ | second prolongation 466 |
| $x_{(i)}$ | i^{th} order statistic 659 |
| x_i | rectangular coordinates 492 |

Y

| | |
|-------------|-----------------------------------|
| $Y_\nu(z)$ | Bessel function 559 |
| $y_{()}$ | |
| $y_h(x)$ | homogeneous solution .. 456 |
| $y_n(z)$ | half order Bessel function 563 |
| $y_p(x)$ | particular solution 456 |
| $y_{\nu,k}$ | zero of Bessel function ... 563 |

Z

| | |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| Z | |
| Z | queue discipline 637 |
| $Z(G)$ | center of a graph 221 |
| $Z(t)$ | instantaneous hazard rate .655 |
| \mathbb{Z} | integers 3, 167 |
| \mathcal{Z} | Z -transform 594 |
| $Z_{()}$ | |
| $Z_3 \rtimes Z_4$ | semidirect group product 187 |
| \mathbb{Z}_n | integers modulo n 167 |
| \mathbb{Z}_n^* | a group 163 |
| \mathbb{Z}_p | integers modulo p 167 |
| z | complex number 53 |
| z_α | critical value 695 |